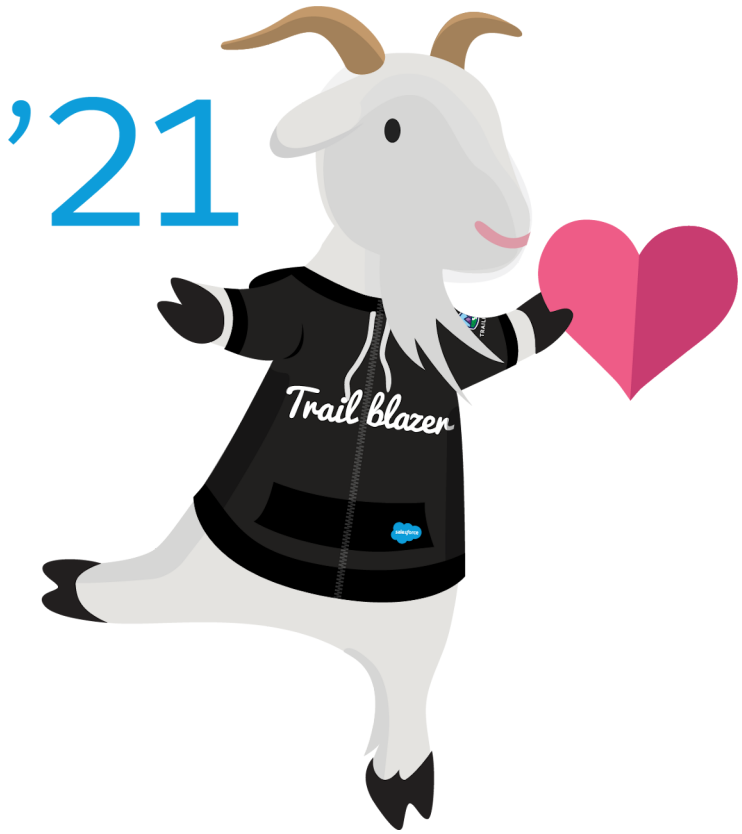
Apex Reference Guide

Version 52.0, Summer '21



@salesforcedocs

Last updated: August 9, 2021

© Copyright 2000–2021 salesforce.com, inc. All rights reserved. Salesforce is a registered trademark of salesforce.com, inc., as are other names and marks. Other marks appearing herein may be trademarks of their respective owners.

CONTENTS

Apex Reference Guide 1
Apex DML Operations 3
Apex DML Statements 3
ApexPages Namespace 7
Action Class 8
Component Class 9
IdeaStandardController Class 11
IdeaStandardSetController Class 13
KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Class 17
Message Class 20
StandardController Class 24
StandardSetController Class 29
AppLauncher Namespace 39
AppMenu Class 39
CommunityLogoController Class 41
EmployeeLoginLinkController Class 42
SocialLoginController Class 43
Approval Namespace 45
LockResult Class 45
ProcessRequest Class 47
ProcessResult Class 49
ProcessSubmitRequest Class 51
ProcessWorkitemRequest Class 55
UnlockResult Class 57
Auth Namespace 60
AuthConfiguration Class 62
AuthProviderCallbackState Class 72
AuthProviderPlugin Interface 74
AuthProviderPluginClass Class 77
AuthProviderTokenResponse Class 87
AuthToken Class 90
CommunitiesUtil Class 94
ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Interface 96
ConnectedAppPlugin Class 101
InvocationContext Enum 107
JWS Class 108
JWT Class 110
JWTBearerTokenExchange Class 116
LightningLoginEligibility Enum 121

LoginDiscoveryHandler Interface . . . 122
LoginDiscoveryMethod Enum . . . 129
MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Interface . . . 130
OAuthRefreshResult Class . . . 134
RegistrationHandler Interface . . . 136
SamlJitHandler Interface . . . 141
SessionManagement Class . . . 145
SessionLevel Enum . . . 157
UserData Class . . . 158
VerificationMethod Enum . . . 163
VerificationPolicy Enum . . . 163
VerificationResult Class . . . 164
Auth Exceptions . . . 166
Cache Namespace . . . 168
CacheBuilder Interface . . . 169
Org Class . . . 170
OrgPartition Class . . . 186
Partition Class . . . 189
Session Class . . . 202
SessionPartition Class . . . 217
Cache Exceptions . . . 220
Visibility Enum . . . 220
Canvas Namespace . . . 221
ApplicationContext Interface . . . 221
CanvasLifecycleHandler Interface . . . 225
ContextTypeEnum Enum . . . 227
EnvironmentContext Interface . . . 227
RenderContext Interface . . . 234
Test Class . . . 236
Canvas Exceptions . . . 239
ChatterAnswers Namespace . . . 240
AccountCreator Interface . . . 240
CommercePayments Namespace . . . 242
AbstractResponse Class . . . 245
AddressRequest Class . . . 248
AuditParamsRequest . . . 252
AbstractTransactionResponse Class . . . 254
AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Class . . . 259
AuthorizationReversalRequest Class . . . 260
AuthorizationReversalResponse Class . . . 264
AuthorizationRequest Class . . . 269
AuthorizationResponse Class . . . 274
BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Class . . . 281
BaseNotification Class . . . 284

BasePaymentMethodRequest Class . . . 289
BaseRequest Class . . . 291
CaptureNotification Class . . . 292
CaptureRequest Class . . . 297
CaptureResponse Class . . . 298
CardCategory Enum . . . 303
CardPaymentMethodRequest Class . . . 304
CustomMetadataTypeInfo Class . . . 310
GatewayErrorResponse Class . . . 311
GatewayNotificationResponse Class . . . 313
GatewayResponse Interface . . . 315
NotificationClient Class . . . 316
NotificationSaveResult Class . . . 317
NotificationStatus Enum . . . 319
PaymentGatewayAdapter Interface . . . 319
PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Interface . . . 320
PaymentGatewayContext Class . . . 323
PaymentGatewayNotificationContext Class . . . 325
PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Class . . . 326
PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse Class . . . 330
PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Class . . . 337
PaymentsHttp Class . . . 338
RefundRequest Class . . . 340
ReferencedRefundNotification Class . . . 341
ReferencedRefundRequest . . . 346
ReferencedRefundResponse Class . . . 348
RequestType Enum . . . 352
SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Class . . . 353
SaleRequest Class . . . 356
SaleResponse Class . . . 359
SalesforceResultCode Enum . . . 364
SalesforceResultCodeInfo . . . 365
ConnectApi Namespace . . . 367
ActionLinks Class . . . 370
Announcements Class . . . 378
CdpQuery Class . . . 384
Chatter Class . . . 394
ChatterFavorites Class . . . 399
ChatterFeeds Class . . . 421
ChatterGroups Class . . . 824
ChatterMessages Class . . . 869
ChatterUsers Class . . . 893
CommerceBuyerExperience Class . . . 928
CommerceCart Class . . . 963

CommerceCatalog Class 978
CommerceSearch Class 987
CommerceSearchSettings Class 990
CommerceStorePricing Class 992
CommerceWishlist Class 995
Communities Class 1013
CommunityModeration Class 1015
ContentHub Class 1044
Datacloud Class 1118
EmailMergeFieldService Class 1123
EmployeeProfiles Class 1124
ExternalEmailServices Class 1133
ExternalManagedAccount Class 1134
FieldService Class 1136
FulfillmentOrder Class 1137
Knowledge Class 1143
ManagedContent Class 1148
ManagedTopics Class 1168
Mentions Class 1183
Missions Class 1188
NavigationMenu Class 1193
NextBestAction Class 1195
OmnichannelInventoryService Class 1202
OrderPaymentSummary Class 1209
OrderSummary Class 1210
OrderSummaryCreation Class 1218
Organization Class 1219
Payments Methods 1220
Personalization Class 1224
QuestionAndAnswers Class 1237
Recommendations Class 1240
Records Class 1302
ReturnOrder Class 1304
Routing Class 1306
SalesforceInbox Class 1307
SmartDataDiscovery Class 1309
SocialEngagement Class 1309
Survey Class 1319
Topics Class 1320
UserProfiles Class 1358
Zones Class 1368
ConnectApi Input Classes 1378
ConnectApi Output Classes 1464
ConnectApi Enums 1725

ConnectApi Exceptions . . . 1751
Database Namespace . . . 1752
Batchable Interface . . . 1753
BatchableContext Interface . . . 1755
DeletedRecord Class . . . 1756
DeleteResult Class . . . 1757
DMLOptions Class . . . 1759
DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader Class . . . 1762
DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader Class . . . 1763
DmlOptions.EmailHeader Class . . . 1765
DuplicateError Class . . . 1767
EmptyRecycleBinResult Class . . . 1770
Error Class . . . 1771
GetDeletedResult Class . . . 1773
GetUpdatedResult Class . . . 1774
LeadConvert Class . . . 1775
LeadConvertResult Class . . . 1785
MergeResult Class . . . 1787
QueryLocator Class . . . 1789
QueryLocatorIterator Class . . . 1790
SaveResult Class . . . 1792
UndeleteResult Class . . . 1794
UpsertResult Class . . . 1796
Datacloud Namespace . . . 1797
AdditionalInformationMap Class . . . 1798
DuplicateResult Class . . . 1799
FieldDiff Class . . . 1804
FindDuplicates Class . . . 1805
FindDuplicatesByIds Class . . . 1807
FindDuplicatesResult Class . . . 1808
MatchRecord Class . . . 1811
MatchResult Class . . . 1813
DataSource Namespace . . . 1815
AsyncDeleteCallback Class . . . 1817
AsyncSaveCallback Class . . . 1818
AuthenticationCapability Enum . . . 1819
AuthenticationProtocol Enum . . . 1819
Capability Enum . . . 1820
Column Class . . . 1821
ColumnSelection Class . . . 1837
Connection Class . . . 1838
ConnectionParams Class . . . 1844
DataSourceUtil Class . . . 1847
DataType Enum . . . 1849

DeleteContext Class . . . 1849
DeleteResult Class . . . 1850
Filter Class . . . 1853
FilterType Enum . . . 1855
IdentityType Enum . . . 1856
Order Class . . . 1857
OrderDirection Enum . . . 1859
Provider Class . . . 1859
QueryAggregation Enum . . . 1861
QueryContext Class . . . 1861
QueryUtils Class . . . 1863
ReadContext Class . . . 1866
SearchContext Class . . . 1867
SearchUtils Class . . . 1869
Table Class . . . 1870
TableResult Class . . . 1874
TableSelection Class . . . 1880
UpsertContext Class . . . 1882
UpsertResult Class . . . 1883
DataSource Exceptions . . . 1886
Dom Namespace . . . 1886
Document Class . . . 1887
XmlNode Class . . . 1889
EventBus Namespace . . . 1900
ChangeEventHeader Class . . . 1900
TestBroker Class . . . 1905
TriggerContext Class . . . 1906
Flow Namespace . . . 1909
Interview Class . . . 1909
Functions Namespace (Beta) . . . 1914
Function Class . . . 1914
FunctionCallback Interface . . . 1918
FunctionErrorType Enum . . . 1919
FunctionInvocation Interface . . . 1920
FunctionInvocationError Interface . . . 1922
FunctionInvocationStatus Enum . . . 1924
KbManagement Namespace . . . 1924
PublishingService Class . . . 1925
LxScheduler Namespace . . . 1936
GetAppointmentCandidatesInput Class . . . 1937
GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder Class . . . 1939
GetAppointmentSlotsInput Class . . . 1944
GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder Class . . . 1946
SchedulerResources Class . . . 1952

SkillRequirement Class . . . 1955
SkillRequirementBuilder Class . . . 1956
WorkType Class . . . 1957
WorkTypeBuilder Class . . . 1958
ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Interface . . . 1962
ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo Class . . . 1964
ServiceResourceInfo Class . . . 1967
ServiceResourceSchedule Class . . . 1969
UnavailableTimeslot Class . . . 1970
Messaging Namespace . . . 1972
AttachmentRetrievalOption Enum . . . 1973
Email Class (Base Email Methods) . . . 1973
EmailFileAttachment Class . . . 1977
InboundEmail Class . . . 1979
InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Class . . . 1985
InboundEmail.TextAttachment Class . . . 1987
InboundEmailResult Class . . . 1989
InboundEnvelope Class . . . 1990
MassEmailMessage Class . . . 1991
InboundEmail.Header Class . . . 1994
PushNotification Class . . . 1995
PushNotificationPayload Class . . . 1998
CustomNotification Class . . . 2001
RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult Class . . . 2008
RenderEmailTemplateError Class . . . 2009
SendEmailError Class . . . 2011
SendEmailResult Class . . . 2012
SingleEmailMessage Methods . . . 2013
Metadata Namespace . . . 2025
AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Class . . . 2028
ConsoleComponent Class . . . 2032
Container Class . . . 2034
CustomConsoleComponents Class . . . 2037
CustomMetadata Class . . . 2038
CustomMetadataValue Class . . . 2041
DeployCallback Interface . . . 2043
DeployCallbackContext Class . . . 2044
DeployContainer Class . . . 2046
DeployDetails Class . . . 2048
DeployMessage Class . . . 2050
DeployProblemType Enum . . . 2055
DeployResult Class . . . 2055
DeployStatus Enum . . . 2063
FeedItemTypeEnum Enum . . . 2064

FeedLayout Class 2065
FeedLayoutComponent Class 2069
FeedLayoutComponentType Enum 2071
FeedLayoutFilter Class 2072
FeedLayoutFilterPosition Enum 2074
FeedLayoutFilterType Enum 2074
Layout Class 2074
LayoutColumn Class 2082
LayoutHeader Enum 2083
LayoutItem Class 2084
LayoutSection Class 2089
LayoutSectionStyle Enum 2091
Metadata Class 2092
MetadataType Enum 2093
MetadataValue Class 2093
MiniLayout Class 2094
Operations Class 2096
PlatformActionList Class 2099
PlatformActionListContextEnum Enum 2101
PlatformActionListItem Class 2102
PlatformActionTypeEnum Enum 2104
PrimaryTabComponents Class 2105
QuickActionList Class 2106
QuickActionListItem Class 2107
RelatedContent Class 2109
RelatedContentItem Class 2110
RelatedList Class 2111
RelatedListItem Class 2113
ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Class 2115
ReportChartComponentSize Enum 2119
SidebarComponent Class 2119
SortOrder Enum 2124
StatusCode Enum 2124
SubtabComponents Class 2124
SummaryLayoutStyleEnum Enum 2126
SummaryLayout Class 2126
SummaryLayoutItem Class 2129
UiBehavior Enum 2132
Process Namespace 2132
Plugin Interface 2132
PluginDescribeResult Class 2135
PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Class 2137
PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Class 2140
PluginRequest Class 2143

PluginResult Class 2144
QuickAction Namespace 2144
DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult Class 2145
DescribeLayoutComponent Class 2147
DescribeLayoutItem Class 2148
DescribeLayoutRow Class 2151
DescribeLayoutSection Class 2152
DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue Class 2155
DescribeQuickActionResult Class 2156
QuickActionDefaults Class 2172
QuickActionDefaultsHandler Interface 2174
QuickActionRequest Class 2179
QuickActionResult Class 2182
SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Class 2184
Reports Namespace 2186
AggregateColumn Class 2190
BucketField Class 2191
BucketFieldValue Class 2198
BucketType Enum 2202
ColumnDataType Enum 2202
ColumnSortOrder Enum 2203
CrossFilter Class 2204
CsfGroupType Enum 2209
DateGranularity Enum 2209
DetailColumn Class 2210
Dimension Class 2211
EvaluatedCondition Class 2212
EvaluatedConditionOperator Enum 2215
FilterOperator Class 2216
FilterValue Class 2217
FormulaType Enum 2218
GroupingColumn Class 2218
GroupingInfo Class 2220
GroupingValue Class 2221
NotificationAction Interface 2223
NotificationActionContext Class 2225
ReportCsf Class 2226
ReportCurrency Class 2235
ReportDataCell Class 2236
ReportDescribeResult Class 2237
ReportDetailRow Class 2238
ReportDivisionInfo Class 2239
ReportExtendedMetadata Class 2240
ReportFact Class 2241

ReportFactWithDetails Class 2242
ReportFactWithSummaries Class 2243
ReportFilter Class 2245
ReportFormat Enum 2249
ReportFilterType Enum 2250
ReportInstance Class 2250
ReportManager Class 2253
ReportMetadata Class 2258
ReportResults Class 2278
ReportScopeInfo Class 2280
ReportScopeValue Class 2281
ReportType Class 2282
ReportTypeColumn Class 2283
ReportTypeColumnCategory Class 2285
ReportTypeMetadata Class 2287
SortColumn Class 2289
StandardDateFilter Class 2290
StandardDateFilterDuration Class 2293
StandardDateFilterDurationGroup Class 2295
StandardFilter Class 2296
StandardFilterInfo Class 2298
StandardFilterInfoPicklist Class 2299
StandardFilterType Enum 2301
SummaryValue Class 2301
ThresholdInformation Class 2302
TopRows Class 2303
Reports Exceptions 2306
Schema Namespace 2307
ChildRelationship Class 2308
DataCategory Class 2310
DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Class 2311
DescribeColorResult Class 2314
DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult Class 2316
DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult Class 2318
DescribeFieldResult Class 2320
DescribeIconResult Class 2337
DescribeSObjectResult Class 2339
DescribeTabResult Class 2350
DescribeTabSetResult Class 2353
DisplayType Enum 2356
FieldDescribeOptions Enum 2358
FieldSet Class 2358
FieldSetMember Class 2362
PicklistEntry Class 2364

RecordTypeInfo Class . . . 2366
SOAPType Enum . . . 2369
SObjectDescribeOptions Enum . . . 2369
SObjectField Class . . . 2370
SObjectType Class . . . 2371
Search Namespace . . . 2375
KnowledgeSuggestionFilter Class . . . 2376
QuestionSuggestionFilter Class . . . 2380
SearchResult Class . . . 2384
SearchResults Class . . . 2386
SuggestionOption Class . . . 2387
SuggestionResult Class . . . 2388
SuggestionResults Class . . . 2389
Sfc Namespace . . . 2390
ContentDownloadContext Enum . . . 2390
ContentDownloadHandler Class . . . 2391
ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Interface . . . 2392
Sfdc_Checkout Namespace . . . 2394
AsyncCartProcessor Interface . . . 2394
B2BCheckoutController Class . . . 2395
IntegrationInfo Class . . . 2396
IntegrationStatus Class . . . 2398
IntegrationStatus.Status Enum . . . 2398
Site Namespace . . . 2399
UrlRewriter Interface . . . 2399
Site Exceptions . . . 2400
Support Namespace . . . 2401
EmailTemplateSelector Interface . . . 2401
MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Interface . . . 2403
System Namespace . . . 2405
AccessType Enum . . . 2411
Address Class . . . 2411
Answers Class . . . 2417
ApexPages Class . . . 2418
Approval Class . . . 2421
Blob Class . . . 2433
Boolean Class . . . 2435
BusinessHours Class . . . 2437
Callable Interface . . . 2440
Cases Class . . . 2443
Comparable Interface . . . 2444
Continuation Class . . . 2446
Cookie Class . . . 2450
Crypto Class . . . 2456

Custom Metadata Type Methods 2472
Custom Settings Methods 2476
Database Class 2486
Date Class 2528
Datetime Class 2539
Decimal Class 2562
Double Class 2576
EncodingUtil Class 2579
Enum Methods 2583
EventBus Class 2583
Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions 2586
FlexQueue Class 2589
FeatureManagement Class 2593
Formula Class 2598
FormulaRecalcFieldError Class 2599
FormulaRecalcResult Class 2600
Http Class 2601
HttpCalloutMock Interface 2602
HttpRequest Class 2603
HttpResponse Class 2613
Id Class 2619
Ideas Class 2625
InstallHandler Interface 2630
Integer Class 2633
JSON Class 2635
JSONGenerator Class 2642
JSONParser Class 2656
JSONToken Enum 2668
Limits Class 2669
List Class 2682
Location Class 2697
Long Class 2700
Map Class 2702
Matcher Class 2715
Math Class 2727
Messaging Class 2752
MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Class 2760
Network Class 2763
OrgLimit Class 2767
OrgLimits Class 2769
PageReference Class 2771
Packaging Class 2783
Pattern Class 2784
Queueable Interface 2787

QueueableContext Interface 2790
QuickAction Class 2790
Quiddity Enum 2795
RemoteObjectController 2796
Request Class 2799
ResetPasswordResult Class 2801
RestContext Class 2802
RestRequest Class 2803
RestResponse Class 2808
SandboxPostCopy Interface 2812
Schedulable Interface 2814
SchedulableContext Interface 2815
Schema Class 2816
Search Class 2821
Security Class 2824
SelectOption Class 2827
Set Class 2832
Site Class 2844
SObject Class 2865
SObjectAccessDecision Class 2890
StaticResourceCalloutMock Class 2893
String Class 2895
StubProvider Interface 2971
System Class 2973
Test Class 2996
Time Class 3012
TimeZone Class 3017
Trigger Class 3020
TriggerOperation Enum 3023
Type Class 3023
UninstallHandler Interface 3031
URL Class 3033
UserInfo Class 3043
UserManagement Class 3052
Version Class 3071
WebServiceCallout Class 3075
WebServiceMock Interface 3076
XmlStreamReader Class 3078
XmlStreamWriter Class 3092
TerritoryMgmt Namespace 3099
OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Global Interface 3099
TxnSecurity Namespace 3102
Event Class 3103
EventCondition Interface 3107

AsyncCondition Interface 3109
PolicyCondition Interface 3110
UserProvisioning Namespace 3112
ConnectorTestUtil Class 3113
UserProvisioningLog Class 3114
UserProvisioningPlugin Class 3117
VisualEditor Namespace 3121
DataRow Class 3121
DesignTimePageContext Class 3124
DynamicPickList Class 3127
DynamicPickListRows Class 3129
wave Namespace 3134
QueryBuilder Class 3135
QueryNode Class 3138
ProjectionNode Class 3143
Appendices 3145
Shipping Invoice Example 3145
Reserved Keywords 3157
Documentation Typographical Conventions 3158
Glossary 3159

APEX REFERENCE GUIDE

Apex is a strongly typed, object-oriented programming language that allows developers to execute flow and transaction control statements on the Salesforce Platform server, in conjunction with calls to the API. This reference guide includes built-in Apex classes, interfaces, enums, and exceptions, grouped by namespace. It also includes Apex DML statements to insert, update, merge, delete, and restore data in Salesforce.

For information on the Apex development process, see Apex Developer Guide.

IN THIS SECTION:

Apex DML Operations

You can perform DML operations using the Apex DML statements or the methods of the `Database` class. For lead conversion, use the `convertLead` method of the `Database` class. There is no DML counterpart for it.

ApexPages Namespace

The `ApexPages` namespace provides classes used in Visualforce controllers.

AppLauncher Namespace

The `AppLauncher` namespace provides methods for managing the appearance of apps in the App Launcher, including their visibility and sort order.

Approval Namespace

The `Approval` namespace provides classes and methods for approval processes.

Auth Namespace

The `Auth` namespace provides an interface and classes for single sign-on into Salesforce and session security management.

Cache Namespace

The `Cache` namespace contains methods for managing the platform cache.

Canvas Namespace

The `Canvas` namespace provides an interface and classes for canvas apps in Salesforce.

ChatterAnswers Namespace

The `ChatterAnswers` namespace provides an interface for creating Account records.

CommercePayments Namespace

Use the `CommercePayments` namespace to provide a safe and customizable platform for managing customer payments and refunds.

ConnectApi Namespace

The `ConnectApi` namespace (also called Connect in Apex) provides classes for accessing the same data available in Connect REST API. Use Connect in Apex to create custom experiences in Salesforce.

Database Namespace

The `Database` namespace provides classes used with DML operations.

Datacloud Namespace

The `Datacloud` namespace provides classes and methods for retrieving information about duplicate rules. Duplicate rules let you control whether and when users can save duplicate records within Salesforce.

DataSource Namespace

The `DataSource` namespace provides the classes for the Apex Connector Framework. Use the Apex Connector Framework to develop a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect. Then connect your Salesforce organization to any data anywhere via the Salesforce Connect custom adapter.

Dom Namespace

The `Dom` namespace provides classes and methods for parsing and creating XML content.

EventBus Namespace

The `EventBus` namespace provides classes and methods for platform events and Change Data Capture events.

Flow Namespace

The `Flow` namespace provides a class for advanced Visualforce controller access to flows.

Functions Namespace (Beta)

The Functions namespace provides classes and methods used to invoke and manage Salesforce Functions.

KbManagement Namespace

The `KbManagement` namespace provides a class for managing knowledge articles.

LxScheduler Namespace

The `LxScheduler` namespace provides an interface and classes for integrating Salesforce Scheduler with external calendars.

Messaging Namespace

The `Messaging` namespace provides classes and methods for Salesforce outbound and inbound email functionality.

Metadata Namespace

The `Metadata` namespace provides classes and methods for working with custom metadata in Salesforce

Process Namespace

The `Process` namespace provides an interface and classes for passing data between your organization and a flow.

QuickAction Namespace

The `QuickAction` namespace provides classes and methods for quick actions.

Reports Namespace

The `Reports` namespace provides classes for accessing the same data as is available in the Salesforce Reports and Dashboards REST API.

Schema Namespace

The `Schema` namespace provides classes and methods for schema metadata information.

Search Namespace

The `Search` namespace provides classes for getting search results and suggestion results.

Sfc Namespace

The Sfc namespace contains classes used in Salesforce Files.

Sfdc_Checkout Namespace

The Sfdc_Checkout namespace provides an interface and classes for Lightning B2B Commerce apps in Salesforce.

Site Namespace

The `Site` namespace provides an interface for rewriting Sites URLs.

Support Namespace

The `Support` namespace provides an interface used for Case Feed.

System Namespace

The `System` namespace provides classes and methods for core Apex functionality.

TerritoryMgmt Namespace
The `TerritoryMgmt` namespace provides an interface used for territory management.
TxnSecurity Namespace
The `TxnSecurity` namespace provides an interface used for transaction security.
UserProvisioning Namespace
The `UserProvisioning` namespace provides methods for monitoring outbound user provisioning requests.
VisualEditor Namespace
The `VisualEditor` namespace provides classes and methods for interacting with the Lightning App Builder. The classes and methods in this namespace operate on Lightning components, which include Lightning web components and Aura components.
wave Namespace
The classes in the `wave` namespace are part of the Wave Analytics SDK, designed to facilitate querying Wave data from Apex code.
Appendices

Apex DML Operations

You can perform DML operations using the Apex DML statements or the methods of the `Database` class. For lead conversion, use the `convertLead` method of the `Database` class. There is no DML counterpart for it.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Working with Data in Apex
Database Class

Apex DML Statements

Use Data Manipulation Language (DML) statements to insert, update, merge, delete, and restore data in Salesforce.

The following Apex DML statements are available:

Insert Statement

The `insert` DML operation adds one or more sObjects, such as individual accounts or contacts, to your organization's data. `insert` is analogous to the INSERT statement in SQL.

Syntax

```
insert sObject
insert sObject[]
```

Example

The following example inserts an account named 'Acme':

```
Account newAcct = new Account(name = 'Acme');
try {
   insert newAcct;
} catch (DmlException e) {
```

```
// Process exception here
}
```

Note: For more information on processing `DmlExceptions`, see Bulk DML Exception Handling.

Update Statement

The `update` DML operation modifies one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, in your organization's data. `update` is analogous to the UPDATE statement in SQL.

Syntax

```
update sObject
update sObject[]
```

Example

The following example updates the `BillingCity` field on a single account named 'Acme':

```
Account a = new Account(Name='Acme2');
insert(a);

Account myAcct = [SELECT Id, Name, BillingCity FROM Account WHERE Id = :a.Id];
myAcct.BillingCity = 'San Francisco';

try {
    update myAcct;
} catch (DmlException e) {
    // Process exception here
}
```

Note: For more information on processing `DmlExceptions`, see Bulk DML Exception Handling.

Upsert Statement

The `upsert` DML operation creates new records and updates sObject records within a single statement, using a specified field to determine the presence of existing objects, or the ID field if no field is specified.

Syntax

```
upsert sObject [opt_field]
upsert sObject[] [opt_field]
```

The `upsert` statement matches the sObjects with existing records by comparing values of one field. If you don't specify a field when calling this statement, the `upsert` statement uses the sObject's ID to match the sObject with existing records in Salesforce. Alternatively, you can specify a field to use for matching. For custom objects, specify a custom field marked as external ID. For standard objects, you can specify any field that has the `idLookup` attribute set to true. For example, the Email field of Contact or User has the `idLookup` attribute set. To check a field's attribute, see the Object Reference for Salesforce.

Also, you can use foreign keys to upsert sObject records if they have been set as reference fields. For more information, see Field Types in the *Object Reference for Salesforce*.

The optional field parameter, *opt_field*, is a field token (of type `Schema.SObjectField`). For example, to specify the MyExternalID custom field, the statement is:

```
upsert sObjectList Account.Fields.MyExternalId__c;
```

If the field used for matching doesn't have the `Unique` attribute set, the context user must have the "View All" object-level permission for the target object or the "View All Data" permission so that `upsert` doesn't accidentally insert a duplicate record.

Note: Custom field matching is case-insensitive only if the custom field has the **Unique** and **Treat "ABC" and "abc" as duplicate values (case insensitive)** attributes selected as part of the field definition. If so, "ABC123" is matched with "abc123." For more information, see "Create Custom Fields" in the Salesforce online help.

How Upsert Chooses to Insert or Update

Upsert uses the sObject record's primary key (the ID), an idLookup field, or an external ID field to determine whether it should create a record or update an existing one:

- If the key isn't matched, a new object record is created.
- If the key is matched once, the existing object record is updated.
- If the key is matched multiple times, an error is generated and the object record isn't inserted or updated.

Example

This example performs an upsert of a list of accounts.

```
List<Account> acctList = new List<Account>();
// Fill the accounts list with some accounts

try {
    upsert acctList;
} catch (DmlException e) {

}
```

This next example performs an upsert of a list of accounts using a foreign key for matching existing records, if any.

```
List<Account> acctList = new List<Account>();
// Fill the accounts list with some accounts

try {
    // Upsert using an external ID field
    upsert acctList myExtIDField__c;
} catch (DmlException e) {

}
```

Delete Statement

The `delete` DML operation deletes one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data. `delete` is analogous to the `delete()` statement in the SOAP API.

Syntax

```
delete sObject
delete sObject[]
```

Example

The following example deletes all accounts that are named 'DotCom':

```
Account[] doomedAccts = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account
                         WHERE Name = 'DotCom'];
try {
    delete doomedAccts;
} catch (DmlException e) {
    // Process exception here
}
```

Note: For more information on processing `DmlExceptions`, see Bulk DML Exception Handling.

Undelete Statement

The `undelete` DML operation restores one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's Recycle Bin. `undelete` is analogous to the UNDELETE statement in SQL.

Syntax

```
undelete sObject | ID
undelete sObject[] | ID[]
```

Example

The following example undeletes an account named 'Universal Containers'. The `ALL ROWS` keyword queries all rows for both top level and aggregate relationships, including deleted records and archived activities.

```
Account[] savedAccts = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'Universal Containers'
ALL ROWS];
try {
    undelete savedAccts;
} catch (DmlException e) {
    // Process exception here
}
```

Note: For more information on processing `DmlExceptions`, see Bulk DML Exception Handling.

Merge Statement

The `merge` statement merges up to three records of the same sObject type into one of the records, deleting the others, and re-parenting any related records.

Note: This DML operation does not have a matching Database system method.

Syntax

```
merge sObject sObject
merge sObject sObject[]
merge sObject ID
merge sObject ID[]
```

The first parameter represents the master record into which the other records are to be merged. The second parameter represents the one or two other records that should be merged and then deleted. You can pass these other records into the `merge` statement as a single sObject record or ID, or as a list of two sObject records or IDs.

Example

The following example merges two accounts named 'Acme Inc.' and 'Acme' into a single record:

```
List<Account> ls = new List<Account>{new Account(name='Acme Inc.'),new Account(name='Acme')};
insert ls;
Account masterAcct = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'Acme Inc.' LIMIT 1];
Account mergeAcct = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'Acme' LIMIT 1];
try {
    merge masterAcct mergeAcct;
} catch (DmlException e) {
    // Process exception here
}
```

Note: For more information on processing `DmlExceptions`, see Bulk DML Exception Handling.

ApexPages Namespace

The `ApexPages` namespace provides classes used in Visualforce controllers.

The following are the classes in the `ApexPages` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Action Class

You can use `ApexPages.Action` to create an action method that you can use in a Visualforce custom controller or controller extension.

Component Class

Represents a dynamic Visualforce component in Apex.

IdeaStandardController Class

`IdeaStandardController` objects offer Ideas-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardController`.

IdeaStandardSetController Class

`IdeaStandardSetController` objects offer Ideas-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardSetController`.

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Class

`KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController` objects offer article-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardController`.

Message Class

Contains validation errors that occur when the user saves the page that uses a standard controller.

StandardController Class

Use a StandardController when defining an extension for a standard controller.

StandardSetController Class

`StandardSetController` objects allow you to create list controllers similar to, or as extensions of, the pre-built Visualforce list controllers provided by Salesforce.

Action Class

You can use `ApexPages.Action` to create an action method that you can use in a Visualforce custom controller or controller extension.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

For example, you could create a `saveOver` method on a controller extension that performs a custom save.

Instantiation

The following code snippet illustrates how to instantiate a new `ApexPages.Action` object that uses the save action:

```
ApexPages.Action saveAction = new ApexPages.Action('{!save}');
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Action Constructors

Action Methods

Action Constructors

The following are constructors for `Action`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Action(action)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Action` class using the specified action.

`Action(action)`

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Action` class using the specified action.

Signature

```
public Action(String action)
```

Parameters

action
Type: String

The action.

Action Methods

The following are methods for `Action`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getExpression()
Returns the expression that is evaluated when the action is invoked.

invoke()
Invokes the action.

`getExpression()`

Returns the expression that is evaluated when the action is invoked.

Signature

```
public String getExpression()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`invoke()`

Invokes the action.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference invoke()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Component Class

Represents a dynamic Visualforce component in Apex.

Namespace

ApexPages

Dynamic Component Properties

The following are properties for `Component`.

IN THIS SECTION:

childComponents
Returns a reference to the child components for the component.

expressions
Sets the content of an attribute using the expression language notation. The notation for this is `expressions.name_of_attribute`.

facets
Sets the content of a facet to a dynamic component. The notation is `facet.name_of_facet`.

childComponents

Returns a reference to the child components for the component.

Signature

```
public List <ApexPages.Component> childComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<ApexPages.Component>

Example

```
Component.Apex.PageBlock pageBlk = new Component.Apex.PageBlock();

Component.Apex.PageBlockSection pageBlkSection = new
Component.Apex.PageBlockSection(title='dummy header');

pageBlk.childComponents.add(pageBlkSection);
```

expressions

Sets the content of an attribute using the expression language notation. The notation for this is `expressions.name_of_attribute`.

Signature

```
public String expressions {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Example

```
Component.Apex.InputField inpFld = new
Component.Apex.InputField();
inpField.expressions.value = '{!Account.Name}';
inpField.expressions.id = '{!$User.FirstName}';
```

`facets`

Sets the content of a facet to a dynamic component. The notation is `facet.name_of_facet`.

Signature

```
public String facets {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Note: This property is only accessible by components that support facets.

Example

```
Component.Apex.DataTable myDT = new
Component.Apex.DataTable();
Component.Apex.OutputText footer = new
Component.Apex.OutputText(value='Footer Copyright');
myDT.facets.footer = footer;
```

IdeaStandardController Class

`IdeaStandardController` objects offer Ideas-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardController`.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

A method in the IdeaStandardController object is called by and operated on a particular instance of an IdeaStandardController.

Note: The `IdeaStandardSetController` and `IdeaStandardController` classes are currently available through a limited release program. For information on enabling these classes for your organization, contact your Salesforce representative.

In addition to the methods listed in this class, the `IdeaStandardController` class inherits all the methods associated with the `StandardController` class.

Instantiation

An IdeaStandardController object cannot be instantiated. An instance can be obtained through a constructor of a custom extension controller when using the standard ideas controller.

Example

The following example shows how an IdeaStandardController object can be used in the constructor for a custom list controller. This example provides the framework for manipulating the comment list data before displaying it on a Visualforce page.

```
public class MyIdeaExtension {

    private final ApexPages.IdeaStandardController ideaController;

    public MyIdeaExtension(ApexPages.IdeaStandardController controller) {
        ideaController = (ApexPages.IdeaStandardController)controller;
    }

    public List<IdeaComment> getModifiedComments() {
        IdeaComment[] comments = ideaController.getCommentList();
        // modify comments here
        return comments;
    }

}
```

The following Visualforce markup shows how the IdeaStandardController example shown above can be used in a page. This page must be named *detailPage* for this example to work.

Note: For the Visualforce page to display the idea and its comments, in the following example you need to specify the ID of a specific idea (for example, `/apex/detailPage?id=<ideaID>`) whose comments you want to view.

```
<!-- page named detailPage -->
<apex:page standardController="Idea" extensions="MyIdeaExtension">
    <apex:pageBlock title="Idea Section">
        <ideas:detailOutputLink page="detailPage" ideaId="{!idea.id}">{!idea.title}
        </ideas:detailOutputLink>
        <br/><br/>
        <apex:outputText >{!idea.body}</apex:outputText>
    </apex:pageBlock>
    <apex:pageBlock title="Comments Section">
        <apex:dataList var="a" value="{!modifiedComments}" id="list">
            {!a.commentBody}
        </apex:dataList>
        <ideas:detailOutputLink page="detailPage" ideaId="{!idea.id}"
               pageOffset="-1">Prev</ideas:detailOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:detailOutputLink page="detailPage" ideaId="{!idea.id}"
               pageOffset="1">Next</ideas:detailOutputLink>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

SEE ALSO:

StandardController Class

IdeaStandardController Methods

The following are instance methods for `IdeaStandardController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommentList()
Returns the list of read-only comments from the current page.

`getCommentList()`

Returns the list of read-only comments from the current page.

Signature

```
public IdeaComment[] getCommentList()
```

Return Value

Type: IdeaComment[]

This method returns the following comment properties:

- `id`
- `commentBody`
- `createdDate`
- `createdBy.Id`
- `createdBy.communityNickname`

IdeaStandardSetController Class

`IdeaStandardSetController` objects offer Ideas-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardSetController`.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

Note: The `IdeaStandardSetController` and `IdeaStandardController` classes are currently available through a limited release program. For information on enabling these classes for your organization, contact your Salesforce representative.

In addition to the method listed above, the `IdeaStandardSetController` class inherits the methods associated with the `StandardSetController`.

Note: The methods inherited from the `StandardSetController` cannot be used to affect the list of ideas returned by the `getIdeaList` method.

Instantiation

An IdeaStandardSetController object cannot be instantiated. An instance can be obtained through a constructor of a custom extension controller when using the standard list controller for ideas.

Example: Displaying a Profile Page

The following example shows how an IdeaStandardSetController object can be used in the constructor for a custom list controller:

```
public class MyIdeaProfileExtension {
    private final ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController ideaSetController;

    public MyIdeaProfileExtension(ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController controller) {
        ideaSetController = (ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController)controller;
    }

    public List<Idea> getModifiedIdeas() {
        Idea[] ideas = ideaSetController.getIdeaList();
        // modify ideas here
        return ideas;
    }

}
```

The following Visualforce markup shows how the IdeaStandardSetController example shown above and the `<ideas:profileListOutputLink>` component can display a profile page that lists the recent replies, submitted ideas, and votes associated with a user. Because this example does not identify a specific user ID, the page automatically shows the profile page for the current logged in user. This page must be named *`profilePage`* in order for this example to work:

```
<!-- page named profilePage -->
<apex:page standardController="Idea" extensions="MyIdeaProfileExtension"
recordSetVar="ideaSetVar">
    <apex:pageBlock >
        <ideas:profileListOutputLink sort="recentReplies" page="profilePage">
          Recent Replies</ideas:profileListOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:profileListOutputLink sort="ideas" page="profilePage">Ideas Submitted
        </ideas:profileListOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:profileListOutputLink sort="votes" page="profilePage">Ideas Voted
        </ideas:profileListOutputLink>
    </apex:pageBlock>
    <apex:pageBlock >
        <apex:dataList value="{!modifiedIdeas}" var="ideadata">
            <ideas:detailoutputlink ideaId="{!ideadata.id}" page="viewPage">
             {!ideadata.title}</ideas:detailoutputlink>
        </apex:dataList>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

In the previous example, the <ideas:detailoutputlink> component links to the following Visualforce markup that displays the detail page for a specific idea. This page must be named *viewPage* in order for this example to work:

```
<!-- page named viewPage -->
<apex:page standardController="Idea">
    <apex:pageBlock title="Idea Section">
        <ideas:detailOutputLink page="viewPage" ideaId="{!idea.id}">{!idea.title}
        </ideas:detailOutputLink>
        <br/><br/>
        <apex:outputText>{!idea.body}</apex:outputText>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

Example: Displaying a List of Top, Recent, and Most Popular Ideas and Comments

The following example shows how an IdeaStandardSetController object can be used in the constructor for a custom list controller:

Note: You must have created at least one idea for this example to return any ideas.

```
public class MyIdeaListExtension {
    private final ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController ideaSetController;

    public MyIdeaListExtension (ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController controller) {
        ideaSetController = (ApexPages.IdeaStandardSetController)controller;
    }

    public List<Idea> getModifiedIdeas() {
        Idea[] ideas = ideaSetController.getIdeaList();
        // modify ideas here
        return ideas;
    }
}
```

The following Visualforce markup shows how the IdeaStandardSetController example shown above can be used with the <ideas:listOutputLink> component to display a list of recent, top, and most popular ideas and comments. This page must be named *listPage* in order for this example to work:

```
<!-- page named listPage -->
<apex:page standardController="Idea" extensions="MyIdeaListExtension"
recordSetVar="ideaSetVar">
    <apex:pageBlock >
        <ideas:listOutputLink sort="recent" page="listPage">Recent Ideas
        </ideas:listOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:listOutputLink sort="top" page="listPage">Top Ideas
        </ideas:listOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:listOutputLink sort="popular" page="listPage">Popular Ideas
        </ideas:listOutputLink>
        |
        <ideas:listOutputLink sort="comments" page="listPage">Recent Comments
        </ideas:listOutputLink>
    </apex:pageBlock>
    <apex:pageBlock >
```

```
        <apex:dataList value="{!modifiedIdeas}" var="ideadata">
            <ideas:detailoutputlink ideaId="{!ideadata.id}" page="viewPage">
             {!ideadata.title}</ideas:detailoutputlink>
        </apex:dataList>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

In the previous example, the `<ideas:detailoutputlink>` component links to the following Visualforce markup that displays the detail page for a specific idea. This page must be named *viewPage*.

```
<!-- page named viewPage -->
<apex:page standardController="Idea">
    <apex:pageBlock title="Idea Section">
        <ideas:detailOutputLink page="viewPage" ideaId="{!idea.id}">{!idea.title}
        </ideas:detailOutputLink>
        <br/><br/>
        <apex:outputText>{!idea.body}</apex:outputText>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

SEE ALSO:

StandardSetController Class

IdeaStandardSetController Methods

The following are instance methods for `IdeaStandardSetController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getIdeaList()
Returns the list of read-only ideas in the current page set.

`getIdeaList()`

Returns the list of read-only ideas in the current page set.

Signature

```
public Idea[] getIdeaList()
```

Return Value

Type: Idea[]

Usage

You can use the `<ideas:listOutputLink>`, `<ideas:profileListOutputLink>`, and `<ideas:detailOutputLink>` components to display profile pages as well as idea list and detail pages (see the examples below). The following is a list of properties returned by this method:

- `Body`

- `Categories`
- `Category`
- `CreatedBy.CommunityNickname`
- `CreatedBy.Id`
- `CreatedDate`
- `Id`
- `LastCommentDate`
- `LastComment.Id`
- `LastComment.CommentBody`
- `LastComment.CreatedBy.CommunityNickname`
- `LastComment.CreatedBy.Id`
- `NumComments`
- `Status`
- `Title`
- `VoteTotal`

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Class

`KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController` objects offer article-specific functionality in addition to what is provided by the `StandardController`.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

In addition to the method listed above, the `KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController` class inherits all the methods associated with `StandardController`.

Note: Though inherited, the `edit`, `delete`, and `save` methods don't serve a function when used with the `KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController` class.

Example

The following example shows how a `KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController` object can be used to create a custom extension controller. In this example, you create a class named `AgentContributionArticleController` that allows customer-support agents to see pre-populated fields on the draft articles they create while closing cases.

Prerequisites:

1. Create an article type called *`FAQ`*. For instructions, see "Create Article Types" in the Salesforce online help.
2. Create a text custom field called `Details`. For instructions, see "Add Custom Fields to Article Types" in the Salesforce online help.
3. Create a category group called *`Geography`* and assign it to a category called *`USA`*. For instructions, see "Create and Modify Category Groups" and "Add Data Categories to Category Groups" in the Salesforce online help.

4. Create a category group called *Topics* and assign it a category called *Maintenance*.

```
/** Custom extension controller for the simplified article edit page that
    appears when an article is created on the close-case page.
*/
public class AgentContributionArticleController {
    // The constructor must take a ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController as
 an argument
    public AgentContributionArticleController(
        ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController ctl) {
        // This is the SObject for the new article.
        //It can optionally be cast to the proper article type.
        // For example, FAQ__kav article = (FAQ__kav) ctl.getRecord();
        SObject article = ctl.getRecord();
        // This returns the ID of the case that was closed.
        String sourceId = ctl.getSourceId();
        Case c = [SELECT Subject, Description FROM Case WHERE Id=:sourceId];

        // This overrides the default behavior of pre-filling the
        // title of the article with the subject of the closed case.
        article.put('title', 'From Case: '+c.subject);
        article.put('details__c',c.description);

        // Only one category per category group can be specified.
        ctl.selectDataCategory('Geography','USA');
        ctl.selectDataCategory('Topics','Maintenance');
    }
}
```

```
/** Test class for the custom extension controller.
*/
@isTest
private class AgentContributionArticleControllerTest {
    static testMethod void testAgentContributionArticleController() {
         String caseSubject = 'my test';
         String caseDesc = 'my test description';

         Case c = new Case();
         c.subject= caseSubject;
         c.description = caseDesc;
         insert c;
         String caseId = c.id;
         System.debug('Created Case: ' + caseId);

         ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().put('sourceId', caseId);
         ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().put('sfdc.override', '1');

         ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController ctl =
            new ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController(new FAQ__kav());

         new AgentContributionArticleController(ctl);

         System.assertEquals(caseId, ctl.getSourceId());
         System.assertEquals('From Case: '+caseSubject, ctl.getRecord().get('title'));
         System.assertEquals(caseDesc, ctl.getRecord().get('details__c'));
```

```
    }
}
```

If you created the custom extension controller for the purpose described in the previous example (that is, to modify submitted-via-case articles), complete the following steps after creating the class:

1. Log into your Salesforce organization and from Setup, enter *Knowledge Settings* in the Quick Find box, then select **Knowledge Settings**.
2. Click **Edit**.
3. Assign the class to the Use Apex customization field. This associates the article type specified in the new class with the article type assigned to closed cases.
4. Click **Save**.

IN THIS SECTION:

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Constructors

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Methods

SEE ALSO:

StandardController Class

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Constructors

The following are constructors for KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController.

IN THIS SECTION:

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController(article)
Creates a new instance of the ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController class using the specified knowledge article.

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController(article)

Creates a new instance of the ApexPages.KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController class using the specified knowledge article.

Signature

```
public KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController(SObject article)
```

Parameters

article
Type: SObject

The knowledge article, such as FAQ_kav.

KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController Methods

The following are instance methods for `KnowledgeArticleVersionStandardController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSourceId()
Returns the ID for the source object record when creating a new article from another object.

setDataCategory(categoryGroup, category)
Specifies a default data category for the specified data category group when creating a new article.

`getSourceId()`

Returns the ID for the source object record when creating a new article from another object.

Signature

```
public String getSourceId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setDataCategory(categoryGroup, category)`

Specifies a default data category for the specified data category group when creating a new article.

Signature

```
public Void setDataCategory(String categoryGroup, String category)
```

Parameters

`categoryGroup`
Type: String

`category`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Message Class

Contains validation errors that occur when the user saves the page that uses a standard controller.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

When using a standard controller, all validation errors, both custom and standard, that occur when the user saves the page are automatically added to the page error collections. If an `inputField` component is bound to the field with an error, the message is added to the component's error collection. All messages are added to the page's error collection. For more information, see Validation Rules and Standard Controllers in the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.

If your application uses a custom controller or extension, you must use the `message` class for collecting errors.

Instantiation

In a custom controller or controller extension, you can instantiate a Message in one of these ways:

- ```
  ApexPages.Message myMsg = new ApexPages.Message(ApexPages.severity, summary);
  ```

  where `ApexPages.severity` is the enum that determines how severe a message is, and `summary` is the String used to summarize the message. For example:

  ```
  ApexPages.Message myMsg = new ApexPages.Message(ApexPages.Severity.FATAL, 'my error msg');
  ```

- ```
  ApexPages.Message myMsg = new ApexPages.Message(ApexPages.severity, summary, detail);
  ```

  where `ApexPages. severity` is the enum that determines how severe a message is, `summary` is the String used to summarize the message, and `detail` is the String used to provide more detailed information about the error.

ApexPages.Severity Enum

To specify the severity of the message, use the `ApexPages.Severity` enum values. The following are the valid values:

- `CONFIRM`
- `ERROR`
- `FATAL`
- `INFO`
- `WARNING`

All enums have access to standard methods, such as `name` and `value`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Message Constructors

Message Methods

Message Constructors

The following are constructors for `Message`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Message(severity, summary)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified message severity and summary.

Message(severity, summary, detail)
Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified message severity, summary, and message detail.

Message(severity, summary, detail, id)
Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified severity, summary, detail, and component ID.

Message(severity, summary)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified message severity and summary.

Signature

```
public Message(ApexPages.Severity severity, String summary)
```

Parameters

severity
Type: ApexPages.Severity

The severity of a Visualforce message.

summary
Type: String

The summary Visualforce message.

Message(severity, summary, detail)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified message severity, summary, and message detail.

Signature

```
public Message(ApexPages.Severity severity, String summary, String detail)
```

Parameters

severity
Type: ApexPages.Severity

The severity of a Visualforce message.

summary
Type: String

The summary Visualforce message.

detail
Type: String

The detailed Visualforce message.

Message(severity, summary, detail, id)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.Message` class using the specified severity, summary, detail, and component ID.

Signature

```
public Message(ApexPages.Severity severity, String summary, String detail, String id)
```

Parameters

severity
Type: ApexPages.Severity

The severity of a Visualforce message.

summary
Type: String

The summary Visualforce message.

detail
Type: String

The detailed Visualforce message.

id
Type: String

The ID of the Visualforce component to associate with the message, for example, a form field with an error.

Message Methods

The following are methods for `Message`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getComponentLabel()
Returns the label of the associated `inputField` component. If no label is defined, this method returns `null`.

getDetail()
Returns the value of the detail parameter used to create the message. If no detail String was specified, this method returns `null`.

getSeverity()
Returns the severity enum used to create the message.

getSummary()
Returns the summary String used to create the message.

`getComponentLabel()`

Returns the label of the associated `inputField` component. If no label is defined, this method returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getComponentLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDetail()`

Returns the value of the detail parameter used to create the message. If no detail String was specified, this method returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getDetail()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSeverity()`

Returns the severity enum used to create the message.

Signature

```
public ApexPages.Severity getSeverity()
```

Return Value

Type: ApexPages.Severity

`getSummary()`

Returns the summary String used to create the message.

Signature

```
public String getSummary()
```

Return Value

Type: String

StandardController Class

Use a StandardController when defining an extension for a standard controller.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

StandardController objects reference the pre-built Visualforce controllers provided by Salesforce. The only time it is necessary to refer to a StandardController object is when defining an extension for a standard controller. StandardController is the data type of the single argument in the extension class constructor.

Instantiation

You can instantiate a StandardController in the following way:

```
ApexPages.StandardController sc = new ApexPages.StandardController(sObject);
```

Example

The following example shows how a StandardController object can be used in the constructor for a standard controller extension:

```
public class myControllerExtension {

    private final Account acct;

    // The extension constructor initializes the private member
    // variable acct by using the getRecord method from the standard
    // controller.
    public myControllerExtension(ApexPages.StandardController stdController) {
        this.acct = (Account)stdController.getRecord();
    }

    public String getGreeting() {
        return 'Hello ' + acct.name + ' (' + acct.id + ')';
    }
}
```

The following Visualforce markup shows how the controller extension from above can be used in a page:

```
<apex:page standardController="Account" extensions="myControllerExtension">
    {!greeting} <p/>
    <apex:form>
        <apex:inputField value="{!account.name}"/> <p/>
        <apex:commandButton value="Save" action="{!save}"/>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardController Constructors

StandardController Methods

StandardController Constructors

The following are constructors for `StandardController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardController(controllerSObject)

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.StandardController` class for the specified standard or custom object.

`StandardController(controllerSObject)`

Creates a new instance of the `ApexPages.StandardController` class for the specified standard or custom object.

Signature

```
public StandardController(SObject controllerSObject)
```

Parameters

controllerSObject
Type: SObject

A standard or custom object.

StandardController Methods

The following are methods for `StandardController`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

addFields(fieldNames)
When a Visualforce page is loaded, the fields accessible to the page are based on the fields referenced in the Visualforce markup. This method adds a reference to each field specified in `fieldNames` so that the controller can explicitly access those fields as well.

cancel()
Returns the PageReference of the cancel page.

delete()
Deletes record and returns the PageReference of the delete page.

edit()
Returns the PageReference of the standard edit page.

getId()
Returns the ID of the record that is currently in context, based on the value of the `id` query string parameter in the Visualforce page URL.

getRecord()
Returns the record that is currently in context, based on the value of the `id` query string parameter in the Visualforce page URL.

reset()
Forces the controller to reacquire access to newly referenced fields. Any changes made to the record prior to this method call are discarded.

save()
Saves changes and returns the updated PageReference.

view()
Returns the PageReference object of the standard detail page.

addFields(fieldNames)

When a Visualforce page is loaded, the fields accessible to the page are based on the fields referenced in the Visualforce markup. This method adds a reference to each field specified in `fieldNames` so that the controller can explicitly access those fields as well.

Signature

```
public Void addFields(List<String> fieldNames)
```

Parameters

fieldNames
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method should be called before a record has been loaded—typically, it's called by the controller's constructor. If this method is called outside of the constructor, you must use the `reset()` method before calling `addFields()`.

The strings in `fieldNames` can either be the API name of a field, such as AccountId, or they can be explicit relationships to fields, such as `something__r.myField__c`.

This method is only for controllers used by dynamicVisualforce bindings.

cancel()

Returns the PageReference of the cancel page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference cancel()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

delete()

Deletes record and returns the PageReference of the delete page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference delete()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

edit()

Returns the PageReference of the standard edit page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference edit()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the record that is currently in context, based on the value of the `id` query string parameter in the Visualforce page URL.

Signature

```
public String getId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getRecord()`

Returns the record that is currently in context, based on the value of the `id` query string parameter in the Visualforce page URL.

Signature

```
public SObject getRecord()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject

Usage

Note that only the fields that are referenced in the associated Visualforce markup are available for querying on this SObject. All other fields, including fields from any related objects, must be queried using a SOQL expression.

Tip: You can work around this restriction by including a hidden component that references any additional fields that you want to query. Hide the component from display by setting the component's `rendered` attribute to `false`.

Example

```
<apex:outputText
value="{!account.billingcity}
{!account.contacts}"
rendered="false"/>
```

`reset()`

Forces the controller to reacquire access to newly referenced fields. Any changes made to the record prior to this method call are discarded.

Signature

```
public Void reset()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is only used if `addFields` is called outside the constructor, and it must be called directly before `addFields`.

This method is only for controllers used by dynamicVisualforce bindings.

`save()`

Saves changes and returns the updated PageReference.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference save()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

`view()`

Returns the PageReference object of the standard detail page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference view()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

StandardSetController Class

`StandardSetController` objects allow you to create list controllers similar to, or as extensions of, the pre-built Visualforce list controllers provided by Salesforce.

Namespace

ApexPages

Usage

The `StandardSetController` class also contains a *prototype object*. This is a single `sObject` contained within the Visualforce StandardSetController class. If the prototype object's fields are set, those values are used during the save action, meaning that the values are applied to every record in the set controller's collection. This is useful for writing pages that perform mass updates (applying identical changes to fields within a collection of objects).

Note: Fields that are required in other Salesforce objects will keep the same requiredness when used by the prototype object.

Instantiation

You can instantiate a StandardSetController in either of the following ways:

- From a list of sObjects:

```
List<account> accountList = [SELECT Name FROM Account LIMIT 20];
ApexPages.StandardSetController ssc = new ApexPages.StandardSetController(accountList);
```

- From a query locator:

```
ApexPages.StandardSetController ssc =
new ApexPages.StandardSetController(Database.getQueryLocator([SELECT Name,CloseDate FROM
 Opportunity]));
```

Note: The maximum record limit for StandardSetController is 10,000 records. Instantiating StandardSetController using a query locator returning more than 10,000 records causes a LimitException to be thrown. However, instantiating StandardSetController with a list of more than 10,000 records doesn't throw an exception, and instead truncates the records to the limit.

Example

The following example shows how a StandardSetController object can be used in the constructor for a custom list controller:

```
public class opportunityList2Con {
    // ApexPages.StandardSetController must be instantiated
    // for standard list controllers
    public ApexPages.StandardSetController setCon {
        get {
            if(setCon == null) {
                setCon = new ApexPages.StandardSetController(Database.getQueryLocator(
                    [SELECT Name, CloseDate FROM Opportunity]));
            }
            return setCon;
        }
        set;
    }

    // Initialize setCon and return a list of records
    public List<Opportunity> getOpportunities() {
        return (List<Opportunity>) setCon.getRecords();
    }
}
```

The following Visualforce markup shows how the controller above can be used in a page:

```
<apex:page controller="opportunityList2Con">
    <apex:pageBlock>
        <apex:pageBlockTable value="{!opportunities}" var="o">
            <apex:column value="{!o.Name}"/>
            <apex:column value="{!o.CloseDate}"/>
        </apex:pageBlockTable>
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardSetController Constructors

StandardSetController Methods

StandardSetController Constructors

The following are constructors for `StandardSetController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardSetController(queryLocator)

Creates an instance of the `ApexPages.StandardSetController` class for the list of objects returned by the query locator.

StandardSetController(controllerSObjects)

Creates an instance of the `ApexPages.StandardSetController` class for the specified list of standard or custom objects.

`StandardSetController(queryLocator)`

Creates an instance of the `ApexPages.StandardSetController` class for the list of objects returned by the query locator.

Signature

```
public StandardSetController(Database.QueryLocator queryLocator)
```

Parameters

`queryLocator`

Type: Database.QueryLocator

A query locator representing a list of sObjects.

`StandardSetController(controllerSObjects)`

Creates an instance of the `ApexPages.StandardSetController` class for the specified list of standard or custom objects.

Signature

```
public StandardSetController(List<sObject> controllerSObjects)
```

Parameters

controllerSObjects
Type: List on page 2682<sObject on page 2866>

A List of standard or custom objects.

Example

```
List<account> accountList = [SELECT Name FROM Account LIMIT 20];
ApexPages.StandardSetController ssc = new ApexPages.StandardSetController(accountList);
```

StandardSetController Methods

The following are methods for `StandardSetController`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

cancel()
Returns the PageReference of the original page, if known, or the home page.

first()
Returns the first page of records.

getCompleteResult()
Indicates whether there are more records in the set than the maximum record limit. If this is false, there are more records than you can process using the list controller. The maximum record limit is 10,000 records.

getFilterId()
Returns the ID of the filter that is currently in context.

getHasNext()
Indicates whether there are more records after the current page set.

getHasPrevious()
Indicates whether there are more records before the current page set.

getListViewOptions()
Returns a list of the listviews available to the current user.

getPageNumber()
Returns the page number of the current page set. Note that the first page returns 1.

getPageSize()
Returns the number of records included in each page set.

getRecord()
Returns the sObject that represents the changes to the selected records. This retrieves the prototype object contained within the class, and is used for performing mass updates.

getRecords()
Returns the list of sObjects in the current page set. This list is immutable, i.e. you can't call `clear()` on it.

getResultSize()
Returns the number of records in the set.

getSelected()
Returns the list of sObjects that have been selected.

last()
Returns the last page of records.

next()
Returns the next page of records.

previous()
Returns the previous page of records.

save()
Inserts new records or updates existing records that have been changed. After this operation is finished, it returns a PageReference to the original page, if known, or the home page.

setFilterID(filterId)
Sets the filter ID of the controller.

setpageNumber(pageNumber)
Sets the page number.

setPageSize(pageSize)
Sets the number of records in each page set.

setSelected(selectedRecords)
Set the selected records.

`cancel()`

Returns the PageReference of the original page, if known, or the home page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference cancel()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

`first()`

Returns the first page of records.

Signature

```
public Void first()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

getCompleteResult()

Indicates whether there are more records in the set than the maximum record limit. If this is false, there are more records than you can process using the list controller. The maximum record limit is 10,000 records.

Signature

```
public Boolean getCompleteResult()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getFilterId()

Returns the ID of the filter that is currently in context.

Signature

```
public String getFilterId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getHasNext()

Indicates whether there are more records after the current page set.

Signature

```
public Boolean getHasNext()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getHasPrevious()

Indicates whether there are more records before the current page set.

Signature

```
public Boolean getHasPrevious()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getListViewOptions()

Returns a list of the listviews available to the current user.

Signature

```
public System.SelectOption getListViewOptions()
```

Return Value

Type: System.SelectOption[]

getPageNumber()

Returns the page number of the current page set. Note that the first page returns 1.

Signature

```
public Integer getPageNumber()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getPageSize()

Returns the number of records included in each page set.

Signature

```
public Integer getPageSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getRecord()

Returns the sObject that represents the changes to the selected records. This retrieves the prototype object contained within the class, and is used for performing mass updates.

Signature

```
public sObject getRecord()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject

getRecords()

Returns the list of sObjects in the current page set. This list is immutable, i.e. you can't call `clear`() on it.

Signature

```
public sObject[] getRecords()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject[]

getResultSize()

Returns the number of records in the set.

Signature

```
public Integer getResultSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getSelected()

Returns the list of sObjects that have been selected.

Signature

```
public sObject[] getSelected()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject[]

last()

Returns the last page of records.

Signature

```
public Void last()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

next()

Returns the next page of records.

Signature

```
public Void next()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

previous()

Returns the previous page of records.

Signature

```
public Void previous()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

save()

Inserts new records or updates existing records that have been changed. After this operation is finished, it returns a PageReference to the original page, if known, or the home page.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference save()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

setFilterID(filterId)

Sets the filter ID of the controller.

Signature

```
public Void setFilterID(String filterId)
```

Parameters

filterId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setpageNumber(pageNumber)

Sets the page number.

Signature

```
public Void setpageNumber(Integer pageNumber)
```

Parameters

pageNumber
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

setPageSize(pageSize)

Sets the number of records in each page set.

Signature

```
public Void setPageSize(Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

pageSize
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

setSelected(selectedRecords)

Set the selected records.

Signature

```
public Void setSelected(sObject[] selectedRecords)
```

Parameters

selectedRecords
Type: sObject[]

Return Value

Type: Void

AppLauncher Namespace

The `AppLauncher` namespace provides methods for managing the appearance of apps in the App Launcher, including their visibility and sort order.

The following class is in the `AppLauncher` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AppMenu Class
Contains methods to set the appearance of apps in the App Launcher.

CommunityLogoController Class
Represents the logo of the Experience Cloud site. For internal use only.

EmployeeLoginLinkController Class
Represents the link on the login form that employees can click to log in. For internal use only.

SocialLoginController Class
Represents the social authentication providers configured for the Experience Cloud site. For internal use only.

AppMenu Class

Contains methods to set the appearance of apps in the App Launcher.

Namespace

AppLauncher

IN THIS SECTION:

AppMenu Methods

AppMenu Methods

The following are methods for `AppMenu`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAppVisibility(appMenuItemId, isVisible)
Shows or hides specific apps in the App Launcher.

setOrgSortOrder(appIds)
Sets the organization-wide default sort order for the App Launcher based on a List of app menu item IDs in the desired order.

setUserSortOrder(appIds)
Sets an individual user's default sort order for the App Launcher based on a List of app menu item IDs in the desired order.

`setAppVisibility(appMenuItemId, isVisible)`

Shows or hides specific apps in the App Launcher.

Signature

```
public static void setAppVisibility(Id appMenuItemId, Boolean isVisible)
```

Parameters

appMenuItemId
Type: Id

The 15-character application ID value for an app. For more information, see the `ApplicationId` field for AppMenuItem or the `AppMenuItemId` field for UserAppMenuItem in the *SOAP API Developer Guide*

isVisible
Type: Boolean

If `true`, the app is visible.

Return Value

Type: void

setOrgSortOrder(appIds)

Sets the organization-wide default sort order for the App Launcher based on a List of app menu item IDs in the desired order.

Signature

```
public static void setOrgSortOrder(List<Id> appIds)
```

Parameters

appIds
Type: List<Id>

A list of application ID values. For more information, see the `ApplicationId` field for AppMenuItem in the *SOAP API Developer Guide*.

Return Value

Type: void

setUserSortOrder(appIds)

Sets an individual user's default sort order for the App Launcher based on a List of app menu item IDs in the desired order.

Signature

```
public static void setUserSortOrder(List<Id> appIds)
```

Parameters

appIds
Type: List<Id>

A list of application ID values. For more information, see the `AppMenuItemId` field for UserAppMenuItem in the *SOAP API Developer Guide*.

Return Value

Type: void

CommunityLogoController Class

Represents the logo of the Experience Cloud site. For internal use only.

Namespace

AppLauncher

IN THIS SECTION:

CommunityLogoController Methods

CommunityLogoController Methods

The following are methods for `CommunityLogoController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommunityName()
Returns the name of the Experience Cloud site.

getLogoURL()
Returns the path to the page containing the Experience Cloud site's logo.

`getCommunityName()`

Returns the name of the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getCommunityName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLogoURL()`

Returns the path to the page containing the Experience Cloud site's logo.

Signature

```
public static String getLogoURL()
```

Return Value

Type: String

EmployeeLoginLinkController Class

Represents the link on the login form that employees can click to log in. For internal use only.

Namespace

AppLauncher

IN THIS SECTION:

EmployeeLoginLinkController Methods

EmployeeLoginLinkController Methods

The following are methods for `EmployeeLoginLinkController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEmployeeLoginUrl(startUrl)
Returns the path to the page that employees see after they log in.

getIsAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()
Indicates whether an internal user is allowed to log in to the Experience Cloud site.

`getEmployeeLoginUrl(startUrl)`

Returns the path to the page that employees see after they log in.

Signature

```
public static String getEmployeeLoginUrl(String startUrl)
```

Parameters

`startUrl`
Type: String

Path to the page that employees see after they log in.

Return Value

Type: String

`getIsAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()`

Indicates whether an internal user is allowed to log in to the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static Boolean getIsAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

SocialLoginController Class

Represents the social authentication providers configured for the Experience Cloud site. For internal use only.

Namespace

AppLauncher

IN THIS SECTION:

SocialLoginController Methods

SocialLoginController Methods

The following are methods for `SocialLoginController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommunityDomainSsoUrl(startUrl, developerName)
Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getSamlSsoUrl(startUrl, samlId)
Returns the URL to the SAML provider for the Experience Cloud site.

getSsoUrl(startUrl, developerName)
Returns the single sign-on URL for the Experience Cloud site.

`getCommunityDomainSsoUrl(startUrl, developerName)`

Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Note: For better performance, we recommend using this method instead of `getAuthProviderSsoUrl`. If the authentication provider has `Use Subdomain for Callback` enabled, changing the single sign-on URL also changes the callback URL to the Experience Cloud site subdomain. Before switching to this method, update the callback URL in your third-party applications to avoid getting an invalid callback URL error during single sign-on.

Signature

```
public static String getCommunityDomainSsoUrl(String startUrl, String developerName)
```

Parameters

`startUrl`
Type: String

The page that you see after successfully logging into the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain.

developerName
Type: String

The unique name of the authentication provider.

Return Value

Type: String

getSamlSsoUrl(startUrl, samlId)

Returns the URL to the SAML provider for the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getSamlSsoUrl(String startUrl, String samlId)
```

Parameters

startUrl
Type: String

Path to the page that users see when they access the Experience Cloud site.

samlId
Type: String

Unique identifier of the SAML provider.

Return Value

Type: String

getSsoUrl(startUrl, developerName)

Returns the single sign-on URL for the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getSsoUrl(String startUrl, String developerName)
```

Parameters

startUrl
Type: String

Path to the page that users see when they access the Experience Cloud site.

developerName
Type: String

Unique name of the authentication provider.

Return Value

Type: String

Approval Namespace

The `Approval` namespace provides classes and methods for approval processes.

The following are the classes in the `Approval` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

LockResult Class
The result of a record lock returned by a `System.Approval.lock()` method.

ProcessRequest Class
The `ProcessRequest` class is the parent class for the `ProcessSubmitRequest` and `ProcessWorkitemRequest` classes. Use the `ProcessRequest` class to write generic Apex that can process objects from either class.

ProcessResult Class
After you submit a record for approval, use the `ProcessResult` class to process the results of an approval process.

ProcessSubmitRequest Class
Use the `ProcessSubmitRequest` class to submit a record for approval.

ProcessWorkitemRequest Class
Use the `ProcessWorkitemRequest` class for processing an approval request after it is submitted.

UnlockResult Class
The result of a record unlock, returned by a `System.Approval.unlock()` method.

LockResult Class

The result of a record lock returned by a `System.Approval.lock()` method.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

The `System.Approval.lock()` methods return Approval.LockResult objects. Each element in a LockResult array corresponds to an element in the ID or sObject array passed as a parameter to a `lock` method. The first element in the LockResult array corresponds to the first element in the ID or sObject array, the second element corresponds to the second element, and so on. If only one ID or sObject is passed in, the LockResult array contains a single element.

Example

The following example obtains and iterates through the returned Approval.LockResult objects. It locks some queried accounts using `Approval.lock` with a `false` second parameter to allow partial processing of records on failure. Next, it iterates through the

results to determine whether the operation was successful for each record. It writes the ID of every record that was processed successfully to the debug log, or writes error messages and failed fields of the failed records.

```
// Query the accounts to lock
Account[] accts = [SELECT Id from Account WHERE Name LIKE 'Acme%'];
// Lock the accounts
Approval.LockResult[] lrList = Approval.lock(accts, false);

// Iterate through each returned result
for(Approval.LockResult lr : lrList) {
    if (lr.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful, so get the ID of the record that was processed
        System.debug('Successfully locked account with ID: ' + lr.getId());
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed, so get all errors
        for(Database.Error err : lr.getErrors()) {
            System.debug('The following error has occurred.');
            System.debug(err.getStatusCode() + ': ' + err.getMessage());
            System.debug('Account fields that affected this error: ' + err.getFields());
        }
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

LockResult Methods

SEE ALSO:

Approval Class

LockResult Methods

The following are methods for `LockResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects, providing the error code and description.

getId()

Returns the ID of the sObject you are trying to lock.

isSuccess()

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the lock operation is successful for this object, or `false` otherwise.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects, providing the error code and description.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the sObject you are trying to lock.

Signature

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

Usage

If the field contains a value, the object was locked. If the field is empty, the operation was not successful.

`isSuccess()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the lock operation is successful for this object, or `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

ProcessRequest Class

The `ProcessRequest` class is the parent class for the `ProcessSubmitRequest` and `ProcessWorkitemRequest` classes. Use the `ProcessRequest` class to write generic Apex that can process objects from either class.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

The request must be instantiated via the child classes, `ProcessSubmitRequest` and `ProcessWorkItemRequest`.

ProcessRequest Methods

The following are methods for `ProcessRequest`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getComments()
Returns the comments that have been added previously to the approval request.

getNextApproverIds()
Returns the list of user IDs of user specified as approvers.

setComments(comments)
Sets the comments to be added to the approval request.

setNextApproverIds(nextApproverIds)
If the next step in your approval process is another Apex approval process, you specify exactly one user ID as the next approver. If not, you cannot specify a user ID and this method must be `null`.

`getComments()`

Returns the comments that have been added previously to the approval request.

Signature

```
public String getComments()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getNextApproverIds()`

Returns the list of user IDs of user specified as approvers.

Signature

```
public ID[] getNextApproverIds()
```

Return Value

Type: ID[]

`setComments(comments)`

Sets the comments to be added to the approval request.

Signature

```
public Void setComments(String comments)
```

Parameters

comments
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setNextApproverIds(nextApproverIds)

If the next step in your approval process is another Apex approval process, you specify exactly one user ID as the next approver. If not, you cannot specify a user ID and this method must be `null`.

Signature

```
public Void setNextApproverIds(ID[] nextApproverIds)
```

Parameters

nextApproverIds
Type: ID[]

Must be a single-entry list.

Return Value

Type: Void

ProcessResult Class

After you submit a record for approval, use the `ProcessResult` class to process the results of an approval process.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

A ProcessResult object is returned by the `process` method. You must specify the Approval namespace when creating an instance of this class. For example:

```
Approval.ProcessResult result = Approval.process(req1);
```

ProcessResult Methods

The following are methods for `ProcessResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEntityId()
The ID of the record being processed.

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects including the error code and description.

getInstanceId()
The ID of the approval process that has been submitted for approval.

getInstanceStatus()
The status of the current approval process. Valid values are: Approved, Rejected, Removed or Pending.

getNewWorkitemIds()
The IDs of the new items submitted to the approval process. There can be 0 or 1 approval processes.

isSuccess()
A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the approval process completed successfully; otherwise, it is set to `false`.

`getEntityId()`

The ID of the record being processed.

Signature

```
public String getEntityId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects including the error code and description.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error[]

`getInstanceId()`

The ID of the approval process that has been submitted for approval.

Signature

```
public String getInstanceId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getInstanceStatus()`

The status of the current approval process. Valid values are: Approved, Rejected, Removed or Pending.

Signature

```
public String getInstanceStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getNewWorkitemIds()`

The IDs of the new items submitted to the approval process. There can be 0 or 1 approval processes.

Signature

```
public ID[] getNewWorkitemIds()
```

Return Value

Type: ID[]

`isSuccess()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the approval process completed successfully; otherwise, it is set to `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

ProcessSubmitRequest Class

Use the `ProcessSubmitRequest` class to submit a record for approval.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

You must specify the Approval namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor for this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest psr = new Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest();
```

Inherited Methods

In addition to the methods listed, the `ProcessSubmitRequest` class has access to all the methods in its parent class, ProcessRequest Class.

- getComments()
- getNextApproverIds()
- setComments(comments)
- setNextApproverIds(nextApproverIds)

Example

To view sample code, refer to Approval Processing Example.

ProcessSubmitRequest Methods

The following are methods for `ProcessSubmitRequest`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getObjectId()

Returns the ID of the record that has been submitted for approval. For example, it can return an account, contact, or custom object record.

getProcessDefinitionNameOrId()

Returns the developer name or ID of the process definition.

getSkipEntryCriteria()

If `getProcessDefinitionNameOrId()` returns a value other than `null`, `getSkipEntryCriteria()` determines whether to evaluate the entry criteria for the process (`true`) or not (`false`).

getSubmitterId()

Returns the user ID of the submitter requesting the approval record. The user must be one of the allowed submitters in the process definition setup.

setObjectId(recordId)

Sets the ID of the record to be submitted for approval. For example, it can specify an account, contact, or custom object record.

setProcessDefinitionNameOrId(nameOrId)

Sets the developer name or ID of the process definition to be evaluated.

setSkipEntryCriteria(skipEntryCriteria)

If the process definition name or ID is not null, `setSkipEntryCriteria()` determines whether to evaluate the entry criteria for the process (`true`) or not (`false`).

setSubmitterId(userID)

Sets the user ID of the submitter requesting the approval record. The user must be one of the allowed submitters in the process definition setup. If you don't set a submitter ID, the process uses the current user as the submitter.

getObjectId()

Returns the ID of the record that has been submitted for approval. For example, it can return an account, contact, or custom object record.

Signature

```
public String getObjectId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getProcessDefinitionNameOrId()

Returns the developer name or ID of the process definition.

Signature

```
public String getProcessDefinitionNameOrId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The default is null. If the return value is `null`, when a user submits a record for approval Salesforce evaluates the entry criteria for all processes applicable to the user.

getSkipEntryCriteria()

If `getProcessDefinitionNameOrId()` returns a value other than `null`, `getSkipEntryCriteria()` determines whether to evaluate the entry criteria for the process (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean getSkipEntryCriteria()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getSubmitterId()

Returns the user ID of the submitter requesting the approval record. The user must be one of the allowed submitters in the process definition setup.

Signature

```
public String getSubmitterId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setObjectId(recordId)

Sets the ID of the record to be submitted for approval. For example, it can specify an account, contact, or custom object record.

Signature

```
public Void setObjectId(String recordId)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setProcessDefinitionNameOrId(nameOrId)

Sets the developer name or ID of the process definition to be evaluated.

Signature

```
public Void setProcessDefinitionNameOrId(String nameOrId)
```

Parameters

nameOrId
Type: String

The process definition developer name or process definition ID. The record is submitted to this specific process. If set to `null`, submission of a record approval follows standard evaluation; that is, every entry criteria of the process definition in the process order is evaluated and the one that satisfies is picked and submitted.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If the process definition name or ID is not set via this method, then by default it is null. If it is null, the submission of a record for approval evaluates entry criteria for all processes applicable to the submitter. The order of evaluation is based on the process order of the setup.

`setSkipEntryCriteria(skipEntryCriteria)`

If the process definition name or ID is not null, `setSkipEntryCriteria()` determines whether to evaluate the entry criteria for the process (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Void setSkipEntryCriteria(Boolean skipEntryCriteria)
```

Parameters

`skipEntryCriteria`
Type: Boolean

If set to `true`, request submission skips the evaluation of entry criteria for the process set in setProcessDefinitionNameOrId(nameOrId). If the process definition name or ID is not specified, this parameter is ignored and standard evaluation is followed based on process order. If set to `false`, or if this method isn't called, the entry criteria is not skipped.

Return Value

Type: Void

`setSubmitterId(userID)`

Sets the user ID of the submitter requesting the approval record. The user must be one of the allowed submitters in the process definition setup. If you don't set a submitter ID, the process uses the current user as the submitter.

Signature

```
public Void setSubmitterId(String userID)
```

Parameters

`userID`
Type: String

The user ID on behalf of which the record is submitted. If set to `null`, the current user is the submitter. If the submitter is not set with this method, the default submitter is null (the current user).

Return Value

Type: Void

ProcessWorkitemRequest Class

Use the `ProcessWorkitemRequest` class for processing an approval request after it is submitted.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

You must specify the Approval namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor for this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
Approval.ProcessWorkitemRequest pwr = new Approval.ProcessWorkitemRequest();
```

Inherited Methods

In addition to the methods listed, the `ProcessWorkitemRequest` class has access to all the methods in its parent class, ProcessRequest Class:

- getComments()
- getNextApproverIds()
- setComments(comments)
- setNextApproverIds(nextApproverIds)

ProcessWorkitemRequest Methods

The following are methods for `ProcessWorkitemRequest`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAction()
Returns the type of action already associated with the approval request. Valid values are: Approve, Reject, or Removed.

getWorkitemId()
Returns the ID of the approval request that is in the process of being approved, rejected, or removed.

setAction(actionType)
Sets the type of action to take for processing an approval request.

setWorkitemId(id)
Sets the ID of the approval request that is being approved, rejected, or removed.

`getAction()`

Returns the type of action already associated with the approval request. Valid values are: Approve, Reject, or Removed.

Signature

```
public String getAction()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getWorkitemId()`

Returns the ID of the approval request that is in the process of being approved, rejected, or removed.

Signature

```
public String getWorkitemId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setAction(actionType)`

Sets the type of action to take for processing an approval request.

Signature

```
public Void setAction(String actionType)
```

Parameters

`actionType`
Type: String

Valid values are: Approve, Reject, or Removed. Only system administrators can specify Removed.

Return Value

Type: Void

`setWorkitemId(id)`

Sets the ID of the approval request that is being approved, rejected, or removed.

Signature

```
public Void setWorkitemId(String id)
```

Parameters

`id`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

UnlockResult Class

The result of a record unlock, returned by a `System.Approval.unlock()` method.

Namespace

Approval

Usage

The `System.Approval.unlock()` methods return Approval.UnlockResult objects. Each element in an UnlockResult array corresponds to an element in the ID or sObject array passed as a parameter to an `unlock` method. The first element in the UnlockResult array corresponds to the first element in the ID or sObject array, the second element corresponds to the second element, and so on. If only one ID or sObject is passed in, the UnlockResult array contains a single element.

Example

The following example shows how to obtain and iterate through the returned Approval.UnlockResult objects. It locks some queried accounts using `Approval.unlock` with a `false` second parameter to allow partial processing of records on failure. Next, it iterates through the results to determine whether the operation was successful for each record. It writes the ID of every record that was processed successfully to the debug log, or writes error messages and failed fields of the failed records.

```
// Query the accounts to unlock
Account[] accts = [SELECT Id from Account WHERE Name LIKE 'Acme%'];

for(Account acct:accts) {
   // Create an approval request for the account
   Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest req1 =
           new Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest();
   req1.setComments('Submitting request for approval.');
   req1.setObjectId(acct.id);

   // Submit the record to specific process and skip the criteria evaluation
   req1.setProcessDefinitionNameOrId('PTO_Request_Process');
   req1.setSkipEntryCriteria(true);

   // Submit the approval request for the account
   Approval.ProcessResult result = Approval.process(req1);

   // Verify the result
   System.assert(result.isSuccess());
}

// Unlock the accounts
Approval.UnlockResult[] urList = Approval.unlock(accts, false);

// Iterate through each returned result
for(Approval.UnlockResult ur : urList) {
    if (ur.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful, so get the ID of the record that was processed
        System.debug('Successfully unlocked account with ID: ' + ur.getId());
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed, so get all errors
        for(Database.Error err : ur.getErrors()) {
            System.debug('The following error has occurred.');
            System.debug(err.getStatusCode() + ': ' + err.getMessage());
```

```
            System.debug('Account fields that affected this error: ' + err.getFields());
        }
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

UnlockResult Methods

SEE ALSO:

Approval Class

UnlockResult Methods

The following are methods for `UnlockResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects, providing the error code and description.

getId()
Returns the ID of the sObject you are trying to unlock.

isSuccess()
A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the unlock operation is successful for this object, or `false` otherwise.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects, providing the error code and description.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the sObject you are trying to unlock.

Signature

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

Usage

If the field contains a value, the object was unlocked. If the field is empty, the operation was not successfult.

`isSuccess()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the unlock operation is successful for this object, or `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Auth Namespace

The `Auth` namespace provides an interface and classes for single sign-on into Salesforce and session security management.

The following is the interface in the `Auth` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthConfiguration Class

Contains methods for configuring settings for users to log in to a Salesforce org using their authentication provider credentials instead of their Salesforce credentials. The authentication provider can be any authentication provider that supports the OpenID Connect protocol, such as Google, Facebook, or Twitter. Users log in to either an Experience Cloud site (`https://`*`MyDomainName`*`.my.site.com`) or your My Domain login URL (`https://`*`MyDomainName`*`.my.salesforce.com`).

AuthProviderCallbackState Class

Provides request HTTP headers, body, and query parameters to the `AuthProviderPlugin.handleCallback` method for user authentication. This class allows you to group the information passed in rather than passing headers, body, and query parameters individually.

AuthProviderPlugin Interface

This interface is deprecated. For new development, use the abstract class `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom OAuth-based authentication provider plug-in for single sign-on in to Salesforce.

AuthProviderPluginClass Class

Contains methods to create a custom OAuth-based authentication provider plug-in for single sign-on in to Salesforce. Use this class to create a custom authentication provider plug-in if you can't use one of the authentication providers that Salesforce provides.

AuthProviderTokenResponse Class

Stores the response from the `AuthProviderPlugin.handleCallback` method.

AuthToken Class

Contains methods for providing the access token associated with an authentication provider for an authenticated user, except for the Janrain provider.

CommunitiesUtil Class

Contains methods for getting information about an Experience Cloud user.

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Interface

Gives you more control over how customers or partners self-register for your Experience Cloud site by creating a class that implements `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler`. You choose the user information to collect, and how users identify themselves—with their email address, phone number, or another identifier. When verified, you create a customer or partner user and log in the user to your Experience Cloud site.

ConnectedAppPlugin Class

Contains methods for extending the behavior of a connected app, for example, customizing how a connected app is invoked depending on the protocol used. This class gives you more control over the interaction between Salesforce and your connected app.

InvocationContext Enum

The context in which the connected app is invoked, such as the protocol flow used and the token type issued, if any. Developers can use the context information to write code that is unique to the type of invocation.

JWS Class

Contains methods that apply a digital signature to a JSON Web Token (JWT), using a JSON Web Signature (JWS) data structure. This class creates the signed JWT bearer token, which can be used to request an OAuth access token in the OAuth 2.0 JWT bearer token flow.

JWT Class

Generates the JSON Claims Set in a JSON Web Token (JWT). The resulting Base64-encoded payload can be passed as an argument to create an instance of the `Auth.JWS` class.

JWTBearerTokenExchange Class

Contains methods that POST the signed JWT bearer token to a token endpoint to request an access token, in the OAuth 2.0 JWT bearer token flow.

LightningLoginEligibility Enum

Contains a Lightning Login eligibility value used by the `Auth.SessionManagement.getLightningLoginEligibility` method.

LoginDiscoveryHandler Interface

Salesforce gives you the ability to log in users based on other verification methods than username and password. For example, it can prompt users to log in with their email, phone number, or another identifier like a Federation ID or device identifier. Login Discovery is available to these licenses: Customer Community, Customer Community Plus, External Identity, Partner Community, and Partner Community Plus.

LoginDiscoveryMethod Enum

Contains methods used to verify the user's identity when the My Domain login process uses Login Discovery.

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Interface

The handler used to implement the My Domain Login Discovery page, which is an interview-based (two-step) login process. First the user is prompted for a unique identifier such as an email address or phone number. Then the handler determines (discovers) how to authenticate the user. Either the user enters a password or is directed to an identity provider's login page.

OAuthRefreshResult Class

Stores the result of an `AuthProviderPluginClass` refresh method. OAuth authentication flow provides a refresh token that can be used to get a new access token. Access tokens have a limited lifetime as specified by the session timeout value. When an access token expires, use a refresh token to get a new access token.

RegistrationHandler Interface

Salesforce provides the ability to use an authentication provider, such as Facebook© or Janrain©, for single sign-on into Salesforce.

SamlJitHandler Interface

Use this interface to control and customize Just-in-Time user provisioning logic during SAML single sign-on.

SessionManagement Class

Contains methods for verifying users' identity, creating custom login flows, customizing security levels, and defining trusted IP ranges for a current session.

SessionLevel Enum

An `Auth.SessionLevel` enum value is used by the `SessionManagement.setSessionLevel` method.

UserData Class

Stores user information for `Auth.RegistrationHandler`.

VerificationMethod Enum

Contains the different ways users can identify themselves when logging in. You can use it to implement mobile-centric passwordless login pages and to self-register (and deregister) verification methods.

VerificationPolicy Enum

The `Auth.VerificationPolicy` enum contains an identity verification policy value used by the `SessionManagement.generateVerificationUrl` method.

VerificationResult Class

Contains the result of a verification challenge that you invoke when you create your own Verify page. The challenge can be initiated by either the `System.UserManagement.verifyPasswordlessLogin` or `System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration` method.

Auth Exceptions

The `Auth` namespace contains some exception classes.

AuthConfiguration Class

Contains methods for configuring settings for users to log in to a Salesforce org using their authentication provider credentials instead of their Salesforce credentials. The authentication provider can be any authentication provider that supports the OpenID Connect protocol, such as Google, Facebook, or Twitter. Users log in to either an Experience Cloud site (`https://MyDomainName.my.site.com`) or your My Domain login URL (`https://MyDomainName.my.salesforce.com`).

Namespace

Auth

Example

This example shows how to call some methods on the `Auth.AuthConfiguration` class. Before you can run this sample, you must provide valid values for the URLs and developer name.

Note: If you're not using enhanced domains, your org's My Domain URLs are different. For details, see My Domain URL Formats in Salesforce Help.

```
String communityUrl = 'MyDomainName.my.site.com';
String startUrl = '<Add URL>';
Auth.AuthConfiguration authConfig = new Auth.AuthConfiguration(communityUrl,startUrl);
List<AuthProvider> authPrvs = authConfig.getAuthProviders();
String bColor = authConfig.getBackgroundColor();
String fText = authConfig.getFooterText();
```

```
String sso = Auth.AuthConfiguration.getAuthProviderSsoUrl(communityUrl, startUrl,
'developerName');
```

AuthConfiguration Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthConfiguration`.

`AuthConfiguration(communityOrCustomUrl, startUrl)`

Creates an instance of the `AuthConfiguration` class using the specified URL for an Experience Cloud site or a My Domain subdomain and the start URL for authenticated users.

Signature

```
public AuthConfiguration(String communityOrCustomUrl, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

`communityOrCustomUrl`
Type: String

The URL for the domain, which can be a Salesforce subdomain created with My Domain (`my.salesforce.com`) or a subdomain of an Experience Cloud site (`force.com`).

`startUrl`
Type: String

The page users see after successfully logging in to the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain.

`AuthConfiguration(networkId, startUrl)`

Creates an instance of the `AuthConfiguration` class using the specified Experience Cloud site ID and authenticated-user starting URL.

Signature

```
public AuthConfiguration(Id networkId, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

`networkId`
Type: Id

The ID of the Experience Cloud site.

`startUrl`
Type: String

The page users see after successfully logging in to the Experience Cloud site.

AuthConfiguration Methods

The following are methods for `AuthConfiguration`. Use these methods to manage and customize authentication for a Salesforce community.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()
Indicates whether the Experience Cloud site allows internal users to log in using the Experience Cloud site login page. To enable, admins configure the setting **Allow internal users to log in directly to the experience** on the Login & Registration page in Experience Workspaces. It's disabled by default.

getAuthConfig()
Returns the AuthConfig sObject, which represents the authentication options for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getAuthConfigProviders()
Returns the list of authentication providers configured for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getAuthProviders()
Returns the list of authentication providers available for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getAuthProviderSsoDomainUrl(communityUrl, startUrl, developerName)
Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site subdomain.

getAuthProviderSsoUrl(communityUrl, startUrl, developerName)
Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getBackgroundColor()
Returns the color for the background of the login page for a community.

getCertificateLoginEnabled(domainUrl)
Returns true if certificate-based authentication is enabled for the My Domain URL.

getCertificateLoginUrl(domainUrl, startUrl)
Returns the certificate-based authentication endpoint for the My Domain URL if the org has certificate-based authentication enabled.

getDefaultProfileForRegistration()
Returns the profile ID assigned to new community users.

getFooterText()
Returns the text at the bottom of the login page for a community.

getForgotPasswordUrl()
Returns the URL for the standard or custom Forgot Password page that is specified for an Experience Cloud site or portal by the administrator.

getLogoUrl()
Returns the location of the icon image at the bottom of the login page for a community.

getRightFrameUrl()
Returns the URL for the right-frame content to display on the right side of the Experience Cloud site login page. The admin supplies the URL.

getSamlProviders()
Returns the list of SAML-based authentication providers available for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getSamlSsoUrl(communityUrl, startURL, samlId)

Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getSelfRegistrationEnabled()

Indicates whether the current community allows new users to create their own account by filling out a registration form.

getSelfRegistrationUrl()

Returns the location of the self-registration page for new users to sign up for an account with a community.

getStartUrl()

Returns the start page of an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain. This URL is the first page that users see when they log in.

getUsernamePasswordEnabled()

Indicates whether the current community is set to display a login form asking for a username and password. You can configure the community not to request a username and password if it is for unauthenticated users or users logging in with a third-party authentication provider.

isCommunityUsingSiteAsContainer()

Returns `true` if the Experience Cloud site uses Site.com pages; otherwise, returns `false`.

`getAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()`

Indicates whether the Experience Cloud site allows internal users to log in using the Experience Cloud site login page. To enable, admins configure the setting **Allow internal users to log in directly to the experience** on the Login & Registration page in Experience Workspaces. It's disabled by default.

Signature

```
public Boolean getAllowInternalUserLoginEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If true, internal users log in to an Experience Cloud site from the site's login page with their internal credentials. If they navigate to their internal org from the Experience Cloud site, they don't have to log in again.

`getAuthConfig()`

Returns the AuthConfig sObject, which represents the authentication options for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public AuthConfig getAuthConfig()
```

Return Value

Type: AuthConfig

The AuthConfig sObject for the Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

`getAuthConfigProviders()`

Returns the list of authentication providers configured for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public List<AuthConfigProviders> getAuthConfigProviders()
```

Return Value

Type: List<AuthConfigProviders>

A list of authentication providers (AuthConfigProviders sObjects), which are children of the AuthProvider sObject.

`getAuthProviders()`

Returns the list of authentication providers available for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public List<AuthProvider> getAuthProviders()
```

Return Value

Type: List<AuthProvider>

A list of authentication providers (AuthProvider sObjects) for the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain.

`getAuthProviderSsoDomainUrl(communityUrl, startUrl, developerName)`

Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site subdomain.

Note: For better performance, we recommend using this method instead of `getAuthProviderSsoUrl`. If the authentication provider has `User Subdomain for Callback` enabled, changing the single sign-on URL also changes the callback URL to use the Experience Cloud site subdomain. Before switching to this method, update the callback URL in your third-party applications to avoid getting an invalid callback URL error during single sign-on.

Signature

```
public static String getAuthProviderSsoDomainUrl(String communityUrl, String startUrl,
String developerName)
```

Parameters

`communityUrl`

Type: String

The URL for the Experience Cloud site subdomain. If null or specified as an empty string, you get the single sign-on URL for the org's My Domain.

startUrl
Type: String

The page that users see after logging in to the Experience Cloud site subdomain.

developerName
Type: String

The unique name of the authentication provider.

Return Value

Type: String

The Single Sign-On Initialization URL for the Experience Cloud site subdomain.

getAuthProviderSsoUrl(communityUrl, startUrl, developerName)

Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public static String getAuthProviderSsoUrl(String communityUrl, String startUrl, String developerName)
```

Parameters

communityUrl
Type: String

The URL for the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain. If not null and not specified as an empty string, you get the URL for the Experience Cloud site. If null or specified as an empty string, you get the URL for a custom domain.

startUrl
Type: String

The page that users see after logging in to the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain.

developerName
Type: String

The unique name of the authentication provider.

Return Value

Type: String

The Single Sign-On Initialization URL for the Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getBackgroundColor()

Returns the color for the background of the login page for a community.

Signature

```
public String getBackgroundColor()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getCertificateLoginEnabled(domainUrl)

Returns true if certificate-based authentication is enabled for the My Domain URL.

Signature

```
public Boolean getCertificateLoginEnabled(String domainUrl)
```

Parameters

domainUrl
Type: String

The My Domain URL that is being checked for certificate-based authentication.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getCertificateLoginUrl(domainUrl, startUrl)

Returns the certificate-based authentication endpoint for the My Domain URL if the org has certificate-based authentication enabled.

Signature

```
public static String getCertificateLoginUrl(String domainUrl, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

domainUrl
Type: String

The My Domain URL being checked for its certificate-based authentication endpoint .

startUrl
Type: String

The page that the user is directed to after logging in to the My Domain with certificate-based authentication.

Return Value

Type: String

The certificate-based authentication endpoint for the My Domain URL:
mydomainURL`:8443/services/certauth?startURL=`***startURLParam***

getDefaultProfileForRegistration()

Returns the profile ID assigned to new community users.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultProfileForRegistration()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The profile ID.

getFooterText()

Returns the text at the bottom of the login page for a community.

Signature

```
public String getFooterText()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The text string displayed at the bottom of the login page, for example “Log in with an existing account.”

getForgotPasswordUrl()

Returns the URL for the standard or custom Forgot Password page that is specified for an Experience Cloud site or portal by the administrator.

Signature

```
public String getForgotPasswordUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

URL for the standard or custom Forgot Password page.

getLogoUrl()

Returns the location of the icon image at the bottom of the login page for a community.

Signature

```
public String getLogoUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The path to the icon image.

`getRightFrameUrl()`

Returns the URL for the right-frame content to display on the right side of the Experience Cloud site login page. The admin supplies the URL.

Signature

```
public String getLoginRightFrameUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

URL for the right-frame content of the Experience Cloud site login page. Salesforce creates an inline (iframe) on the right side of the login page to display the contents specified by the URL.

`getSamlProviders()`

Returns the list of SAML-based authentication providers available for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public List<SamlSsoConfig> getSamlProviders()
```

Return Value

Type: List<SamlSsoConfig>

A list of SAML-based authentication providers, which are SamlSsoConfig sObjects.

`getSamlSsoUrl(communityUrl, startURL, samlId)`

Returns the single sign-on URL for an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

Signature

```
public static String getSamlSsoUrl(String communityUrl, String startURL, String samlId)
```

Parameters

`communityUrl`
Type: String

The URL for the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain. If not `null` and not specified as an empty string, you get the URL for the Experience Cloud site. If `null` or specified as an empty string, you get the URL for a My Domain subdomain.

`startUrl`
Type: String

The page users see after successfully logging in to the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain

`samlId`
Type: String

The unique identifier of the SamlSsoConfig standard object for the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain

Return Value

Type: String

The Single Sign-On Initialization URL for the Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain.

getSelfRegistrationEnabled()

Indicates whether the current community allows new users to create their own account by filling out a registration form.

Signature

```
public Boolean getSelfRegistrationEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getSelfRegistrationUrl()

Returns the location of the self-registration page for new users to sign up for an account with a community.

Signature

```
public String getSelfRegistrationUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The location of the self-registration page.

getStartUrl()

Returns the start page of an Experience Cloud site or Salesforce My Domain subdomain. This URL is the first page that users see when they log in.

Signature

```
public String getStartUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The location of the start page for the Experience Cloud site or My Domain subdomain.

getUsernamePasswordEnabled()

Indicates whether the current community is set to display a login form asking for a username and password. You can configure the community not to request a username and password if it is for unauthenticated users or users logging in with a third-party authentication provider.

Signature

```
public Boolean getUsernamePasswordEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isCommunityUsingSiteAsContainer()`

Returns `true` if the Experience Cloud site uses Site.com pages; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCommunityUsingSiteAsContainer()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

AuthProviderCallbackState Class

Provides request HTTP headers, body, and query parameters to the `AuthProviderPlugin.handleCallback` method for user authentication. This class allows you to group the information passed in rather than passing headers, body, and query parameters individually.

Namespace

Auth

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderCallbackState Constructors

AuthProviderCallbackState Properties

SEE ALSO:

handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, callbackState)

AuthProviderCallbackState Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthProviderCallbackState`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderCallbackState(headers, body, queryParameters)

Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderCallbackState` class using the specified HTTP headers, body, and query parameters of the authentication request.

`AuthProviderCallbackState(headers, body, queryParameters)`

Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderCallbackState` class using the specified HTTP headers, body, and query parameters of the authentication request.

Signature

```
public AuthProviderCallbackState(Map<String,String> headers, String body,
Map<String,String> queryParameters)
```

Parameters

`headers`
Type: Map<String,String>

The HTTP headers of the authentication request.

`body`
Type: String

The HTTP body of the authentication request.

`queryParameters`
Type: Map<String,String>

The HTTP query parameters of the authentication request.

AuthProviderCallbackState Properties

The following are properties for `AuthProviderCallbackState`.

IN THIS SECTION:

body
The HTTP body of the authentication request.

headers
The HTTP headers of the authentication request.

queryParameters
The HTTP query parameters of the authentication request.

`body`

The HTTP body of the authentication request.

Signature

```
public String body {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`headers`

The HTTP headers of the authentication request.

Signature

```
public Map<String,String> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String,String>

`queryParameters`

The HTTP query parameters of the authentication request.

Signature

```
public Map<String,String> queryParameters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String,String>

AuthProviderPlugin Interface

This interface is deprecated. For new development, use the abstract class `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom OAuth-based authentication provider plug-in for single sign-on in to Salesforce.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Deprecated. Existing implementations that use `Auth.AuthProviderPlugin` still work. For new development, use `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderPlugin Methods

AuthProviderPlugin Example Implementation

AuthProviderPlugin Methods

The following methods are for `AuthProviderPlugin`, which, as of API version 39.0, is deprecated. Use themethods in `AuthProviderPluginClass` instead.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCustomMetadataType()
Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

getUserInfo(authProviderConfiguration, response)
Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, callbackState)
Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

initiate(authProviderConfiguration, stateToPropagate)
Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Help: Create a Custom External Authentication Provider

getCustomMetadataType()

Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

Signature

```
public String getCustomMetadataType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The custom metadata type API name for the authentication provider.

Usage

Returns the custom metadata type API name for a custom OAuth-based authentication provider for single sign-on to Salesforce. The `getCustomMetatadaType()` method returns only custom metadata type names. It does not return custom metadata record names.

getUserInfo(authProviderConfiguration, response)

Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

Signature

```
public Auth.UserData getUserInfo(Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration,
Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse response)
```

Parameters

authProviderConfiguration
Type: Map<String,String>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

response
Type: Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse

The OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and state provided by the authentication provider to authenticate the current user.

Return Value

Type: Auth.UserData

Creates a new instance of the `Auth.UserData` class.

Usage

Returns information from the custom authentication provider about the current user. The registration handler and other authentication provider flows use this information.

handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, callbackState)

Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

Signature

```
public Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse handleCallback(Map<String,String>
authProviderConfiguration, Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState callbackState)
```

Parameters

authProviderConfiguration
Type: Map<StringString>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

callbackState
Type: Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState

The class that contains the HTTP headers, body, and queryParams of the authentication request.

Return Value

Type: Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse

Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderTokenResponse` class.

Usage

Uses the authentication provider's supported authentication protocol to return an OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and the state passed in when the request for the current user was initiated.

`initiate(authProviderConfiguration, stateToPropagate)`

Deprecated as of API version 39.0. Use the corresponding method in `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference initiate(Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration,
String stateToPropagate)
```

Parameters

`authProviderConfiguration`
Type: Map<StringString>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

`stateToPropagate`
Type: String

The state passed in to initiate the authentication request for the user.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

The URL of the page where the user is redirected for authentication.

Usage

Returns the URL where the user is redirected for authentication.

AuthProviderPlugin Example Implementation

We've removed the example implementation for the `Auth.AuthProviderPlugin` interface because we've deprecated the interface and replaced it with an abstract class. See AuthProviderPluginClass Class.

AuthProviderPluginClass Class

Contains methods to create a custom OAuth-based authentication provider plug-in for single sign-on in to Salesforce. Use this class to create a custom authentication provider plug-in if you can't use one of the authentication providers that Salesforce provides.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

To create a custom authentication provider for single sign-on, create a class that extends `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`. This class allows you to store the custom configuration for your authentication provider and handle authentication protocols when users log in to Salesforce with their login credentials for an external service provider. In Salesforce, the class that implements this interface

appears in the `Provider Type` drop-down list in Auth. Providers in Setup. Make sure that the user you specify to run the class has "Customize Application" and "Manage Auth. Providers" permissions.

As of API version 39.0, use the abstract class `AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom external authentication provider. This class replaces the `AuthProviderPlugin` interface. If you've already implemented a custom authentication provider plug-in using the interface, it still works. However, use `AuthProviderPluginClass` to extend your plug-in. If you haven't created an interface, create a custom authentication provider plug-in by extending this abstract class. For more information, see AuthProviderPluginClass Code Example.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderPluginClass Methods

AuthProviderPluginClass Code Example

AuthProviderPluginClass Methods

The `AuthProviderPluginClass` methods don't support DML options.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCustomMetadataType()

Returns the custom metadata type API name for a custom OAuth-based authentication provider for single sign-on to Salesforce.

getUserInfo(authProviderConfiguration, response)

Returns information from the custom authentication provider about the current user. This information is used by the registration handler and in other authentication provider flows.

handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, callbackState)

Uses the authentication provider's supported authentication protocol to return an OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and the state passed in when the request for the current user was initiated.

initiate(authProviderConfiguration, stateToPropagate)

Returns the URL where the user is redirected for authentication.

refresh(authProviderConfiguration, refreshToken)

Returns a new access token, which is used to update an expired access token.

`getCustomMetadataType()`

Returns the custom metadata type API name for a custom OAuth-based authentication provider for single sign-on to Salesforce.

Signature

```
public String getCustomMetadataType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The custom metadata type API name for the authentication provider.

Usage

The `getCustomMetatadaType()` method returns only custom metadata type names. It does not return custom metadata record names. As of API version 39.0, use this method when extending `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom external authentication provider.

`getUserInfo(authProviderConfiguration, response)`

Returns information from the custom authentication provider about the current user. This information is used by the registration handler and in other authentication provider flows.

Signature

```
public Auth.UserData getUserInfo(Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration,
Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse response)
```

Parameters

`authProviderConfiguration`
Type: Map<String,String>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates it with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values that you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

`response`
Type: Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse

The OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and state provided by the authentication provider to authenticate the current user.

Return Value

Type: Auth.UserData

Creates a new instance of the `Auth.UserData` class.

Usage

As of API version 39.0, use this method when extending `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom authentication provider.

Note: You might choose to get user information in the response from the `handleCallback` method or by another method. However, you must still call `getUserInfo` in the custom authentication handler to avoid getting errors about mixing objects. For example, if you don't call `getUserInfo`, and then try to insert a contact in the `Auth.RegistrationHandler.createUser` method, you get the error, "You cannot mix EntityObjects with different UddInfos within one transaction."

To avoid this error, call `getUserInfo` with dummy user information as follows.

```
HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
String url = 'https://login.salesforce.com/';
req.setEndpoint(url);
req.setMethod('GET');
```

```
Http http = new Http();
HTTPResponse res = http.send(req);
```

handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, callbackState)

Uses the authentication provider's supported authentication protocol to return an OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and the state passed in when the request for the current user was initiated.

Signature

```
public Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse handleCallback(Map<String,String>
authProviderConfiguration, Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState callbackState)
```

Parameters

authProviderConfiguration
Type: Map<StringString>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

callbackState
Type: Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState

The class that contains the HTTP headers, body, and queryParams of the authentication request.

Return Value

Type: Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse

Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderTokenResponse` class.

Usage

As of API version 39.0, use this method when extending `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom authentication provider.

initiate(authProviderConfiguration, stateToPropagate)

Returns the URL where the user is redirected for authentication.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference initiate(Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration,
String stateToPropagate)
```

Parameters

authProviderConfiguration
Type: Map<StringString>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

stateToPropagate
Type: String

The state passed in to initiate the authentication request for the user.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

The URL of the page where the user is redirected for authentication.

Usage

As of API version 39.0, use this method when extending `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass` to create a custom authentication provider.

refresh(authProviderConfiguration, refreshToken)

Returns a new access token, which is used to update an expired access token.

Signature

```
public Auth.OAuthRefreshResult refresh(Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration,
String refreshToken)
```

Parameters

authProviderConfiguration
Type: Map<String,String>

The configuration for the custom authentication provider. When you create a custom metadata type in Salesforce, the configuration populates with the custom metadata type default values. Or you can set the configuration with values you enter when you create the custom provider in Auth. Providers in Setup.

refreshToken
Type: String

The refresh token for the user who is logged in.

Return Value

Type: Auth.OAuthRefreshResult

Returns the new access token, or an error message if an error occurs.

Usage

A successful request returns a `Auth.OAuthRefreshResult` with the access token and refresh token in the response. If you receive an error, make sure that you set the error string to the error message. A `NULL` error string indicates no error.

The refresh method works only with named credentials; it doesn't respect the standard OAuth refresh flow. The refresh method with named credentials works only if the earlier request returns a 401.

AuthProviderPluginClass Code Example

The following example demonstrates how to implement a custom Auth. provider plug-in using the abstract class, `Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass`.

```
          global class Concur extends Auth.AuthProviderPluginClass {

          // Use this URL for the endpoint that the
          // authentication provider calls back to for configuration.
          public String redirectUrl;
          private String key;
          private String secret;

          // Application redirection to the Concur website for
          // authentication and authorization.
          private String authUrl;

          // URI to get the new access token from concur using the GET verb.
          private String accessTokenUrl;

          // Api name for the custom metadata type created for this auth provider.
          private String customMetadataTypeApiName;

          // Api URL to access the user in Concur
          private String userAPIUrl;

          // Version of the user api URL to access data from Concur
          private String userAPIVersionUrl;

          global String getCustomMetadataType() {
              return customMetadataTypeApiName;
          }

          global PageReference initiate(Map<string,string>
            authProviderConfiguration, String stateToPropagate)
            {
                authUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get('Auth_Url__c');
                key = authProviderConfiguration.get('Key__c');

                // Here the developer can build up a request of some sort.
                // Ultimately, they return a URL where we will redirect the user.
                String url = authUrl + '?client_id='+ key
+'&scope=USER,EXPRPT,LIST&redirect_uri='+ redirectUrl + '&state=' + stateToPropagate;
                return new PageReference(url);
            }

            global Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse handleCallback(Map<string,string>
            authProviderConfiguration, Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState state )
            {
                // Here, the developer will get the callback with actual protocol.
                // Their responsibility is to return a new object called
                // AuthProviderTokenResponse.
                // This will contain an optional accessToken and refreshToken
                key = authProviderConfiguration.get('Key__c');
```

```
        secret = authProviderConfiguration.get('Secret__c');
        accessTokenUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get('Access_Token_Url__c');

        Map<String,String> queryParams = state.queryParameters;
        String code = queryParams.get('code');
        String sfdcState = queryParams.get('state');

        HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
        String url = accessTokenUrl+'?code=' + code + '&client_id=' + key +
        '&client_secret=' + secret;
        req.setEndpoint(url);
        req.setHeader('Content-Type','application/xml');
        req.setMethod('GET');

        Http http = new Http();
        HTTPResponse res = http.send(req);
        String responseBody = res.getBody();
        String token = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody, 'Token', null);

        return new Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse('Concur', token,
        'refreshToken', sfdcState);
    }

    global Auth.UserData getUserInfo(Map<string,string>
    authProviderConfiguration,
    Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse response)
    {
        //Here the developer is responsible for constructing an
        //Auth.UserData object
        String token = response.oauthToken;
        HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
        userAPIUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get('API_User_Url__c');
        userAPIVersionUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get
        ('API_User_Version_Url__c');
        req.setHeader('Authorization', 'OAuth ' + token);
        req.setEndpoint(userAPIUrl);
        req.setHeader('Content-Type','application/xml');
        req.setMethod('GET');

        Http http = new Http();
        HTTPResponse res = http.send(req);
        String responseBody = res.getBody();
        String id = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody,
        'LoginId',userAPIVersionUrl);
        String fname = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody,
        'FirstName', userAPIVersionUrl);
        String lname = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody,
        'LastName', userAPIVersionUrl);
        String flname = fname + ' ' + lname;
        String uname = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody,
        'EmailAddress', userAPIVersionUrl);
        String locale = getTokenValueFromResponse(responseBody,
        'LocaleName', userAPIVersionUrl);
        Map<String,String> provMap = new Map<String,String>();
```

```
            provMap.put('what1', 'noidea1');
            provMap.put('what2', 'noidea2');
            return new Auth.UserData(id, fname, lname, flname,
            uname, 'what', locale, null, 'Concur', null, provMap);
        }

        private String getTokenValueFromResponse(String response,
        String token, String ns)
        {
            Dom.Document docx = new Dom.Document();
            docx.load(response);
            String ret = null;

            dom.XmlNode xroot = docx.getrootelement() ;
            if(xroot != null){ ret = xroot.getChildElement(token, ns).getText();
            }
        return ret;
        }

    }
```

Sample Test Classes

The following example contains test classes for the Concur class.

```
        @IsTest
        public class ConcurTestClass {

            private static final String OAUTH_TOKEN = 'testToken';
            private static final String STATE = 'mocktestState';
            private static final String REFRESH_TOKEN = 'refreshToken';
            private static final String LOGIN_ID = 'testLoginId';
            private static final String USERNAME = 'testUsername';
            private static final String FIRST_NAME = 'testFirstName';
            private static final String LAST_NAME = 'testLastName';
            private static final String EMAIL_ADDRESS = 'testEmailAddress';
            private static final String LOCALE_NAME = 'testLocalName';
            private static final String FULL_NAME = FIRST_NAME + ' ' + LAST_NAME;
            private static final String PROVIDER = 'Concur';
            private static final String REDIRECT_URL =
            'http://localhost/services/authcallback/orgId/Concur';
            private static final String KEY = 'testKey';
            private static final String SECRET = 'testSecret';
            private static final String STATE_TO_PROPOGATE = 'testState';
            private static final String ACCESS_TOKEN_URL =
            'http://www.dummyhost.com/accessTokenUri';
            private static final String API_USER_VERSION_URL =
            'http://www.dummyhost.com/user/20/1';
            private static final String AUTH_URL =
            'http://www.dummy.com/authurl';
            private static final String API_USER_URL =
            'www.concursolutions.com/user/api';
```

```
            // In the real world scenario, the key and value would be read
            // from the (custom fields in) custom metadata type record.
            private static Map<String,String> setupAuthProviderConfig ()
            {
                Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration = new Map<String,String>();

                authProviderConfiguration.put('Key__c', KEY);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('Auth_Url__c', AUTH_URL);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('Secret__c', SECRET);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('Access_Token_Url__c', ACCESS_TOKEN_URL);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('API_User_Url__c',API_USER_URL);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('API_User_Version_Url__c',
                API_USER_VERSION_URL);
                authProviderConfiguration.put('Redirect_Url__c',REDIRECT_URL);
                return authProviderConfiguration;

            }

            static testMethod void testInitiateMethod()
            {
                String stateToPropogate = 'mocktestState';
                Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration = setupAuthProviderConfig();

                Concur concurCls = new Concur();
                concurCls.redirectUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get('Redirect_Url__c');

            PageReference expectedUrl = new
PageReference(authProviderConfiguration.get('Auth_Url__c') + '?client_id='+
          authProviderConfiguration.get('Key__c') +'&scope=USER,EXPRPT,LIST&redirect_uri='+

            authProviderConfiguration.get('Redirect_Url__c') + '&state=' +
            STATE_TO_PROPOGATE);
                PageReference actualUrl = concurCls.initiate(authProviderConfiguration,
STATE_TO_PROPOGATE);
                System.assertEquals(expectedUrl.getUrl(), actualUrl.getUrl());
            }

            static testMethod void testHandleCallback()
            {
                Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration =
                setupAuthProviderConfig();
                Concur concurCls = new Concur();
                concurCls.redirectUrl = authProviderConfiguration.get
                ('Redirect_Url_c');

                Test.setMock(HttpCalloutMock.class, new
                ConcurMockHttpResponseGenerator());

                Map<String,String> queryParams = new Map<String,String>();
                queryParams.put('code','code');
                queryParams.put('state',authProviderConfiguration.get('State_c'));
                Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState cbState =
                new Auth.AuthProviderCallbackState(null,null,queryParams);
                Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse actualAuthProvResponse =
```

```
        concurCls.handleCallback(authProviderConfiguration, cbState);
        Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse expectedAuthProvResponse =
        new Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse(
        'Concur', OAUTH_TOKEN, REFRESH_TOKEN, null);

        System.assertEquals(expectedAuthProvResponse.provider,
        actualAuthProvResponse.provider);
        System.assertEquals(expectedAuthProvResponse.oauthToken,
        actualAuthProvResponse.oauthToken);
        System.assertEquals(expectedAuthProvResponse.oauthSecretOrRefreshToken,
        actualAuthProvResponse.oauthSecretOrRefreshToken);
        System.assertEquals(expectedAuthProvResponse.state,
        actualAuthProvResponse.state);

    }

    static testMethod void testGetUserInfo()
    {
        Map<String,String> authProviderConfiguration =
        setupAuthProviderConfig();
        Concur concurCls = new Concur();

        Test.setMock(HttpCalloutMock.class, new
        ConcurMockHttpResponseGenerator());

        Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse response =
        new Auth.AuthProviderTokenResponse(
        PROVIDER, OAUTH_TOKEN ,'sampleOauthSecret', STATE);
        Auth.UserData actualUserData = concurCls.getUserInfo(
        authProviderConfiguration, response) ;

        Map<String,String> provMap = new Map<String,String>();
        provMap.put('key1', 'value1');
        provMap.put('key2', 'value2');

        Auth.UserData expectedUserData = new Auth.UserData(LOGIN_ID,
        FIRST_NAME, LAST_NAME, FULL_NAME, EMAIL_ADDRESS,
        null, LOCALE_NAME, null, PROVIDER, null, provMap);

        System.assertNotEquals(expectedUserData,null);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.firstName,
        actualUserData.firstName);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.lastName,
        actualUserData.lastName);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.fullName,
        actualUserData.fullName);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.email,
        actualUserData.email);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.username,
        actualUserData.username);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.locale,
        actualUserData.locale);
        System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.provider,
        actualUserData.provider);
```

```
            System.assertEquals(expectedUserData.siteLoginUrl,
            actualUserData.siteLoginUrl);
        }


        // Implement a mock http response generator for Concur.
        public class ConcurMockHttpResponseGenerator implements HttpCalloutMock
        {
            public HTTPResponse respond(HTTPRequest req)
            {
                String namespace = API_USER_VERSION_URL;
                String prefix = 'mockPrefix';

                Dom.Document doc = new Dom.Document();
                Dom.XmlNode xmlNode = doc.createRootElement(
                'mockRootNodeName', namespace, prefix);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('LoginId', namespace, prefix)
                .addTextNode(LOGIN_ID);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('FirstName', namespace, prefix)
                .addTextNode(FIRST_NAME);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('LastName', namespace, prefix)
                .addTextNode(LAST_NAME);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('EmailAddress', namespace, prefix)
                .addTextNode(EMAIL_ADDRESS);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('LocaleName', namespace, prefix)
                .addTextNode(LOCALE_NAME);
                xmlNode.addChildElement('Token', null, null)
                .addTextNode(OAUTH_TOKEN);
                System.debug(doc.toXmlString());
                // Create a fake response
                HttpResponse res = new HttpResponse();
                res.setHeader('Content-Type', 'application/xml');
                res.setBody(doc.toXmlString());
                res.setStatusCode(200);
                return res;
            }

        }
    }
```

AuthProviderTokenResponse Class

Stores the response from the `AuthProviderPlugin.handleCallback` method.

Namespace

Auth

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderTokenResponse Constructors

AuthProviderTokenResponse Properties

AuthProviderTokenResponse Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthProviderTokenResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthProviderTokenResponse(provider, oauthToken, oauthSecretOrRefreshToken, state)
Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderTokenResponse` class using the specified authentication provider, OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and state for a custom authentication provider plug-in.

`AuthProviderTokenResponse(provider, oauthToken, oauthSecretOrRefreshToken, state)`

Creates an instance of the `AuthProviderTokenResponse` class using the specified authentication provider, OAuth access token, OAuth secret or refresh token, and state for a custom authentication provider plug-in.

Signature

```
public AuthProviderTokenResponse(String provider, String oauthToken, String
oauthSecretOrRefreshToken, String state)
```

Parameters

provider
Type: String

The custom authentication provider.

oauthToken
Type: String

The OAuth access token.

oauthSecretOrRefreshToken
Type: String

The OAuth secret or refresh token for the currently logged-in user.

state
Type: String

The state passed in to initiate the authentication request for the user.

AuthProviderTokenResponse Properties

The following are properties for `AuthProviderTokenResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

oauthSecretOrRefreshToken
The OAuth secret or refresh token for the currently logged-in user.

oauthToken
The OAuth access token.

provider
The authentication provider.

state
The state passed in to initiate the authentication request for the user.

oauthSecretOrRefreshToken

The OAuth secret or refresh token for the currently logged-in user.

Signature

```
public String oauthSecretOrRefreshToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

oauthToken

The OAuth access token.

Signature

```
public String oauthToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

provider

The authentication provider.

Signature

```
public String provider {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

state

The state passed in to initiate the authentication request for the user.

Signature

```
public String state {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

AuthToken Class

Contains methods for providing the access token associated with an authentication provider for an authenticated user, except for the Janrain provider.

Namespace

Auth

AuthToken Methods

The following are methods for `AuthToken`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAccessToken(authProviderId, providerName)

Returns an access token for the current user using the specified 18-character identifier of an AuthProvider definition in your org and the proper name of the third party, such as Salesforce or Facebook. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

getAccessTokenMap(authProviderId, providerName)

Returns a map from the third-party identifier to the access token for the currently logged-in Salesforce user. The identifier value depends on the third party. For example, for Salesforce it would be the user ID, while for Facebook it would be the user number. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

refreshAccessToken(authProviderId, providerName, oldAccessToken)

Returns a map from the third-party identifier containing a refreshed access token for the currently logged-in Salesforce user. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

revokeAccess(authProviderId, providerName, userId, remoteIdentifier)

Revokes the access token for a specified social sign-on user from a third-party service such as Facebook©. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

getAccessToken(authProviderId, providerName)

Returns an access token for the current user using the specified 18-character identifier of an AuthProvider definition in your org and the proper name of the third party, such as Salesforce or Facebook. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

Signature

```
public static String getAccessToken(String authProviderId, String providerName)
```

Parameters

authProviderId
Type: String

providerName
Type: String

The proper name of the third party. For all providers except Janrain, the expected values are

- `Facebook`
- `Salesforce`
- `Open ID Connect`
- `Microsoft Access Control Service`
- `LinkedIn`
- `Twitter`
- `Google`

For Janrain providers, the parameter value is the proper name of the third party used. `Yahoo!` is an example of a Janrain provider value.

Return Value

Type: String

getAccessTokenMap(authProviderId, providerName)

Returns a map from the third-party identifier to the access token for the currently logged-in Salesforce user. The identifier value depends on the third party. For example, for Salesforce it would be the user ID, while for Facebook it would be the user number. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

Signature

```
public static Map<String, String> getAccessTokenMap(String authProviderId, String
providerName)
```

Parameters

authProviderId
Type: String

providerName
Type: String

The proper name of the third party. For all providers except Janrain, the expected values are

- `Facebook`
- `Salesforce`
- `Open ID Connect`
- `Microsoft Access Control Service`
- `LinkedIn`
- `Twitter`
- `Google`

For Janrain providers, the parameter value is the proper name of the third party used. `Yahoo!` is an example of a Janrain provider value.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

refreshAccessToken(authProviderId, providerName, oldAccessToken)

Returns a map from the third-party identifier containing a refreshed access token for the currently logged-in Salesforce user. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

Signature

```
public static Map<String, String> refreshAccessToken(String authProviderId, String
providerName, String oldAccessToken)
```

Parameters

authProviderId
Type: String

providerName
Type: String

The proper name of the third party. For all providers except Janrain, the expected values are

- `Facebook`
- `Salesforce`
- `Open ID Connect`
- `Microsoft Access Control Service`
- `LinkedIn`

- `Twitter`
- `Google`

For Janrain providers, the parameter value is the proper name of the third party used. `Yahoo!` is an example of a Janrain provider value.

`oldAccessToken`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

Usage

This method works when using Salesforce or an OpenID Connect provider, but not when using Facebook or Janrain. The returned map contains `AccessToken` and `RefreshError` keys. Evaluate the keys in the response to check if the request was successful. For a successful request, the `RefreshError` value is `null`, and `AccessToken` is a token value. For an unsuccessful request, the `RefreshError` value is an error message, and the `AccessToken` value is `null`.

When successful, this method updates the token stored in the database, which you can get using `Auth.AuthToken.getAccessToken()`.

If you are using an OpenID Connect authentication provider, an `id_token` is not required in the response from the provider. If a **Token Issuer** is specified in the **Auth. Provider** settings and an `id_token` is provided anyway, Salesforce will verify it.

Example

```
String accessToken = Auth.AuthToken.getAccessToken('0SOD000000000DeOAI', 'Open ID connect');
Map<String, String> responseMap = Auth.AuthToken.refreshAccessToken('0SOD000000000DeOAI',
 'Open ID connect', accessToken);
```

A successful request includes the access token in the response.

```
 (RefreshError,null)(AccessToken,00DD00000007BhE!AQkAQFzj...)
```

`revokeAccess(authProviderId, providerName, userId, remoteIdentifier)`

Revokes the access token for a specified social sign-on user from a third-party service such as Facebook©. Note that querying the `ProviderType` field on the AuthProvider object sometimes returns a value that differs from the expected provider name value. For example, for Open ID Connect providers, `OpenIdConnect` is the `ProviderType` value for the AuthProvider object, but the expected `providerName` is `Open ID Connect`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean revokeAccess(String authProviderId, String providerName, String
userId, String remoteIdentifier)
```

Parameters

`authProviderId`
Type: String

The ID of the Auth. Provider in the Salesforce organization.

providerName
Type: String

The proper name of the third party. For all providers except Janrain, the expected values are

- `Facebook`
- `Salesforce`
- `Open ID Connect`
- `Microsoft Access Control Service`
- `LinkedIn`
- `Twitter`
- `Google`

For Janrain providers, the parameter value is the proper name of the third party used. `Yahoo!` is an example of a Janrain provider value.

userId
Type: String

The 15-character ID for the user whose access is being revoked.

remoteIdentifier
Type: String

The unique ID for the user in the third-party system (this value is in the associated ThirdPartyAccountLink standard object).

Return Value

Type: Boolean

The return value is `true` if the `revokeAccess()` operation is successful; otherwise `false`.

Example

The following example revokes a Facebook user's access token.

```
Auth.AuthToken.revokeAccess('0SOxx00000#####', 'facebook', '005xx00000#####',
'ThirdPartyIdentifier_exist214176560#####');
```

CommunitiesUtil Class

Contains methods for getting information about an Experience Cloud user.

Namespace

Auth

Example

The following example directs a guest (unauthenticated) user to one page, and authenticated users of the Experience Cloud site's parent organization to another page.

```
if (Auth.CommunitiesUtil.isGuestUser())
    // Redirect to the login page if user is an unauthenticated user
    return new PageReference(LOGIN_URL);

if (Auth.CommunitiesUtil.isInternalUser())
    // Redirect to the home page if user is an internal user
    return new PageReference(HOME_URL);
```

CommunitiesUtil Methods

The following are methods for `CommunitiesUtil`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLogoutUrl()
Returns the page to display after the current Experience Cloud user logs out.

getUserDisplayName()
Returns the current user's Experience Cloud display name.

isGuestUser()
Indicates whether the current user isn't logged in to the Experience Cloud site. Redirect the user to log in, if necessary.

isInternalUser()
Indicates whether the current user is logged in as a member of the parent Salesforce organization, such as an employee.

`getLogoutUrl()`

Returns the page to display after the current Experience Cloud user logs out.

Signature

```
public static String getLogoutUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getUserDisplayName()`

Returns the current user's Experience Cloud display name.

Signature

```
public static String getUserDisplayName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`isGuestUser()`

Indicates whether the current user isn't logged in to the Experience Cloud site. Redirect the user to log in, if necessary.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isGuestUser()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isInternalUser()`

Indicates whether the current user is logged in as a member of the parent Salesforce organization, such as an employee.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isInternalUser()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Interface

Gives you more control over how customers or partners self-register for your Experience Cloud site by creating a class that implements `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler`. You choose the user information to collect, and how users identify themselves—with their email address, phone number, or another identifier. When verified, you create a customer or partner user and log in the user to your Experience Cloud site.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

You set up site self-registration declaratively on the Login & Registration (L&R) page of the Administration workspace. When combined with a configurable self-registration setup, the handler class can programmatically fill in user fields, including custom fields, and determine how to create a user and log them in.

When you select the Configurable Self-Reg Page registration page, you choose the user fields to collect from the self-registration form, such as last name, first name, username, nickname, mobile, or email. You also determine the verification method that the user identifies themselves with, which can be email, mobile, or neither. Salesforce generates the `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` handler, which contains logic on how to create an Experience Cloud site member. Modify the handler to change how users are created, and how collected user information is used.

You can add custom logic to ensure that the email or phone number is unique to the customer or partner who's registering. For example, you can add a custom unique field, and write a copy of the email or phone number to it. You can also change how the user is created. By default, the user is created as a contact associated with the account that you select on the L&R page.

The generated `ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` is located on the Setup Apex Classes page, and begins with `AutocreatedConfigSelfReg`, for example, `AutocreatedConfigSelfReg1532475901849`.

For an example, see ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Example Implementation. For more details, see Customer 360 Identity in *Salesforce Help*.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Method

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Example Implementation
This Apex code implements the `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` interface. After the customer or partner fills out the sign-up page and submits it, the handler is invoked to create an Experience Cloud member with the supplied information. If the registration process requires email or phone verification, the verification process finishes before the `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler.createUser` is invoked. If verification isn't required, `createUser` is invoked when the customer or partner submits the page.

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Method

The following is the method for `ConfigurableSelfRegHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

createUser(accountId, profileId, registrationAttributes, password)
Create a community member from the information that the visitor provided on your community's self-registration page.

createUser(accountId, profileId, registrationAttributes, password)

Create a community member from the information that the visitor provided on your community's self-registration page.

Signature

```
public Id createUser(Id accountId, Id profileId, Map<Schema.SObjectField,String>
registrationAttributes, String password)
```

Parameters

accountId
Type: Id

Default account with which the new user is associated. This value comes from the Account field setting on Login and Registration (L&R) page under Registration Page Configuration.

profileID
Type: Id

Profile to assign the new user. This value comes from the Profile field setting on the L&R page under Registration Page Configuration.

registrationAttributes
Type: Map<Schema.sObjectField,String>

A map of attributes that the registering user entered on the self-registration page. The fields that appear on the self-registration page come from the User Fields selected on the L&R page when the registration type is Configurable Self-Reg Page.

password
Type: String

The password entered by the user if "Include Password" is selected on the L&R page. (If a password isn't entered, the handler must generate one because a password is required to create a user.)

Return Value

Type: Id

Returns an identifier for the created User object. `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` inserts a user and then returns the ID of that user.

ConfigurableSelfRegHandler Example Implementation

This Apex code implements the `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` interface. After the customer or partner fills out the sign-up page and submits it, the handler is invoked to create an Experience Cloud member with the supplied information. If the registration process requires email or phone verification, the verification process finishes before the `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler.createUser` is invoked. If verification isn't required, `createUser` is invoked when the customer or partner submits the page.

Verification occurs by email if the admin chose Email as the verification method when setting up the Configurable Self-Reg handler on the Login & Registration (L&R) page. When a visitor clicks the sign-up link from the login page, Salesforce prompts for an email address and then sends a one-time password to the specified email address. If the visitor enters the verification code successfully on the verify page, the user is created and logged in. Likewise, if the admin chose Text Message as the verification method on the L&R page, the visitor is prompted to enter a phone number. Salesforce sends a challenge (verification code) via SMS to the user. If successful, the user is created and logged in. Requiring verification before creating a user reduces the number of dummy users cluttering your org.

The `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` class contains logic for generating the user fields required to create a user in case the user doesn't supply them. The handler generates default values, ensuring that the values are unique by appending a timestamp. You can modify the handler to make sure that the email address and phone number of the customer or partner are also unique.

```
global class AutocreatedConfigSelfReg implements Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler {

    private final Long CURRENT_TIME = Datetime.now().getTime();
    private final String[] UPPERCASE_CHARS = 'ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ'.split('');
    private final String[] LOWERCASE_CHARS = 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz'.split('');
    private final String[] NUMBER_CHARS = '1234567890'.split('');
    private final String[] SPECIAL_CHARS = '!#$%-_=+<>'.split('');

    // This method is called once after verification (if any was configured).
    // This method should create a user and insert it.
    // Password can be null.
    // Return null or throw an exception to fail creation.
    global Id createUser(Id accountId, Id profileId, Map<SObjectField, String>
registrationAttributes, String password) {
        User u = new User();
        u.ProfileId = profileId;
        for (SObjectField field : registrationAttributes.keySet()) {
            String value = registrationAttributes.get(field);
            u.put(field, value);
        }
```

```
        u = handleUnsetRequiredFields(u);
        generateContact(u, accountId);
        if (String.isBlank(password)) {
            password = generateRandomPassword();
        }
        Site.validatePassword(u, password, password);
        if (u.contactId == null) {
            return Site.createExternalUser(u, accountId, password);
        }
        u.languagelocalekey = UserInfo.getLocale();
        u.localesidkey = UserInfo.getLocale();
        u.emailEncodingKey = 'UTF-8';
        u.timeZoneSidKey = UserInfo.getTimezone().getID();
        insert u;
        System.setPassword(u.Id, password);
        return u.id;
    }
    // Method to autogenerate a password if one isn't passed in.
    // By setting a password for a user, we won't send a
    // welcome email to set the password.
    private String generateRandomPassword() {
        String[] characters = new List<String>(UPPERCASE_CHARS);
        characters.addAll(LOWERCASE_CHARS);
        characters.addAll(NUMBER_CHARS);
        characters.addAll(SPECIAL_CHARS);
        String newPassword = '';
        Boolean needsUpper = true, needsLower = true, needsNumber = true, needsSpecial =
true;
        while (newPassword.length() < 50) {
            Integer randomInt = generateRandomInt(characters.size());
            String c = characters[randomInt];
            if (needsUpper && c.isAllUpperCase()) {
                needsUpper = false;
            } else if (needsLower && c.isAllLowerCase()) {
                needsLower = false;
            } else if (needsNumber && c.isNumeric()) {
                needsNumber = false;
            } else if (needsSpecial && !c.isAlphanumeric()) {
                needsSpecial = false;
            }
            newPassword += c;
        }
        newPassword = addMissingPasswordRequirements(newPassword, needsLower, needsUpper,
 needsNumber, needsSpecial);
        return newPassword;
    }

    private String addMissingPasswordRequirements(String password, Boolean addLowerCase,
Boolean addUpperCase, Boolean addNumber, Boolean addSpecial) {
        if (addLowerCase) {
            password += LOWERCASE_CHARS[generateRandomInt(LOWERCASE_CHARS.size())];
        }
        if (addUpperCase) {
```

```
            password += UPPERCASE_CHARS[generateRandomInt(UPPERCASE_CHARS.size())];
        }
        if (addNumber) {
            password += NUMBER_CHARS[generateRandomInt(NUMBER_CHARS.size())];
        }
        if (addSpecial) {
            password += SPECIAL_CHARS[generateRandomInt(SPECIAL_CHARS.size())];
        }
        return password;
    }
    // Generates a random number from 0 up to, but not including, max.
    private Integer generateRandomInt(Integer max) {
        return Math.mod(Math.abs(Crypto.getRandomInteger()), max);
    }

    // Loops over required fields that were not passed in to
    // set to some default value.
    private User handleUnsetRequiredFields(User u) {
        if (String.isBlank(u.LastName)){
            u.LastName = generateLastName();
        }
        if (String.isBlank(u.Username)) {
            u.Username = generateUsername();
        }
        if (String.isBlank(u.Email)) {
            u.Email = generateEmail();
        }
        if (String.isBlank(u.Alias)) {
            u.Alias = generateAlias();
        }
        if (String.isBlank(u.CommunityNickname)) {
            u.CommunityNickname = generateCommunityNickname();
        }
        return u;
    }
    // Method to construct a contact for a user.
    private void generateContact(User u, Id accountId) {
        // Add logic here if you want to build your own
        // contact for the use.
    }
    // Default implementation to try to provide uniqueness.
    private String generateAlias() {
        String timeString = String.valueOf(CURRENT_TIME);
        return timeString.substring(timeString.length() - 8);
    }
    // Default implementation to try to provide uniqueness.
    private String generateLastName() {
        return 'ExternalUser' + CURRENT_TIME;
    }
    // Default implementation to try to provide uniqueness.
    private String generateUsername() {
        return 'externaluser' + CURRENT_TIME + '@company.com';
    }
    // Default implementation to try to provide uniqueness.
```

```
    private String generateEmail() {
        return 'externaluser' + CURRENT_TIME + '@company.com';
    }
    // Default implementation to try to provide uniqueness.
    private String generateCommunityNickname() {
        return 'ExternalUser' + CURRENT_TIME;
    }
}
```

ConnectedAppPlugin Class

Contains methods for extending the behavior of a connected app, for example, customizing how a connected app is invoked depending on the protocol used. This class gives you more control over the interaction between Salesforce and your connected app.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

When you create a connected app, you specify general information about the app and settings for OAuth, web apps, mobile apps, and canvas apps. To customize how the app is invoked, create a connected app handler with this `ConnectedAppPlugin` Apex class. For example, use this class to support new authentication protocols or respond to user attributes in a way that benefits a business process.

The class runs on behalf of the current user of the connected app. But the user must have permission to use the connected app for the plug-in to work. If the user isn't authorized for the connected app, use the authorize method.

Example

This example gives the user permission to use the connected app if the context is SAML and the user has reached the quota tracked in a custom field. It returns the user's permission set assignments. The example uses `Auth.InvocationContext` to modify a SAML assertion before it's sent to the service provider.

```
global class ConnectedAppPluginExample extends Auth.ConnectedAppPlugin
{
    // Authorize the app if the user has achieved quota tracked in a custom field
   global override Boolean authorize(Id userId, Id connectedAppId, Boolean isAdminApproved,
 Auth.InvocationContext context)
    {
        // Create a custom boolean field HasAchievedQuota__c on the user record
        // and then uncomment the block below
        // User u = [select id, HasAchievedQuota__c from User where id =: userId].get(0);

        // return u.HasAchievedQuota__c;

        return isAdminApproved;
    }

    // Call a flow during refresh
    global override void refresh(Id userId, Id connectedAppId, Auth.InvocationContext
context)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
           Map<String, Object> inputVariables = new Map<String, Object>();
           inputVariables.put('userId', userId);
           inputVariables.put('connectedAppId', connectedAppId);

          // Create a custom trigger ready flow and uncomment the block below
          // Flow.Interview.MyCustomFlow interview = new
Flow.Interview.MyCustomFlow(inputVariables);
          // interview.start();
         } catch ( Exception e ) {
            System.debug('FLOW Exception:' + e);
         }
    }

    // Return a user's permission set assignments
    global override Map<String,String> customAttributes(Id userId, Id connectedAppId,
Map<String,String>
        formulaDefinedAttributes, Auth.InvocationContext context)
    {
        List<PermissionSetAssignment> psas = [SELECT id, PermissionSet.Name FROM
PermissionSetAssignment
        WHERE PermissionSet.IsOwnedByProfile = false AND (AssigneeId = :userId)];
        String permsets = '[';
        for (PermissionSetAssignment psa :psas)
        {
            permsets += psa.PermissionSet.Name + ';';
        }
        permsets += ']';
        formulaDefinedAttributes.put('PermissionSets', permsets);
        return formulaDefinedAttributes;
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectedAppPlugin Methods

ConnectedAppPlugin Methods

The following are methods for `ConnectedAppPlugin`.

IN THIS SECTION:

authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved)

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved, context)` instead.

authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved, context)

Authorizes the specified user to access the connected app. If the connected app is set for users to self-authorize, this method isn't invoked.

customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes)

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes, context)` instead.

customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes, context)

Sets new attributes for the specified user. When the connected app gets the user's attributes from the UserInfo endpoint or through a SAML assertion, use this method to update the attribute values.

modifySAMLResponse(authSession, connectedAppId, samlResponse)

Modifies the XML generated by the Salesforce SAML Identity Provider (IDP) before it's sent to the service provider.

refresh(userId, connectedAppId)

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `refresh(userId, connectedAppId, context)` instead.

refresh(userId, connectedAppId, context)

Salesforce calls this method during a refresh token exchange.

`authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved)`

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved, context)` instead.

Signature

```
public Boolean authorize(Id userId, Id connectedAppId, Boolean isAdminApproved)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user attempting to use the connected app.

`connectedAppId`
Type: String

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

`isAdminApproved`
Type: Boolean

The approval state of the specified user when the connected app requires approval.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

If the connected app requires admin approval, a returned value of `true` indicates that the current user is approved.

`authorize(userId, connectedAppId, isAdminApproved, context)`

Authorizes the specified user to access the connected app. If the connected app is set for users to self-authorize, this method isn't invoked.

Signature

```
public Boolean authorize(Id userId, Id connectedAppId, Boolean isAdminApproved,
Auth.InvocationContext context)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user attempting to use the connected app.

connectedAppId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

isAdminApproved
Type: Boolean

The approval state of the specified user when the connected app requires approval.

context
Type: InvocationContext

The context in which the connected app is invoked.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

If the connected app requires admin approval, a returned value of `true` indicates that the user is approved.

Usage

`ConnectedAppPlugin` runs on behalf of the current user. But the user must have permission to use the connected app for the plug-in to work. Use this method to authorize the user.

customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes)

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes, context)` instead.

Signature

```
public Map<String,String> customAttributes(Id userId, Id connectedAppId,
Map<String,String> formulaDefinedAttributes,)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user attempting to use the connected app.

connectedAppId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

formulaDefinedAttributes
Type: Map<String,String>

A map of the new set of attributes from the UserInfo endpoint (OAuth) or from a SAML assertion. For more information, see The UserInfo Endpoint in the online help.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,String>

A map of the updated set of attributes.

customAttributes(userId, connectedAppId, formulaDefinedAttributes, context)

Sets new attributes for the specified user. When the connected app gets the user's attributes from the UserInfo endpoint or through a SAML assertion, use this method to update the attribute values.

Signature

```
public Map<String,String> customAttributes(Id userId, Id connectedAppId,
Map<String,String> formulaDefinedAttributes, Auth.InvocationContext context)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user attempting to use the connected app.

connectedAppId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID for the connected app.

formulaDefinedAttributes
Type: Map<String,String>

A map of the current set of attributes from the UserInfo endpoint (OAuth) or from a SAML assertion. For more information, see The UserInfo Endpoint in the online help.

Type: InvocationContext

The context in which the connected app is invoked.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,String>

A map of the updated set of attributes.

modifySAMLResponse(authSession, connectedAppId, samlResponse)

Modifies the XML generated by the Salesforce SAML Identity Provider (IDP) before it's sent to the service provider.

Signature

```
public dom.XmlNode modifySAMLResponse(Map<String,String> authSession, Id connectedAppId,
dom.XmlNode samlResponse)
```

Parameters

authSession
Type: Map<String,String>

The attributes for the authorized user's session. The map includes the 15-character ID of the authorized user who's accessing the connected app.

connectedAppId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

samlResponse
Type: Dom.XmlNode

Contains the SAML XML response generated by the IDP.

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

Returns an instance of Dom.XmlNode containing the modified SAML XML response.

Usage

Use this method to modify the XML SAML response to perform an action based on the context of the SAML request before it's verified, signed, and sent to the target service provider. This method enables developers to extend the connected app plug-in to meet their specific needs.

The developer assumes full responsibility for changes made within the connected app plug-in. The plug-in must include validation and error handling. If the plug-in throws an exception, catch it, log it, and stop the process. Don't send anything to the target service provider.

`refresh(userId, connectedAppId)`

Deprecated and available only in API versions 35.0 and 36.0. As of version 37.0, use `refresh(userId, connectedAppId, context)` instead.

Signature

```
public void refresh(Id userId, Id connectedAppId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user requesting the refresh token.

connectedAppId
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

Return Value

Type: void

`refresh(userId, connectedAppId, context)`

Salesforce calls this method during a refresh token exchange.

Signature

```
public void refresh(Id userId, Id connectedAppId, Auth.InvocationContext context)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the user requesting the refresh token.

`connectedAppId`
Type: Id

The 15-character ID of the connected app.

`context`
Type: InvocationContext

The context in which the connected app is invoked.

Return Value

Type: void

InvocationContext Enum

The context in which the connected app is invoked, such as the protocol flow used and the token type issued, if any. Developers can use the context information to write code that is unique to the type of invocation.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Auth.InvocationContext` enum.

Value	Description
`ASSET_TOKEN`	Reserved for future use.
`OAUTH1`	Context used when authentication is through an OAuth 1.0A flow.
`OAUTH2_JWT_BEARER_TOKEN`	Context used when authentication is through a JSON-based Web Token (JWT) bearer token flow.
`OAUTH2_SAML_ASSERTION`	Context used when authentication is through an OAuth 2.0 SAML assertion flow.

Value	Description
`OAUTH2_SAML_BEARER_ASSERTION`	Context used when authentication is through an OAuth 2.0 SAML bearer assertion flow.
`OAUTH2_USERNAME_PASSWORD`	Context used when authentication is through an OAuth 2.0 username-password flow.
`OAUTH2_USER_AGENT_ID_TOKEN`	Context used when issuing an ID token through an OAuth 2.0 user-agent flow.
`OAUTH2_USER_AGENT_TOKEN`	Context used when authentication is through an OAuth 2.0 user agent flow.
`OAUTH2_WEB_SERVER`	Context used when authentication is through a web server authentication flow.
`OPENIDCONNECT`	Context used when authentication is through an OpenID Connect authentication flow.
`REFRESH_TOKEN`	Context used when renewing tokens issued by a web server or user-agent flow.
`SAML_ASSERTION`	Context used when authentication is through a SAML assertion flow.
`UNKNOWN`	Context is unknown.
`USERID_ENDPOINT`	Context used when issuing an access token through a UserInfo endpoint.

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Help: Authenticating Apps with OAuth

JWS Class

Contains methods that apply a digital signature to a JSON Web Token (JWT), using a JSON Web Signature (JWS) data structure. This class creates the signed JWT bearer token, which can be used to request an OAuth access token in the OAuth 2.0 JWT bearer token flow.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Use the methods in this class to sign the JWT bearer token with the X509 certificate.

IN THIS SECTION:

JWS Constructors

JWS Methods

JWS Constructors

The following are constructors for `JWS`.

IN THIS SECTION:

JWS(jwt, certDevName)
Creates an instance of the `JWS` class using the specified `Auth.JWT` payload and the certificate used for signing the JWT bearer token.

JWS(payload, certDevName)
Creates an instance of the `JWS` class using the specified payload and certificate used for signing the JWT bearer token.

JWS(jwt, certDevName)

Creates an instance of the `JWS` class using the specified `Auth.JWT` payload and the certificate used for signing the JWT bearer token.

Signature

```
public JWS(Auth.JWT jwt, String certDevName)
```

Parameters

jwt
Type: Auth.JWT

The Base64-encoded JSON Claims Set in the JWT bearer token generated by `Auth.JWT`.

certDevName
Type: String

The `Unique Name` for a certificate stored in the Salesforce org's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing the JWT bearer token.

Usage

Calls the `toJSONString()` method in `Auth.JWT` and sets the resulting string as the payload of the JWT bearer token. Alternatively, you can specify the payload directly using `JWS(payload, certDevName)`.

JWS(payload, certDevName)

Creates an instance of the `JWS` class using the specified payload and certificate used for signing the JWT bearer token.

Signature

```
public JWS(String payload, String certDevName)
```

Parameters

payload
Type: String

The Base64-encoded JSON Claims Set in the JWT bearer token.

certDevName
Type: String

The `Unique Name` for a certificate stored in the Salesforce org's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing the JWT bearer token.

Usage

Sets the *payload* string as the payload of the JWT bearer token. Alternatively, if you generate the payload using `Auth.JWT`, you can use `JWS(jwt, certDevName)` instead.

JWS Methods

The following are methods for `JWS`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the JWS object.

getCompactSerialization()
Returns the compact serialization representation of the JWS as a concatenated string, with the encoded JWS header, encoded JWS payload, and encoded JWS signature strings separated by period ('.') characters.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the JWS object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: JWS

`getCompactSerialization()`

Returns the compact serialization representation of the JWS as a concatenated string, with the encoded JWS header, encoded JWS payload, and encoded JWS signature strings separated by period ('.') characters.

Signature

```
public String getCompactSerialization()
```

Return Value

Type: String

JWT Class

Generates the JSON Claims Set in a JSON Web Token (JWT). The resulting Base64-encoded payload can be passed as an argument to create an instance of the `Auth.JWS` class.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Use the methods in this class to generate the payload in a JWT bearer token.

IN THIS SECTION:

JWT Methods

JWT Methods

The following are methods for `JWT`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the JWT object.

getAdditionalClaims()
Returns a map of additional claims in the JWT, where the key string contains the name of the claim, and the value contains the value of the claim.

getAud()
Returns the audience claim that identifies the intended recipients of the JWT.

getIss()
Returns the issuer claim that identifies the issuer of the JWT.

getNbfClockSkew()
Returns the not before claim that identifies the time before which the JWT must not be accepted for processing, while allowing some leeway for clock skew.

getSub()
Returns the subject claim that identifies the current user of the JWT.

getValidityLength()
Returns the length of time (in seconds) that the JWT is valid, which affects the expiration claim.

setAdditionalClaims(additionalClaims)
Sets the additional claims in the JWT. Returned by the `getAdditionalClaims()` method.

setAud(aud)
Sets the audience claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getAud()` method.

setIss(iss)
Sets the issuer claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getIss()` method.

setNbfClockSkew(nbfClockSkew)
Sets the not before claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getNbfClockSkew()` method.

setSub(sub)
Sets the subject claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getSub()` method.

setValidityLength(validityLength)
Sets the length of time (in seconds) that the JWT is valid, which affects the expiration claim. Returned by the `getValidityLength()` method.

toJSONString()
Generates the JSON object representation of the Claims Set as an encoded JWT payload.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the JWT object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: JWT

getAdditionalClaims()

Returns a map of additional claims in the JWT, where the key string contains the name of the claim, and the value contains the value of the claim.

Signature

```
public Map<String,ANY> getAdditionalClaims()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,ANY>

getAud()

Returns the audience claim that identifies the intended recipients of the JWT.

Signature

```
public String getAud()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getIss()

Returns the issuer claim that identifies the issuer of the JWT.

Signature

```
public String getIss()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getNbfClockSkew()`

Returns the not before claim that identifies the time before which the JWT must not be accepted for processing, while allowing some leeway for clock skew.

Signature

```
public Integer getNbfClockSkew()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getSub()`

Returns the subject claim that identifies the current user of the JWT.

Signature

```
public String getSub()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValidityLength()`

Returns the length of time (in seconds) that the JWT is valid, which affects the expiration claim.

Signature

```
public Integer getValidityLength()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`setAdditionalClaims(additionalClaims)`

Sets the additional claims in the JWT. Returned by the `getAdditionalClaims()` method.

Signature

```
public void setAdditionalClaims(Map<String,ANY> additionalClaims)
```

Parameters

`additionalClaims`
Type: Map<String,ANY>

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Additional claims must not include any standard claims.

`setAud(aud)`

Sets the audience claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getAud()` method.

Signature

```
public void setAud(String aud)
```

Parameters

aud
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setIss(iss)`

Sets the issuer claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getIss()` method.

Signature

```
public void setIss(String iss)
```

Parameters

iss
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setNbfClockSkew(nbfClockSkew)`

Sets the not before claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getNbfClockSkew()` method.

Signature

```
public void setNbfClockSkew(Integer nbfClockSkew)
```

Parameters

nbfClockSkew
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: void

setSub(sub)

Sets the subject claim in the JWT. Returned by the `getSub()` method.

Signature

```
public void setSub(String sub)
```

Parameters

sub
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setValidityLength(validityLength)

Sets the length of time (in seconds) that the JWT is valid, which affects the expiration claim. Returned by the `getValidityLength()` method.

Signature

```
public void setValidityLength(Integer validityLength)
```

Parameters

validityLength
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: void

toJSONString()

Generates the JSON object representation of the Claims Set as an encoded JWT payload.

Signature

```
public String toJSONString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

JWTBearerTokenExchange Class

Contains methods that POST the signed JWT bearer token to a token endpoint to request an access token, in the OAuth 2.0 JWT bearer token flow.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Use the methods in this class to post a signed JWT bearer token to the OAuth token endpoint, in exchange for an access token.

Example

In the following example application, the Apex controller:

1. Creates the JSON Claims Set.
2. Specifies the scope of the request with additional claims.
3. Creates the signed JWT.
4. Specifies the token endpoint and POSTs to it.
5. Gets the access token from the HTTP response.

```
public class MyController{


     public MyController() {
        Auth.JWT jwt = new Auth.JWT();
        jwt.setSub('user@salesforce.com');
        jwt.setAud('https://login.salesforce.com');
        jwt.setIss('3MVG99OxTyEMCQ3gNp2PjkqeZKxnmAiG1xV4oHh9AKL_rSK.BoSVPGZHQ
ukXnVjzRgSuQqGn75NL7yfkQcyy7');

        //Additional claims to set scope
        Map<String, Object> claims = new Map<String, Object>();
        claims.put('scope', 'scope name');

        jwt.setAdditionalClaims(claims);

        //Create the object that signs the JWT bearer token
        Auth.JWS jws = new Auth.JWS(jwt, 'CertFromCertKeyManagement');

        //Get the resulting JWS in case debugging is required
        String token = jws.getCompactSerialization();

        //Set the token endpoint that the JWT bearer token is posted to
        String tokenEndpoint = 'https://login.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/token';
```

```
        //POST the JWT bearer token
       Auth.JWTBearerTokenExchange bearer = new Auth.JWTBearerTokenExchange(tokenEndpoint,
 jws);

        //Get the access token
        String accessToken = bearer.getAccessToken();

    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

JWTBearerTokenExchange Constructors

JWTBearerTokenExchange Methods

JWTBearerTokenExchange Constructors

The following are constructors for `JWTBearerTokenExchange`.

IN THIS SECTION:

JWTBearerTokenExchange(tokenEndpoint, jws)

Creates an instance of the `JWTBearerTokenExchange` class using the specified token endpoint and the signed JWT bearer token.

JWTBearerTokenExchange()

Creates an instance of the `Auth.JWTBearerTokenExchange` class.

`JWTBearerTokenExchange(tokenEndpoint, jws)`

Creates an instance of the `JWTBearerTokenExchange` class using the specified token endpoint and the signed JWT bearer token.

Signature

```
public JWTBearerTokenExchange(String tokenEndpoint, Auth.JWS jws)
```

Parameters

`tokenEndpoint`

Type: String

The token endpoint that the signed JWT bearer token is POSTed to.

`jws`

Type: Auth.JWS

The signed JWT bearer token.

`JWTBearerTokenExchange()`

Creates an instance of the `Auth.JWTBearerTokenExchange` class.

Signature

```
public JWTBearerTokenExchange()
```

JWTBearerTokenExchange Methods

The following are methods for `JWTBearerTokenExchange`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the JWTBearerTokenExchange object.

getAccessToken()
Returns the `access_token` in the token response to the JWT bearer token request.

getGrantType()
Returns the grant type specified in the JWT bearer token request. The grant type value defaults to `urn:ietf:params:oauth:grant-type:jwt-bearer`.

getHttpResponse()
Returns the full `System.HttpResponse` token response to the JWT bearer token request.

getJWS()
Returns the JWS specified in the JWT bearer token request.

getTokenEndpoint()
Returns the token endpoint that the JWT bearer token request is POSTed to.

setGrantType(grantType)
Sets the grant type in the JWT bearer token request. Returned by the `getGrantType()` method.

setJWS(jws)
Sets the JWS in the JWT bearer token request. Returned by the `getJWS()` method.

setTokenEndpoint(tokenEndpoint)
Sets the token endpoint that the JWT bearer token request is POSTed to. Returned by the `getTokenEndpoint()` method.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the JWTBearerTokenExchange object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: JWTBearerTokenExchange

`getAccessToken()`

Returns the `access_token` in the token response to the JWT bearer token request.

Signature

```
public String getAccessToken()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method extracts the `access_token` from the token response. If the token response issues the access token in a different parameter, the request fails.

If you want the full HTTP token response returned, use `getHttpResponse` instead.

getGrantType()

Returns the grant type specified in the JWT bearer token request. The grant type value defaults to `urn:ietf:params:oauth:grant-type:jwt-bearer`.

Signature

```
public String getGrantType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getHttpResponse()

Returns the full `System.HttpResponse` token response to the JWT bearer token request.

Signature

```
public System.HttpResponse getHttpResponse()
```

Return Value

Type: System.HttpResponse

Usage

You can get the access token from the full `System.HttpResponse`. If you want only the `access_token` from the token response, you can use `getAccessToken` instead.

getJWS()

Returns the JWS specified in the JWT bearer token request.

Signature

```
public Auth.JWS getJWS()
```

Return Value

Type: Auth.JWS

`getTokenEndpoint()`

Returns the token endpoint that the JWT bearer token request is POSTed to.

Signature

```
public String getTokenEndpoint()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setGrantType(grantType)`

Sets the grant type in the JWT bearer token request. Returned by the `getGrantType()` method.

Signature

```
public void setGrantType(String grantType)
```

Parameters

grantType
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setJWS(jws)`

Sets the JWS in the JWT bearer token request. Returned by the `getJWS()` method.

Signature

```
public void setJWS(Auth.JWS jws)
```

Parameters

jws
Type: Auth.JWS

Return Value

Type: void

`setTokenEndpoint(tokenEndpoint)`

Sets the token endpoint that the JWT bearer token request is POSTed to. Returned by the `getTokenEndpoint()` method.

Signature

```
public void setTokenEndpoint(String tokenEndpoint)
```

Parameters

`tokenEndpoint`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

LightningLoginEligibility Enum

Contains a Lightning Login eligibility value used by the `Auth.SessionManagement.getLightningLoginEligibility` method.

Usage

If you set up your org with My Domain and use the Discovery page type, users can verify themselves with Lightning Login. Lightning Login lets internal users log in with Salesforce Authenticator instead of a password. Certain conditions must be met for Lightning Login to succeed.

Call `Auth.SessionManagement.getLightningLoginEligibility` before or after a login attempt to get the eligibility status. You can call after a login attempt to determine why the login attempt failed.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Auth.LightningLoginEligibility` enum.

Value	Description
`ELIGIBLE`	All eligibility conditions are met. The admin has enabled Salesforce Authenticator and Lightning Login, assigned the user Lightning Login user permission, and selected **Allow only for users with the Lightning Login User permission** from the Session Settings Setup page. The user has set up Salesforce Authenticator and enrolled in Lightning Login.
`ORG_AUTHENTICATOR_NOT_ENABLED`	The admin hasn't enabled Salesforce Authenticator.
`ORG_PREF_NOT_ENABLED`	The admin hasn't enabled Lightning Login. The Admin must select **Allow Lightning Login** from the Session Settings Setup page.
`USER_AUTHENTICATOR_NOT_CONNECTED`	The user hasn't set up Salesforce Authenticator.
`USER_NOT_ALLOWED`	The admin hasn't granted the user AllowLightningLogin user permission. Allowing Lightning Login to certain users requires the OnlyLLPermUserAllowed org preference.

Value	Description
	Admins must select **Allow only for users with the Lightning Login User permission** from the Session Settings Setup page.
`USER_NOT_ENROLLED`	The user hasn't enrolled in Lightning Login.
`USER_PERM_NOT_ENABLED`	The admin hasn't granted the user the Lightning Login Eligible user permission.

LoginDiscoveryHandler Interface

Salesforce gives you the ability to log in users based on other verification methods than username and password. For example, it can prompt users to log in with their email, phone number, or another identifier like a Federation ID or device identifier. Login Discovery is available to these licenses: Customer Community, Customer Community Plus, External Identity, Partner Community, and Partner Community Plus.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Implement a `Auth.LoginDiscoveryHandler` for an interview-based log in. The handler looks up a user from the identifier entered, and can call `Site.passwordlessLogin` to determine which credential to use, such as email or SMS. Or the handler can redirect a user to a third-party identity provider for login. With this handler, the login page doesn't show a password field. However, you can use `Site.passwordlessLogin` to then prompt for a password.

From the user perspective, the user enters an identifier at the log in prompt. Then the user completes the login by entering a PIN or password. Or, if SSO-enabled, the user bypasses login.

For an example, see LoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation. For more details, see Customer 360 Identity in *Salesforce Help*.

IN THIS SECTION:

LoginDiscoveryHandler Method

LoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation

LoginDiscoveryHandler Method

Here's the method for `LoginDiscoveryHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

login(identifier, startUrl, requestAttributes)

Log in the customer or partner given the specified identifier, such as email or phone number. If successful, redirect the user to the Experience Cloud site page specified by the start URL.

`login(identifier, startUrl, requestAttributes)`

Log in the customer or partner given the specified identifier, such as email or phone number. If successful, redirect the user to the Experience Cloud site page specified by the start URL.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference login(String identifier, String startUrl,
Map<String,String>requestAttributes)
```

Parameters

identifier
Type: String

Identifier the customer or partner entered at the login prompt, for example, an email address or phone number.

startUrl
Type: String

Path to the Experience Cloud site page requested by the customer or partner. The user is redirected to this location after successful login.

requestAttributes
Type: Map<String,String>

Information about the login request based on the user's browser state when accessing the login page. `requestAttributes` passes in the CommunityUrl, IpAddress, UserAgent, Platform, Application, City, Country, and Subdivision values. The City, Country, and Subdivision values come from IP geolocation.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

The URL of the page where the user is redirected.

Example

Here's a sample `requestAttributes` response.

```
CommunityUrl=http://my-developer-edition.mycompany.com:5555/discover
IpAddress=55.555.0.0
UserAgent=Mozilla/5.0 (Macintosh; Intel Mac OS X 10_13_4) AppleWebKit/605.1.15 (KHTML,
like Gecko) Version/11.1 Safari/605.1.15
Platform=Mac OSX
Application=Browser
City=San Mateo
Country=United States
Subdivision=California
```

LoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation

This Apex code example implements the `Auth.LoginDiscoveryHandler` interface. It checks whether the user who is logging in has a verified email or phone number, depending on which identifier was supplied on the login page. If verified, with `Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL` or `Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS`, we send a challenge to the identifier, either

the user's email address or mobile device. If the user enters the code correctly on the verify page, the user is redirected to the Experience Cloud site's page specified by the start URL. If the user isn't verified, the user must enter a password to log in. The handler also checks that the email and phone number are unique with this code: `users.size()==1`.

Note: Passwordless login works only with verified methods. You can check the verification status on the User object, for example, with User list view, a report, or the API. Make sure that your solution handles the case where the user doesn't have a verification method. This code example falls back to a password.

The default discoverable login handler checks whether the user entered a valid email address or phone number before redirecting the user to the verification page. If an invalid entry is made, the handler returns an error. Because this behavior is vulnerable to user enumeration attack, make sure that your solution prevents this attack. For example, you can create a dummy page similar to the verification page and redirect the user to the dummy page when invalid user identifier is entered. Also, use generic error messages to avoid providing additional information.

The `discoveryResult` function calls the `Site.passwordlessLogin` method to log the user in with the specified verification method. The `getSsoRedirect` function looks up whether the user logs in with SAML or an Auth Provider. Add the implementation-specific logic to handle the lookup.

```
global class AutocreatedDiscLoginHandler1535377170343 implements Auth.LoginDiscoveryHandler
 {

global PageReference login(String identifier, String startUrl, Map<String, String>
requestAttributes) {
    if (identifier != null && isValidEmail(identifier)) {
        // Search for user by email.
        List<User> users = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE Email = :identifier AND IsActive =
TRUE];
        if (!users.isEmpty() && users.size() == 1) {
            // User must have a verified email before using this verification method.
            // We cannot send messages to unverified emails.
            // You can check if the user's email verified bit set and add the
            // password verification method as fallback.
            List<TwoFactorMethodsInfo> verifiedInfo = [SELECT HasUserVerifiedEmailAddress
 FROM TwoFactorMethodsInfo WHERE UserId = :users[0].Id];
            if (!verifiedInfo.isEmpty() && verifiedInfo[0].HasUserVerifiedEmailAddress ==
 true) {
                // Use email verification method if the user's email is verified.
                return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
            } else {
                // Use password verification method as fallback
                // if the user's email is unverified.
              return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.PASSWORD, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
            }
        } else {
            throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No unique user found. User count=' +
users.size());
        }
    }
    if (identifier != null) {
        String formattedSms = getFormattedSms(identifier);
        if (formattedSms != null) {
            // Search for user by SMS.
            List<User> users = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE MobilePhone = :formattedSms AND
```

```
 IsActive = TRUE];
            if (!users.isEmpty() && users.size() == 1) {
                // User must have a verified SMS before using this verification method.
                // We cannot send messages to unverified mobile numbers.
                // You can check if the user's mobile verified bit is set or add
                // the password verification method as fallback.
             List<TwoFactorMethodsInfo> verifiedInfo = [SELECT HasUserVerifiedMobileNumber
 FROM TwoFactorMethodsInfo WHERE UserId = :users[0].Id];
               if (!verifiedInfo.isEmpty() && verifiedInfo[0].HasUserVerifiedMobileNumber
 == true) {
                  // Use SMS verification method if the user's mobile number is verified.

                  return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
                } else {
                    // Use password verification method as fallback if the user's
                    // mobile number is unverified.
                    return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.PASSWORD,
startUrl, requestAttributes);
                }
            } else {
               throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No unique user found. User count='
 + users.size());
            }
        }
    }
    if (identifier != null) {
        // You can customize the code to find user via other attributes,
        // such as SSN or Federation ID.
    }
    throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('Invalid Identifier');
}
private boolean isValidEmail(String identifier) {
    String emailRegex =
'^[a-zA-Z0-9._|\\\\%#~`=?&/$^*!}{+-]+@[a-zA-Z0-9.-]+\\.[a-zA-Z]{2,4}$';
    // source: http://www.regular-expressions.info/email.html
    Pattern EmailPattern = Pattern.compile(emailRegex);
    Matcher EmailMatcher = EmailPattern.matcher(identifier);
    if (EmailMatcher.matches()) { return true; }
    else { return false; }
}
private String getFormattedSms(String identifier) {
    // Accept SMS input formats with 1- or 2-digit country code,
    // 3-digit area code, and 7-digit number.
    // You can customize the SMS regex to allow different formats.
   String smsRegex = '^(\\+?\\d{1,2}?[\\s-])?(\\(?\\d{3}\\)?[\\s-]?\\d{3}[\\s-]?\\d{4})$';

    Pattern smsPattern = Pattern.compile(smsRegex);
    Matcher smsMatcher = SmsPattern.matcher(identifier);
    if (smsMatcher.matches()) {
        try {
            // Format user input into the verified SMS format '+xx xxxxxxxxxx'
            // before DB lookup. If no country code is provided, append
            // US country code +1 for the default.
```

```
            String countryCode = smsMatcher.group(1) == null ? '+1' : smsMatcher.group(1);

           return System.UserManagement.formatPhoneNumber(countryCode, smsMatcher.group(2));

        } catch(System.InvalidParameterValueException e) {
            return null;
        }
    } else { return null; }
}
private PageReference getSsoRedirect(User user, String startUrl, Map<String, String>
requestAttributes) {
    // You can look up to check whether the user should log in with
    // SAML or an Auth Provider and return the URL to initialize SSO.
    return null;
}
private PageReference discoveryResult(User user, Auth.VerificationMethod method, String
startUrl, Map<String, String> requestAttributes) {
    // Only users with an External Identity or community license can log in
    // using Site.passwordlessLogin. Use getSsoRedirect to let your org employees
    // log in to an Experience Cloud site.
    PageReference ssoRedirect = getSsoRedirect(user, startUrl, requestAttributes);
    if (ssoRedirect != null) {
        return ssoRedirect;
    } else {
        if (method != null) {
            List<Auth.VerificationMethod> methods = new List<Auth.VerificationMethod>();
            methods.add(method);
            PageReference pwdlessRedirect = Site.passwordlessLogin(user.Id, methods,
startUrl);
            if (pwdlessRedirect != null) {
                return pwdlessRedirect;
            } else {
               throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No Passwordless Login redirect URL
 returned for verification method: ' + method);
            }
        } else {
            throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No method found');
        }
    }
}
}
```

Code Example: Filter Login Discovery Users by Profile

Your production org can have multiple users with the same verified email address and mobile number. But your customers must have unique ones. To address this problem, you can add a few lines of code that filters users by profile to ensure uniqueness. This code example handles users with the External Identity User profile, but can be adapted to support other use cases. For example, you can modify the first line of code to address users with other user licenses or criteria.

Login Discovery is available with the following user licenses: Customer Community, Customer Community Plus, External Identity, Partner Community, and Partner Community Plus. It depends on which profiles have access to your Experience Cloud site.

```
global class AutocreatedDiscLoginHandler1551301979709 implements Auth.LoginDiscoveryHandler
 {
```

```
global PageReference login(String identifier, String startUrl, Map<String, String>
requestAttributes) {
    if (identifier != null && isValidEmail(identifier)) {
        // Ensure uniqueness by profile
        Profile p = [SELECT id FROM profile WHERE name = 'External Identity User'];
        List<User> users = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE Email = :identifier AND IsActive =
TRUE AND profileId=:p.id];
        if (!users.isEmpty() && users.size() == 1) {
            // User must have verified email before using this verification method. We
cannot send messages to unverified emails.
            // You can check if the user has email verified bit on and add the password
verification method as fallback.
            List<TwoFactorMethodsInfo> verifiedInfo = [SELECT HasUserVerifiedEmailAddress
 FROM TwoFactorMethodsInfo WHERE UserId = :users[0].Id];
            if (!verifiedInfo.isEmpty() && verifiedInfo[0].HasUserVerifiedEmailAddress ==
 true) {
                // Use email verification method if the user's email is verified.
                return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
            } else {
                // Use password verification method as fallback if the user's email is
unverified.
              return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.PASSWORD, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
            }
        } else {
            throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No unique user found. User count=' +
users.size());
        }
    }
    if (identifier != null) {
        String formattedSms = getFormattedSms(identifier);
        if (formattedSms != null) {
            // Ensure uniqueness by profile
            Profile p = [SELECT id FROM profile WHERE name = 'External Identity User'];
            List<User> users = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE MobilePhone = :formattedSms AND
 IsActive = TRUE AND profileId=:p.id];
            if (!users.isEmpty() && users.size() == 1) {
                // User must have verified SMS before using this verification method. We
cannot send messages to unverified mobile numbers.
               // You can check if the user has mobile verified bit on or add the password
 verification method as fallback.
              List<TwoFactorMethodsInfo> verifiedInfo = [SELECT HasUserVerifiedMobileNumber
 FROM TwoFactorMethodsInfo WHERE UserId = :users[0].Id];
               if (!verifiedInfo.isEmpty() && verifiedInfo[0].HasUserVerifiedMobileNumber
 == true) {
                  // Use SMS verification method if the user's mobile number is verified.

                  return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, startUrl,
 requestAttributes);
                } else {
                  // Use password verification method as fallback if the user's mobile
number is unverified.
```

```
                    return discoveryResult(users[0], Auth.VerificationMethod.PASSWORD,
startUrl, requestAttributes);
                }
            } else {
                throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No unique user found. User count='
 + users.size());
            }
        }
    }
    if (identifier != null) {
        // You can customize the code to find user via other attributes, such as SSN or
Federation ID
    }
    throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('Invalid Identifier');
}

private boolean isValidEmail(String identifier) {
    String emailRegex =
'^[a-zA-Z0-9._|\\\\%#~`=?&/$^*!}{+-]+@[a-zA-Z0-9.-]+\\.[a-zA-Z]{2,4}$';
    // source: http://www.regular-expressions.info/email.html
    Pattern EmailPattern = Pattern.compile(emailRegex);
    Matcher EmailMatcher = EmailPattern.matcher(identifier);
    if (EmailMatcher.matches()) { return true; }
    else { return false; }
}

private String getFormattedSms(String identifier) {
    // Accept SMS input formats with 1 or 2 digits country code, 3 digits area code and 7
 digits number
    // You can customize the SMS regex to allow different formats
   String smsRegex = '^(\\+?\\d{1,2}?[\\s-])?(\\(?\\d{3}\\)?[\\s-]?\\d{3}[\\s-]?\\d{4})$';

    Pattern smsPattern = Pattern.compile(smsRegex);
    Matcher smsMatcher = SmsPattern.matcher(identifier);
    if (smsMatcher.matches()) {
        try {
            // Format user input into the verified SMS format '+xx xxxxxxxxxx' before DB
lookup
            // Append US country code +1 by default if no country code is provided
           String countryCode = smsMatcher.group(1) == null ? '+1' : smsMatcher.group(1);

          return System.UserManagement.formatPhoneNumber(countryCode, smsMatcher.group(2));

        } catch(System.InvalidParameterValueException e) {
            return null;
        }
    } else { return null; }
}

private PageReference getSsoRedirect(User user, String startUrl, Map<String, String>
requestAttributes) {
    // You can look up if the user should log in with SAML or an Auth Provider and return
 the URL to initialize SSO.
    return null;
```

```
}

private PageReference discoveryResult(User user, Auth.VerificationMethod method, String
startUrl, Map<String, String> requestAttributes) {
    //Only users with an External Identity or community license can login using
Site.passwordlessLogin
    //Use getSsoRedirect to enable your org employees to log in to an Experience Cloud
site
    PageReference ssoRedirect = getSsoRedirect(user, startUrl, requestAttributes);
    if (ssoRedirect != null) {
        return ssoRedirect;
    } else {
        if (method != null) {
            List<Auth.VerificationMethod> methods = new List<Auth.VerificationMethod>();
            methods.add(method);
            PageReference pwdlessRedirect = Site.passwordlessLogin(user.Id, methods,
startUrl);
            if (pwdlessRedirect != null) {
                return pwdlessRedirect;
            } else {
               throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No Passwordless Login redirect URL
 returned for verification method: ' + method);
            }
        } else {
            throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No method found');
        }
    }
}
}
```

LoginDiscoveryMethod Enum

Contains methods used to verify the user's identity when the My Domain login process uses Login Discovery.

Usage

Specifies the verification method used to authenticate internal users when My Domain is set up for Login Discovery.

Enum Values

`Auth.LoginDiscoveryMethod` enum has the following values.

Value	Description
`LIGHTNING_LOGIN`	Verify identity by Lightning Login, which lets internal users log in with Salesforce Authenticator.
`PASSWORD`	Verify identity by entering a password.

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Interface

The handler used to implement the My Domain Login Discovery page, which is an interview-based (two-step) login process. First the user is prompted for a unique identifier such as an email address or phone number. Then the handler determines (discovers) how to authenticate the user. Either the user enters a password or is directed to an identity provider's login page.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

Implement `MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` to let My Domain users log in with something other than their username and password. This handler contains the logic to look up the user based on the identifier value entered on the login page. The `Auth.MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler.login` method is invoked when the identifier page is submitted and finds the user that corresponds to the submitted identifier. The `Auth.SessionManagement.finishLoginDiscovery` method sends the user to the authentication mechanism and then logs in the user.

Register the handler from the My Domain Setup page. Under Authentication Configuration, select the **Discovery** Login Page Type. For Login Discovery Handler, select this handler from the list of Apex classes.

For an example, see MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation. For more details, search for My Domain Login Discovery in *Salesforce Help*.

IN THIS SECTION:

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Method

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Method

`MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` has the following method.

IN THIS SECTION:

login(identifier, startUrl, requestAttributes)
Log in a Salesforce user given the specified identifier, such as email or phone number. If successful, redirect the user to the page specified by the start URL.

`login(identifier, startUrl, requestAttributes)`

Log in a Salesforce user given the specified identifier, such as email or phone number. If successful, redirect the user to the page specified by the start URL.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference login(String identifier, String startUrl, Map<String,String>
requestAttributes)
```

Parameters

identifier
Type: String

Identifier the Salesforce user entered at the login prompt, for example, an email address or phone number.

startUrl
Type: String

The page users see after successfully logging in to the My Domain subdomain.

requestAttributes
Type: Map <String, String>

Information about the login request based on the user's browser state when accessing the login page. `requestAttributes` passes in the MyDomainUrl, IpAddress, UserAgent, Platform, Application, City, Country, and Subdivision values. The City, Country, and Subdivision values come from IP address geolocation.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

The URL of the page where the user is redirected to complete authentication.

Example

Here's a sample `requestAttributes` response.

```
CommunityUrl=http://my-dev-ed.my.salesforce.com:5555/discover
IpAddress=55.255.0.0
UserAgent=Mozilla/5.0 (Macintosh; Intel Mac OS X 10_13_4) AppleWebKit/605.1.15 (KHTML,
like Gecko) Version/11.1 Safari/605.1.15
Platform=Mac OSX
Application=Browser
City=San Mateo
Country=United States
Subdivision=California
```

MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation

Here's an example of the `Auth.MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` interface. This sample class contains the default logic for My Domain login discovery using password authentication. You can customize the code to ensure it meets your needs. The requestAttributes parameter provides additional information that you can use in the discovery logic. Attributes include MyDomainUrl, IpAddress, UserAgent, and location information (such as Country and City). Use `Auth.DiscoveryCustomErrorException` to throw custom errors to display on the login page.

To implement this interface, the My Domain login page type must be set to Discovery.

```
// This sample class contains the default logic for My Domain login discovery by password.
// You can customize the code to ensure it meets your needs. The requestAttributes parameter
// provides additional information you can use in the discovery logic. Attributes include MyDomainUrl,
// IpAddress, UserAgent, and location information (such as Country and City).
// Use Auth.DiscoveryCustomErrorException to throw custom errors which will be shown on login page.
 global class MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler implements Auth.MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler {
 global PageReference login(String identifier, String startUrl, Map<String, String> requestAttributes)
{
```

```
   if (identifier != null) {
        // Search for user by email
       List<User> users = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE Email = :identifier AND IsActive = TRUE];
        if (!users.isEmpty() && users.size() == 1) {
            return discoveryResult(users[0], startUrl, requestAttributes);
        } else {
         throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('No unique user found. User count=' + users.size());
        }
    }
    throw new Auth.LoginDiscoveryException('Invalid Identifier');
  }

private PageReference getSsoRedirect(User user, String startUrl, Map<String, String> requestAttributes) {
   // You can look up if the user should log in with SAML or an Auth Provider and return the URL to initialize SSO. For example:
    // SamlSsoConfig SSO = [select Id from SamlSsoConfig where DeveloperName='SamlTest' limit 1];

    // To get the URL for a My Domain subdomain, you can pass null in the communityURL
parameter.
    // String ssoUrl = Auth.AuthConfiguration.getSamlSsoUrl(null, startUrl, SSO.Id);
    // return new PageReference(ssoUrl);
    return null;
  }

private PageReference discoveryResult(User user, String startUrl, Map<String, String> requestAttributes)

     {
     PageReference ssoRedirect = getSsoRedirect(user, startUrl, requestAttributes);
      if (ssoRedirect != null) {
        return ssoRedirect;
      }
      else {
      return Auth.SessionManagement.finishLoginDiscovery(Auth.LoginDiscoveryMethod.password, user.Id);
      }
   }
}
```

Test Class for MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler Class

The following is the test class for MyDomainDiscoveryLoginHandler. For the test to work, your org must have the My Domain login page type set to Discovery.

```
// Test class for MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler
@isTest
class MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandlerTest {
    /* Test Discoverable handler login.
       Create a user with specific email identifier and invoke login.
       Expected : User should be discovered and pagereference should be returned.
     */
    @isTest static void testLogin() {
        // Create user
        String identifierEmail = getUniqueName() + '@test.org';
        createTestUser(identifierEmail);
        Map<String, String> requestAttributes = new Map<String, String>();
        String startUrl = '';
```

```
  MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler myDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler = new MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler();
    // Invoke login method from handler with the email of user created
 PageReference  pageReference = myDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler.login(identifierEmail, startUrl, requestAttributes);
    // Asser page reference is returned
    System.assertNotEquals(null, pageReference, 'Page reference was not returned');
}
/* Test Discoverable handler login with invalid (non-existing) user.
    Expected : Auth.LoginDiscoveryException
 */
@isTest static void testLoginWithInvalidUser() {
    try {
        Map<String, String> requestAttributes = new Map<String, String>();
        String startUrl = '';
        String uniqueName = getUniqueName();
        String email = uniqueName + '@test.org';
    MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler myDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler = new MyDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler();
        // Invoke login method from handler with non-existing user
        myDomainDiscLoginDefaultHandler.login(email, startUrl, requestAttributes);
    }catch (Auth.LoginDiscoveryException loginDiscoveryException) {
        // Assert exception message
   System.assert(loginDiscoveryException.getMessage().contains('No unique user found'), 'message=' + loginDiscoveryException.getMessage());
    }
}
/*
   Generate a random name
 */
private static String getUniqueName() {
    String orgId = UserInfo.getOrganizationId();
  String dateString = String.valueof(Datetime.now()).replace(' ','').replace(':','').replace('-','');
    Integer randomInt = Integer.valueOf(math.rint(math.random()*1000000));
    String uniqueName = orgId + dateString + randomInt;
    return uniqueName;
}
/*
  Create user with given email.
 */
private static void createTestUser(String identifierEmail)
{
    String uniqueName = getUniqueName();
    Profile pf = [SELECT Id FROM Profile WHERE Name='Standard User'];
    String profileID = pf.Id;
    String fName = 'fname';
    String lName = uniqueName + '-lname';
    User tuser = new User(  firstname = fName,
                            lastName = lName,
                            email = identifierEmail,
                            Username = uniqueName + '@test.org',
                            EmailEncodingKey = 'ISO-8859-1',
                            Alias = uniqueName.substring(18, 23),
                            TimeZoneSidKey = 'America/Los_Angeles',
                            LocaleSidKey = 'en_US',
                            LanguageLocaleKey = 'en_US',
                            ProfileId = profileID);
    insert tuser;
```

```
    }
}
```

OAuthRefreshResult Class

Stores the result of an `AuthProviderPluginClass` refresh method. OAuth authentication flow provides a refresh token that can be used to get a new access token. Access tokens have a limited lifetime as specified by the session timeout value. When an access token expires, use a refresh token to get a new access token.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

The `OAuthRefreshResult` class contains the parameters, `accessToken`, `refreshToken`, and `error`, all of which are of type `string`. For a code example, see Auth Exceptions.

IN THIS SECTION:

OAuthRefreshResult Constructors

OAuthRefreshResult Properties

OAuthRefreshResult Constructors

The following are constructors for `OAuthRefreshResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

OAuthRefreshResult(accessToken, refreshToken, error)

Creates an instance of the `OAuthRefreshResult` class using the specified access token, refresh token, and error for a custom authentication provider plug-in.

OAuthRefreshResult(accessToken, refreshToken)

Creates an instance of the `OAuthRefreshResult` class using the specified access token and refresh token for a custom authentication provider plug-in. Use this method when you know that the refresh was successful.

`OAuthRefreshResult(accessToken, refreshToken, error)`

Creates an instance of the `OAuthRefreshResult` class using the specified access token, refresh token, and error for a custom authentication provider plug-in.

Signature

```
public OAuthRefreshResult(String accessToken, String refreshToken, String error)
```

Parameters

accessToken
Type: String

OAuth access token for the user who is currently logged in.

refreshToken
Type: String

OAuth refresh token for the user who is currently logged in.

error
Type: String

Error that occurred when a user attempted to authenticate with the custom authentication provider.

`OAuthRefreshResult(accessToken, refreshToken)`

Creates an instance of the `OAuthRefreshResult` class using the specified access token and refresh token for a custom authentication provider plug-in. Use this method when you know that the refresh was successful.

Signature

```
public OAuthRefreshResult(String accessToken, String refreshToken)
```

Parameters

accessToken
Type: String

The OAuth access token for the user who is logged in.

refreshToken
Type: String

The OAuth refresh token for the user who is logged in.

OAuthRefreshResult Properties

The following are properties for `OAuthRefreshResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accessToken
The OAuth access token for the user who is currently logged in.

error
Error that occurs when a user unsuccessfully attempts to authenticate with the custom authentication provider.

refreshToken
The OAuth refresh token for the user who is currently logged in.

`accessToken`

The OAuth access token for the user who is currently logged in.

Signature

```
public String accessToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

error

Error that occurs when a user unsuccessfully attempts to authenticate with the custom authentication provider.

Signature

```
public String error {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

refreshToken

The OAuth refresh token for the user who is currently logged in.

Signature

```
public String refreshToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

RegistrationHandler Interface

Salesforce provides the ability to use an authentication provider, such as Facebook© or Janrain©, for single sign-on into Salesforce.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

To set up single sign-on, you must create a class that implements `Auth.RegistrationHandler`. Classes implementing the `Auth.RegistrationHandler` interface are specified as the `Registration Handler` in authorization provider definitions, and enable single sign-on into Salesforce portals and organizations from third-party services such as Facebook. Using information from the authentication providers, your class must perform the logic of creating and updating user data as appropriate, including any associated account and contact records.

IN THIS SECTION:

RegistrationHandler Methods

Storing User Information and Getting Access Tokens

Auth.RegistrationHandler Example Implementation

Auth.RegistrationHandler Error Example

This example implements the `Auth.RegistrationHandler` interface and shows how to use a custom exception to display an error message in the URL of the page. If you don't use a custom exception, the error code and description appear in the URL and the error description appears on the page.

RegistrationHandler Methods

The following are methods for `RegistrationHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

createUser(portalId, userData)

Returns a User object using the specified portal ID and user information from the third party, such as the username and email address. The User object corresponds to the third party's user information and may be a new user that hasn't been inserted in the database or may represent an existing user record in the database.

updateUser(userId, portalId, userData)

Updates the specified user's information. This method is called if the user has logged in before with the authorization provider and then logs in again.

`createUser(portalId, userData)`

Returns a User object using the specified portal ID and user information from the third party, such as the username and email address. The User object corresponds to the third party's user information and may be a new user that hasn't been inserted in the database or may represent an existing user record in the database.

Signature

```
public User createUser(ID portalId, Auth.UserData userData)
```

Parameters

portalId
Type: ID

userData
Type: Auth.UserData

Return Value

Type: User

Usage

The *portalID* value may be null or an empty key if there is no portal configured with this provider.

updateUser(userId, portalId, userData)

Updates the specified user's information. This method is called if the user has logged in before with the authorization provider and then logs in again.

Signature

```
public Void updateUser(ID userId, ID portalId, Auth.UserData userData)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: ID

portalId
Type: ID

userData
Type: Auth.UserData

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The *portalID* value may be null or an empty key if there is no portal configured with this provider.

Storing User Information and Getting Access Tokens

The `Auth.UserData` class is used to store user information for `Auth.RegistrationHandler`. The third-party authorization provider can send back a large collection of data about the user, including their username, email address, locale, and so on. Frequently used data is converted into a common format with the `Auth.UserData` class and sent to the registration handler.

If the registration handler wants to use the rest of the data, the `Auth.UserData` class has an `attributeMap` variable. The attribute map is a map of strings (`Map<String, String>`) for the raw values of all the data from the third party. Because the map is `<String, String>`, values that the third party returns that are not strings (like an array of URLs or a map) are converted into an appropriate string representation. The map includes everything returned by the third-party authorization provider, including the items automatically converted into the common format.

The constructor for `Auth.UserData` has the following syntax:

```
Auth.UserData(String identifier,
              String firstName,
              String lastName,
              String fullName,
              String email,
              String link,
              String userName,
              String locale,
              String provider,
              String siteLoginUrl,
              Map<String, String> attributeMap)
```

To learn about `Auth.UserData` properties, see Auth.UserData Class.

Note: You can only perform DML operations on additional sObjects in the same transaction with User objects under certain circumstances. For more information, see sObjects That Cannot Be Used Together in DML Operations.

For all authentication providers except Janrain, after a user is authenticated using a provider, the access token associated with that provider for this user can be obtained in Apex using the `Auth.AuthToken` Apex class. `Auth.AuthToken` provides two methods to retrieve access tokens. One is `getAccessToken`, which obtains a single access token. Use this method if the user ID is mapped to a single third-party user. If the user ID is mapped to multiple third-party users, use `getAccessTokenMap`, which returns a map of access tokens for each third-party user. For more information about authentication providers, see "Authentication Providers" in the Salesforce online help.

When using Janrain as an authentication provider, you need to use the Janrain `accessCredentials` dictionary values to retrieve the access token or its equivalent. Only some providers supported by Janrain provide an access token, while other providers use other fields. The Janrain `accessCredentials` fields are returned in the `attributeMap` variable of the `Auth.UserData` class. See the Janrain `auth_info` documentation for more information on `accessCredentials`.

Note: Not all Janrain account types return `accessCredentials`. You may need to change your account type to receive the information.

To learn about the `Auth.AuthToken` methods, see Auth.AuthToken Class.

Auth.RegistrationHandler Example Implementation

This example implements the `Auth.RegistrationHandler` interface that creates as well as updates a standard user based on data provided by the authorization provider. Error checking has been omitted to keep the example simple.

```
global class StandardUserRegistrationHandler implements Auth.RegistrationHandler{
global User createUser(Id portalId, Auth.UserData data){
    User u = new User();
    Profile p = [SELECT Id FROM profile WHERE name='Standard User'];
    u.username = data.username + '@salesforce.com';
    u.email = data.email;
    u.lastName = data.lastName;
    u.firstName = data.firstName;
    String alias = data.username;
    if(alias.length() > 8) {
        alias = alias.substring(0, 8);
    }
    u.alias = alias;
    u.languagelocalekey = data.attributeMap.get('language');
    u.localesidkey = data.locale;
    u.emailEncodingKey = 'UTF-8';
    u.timeZoneSidKey = 'America/Los_Angeles';
    u.profileId = p.Id;
    return u;
}

global void updateUser(Id userId, Id portalId, Auth.UserData data){
    User u = new User(id=userId);
    u.username = data.username + '@salesforce.com';
    u.email = data.email;
    u.lastName = data.lastName;
    u.firstName = data.firstName;
    String alias = data.username;
```

```
    if(alias.length() > 8) {
        alias = alias.substring(0, 8);
    }
    u.alias = alias;
    u.languagelocalekey = data.attributeMap.get('language');
    u.localesidkey = data.locale;
    update(u);
}
}
```

The following example tests the above code.

```
@isTest
private class StandardUserRegistrationHandlerTest {
static testMethod void testCreateAndUpdateUser() {
    StandardUserRegistrationHandler handler = new StandardUserRegistrationHandler();
    Auth.UserData sampleData = new Auth.UserData('testId', 'testFirst', 'testLast',
        'testFirst testLast', 'testuser@example.org', null, 'testuserlong', 'en_US',
'facebook',
        null, new Map<String, String>{'language' => 'en_US'});
    User u = handler.createUser(null, sampleData);
    System.assertEquals('testuserlong@salesforce.com', u.userName);
    System.assertEquals('testuser@example.org', u.email);
    System.assertEquals('testLast', u.lastName);
    System.assertEquals('testFirst', u.firstName);
    System.assertEquals('testuser', u.alias);
    insert(u);
    String uid = u.id;

    sampleData = new Auth.UserData('testNewId', 'testNewFirst', 'testNewLast',
        'testNewFirst testNewLast', 'testnewuser@example.org', null, 'testnewuserlong',
'en_US', 'facebook',
        null, new Map<String, String>{});
    handler.updateUser(uid, null, sampleData);

    User updatedUser = [SELECT userName, email, firstName, lastName, alias FROM user WHERE
 id=:uid];
    System.assertEquals('testnewuserlong@salesforce.com', updatedUser.userName);
    System.assertEquals('testnewuser@example.org', updatedUser.email);
    System.assertEquals('testNewLast', updatedUser.lastName);
    System.assertEquals('testNewFirst', updatedUser.firstName);
    System.assertEquals('testnewu', updatedUser.alias);
}
}
```

Auth.RegistrationHandler Error Example

This example implements the `Auth.RegistrationHandler` interface and shows how to use a custom exception to display an error message in the URL of the page. If you don't use a custom exception, the error code and description appear in the URL and the error description appears on the page.

To limit this example to the custom exception, some code was omitted.

```
global class RegHandler implements Auth.RegistrationHandler {
```

```
    class RegHandlerException extends Exception {}

        global User createUser(Id portalId, Auth.UserData data){
            List<Profile> profiles = [SELECT Id, Name, UserType FROM Profile WHERE Name =
 'Power User'];
            Profile profile = profiles.isEmpty() ? null : profiles[0];
            if(profile==null)
               throw new RegHandlerException('Cannot find the profile. For help, contact
your administrator.');
...
        }

        global void updateUser(Id userId, Id portalId, Auth.UserData data){
            User u = new User(id=userId);
            u.lastName = data.lastName;
            u.firstName = data.firstName;
            update(u);
        }
}
```

SamlJitHandler Interface

Use this interface to control and customize Just-in-Time user provisioning logic during SAML single sign-on.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

To use custom logic for user provisioning during SAML single sign-on, you must create a class that implements `Auth.SamlJitHandler`. This allows you to incorporate organization-specific logic (such as populating custom fields) when users log in to Salesforce with single sign-on. Keep in mind that your class must perform the logic of creating and updating user data as appropriate, including any associated account and contact records.

In Salesforce, you specify your class that implements this interface in the `SAML JIT Handler` field in SAML Single Sign-On Settings. Make sure that the user you specify to run the class has "Manage Users" permission.

IN THIS SECTION:

SamlJitHandler Methods

SamlJitHandler Example Implementation

SamlJitHandler Methods

The following are methods for `SamlJitHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

createUser(samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId, federationId, attributes, assertion)
Returns a User object using the specified Federation ID. The User object corresponds to the user information. This object may be a new user that hasn't been inserted in the database or it may represent an existing user record in the database.

updateUser(userId, samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId, federationId, attributes, assertion)
Updates the specified user's information. This method is called if the user has logged in before with SAML single sign-on and then logs in again, or if your application is using the `Existing User Linking URL`.

createUser(samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId, federationId, attributes, assertion)

Returns a User object using the specified Federation ID. The User object corresponds to the user information. This object may be a new user that hasn't been inserted in the database or it may represent an existing user record in the database.

Signature

```
public User createUser(Id samlSsoProviderId, Id communityId, Id portalId, String
federationId, Map<String,String> attributes, String assertion)
```

Parameters

samlSsoProviderId
Type: Id

The ID of the SamlSsoConfig standard object.

communityId
Type: Id

The ID of the Experience Cloud site. This parameter can be `null` if you're not creating an Experience Cloud user.

portalId
Type: Id

The ID of the portal. This parameter can be `null` if you're not creating a portal user.

federationId
Type: String

The ID Salesforce expects to be used for this user.

attributes
Type: Map<String,String>

All attributes in the SAML assertion that were added to the default assertion; for example, custom attributes. Attributes are case-sensitive.

assertion
Type: String

The default SAML assertion, base-64 encoded.

Return Value

Type: User

A User sObject.

Usage

The *communityId* and *portalId* parameter values may be `null` or an empty key if there's no Experience Cloud site or portal configured with this organization.

updateUser(userId, samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId, federationId, attributes, assertion)

Updates the specified user's information. This method is called if the user has logged in before with SAML single sign-on and then logs in again, or if your application is using the `Existing User Linking URL`.

Signature

```
public void updateUser(Id userId, Id samlSsoProviderId, Id communityId, Id portalId,
String federationId, Map<String,String> attributes, String assertion)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The ID of the Salesforce user.

samlSsoProviderId
Type: Id

The ID of the SamlSsoConfig object.

communityId
Type: Id

The ID of the Experience Cloud site. This type can be `null` if you're not updating an Experience Cloud user.

portalId
Type: Id

The ID of the portal. This type can be `null` if you're not updating a portal user.

federationId
Type: String

The ID Salesforce expects to be used for this user.

attributes
Type: Map<String,String>

All attributes in the SAML assertion that were added to the default assertion; for example, custom attributes. Attributes are case-sensitive.

assertion
Type: String

The default SAML assertion, base-64 encoded.

Return Value

Type: void

SamlJitHandler Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `Auth.SamlJitHandler` interface. This code uses private methods to handle accounts and contacts (handleContact() and handleAccount()), which aren't included in this example.

```
global class StandardUserHandler implements Auth.SamlJitHandler {
    private class JitException extends Exception{}
    private void handleUser(boolean create, User u, Map<String, String> attributes,
        String federationIdentifier, boolean isStandard) {
        if(create && attributes.containsKey('User.Username')) {
            u.Username = attributes.get('User.Username');
        }
        if(create) {
            if(attributes.containsKey('User.FederationIdentifier')) {
                u.FederationIdentifier = attributes.get('User.FederationIdentifier');
            } else {
                u.FederationIdentifier = federationIdentifier;
            }
        }
        if(attributes.containsKey('User.ProfileId')) {
            String profileId = attributes.get('User.ProfileId');
            Profile p = [SELECT Id FROM Profile WHERE Id=:profileId];
            u.ProfileId = p.Id;
        }
        if(attributes.containsKey('User.UserRoleId')) {
            String userRole = attributes.get('User.UserRoleId');
            UserRole r = [SELECT Id FROM UserRole WHERE Id=:userRole];
            u.UserRoleId = r.Id;
        }
        if(attributes.containsKey('User.Phone')) {
            u.Phone = attributes.get('User.Phone');
        }
        if(attributes.containsKey('User.Email')) {
            u.Email = attributes.get('User.Email');
        }

 //More attributes here - removed for length

        //Handle custom fields here

        if(!create) {
            update(u);
        }
    }

    private void handleJit(boolean create, User u, Id samlSsoProviderId, Id communityId,
Id portalId,
        String federationIdentifier, Map<String, String> attributes, String assertion) {
        if(communityId != null || portalId != null) {
            String account = handleAccount(create, u, attributes);
```

```
            handleContact(create, account, u, attributes);
            handleUser(create, u, attributes, federationIdentifier, false);
        } else {
            handleUser(create, u, attributes, federationIdentifier, true);
        }
    }

    global User createUser(Id samlSsoProviderId, Id communityId, Id portalId,
        String federationIdentifier, Map<String, String> attributes, String assertion) {
        User u = new User();
        handleJit(true, u, samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId,
            federationIdentifier, attributes, assertion);
        return u;
    }

    global void updateUser(Id userId, Id samlSsoProviderId, Id communityId, Id portalId,
        String federationIdentifier, Map<String, String> attributes, String assertion) {
        User u = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE Id=:userId];
        handleJit(false, u, samlSsoProviderId, communityId, portalId,
            federationIdentifier, attributes, assertion);
    }
}
```

SessionManagement Class

Contains methods for verifying users' identity, creating custom login flows, customizing security levels, and defining trusted IP ranges for a current session.

Namespace

Auth

IN THIS SECTION:

SessionManagement Methods

SessionManagement Methods

The following are methods for `SessionManagement`. All methods are static. Use these methods to customize your user identity verification flows, manage the use of time-based one-time password (TOTP) apps like Google Authenticator, or create custom login flows. Other methods validate a user's incoming IP address against trusted IP range settings for an organization or profile.

IN THIS SECTION:

finishLoginDiscovery(method, userId)

Finishes the My Domain Login Discovery login process.

finishLoginFlow()

Finish the Visualforce Page login flow process, and redirect the user to the default home page.

finishLoginFlow(startUrl)

Finish the Visualforce Page login flow process, and redirect the user to the specified start URL.

generateVerificationUrl(policy, description, destinationUrl)

Initiates a user identity verification flow with the verification method that the user registered with, and returns a URL to the identity verification screen. For example, if you have a custom Visualforce page that displays sensitive account details, you can prompt the user to verify identity before viewing it.

getCurrentSession()

Returns a map of attributes for the current session.

getLightningLoginEligibility(userId)

Returns the eligibility status for a user who's logging in with Lightning Login when you set up your org with My Domain and use the Login Discovery page type. Use this method to redirect the user to a custom login flow. For example, use after a login attempt to redirect the user to password flow if the user is ineligible for Lightning Login.

getQrCode()

Returns a map containing a URL to a quick response (QR) code and a time-based one-time password (TOTP) shared secret to configure authenticator apps or devices for multi-factor authentication (MFA).

getRequiredSessionLevelForProfile(profileId)

Indicates the required login security session level for the given profile.

ignoreForConcurrentSessionLimit(sessions)

This method is reserved for internal Salesforce use.

inOrgNetworkRange(ipAddress)

Indicates whether the given IP address is within the organization's trusted IP range according to the organization's Network Access settings.

isIpAllowedForProfile(profileId, ipAddress)

Indicates whether the given IP address is within the trusted IP range for the given profile.

setSessionLevel(level)

Sets the user's current session security level.

validateTotpTokenForKey(sharedKey, totpCode)

Deprecated. Use `validateTotpTokenForKey(totpSharedKey, totpCode, description)` instead.

validateTotpTokenForKey(totpSharedKey, totpCode, description)

Indicates whether a time-based one-time password (TOTP) code (token) is valid for the given shared key.

validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode)

Deprecated. Use `validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode, description)` instead.

validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode, description)

Indicates whether a time-based one-time password (TOTP) code (token) is valid for the current user.

verifyDeviceFlow(userCode, startUrl)

Verifies the user code entered during the device authentication flow and redirects users to the OAuth approval page. If users aren't logged in, they must log in. After successful login, users are prompted to allow the device to access Salesforce data.

`finishLoginDiscovery(method, userId)`

Finishes the My Domain Login Discovery login process.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference finishLoginDiscovery(Auth.LoginDiscoveryMethod
method, Id userId)
```

Parameters

method
Type: Auth.LoginDiscoveryMethod LoginDiscoveryMethod Enum

Verification method used with My Domain Login Discovery.

userId
Type: Id

ID used to log in the user. The user must be active.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

Include this method when implementing the `MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` interface to direct users to an authentication mechanism, and then log them in. If users enter a username in the login page, they are sent to the password page for authentication. If users are enrolled in Lightning Login, they are directed to the Salesforce Authenticator to authenticate. If users are SSO-enabled, they are sent to the suitable identity provider (IdP) to authenticate.

The calling user requires Manage Users permission. If the user passed in is frozen or inactive, the method throws an exception.

After implementing the `MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` interface, register the Login Discovery handler from the My Domain Setup page. Under Authentication Configuration, select this handler from the list of Apex classes.

`finishLoginFlow()`

Finish the Visualforce Page login flow process, and redirect the user to the default home page.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference finishLoginFlow()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

Include this method in the Apex controller of the Visualforce Page login flow when creating login flows programmatically. This method indicates that the login flow is finished and redirects the user to the Experience Cloud site's default home page. The login process runs in a restricted session until users complete the process. Calling this method indicates that the login flow is complete, lifts the restriction, and gives users full access to the Experience Cloud site.

`finishLoginFlow(startUrl)`

Finish the Visualforce Page login flow process, and redirect the user to the specified start URL.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference finishLoginFlow(String startUrl)
```

Parameters

`startUrl`
Type: String

Path to the page that users see when they access the Experience Cloud site.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

Include this method in the Apex controller of the Visualforce Page login flow when creating login flows programmatically. This method indicates that the login flow is finished and redirects the user to the specified location in the Experience Cloud site. The login process runs in a restricted session until users complete the process. Calling this method indicates that the login flow is complete, lifts the restriction, and gives users full access to the Experience Cloud site.

`generateVerificationUrl(policy, description, destinationUrl)`

Initiates a user identity verification flow with the verification method that the user registered with, and returns a URL to the identity verification screen. For example, if you have a custom Visualforce page that displays sensitive account details, you can prompt the user to verify identity before viewing it.

Signature

```
public static String generateVerificationUrl(Auth.VerificationPolicy policy, String
description, String destinationUrl)
```

Parameters

`policy`
Type: Auth.VerificationPolicy

The session security policy required to initiate identity verification for the user's session. For example, if the policy is set to High Assurance level of session security, and the user's current session has the standard level of session security, the user's session is raised to high assurance after successful verification of identity. In the Setup user interface, this value is shown in the Triggered By column of Identity Verification History.

`description`
Type: String

The custom description that describes the activity requiring identity verification; for example, "Complete purchase and check out". This text appears to users when they verify their identity in Salesforce and, if they use Salesforce Authenticator version 2 or later, in

the Salesforce Authenticator mobile app. In addition, in the Setup user interface, this text is shown in the Activity Message column of Identity Verification History.

destinationUrl
Type: String

The relative or absolute Salesforce URL that you want to redirect the user to after identity verification—for example, `/apex/mypage`. The user is redirected to *destinationUrl* when the identity verification flow is complete, regardless of success. For example, if a user chooses to not respond to the identity challenge and cancels it, the user is still redirected to *destinationUrl*. As a best practice, ensure that your code for this page manually checks that the security policy was satisfied (and the user didn't just manually type the URL in the browser). For example, if the *policy* is High Assurance, the target page checks that the user's session is high assurance before allowing access.

Return Value

Type: String

The URL where the user is redirected to verify identity.

Usage

- If the user is already registered to confirm identity using a time-based one-time password (TOTP), then the user is redirected to the one-time password identity verification flow and asked to provide a code.
- If the user isn't registered with any verification method (such as one-time password or Salesforce Authenticator version 2 or later), the user is prompted to download and verify identity using Salesforce Authenticator. The user can also choose a different verification method.

getCurrentSession()

Returns a map of attributes for the current session.

Signature

```
public static Map<String, String> getCurrentSession()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

Usage

The map includes a `ParentId` value, which is the 18-character ID for the parent session, if one exists (for example, if the current session is for a canvas app). If the current session doesn't have a parent, this value is null. The map also includes the `LogoutUrl` assigned to the current session.

If you create an Apex test method that calls this method, the test fails with an error such as, "Unexpected Exception: Current session unavailable." An error occurs because there isn't a session in the context through which the test is being run.

When a session is reused, Salesforce updates the `LoginHistoryId` with the value from the most recent login.

Example

The following example shows the name-value pairs in a map returned by `getCurrentSession()`. Note that `UsersId` includes an "s" in the name to match the name of the corresponding field in the AuthSession object.

```
{
SessionId=0Ak###############,
UserType=Standard,
ParentId=0Ak###############,
NumSecondsValid=7200,
LoginType=SAML Idp Initiated SSO,
LoginDomain=null,
LoginHistoryId=0Ya###############,
Username=user@domain.com,
CreatedDate=Wed Jul 30 19:09:29 GMT 2014,
SessionType=Visualforce,
LastModifiedDate=Wed Jul 30 19:09:16 GMT 2014,
LogoutUrl=https://google.com,
SessionSecurityLevel=STANDARD,
UsersId=005###############,
SourceIp=1.1.1.1
}
```

getLightningLoginEligibility(userId)

Returns the eligibility status for a user who's logging in with Lightning Login when you set up your org with My Domain and use the Login Discovery page type. Use this method to redirect the user to a custom login flow. For example, use after a login attempt to redirect the user to password flow if the user is ineligible for Lightning Login.

Signature

```
public static Auth.LightningLoginEligibility getLightningLoginEligibility(Id userId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

ID of the user who is logging in.

Return Value

Type: Auth.LightningLoginEligibility

Returns the current eligibility status.

Example

```
Auth.LightningLoginEligibility eligibility =
    Auth.SessionManagement.getLightningLoginEligibility(id);
if (eligibility == Auth.LightningLoginEligibility.ELIGIBLE) {
    // success
}
```

getQrCode()

Returns a map containing a URL to a quick response (QR) code and a time-based one-time password (TOTP) shared secret to configure authenticator apps or devices for multi-factor authentication (MFA).

Signature

```
public static Map<String, String> getQrCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

Usage

The QR code encodes the returned secret as well as the current user's username. The keys are `qrCodeUrl` and `secret`. Calling this method does not change any state for the user, nor does it read any state from the user. This method returns a brand new secret every time it is called, does not save that secret anywhere, and does not validate the TOTP token. The admin must explicitly save the values for the user after verifying a TOTP token with the secret.

The `secret` is a base32-encoded string of a 20-byte shared key.

Example

The following is an example of how to request the QR code.

```
public String getGetQRCode() {
        return getQRCode();
    }
    public String getQRCode() {
       Map<String, String> codeResult = Auth.SessionManagement.getQrCode();
       String result = 'URL: '+codeResult.get('qrCodeUrl') + ' SECRET:  ' +
codeResult.get('secret');
       return result;
    }
```

The following is an example of a returned map.

```
{qrCodeUrl=https://www.salesforce.com/secur/qrCode?w=200&h=200&t=tf&u=user%0000000000.com&s=AAAAA7B5BBBB5AAAAAAA66BBBB,

      secret=AAAAA7B5AAAAAA5BBBBBBBBB66AAA}
```

getRequiredSessionLevelForProfile(profileId)

Indicates the required login security session level for the given profile.

Signature

```
public static Auth.SessionLevel getRequiredSessionLevelForProfile(String profileId)
```

Parameters

profileId
Type: String

The 15-character profile ID.

Return Value

Type: Auth.SessionLevel

The session security level required at login for the profile with the ID *profileId*. You can customize the assignment of each level in Session Settings. For example, you can set the High Assurance level to apply only to users who authenticated with multi-factor authentication (MFA) or through a specific identity provider.

ignoreForConcurrentSessionLimit(sessions)

This method is reserved for internal Salesforce use.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,String> ignoreForConcurrentSessionLimit(Object sessions)
```

Parameters

sessions
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

inOrgNetworkRange(ipAddress)

Indicates whether the given IP address is within the organization's trusted IP range according to the organization's Network Access settings.

Signature

```
public static Boolean inOrgNetworkRange(String ipAddress)
```

Parameters

ipAddress
Type: String

The IP address to validate.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If a trusted IP range is not defined, this returns `false`, and throws an exception if the IP address is not valid.

Trusted IP Range Exists?	User is in the Trusted IP Range?	Return Value
Yes	Yes	`true`
Yes	No	`false`
No	N/A	`false`

`isIpAllowedForProfile(profileId, ipAddress)`

Indicates whether the given IP address is within the trusted IP range for the given profile.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isIpAllowedForProfile(String profileId, String ipAddress)
```

Parameters

`profileId`
Type: String

The 15-character alphanumeric string for the current user's profile ID.

`ipAddress`
Type: String

The IP address to validate.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If a trusted IP range is not defined, this returns `true`, and throws an exception if the IP address is not valid or if the profile ID is not valid.

Trusted IP Range Exists?	User is in the Trusted IP Range?	Return Value
Yes	Yes	`true`
Yes	No	`false`
No	N/A	`true`

`setSessionLevel(level)`

Sets the user's current session security level.

Signature

```
public static Void setSessionLevel(Auth.SessionLevel level)
```

Parameters

level
Type: Auth.SessionLevel

The session security level to assign to the user. The meaning of each level can be customized in the Session Settings for each organization, such as setting the High Assurance level to apply only to users who authenticated with multi-factor authentication (MFA) or through a specific identity provider.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This setting affects the session level of all sessions associated with the current session, such as Visualforce or UI access.

If you create an Apex test method that calls this method, the test fails with an error such as, "Unexpected Exception: Current session unavailable." An error occurs because there isn't a session in the context through which the test is being run.

Example

The following is an example class for setting the session level.

```
public class RaiseSessionLevel{
    public void setLevelHigh() {
        Auth.SessionManagement.setSessionLevel(Auth.SessionLevel.HIGH_ASSURANCE);
    }
    public void setLevelStandard() {
        Auth.SessionManagement.setSessionLevel(Auth.SessionLevel.STANDARD);
    }
}
```

validateTotpTokenForKey(sharedKey, totpCode)

Deprecated. Use `validateTotpTokenForKey(totpSharedKey, totpCode, description)` instead.

Signature

```
public static Boolean validateTotpTokenForKey(String sharedKey, String totpCode)
```

Parameters

sharedKey
Type: String

The shared (secret) key. The *sharedKey* must be a base32-encoded string of a 20-byte shared key.

totpCode
Type: String

The time-based one-time password (TOTP) code to validate.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the key is invalid or doesn't exist, this method throws an invalid parameter value exception or a no data found exception, respectively. If the current user exceeds the maximum of 10 token validation attempts, this method throws a security exception.

validateTotpTokenForKey(totpSharedKey, totpCode, description)

Indicates whether a time-based one-time password (TOTP) code (token) is valid for the given shared key.

Signature

```
public static Boolean validateTotpTokenForKey(String totpSharedKey, String totpCode,
String description)
```

Parameters

totpSharedKey
Type: String

The shared (secret) key. The *totpSharedKey* must be a base32-encoded string of a 20-byte shared key.

totpCode
Type: String

The time-based one-time password (TOTP) code to validate.

description
Type: String

The custom description that describes the activity requiring identity verification; for example, "Complete purchase and check out". In the Setup user interface, this text is shown in the Activity Message column of Identity Verification History. The *description* must be 128 characters or fewer. If you provide a value that's longer, it's truncated to 128 characters.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the key is invalid or doesn't exist, this method throws an invalid parameter value exception or a no data found exception, respectively. If the current user exceeds the maximum of 10 token validation attempts, this method throws a security exception.

validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode)

Deprecated. Use `validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode, description)` instead.

Signature

```
public static Boolean validateTotpTokenForUser(String totpCode)
```

Parameters

totpCode
Type: String

The time-based one-time password (TOTP) code to validate.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the current user does not have a TOTP code, this method throws an exception. If the current user has attempted too many validations, this method throws an exception.

validateTotpTokenForUser(totpCode, description)

Indicates whether a time-based one-time password (TOTP) code (token) is valid for the current user.

Signature

```
public static Boolean validateTotpTokenForUser(String totpCode, String description)
```

Parameters

totpCode
Type: String

The time-based one-time password (TOTP) code to validate.

description
Type: String

The custom description that describes the activity requiring identity verification; for example, "Complete purchase and check out". This text appears to users when they verify their identity in Salesforce and, if they use Salesforce Authenticator version 2 or later, in the Salesforce Authenticator mobile app. In addition, in the Setup user interface, this text is shown in the Activity Message column of Identity Verification History. The *description* must be 128 characters or fewer. If you provide a value that's longer, it's truncated to 128 characters.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the current user does not have a TOTP code, or if the current user has attempted too many validations, this method throws an exception.

verifyDeviceFlow(userCode, startUrl)

Verifies the user code entered during the device authentication flow and redirects users to the OAuth approval page. If users aren't logged in, they must log in. After successful login, users are prompted to allow the device to access Salesforce data.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference verifyDeviceFlow(String userCode, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

userCode
Type: String

Human-readable user code provided to the user by Salesforce. The user must enter this code at the verification URL to approve device access to Salesforce data.

startURL
Type: String

The URL for the page that the user is redirected to after successful login and approval of the device to access Salesforce data. If you don't specify a start URL, the user is redirected to the Home page.

Return Value

Type:System.PageReference

Usage

Include this method in the Apex controller when creating a custom Visualforce User Code Verification page for the OAuth 2.0 device authentication flow. This method verifies the user code, prompts the user to log in as needed, and prompts the user to allow the device access to Salesforce data. Upon successful verification and authentication, the user is redirected to the page defined by the start URL.

SessionLevel Enum

An `Auth.SessionLevel` enum value is used by the `SessionManagement.setSessionLevel` method.

Namespace

Auth

Enum Values

Value	Description
`LOW`	The user's security level for the current session meets the lowest requirements. Note: This low level is not available, nor used, in the Salesforce UI. User sessions through the Salesforce UI are either standard or high assurance. You can set this level using the API, but users assigned this level will experience unpredictable and reduced functionality in their Salesforce organization.
`STANDARD`	The user's security level for the current session meets the Standard requirements set in the current organization Session Security Levels.
`HIGH_ASSURANCE`	The user's security level for the current session meets the High Assurance requirements set in the current organization Session Security Levels.

Usage

With session-level security, you control user access to features that support it, such as connected apps and reporting. For example, you can customize an organization's Session Settings to require users to log in with multi-factor authentication (MFA) to get a High Assurance session. Then, you can restrict access to a specific connected app by requiring a High Assurance session level in the settings for the connected app.

UserData Class

Stores user information for `Auth.RegistrationHandler`.

Namespace

Auth

IN THIS SECTION:

UserData Constructors

UserData Properties

UserData Constructors

The following are constructors for `UserData`.

IN THIS SECTION:

UserData(identifier, firstName, lastName, fullName, email, link, userName, locale, provider, siteLoginUrl, attributeMap)
Creates a new instance of the `Auth.UserData` class using the specified arguments.

`UserData(identifier, firstName, lastName, fullName, email, link, userName, locale, provider, siteLoginUrl, attributeMap)`

Creates a new instance of the `Auth.UserData` class using the specified arguments.

Signature

```
public UserData(String identifier, String firstName, String lastName, String fullName,
String email, String link, String userName, String locale, String provider, String
siteLoginUrl, Map<String,String> attributeMap)
```

Parameters

identifier
Type: String

An identifier from the third party for the authenticated user, such as the Facebook user number or the Salesforce user ID.

firstName
Type: String

The first name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

lastName
Type: String

The last name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

fullName
Type: String

The full name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

email
Type: String

The email address of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

link
Type: String

A stable link for the authenticated user such as `https://www.facebook.com/MyUsername`.

userName
Type: String

The username of the authenticated user in the third party.

locale
Type: String

The standard locale string for the authenticated user.

provider
Type: String

The service used to log in, such as Facebook or Janrain.

siteLoginUrl
Type: String

The site login page URL passed in if used with a site; `null` otherwise.

attributeMap
Type: Map<String, String>

A map of data from the third party, in case the handler has to access non-standard values. For example, when using Janrain as a provider, the fields Janrain returns in its `accessCredentials` dictionary are placed into the `attributeMap`. These fields vary by provider.

UserData Properties

The following are properties for `UserData`.

IN THIS SECTION:

identifier
An identifier from the third party for the authenticated user, such as the Facebook user number or the Salesforce user ID.

firstName
The first name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

lastName
The last name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

fullName
The full name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

email
The email address of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

link
A stable link for the authenticated user such as `https://www.facebook.com/MyUsername`.

username
The username of the authenticated user in the third party.

locale
The standard locale string for the authenticated user.

provider
The service used to log in, such as Facebook or Janrain.

siteLoginUrl
The site login page URL passed in if used with a site; `null` otherwise.

attributeMap
A map of data from the third party, in case the handler has to access non-standard values. For example, when using Janrain as a provider, the fields Janrain returns in its `accessCredentials` dictionary are placed into the `attributeMap`. These fields vary by provider.

identifier

An identifier from the third party for the authenticated user, such as the Facebook user number or the Salesforce user ID.

Signature

```
public String identifier {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

firstName

The first name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

Signature

```
public String firstName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

lastName

The last name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

Signature

```
public String lastName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`fullName`

The full name of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

Signature

```
public String fullName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`email`

The email address of the authenticated user, according to the third party.

Signature

```
public String email {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`link`

A stable link for the authenticated user such as `https://www.facebook.com/MyUsername`.

Signature

```
public String link {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`username`

The username of the authenticated user in the third party.

Signature

```
public String username {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`locale`

The standard locale string for the authenticated user.

Signature

```
public String locale {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`provider`

The service used to log in, such as Facebook or Janrain.

Signature

```
public String provider {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`siteLoginUrl`

The site login page URL passed in if used with a site; `null` otherwise.

Signature

```
public String siteLoginUrl {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`attributeMap`

A map of data from the third party, in case the handler has to access non-standard values. For example, when using Janrain as a provider, the fields Janrain returns in its `accessCredentials` dictionary are placed into the `attributeMap`. These fields vary by provider.

Signature

```
public Map<String, String> attributeMap {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, String>

VerificationMethod Enum

Contains the different ways users can identify themselves when logging in. You can use it to implement mobile-centric passwordless login pages and to self-register (and deregister) verification methods.

Usage

The enum value is an argument in `System.Site.passwordlessLogin`, `System.UserManagement.registerVerificationMethod`, and `System.UserManagement.deregisterVerificationMethod` on page 3054 methods. The value indicates the method used to verify a user's identity.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Auth.VerificationMethod` enum.

Value	Description
`EMAIL`	Identity verified with a verification code sent in an email message.
`PASSWORD`	Identity verified with a password.
`SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR`	Identity verified by Salesforce Authenticator.
`SMS`	Identity verified with a verification code sent via SMS message.
`TOTP`	Identity verified with a time-based one-time password (TOTP).
`U2F`	Identity verified by a U2F physical security key, such as a YubiKey.

VerificationPolicy Enum

The `Auth.VerificationPolicy` enum contains an identity verification policy value used by the `SessionManagement.generateVerificationUrl` method.

Usage

The enum value is an argument in the `SessionManagement.generateVerificationUrl` method. The value indicates the session security policy required to initiate identity verification for the user's session.

Enum Values

The `Auth.VerificationPolicy` enum has this value.

Value	Description
`HIGH_ASSURANCE`	The security level for the user's current session must be High Assurance.

VerificationResult Class

Contains the result of a verification challenge that you invoke when you create your own Verify page. The challenge can be initiated by either the `System.UserManagement.verifyPasswordlessLogin` or `System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration` method.

Namespace

Auth

Usage

When users sign up for or log in to your Experience Cloud site with an email address or phone number, Salesforce sends them a verification code. At the same time, Salesforce generates the Verify page for users to enter the code to verify their identity. You can replace the Salesforce-generated Verify page with one that you create with Visualforce. Then invoke the verification challenge and, if the verification code is entered correctly, log in the user. For sign-up, you use the `System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration` method. For passwordless login, you use the System.UserManagement.verifyPasswordlessLogin method. The methods return the verification result, which contains the message displayed as a result of the challenge. This message also indicates whether the challenge is successful and where to direct the user when the verification code is entered correctly.

Example

This code contains the result of a verification challenge that registers a new user.

```
String id = System.UserManagement.initSelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, user);
        Auth.VerificationResult res = System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, id, '123456', null);
        if(res.success == true){
     //redirect
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

- VerificationResult Constructor
- VerificationResult Properties
- VerificationResult Method

VerificationResult Constructor

`VerificationResult` has the following constructor.

IN THIS SECTION:

VerificationResult(redirect, success, message)

Creates an instance of the `VerificationResult` class that contains the verification result from `System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration`.

`VerificationResult(redirect, success, message)`

Creates an instance of the `VerificationResult` class that contains the verification result from `System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration`.

Signature

```
public VerificationResult(System.PageReference redirect, Boolean success, String message)
```

Parameters

`redirect`
Type: System.PageReferenceSystem.PageReference

Where user is directed upon successful verification.

`success`
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether verification succeeded.

`message`
Type: String

Message that displays as a result of a verification challenge.

VerificationResult Properties

The following are properties for `VerificationResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

message

Message that displays as a result of a verification challenge. SUCCESS if the identity verification is successful. Other values are FAILURE, PENDING, RATE_LIMITED, or FAILURE_REPORT.

redirect

Where the user is directed after entering the verification code successfully, for example, the Experience Cloud site's home page or location specified by the start URL.

success

The verification challenge is successful.

`message`

Message that displays as a result of a verification challenge. SUCCESS if the identity verification is successful. Other values are FAILURE, PENDING, RATE_LIMITED, or FAILURE_REPORT.

Signature

```
public String message {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`redirect`

Where the user is directed after entering the verification code successfully, for example, the Experience Cloud site's home page or location specified by the start URL.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference redirect {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: System.PageReferenceSystem.PageReference

`success`

The verification challenge is successful.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

VerificationResult Method

`VerificationResult` has the following method.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Duplicates the Auth.VerificationResult object.

`clone()`

Duplicates the Auth.VerificationResult object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: VerificationResult

Auth Exceptions

The `Auth` namespace contains some exception classes.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions.

The `Auth` namespace contains the following exception.

Exception	Description
`Auth.AuthProviderPluginException`	Throw this exception to indicate that an error occurred when using the auth provider plug-in. Use to display a custom error message to the user. To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`Auth.ConnectedAppPluginException`	Throw this exception to indicate that an error occurred while running the custom behavior for a connected app. To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`Auth.DiscoveryCustomErrorException`	Throw this exception to customize error messages that appear on Discovery logins and Configurable Self-Registration pages. An error message can have up to 200 characters. Use custom error exceptions to localize error messages. Include this exception in: • `Auth.MyDomainLoginDiscoveryHandler` to show a custom error message on the My Domain login page • `Auth.LoginDiscoveryHandler` to show an error message on the Experience Cloud site login page • `Auth.ConfigurableSelfRegHandler` to show an error message on the Experience Cloud site self-registration Verify page The Verify page shows up if you configured self-registration with either an **Email** or **Text Message** verification method. If you didn't set up sign-up with a verification method, the error message appears on the self-registration page. To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`Auth.JWTBearerTokenExchange.JWTBearerTokenExchangeException`	Throw this exception to indicate a problem with the response from the token endpoint in the JWTBearerTokenExchange class. This exception occurs during the OAuth 2.0 JWT bearer token flow when the HTTP response: • Fails to return an access token • Isn't in JSON format • Returns a response code other than a 200 "OK" success code To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`Auth.LoginDiscoveryException`	Throw this exception to indicate that an error occurred when executing the Login Discovery handler. For an example, see LoginDiscoveryHandler Example Implementation. To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`Auth.VerificationException`	Throw this exception to trigger verification based on the passed-in policy. You can throw this exception in an Apex trigger or Visualforce controller. The system automatically sends you to the verification endpoint, if possible. Note: You can't catch this exception. The exception immediately triggers the verification.

Examples

This example uses `AuthProviderPluginException` to throw a custom exception in a custom authentication provider implementation. Use this exception if you want the end user to see a specific message, passing in the error message as a parameter. If you use another exception, users see a standard Salesforce error message.

```
global override Auth.OAuthRefreshResult refresh(Map<string,string>
authProviderConfiguration,String refreshToken){
            HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
            String accessToken = null;
            String error  = null;
            try {

            // DEVELOPER TODO: Make a refresh token flow using refreshToken passed
            // in as an argument to get the new access token
            // accessToken = ...
            } catch (System.CalloutException e) {
            error = e.getMessage();
            }
            catch(Exception e) {
            error = e.getMessage();
            throw new Auth.AuthProviderPluginException('My custom error');
            }

            return new Auth.OAuthRefreshResult(accessToken,refreshToken, error);

            }
```

This example uses `Auth.VerificationException` to trigger verification if a user attempts to create an account without a high assurance session.

```
trigger testTrigger on Account (before insert) {
    Map<String, String> sessionMap = auth.SessionManagement.getCurrentSession();
    if(!sessionMap.get('SessionSecurityLevel').equals('HIGH_ASSURANCE')) {
        throw new Auth.VerificationException(
            Auth.VerificationPolicy.HIGH_ASSURANCE, 'Insert Account');
    }
}
```

Cache Namespace

The `Cache` namespace contains methods for managing the platform cache.

The following are the classes in the `Cache` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

CacheBuilder Interface

An interface for safely retrieving and removing values from a session or org cache. Use the interface to generate a value that you want to store in the cache. The interface checks for cache misses, which means you no longer need to check for null cache values yourself.

Org Class

Use the `Cache.Org` class to add, retrieve, and manage values in the org cache. Unlike the session cache, the org cache is not tied to any session and is available to the organization across requests and to all users.

OrgPartition Class

Contains methods to manage cache values in the org cache of a specific partition. Unlike the session cache, the org cache is not tied to any session. It's available to the organization across requests and to all users.

Partition Class

Base class of `Cache.OrgPartition` and `Cache.SessionPartition`. Use the subclasses to manage the cache partition for org caches and session caches.

Session Class

Use the `Cache.Session` class to add, retrieve, and manage values in the session cache. The session cache is active as long as the user's Salesforce session is valid (the user is logged in, and the session is not expired).

SessionPartition Class

Contains methods to manage cache values in the session cache of a specific partition.

Cache Exceptions

The `Cache` namespace contains exception classes.

Visibility Enum

Use the `Cache.Visibility` enumeration in the `Cache.Session` or `Cache.Org` methods to indicate whether a cached value is visible only in the value's namespace or in all namespaces.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

CacheBuilder Interface

An interface for safely retrieving and removing values from a session or org cache. Use the interface to generate a value that you want to store in the cache. The interface checks for cache misses, which means you no longer need to check for null cache values yourself.

Namespace

Cache

IN THIS SECTION:

CacheBuilder Methods

CacheBuilder Example Implementation

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Safely Cache Values with the CacheBuilder Interface

CacheBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `CacheBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

doLoad(var)
Contains the logic that builds a cached value. You don't call this method directly. Instead, it's called indirectly when you reference the class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

doLoad(var)

Contains the logic that builds a cached value. You don't call this method directly. Instead, it's called indirectly when you reference the class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public Object doLoad(String var)
```

Parameters

var

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value used to build a cached value. This parameter is also used as part of the unique key that identifies the cached value.

Return Value

Type: Object

The value that was cached. Cast the return value to the appropriate type.

CacheBuilder Example Implementation

This example creates a class called `UserInfoCache` that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface. The class caches the results of a SOQL query run against the User object.

```
class UserInfoCache implements Cache.CacheBuilder {
    public Object doLoad(String userid) {
        User u = (User)[SELECT Id, IsActive, username FROM User WHERE id =: userid];
        return u;
    }
}
```

This example gets a cached User record based on a user ID. If the value exists in the org cache, it is returned. If the value doesn't exist, the `doLoad(String var)` method is re-executed, and the new value is cached and returned.

```
User batman = (User) Cache.Org.get(UserInfoCache.class, '00541000000ek4c');
```

Org Class

Use the `Cache.Org` class to add, retrieve, and manage values in the org cache. Unlike the session cache, the org cache is not tied to any session and is available to the organization across requests and to all users.

Namespace

Cache

Usage

Cache Key Format

This table lists the format of the key parameter that some methods in this class take, such as `put`, `get`, and `contains`.

Key Format	Description
`namespace.partition.key`	Fully qualified key name.
`key`	Refers to a partition marked as default when the *`namespace.partition`* prefix is omitted.
`local.`*`partition.key`*	Use the `local` prefix to refer to the org's namespace when the org doesn't have a namespace defined. If the org has a namespace defined, the `local` prefix also refers to that org's namespace.

Note:

- If no default partition is specified in the org, calling a cache method without fully qualifying the key name causes a `Cache.Org.OrgCacheException` to be thrown.
- The `local` prefix in an installed managed package refers to the namespace of the subscriber org and not the package's namespace. The cache `put` calls aren't allowed in a partition that the invoking class doesn't own.

Example

This class is the controller for a sample Visualforce page (shown in the subsequent code sample). The cached values are initially added to the cache by the `init()` method, which the Visualforce page invokes when it loads through the `action` attribute. The cache keys don't contain the `namespace.partition` prefix. They all refer to the default partition in your org. To run this sample, create a partition and mark it as default.

The Visualforce page contains four output components. These components call `get` methods on the controller that returns the following values from the cache: a date, data based on the `MyData` inner class, a counter, a text value, and a list. The size of the list is also returned.

The Visualforce page also contains two buttons. The Rerender button invokes the `go()` method on the controller. This method increases the values of the counter and the custom data in the cache. When you click **Rerender**, the two counters increase by one each time. The `go()` method retrieves the values of these counters from the cache, increments their values by one, and stores them again in the cache.

The Remove datetime Key button deletes the date-time value (with key `datetime`) from the cache. As a result, the value next to `Cached datetime:` is cleared on the page.

Note: If another user logs in and runs this sample, this user gets the cache values that were last added or updated by the previous user. For example, if the counter value was five, the next user sees the counter value as increased to six.

```
public class OrgCacheController {

    // Inner class.
    // Used as the data type of a cache value.
```

```
class MyData {
    public String value { get; set; }
    public Integer counter { get; set; }

    public MyData(String value) {
        this.value = value;
        this.counter = 0;
    }

    public void inc() {
        counter++;
    }

    override public String toString() {
        return this.value + ':' + this.counter;
    }
}

// Apex List.
// Used as the data type of a cached value.
private List<String> numbers =
        new List<String> { 'ONE', 'TWO', 'THREE', 'FOUR', 'FIVE' };

// Constructor of the controller for the Visualforce page.
public OrgCacheController() {
}

// Adds various values to the cache.
// This method is called when the Visualforce page loads.
public void init() {
    // All key values are not qualified by the namespace.partition
    // prefix because they use the default partition.

    // Add counter to the cache with initial value of 0
    //  or increment it if it's already there.
    if (!Cache.Org.contains('counter')) {
        Cache.Org.put('counter', 0);
    } else {
        Cache.Org.put('counter', getCounter() + 1);
    }

    // Add the datetime value to the cache only if it's not already there.
    if (!Cache.Org.contains('datetime')) {
        DateTime dt = DateTime.now();
        Cache.Org.put('datetime', dt);
    }

    // Add the custom data to the cache only if it's not already there.
    if (!Cache.Org.contains('data')) {
        Cache.Org.put('data', new MyData('Some custom value'));
    }

    // Add a list of number to the cache if not already there.
    if (!Cache.Org.contains('list')) {
```

```
            Cache.Org.put('list', numbers);
        }

        // Add a string value to the cache if not already there.
        if (!Cache.Org.contains('output')) {
            Cache.Org.put('output', 'Cached text value');
        }
    }

    // Return counter from the cache.
    public Integer getCounter() {
        return (Integer)Cache.Org.get('counter');
    }

    // Return datetime value from the cache.
    public String getCachedDatetime() {
        DateTime dt = (DateTime)Cache.Org.get('datetime');
        return dt != null ? dt.format() : null;
    }

    // Return cached value whose type is the inner class MyData.
    public String getCachedData() {
        MyData mydata = (MyData)Cache.Org.get('data');
        return mydata != null ? mydata.toString() : null;
    }

    // Return output from the cache.
    public String getOutput() {
        return (String)Cache.Org.get('output');
    }

    // Return list from the cache.
    public List<String> getList() {
        return (List<String>)Cache.Org.get('list');
    }

    // Method invoked by the Rerender button on the Visualforce page.
    // Updates the values of various cached values.
    // Increases the values of counter and the MyData counter if those
    //   cache values are still in the cache.
    public PageReference go() {
        // Increase the cached counter value or set it to 0
        //  if it's not cached.
        if (Cache.Org.contains('counter')) {
            Cache.Org.put('counter', getCounter() + 1);
        } else {
            Cache.Org.put('counter', 0);
        }

        // Get the custom data value from the cache.
        MyData d = (MyData)Cache.Org.get('data');
        // Only if the data is already in the cache, update it.
        if (Cache.Org.contains('data')) {
            d.inc();
```

```
            Cache.Org.put('data', d);
        }

        return null;
    }

    // Method invoked by the Remove button on the Visualforce page.
    // Removes the datetime cached value from the org cache.
    public PageReference remove() {
        Cache.Org.remove('datetime');

        return null;
    }
}
```

This is the Visualforce page that corresponds to the `OrgCacheController` class.

```
<apex:page controller="OrgCacheController" action="{!init}">

    <apex:outputPanel id="output">
        <br/>Cached datetime: <apex:outputText value="{!cachedDatetime}"/>
        <br/>Cached data: <apex:outputText value="{!cachedData}"/>
        <br/>Cached counter: <apex:outputText value="{!counter}"/>
        <br/>Output: <apex:outputText value="{!output}"/>
        <br/>Repeat: <apex:repeat var="item" value="{!list}">
            <apex:outputText value="{!item}"/> 
        </apex:repeat>
        <br/>List size: <apex:outputText value="{!list.size}"/>
    </apex:outputPanel>

    <br/><br/>
    <apex:form >
        <apex:commandButton id="go" action="{!go}" value="Rerender" rerender="output"/>
        <apex:commandButton id="remove" action="{!remove}" value="Remove datetime Key"
rerender="output"/>
    </apex:form>

</apex:page>
```

This is the output of the page after clicking the **Rerender** button twice. The counter value could differ in your case if a key named `counter` was already in the cache before running this sample.

```
Cached datetime:8/11/2015 1:58 PM
Cached data:Some custom value:2
Cached counter:2
Output:Cached text value
Repeat:ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE
List size:5
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Org Constants
The Org class provides a constant that you can use when setting the time-to-live (TTL) value.

Org Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

Org Constants

The Org class provides a constant that you can use when setting the time-to-live (TTL) value.

Constant	Description
`MAX_TTL_SECS`	Represents the maximum amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the org cache.

Org Methods

The following are methods for `Org`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

contains(key)

Returns `true` if the org cache contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

contains(keys)

Returns `true` if the org cache contains the specified key entries.

get(key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache.

get(cacheBuilder, key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

getAvgGetSize()

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the org cache, in bytes.

getAvgGetTime()

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the org cache, in nanoseconds.

getAvgValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the org cache, in bytes.

getCapacity()

Returns the percentage of org cache capacity that has been used.

getKeys()

Returns a set of all keys that are stored in the org cache and visible to the invoking namespace.

getMaxGetSize()

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the org cache, in bytes.

getMaxGetTime()

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the org cache, in nanoseconds.

getMaxValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the org cache, in bytes.

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the org cache.

getName()

Returns the name of the default cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the org cache.

getPartition(partitionName)

Returns a partition from the org cache that corresponds to the specified partition name.

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache and sets the cached value's visibility.

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache and sets the cached value's lifetime.

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache.

remove(cacheBuilder, key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

`contains(key)`

Returns `true` if the org cache contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

Signature

```
public static Boolean contains(String key)
```

Parameters

`key`

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if a cache entry is found. Otherwise, `false`.

`contains(keys)`

Returns `true` if the org cache contains the specified key entries.

Signature

```
public static List<Boolean> contains(Set<String> keys)
```

Parameters

keys
Type: Set<String>

A set of keys that uniquely identifies cached values. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: List<Boolean>

`true` if the key entries are found. Otherwise, `false`.

`get(key)`

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache.

Signature

```
public static Object get(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

Usage

Because `Cache.Org.get()` returns an object, cast the returned value to a specific type to facilitate use of the returned value.

```
// Get a cached value
Object obj = Cache.Org.get('ns1.partition1.orderDate');
// Cast return value to a specific data type
DateTime dt2 = (DateTime)obj;
```

If a `Cache.Org.get()` call doesn't find the referenced key, it returns `null`.

get(cacheBuilder, key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public static Object get(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

cacheBuilder
Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *cacheBuilder* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

Usage

Because `Cache.Org.get(`*cacheBuilder*`, `*key*`)` returns an object, cast the returned value to a specific type to facilitate use of the returned value.

```
return ((DateTime)Cache.Org.get(DateCache.class, 'datetime')).format();
```

getAvgGetSize()

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the org cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

In this example the following keys and their corresponding value sizes are inserted. The code then fetches the keys: key 1, key 2, key 3 and key 4 and returns the average item size of the fetched keys.

Key	Key Value Size
key 1	42
key 2	42
key 3	58
key 4	36
key 5	36

```
// Inserting keys key1, key2, key3, key4, key5
Cache.Org.put('key1', 'value1');
Cache.Org.put('key2', 'value2');
Cache.Org.put('key3', 'this is a big value !!!');
Cache.Org.put('key4', 4);
Cache.Org.put('key5', 5);


// Fetching keys - key1, key2, key3, key4
Object v1 = Cache.Org.get('key1');
Object v2 = Cache.Org.get('key2');
Object v3 = Cache.Org.get('key3');
Object v4 = Cache.Org.get('key4');

// Fetching average get size
Long val = Cache.Org.getAvgGetSize();
// Avg item size returned is 44 ( average of 42(key1), 42(key2), 58(key3) and 36(key4)
keys that were fetched )
System.debug('Avg Get Size :' + val);
```

`getAvgGetTime()`

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the org cache, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getAvgValueSize()`

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the org cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getCapacity()`

Returns the percentage of org cache capacity that has been used.

Signature

```
public static Double getCapacity()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

Used cache as a percentage number.

`getKeys()`

Returns a set of all keys that are stored in the org cache and visible to the invoking namespace.

Signature

```
public static Set<String> getKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Set<String>

A set containing all cache keys.

`getMaxGetSize()`

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the org cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

In this example the following keys and their corresponding value sizes are inserted. The code fetches the keys: key 1, key 2 and key 4 and returns the maximum key value size from the fetched keys.

Key	Key Value Size
key 1	42

Key	Key Value Size
key 2	42
key 3	58
key 4	36
key 5	36

```
// Inserting keys key1, key2, key3, key4, key5
Cache.Org.put('key1', 'value1');
Cache.Org.put('key2', 'value2');
Cache.Org.put('key3', 'this is a big value !!!');
Cache.Org.put('key4', 4);
Cache.Org.put('key5', 5);


// Fetching keys - key1, key2, key4
Object v1 = Cache.Org.get('key1');
Object v2 = Cache.Org.get('key2');
Object v4 = Cache.Org.get('key4');

// Fetching max get size
Long val = Cache.Org.getMaxGetSize();
// Max item size returned is 42 ( max of 42(key1), 42(key2), and 36(key4) keys that were
fetched )
System.debug('Max Get Size :' + val);
```

`getMaxGetTime()`

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the org cache, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getMaxValueSize()`

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the org cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the org cache.

Signature

```
public static Double getMissRate()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

getName()

Returns the name of the default cache partition.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The name of the default cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the org cache.

Signature

```
public static Long getNumKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getPartition(partitionName)

Returns a partition from the org cache that corresponds to the specified partition name.

Signature

```
public static cache.OrgPartition getPartition(String partitionName)
```

Parameters

partitionName

Type: String

A partition name that is qualified by the namespace, for example, *namespace.partition*.

Return Value

Type: Cache.OrgPartition

Example

After you get the org partition, you can add and retrieve the partition's cache values.

```
// Get partition
Cache.OrgPartition orgPart = Cache.Org.getPartition('myNs.myPartition');
// Retrieve cache value from the partition
if (orgPart.contains('BookTitle')) {
    String cachedTitle = (String)orgPart.get('BookTitle');
}

// Add cache value to the partition
orgPart.put('OrderDate', Date.today());

// Or use dot notation to call partition methods
String cachedAuthor = (String)Cache.Org.getPartition('myNs.myPartition').get('BookAuthor');
```

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache and sets the cached value's visibility.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Cache.Visibility visibility)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache and sets the cached value's lifetime.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the org cache. The maximum is 172,800 seconds (48 hours). The minimum value is 300 seconds or 5 minutes. The default value is 86,400 seconds (24 hours).

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the org cache. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs, cache.Visibility
visibility, Boolean immutable)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the org cache. The maximum is 172,800 seconds (48 hours). The minimum value is 300 seconds or 5 minutes. The default value is 86,400 seconds (24 hours).

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

immutable
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether the cached value can be overwritten by another namespace (`false`) or not (`true`).

Return Value

Type: void

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache.

Signature

```
public static Boolean remove(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

`remove(cacheBuilder, key)`

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the org cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public static Boolean remove(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

`cacheBuilder`
Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

`key`
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *`cacheBuilder`* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

OrgPartition Class

Contains methods to manage cache values in the org cache of a specific partition. Unlike the session cache, the org cache is not tied to any session. It's available to the organization across requests and to all users.

Namespace

Cache

Usage

This class extends Cache.Partition and inherits all its non-static methods. Utility methods for creating and validating keys aren't supported and can be called only from the `Cache.Partition` parent class. For a list of `Cache.Partition` methods, see Partition Methods.

To get an org partition, call `Cache.Org.getPartition` and pass in a fully qualified partition name, as follows.

```
Cache.OrgPartition orgPartition = Cache.Org.getPartition('namespace.myPartition');
```

See Cache Key Format for Partition Methods.

Example

This class is the controller for a sample Visualforce page (shown in the subsequent code sample). The controller shows how to use the methods of `Cache.OrgPartition` to manage a cache value on a particular partition. The controller takes inputs from the Visualforce page for the partition name, key name for a counter, and initial counter value. The controller contains default values for these inputs.

When you click **Rerender** on the Visualforce page, the `go()` method is invoked and increases the counter by one. When you click **Remove Key**, the counter key is removed from the cache. The counter value gets reset to its initial value when it's re-added to the cache.

Note: If another user logs in and runs this sample, the user gets the cache values that were last added or updated by the previous user. For example, if the counter value was five, the next user sees the counter value as increased to six.

```
public class OrgPartitionController {

    // Name of a partition
    String partitionInput = 'local.myPartition';
    // Name of the key
    String counterKeyInput = 'counter';
    // Key initial value
    Integer counterInitValue = 0;
    // Org partition object
    Cache.OrgPartition orgPartition;

    // Constructor of the controller for the Visualforce page.
    public OrgPartitionController() {
    }

    // Adds counter value to the cache.
    // This method is called when the Visualforce page loads.
    public void init() {
        // Create the partition instance based on the partition name
        orgPartition = getPartition();

        // Create the partition instance based on the partition name
        // given in the Visualforce page or the default value.
        orgPartition = Cache.Org.getPartition(partitionInput);

        // Add counter to the cache with an initial value
        //  or increment it if it's already there.
        if (!orgPartition.contains(counterKeyInput)) {
            orgPartition.put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);
        } else {
            orgPartition.put(counterKeyInput, getCounter() + 1);
        }
    }

    // Returns the org partition based on the partition name
    // given in the Visualforce page or the default value.
    private Cache.OrgPartition getPartition() {
       if (orgPartition == null) {
            orgPartition = Cache.Org.getPartition(partitionInput);
       }

       return orgPartition;
     }


    // Return counter from the cache.
    public Integer getCounter() {
        return (Integer)getPartition().get(counterKeyInput);
    }
```

```
// Invoked by the Submit button to save input values
//  supplied by the user.
public PageReference save() {
    // Reset the initial key value in the cache
    getPartition().put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);

    return null;
}

// Method invoked by the Rerender button on the Visualforce page.
// Updates the values of various cached values.
// Increases the values of counter and the MyData counter if those
//   cache values are still in the cache.
public PageReference go() {
    // Get the org partition object
    orgPartition = getPartition();
    // Increase the cached counter value or set it to 0
    //  if it's not cached.
    if (orgPartition.contains(counterKeyInput)) {
        orgPartition.put(counterKeyInput, getCounter() + 1);
    } else {
        orgPartition.put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);
    }

    return null;
}

// Method invoked by the Remove button on the Visualforce page.
// Removes the datetime cached value from the org cache.
public PageReference remove() {
    getPartition().remove(counterKeyInput);

    return null;
}

// Get and set methods for accessing variables
// that correspond to the input text fields on
// the Visualforce page.
public String getPartitionInput() {
    return partitionInput;
}

public String getCounterKeyInput() {
    return counterKeyInput;
}

public Integer getCounterInitValue() {
    return counterInitValue;
}

public void setPartitionInput(String partition) {
    this.partitionInput = partition;
}
```

```
    public void setCounterKeyInput(String keyName) {
        this.counterKeyInput = keyName;
    }

    public void setCounterInitValue(Integer counterValue) {
        this.counterInitValue = counterValue;
    }
}
```

This is the Visualforce page that corresponds to the `OrgPartitionController` class.

```
<apex:page controller="OrgPartitionController" action="{!init}">

    <apex:form >
        <br/>Partition with Namespace Prefix: <apex:inputText value="{!partitionInput}"/>

        <br/>Counter Key Name: <apex:inputText value="{!counterKeyInput}"/>
        <br/>Counter Initial Value: <apex:inputText value="{!counterInitValue}"/>
        <apex:commandButton action="{!save}" value="Save Key Input Values"/>
    </apex:form>

    <apex:outputPanel id="output">
        <br/>Cached Counter: <apex:outputText value="{!counter}"/>
    </apex:outputPanel>

    <br/>
    <apex:form >
        <apex:commandButton id="go" action="{!go}" value="Rerender" rerender="output"/>
        <apex:commandButton id="remove" action="{!remove}" value="Remove Key"
rerender="output"/>
    </apex:form>

</apex:page>
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

Partition Class

Base class of `Cache.OrgPartition` and `Cache.SessionPartition`. Use the subclasses to manage the cache partition for org caches and session caches.

Namespace

Cache

Cache Key Format for Partition Methods

After you obtain the partition object (an instance of `Cache.OrgPartition` or `Cache.SessionPartition`), the methods to add, retrieve, and manage the cache values in a partition take the key name. The key name that you supply to these methods (`get()`, `put()`, `remove()`, and `contains()`) doesn't include the `namespace.partition` prefix.

IN THIS SECTION:

Partition Methods

SEE ALSO:

OrgPartition Class

SessionPartition Class

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

Partition Methods

The following are methods for `Partition`.

IN THIS SECTION:

contains(key)

Returns `true` if the cache partition contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

createFullyQualifiedKey(namespace, partition, key)

Generates a fully qualified key from the passed-in key components. The format of the generated key string is `namespace.partition.key`.

createFullyQualifiedPartition(namespace, partition)

Generates a fully qualified partition name from the passed-in namespace and partition. The format of the generated partition string is `namespace.partition`.

get(key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the cache partition.

get(cacheBuilder, key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the partition cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

getAvgGetSize()

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the partition, in bytes.

getAvgGetTime()

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the partition, in nanoseconds.

getAvgValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the partition, in bytes.

getCapacity()

Returns the percentage of cache used of the total capacity for this partition.

getKeys()

Returns a set of all keys that are stored in the cache partition and visible to the invoking namespace.

getMaxGetSize()

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the partition, in bytes.

getMaxGetTime()

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the partition, in nanoseconds.

getMaxValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the partition, in bytes.

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the partition.

getName()

Returns the name of this cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the partition.

isAvailable()

Returns `true` if the Salesforce session is available. Only applies to `Cache.SessionPartition`. The session cache isn't available when an active session isn't present, such as in asynchronous Apex or code called by asynchronous Apex. For example, if batch Apex causes an Apex trigger to execute, the session cache isn't available in the trigger because the trigger runs in asynchronous context.

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition and sets the cached value's visibility.

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition and sets the cached value's lifetime.

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from this cache partition.

remove(cacheBuilder, key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the partition cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

validateCacheBuilder(cacheBuilder)

Validates that the specified class implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

validateKey(isDefault, key)

Validates a cache key. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

validateKeyValue(isDefault, key, value)

Validates a cache key and ensures that the cache value is non-null. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key or value is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

validateKeys(isDefault, keys)

Validates the specified cache keys. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

validatePartitionName(name)

Validates the partition name — for example, that it is not null.

contains(key)

Returns `true` if the cache partition contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

Signature

```
public Boolean contains(String key)
```

Parameters

key

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if a cache entry is found. Othewise, `false`.

createFullyQualifiedKey(namespace, partition, key)

Generates a fully qualified key from the passed-in key components. The format of the generated key string is `namespace.partition.key`.

Signature

```
public static String createFullyQualifiedKey(String namespace, String partition, String key)
```

Parameters

namespace

Type: String

The namespace of the cache key.

partition

Type: String

The partition of the cache key.

key

Type: String

The name of the cache key.

Return Value

Type: String

createFullyQualifiedPartition(namespace, partition)

Generates a fully qualified partition name from the passed-in namespace and partition. The format of the generated partition string is `namespace.partition`.

Signature

```
public static String createFullyQualifiedPartition(String namespace, String partition)
```

Parameters

namespace
Type: String

The namespace of the cache key.

partition
Type: String

The partition of the cache key.

Return Value

Type: String

get(key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the cache partition.

Signature

```
public Object get(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

get(cacheBuilder, key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the partition cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public Object get(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

cacheBuilder
Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *cacheBuilder* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

getAvgGetSize()

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the partition, in bytes.

Signature

```
public Long getAvgGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getAvgGetTime()

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the partition, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public Long getAvgGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getAvgValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the partition, in bytes.

Signature

```
public Long getAvgValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getCapacity()

Returns the percentage of cache used of the total capacity for this partition.

Signature

```
public Double getCapacity()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

Used partition cache as a percentage number.

getKeys()

Returns a set of all keys that are stored in the cache partition and visible to the invoking namespace.

Signature

```
public Set<String> getKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Set<String>

A set containing all cache keys.

getMaxGetSize()

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the partition, in bytes.

Signature

```
public Long getMaxGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMaxGetTime()

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the partition, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public Long getMaxGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMaxValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the partition, in bytes.

Signature

```
public Long getMaxValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the partition.

Signature

```
public Double getMissRate()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

getName()

Returns the name of this cache partition.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The name of this cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the partition.

Signature

```
public Long getNumKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

isAvailable()

Returns `true` if the Salesforce session is available. Only applies to `Cache.SessionPartition`. The session cache isn't available when an active session isn't present, such as in asynchronous Apex or code called by asynchronous Apex. For example, if batch Apex causes an Apex trigger to execute, the session cache isn't available in the trigger because the trigger runs in asynchronous context.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAvailable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

Signature

```
public void put(String key, Object value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition and sets the cached value's visibility.

Signature

```
public void put(String key, Object value, cache.Visibility visibility)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition and sets the cached value's lifetime.

Signature

```
public void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the cache.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the cache partition. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

Signature

```
public void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs, cache.Visibility visibility,
Boolean immutable)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the cache.

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

immutable
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether the cached value can be overwritten by another namespace (`false`) or not (`true`).

Return Value

Type: void

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from this cache partition.

Signature

```
public Boolean remove(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

`remove(cacheBuilder, key)`

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the partition cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public Boolean remove(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

`cacheBuilder`
Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

`key`
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *`cacheBuilder`* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

`validateCacheBuilder(cacheBuilder)`

Validates that the specified class implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public static void validateCacheBuilder(System.Type cacheBuilder)
```

Parameters

`cacheBuilder`
Type: System.Type

The class to validate.

Return Value

Type: void

`validateKey(isDefault, key)`

Validates a cache key. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

Signature

```
public static void validateKey(Boolean isDefault, String key)
```

Parameters

isDefault
Type: Boolean

Set to `true` if the key references a default partition. Otherwise, set to `false`.

key
Type: String

The key to validate.

Return Value

Type: void

validateKeyValue(isDefault, key, value)

Validates a cache key and ensures that the cache value is non-null. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key or value is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

Signature

```
public static void validateKeyValue(Boolean isDefault, String key, Object value)
```

Parameters

isDefault
Type: Boolean

Set to `true` if the key references a default partition. Otherwise, set to `false`.

key
Type: String

The key to validate.

value
Type: Object

The cache value to validate.

Return Value

Type: void

validateKeys(isDefault, keys)

Validates the specified cache keys. This method throws a `Cache.InvalidParamException` if the key is not valid. A valid key is not `null` and contains alphanumeric characters.

Signature

```
public static void validateKeys(Boolean isDefault, Set<String> keys)
```

Parameters

isDefault
Type: Boolean

Set to `true` if the key references a default partition. Otherwise, set to `false`.

keys
Type: Set<String>

A set of key string values to validate.

Return Value

Type: void

validatePartitionName(name)

Validates the partition name — for example, that it is not null.

Signature

```
public static void validatePartitionName(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

The name of the partition to validate.

Return Value

Type: void

Session Class

Use the `Cache.Session` class to add, retrieve, and manage values in the session cache. The session cache is active as long as the user's Salesforce session is valid (the user is logged in, and the session is not expired).

Namespace

Cache

Usage

Cache Key Format

This table lists the format of the key parameter that some methods in this class take, such as `put`, `get`, and `contains`.

Key Format	Description
namespace.partition.key	Fully qualified key name.
key	Refers to a partition marked as default when the *namespace.partition* prefix is omitted.
local.*partition.key*	Use the `local` prefix to refer to the org's namespace when the org doesn't have a namespace defined. If the org has a namespace defined, the `local` prefix also refers to that org's namespace.

Note:

- If no default partition is specified in the org, calling a cache method without fully qualifying the key name causes a `Cache.Session.SessionCacheException` to be thrown.
- The `local` prefix in an installed managed package refers to the namespace of the subscriber org and not the package's namespace. The cache `put` calls are not allowed in a partition that the invoking class doesn't own.

Example

This class is the controller for a sample Visualforce page (shown in the subsequent code sample). The cached values are initially added to the cache by the `init()` method, which the Visualforce page invokes when it loads through the `action` attribute. The cache keys don't contain the `namespace.partition` prefix. They all refer to a default partition in your org. The Visualforce page expects a partition named `myPartition`. To run this sample, create a default partition in your org with the name `myPartition`.

The Visualforce page contains four output components. The first three components call `get` methods on the controller that return the following values from the cache: a date, data based on the `MyData` inner class, and a counter. The next output component uses the `$Cache.Session` global variable to get the cached string value for the key named `output`. Next, the `$Cache.Session` global variable is used again in the Visualforce page to iterate over the elements of a cached value of type `List`. The size of the list is also returned.

The Visualforce page also contains two buttons. The Rerender button invokes the `go()` method on the controller. This method increases the values of the counter and the custom data in the cache. If you click **Rerender**, the two counters increase by one each time. The `go()` method retrieves the values of these counters from the cache, increments their values by one, and stores them again in the cache.

The Remove button deletes the date-time value (with key `datetime`) from the cache. As a result, the value next to `Cached datetime:` is cleared on the page.

```
public class SessionCacheController {

    // Inner class.
    // Used as the data type of a cache value.
    class MyData {
        public String value { get; set; }
        public Integer counter { get; set; }

        public MyData(String value) {
            this.value = value;
            this.counter = 0;
        }
```

```
        public void inc() {
            counter++;
        }

        override public String toString() {
            return this.value + ':' + this.counter;
        }
    }

    // Apex List.
    // Used as the data type of a cached value.
    private List<String> numbers =
            new List<String> { 'ONE', 'TWO', 'THREE', 'FOUR', 'FIVE' };

    // Constructor of the controller for the Visualforce page.
    public SessionCacheController() {
    }

    // Adds various values to the cache.
    // This method is called when the Visualforce page loads.
    public void init() {
        // All key values are not qualified by the namespace.partition
        // prefix because they use the default partition.

        // Add counter to the cache with initial value of 0
        //  or increment it if it's already there.
        if (!Cache.Session.contains('counter')) {
            Cache.Session.put('counter', 0);
        } else {
            Cache.Session.put('counter', getCounter() + 1);
        }

        // Add the datetime value to the cache only if it's not already there.
        if (!Cache.Session.contains('datetime')) {
            DateTime dt = DateTime.now();
            Cache.Session.put('datetime', dt);
        }

        // Add the custom data to the cache only if it's not already there.
        if (!Cache.Session.contains('data')) {
            Cache.Session.put('data', new MyData('Some custom value'));
        }

        // Add a list of number to the cache if not already there.
        if (!Cache.Session.contains('list')) {
            Cache.Session.put('list', numbers);
        }

        // Add a string value to the cache if not already there.
        if (!Cache.Session.contains('output')) {
            Cache.Session.put('output', 'Cached text value');
        }
    }
```

```
    // Return counter from the cache.
    public Integer getCounter() {
        return (Integer)Cache.Session.get('counter');
    }

    // Return datetime value from the cache.
    public String getCachedDatetime() {
        DateTime dt = (DateTime)Cache.Session.get('datetime');
        return dt != null ? dt.format() : null;
    }

    // Return cached value whose type is the inner class MyData.
    public String getCachedData() {
        MyData mydata = (MyData)Cache.Session.get('data');
        return mydata != null ? mydata.toString() : null;
    }

    // Method invoked by the Rerender button on the Visualforce page.
    // Updates the values of various cached values.
    // Increases the values of counter and the MyData counter if those
    //   cache values are still in the cache.
    public PageReference go() {
        // Increase the cached counter value or set it to 0
        //  if it's not cached.
        if (Cache.Session.contains('counter')) {
            Cache.Session.put('counter', getCounter() + 1);
        } else {
            Cache.Session.put('counter', 0);
        }

        // Get the custom data value from the cache.
        MyData d = (MyData)Cache.Session.get('data');
        // Only if the data is already in the cache, update it.
        if (Cache.Session.contains('data')) {
            d.inc();
            Cache.Session.put('data', d);
        }

        return null;
    }

    // Method invoked by the Remove button on the Visualforce page.
    // Removes the datetime cached value from the session cache.
    public PageReference remove() {
        Cache.Session.remove('datetime');

        return null;
    }
}
```

This is the Visualforce page that corresponds to the `SessionCacheController` class.

```
<apex:page controller="SessionCacheController" action="{!init}">

    <apex:outputPanel id="output">
```

```
        <br/>Cached datetime: <apex:outputText value="{!cachedDatetime}"/>
        <br/>Cached data: <apex:outputText value="{!cachedData}"/>
        <br/>Cached counter: <apex:outputText value="{!counter}"/>
       <br/>Output: <apex:outputText value="{!$Cache.Session.local.myPartition.output}"/>

        <br/>Repeat: <apex:repeat var="item"
value="{!$Cache.Session.local.myPartition.list}">
            <apex:outputText value="{!item}"/> 
        </apex:repeat>
        <br/>List size: <apex:outputText
value="{!$Cache.Session.local.myPartition.list.size}"/>
    </apex:outputPanel>

    <br/><br/>
    <apex:form >
        <apex:commandButton id="go" action="{!go}" value="Rerender" rerender="output"/>
        <apex:commandButton id="remove" action="{!remove}" value="Remove datetime Key"
rerender="output"/>
    </apex:form>

</apex:page>
```

This is the output of the page after clicking the Rerender button twice. The counter value could differ in your case if a key named `counter` was already in the cache before running this sample.

```
Cached datetime:8/11/2015 1:58 PM
Cached data:Some custom value:2
Cached counter:2
Output:Cached text value
Repeat:ONE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE
List size:5
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Session Constants

The Session class provides a constant that you can use when setting the time-to-live (TTL) value.

Session Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

Session Constants

The Session class provides a constant that you can use when setting the time-to-live (TTL) value.

Constant	Description
`MAX_TTL_SECS`	Represents the maximum amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the session cache.

Session Methods

The following are methods for `Session`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

contains(key)

Returns `true` if the session cache contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

get(key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache.

get(cacheBuilder, key)

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

getAvgGetSize()

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the session cache, in bytes.

getAvgGetTime()

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the session cache, in nanoseconds.

getAvgValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the session cache, in bytes.

getCapacity()

Returns the percentage of session cache capacity that has been used.

getKeys()

Returns all keys that are stored in the session cache and visible to the invoking namespace.

getMaxGetSize()

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the session cache, in bytes.

getMaxGetTime()

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the session cache, in nanoseconds.

getMaxValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the session cache, in bytes.

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the session cache.

getName()

Returns the name of the default cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the session cache.

getPartition(partitionName)

Returns a partition from the session cache that corresponds to the specified partition name.

isAvailable()

Returns `true` if the session cache is available for use. The session cache isn't available when an active session isn't present, such as in asynchronous Apex or code called by asynchronous Apex. For example, if batch Apex causes an Apex trigger to execute, the session cache isn't available in the trigger because the trigger runs in asynchronous context.

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache and sets the cached value's visibility.

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache and sets the cached value's lifetime.

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache.

remove(cacheBuilder, key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

`contains(key)`

Returns `true` if the session cache contains a cached value corresponding to the specified key.

Signature

```
public static Boolean contains(String key)
```

Parameters

key

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if a cache entry is found. Othewise, `false`.

`get(key)`

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache.

Signature

```
public static Object get(String key)
```

Parameters

key

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

Usage

Because `Cache.Session.get()` returns an object, we recommend that you cast the returned value to a specific type to facilitate use of the returned value.

```
// Get a cached value
Object obj = Cache.Session.get('ns1.partition1.orderDate');
// Cast return value to a specific data type
DateTime dt2 = (DateTime)obj;
```

If a `Cache.Session.get()` call doesn't find the referenced key, it returns `null`.

`get(cacheBuilder, key)`

Returns the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public static Object get(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

`cacheBuilder`

Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

`key`

Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *`cacheBuilder`* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Object

The cached value as a generic object type. Cast the returned value to the appropriate type.

Usage

Because `Cache.Session.get(`*`cacheBuilder`*`, `*`key`*`)` returns an object, cast the returned value to a specific type to facilitate use of the returned value.

```
return ((DateTime)Cache.Session.get(DateCache.class, 'datetime')).format();
```

`getAvgGetSize()`

Returns the average item size of all the keys fetched from the session cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getAvgGetTime()`

Returns the average time taken to get a key from the session cache, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getAvgValueSize()`

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the average item size for keys in the session cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getAvgValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

`getCapacity()`

Returns the percentage of session cache capacity that has been used.

Signature

```
public static Double getCapacity()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

Used cache as a percentage number.

getKeys()

Returns all keys that are stored in the session cache and visible to the invoking namespace.

Signature

```
public static Set<String> getKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Set<String>

A set containing all cache keys.

getMaxGetSize()

Returns the maximum item size of all the keys fetched from the session cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxGetSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMaxGetTime()

Returns the maximum time taken to get a key from the session cache, in nanoseconds.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxGetTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMaxValueSize()

Deprecated and available only in API versions 49.0 and earlier. Returns the maximum item size for keys in the session cache, in bytes.

Signature

```
public static Long getMaxValueSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getMissRate()

Returns the miss rate in the session cache.

Signature

```
public static Double getMissRate()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

getName()

Returns the name of the default cache partition.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The name of the default cache partition.

getNumKeys()

Returns the total number of keys in the session cache.

Signature

```
public static Long getNumKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

getPartition(partitionName)

Returns a partition from the session cache that corresponds to the specified partition name.

Signature

```
public static cache.SessionPartition getPartition(String partitionName)
```

Parameters

partitionName

Type: String

A partition name that is qualified by the namespace, for example, *namespace.partition*.

Return Value

Type: Cache.SessionPartition

Example

After you get the session partition, you can add and retrieve the partition's cache values.

```
// Get partition
Cache.SessionPartition sessionPart = Cache.Session.getPartition('myNs.myPartition');
// Retrieve cache value from the partition
if (sessionPart.contains('BookTitle')) {
    String cachedTitle = (String)sessionPart.get('BookTitle');
}

// Add cache value to the partition
sessionPart.put('OrderDate', Date.today());

// Or use dot notation to call partition methods
String cachedAuthor =
(String)Cache.Session.getPartition('myNs.myPartition').get('BookAuthor');
```

isAvailable()

Returns `true` if the session cache is available for use. The session cache isn't available when an active session isn't present, such as in asynchronous Apex or code called by asynchronous Apex. For example, if batch Apex causes an Apex trigger to execute, the session cache isn't available in the trigger because the trigger runs in asynchronous context.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isAvailable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the session cache is available. Otherwise, `false`.

put(key, value)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache. The `put` method can write only to the cache in your org's namespace.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A string that uniquely identifies the value to be cached. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, visibility)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache and sets the cached value's visibility.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Cache.Visibility visibility)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A string that uniquely identifies the value to be cached. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache and sets the cached value's lifetime.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A string that uniquely identifies the value to be cached. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the session cache. The cached values remain in the cache as long as the Salesforce session hasn't expired. The maximum value is 28,800 seconds or eight hours. The minimum value is 300 seconds or five minutes.

Return Value

Type: void

put(key, value, ttlSecs, visibility, immutable)

Stores the specified key/value pair as a cached entry in the session cache. This method also sets the cached value's lifetime, visibility, and whether it can be overwritten by another namespace.

Signature

```
public static void put(String key, Object value, Integer ttlSecs, cache.Visibility
visibility, Boolean immutable)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A string that uniquely identifies the value to be cached. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

value
Type: Object

The value to store in the cache. The cached value must be serializable.

ttlSecs
Type: Integer

The amount of time, in seconds, to keep the cached value in the session cache. The cached values remain in the cache as long as the Salesforce session hasn't expired. The maximum value is 28,800 seconds or eight hours. The minimum value is 300 seconds or five minutes.

visibility
Type: Cache.Visibility

Indicates whether the cached value is available only to Apex code that is executing in the same namespace or to Apex code executing from any namespace.

immutable
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether the cached value can be overwritten by another namespace (`false`) or not (`true`).

Return Value

Type: void

remove(key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache.

Signature

```
public static Boolean remove(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that uniquely identifies a cached value. For information about the format of the key name, see Usage.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

remove(cacheBuilder, key)

Deletes the cached value corresponding to the specified key from the session cache. Use this method if your cached value is a class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

Signature

```
public static Boolean remove(System.Type cacheBuilder, String key)
```

Parameters

cacheBuilder
Type: System.Type

The Apex class that implements the `CacheBuilder` interface.

key
Type: String

A case-sensitive string value that, combined with the class name corresponding to the *cacheBuilder* parameter, uniquely identifies a cached value.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`true` if the cache value was successfully removed. Otherwise, `false`.

SessionPartition Class

Contains methods to manage cache values in the session cache of a specific partition.

Namespace

Cache

Usage

This class extends Cache.Partition and inherits all of its non-static methods. Utility methods for creating and validating keys are not supported and can be called only from the `Cache.Partition` parent class. For a list of `Cache.Partition` methods, see Partition Methods.

To get a session partition, call `Cache.Session.getPartition` and pass in a fully qualified partition name, as follows.

```
Cache.SessionPartition sessionPartition =
Cache.Session.getPartition('namespace.myPartition');
```

See Cache Key Format for Partition Methods.

Example

This class is the controller for a sample Visualforce page (shown in the subsequent code sample). The controller shows how to use the methods of `Cache.SessionPartition` to manage a cache value on a particular partition. The controller takes inputs from the Visualforce page for the partition name, key name for a counter, and initial counter value. The controller contains default values for these inputs. When you click **Rerender** on the Visualforce page, the `go()` method is invoked and increases the counter by one. When you click **Remove Key**, the counter key is removed from the cache. The counter value gets reset to its initial value when it's re-added to the cache.

```
public class SessionPartitionController {

   // Name of a partition in the local namespace
   String partitionInput = 'local.myPartition';
   // Name of the key
   String counterKeyInput = 'counter';
   // Key initial value
   Integer counterInitValue = 0;
   // Session partition object
   Cache.SessionPartition sessionPartition;

    // Constructor of the controller for the Visualforce page.
    public SessionPartitionController() {
    }

    // Adds counter value to the cache.
    // This method is called when the Visualforce page loads.
    public void init() {
        // Create the partition instance based on the partition name
        sessionPartition = getPartition();

        // Add counter to the cache with an initial value
        //  or increment it if it's already there.
```

```
        if (!sessionPartition.contains(counterKeyInput)) {
            sessionPartition.put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);
        } else {
            sessionPartition.put(counterKeyInput, getCounter() + 1);
        }
    }

    // Returns the session partition based on the partition name
    // given in the Visualforce page or the default value.
    private Cache.SessionPartition getPartition() {
       if (sessionPartition == null) {
            sessionPartition = Cache.Session.getPartition(partitionInput);
       }

       return sessionPartition;
     }

    // Return counter from the cache.
    public Integer getCounter() {
        return (Integer)getPartition().get(counterKeyInput);
    }

    // Invoked by the Submit button to save input values
    //  supplied by the user.
    public PageReference save() {
        // Reset the initial key value in the cache
        getPartition().put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);

        return null;
    }

    // Method invoked by the Rerender button on the Visualforce page.
    // Updates the values of various cached values.
    // Increases the values of counter and the MyData counter if those
    //   cache values are still in the cache.
    public PageReference go() {
        // Get the partition object
        sessionPartition = getPartition();
        // Increase the cached counter value or set it to 0
        //  if it's not cached.
        if (sessionPartition.contains(counterKeyInput)) {
            sessionPartition.put(counterKeyInput, getCounter() + 1);
        } else {
            sessionPartition.put(counterKeyInput, counterInitValue);
        }

        return null;
    }

    // Method invoked by the Remove button on the Visualforce page.
    // Removes the datetime cached value from the session cache.
    public PageReference remove() {
        getPartition().remove(counterKeyInput);
```

```
        return null;
    }

    // Get and set methods for accessing variables
    // that correspond to the input text fields on
    // the Visualforce page.
    public String getPartitionInput() {
        return partitionInput;
    }

    public String getCounterKeyInput() {
        return counterKeyInput;
    }

    public Integer getCounterInitValue() {
        return counterInitValue;
    }

    public void setPartitionInput(String partition) {
        this.partitionInput = partition;
    }

    public void setCounterKeyInput(String keyName) {
        this.counterKeyInput = keyName;
    }

    public void setCounterInitValue(Integer counterValue) {
        this.counterInitValue = counterValue;
    }
}
```

This is the Visualforce page that corresponds to the `SessionPartitionController` class.

```
<apex:page controller="SessionPartitionController" action="{!init}">

    <apex:form >
        <br/>Partition with Namespace Prefix: <apex:inputText value="{!partitionInput}"/>

        <br/>Counter Key Name: <apex:inputText value="{!counterKeyInput}"/>
        <br/>Counter Initial Value: <apex:inputText value="{!counterInitValue}"/>
        <apex:commandButton action="{!save}" value="Save Key Input Values"/>
    </apex:form>

    <apex:outputPanel id="output">
        <br/>Cached Counter: <apex:outputText value="{!counter}"/>
    </apex:outputPanel>

    <br/>
    <apex:form >
        <apex:commandButton id="go" action="{!go}" value="Rerender" rerender="output"/>
        <apex:commandButton id="remove" action="{!remove}" value="Remove Key"
rerender="output"/>
    </apex:form>
```

```
</apex:page>
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Platform Cache

Cache Exceptions

The `Cache` namespace contains exception classes.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions on page 2586 in the *Apex Developer Guide*.

The `Cache` namespace contains these exceptions.

Exception	Thrown when
`Cache.Session.SessionCacheException`	An error occurred while adding or retrieving a value in the session cache.
`Cache.Session.SessionCacheNoSessionException`	An attempt is made to access the cache when the session cache isn't available.
`Cache.Org.OrgCacheException`	An attempt is made to access a partition that doesn't exist or whose name is invalid.
`Cache.InvalidParamException`	An invalid parameter value is passed into a method of `Cache.Session` or `Cache.Org`. This error occurs when: • The key referenced is null or empty or is not alphanumeric. • The namespace referenced is null or empty. • The partition name is null or empty or is not alphanumeric. • Another referenced value is null.
`Cache.ItemSizeLimitExceededException`	A cache `put` call is made with an item that exceeds the maximum size limit. To fix this error, break the item into multiple, smaller items.
`Cache.PlatformCacheInvalidOperationException`	A cache `put` or `remove` call is made that is not allowed. For example, when calling `put` or `remove` inside a Visualforce constructor.
`Cache.InvalidCacheBuilderException`	A `get(CacheBuilder cb, String key)`, `remove(CacheBuilder cb, String key)`, or `validateCacheBuilder(CacheBuilder cb)` method is called but the `cb` parameter is a class that does not implement the `Cache.CacheBuilder` interface.

Visibility Enum

Use the `Cache.Visibility` enumeration in the `Cache.Session` or `Cache.Org` methods to indicate whether a cached value is visible only in the value's namespace or in all namespaces.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Cache.Visibility` enum.

Value	Description
`ALL`	The cached value is available to Apex code executing from any namespace. This is the default state.
`NAMESPACE`	The cached value is available to Apex code executing from the same namespace. If a key has the `Visibility.NAMESPACE` attribute, a `get` method initiated from a different namespace returns `null`.

Canvas Namespace

The `Canvas` namespace provides an interface and classes for canvas apps in Salesforce.

The following are the interfaces and classes in the `Canvas` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

ApplicationContext Interface
Use this interface to retrieve application context information, such as the application version or URL.

CanvasLifecycleHandler Interface
Implement this interface to control context information and add custom behavior during the application render phase.

ContextTypeEnum Enum
Describes context data that can be excluded from canvas app context data. You specify which context types to exclude in the `excludeContextTypes()` method in your `CanvasLifecycleHandler` implementation.

EnvironmentContext Interface
Use this interface to retrieve environment context information, such as the app display location or the configuration parameters.

RenderContext Interface
A wrapper interface that is used to retrieve application and environment context information.

Test Class
Contains methods for automated testing of your Canvas classes.

Canvas Exceptions
The `Canvas` namespace contains exception classes.

ApplicationContext Interface

Use this interface to retrieve application context information, such as the application version or URL.

Namespace

Canvas

Usage

The `ApplicationContext` interface provides methods to retrieve application information about the canvas app that's being rendered. Most of the methods are read-only. For this interface, you don't need to create an implementation. Use the default implementation that Salesforce provides.

IN THIS SECTION:

ApplicationContext Methods

ApplicationContext Methods

The following are methods for `ApplicationContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCanvasUrl()
Retrieves the fully qualified URL of the canvas app.

getDeveloperName()
Retrieves the internal API name of the canvas app.

getName()
Retrieves the name of the canvas app.

getNamespace()
Retrieves the namespace prefix of the canvas app.

getVersion()
Retrieves the current version of the canvas app.

setCanvasUrlPath(newPath)
Overrides the URL of the canvas app for the current request.

`getCanvasUrl()`

Retrieves the fully qualified URL of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getCanvasUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the URL of the canvas app, for example:
`http://instance.salesforce.com:8080/canvas_app_path/canvas_app.jsp`.

`getDeveloperName()`

Retrieves the internal API name of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getDeveloperName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the API name of the canvas app. You specify this value in the `API Name` field when you expose the canvas app by creating a connected app.

`getName()`

Retrieves the name of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the name of the canvas app.

`getNamespace()`

Retrieves the namespace prefix of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getNamespace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the Salesforce namespace prefix that's associated with the canvas app.

`getVersion()`

Retrieves the current version of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getVersion()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the current version of the canvas app. This value changes after you update and republish a canvas app in an organization. If you are in a Developer Edition organization, using this method always returns the latest version.

`setCanvasUrlPath(newPath)`

Overrides the URL of the canvas app for the current request.

Signature

```
public void setCanvasUrlPath(String newPath)
```

Parameters

`newPath`
Type: String

The URL (not including domain) that you need to use to override the canvas app URL.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Use this method to override the URL path and query string of the canvas app. Do not provide a fully qualified URL, because the provided URL string will be appended to the original canvas URL domain.

For example, if the current canvas app URL is `https://myserver.com:6000/myAppPath` and you call `setCanvasUrlPath('/alternatePath/args?arg1=1&arg2=2')`, the adjusted canvas app URL will be `https://myserver.com:6000/alternatePath/args?arg1=1&arg2=2`.

If the provided path results in a malformed URL, or a URL that exceeds 2,048 characters, a System.CanvasException will be thrown.

This method overrides the canvas app URL for the current request and does not permanently change the canvas app URL as configured in the UI for the Salesforce canvas app settings.

CanvasLifecycleHandler Interface

Implement this interface to control context information and add custom behavior during the application render phase.

Namespace

Canvas

Usage

Use this interface to specify what canvas context information is provided to your app by implementing the `excludeContextTypes()` method. Use this interface to call custom code when the app is rendered by implementing the `onRender()` method.

If you provide an implementation of this interface, you must implement `excludeContextTypes()` and `onRender()`.

Example Implementation

The following example shows a simple implementation of CanvasLifecycleHandler that specifies that organization context information will be excluded and prints a debug message when the app is rendered.

```
public class MyCanvasListener
implements Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler{
    public Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum> excludeContextTypes(){
        Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum> excluded = new Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum>();
        excluded.add(Canvas.ContextTypeEnum.ORGANIZATION);
        return excluded;
    }

    public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext){
        System.debug('Canvas lifecycle called.');
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CanvasLifecycleHandler Methods

CanvasLifecycleHandler Methods

The following are methods for `CanvasLifecycleHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

excludeContextTypes()

Lets the implementation exclude parts of the CanvasRequest context, if the application does not need it.

onRender(renderContext)

Invoked when a canvas app is rendered. Provides the ability to set and retrieve canvas application and environment context information during the application render phase.

excludeContextTypes()

Lets the implementation exclude parts of the CanvasRequest context, if the application does not need it.

Signature

```
public Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum> excludeContextTypes()
```

Return Value

Type: SET<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum>

This method must return `null` or a set of zero or more ContextTypeEnum values. Returning `null` enables all attributes by default. ContextTypeEnum values that can be set are:

- Canvas.ContextTypeEnum.ORGANIZATION
- Canvas.ContextTypeEnum.RECORD_DETAIL
- Canvas.ContextTypeEnum.USER

See ContextTypeEnum on page 227 for more details on these values.

Usage

Implement this method to specify which attributes to disable in the context of the canvas app. A disabled attribute will set the associated canvas context information to null.

Disabling attributes can help improve performance by reducing the size of the signed request and canvas context. Also, disabled attributes do not need to be retrieved by Salesforce, which further improves performance.

See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for more information on context information in the Context object that's provided in the CanvasRequest.

Example

This example implementation specifies that the organization information will be disabled in the canvas context.

```
public Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum> excludeContextTypes() {
    Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum> excluded = new Set<Canvas.ContextTypeEnum>();
    excluded.add(Canvas.ContextTypeEnum.ORGANIZATION);
    return excluded;
}
```

onRender(renderContext)

Invoked when a canvas app is rendered. Provides the ability to set and retrieve canvas application and environment context information during the application render phase.

Signature

```
public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext)
```

Parameters

renderContext
Type: Canvas.RenderContext

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If implemented, this method is called whenever the canvas app is rendered. The implementation can set and retrieve context information by using the provided Canvas.RenderContext.

This method is called whenever signed request or context information is retrieved by the client. See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for more information on signed request authentication.

Example

This example implementation prints 'Canvas lifecycle called.' to the debug log when the canvas app is rendered.

```
public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext) {
    System.debug('Canvas lifecycle called.');
}
```

ContextTypeEnum Enum

Describes context data that can be excluded from canvas app context data. You specify which context types to exclude in the `excludeContextTypes()` method in your `CanvasLifecycleHandler` implementation.

Namespace

Canvas

Enum Values

Value	Description
`ORGANIZATION`	Exclude context information about the organization in which the canvas app is running.
`RECORD_DETAIL`	Exclude context information about the object record on which the canvas app appears.
`USER`	Exclude context information about the current user.

EnvironmentContext Interface

Use this interface to retrieve environment context information, such as the app display location or the configuration parameters.

Namespace

Canvas

Usage

The `EnvironmentContext` interface provides methods to retrieve environment information about the current canvas app. For this interface, you don't need to create an implementation. Use the default implementation that Salesforce provides.

IN THIS SECTION:

EnvironmentContext Methods

EnvironmentContext Methods

The following are methods for `EnvironmentContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addEntityField(fieldName)
Adds a field to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

addEntityFields(fieldNames)
Adds a set of fields to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

getDisplayLocation()
Retrieves the display location where the canvas app is being called from. For example, a value of Visualforce page.

getEntityFields()
Retrieves the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

getLocationUrl()
Retrieves the location URL of the canvas app.

getParametersAsJSON()
Retrieves the current custom parameters for the canvas app. Parameters are returned as a JSON string.

getSublocation()
Retrieves the display sublocation where the canvas app is being called from.

setParametersAsJSON(jsonString)
Sets the custom parameters for the canvas app.

`addEntityField(fieldName)`

Adds a field to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

Signature

```
public void addEntityField(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

The object field name that you need to add to the list of returned fields., Using '*' adds all fields that the user has permission to view.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

When you use the `<apex:canvasApp>` component to display a canvas app on a Visualforce page, and that page is associated with an object (placed on the page layout, for example), you can specify fields to be returned from the related object. See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for more information on the Record object.

Use `addEntityField()` to add a field to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object. By default the list of fields includes ID. You can add fields by name or add all fields that the user has permission to view by calling `addEntityField('*')`.

You can inspect the configured list of fields by using Canvas.EnvironmentContext.`getEntityFields()`.

Example

This example adds the Name and BillingAddress fields to the list of object fields. This example assumes the canvas app will appear in a Visualforce page that's associated with the Account page layout.

```
Canvas.EnvironmentContext env = renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

// Add Name and BillingAddress to fields (assumes we'll run from the Account detail page)
env.addEntityField('Name');
env.addEntityField('BillingAddress');
```

addEntityFields(fieldNames)

Adds a set of fields to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

Signature

```
public void addEntityFields(Set<String> fieldNames)
```

Parameters

fieldNames
Type: SET<String>

The set of object field names that you need to add to the list of returned fields. If an item in the set is '*', all fields that the user has permission to view are added.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

When you use the `<apex:canvasApp>` component to display a canvas app on a Visualforce page, and that page is associated with an object (placed on the page layout, for example), you can specify fields to be returned from the related object. See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for more information on the Record object.

Use `addEntityFields()` to add a set of one or more fields to the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object. By default the list of fields includes ID. You can add fields by name or add all fields that the user has permission to view by adding a set that includes '*' as one of the strings.

You can inspect the configured list of fields by using Canvas.EnvironmentContext.`getEntityFields()`.

Example

This example adds the Name, BillingAddress, and YearStarted fields to the list of object fields. This example assumes that the canvas app will appear in a Visualforce page that's associated with the Account page layout.

```
Canvas.EnvironmentContext env = renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

// Add Name, BillingAddress and YearStarted to fields (assumes we'll run from the Account
 detail page)
Set<String> fields = new Set<String>{'Name','BillingAddress','YearStarted'};
env.addEntityFields(fields);
```

`getDisplayLocation()`

Retrieves the display location where the canvas app is being called from. For example, a value of Visualforce page.

Signature

```
public String getDisplayLocation()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The return value can be one of the following strings:

- Chatter—The canvas app was called from the Chatter tab.
- ChatterFeed—The canvas app was called from a Chatter canvas feed item.
- MobileNav—The canvas app was called from the navigation menu.
- OpenCTI—The canvas app was called from an Open CTI component.
- PageLayout—The canvas app was called from an element within a page layout. If the displayLocation is PageLayout, one of the subLocation values might be returned.
- Publisher—The canvas app was called from a canvas custom quick action.
- ServiceDesk—The canvas app was called from a Salesforce Console component.
- Visualforce—The canvas app was called from a Visualforce page.
- None—The canvas app was called from the Canvas App Previewer.

Usage

Use this method to obtain the display location for the canvas app.

getEntityFields()

Retrieves the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object when the component appears on a Visualforce page that's placed on an object.

Signature

```
public List<String> getEntityFields()
```

Return Value

Type: LIST<String>

Usage

When you use the <apex:canvasApp> component to display a canvas app on a Visualforce page, and that page is associated with an object (placed on the page layout, for example), you can specify fields to be returned from the related object. See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for more information on the Record object.

Use getEntityFields() to retrieve the list of object fields that are returned in the signed request Record object. By default the list of fields includes ID. The list of fields can be configured by using the Canvas.EnvironmentContext.addEntityField(fieldName) or Canvas.EnvironmentContext.addEntityFields(fieldNames) methods.

Example

This example gets the current list of object fields and retrieves each item in the list, printing each field name to the debug log.

```
Canvas.EnvironmentContext env = renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

List<String> entityFields = env.getEntityFields();
for (String fieldVal : entityFields) {
    System.debug('Environment Context entityField: ' + fieldVal);
}
```

If the canvas app that's using this lifecycle code was run from the detail page of an Account, the debug log output might look like:

```
Environment Context entityField: Id
```

getLocationUrl()

Retrieves the location URL of the canvas app.

Signature

```
public String getLocationUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to obtain the URL of the page where the user accessed the canvas app. For example, if the user accessed your app by clicking a link on the Chatter tab, this method returns the URL of the Chatter tab, which would be similar to 'https://*yourInstance*.salesforce.com/_ui/core/chatter/ui/ChatterPage'.

getParametersAsJSON()

Retrieves the current custom parameters for the canvas app. Parameters are returned as a JSON string.

Signature

```
public String getParametersAsJSON()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use this method to get the current custom parameters for the canvas app. The parameters are returned in a JSON string that can be de-serialized by using the System.JSON.deserializeUntyped(jsonString) method.

Custom parameters can be modified by using the Canvas.EnvironmentContext.setParametersAsJSON(jsonString) string.

Example

This example gets the current custom parameters, de-serializes them into a map, and prints the results to the debug log.

```
Canvas.EnvironmentContext env = renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

// Get current custom params
Map<String, Object> currentParams =
    (Map<String, Object>) JSON.deserializeUntyped(env.getParametersAsJSON());
System.debug('Environment Context custom paramters: ' + currentParams);
```

getSublocation()

Retrieves the display sublocation where the canvas app is being called from.

Signature

```
public String getSublocation()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The return value can be one of the following strings:

- S1MobileCardFullview—The canvas app was called from a mobile card.
- S1MobileCardPreview—The canvas app was called from a mobile card preview. The user must click the preview to open the app.

- S1RecordHomePreview—The canvas app was called from a record detail page preview. The user must click the preview to open the app.
- S1RecordHomeFullview—The canvas app was called from a page layout.

Usage

Use this method to obtain the display sublocation for the canvas app. Use only if the primary display location can be displayed on mobile devices.

`setParametersAsJSON(jsonString)`

Sets the custom parameters for the canvas app.

Signature

```
public void setParametersAsJSON(String jsonString)
```

Parameters

`jsonString`
Type: String

The custom parameters that you need to set, serialized into a JSON format string.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Use this method to set the current custom parameters for the canvas app. The parameters must be provided in a JSON string. You can use the System.JSON.`serialize(objectToSerialize)` method to serialize a map into a JSON string.

Setting the custom parameters will overwrite the custom parameters that are set for the current request. If you need to modify the current custom parameters, first get the current set of custom parameters by using `getParametersAsJSON()`, modify the retrieved parameter set as needed, and then use this modified set in your call to setParametersAsJSON().

If the provided JSON string exceeds 32KB, a System.CanvasException will be thrown.

Example

This example gets the current custom parameters, adds a new `newCustomParam` parameter with a value of 'TESTVALUE', and sets the current custom parameters.

```
Canvas.EnvironmentContext env = renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

// Get current custom params
Map<String, Object> previousParams =
    (Map<String, Object>) JSON.deserializeUntyped(env.getParametersAsJSON());

// Add a new custom param
previousParams.put('newCustomParam','TESTVALUE');
```

```
// Now replace the parameters with the current parameters plus our new custom param
env.setParametersAsJSON(JSON.serialize(previousParams));
```

RenderContext Interface

A wrapper interface that is used to retrieve application and environment context information.

Namespace

Canvas

Usage

Use this interface to retrieve application and environment context information for your canvas app. For this interface, you don't need to create an implementation. Use the default implementation that Salesforce provides.

IN THIS SECTION:

RenderContext Methods

RenderContext Methods

The following are methods for `RenderContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getApplicationContext()
Retrieves the application context information.

getEnvironmentContext()
Retrieves the environment context information.

`getApplicationContext()`

Retrieves the application context information.

Signature

```
public Canvas.ApplicationContext getApplicationContext()
```

Return Value

Type: Canvas.ApplicationContext

Usage

Use this method to get the application context information for your canvas app.

Example

The following example implementation of the CanvasLifecycleHandler onRender() method uses the provided RenderContext to retrieve the application context information and then checks the namespace, version, and app URL.

```
public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext){
    Canvas.ApplicationContext app = renderContext.getApplicationContext();
    if (!'MyNamespace'.equals(app.getNamespace())){
        // This application is installed, add code as needed
        ...
    }

    // Check the application version
    Double currentVersion = Double.valueOf(app.getVersion());

    if (currentVersion <= 5){
        // Add version specific code as needed
        ...
        // Tell the canvas application to operate in deprecated mode
        app.setCanvasUrlPath('/canvas?deprecated=true');
    }
}
```

`getEnvironmentContext()`

Retrieves the environment context information.

Signature

```
public Canvas.EnvironmentContext getEnvironmentContext()
```

Return Value

Type: Canvas.EnvironmentContext

Usage

Use this method to get the environment context information for your canvas app.

Example

The following example implementation of the CanvasLifecycleHandler onRender() method uses the provided RenderContext to retrieve the environment context information and then modifies the custom parameters.

```
public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext) {
   Canvas.EnvironmentContext env =
        renderContext.getEnvironmentContext();

    // Retrieve the custom params
    Map<String, Object> previousParams = (Map<String, Object>)
          JSON.deserializeUntyped(env.getParametersAsJSON());

    previousParams.put('param1',1);
    previousParams.put('param2',3.14159);
```

```
    ...

    // Now, add in some opportunity record IDs
    Opportunity[] o = [select id, name from opportunity];
    previousParams.put('opportunities',o);

    // Now, replace the parameters
    env.setParametersAsJSON(JSON.serialize(previousParams));
}
```

Test Class

Contains methods for automated testing of your Canvas classes.

Namespace

Canvas

Usage

Use this class to test your implementation of Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler with mock test data. You can create a test Canvas.RenderContext with mock application and environment context data and use this data to verify that your CanvasLifecycleHandler is being invoked correctly.

IN THIS SECTION:

Test Constants
The Test class provides constants that are used as keys when you set mock application and environment context data.

Test Methods
The Test class provides methods for creating test contexts and invoking your CanvasLifecycleHandler with mock data.

Test Constants

The Test class provides constants that are used as keys when you set mock application and environment context data.

When you call Canvas.Test.`mockRenderContext(applicationContextTestValues, environmentContextTestValues)`, you need to provide maps of key-value pairs to represent your mock application and environment context data. The Test class provides static constant strings that you can use as keys for various parts of the application and environment context.

Constant	Description
`KEY_CANVAS_URL`	Represents the canvas app URL key in the ApplicationContext.
`KEY_DEVELOPER_NAME`	Represents the canvas app developer or API name key in the ApplicationContext.
`KEY_DISPLAY_LOCATION`	Represents the canvas app display location key in the EnvironmentContext.
`KEY_LOCATION_URL`	Represents the canvas app location URL key in the EnvironmentContext.

Constant	Description
KEY_NAME	Represents the canvas app name key in the ApplicationContext.
KEY_NAMESPACE	Represents the canvas app namespace key in the ApplicationContext.
KEY_SUB_LOCATION	Represents the canvas app sublocation key in the EnvironmentContext.
KEY_VERSION	Represents the canvas app version key in the ApplicationContext.

Test Methods

The Test class provides methods for creating test contexts and invoking your CanvasLifecycleHandler with mock data.

The following are methods for `Test`. All are static methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

mockRenderContext(applicationContextTestValues, environmentContextTestValues)
Creates and returns a test Canvas.RenderContext based on the provided application and environment context parameters.

testCanvasLifecycle(lifecycleHandler, mockRenderContext)
Calls the canvas test framework to invoke a CanvasLifecycleHandler with the provided RenderContext.

mockRenderContext(applicationContextTestValues, environmentContextTestValues)

Creates and returns a test Canvas.RenderContext based on the provided application and environment context parameters.

Signature

```
public static Canvas.RenderContext mockRenderContext(Map<String,String>
applicationContextTestValues, Map<String,String> environmentContextTestValues)
```

Parameters

applicationContextTestValues
Type: Map<String,String>

Specifies a map of key-value pairs that provide mock application context data. Use constants that are provided by Canvas.Test as keys. If `null` is provided for this parameter, the canvas framework will generate some default mock application context values.

environmentContextTestValues
Type: Map<String,String>

Specifies a map of key-value pairs that provide mock environment context data. Use constants provided by Canvas.Test as keys. If `null` is provided for this parameter, the canvas framework will generate some default mock environment context values.

Return Value

Type: Canvas.RenderContext

Usage

Use this method to create a mock Canvas.RenderContext. Use the returned RenderContext in calls to Canvas.Test.testCanvasLifecycle(lifecycleHandler, mockRenderContext) for testing Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler implementations.

Example

The following example creates maps to represent mock application and environment context data and generates a test Canvas.RenderContext. This test RenderContext can be used in a call to Canvas.Test.testCanvasLifecycle(lifecycleHandler, mockRenderContext).

```
Map<String,String> appValues = new Map<String,String>();
appValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_NAMESPACE,'alternateNamespace');
appValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_VERSION,'3.0');

Map<String,String> envValues = new Map<String,String>();
envValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_DISPLAY_LOCATION,'Chatter');
envValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_LOCATION_URL,'https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/_ui/core/chatter/ui/ChatterPage');

Canvas.RenderContext mock = Canvas.Test.mockRenderContext(appValues,envValues);
```

testCanvasLifecycle(lifecycleHandler, mockRenderContext)

Calls the canvas test framework to invoke a CanvasLifecycleHandler with the provided RenderContext.

Signature

```
public static Void testCanvasLifecycle(Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler
lifecycleHandler,Canvas.RenderContext mockRenderContext)
```

Parameters

lifecycleHandler
Type: Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler

Specifies the CanvasLifecycleHandler implementation that you need to invoke.

mockRenderContext
Type: Canvas.RenderContext

Specifies the RenderContext information that you need to provide to the invoked CanvasLifecycleHandler. If `null` is provided for this parameter, the canvas framework will generate and use a default mock RenderContext.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Use this method to invoke an implementation of Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler.onRender(renderContext) with a mock Canvas.RenderContext that you provide.

Example

The following example creates maps to represent mock application and environment context data and generates a test Canvas.RenderContext. This test RenderContext is then used to invoke a Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler.

```
// Set some application context data in a Map
Map<String,String> appValues = new Map<String,String>();
appValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_NAMESPACE,'alternateNamespace');
appValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_VERSION,'3.0');

// Set some environment context data in a MAp
Map<String,String> envValues = new Map<String,String>();
envValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_DISPLAY_LOCATION,'Chatter');
envValues.put(Canvas.Test.KEY_LOCATION_URL,'https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/_ui/core/chatter/ui/ChatterPage');

// Create a mock RenderContext using the test application and environment context data
Maps
Canvas.RenderContext mock = Canvas.Test.mockRenderContext(appValues,envValues);

// Set some custom params on the mock RenderContext
mock.getEnvironmentContext().setParametersAsJSON('{\"param1\":1,\"boolParam\":true,\"stringParam\":\"test
 string\"}');

// Use the mock RenderContext to invoke a CanvasLifecycleHandler
Canvas.Test.testCanvasLifecycle(handler,mock)
```

Canvas Exceptions

The `Canvas` namespace contains exception classes.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions.

The `Canvas` namespace contains this exception:

Exception	Description
`Canvas.CanvasRenderException`	Use this class in your implementation of Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler.`onRender(renderContext)`. To show an error to the user in your `onRender()` implementation, throw a `Canvas.CanvasRenderException`, and the canvas framework will render the error message to the user. This exception will be managed only within the `onRender()` method.

Example

The following example implementation of `onRender()` catches a CanvasException that was thrown because a canvas URL was set with a string that exceeded the maximum length. A CanvasRenderException is created and thrown to display the error to the user.

```
public class MyCanvasListener
implements Canvas.CanvasLifecycleHandler {

    public void onRender(Canvas.RenderContext renderContext) {
```

```
        Canvas.ApplicationContext app = renderContext.getApplicationContext();

        // Code to generate a URL string that is too long

        // ...

        // Try to set the canvas app URL using the invalid URL string
        try {
            app.setCanvasUrlPath(aUrlPathThatIsTooLong);
        } catch (CanvasException e) {
            // Display error to user by throwing a new CanvasRenderException
            throw new Canvas.CanvasRenderException(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

See the *Canvas Developer Guide* for additional examples that use CanvasRenderException.

ChatterAnswers Namespace

The `ChatterAnswers` namespace provides an interface for creating Account records.

The following is the interface in the `ChatterAnswers` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AccountCreator Interface
Creates Account records that will be associated with Chatter Answers users.

AccountCreator Interface

Creates Account records that will be associated with Chatter Answers users.

Namespace

ChatterAnswers

Usage

The `ChatterAnswers.AccountCreator` is specified in the `registrationClassName` attribute of a `chatteranswers:registration` Visualforce component. This interface is called by Chatter Answers and allows for custom creation of Account records used for portal users.

To implement the `ChatterAnswers.AccountCreator` interface, you must first declare a class with the `implements` keyword as follows:

```
public class ChatterAnswersRegistration implements ChatterAnswers.AccountCreator {
```

Next, your class must provide an implementation for the following method:

```
public String createAccount(String firstname, String lastname, Id siteAdminId) {
    // Your code here
}
```

The implemented method must be declared as `global` or `public`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AccountCreator Methods

AccountCreator Example Implementation

AccountCreator Methods

The following are methods for `AccountCreator`.

IN THIS SECTION:

createAccount(firstName, lastName, siteAdminId)
Accepts basic user information and creates an Account record. The implementation of this method returns the account ID.

`createAccount(firstName, lastName, siteAdminId)`

Accepts basic user information and creates an Account record. The implementation of this method returns the account ID.

Signature

```
public String createAccount(String firstName, String lastName, Id siteAdminId)
```

Parameters

`firstName`
Type: String

The first name of the user who is registering.

`lastName`
Type: String

The last name of the user who is registering.

`siteAdminId`
Type: ID

The user ID of the Site administrator, used for notification if any exceptions occur.

Return Value

Type: String

AccountCreator Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `ChatterAnswers.AccountCreator` interface. The `createAccount` method implementation accepts user information and creates an Account record. The method returns a String value for the Account ID.

```
public class ChatterAnswersRegistration implements ChatterAnswers.AccountCreator {
    public String createAccount(String firstname, String lastname, Id siteAdminId) {
        Account a = new Account(name = firstname + ' ' + lastname, ownerId = siteAdminId);

         insert a;
         return a.Id;
    }
}
```

This example tests the code above.

```
@isTest
private class ChatterAnswersCreateAccountTest {
    static testMethod void validateAccountCreation() {
        User[] user = [SELECT Id, Firstname, Lastname from User];
        if (user.size() == 0) { return; }
        String firstName = user[0].FirstName;
        String lastName = user[0].LastName;
        String userId = user[0].Id;
        String accountId = new ChatterAnswersRegistration().createAccount(firstName,
lastName, userId);
        Account acct = [SELECT name, ownerId from Account where Id =: accountId];
        System.assertEquals(firstName + ' ' + lastName, acct.name);
        System.assertEquals(userId, acct.ownerId);
  }
}
```

CommercePayments Namespace

Use the `CommercePayments` namespace to provide a safe and customizable platform for managing customer payments and refunds.

To review `CommercePayments` use cases and walkthroughs, go to Use Cases for the CommercePayments Namespace.

The following are the classes in the `CommercePayments` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AbstractResponse Class

Contains the normalized response fields from payment gateways that are common to all the other gateway responses.

AddressRequest Class

Contains address request data that is sent to a gateway adapter during a service call.

AuditParamsRequest

`AuditParamsRequest` is used for audit parameters in a transaction request. This is an abstract request class that is extended by the `BaseRequest` class.

AbstractTransactionResponse Class

Abstract class for storing normalized information sent from payment gateways about a payment transaction. Holds the common response fields sent from payment gateways for authorization, sale, capture, and refund transactions.

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends information about a payment method to a gateway adapter during an authorization service call.

AuthorizationReversalRequest Class

Sends information about an authorization reversal request to a gateway adapter during a service call.

AuthorizationReversalResponse Class

Response sent by the payment gateway following a payment authorization reversal service.

AuthorizationRequest Class

Sends information about an authorization request to a gateway adapter during a service call.

AuthorizationResponse Class

Response sent by the payment gateway adapter for an authorization service.

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Abstract class used to send information about a payment method to a gateway adapter during a service call.

BaseNotification Class

Abstract class for storing notification information sent from payment gateways.

BasePaymentMethodRequest Class

Abstract class for storing information about payment methods.

BaseRequest Class

`BaseRequest` is extended by all the request classes.

CaptureNotification Class

When a payment gateway sends a notification for a capture transaction, the payment gateway adapter creates the `CaptureNotification` object to store information about the notification.

CaptureRequest Class

Represents a capture request. This class extends the `BaseRequest` class and inherits all its methods.

CaptureResponse Class

The payment gateway adapter sends this response for the capture request type. This class extends `AbstractResponse` and inherits its methods.

CardCategory Enum

Defines whether the payment method represents a credit card or a debit card.

CardPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a service call.

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Class

Access information about custom metadata. The `PaymentGatewayAdapter` can send `CustomMetadataTypeInfo` to transaction requests through the response object's `SalesforceResultCodeInfo`.

GatewayErrorResponse Class

Use to respond with an error indication following errors from the `PaymentGateway` adapter, such as request-forbidden responses, custom validation errors, or expired API tokens.

GatewayNotificationResponse Class

When the payment gateway sends a notification to the payments platform, the platform responds with a `GatewayNotificationResponse` indicating whether the platform succeeded or failed at receiving the notification.

GatewayResponse Interface

Generic payment gateway response interface. This class extends the `CaptureResponse` on page 298, `AbstractTransactionResponse` on page 254, and `AbstractResponse` on page 245 classes and inherits all their properties. It has no unique methods or parameters.

NotificationClient Class

Communicates with the payment platform regarding the gateway's notification.

NotificationSaveResult Class

Contains the result of the payment platform's attempt to record data from the gateway's notification.

NotificationStatus Enum

Shows whether the payments platform successfully received the notification from the gateway.

PaymentGatewayAdapter Interface

`PaymentGatewayAdapters` can implement this interface in order to process requests.

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Interface

Implement the interface to allow customers to process payments asynchronously.

PaymentGatewayContext Class

Wraps the information related to a payment request.

PaymentGatewayNotificationContext Class

Wraps the information related to a gateway notification.

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Class

Stores data about a request to tokenize a card payment method. The tokenization process occurs in the payment gateway. This process replaces sensitive customer data, such as a card number or CVV, with unique identification symbols. The symbols are used while the data is handled by Salesforce, the payment gateway, and the customer bank, allowing Salesforce to store the token without storing sensitive customer data.

PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse Class

Gateway response sent by payment gateway adapters for the payment method tokenization request. The response includes the payment method's token ID value.

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Class

Contains the notification request data from the gateway.

PaymentsHttp Class

Makes an HTTP request to start the interaction with the payment gateway.

RefundRequest Class

Sends data related to a refund to the payment gateway adapter.

ReferencedRefundNotification Class

When a payment gateway sends a notification for a refund transaction, the payment gateway adapter creates the `ReferencedRefundNotification` object to store information about notification.

ReferencedRefundRequest

Access information about the referenced refund requests. Extends the `RefundRequest` class.

ReferencedRefundResponse Class

The payment gateway adapter sends this response for the `ReferencedRefund` request type.

RequestType Enum

Defines the type of payment transaction request made to the payment gateway.

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a sale service call.

SaleRequest Class

Stores information about a sales request.

SaleResponse Class

Response sent by payment gateway adapters for a sales service.

SalesforceResultCode Enum

Defines the gateway call status values in Salesforce based on the call status values that the payment gateway returned.

SalesforceResultCodeInfo

Stores Salesforce result code information from payment gateway adapters.

AbstractResponse Class

Contains the normalized response fields from payment gateways that are common to all the other gateway responses.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

You must specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.AbstractResponse abr = new CommercePayments.AbstractResponse();
```

This class can't be instantiated on its own. This class implements the GatewayResponse class. Other GatewayResponse classes extend this class to inherit common properties.

IN THIS SECTION:

AbstractResponse Methods

AbstractResponse Methods

The following are methods for `AbstractResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the transaction occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the payment request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

`setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)`

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode

Type: String

Code sent by gateways that use an address verification system.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)`

Sets the date that the transaction occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate

Type: Datetime

Date and time of the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)`

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the payment request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Information on error messages sent from the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway's result code. Use this field to learn more about why the gateway returned a certain result code.

Return Value

Type: void

`setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)`

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

`salesforceResultCodeInfo`

Type: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

AddressRequest Class

Contains address request data that is sent to a gateway adapter during a service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

Contains information about the payment method's address. Use this information in authorization, sale, and tokenization requests. The payment gateway adapter uses information in an AddressRequest object to construct a JSON request to send to the payment gateway.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.AddressRequest adr = new CommercePayments.AddressRequest();
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AddressRequest Constructors

AddressRequest Properties

AddressRequest Methods

AddressRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `AddressRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AddressRequest(street, city, state, country, postalCode)
Constructs a sample address. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

AddressRequest(street, city, state, country, postalCode)

Constructs a sample address. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global AddressRequest(String street, String city, String state, String country, String postalCode)
```

Parameters

street
Type: String

Street for the payment method's address.

city
Type: String

City for the payment method's address.

state
Type: String

State for the payment method's address.

country
Type: String

Country for the payment method's address.

postalCode
Type: String

Postal code for the payment method's address.

AddressRequest Properties

The following are properties for `AddressRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

city
City of the payment method address.

companyName
Company name of the payment method address.

country
Country for the payment method address.

postalCode
Postal code for the payment method address.

state
State for the payment method address.

street
Street for the payment method address.

city

City of the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String city {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

companyName

Company name of the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String companyName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

country

Country for the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String country {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

postalCode

Postal code for the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String postalCode {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`state`

State for the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String state {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`street`

Street for the payment method address.

Signature

```
global String street {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

AddressRequest Methods

The following are methods for `AddressRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AddressRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AddressRequest`.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AddressRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AddressRequest`.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

AuditParamsRequest

`AuditParamsRequest` is used for audit parameters in a transaction request. This is an abstract request class that is extended by the `BaseRequest` class.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

`AuditParamsRequest` is an abstract class that holds attributes related to audit parameters such as email, IP address, MAC address, and phone number. This class can't be instantiated on its own. All `CommercePayments` request classes extend this class.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuditParamsRequest Constructors

AuditParamsRequest Properties

AuditParamsRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuditParamsRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuditParamsRequest(email, macAddress, ipAddress, phone)

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`AuditParamsRequest(email, macAddress, ipAddress, phone)`

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
AuditParamsRequest(String email, String macAddress, String ipAddress, String phone)
```

Parameters

email
Type: String

Email of the client that initiated the request.

macAddress
Type: String

Mac address of the customer's device. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

ipAddress
Type: String

The customer's IP address. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

phone
Type: String

Phone number of the client that initiated the request.

AuditParamsRequest Properties

The following are properties for `AuditParamsRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

email

Email of the client that initiated the request.

ipAddress

The customer's IP address. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

macAddress
Mac address of the customer's device. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

phone
Phone number of the client that initiated the request.

email

Email of the client that initiated the request.

Property Value

Type: String

ipAddress

The customer's IP address. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

Property Value

Type: String

macAddress

Mac address of the customer's device. Gateways often use this data in risk checks.

Property Value

Type: String

phone

Phone number of the client that initiated the request.

Property Value

Type: String

AbstractTransactionResponse Class

Abstract class for storing normalized information sent from payment gateways about a payment transaction. Holds the common response fields sent from payment gateways for authorization, sale, capture, and refund transactions.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

Specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.AbstractTransactionResponse atr = new
CommercePayments.AbstractTransactionResponse();
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AbstractTransactionResponse Methods

AbstractTransactionResponse Methods

The following are methods for `AbstractTransactionResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)
Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)
Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the date that the notification occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the notification request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)
Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)
Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets a gateway-specific result code. You can map the result code to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount of the transaction.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode
Type: String

Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the notification occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

The date that the transaction occurred.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the notification request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

The message that the gateway returned with the transaction request. Contains additional information about the transaction.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Provides information about the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. You can map the result code to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Provides additional information about the result code and why the gateway returned the specific code. Descriptions vary between different gateways.

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Return Value

Type: void

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends information about a payment method to a gateway adapter during an authorization service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

Contains information about the payment method that is used for an authorization request. It contains all available payment methods as fields, but populates only one field for each request. The gateway adapter uses this class when constructing an authorization request. An object of this class is available through the `paymentMethod` field on the `AuthorizationRequest Class` object.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest(cardPaymentMethodRequest)

Constructs a sample `cardPaymentMethodRequest`. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest()

Constructor for `AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

`AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest(cardPaymentMethodRequest)`

Constructs a sample `cardPaymentMethodRequest`. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest(commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest
cardPaymentMethodRequest)
```

Parameters

cardPaymentMethodRequest
Type: commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest on page 304

Contains information about the card payment method. Used to send information to a gateway adapter during a service call.

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest()

Constructor for AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest.

Signature

```
global AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest()
```

AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

The following are properties for AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest.

IN THIS SECTION:

cardPaymentMethod
The card payment method object used in a payment method request.

cardPaymentMethod

The card payment method object used in a payment method request.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest cardPaymentMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest on page 304

AuthorizationReversalRequest Class

Sends information about an authorization reversal request to a gateway adapter during a service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Example

Add your reversal classes to your payment gateway adapter. We recommend adding AuthorizationReversal as a possible requestType value when calling processRequest on the gateway's response.

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse processRequest(commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext
 gatewayContext) {
```

```
        commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();

         commercepayments.GatewayResponse response;

         try {
         //add other requestType values here
         //..
         else if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.AuthorizationReversal) {
                 response =
createAuthReversalResponse((commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());}


         return response;
```

Then, add a class that sets the amount of the authorization reversal request, as well as gateway information and the Salesforce result code.

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createAuthReversalResponse(commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalRequest authReversalRequest)
 {
         commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalResponse authReversalResponse = new
commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalResponse();
         if(authReversalRequest.amount!=null )
         {
             authReversalResponse.setAmount(authReversalRequest.amount);
         }
         else
         {
              throw new SalesforceValidationException('Required Field Missing : Amount');

         }

         system.debug('Response - success');
         authReversalResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
         authReversalResponse.setGatewayResultCode('00');
         authReversalResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription('Transaction Normal');
         authReversalResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber('SF'+getRandomNumber(6));

authReversalResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(SUCCESS_SALESFORCE_RESULT_CODE_INFO);
         return authReversalResponse;
     }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationReversalRequest Constructors

AuthorizationReversalRequest Properties

AuthorizationReversalRequest Methods

AuthorizationReversalRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthorizationReversalRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationReversalRequest(amount, authorizationId)
Constructor for building the amount in an authorization reversal request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

AuthorizationReversalRequest(amount, authorizationId)

Constructor for building the amount in an authorization reversal request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global AuthorizationReversalRequest(Double amount, String authorizationId)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount of the authorization reversal request.

authorizationId
Type: String

The authorization request to be reversed.

AuthorizationReversalRequest Properties

The following are properties for `AuthorizationReversalRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accountId
References the customer account for the transaction where the authorization reversal was performed.

amount
The total amount of the authorization reversal request. Can be positive or negative.

paymentAuthorizationId
References the payment authorization to be reversed.

accountId

References the customer account for the transaction where the authorization reversal was performed.

Signature

```
global String accountId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

amount

The total amount of the authorization reversal request. Can be positive or negative.

Signature

```
global Double amount {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Double

paymentAuthorizationId

References the payment authorization to be reversed.

Signature

```
global String paymentAuthorizationId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

AuthorizationReversalRequest Methods

The following are methods for `AuthorizationReversalRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationReversalRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationReversalRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationReversalRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationReversalRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

AuthorizationReversalResponse Class

Response sent by the payment gateway following a payment authorization reversal service.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.AuthorizationReversalResponse authRevRes = new
CommercePayments.AuthorizationResponse();
```

Contains information about the payment gateway's response following an authorization reversal transaction. The gateway adapter uses the payment gateway's response to populate the `AuthorizationReversalResponse` fields. The payments platform uses the information from this class to construct the authorization gateway response shown to the user.

Example

This class builds an authorization reversal response that contains the amount of the original reversal request, gateway information, and the Salesforce result code.

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createAuthReversalResponse(commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalRequest authReversalRequest)
 {
        commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalResponse authReversalResponse = new
commercepayments.AuthorizationReversalResponse();
        if(authReversalRequest.amount!=null )
        {
            authReversalResponse.setAmount(authReversalRequest.amount);
        }
        else
        {
             throw new SalesforceValidationException('Required Field Missing : Amount');

        }

        system.debug('Response - success');
        authReversalResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
        authReversalResponse.setGatewayResultCode('00');
        authReversalResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription('Transaction Normal');
        authReversalResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber('SF'+getRandomNumber(6));

authReversalResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(SUCCESS_SALESFORCE_RESULT_CODE_INFO);
        return authReversalResponse;
    }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationReversalResponse Methods

AuthorizationReversalResponse Methods

The following are methods for `AuthorizationReversalResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)

Contains the amount of the authorization reversal. Must be a non-zero value.

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (Address Verification System) result code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the authorization reversal request occurred in the payment gateway. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the authorization reversal request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Stores data that you can use for subsequent authorizations. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets a unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

`setAmount(amount)`

Contains the amount of the authorization reversal. Must be a non-zero value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)`

Sets the AVS (Address Verification System) result code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode
Type: String

Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)`

Sets the date that the authorization reversal request occurred in the payment gateway. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)`

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the authorization reversal request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)`

Stores data that you can use for subsequent authorizations. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets a unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique reference ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway's result code. Use this field to learn more about why the gateway returned a certain result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: SalesforceResultCodeInfo

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

AuthorizationRequest Class

Sends information about an authorization request to a gateway adapter during a service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

This class contains information about a transaction authorization request. The gateway adapter reads fields from this class while constructing an authorization JSON request to send to the payment gateway. An object of this class is available by calling `getPaymentRequest()` in the `PaymentGatewayContext Class`.

Example

Creating a `buildAuthRequest` class to store information about the authorization request.

```
private String buildAuthRequest(commercepayments.AuthorizationRequest authRequest) {
        // Multiply amount by 100.0 to convert to cents
        String requestBody =
createRequestBody(String.ValueOf((authRequest.amount*100.0).intValue()), authRequest);
        return requestBody;

       private String createRequestBody(String amount, commercepayments.AuthorizationRequest
 authRequest) {
        JSONGenerator jsonGeneratorInstance = JSON.createGenerator(true);
        String currencyIso = authRequest.currencyIsoCode;
        commercepayments.AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest paymentMethod =
authRequest.paymentMethod;
        commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse error;
        // Write data to the JSON string.
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStartObject();
       jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('merchantAccount', '{!$Credential.Username}');

        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('reference', authRequest.comments == null
? 'randomstring' : authRequest.comments);

        if(currencyIso == null) {
            currencyIso = UserInfo.getDefaultCurrency();
        }

        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeFieldName('amount');
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStartObject();
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('value', amount);
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('currency', currencyIso);
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeEndObject();

        commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest cardPaymentMethod;
        if(paymentMethod != null) {
            cardPaymentMethod = paymentMethod.cardPaymentMethod;
            if (cardPaymentMethod != null) {
                if (cardPaymentMethod.CardCategory != null) {
                    if (commercepayments.CardCategory.CreditCard ==
cardPaymentMethod.CardCategory) {
                        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeFieldName('card');
                        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStartObject();
                        if (cardPaymentMethod.cvv != null)
                            jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('cvc',
String.ValueOf(cardPaymentMethod.cvv));
                        if (cardPaymentMethod.cardholdername != null)
                            jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('holderName',
cardPaymentMethod.cardholdername);
                        if (cardPaymentMethod.cardnumber != null)
                            jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('number',
cardPaymentMethod.cardnumber);
                        if (cardPaymentMethod.expiryMonth != null &&
cardPaymentMethod.expiryYear != null ) {
                            String expMonth =
```

```
((String.ValueOf(cardPaymentMethod.expiryMonth)).length() == 1 ? '0' : '') +
String.ValueOf(cardPaymentMethod.expiryMonth);
                        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('expiryMonth', expMonth);

                           jsonGeneratorInstance.writeStringField('expiryYear',
String.ValueOf(cardPaymentMethod.expiryYear));
                        }
                        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeEndObject();
                    } else {
                    //Support for other card type
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new SampleValidationException('Required Field Missing :
CardCategory');
                }
            } else {
                throw new SampleValidationException('Required Field Missing :
CardPaymentMethod');
            }
        } else {
           throw new SampleValidationException('Required Field Missing : PaymentMethod');

        }
        jsonGeneratorInstance.writeEndObject();
        return jsonGeneratorInstance.getAsString();
    }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationRequest Constructors

AuthorizationRequest Properties

AuthorizationRequest Methods

AuthorizationRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `AuthorizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationRequest(amount)

Constructor for building the amount in an authorization request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`AuthorizationRequest(amount)`

Constructor for building the amount in an authorization request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global AuthorizationRequest(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount of the authorization.

AuthorizationRequest Properties

The following are properties for `AuthorizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accountId
The customer account where the authorization is performed.

amount
The total amount of the authorization. Can be positive or negative.

comments
Comments about the authorization. Users can enter comments to provide additional information.

currencyIsoCode
The ISO currency code for the authorization request.

paymentMethod
The payment method used to process the authorization in the authorization request.

accountId

The customer account where the authorization is performed.

Signature

```
global String accountId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

amount

The total amount of the authorization. Can be positive or negative.

Signature

```
global Double amount {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Double

comments

Comments about the authorization. Users can enter comments to provide additional information.

Signature

```
global String comments {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

currencyIsoCode

The ISO currency code for the authorization request.

Signature

```
global String currencyIsoCode {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

paymentMethod

The payment method used to process the authorization in the authorization request.

Signature

```
global AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest paymentMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest on page 259

AuthorizationRequest Methods

The following are methods for `AuthorizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `AuthorizationRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

AuthorizationResponse Class

Response sent by the payment gateway adapter for an authorization service.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.AuthorizationResponse authr = new
CommercePayments.AuthorizationResponse();
```

Contains information about the payment gateway's response following an authorization transaction. The gateway adapter uses the payment gateway's response to populate the `AuthorizationResponse` fields. The payments platform uses the information from this class to construct the authorization gateway response shown to the user.

Example

```
private commercepayments.GatewayResponse createAuthResponse(HttpResponse response, Double
 amount) {
        Map<String, Object> mapOfResponseValues = (Map
                            <String, Object>) JSON.deserializeUntyped(response.getBody());


        commercepayments.AuthorizationResponse authResponse = new
commercepayments.AuthorizationResponse();

        String resultCode = (String)mapOfResponseValues.get('resultCode');

        if(resultCode != null){
            system.debug('Response - success');
            if(resultCode.equals('Authorised')){
                system.debug('status - authorised');
              authResponse.setGatewayAuthCode((String)mapOfResponseValues.get('authCode'));

                authResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(new
commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCode.Success));

            } else {
                //Sample returns 200 with refused status in some cases
                system.debug('status - refused');

authResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription((String)mapOfResponseValues.get('refusalReason'));

                authResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(new
commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCode.Decline));

            }

authResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber((String)mapOfResponseValues.get('pspReference'));
            authResponse.setAmount(amount);
            authResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
            return authResponse;
        } else {
            system.debug('Response - failed');
            system.debug('Validation error');
            String statusCode = (String)mapOfResponseValues.get('errorType');
            String message = (String)mapOfResponseValues.get('message');
            commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse error = new
```

```
commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse(statusCode, message);
            return error;
        }
    }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

AuthorizationResponse Methods

AuthorizationResponse Methods

The following are methods for `AuthorizationResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)

Sets the amount of the authorization. Must be a non-zero value.

setAuthorizationExpirationDate(authExpDate)

Sets the expiration date of the authorization request.

setGatewayAuthCode(gatewayAuthCode)

Sets the authorization code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the authorization occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the authorization request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Stores data that you can use for subsequent authorizations. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)

Sets information from the gateway about the tokenized payment method.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the amount of the authorization. Must be a non-zero value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: void

`setAuthorizationExpirationDate(authExpDate)`

Sets the expiration date of the authorization request.

Signature

```
global void setAuthorizationExpirationDate(Datetime authExpDate)
```

Parameters

authExpDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayAuthCode(gatewayAuthCode)`

Sets the authorization code that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAuthCode(String gatewayAuthCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAuthCode
Type: String

The authorization code returned by the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode
Type: String

Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the authorization occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the authorization request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Stores data that you can use for subsequent authorizations. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique authorization ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway's result code. Use this field to learn more about why the gateway returned a certain result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)

Sets information from the gateway about the tokenized payment method.

Signature

```
global void
setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse
paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)
```

Parameters

paymentMethodTokenizationResponse
PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse on page 330

Gateway response sent by payment gateway adapters for the payment method tokenization request.

Return Value

Type: void

`setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)`

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

`salesforceResultCodeInfo`
Type: SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Abstract class used to send information about a payment method to a gateway adapter during a service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

`BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest` is the base class for `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` and `AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Methods

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest(address, id, saveForFuture)
Constructs a payment method. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest(address, id, saveForFuture)`

Constructs a payment method. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest(commercepayments.AddressRequest address, String id,
Boolean saveForFuture)
```

Parameters

address
Type: commercepayments.AddressRequest on page 248

Sends data related on address request to a gateway adapter during a service call.

id
Type: String

saveForFuture
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether Salesforce saves the payment method for future use.

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

The following are properties for `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

address
The payment method's address.

id
ID of the payment method request.

saveForFuture
Indicates whether the payment method is saved as a record in Salesforce for future use.

`address`

The payment method's address.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.AddressRequest address {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: AddressRequest on page 248

id

ID of the payment method request.

Signature

```
global String id {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

saveForFuture

Indicates whether the payment method is saved as a record in Salesforce for future use.

Signature

```
global Boolean saveForFuture {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest Methods

The following are methods for `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

BaseNotification Class

Abstract class for storing notification information sent from payment gateways.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

An abstract class that contains the common fields from payment gateways. `BaseNotification` can't be instantiated on its own.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.BaseNotification bnt = new CommercePayments.BaseNotification();
```

Example

```
commercepayments.BaseNotification notification = null;
        if ('CAPTURE'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.CaptureNotification();
        } else if ('REFUND'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.ReferencedRefundNotification();
        }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

BaseNotification Methods

BaseNotification Methods

The following are methods for `BaseNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)
Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the date that the notification occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the notification request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)
Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)
Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setId(id)
Sets the ID of the notification sent by the gateway.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Sets the information about the Salesforce-specific result code used to match a result code from a payment gateway.

setStatus(status)
Sets the status of the notification sent by the gateway.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount of the transaction.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the notification occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

The date that the notification occurred.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the notification request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

The message that the gateway returned with the notification request. Contains additional information about the notification.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Provides information about the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Provides additional information about the result code and why the gateway returned the code. Descriptions vary between different gateways.

Return Value

Type: void

setId(id)

Sets the ID of the notification sent by the gateway.

Signature

```
global void setId(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the information about the Salesforce-specific result code used to match a result code from a payment gateway.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Return Value

Type: void

setStatus(status)

Sets the status of the notification sent by the gateway.

Signature

```
global void setStatus(commercepayments.NotificationStatus status)
```

Parameters

status
Type: commercepayments.NotificationStatus on page 319

Shows whether the payments platform successfully received the notification from the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

BasePaymentMethodRequest Class

Abstract class for storing information about payment methods.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

The `BasePaymentMethodRequest` class contains fields common to `CardPaymentMethodRequest` on page 304

.

IN THIS SECTION:

BasePaymentMethodRequest Methods

BasePaymentMethodRequest Methods

The following are methods for `BasePaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BasePaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BasePaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BasePaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `BasePaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

toString()

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

BaseRequest Class

`BaseRequest` is extended by all the request classes.

Namespace

CommercePayments

IN THIS SECTION:

BaseRequest Methods

BaseRequest Methods

The following are methods for `BaseRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

BaseRequest(AdditionalData, IdempotencyKey)
Used for testing.

`BaseRequest(AdditionalData, IdempotencyKey)`

Used for testing.

Signature

```
global Void BaseRequest(String AdditionalData, Map<String, String> IdempotencyKey)
```

Parameters

`AdditionalData`
Type: String

Contains additional data that may be required for a payment request. The `additionalData` object consists of key-value pairs. You can retrieve the `additionalData` object from the request object: `Map<String, String> additionalData=request.additionalData`

`IdempotencyKey`
Type: Map<String, String>

Unique value that's generated by a client and sent to the server in the request. The server stores the value and uses the it to keep track of the request status.

Return Value

Type: Void

CaptureNotification Class

When a payment gateway sends a notification for a capture transaction, the payment gateway adapter creates the `CaptureNotification` object to store information about the notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments

Usage

`CaptureNotification` is used in asynchronous payment gateway adapters.

Specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.CaptureNotification crn = new CommercePayments.CaptureNotification();
```

Example

```
commercepayments.BaseNotification notification = null;
        if ('CAPTURE'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.CaptureNotification();
        } else if ('REFUND'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.ReferencedRefundNotification();
        }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CaptureNotification Methods

CaptureNotification Methods

The following are methods for `CaptureNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the transaction occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the payment request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets additional data that you can use for subsequent transactions. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setId(id)

Sets the ID of a notification sent by the payment gateway.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

setStatus(status)

Sets the notification status to the same value that was sent by the gateway.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount

Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)`

Sets the date that the transaction occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate

Type: Datetime

Date and time of the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the payment request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Information on error messages sent from the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets additional data that you can use for subsequent transactions. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)`

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code can be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Map this value to a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)`

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway's result code. Use this field to learn more about why the gateway returned a certain result code.

Return Value

Type: void

`setId(id)`

Sets the ID of a notification sent by the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global void setId(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

setStatus(status)

Sets the notification status to the same value that was sent by the gateway.

Signature

```
global void setStatus(commercepayments.NotificationStatus status)
```

Parameters

status
Type: NotificationStatus on page 319

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Return Value

Type: void

CaptureRequest Class

Represents a capture request. This class extends the `BaseRequest` class and inherits all its methods.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The `CaptureRequest` class's `buildCaptureRequest` method creates a CaptureRequest object to store payment information, such as value and currency, as JSON strings.

Example

Builds a CaptureRequest object for a multicurrency org.

```
    private String buildCaptureRequest(commercepayments.CaptureRequest captureRequest) {
        Boolean IS_MULTICURRENCY_ORG = UserInfo.isMultiCurrencyOrganization();
        QueryUtils qBuilderForAuth = new QueryUtils(PaymentAuthorization.SObjectType);
        // Add required fields
        qBuilderForAuth.getSelectClause().addField('GatewayRefNumber', false);
        if (IS_MULTICURRENCY_ORG) {
            // addField also takes a boolean to enable translation (uses label instead of
actual value)
            qBuilderForAuth.getSelectClause().addField('CurrencyIsoCode', false);
        }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CaptureRequest Constructors

CaptureRequest Properties

CaptureRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `CaptureRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

CaptureRequest(amount, authorizationId)
This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`CaptureRequest(amount, authorizationId)`

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Parameters

`amount`
Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

authorizationId
Type: String

Represents a payment authorization record.

CaptureRequest Properties

The following are properties for `CaptureRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accountId
Account ID value. References an account record.

amount
Amount of currency that needs to be captured.

paymentAuthorizationId
ID value that references a PaymentAuthorization.

accountId

Account ID value. References an account record.

Property Value

Type: String

amount

Amount of currency that needs to be captured.

Property Value

Type: Double

paymentAuthorizationId

ID value that references a PaymentAuthorization.

Property Value

Type: String

CaptureResponse Class

The payment gateway adapter sends this response for the capture request type. This class extends `AbstractResponse` and inherits its methods.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

You must specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.Capture Response ctr = new CommercePayments.CaptureResponse();
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CaptureResponse Methods

CaptureResponse Methods

The following are methods for `CaptureResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)
Sets the transaction amount.

setAsync(async)
Indicates whether the payment gateway adapter used in the payment capture was asynchronous (`True`) or synchronous (`False`).

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)
Sets the payment gateway's AVS (address verification system) code.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the payment gateway's date.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)
Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)
Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets the payment gateway's result code.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Sets Salesforce result code information.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

Return Value

Type: void

setAsync(async)

Indicates whether the payment gateway adapter used in the payment capture was asynchronous (`True`) or synchronous (`False`).

Signature

```
global void setAsync(Boolean async)
```

Parameters

async
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the payment gateway's AVS (address verification system) code.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode
Type: String

Payment gateways that use an AVS system return this code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the payment gateway's date.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

The date that communication happened with the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Information or error messages returned by the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Provides information about the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets the payment gateway's result code.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

The gateway result code. You must map this to a Salesforce result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the GatewayResultCode. Provides additional context about the result code that the gateway returned.

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets Salesforce result code information.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
SalesforceResultCodeInfoType: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

CardCategory Enum

Defines whether the payment method represents a credit card or a debit card.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `commercepayments.CardCategory` enum.

Value	Description
`CreditCard`	Shows that the payment method is a credit card.
`DebitCard`	Shows that the payment method is a debit card.

CardPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class contains details about the card used as a payment method for authorization, sale, or tokenization transaction requests. The gateway adapter reads the fields of this class object while constructing a transaction JSON request to send to the payment gateway. The object of this class is available as the `cardPaymentMethod` field in the `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Class`, `AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest Class`, and `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Class`.



Example: This code sample retrieves the `cardPaymentMethodRequest` object from the `paymentMethod` class.

```
commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest cardPaymentMethod =
paymentMethod.cardPaymentMethod;
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CardPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

CardPaymentMethodRequest Properties

CardPaymentMethodRequest Methods

CardPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `CardPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

CardPaymentMethodRequest(cardCategory)
Sets the `cardCategory` value for the card payment method request.

`CardPaymentMethodRequest(cardCategory)`

Sets the `cardCategory` value for the card payment method request.

Signature

```
global CardPaymentMethodRequest(commercepayments.CardCategory cardCategory)
```

Parameters

`cardCategory`
Type: CardCategory on page 303

Defines whether the card payment method is a credit card or a debit card.

CardPaymentMethodRequest Properties

The following are properties for `CardPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accountId
Customer account for this payment method.

cardCategory
Indicates whether a card payment method is for a credit card or debit card.

cardHolderFirstName
The first name of the cardholder for the card payment method.

cardHolderLastName
The last name of the cardholder for the card payment method.

cardHolderName
Full name of the cardholder on the card payment method.

cardNumber
System-defined unique ID for the card payment method.

cardType
Defines the credit card bank. Possible values are `AmericanExpress`, `DinersClub`, `JCB`, `Maestro`, `MasterCard`, and`Visa`.

cvv
The card security code for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

email
Email address of the cardholder for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

expiryMonth
Expiration month for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

expiryYear
Expiration year of the credit or debit card for the card payment method.

inputCardType
Input field for the card type. This field doesn't store the card type directly, but instead populates CardBin, LastFour, and DisplayCardNumber based on the value entered in `inputCardType`.

startMonth
The credit or debit card becomes valid on the first day of the `startMonth` in the `startYear`

startYear
Year during which the credit or debit card becomes valid.

accountId

Customer account for this payment method.

Signature

```
global String accountId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

cardCategory

Indicates whether a card payment method is for a credit card or debit card.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.CardCategory cardCategory {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: CardCategory on page 303

cardHolderFirstName

The first name of the cardholder for the card payment method.

Signature

```
global String cardHolderFirstName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

cardHolderLastName

The last name of the cardholder for the card payment method.

Signature

```
global String cardHolderLastName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

cardHolderName

Full name of the cardholder on the card payment method.

Signature

```
global String cardHolderName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

cardNumber

System-defined unique ID for the card payment method.

Signature

```
global String cardNumber {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

cardType

Defines the credit card bank. Possible values are `AmericanExpress`, `DinersClub`, `JCB`, `Maestro`, `MasterCard`, and `Visa`.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.CardType cardType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: CardType

cvv

The card security code for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

Signature

```
global String cvv {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

email

Email address of the cardholder for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

Signature

```
global String email {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

expiryMonth

Expiration month for the credit or debit card on a card payment method.

Signature

```
global Integer expiryMonth {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`expiryYear`

Expiration year of the credit or debit card for the card payment method.

Signature

```
global Integer expiryYear {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`inputCardType`

Input field for the card type. This field doesn't store the card type directly, but instead populates CardBin, LastFour, and DisplayCardNumber based on the value entered in `inputCardType`.

Signature

```
global String inputCardType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`startMonth`

The credit or debit card becomes valid on the first day of the `startMonth` in the `startYear`

Signature

```
global Integer startMonth {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`startYear`

Year during which the credit or debit card becomes valid.

Signature

```
global Integer startYear {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

CardPaymentMethodRequest Methods

The following are methods for `CardPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `CardPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `CardPaymentMethodRequest`.

toString()

Converts a date to a string.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `CardPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj

Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `CardPaymentMethodRequest`.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Class

Access information about custom metadata. The `PaymentGatewayAdapter` can send `CustomMetadataTypeInfo` to transaction requests through the response object's `SalesforceResultCodeInfo`.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Constructors

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Methods

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Constructors

The following are constructors for `CustomMetadataTypeInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomMetadataTypeInfo(cmtRecordId, cmtSfResultCodeFieldName)
Constructor for providing custom metadata type information.

`CustomMetadataTypeInfo(cmtRecordId, cmtSfResultCodeFieldName)`

Constructor for providing custom metadata type information.

Signature

```
global CustomMetadataTypeInfo(String cmtRecordId, String cmtSfResultCodeFieldName)
```

Parameters

cmtRecordId
Type: String

ID of the matchedcustom metadata type record

cmtSfResultCodeFieldName
Type: String

Field that contains the Salesforce result code values. Belongs to the custom metadata type.

CustomMetadataTypeInfo Methods

The following are methods for `CustomMetadataTypeInfo`.

GatewayErrorResponse Class

Use to respond with an error indication following errors from the `PaymentGateway` adapter, such as request-forbidden responses, custom validation errors, or expired API tokens.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

Use `GatewayErrorResponse` to create an object that stores information about error responses sent by the payment gateway adapter.

Example

If `GatewayResponse` receives an exception rather than a valid request, it calls `GatewayErrorResponse` to create an error object with information about the exception.

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse processRequest(commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext
 gatewayContext) {
       commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();

        commercepayments.GatewayResponse response;
        try {
            if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Authorize) {
                response =
createAuthResponse((commercepayments.AuthorizationRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());

            } else if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Capture) {
                response =
createCaptureResponse((commercepayments.CaptureRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest())
 ;
            } else if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.ReferencedRefund) {
                response =
createRefundResponse((commercepayments.ReferencedRefundRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());
```

```
            }
            return response;
        } catch(SalesforceValidationException e) {
            commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse error = new
commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse('400', e.getMessage());
            return error;
        }
    }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

GatewayErrorResponse Constructors

GatewayErrorResponse Constructors

The following are constructors for `GatewayErrorResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

GatewayErrorResponse(errorCode, errorMessage)
Constructor to create a GatewayErrorResponse object that accepts `errorCode` and `errorMessage`.

`GatewayErrorResponse(errorCode, errorMessage)`

Constructor to create a GatewayErrorResponse object that accepts `errorCode` and `errorMessage`.

Signature

```
global GatewayErrorResponse(String errorCode, String errorMessage)
```

Parameters

`errorCode`
Type: String

Should match with the HTTP status code to be returned to the user. Here are a few examples.

- If the status code is for a bad request, the errorCode should be 400.
- If the status code is for a forbidden request, errorCode should be 403.
- If errorCode isn't a valid HTTP status code, a 500 internal server error is returned.

Note: *`errorCode`* must have a value, otherwise the platform throws an error.

`errorMessage`
Type: String

The message response to users following an error.

Note: *`errorMessage`* must have a value, otherwise the platform throws an error.

GatewayNotificationResponse Class

When the payment gateway sends a notification to the payments platform, the platform responds with a `GatewayNotificationResponse` indicating whether the platform succeeded or failed at receiving the notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

You must specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.GatewayNotificationResponse gnr = new
CommercePayments.GatewayNotificationResponse();
```

When an asynchronous payment gateway sends a notification, the gateway requires the platform to acknowledge that it has either succeeded or failed in receiving the notification. Payment gateway adapters use this class to construct the acknowledgment response, which gateways expect for a notification. `GatewayNotificationResponse` is the return type of the `processNotification` method.

Example

```
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse gnr = new
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse();
if (saveResult.isSuccess()) {
    system.debug('Notification accepted by platform');
} else {
    system.debug('Errors in the result '+ Blob.valueOf(saveResult.getErrorMessage()));
}
gnr.setStatusCode(200);
gnr.setResponseBody(Blob.valueOf('[accepted]'));
return gnr;
```

IN THIS SECTION:

GatewayNotificationResponse Methods

GatewayNotificationResponse Methods

The following are methods for `GatewayNotificationResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setResponseBody(responseBody)

Sets the body of the response to the gateway. Some gateways expect the payments platform to acknowledge the notification with a response regardless of whether the notification was accepted.

setStatusCode(statusCode)

Sets the HTTP status code sent to the gateway as part of the payments platform's response notification.

setResponseBody(responseBody)

Sets the body of the response to the gateway. Some gateways expect the payments platform to acknowledge the notification with a response regardless of whether the notification was accepted.

Signature

```
global void setResponseBody(Blob responseBody)
```

Parameters

responseBody
Type: Blob

Common response values include `accepted` for successfully receiving the response. For example:

```
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse gnr = new
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse();
if (saveResult.isSuccess()) {
    system.debug('Notification accepted by platform');
} else {
    system.debug('Errors in the result '+ Blob.valueOf(saveResult.getErrorMessage()));
}
gnr.setStatusCode(200);
gnr.setResponseBody(Blob.valueOf('[accepted]'));
return gnr;
```

Return Value

Type: void

setStatusCode(statusCode)

Sets the HTTP status code sent to the gateway as part of the payments platform's response notification.

Signature

```
global void setStatusCode(Integer statusCode)
```

Parameters

statusCode
Type: Integer

The status code will vary based on the type of payments platform response. Users should configure their `GatewayNotificationResponse` class to account for all values that their payments platform can possibly return. For example:

```
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse gnr = new
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse();
if (saveResult.isSuccess()) {
    system.debug('Notification accepted by platform');
} else {
    system.debug('Errors in the result '+ Blob.valueOf(saveResult.getErrorMessage()));
```

```
}
gnr.setStatusCode(200);
gnr.setResponseBody(Blob.valueOf('[accepted]'));
return gnr;
```

Return Value

Type: void

GatewayResponse Interface

Generic payment gateway response interface. This class extends the `CaptureResponse` on page 298, `AbstractTransactionResponse` on page 254, and `AbstractResponse` on page 245 classes and inherits all their properties. It has no unique methods or parameters.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

IN THIS SECTION:

GatewayResponse Example Implementation

GatewayResponse Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `commercepayments.GatewayResponse` interface.

```
/**
     * Abstract function to build gateway response for a Transaction
     * The input is the response from gateway
     * It creates and returns GatewayResponse from the HttpResponse
     */
    public abstract commercepayments.GatewayResponse buildResponse(HttpResponse response);


    /**
     * Function to process transaction requests
     * Steps involved are:
     * 1. Build HttpRequest with the input Request from gateway context
     * 2. Send request and get the response from gateway
     * 3. Parse the response from gateway and return GatewayResponse
     */
    public commercepayments.GatewayResponse execute(){
                HttpRequest req;
        try{
            //Building a new request
            req = buildRequest();
        } catch(PayeezeValidationException e) {
            return getValidationExceptionError(e);
        }
        commercepayments.PaymentsHttp http = new commercepayments.PaymentsHttp();
        HttpResponse res = null;
```

```
        try{
            //Sending the request
            res = http.send(req);
        } catch(CalloutException ce) {
            return getCalloutExceptionError(ce);
        }
        try{
            //Parsing the response from gateway
            return buildResponse(res);
        } catch(Exception e) {
            return getParseExceptionError(e);
        }
    }
```

For additional context, review the complete Sample Gateway Adapter in the CommercePayments Gateway Reference Implementation.

NotificationClient Class

Communicates with the payment platform regarding the gateway's notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

Specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.NotificationClient ntc = new CommercePayments.NotificationClient();
```

This class is used in asynchronous payment gateway adapters. The notification client contains API for communicating with the payments platform regarding the gateway's notification. When the gateway sends a notification, the gateway adapter invokes the `record` method in `NotificationClient` to request that the platform updates notification details.

Example

The `NotificationSaveResult` class creates a saveResult object to store the result of the save request made to the payment gateway.

```
commercepayments.NotificationSaveResult saveResult =
commercepayments.NotificationClient.record(notification);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

NotificationClient Methods

NotificationClient Methods

The following are methods for `NotificationClient`.

IN THIS SECTION:

record(notification)
Stores the results of a notification request.

record(notification)

Stores the results of a notification request.

Signature

```
global static commercepayments.NotificationSaveResult
record(commercepayments.BaseNotification notification)
```

Parameters

notification
Type: BaseNotification on page 284

Return Value

Type: NotificationSaveResult on page 317

NotificationSaveResult Class

Contains the result of the payment platform's attempt to record data from the gateway's notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class is used with asynchronous payments. It is the return type of the `NotificiationClient.record` operation and contains the result of the payment platform's attempt to save notification details.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.NotificationSaveResult nsr = new
CommercePayments.NotificationSaveResult();
```

Example

```
commercepayments.NotificationSaveResult saveResult =
commercepayments.NotificationClient.record(notification);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

NotificationSaveResult Methods

NotificationSaveResult Methods

The following are methods for `NotificationSaveResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrorMessage()
Gets the error message, if any, from the payment platform regarding its attempt to save the notification sent from the payment gateway.

getStatusCode()
Gets the status code from the payment platform's attempt to save the notification sent from the payment gateway.

isSuccess()
Gets the status of whether the payment platform successfully saved the notification sent from the payment gateway.

`getErrorMessage()`

Gets the error message, if any, from the payment platform regarding its attempt to save the notification sent from the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global String getErrorMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStatusCode()`

Gets the status code from the payment platform's attempt to save the notification sent from the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global Integer getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`isSuccess()`

Gets the status of whether the payment platform successfully saved the notification sent from the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

NotificationStatus Enum

Shows whether the payments platform successfully received the notification from the gateway.

Usage

When the gateway sends a notification for a payment request, the payments platform delegates the notification request to the gateway adapter. First, the adapter evaluates the signature from the notification request. If the signature is valid, the adapter builds a notification object to store information about the notification. During this process, the adapter sets the `NotificationStatus` to `Failed` or `Success` based on information from the notification request.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `commercepayments.NotificationStatus` enum.

Value	Description
`Failed`	The payments platform couldn't receive the notification due to an error.
`Success`	The payments platform received the notification.

PaymentGatewayAdapter Interface

`PaymentGatewayAdapters` can implement this interface in order to process requests.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayAdapter Methods

PaymentGatewayAdapter Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentGatewayAdapter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

processRequest(var1)
The entry point for processing payment requests. Returns the response from the payment gateway.

`processRequest(var1)`

The entry point for processing payment requests. Returns the response from the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse
processRequest(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayContext var1)
```

Parameters

var1

Type: commercepayments.PaymentGatewayContext

You can retrieve the request type and the request from the Context object.

Return Value

Type: commercepayments.GatewayResponse

The response from the payment gateway.

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Interface

Implement the interface to allow customers to process payments asynchronously.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

Implementing an asynchronous adapter also requires the `processNotification` method from the GatewayNotificationResponse on page 313 class.

Example

```
global with sharing class SampleAsyncAdapter implements
commercepayments.PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter, commercepayments.PaymentGatewayAdapter {
    global SampleAsyncAdapter() {}

    global commercepayments.GatewayResponse
processRequest(commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext gatewayContext) {
    }

    global commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse
processNotification(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext
gatewayNotificationContext) {
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Methods

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Example Implementation

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

processNotification(paymentGatewayNotificationContext)
Entry point for processing notifications from payment gateways.

`processNotification(paymentGatewayNotificationContext)`

Entry point for processing notifications from payment gateways.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse
processNotification(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext var1)
```

Parameters

`paymentGatewayNotificationContext`
Type: PaymentGatewayNotificationContext on page 325

The `PaymentGatewayNotificationContext` object wraps all the information related to a gateway notification.

Return Value

Type: GatewayNotificationResponse on page 313

When the payment gateway sends a notification to the payments platform, the platform responds with a `GatewayNotificationResponse` indicating whether the platform succeeded or failed at receiving the notification.

PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter Example Implementation

This is a sample implementation of the `commercepayments.PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter` interface.

```
global with sharing class AdyenAdapter implements
commercepayments.PaymentGatewayAsyncAdapter, commercepayments.PaymentGatewayAdapter {
    global AdyenAdapter() {}

    global commercepayments.GatewayResponse
processRequest(commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext gatewayContext) {
    }

    global commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse
processNotification(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext
gatewayNotificationContext) {
    }
}

commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();
if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Capture) {
   req.setEndpoint('/pal/servlet/Payment/v52/capture');
```

```
   // Refer to the end of this doc for sample buildCaptureRequest implementation
    body =
buildCaptureRequest((commercepayments.CaptureRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());
} else if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.ReferencedRefund) {
    req.setEndpoint('/pal/servlet/Payment/v52/refund');
    body =
buildRefundRequest((commercepayments.ReferencedRefundRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());
}

req.setBody(body);
req.setMethod('POST');
commercepayments.PaymentsHttp http = new commercepayments.PaymentsHttp();
HttpResponse res = null;
try {
    res = http.send(req);
} catch(CalloutException ce) {
    commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse error = new
commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse('500', ce.getMessage());
    return error;
}

if ( requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Capture) {
   // Refer to the end of this doc for sample createCaptureResponse implementation
    response =  createCaptureResponse(res);
} else if ( requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.ReferencedRefund) {
    response =  createRefundResponse(res);
}
return response;

commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest notificationRequest =
gatewayNotificationContext.getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest();
Blob request = notificationRequest.getRequestBody();
Map<String, Object> jsonReq = (Map<String,
Object>)JSON.deserializeUntyped(request.toString());
List<Object> notificationItems = (List<Object>)jsonReq.get('notificationItems');
Map<String, Object> notificationRequestItem =
    (Map<String, Object>)((Map<String,
Object>)notificationItems[0]).get('NotificationRequestItem');
Boolean success = Boolean.valueOf(notificationRequestItem.get('success'));
String pspReference = (String)notificationRequestItem.get('pspReference');
String eventCode = (String)notificationRequestItem.get('eventCode');
Double amount = (Double)((Map<String,
Object>)notificationRequestItem.get('amount')).get('value');

commercepayments.NotificationStatus notificationStatus = null;
if (success) {
    notificationStatus = commercepayments.NotificationStatus.Success;
} else {
    notificationStatus = commercepayments.NotificationStatus.Failed;
}
commercepayments.BaseNotification notification = null;
if ('CAPTURE'.equals(eventCode)) {
    notification = new commercepayments.CaptureNotification();
} else if ('REFUND'.equals(eventCode)) {
```

```
    notification = new commercepayments.ReferencedRefundNotification();
}
notification.setStatus(notificationStatus);
notification.setGatewayReferenceNumber(pspReference);
notification.setAmount(amount);

commercepayments.NotificationSaveResult saveResult =
commercepayments.NotificationClient.record(notification);

commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse gnr = new
commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse();
if (saveResult.isSuccess()) {
    system.debug('Notification accepted by platform');
} else {
    system.debug('Errors in the result '+ Blob.valueOf(saveResult.getErrorMessage()));
}
gnr.setStatusCode(200);
gnr.setResponseBody(Blob.valueOf('[accepted]'));
return gnr;
```

PaymentGatewayContext Class

Wraps the information related to a payment request.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.PaymentGatewayContext pgc = new
CommercePayments.PaymentGatewayContext();
```

Example

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse processRequest(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayContext
 gatewayContext) {
    commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();
    if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Capture) {
        commercepayments.CaptureRequest captureRequest = (commercepayments.CaptureRequest)
 gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest();
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayContext Constructors

PaymentGatewayContext Methods

PaymentGatewayContext Constructors

The following are constructors for `PaymentGatewayContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayContext(request, requestType)
Constructor to enable instance creation. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`PaymentGatewayContext(request, requestType)`

Constructor to enable instance creation. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global PaymentGatewayContext(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayRequest request, String requestType)
```

Parameters

request
Type: commercepayments.PaymentGatewayRequest

Raw payload. Sensitive attributes are masked to ensure PCI compliance.

requestType
Type: String

Defines the type of request made to the gateway

PaymentGatewayContext Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentGatewayContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getPaymentRequest()
Returns the payment request object.

getPaymentRequestType()
Returns the payment request type.

`getPaymentRequest()`

Returns the payment request object.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.PaymentGatewayRequest getPaymentRequest()
```

Return Value

Type: PaymentGatewayRequest

`getPaymentRequestType()`

Returns the payment request type.

Signature

```
global String getPaymentRequestType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

PaymentGatewayNotificationContext Class

Wraps the information related to a gateway notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class is used with asynchronous payments. It wraps all of the information related to a notification from the payment gateway. The payments platform provides its context to the payment gateway adapters.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext pgnc = new
CommercePayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext();
```

Example

```
global commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse
processNotification(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext
gatewayNotificationContext) {
commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest notificationRequest =
gatewayNotificationContext.getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest();
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayNotificationContext Methods

PaymentGatewayNotificationContext Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentGatewayNotificationContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest()
Returns the payment gateway's notification request.

getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest()

Returns the payment gateway's notification request.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest
getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest()
```

Return Value

Type: PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest on page 337

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Class

Stores data about a request to tokenize a card payment method. The tokenization process occurs in the payment gateway. This process replaces sensitive customer data, such as a card number or CVV, with unique identification symbols. The symbols are used while the data is handled by Salesforce, the payment gateway, and the customer bank, allowing Salesforce to store the token without storing sensitive customer data.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest pmtr = new
CommercePayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest();
```

This class holds all the required details about the tokenize request. Gateway adapters read the information in this class while constructing a tokenization JSON request, which is sent to the payment gateway.

Example

The following code is used within your payment gateway adapter Apex class.

Use the `GatewayResponse` class's `processRequest` method to build responses based on the request type that it receives from an instance of `PaymentGatewayContext on page 323`. If the request type is Tokenize, `GatewayResponse on page 315` calls the `createTokenizeResponse` method and passes an instance of the `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` class. The passed `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` object contains the address and cardPaymentMethod information that the payment gateway needs to manage the tokenization process. For example:

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse processRequest(commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext
 gatewayContext) {
        commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();
```

```
        commercepayments.GatewayResponse response;
        try
        {
            if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.Tokenize) {
                    response =
createTokenizeResponse((commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest());

            }
            //Add other else if statements for different request types as needed.
            return response;
        }
        catch(SalesforceValidationException e)
        {
             commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse error = new
commercepayments.GatewayErrorResponse('400', e.getMessage());
             return error;
        }
    }
```

Configure the `createTokenizeResponse` method to accept an instance of `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`. Then, build an instance of `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` based on the values received from the payment gateway.

```
    public commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createTokenizeResponse(commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest tokenizeRequest)
 {
        commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse tokenizeResponse = new
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayTokenEncrypted(encryptedValue);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayTokenDetails(tokenDetails);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayAvsCode(avsCode);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayResultCode(resultcode);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription(resultCodeDescription);
        tokenizeResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(resultCodeInfo);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
        return tokenizeResponse;
    }
```

The `tokenizeResponse` contains the results of the gateway's tokenization process, and if successful, the tokenized value.

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Constructors

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Properties

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Methods

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest(paymentGatewayId)
Payment gateway ID constructor used with `paymentMethodTokenizationRequest`. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest()
The following are constructors for `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`.

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest(paymentGatewayId)

Payment gateway ID constructor used with `paymentMethodTokenizationRequest`. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest(String paymentGatewayId)
```

Parameters

paymentGatewayId
Type: String

The payment method's payment gateway ID that will be tokenized.

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest()

The following are constructors for `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`.

Signature

```
global PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest()
```

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Properties

The following are properties for `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

address
The card payment method address to be tokenized.

cardPaymentMethod
The card payment method containing data to be tokenized.

address

The card payment method address to be tokenized.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.AddressRequest address {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: AddressRequest on page 248

`cardPaymentMethod`

The card payment method containing data to be tokenized.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest cardPaymentMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: CardPaymentMethodRequest on page 304

PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` by determining the uniquness of the external object records in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest` by determining the uniquness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse Class

Gateway response sent by payment gateway adapters for the payment method tokenization request. The response includes the payment method's token ID value.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse pmtr = new
CommercePayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
```

After the payment gateway processes a tokenization request, the fields of `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` receive and store information from the gateway's response. The gateway's response shows whether the tokenization request was successful, the token value, and any additional messages or information about the tokenization process. You can then pass an instance of `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` to an authorization response or a sale response. This class is mapped to a response class in the Java layer.

Example

This constructor builds a new instance of the `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` class.

```
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse tokenizeResponse = new
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
```

`PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` contains only setter methods. Each setter accepts a value from the payment gateway and use it to set an attribute of `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse`.

The most important method in `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` is `setGatewayTokenEncrypted`, which uses Salesforce encryption to set an encrypted token value for a payment method. The `setGatewayTokenEncrypted` method is available in Salesforce API v52.0 and later. We recommend using it to ensure your tokenized payment method values are encrypted and secure. While the `setGatewayToken` method (available in earlier API versions) also returns a payment method token, the tokenized value isn't encrypted.

If the instantiated class already has a gateway token, `setGatewayTokenEncrypted` throws an error.

```
    /** @description Method to set Gateway token to persist in Encrypted Text */
    global void setGatewayTokenEncrypted(String gatewayTokenEncrypted) {
        if (gatewayTokenSet)  {
            throwTokenError();
        }
        this.delegate.setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted);
        gatewayTokenEncryptedSet = true;
    }
```

A typical instantiation of `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` sets the encrypted gateway token alongside the other tokenization response values sent by the gateway.

```
    public commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createTokenizeResponse(commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest tokenizeRequest)
 {
        commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse tokenizeResponse = new
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayTokenDetails(gatewayTokenDetails);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode);
        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription);
       tokenizeResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(SUCCESS_SALESFORCE_RESULT_CODE_INFO);

        tokenizeResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
        return tokenizeResponse;
    }
```

After you've built a PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse object and set the encrypted gateway token, pass the object to the `setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse` method of an authorization response or a sale response.

Authorization Response

```
    public commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createAuthResponse(commercepayments.AuthorizationRequest authRequest) {
        commercepayments.AuthorizationResponse authResponse = new
commercepayments.AuthorizationResponse();
        commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse
```

```
paymentMethodTokenizationResponse = new
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
         if(authRequest.amount!=null )
         {
             authResponse.setAmount(authRequest.amount);
         }
         else
         {
            throw new SalesforceValidationException('Required Field Missing : Amount');

         }

         authResponse.setGatewayResultCode('00');
         authResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription('Transaction Normal');
         authResponse.setGatewayAuthCode('SF'+getRandomNumber(6));
         authResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber(getRandomNumber(10));
        authResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(SUCCESS_SALESFORCE_RESULT_CODE_INFO);

         authResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());

paymentMethodTokenizationResponse.setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted);

authResponse.setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse);
         return authResponse;
     }
```

Sale Response

```
     public commercepayments.GatewayResponse
createSaleResponse(commercepayments.SaleRequest saleRequest) {
        commercepayments.SaleResponse saleResponse = new commercepayments.SaleResponse();

         commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse
paymentMethodTokenizationResponse = new
commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse();
         if(saleRequest.amount!=null )
         {
             saleResponse.setAmount(saleRequest.amount);
         }
         else
         {
            throw new SalesforceValidationException('Required Field Missing : Amount');

         }

         system.debug('Response - success');
         saleResponse.setGatewayDate(system.now());
         saleResponse.setGatewayResultCode('00');
         saleResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription('Transaction Normal');
         saleResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber('SF'+getRandomNumber(6));
        saleResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(SUCCESS_SALESFORCE_RESULT_CODE_INFO);


paymentMethodTokenizationResponse.setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted);
```

```
saleResponse.setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse);
        return saleResponse;
    }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse Methods

PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)
Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the date that the tokenization occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the tokenization request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setGatewayToken(gatewayToken)
Sets the gateway token value that the gateway returned.

setGatewayTokenDetails(gatewayTokenDetails)
Sets any additional information that the gateway returned about the payment token.

setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted)
Sets the value of the `gatewayTokenEncrypted` field on a CardPaymentMethod or DigitalWallet object.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

`setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)`

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

`gatewayAvsCode`
Type: String

Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)`

Sets the date that the tokenization occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)`

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the tokenization request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)`

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Provides additional information about the result code and why the gateway returned the specific code. Descriptions will vary between different gateways.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayToken(gatewayToken)

Sets the gateway token value that the gateway returned.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayToken(String gatewayToken)
```

Parameters

gatewayToken
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayTokenDetails(gatewayTokenDetails)

Sets any additional information that the gateway returned about the payment token.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayTokenDetails(String gatewayTokenDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayTokenDetails
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayTokenEncrypted(gatewayTokenEncrypted)

Sets the value of the `gatewayTokenEncrypted` field on a CardPaymentMethod or DigitalWallet object.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayTokenEncrypted(String gatewayTokenEncrypted)
```

Parameters

gatewayTokenEncrypted
Type: String

The gateway token that the payment gateway sends following a tokenization request. CommercePayments uses Salesforce encryption to encrypt the token value.

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Class

Contains the notification request data from the gateway.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

When the payment gateway sends a notification for a payment request, the payments platform sends the notification request to the gateway adapter. If the notification payload contains an `eventCode` of `CAPTURE`, the adapter constructs a `CaptureNotification`. If the notification payload contains an `eventCode` of `REFUND`, the adapter constructs a `ReferencedRefundNotification`. If the notification payload contains `eventCode` of `AUTHORISATION`, the adapter constructs a `GatewayNotificationResponse`.

You can obtain a notification request from `PaymentGatewayNotificationContext` on page 325 by invoking its `getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest` method.

Example

```
global commercepayments.GatewayNotificationResponse
    processNotification(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationContext
gatewayNotificationContext) {
        commercepayments.PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest notificationRequest =
gatewayNotificationContext.getPaymentGatewayNotificationRequest();
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Properties

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Methods

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Properties

The following are properties for `PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

requestBody

Body of the notification request sent by the payment gateway.

`requestBody`

Body of the notification request sent by the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global Blob requestBody {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Blob

PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentGatewayNotificationRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getHeaders()
Gets HTTP headers from the notification request sent by the payment gateway.

getRequestBody()
Stores the notification request body information from the payment gateway's notification request.

`getHeaders()`

Gets HTTP headers from the notification request sent by the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global Map<String,String> getHeaders()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,String>

`getRequestBody()`

Stores the notification request body information from the payment gateway's notification request.

Signature

```
global Blob getRequestBody()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

PaymentsHttp Class

Makes an HTTP request to start the interaction with the payment gateway.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

You must specify the `CommercePayments` namespace when creating an instance of this class. The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.PaymentsHttp payhttp = new CommercePayments.PaymentsHttp();
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentsHttp Methods

PaymentsHttp Constructors

PaymentsHttp Methods

The following are methods for `PaymentsHttp`. All methods are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

send(Request)
Sends an HttpRequest and returns the response.

`send(Request)`

Sends an HttpRequest and returns the response.

Signature

```
global HttpResponse send(HttpRequest request)
```

Parameters

`request`
Type: System.HttpRequest

Return Value

Type: System.HttpResponse

PaymentsHttp Constructors

The following are constructors for `PaymentsHttp`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentsHttp()
Initiates an HTTP request and response.

`PaymentsHttp()`

Initiates an HTTP request and response.

Signature

```
global PaymentsHttp()
```

RefundRequest Class

Sends data related to a refund to the payment gateway adapter.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 340

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.RefundRequest rrq = new CommercePayments.RefundRequest();
```

Example

```
commercepayments.ReferencedRefundRequest refundRequest = new
commercepayments.ReferencedRefundRequest(80, pmt.id);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

RefundRequest Methods

RefundRequest Methods

The following are methods for `RefundRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `RefundRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `RefundRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `RefundRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `RefundRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

ReferencedRefundNotification Class

When a payment gateway sends a notification for a refund transaction, the payment gateway adapter creates the `ReferencedRefundNotification` object to store information about notification.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class is used with asynchronous payments. When a payment gateway sends a notification for a refund transcation, the gateway adapter creates an object of type `ReferencedRefundNotification` to populate the respective values.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.ReferencedRefundNotification rrn = new
CommercePayments.ReferencedRefundNotification();
```

Example

```
commercepayments.NotificationStatus notificationStatus = null;
        if (success) {
            notificationStatus = commercepayments.NotificationStatus.Success;
        } else {
            notificationStatus = commercepayments.NotificationStatus.Failed;
        }
        commercepayments.BaseNotification notification = null;
        if ('CAPTURE'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.CaptureNotification();
```

```
        } else if ('REFUND'.equals(eventCode)) {
            notification = new commercepayments.ReferencedRefundNotification();
        }
```

IN THIS SECTION:

ReferencedRefundNotification Methods

ReferencedRefundNotification Methods

The following are methods for `ReferencedRefundNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)
Sets the transaction amount. Can be positive, negative, or zero.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the date that communication for the refund notification occurred with the payment gateway.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)
Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)
Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets the payment gateway's result code.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

setId(id)
Sets the ID of a notification sent by the payment gateway.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Sets Salesforce result code information.

setStatus(status)
Sets the notification status value on the notification object.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. Can be positive, negative, or zero.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that communication for the refund notification occurred with the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

The date that communication happened with the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Provides information about the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets the payment gateway's result code.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

The gateway result code. You must map this to a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway result code. Provides additional context about the result code .

Return Value

Type: void

setId(id)

Sets the ID of a notification sent by the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global void setId(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets Salesforce result code information.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Description of the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

`setStatus(status)`

Sets the notification status value on the notification object.

Signature

```
global void setStatus(commercepayments.NotificationStatus status)
```

Parameters

`status`
Type: NotificationStatus on page 319

Indicates whether the payments platform successfully received the notification from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

ReferencedRefundRequest

Access information about the referenced refund requests. Extends the `RefundRequest` class.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Example

```
global commercepayments.GatewayResponse processRequest(commercepayments.PaymentGatewayContext
 gatewayContext) {
    commercepayments.RequestType requestType = gatewayContext.getPaymentRequestType();
    if (requestType == commercepayments.RequestType.ReferencedRefund) {
        commercepayments.*ReferencedRefundRequest* refundRequest =
(commercepayments.*ReferencedRefundRequest*) gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest();
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

ReferencedRefundRequest Constructors

ReferencedRefundRequest Properties

ReferencedRefundRequest Methods

ReferencedRefundRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `ReferencedRefundRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ReferencedRefundRequest(amount, paymentId)

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`ReferencedRefundRequest(amount, paymentId)`

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Parameters

`amount`

Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

`paymentId`

Type: String

The payment record.

ReferencedRefundRequest Properties

The following are properties for `ReferencedRefundRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PaymentId

References a payment object.

accountId

References an account.

amount

References an amount.

`PaymentId`

References a payment object.

Property Value

Type: String

`accountId`

References an account.

Property Value

Type: String

`amount`

References an amount.

Property Value

Type: Double

ReferencedRefundRequest Methods

The following are methods for `ReferencedRefundRequest`.

ReferencedRefundResponse Class

The payment gateway adapter sends this response for the `ReferencedRefund` request type.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.ReferencedRefundResponse refr = new
CommercePayments.ReferencedRefundResponse();
```

IN THIS SECTION:

ReferencedRefundResponse Methods

ReferencedRefundResponse Methods

The following are methods for `ReferencedRefundResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)
Sets the transaction amount. The value must be a postive number.

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)
Sets the payment gateway's address verification system (AVS) code.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)
Sets the payment gateway's date.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)
Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)
Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)
Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)
Sets the payment gateway's result code.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)
Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)
Set the Salesforce result code info.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. The value must be a postive number.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

The amount to be debited or captured.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)`

Sets the payment gateway's address verification system (AVS) code.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode
Type: String

Code sent by gateways that use an address verification system.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the payment gateway's date.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

Date and time of the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets information or messages that the gateway returned.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Information or error messages returned by the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets the payment gateway's reference details.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Information about the gateway communication.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the payment gateway's reference number.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets the payment gateway's result code.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

The gateway result code. Must be mapped to a Salesforce result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets the payment gateway's result code description.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the `GatewayResultCode`. Provides more information about the result code returned by the gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

`setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)`

Set the Salesforce result code info.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

salesforceResultCodeInfo
Type: commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Describes the Salesforce result code value.

Return Value

Type: void

RequestType Enum

Defines the type of payment transaction request made to the payment gateway.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `commercepayments.RequestType` enum.

Value	Description
`Authorize`	Payment authorization request
`Capture`	Payment capture request
`ReferencedRefund`	Payment refund request
`Sale`	Sale request

```
commercepayments.RequestType,
Sale
```

Value	Description
`Tokenization` `commercepayments.RequestType.Tokenization`	Payment tokenization request

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Class

Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a sale service call.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class holds information about a payment method that was used for a Sale request. `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` contains all the possible payment methods as fields, but only one value is populated for a given request. Gateway adapters use this class when constructing a sale request. The object of this class is obtained through the `paymentMethod` field on the `SaleRequest` object.

Example: This code sample retrieves the `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` object from the `SaleRequest` class.

```
commercepayments.SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest paymentMethod = saleRequest.paymentMethod;
```

IN THIS SECTION:

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Methods

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest(cardPaymentMethodRequest)
Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a sale service call.

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest()
Constructor for building a sale payment method request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest(cardPaymentMethodRequest)`

Sends data related to a card payment method to a gateway adapter during a sale service call.

Signature

```
global SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest(commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest
cardPaymentMethodRequest)
```

Parameters

cardPaymentMethodRequest
Type: CardPaymentMethodRequest on page 304

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest()

Constructor for building a sale payment method request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest()
```

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Properties

The following are properties for `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

cardPaymentMethod
Contains details of the card used in a payment method.

cardPaymentMethod

Contains details of the card used in a payment method.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.CardPaymentMethodRequest cardPaymentMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: CardPaymentMethodRequest on page 304

SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest Methods

The following are methods for `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

toString()

Converts a date to a string.

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the equals method in Java.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj

Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

toString()

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

SaleRequest Class

Stores information about a sales request.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

This class holds all the required details about a sale request. Gateway adapters read the fields of this class object while constructing a sale JSON request thatis sent to the payment gateway. The object of this class is made available through `commercepayments.paymentGatewayContext` by calling `getPaymentRequest()`.

Example

This code sample retrieves the SaleRequest object from the `PaymentGatewayContext` class.

```
commercepayments.SaleRequest =
(commercepayments.SaleRequest)gatewayContext.getPaymentRequest()
```

IN THIS SECTION:

SaleRequest Constructors

SaleRequest Properties

SaleRequest Methods

SaleRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `SaleRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SaleRequest(amount)
Constructor for defining an amount for the sale request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

`SaleRequest(amount)`

Constructor for defining an amount for the sale request. This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
global SaleRequest(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount
Type: Double

Amount of the sale request.

SaleRequest Properties

The following are properties for `SaleRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

accountId
Customer account ID for the sale request.

amount
Amount of the sale request. Can be positive only.

comments
Additional information about the sale request.

currencyIsoCode
Currency code for the sale request.

paymentMethod
Payment method used in the sale request.

accountId

Customer account ID for the sale request.

Signature

```
global String accountId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

amount

Amount of the sale request. Can be positive only.

Signature

```
global Double amount {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Double

comments

Additional information about the sale request.

Signature

```
global String comments {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

currencyIsoCode

Currency code for the sale request.

Signature

```
global String currencyIsoCode {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

paymentMethod

Payment method used in the sale request.

Signature

```
global commercepayments.SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest paymentMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest on page 353

SaleRequest Methods

The following are methods for `SaleRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Compares this object with the specified object and returns `true` if both objects are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

toString()
Converts a date to a string.

`equals(obj)`

Compares this object with the specified object and returns `true` if both objects are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
global Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hashCode()`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `SaleRequest` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
global Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`toString()`

Converts a date to a string.

Signature

```
global String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

SaleResponse Class

Response sent by payment gateway adapters for a sales service.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.SaleResponse slr CommercePayments.SaleResponse();
```

This class contains details about a customer card that was used as a payment method for Authorization, Sale, or Tokenization request. The gateway adapter reads the fields of this class while constructing a transaction JSON request, which it then sends to the payment gateway. The object of this class is made available by the `cardPaymentMethod` field in `SaleApiPaymentMethodRequest` `on page 353` and `AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest` `on page 259`.

Example

This code sample builds a `SaleResponse` object.

```
commercepayments.SaleResponse saleResponse = new commercepayments.SaleResponse();
saleResponse.setGatewayReferenceDetails("refDetailString");
saleResponse.setGatewayResultCode("res_code");
saleResponse.setGatewayResultCodeDescription("");
saleResponse.setGatewayReferenceNumber("");
saleResponse.setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(getSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCode.SUCCESS.name()));
```

IN THIS SECTION:

SaleResponse Methods

SaleResponse Methods

The following are methods for `SaleResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setAmount(amount)

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)

Sets the date that the sale occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the sale request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets additional data that you can use for subsequent sales. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)

Sets information from the gateway about the tokenized payment method.

setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

`setAmount(amount)`

Sets the transaction amount. Must be a non-negative value.

Signature

```
global void setAmount(Double amount)
```

Parameters

amount

Type: Double

The amount of the transaction.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayAvsCode(gatewayAvsCode)`

Sets the AVS (address verification system) result code information that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayAvsCode(String gatewayAvsCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayAvsCode

Type: String

Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

`setGatewayDate(gatewayDate)`

Sets the date that the sale occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayDate(Datetime gatewayDate)
```

Parameters

gatewayDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayMessage(gatewayMessage)

Sets error messages that the gateway returned for the sale request. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayMessage(String gatewayMessage)
```

Parameters

gatewayMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceDetails(gatewayReferenceDetails)

Sets additional data that you can use for subsequent sales. You can use any data that isn't normalized in financial entities. This field has a maximum length of 1000 characters and can store data as JSON or XML.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceDetails(String gatewayReferenceDetails)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceDetails
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayReferenceNumber(gatewayReferenceNumber)

Sets the unique gateway reference number for the transaction that the gateway returned. Maximum length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayReferenceNumber(String gatewayReferenceNumber)
```

Parameters

gatewayReferenceNumber
Type: String

Unique authorization ID created by the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCode(gatewayResultCode)

Sets a gateway-specific result code. The code may be mapped to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCode(String gatewayResultCode)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCode
Type: String

Gateway-specific result code. Must be used to map a Salesforce-specific result code.

Return Value

Type: void

setGatewayResultCodeDescription(gatewayResultCodeDescription)

Sets a description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1000 characters.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayResultCodeDescription(String gatewayResultCodeDescription)
```

Parameters

gatewayResultCodeDescription
Type: String

Description of the gateway's result code. Use this field to learn more about why the gateway returned a certain result code.

Return Value

Type: void

`setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)`

Sets information from the gateway about the tokenized payment method.

Signature

```
global void
setPaymentMethodTokenizationResponse(commercepayments.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse
paymentMethodTokenizationResponse)
```

Parameters

`paymentMethodTokenizationResponse`
Type: PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse on page 330

Gateway response sent by payment gateway adapters for the payment method tokenization request. The response includes the payment method's token ID value.

Return Value

Type: void

`setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCodeInfo)`

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Signature

```
global void setSalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo
salesforceResultCodeInfo)
```

Parameters

`salesforceResultCodeInfo`
Type: SalesforceResultCodeInfo on page 365

Sets the Salesforce-specific result code information. Payment gateways have many response codes for payment calls. Salesforce uses the result code information to map payment gateway codes to a predefined set of standard Salesforce result codes.

Return Value

Type: void

SalesforceResultCode Enum

Defines the gateway call status values in Salesforce based on the call status values that the payment gateway returned.

Usage

Payment gateways can return many different responses. Salesforce maps these responses into one of seven possible Salesforce response values.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `commercepayments.SalesforceResultCode` enum.

Value	Description
`Decline`	The gateway call failed, but it may still work if you try again. For example, the customer had insufficient funds or briefly lost their connection to the internet. This is also known as a "soft decline."
`Indeterminate`	The gateway didn't respond to the call and the user has to check the transaction request's status. Indeterminate responses often occur following server timeouts, system failure, or any action that interrupts the gateway's ability to process the payment.
`PermanentFail`	The customer's bank recognized the payment account as closed, terminated, or fraudulent. The gateway won't further calls from the payment method associate with the transaction. After a permanent fail response, the transaction changes its gateway status to Permanent Fail.
`RequiresReview`	The gateway call initially failed, but the payment method may still work after further evaluation. This response often happens when the customer bank requires more information about the payment request. In this case, the bank provides an authorization code manually when the payment manager calls the processor.
`Success`	The gateway processed the transaction successfully.
`SystemError`	Salesforce ended the payment request call before receiving a gateway response. System error responses often occur due to gateway server errors, invalid customer credentials, or anytime the request times out before receiving a gateway response. The failure occurs before the request reaches the gateway, so there's no risk of an unaccounted payment remaining in the gateway. You can continue with the transaction by manually creating a payment.
`ValidationError`	The gateway received incorrect customer payment information, such as misspelled credit card names or a CVV with missing numbers.

SalesforceResultCodeInfo

Stores Salesforce result code information from payment gateway adapters.

Namespace

CommercePayments on page 242

Usage

The constructor of this class takes no arguments. For example:

```
CommercePayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo srci = new
CommercePayments.SalesforceResultCodeInfo();
```

Gateways can return the transaction result as either `CustomMetadata` or `SalesforceResultCode`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SalesforceResultCodeInfo Constructors

SalesforceResultCodeInfo Constructors

The following are constructors for `SalesforceResultCodeInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SalesforceResultCodeInfo(customMetadataTypeInfo)
Constructor for providing the `customMetadataTypeInfo` for the result of the transaction.

SalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCode)
Constructor that provides the `salesforceResultCode` for the transaction result.

`SalesforceResultCodeInfo(customMetadataTypeInfo)`

Constructor for providing the `customMetadataTypeInfo` for the result of the transaction.

Signature

```
global SalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.CustomMetadataTypeInfo
customMetadataTypeInfo)
```

Parameters

`customMetadataTypeInfo`
Type: CustomMetadataTypeInfo on page 310

Information about the metadata type.

`SalesforceResultCodeInfo(salesforceResultCode)`

Constructor that provides the `salesforceResultCode` for the transaction result.

Signature

```
global SalesforceResultCodeInfo(commercepayments.SalesforceResultCode
salesforceResultCode)
```

Parameters

`salesforceResultCode`
Type: SalesforceResultCode on page 364

The enum value for the result code.

`ConnectApi` Namespace

The `ConnectApi` namespace (also called Connect in Apex) provides classes for accessing the same data available in Connect REST API. Use Connect in Apex to create custom experiences in Salesforce.

For information about working with the `ConnectApi` classes, see Connect in Apex.

IN THIS SECTION:

ActionLinks Class

Create, delete, and get information about an action link group definition; get information about an action link group; get action link diagnostic information.

Announcements Class

Access information about announcements and post announcements.

CdpQuery Class

Get Salesforce Customer Data Platform (CDP) metadata and query Salesforce CDP data.

Chatter Class

Access information about followers and subscriptions for records.

ChatterFavorites Class

Chatter favorites give you easy access to topics, list views, and feed searches.

ChatterFeeds Class

Get, post, and delete feed elements, likes, comments, and bookmarks. You can also search feed elements, share feed elements, and vote on polls.

ChatterGroups Class

Information about groups, such as the group's members, photo, and the groups the specified user is a member of. Add members to a group, remove members, and change the group photo.

ChatterMessages Class

Get, send, search, and reply to private messages. You can also get and search private conversations, mark conversations as read, and get a count of unread private messages.

ChatterUsers Class

Access information about users, such as activity, followers, subscriptions, files, and groups.

CommerceBuyerExperience Class

Get order delivery group, order item, order shipments, shipment items, and order summaries.

CommerceCart Class

Get, create, update, and delete carts. Get cart items, add items to carts, update and delete cart items.

CommerceCatalog Class

Get products, product categories, and product category paths.

CommerceSearch Class

Get sort rules for the live search index. Get product search suggestions. Search products.

CommerceSearchSettings Class

Get indexes and create an index of a product catalog.

CommerceStorePricing Class

Get product prices.

CommerceWishlist Class

Get, create, update, and delete wishlists. Add wishlists to carts. Get wishlist items, add items to wishlists, and delete wishlist items.

Communities Class

Access general information about Experience Cloud sites in your org.

CommunityModeration Class

Access information about flagged feed items and comments in an Experience Cloud site. Add and remove flags from comments and feed items.

ContentHub Class

Access Files Connect repositories and their files and folders.

Datacloud Class

Purchase Data.com contact or company records, and retrieve purchase information.

EmailMergeFieldService Class

Extract a list of merge fields for an object. A merge field is a field you can put in an email template, mail merge template, custom link, or formula to incorporate values from a record.

EmployeeProfiles Class

Get, set and crop, and delete employee banner photos and photos.

ExternalEmailServices Class

Access information about integration with external email services, such as sending email within Salesforce through an external email account.

ExternalManagedAccount Class

Get externally managed accounts.

FieldService Class

Preview and create shifts from a pattern.

FulfillmentOrder Class

Fulfill orders in Order Management.

Knowledge Class

Access information about trending articles in Experience Cloud sites.

ManagedContent Class

Get managed content versions.

ManagedTopics Class

Access information about managed topics in an Experience Cloud site. Create, delete, and reorder managed topics.

Mentions Class

Access information about mentions. A mention is an "@" character followed by a user or group name. When a user or group is mentioned, they receive a notification.

Missions Class

Export and purge mission activity for users. Get a user's mission progress. Update mission activity counts for users.

NavigationMenu Class

Get navigation menu items for an Experience Cloud site.

NextBestAction Class

Execute recommendation strategies, get recommendations, manage recommendation reactions.

OmnichannelInventoryService Class

Route orders to inventory locations in Order Management.

OrderPaymentSummary Class

Work with payments in Order Management.

OrderSummary Class

Work with orders in Order Management.

OrderSummaryCreation Class

Create Order Summaries in Order Management.

Organization Class

Access information about an org.

Payments Methods

Authorize a payment, capture an authorized payment, and refund an authorized payment.

Personalization Class

Get assigned personalization audiences that match the user context. Create, get, update, and delete an audience. Get personalization targets that match the user context, based on the assigned audiences that include the user. Create and update targets. Get and delete a target.

QuestionAndAnswers Class

Access question and answers suggestions.

Recommendations Class

Get and reject Chatter, custom, and static recommendations. Create, get, update, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Records Class

Access information about record motifs, which are small icons used to distinguish record types in the Salesforce UI.

ReturnOrder Class

Process ReturnOrders in Order Management.

Routing Class

Route orders to inventory locations in Order Management.

SalesforceInbox Class

Access information about Automated Activity Capture, which is available in Einstein and Salesforce Inbox.

SmartDataDiscovery Class

Get predictions on Salesforce objects.

SocialEngagement Class

Manage information about social accounts or fan pages for social networks.

Survey Class

Send survey invitations by email.

Topics Class

Access information about topics, such as their descriptions, the number of people talking about them, related topics, and information about groups contributing to the topic. Update a topic's name or description, merge topics, and add and remove topics from records and feed items.

UserProfiles Class

Access user profile data. The user profile data populates the profile page (also called the Chatter profile page). This data includes user information (such as address, manager, and phone number), some user capabilities (permissions), and a set of subtab apps, which are custom tabs on the profile page.

Zones Class

Access information about Chatter Answers zones in your organization. Zones organize questions into logical groups, with each zone having its own focus and unique questions.

ConnectApi Input Classes

Some `ConnectApi` methods take arguments that are instances of `ConnectApi` input classes.

ConnectApi Output Classes

Most `ConnectApi` methods return instances of `ConnectApi` output classes.

ConnectApi Enums

Enums specific to the `ConnectApi` namespace.

ConnectApi Exceptions

The `ConnectApi` namespace contains exception classes.

ActionLinks Class

Create, delete, and get information about an action link group definition; get information about an action link group; get action link diagnostic information.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

An action link is a button on a feed element. Clicking an action link can take a user to a Web page, initiate a file download, or invoke an API call to Salesforce or to an external server. An action link includes a URL and an HTTP method, and can include a request body and header information, such as an OAuth token for authentication. Use action links to integrate Salesforce and third-party services into the feed so that users can take action to drive productivity and accelerate innovation.

There are two views of an action link and an action link group: the definition, and the context user's view. The definition includes potentially sensitive information, such as authentication information. The context user's view is filtered by visibility options and the values reflect the state of the context user.

Action link definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission. Use these methods to operate on action link group definitions (which contain action link definitions):

- createActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroup)
- deleteActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)
- getActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)

Use these methods to operate on a context user's view of an action link or an action link group:

- getActionLink(communityId, actionLinkId)
- getActionLinkGroup(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)

- getActionLinkDiagnosticInfo(communityId, actionLinkId)

For information about how to use action links, see Working with Action Links.

ActionLinks Methods

The following are methods for `ActionLinks`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroup)
Create an action link group definition. To associate an action link group with a feed element, first create an action link group definition. Then post a feed element with an associated actions capability.

deleteActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)
Delete an action link group definition. Deleting an action link group definition removes all references to it from feed elements.

getActionLink(communityId, actionLinkId)
Get information about an action link, including state for the context user.

getActionLinkDiagnosticInfo(communityId, actionLinkId)
Get diagnostic information returned when an action link executes. Diagnostic information is given only for users who can access the action link.

getActionLinkGroup(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)
Get information about an action link group including state for the context user.

getActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)
Get information about an action link group definition.

createActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroup)

Create an action link group definition. To associate an action link group with a feed element, first create an action link group definition. Then post a feed element with an associated actions capability.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition createActionLinkGroupDefinition(String
communityId, ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput actionLinkGroup)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

actionLinkGroup
Type: ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput

A ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput object that defines the action link group.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition

Usage

An action link is a button on a feed element. Clicking an action link can take a user to a Web page, initiate a file download, or invoke an API call to Salesforce or to an external server. An action link includes a URL and an HTTP method, and can include a request body and header information, such as an OAuth token for authentication. Use action links to integrate Salesforce and third-party services into the feed so that users can take action to drive productivity and accelerate innovation.

All action links must belong to a group. Action links in a group are mutually exclusive and share some properties. Define stand-alone actions in their own action group.

Information in the action link group definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link group definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

Note: Invoking ApiAsync action links from an app requires a call to set the status. However, there isn't currently a way to set the status of an action link using Apex. To set the status, use Connect REST API. See the Action Link resource in the *Connect REST API Developer Guide* for more information.

Example for Defining an Action Link and Posting with a Feed Element

For more information about this example, see Define an Action Link and Post with a Feed Element.

```
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput = new
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput();
ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinitionInput actionLinkDefinitionInput = new
ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinitionInput();
ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput requestHeaderInput1 = new ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput();
ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput requestHeaderInput2 = new ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput();

// Create the action link group definition.
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.actionLinks = New
List<ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinitionInput>();
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.executionsAllowed =
ConnectApi.ActionLinkExecutionsAllowed.OncePerUser;
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.category = ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroupCategory.Primary;
// To Do: Verify that the date is in the future.
// Action link groups are removed from feed elements on the expiration date.
datetime myDate = datetime.newInstance(2016, 3, 1);
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.expirationDate = myDate;

// Create the action link definition.
actionLinkDefinitionInput.actionType = ConnectApi.ActionLinkType.Api;
actionLinkDefinitionInput.actionUrl = '/services/data/v33.0/chatter/feed-elements';
actionLinkDefinitionInput.headers = new List<ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput>();
actionLinkDefinitionInput.labelKey = 'Post';
```

```
actionLinkDefinitionInput.method = ConnectApi.HttpRequestMethod.HttpPost;
actionLinkDefinitionInput.requestBody = '{\"subjectId\": \"me\",\"feedElementType\":
\"FeedItem\",\"body\": {\"messageSegments\": [{\"type\": \"Text\",\"text\": \"This is a
test post created via an API action link.\"}]}}';
actionLinkDefinitionInput.requiresConfirmation = true;

// To Do: Substitute an OAuth value for your Salesforce org.
requestHeaderInput1.name = 'Authorization';
requestHeaderInput1.value = 'OAuth
00DD00000007WNP!ARsAQCwoeV0zzAV847FTl4zF.85w.EwsPbUgXR4SAjsp';
actionLinkDefinitionInput.headers.add(requestHeaderInput1);

requestHeaderInput2.name = 'Content-Type';
requestHeaderInput2.value = 'application/json';
actionLinkDefinitionInput.headers.add(requestHeaderInput2);

// Add the action link definition to the action link group definition.
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.actionLinks.add(actionLinkDefinitionInput);

// Instantiate the action link group definition.
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition actionLinkGroupDefinition =
ConnectApi.ActionLinks.createActionLinkGroupDefinition(Network.getNetworkId(),
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput);

ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput associatedActionsCapabilityInput = new
ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

// Set the properties of the feedItemInput object.
feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;
feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;
feedItemInput.subjectId = 'me';

// Create the text for the post.
messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
textSegmentInput.text = 'Click to post a feed item.';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);


// The feedElementCapabilitiesInput object holds the capabilities of the feed item.
// Define an associated actions capability to hold the action link group.
// The action link group ID is returned from the call to create the action link group
definition.
feedElementCapabilitiesInput.associatedActions = associatedActionsCapabilityInput;
associatedActionsCapabilityInput.actionLinkGroupIds = new List<String>();
associatedActionsCapabilityInput.actionLinkGroupIds.add(actionLinkGroupDefinition.id);

// Post the feed item.
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

Example for Defining an Action Link in a Template and Posting with a Feed Element

For more information about this example, see Define an Action Link in a Template and Post with a Feed Element.

```
// Get the action link group template Id.
ActionLinkGroupTemplate template = [SELECT Id FROM ActionLinkGroupTemplate WHERE
DeveloperName='Doc_Example'];

// Add binding name-value pairs to a map.
// The names are defined in the action link template(s) associated with the action link
group template.
// Get them from Setup UI or SOQL.
Map<String, String> bindingMap = new Map<String, String>();
bindingMap.put('ApiVersion', 'v33.0');
bindingMap.put('Text', 'This post was created by an API action link.');
bindingMap.put('SubjectId', 'me');

// Create ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput objects from the map elements.
List<ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput> bindingInputs = new
List<ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput>();

for (String key : bindingMap.keySet()) {
    ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput bindingInput = new
ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput();
    bindingInput.key = key;
    bindingInput.value = bindingMap.get(key);
    bindingInputs.add(bindingInput);
}

// Set the template Id and template binding values in the action link group definition.
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput = new
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput();
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.templateId = template.id;
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput.templateBindings = bindingInputs;

// Instantiate the action link group definition.
ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition actionLinkGroupDefinition =
 ConnectApi.ActionLinks.createActionLinkGroupDefinition(Network.getNetworkId(),
actionLinkGroupDefinitionInput);

ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput associatedActionsCapabilityInput = new
ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

// Define the FeedItemInput object to pass to postFeedElement
feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;
feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;
feedItemInput.subjectId = 'me';

// The MessageBodyInput object holds the text in the post
messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
```

```
textSegmentInput.text = 'Click to post a feed item.';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);


// The FeedElementCapabilitiesInput object holds the capabilities of the feed item.
// For this feed item, we define an associated actions capability to hold the action link
 group.
// The action link group ID is returned from the call to create the action link group
definition.
feedElementCapabilitiesInput.associatedActions = associatedActionsCapabilityInput;
associatedActionsCapabilityInput.actionLinkGroupIds = new List<String>();
associatedActionsCapabilityInput.actionLinkGroupIds.add(actionLinkGroupDefinition.id);

// Post the feed item.
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

`deleteActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)`

Delete an action link group definition. Deleting an action link group definition removes all references to it from feed elements.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static void deleteActionLinkGroupDefinition(String communityId, String
actionLinkGroupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
: Type: String

  ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

actionLinkGroupId
: Type: String

  The ID of the action link group.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Information in the action link group definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link group definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

`getActionLink(communityId, actionLinkId)`

Get information about an action link, including state for the context user.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PlatformAction getActionLink(String communityId, String actionLinkId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`actionLinkId`
Type: String

The ID of the action link.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PlatformAction`

`getActionLinkDiagnosticInfo(communityId, actionLinkId)`

Get diagnostic information returned when an action link executes. Diagnostic information is given only for users who can access the action link.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ActionLinkDiagnosticInfo getActionLinkDiagnosticInfo(String communityId, String actionLinkId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

actionLinkId
Type: String

The ID of the action link.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ActionLinkDiagnosticInfo`

getActionLinkGroup(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)

Get information about an action link group including state for the context user.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup getActionLinkGroup(String communityId, String actionLinkGroupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

actionLinkGroupId
Type: String

The ID of the action link group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup`

Usage

All action links must belong to a group. Action links in a group are mutually exclusive and share some properties. Action link groups are accessible by clients, unlike action link group definitions.

`getActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroupId)`

Get information about an action link group definition.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition getActionLinkGroupDefinition(String communityId, String actionLinkGroupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

actionLinkGroupId
Type: String

The ID of the action link group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition`

Usage

Information in the action link group definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link group definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

Announcements Class

Access information about announcements and post announcements.

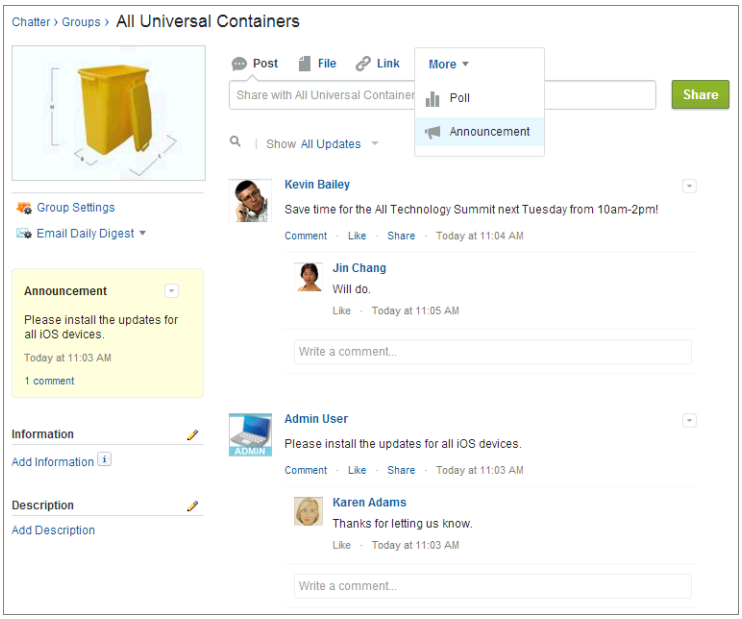
Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

Use the `ConnectApi.Announcements` class to get, create, update, and delete announcements. Use an announcement to highlight information. Users can discuss, like, and post comments on announcements. Deleting the feed post deletes the announcement.

This image shows an announcement displayed in a group. Creating an announcement also creates a feed item with the announcement text.



An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.

Announcements Methods

The following are methods for `Announcements`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId)
Delete an announcement.

getAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId)
Get an announcement.

getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId)
Get the first page of announcements.

getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of announcements.

postAnnouncement(communityId, announcement)
Post an announcement.

updateAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId, expirationDate)
Update the expiration date of an announcement.

deleteAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId)

Delete an announcement.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static void deleteAnnouncement(String communityId, String announcementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

announcementId
Type: String

An announcement ID, which has a prefix of 0BT.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

To get a list of announcements in a group, call `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId)` or `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId, pageParam, pageSize)`.

To post an announcement to a group, call `postAnnouncement(communityId, announcement)` .

getAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId)

Get an announcement.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Announcement getAnnouncement(String communityId, String
announcementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

announcementId
Type: String

An announcement ID, which has a prefix of 0BT.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Announcement`

Usage

To get a list of announcements in a group, call `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId)` or `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId, pageParam, pageSize)`.

To post an announcement to a group, call `postAnnouncement(communityId, announcement)` .

`getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId)`

Get the first page of announcements.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage getAnnouncements(String communityId, String
parentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

parentId
Type: String

ID of the parent entity for the announcement, that is, a group ID when the announcement appears in a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage`

getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of announcements.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage getAnnouncements(String communityId, String
parentId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

parentId
Type: String

ID of the parent entity for the announcement, that is, a group ID when the announcement appears in a group.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of announcements per page.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage

postAnnouncement(communityId, announcement)

Post an announcement.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Announcement postAnnouncement(String communityId,
ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput announcement)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

announcement
Type: ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput

A `ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput` object.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Announcement

updateAnnouncement(communityId, announcementId, expirationDate)

Update the expiration date of an announcement.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Announcement updateAnnouncement(String communityId, String
announcementId, Datetime expirationDate)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

announcementId
Type: String

An announcement ID, which has a prefix of 0BT.

expirationDate
Type: Datetime

The Salesforce UI displays an announcement until 11:59 p.m. on this date unless another announcement is posted first. The Salesforce UI ignores the time value in the `expirationDate`. However, you can use the time value to create your own display logic in your own UI.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Announcement`

Usage

To get a list of announcements in a group, call `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId)` or `getAnnouncements(communityId, parentId, pageParam, pageSize)`.

To post an announcement to a group, call `postAnnouncement(communityId, announcement)` .

CdpQuery Class

Get Salesforce Customer Data Platform (CDP) metadata and query Salesforce CDP data.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CdpQuery Methods

The following are methods for `CdpQuery`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAllMetadata()
Get all Salesforce CDP metadata, including Calculated Insights, Engagement, Profile, and other objects, as well as their relationships to other objects.

getInsightsMetadata()
Get Salesforce CDP Insight metadata, including Calculated Insight objects, their dimensions and measures.

getInsightsMetadata(ciName)
Get metadata for a Salesforce CDP Calculated Insight object. Metadata includes dimensions and measures.

getProfileMetadata()

Get Salesforce CDP metadata for data model objects in the profile category, including Individual, Contact Point Email, Unified Individual, and Contact Point Address objects. Metadata includes the objects, their fields, and category.

getProfileMetadata(dataModelName)

Get Salesforce CDP metadata for a data model object in the profile category, such as Individual, Contact Point Email, Unified Individual, and Contact Point Address. Metadata includes the list of fields, data types, and indexes available for lookup.

queryANSISql(input)

Synchronously query Salesforce CDP data across data model, lake, unified, and linked objects. This query returns up to 4,999 rows.

queryCalculatedInsights(ciName, dimensions, measures, orderby, filters, batchSize, offset)

Query a Salesforce CDP Calculated Insight object.

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object using filters.

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, searchKey, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object using filters and a search key.

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, childDataModelName, searchKey, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object and a child object using filters and a search key.

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, ciName, searchKey, dimensions, measures, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object and a Calculated Insight object using filters and a search key.

`getAllMetadata()`

Get all Salesforce CDP metadata, including Calculated Insights, Engagement, Profile, and other objects, as well as their relationships to other objects.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput getAllMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput`

`getInsightsMetadata()`

Get Salesforce CDP Insight metadata, including Calculated Insight objects, their dimensions and measures.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput getInsightsMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput`

`getInsightsMetadata(ciName)`

Get metadata for a Salesforce CDP Calculated Insight object. Metadata includes dimensions and measures.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput getInsightsMetadata(String ciName)
```

Parameters

`ciName`
Type: String

Name of the Calculated Insight object, for example, `IndividualChildrenCount__cio`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput`

`getProfileMetadata()`

Get Salesforce CDP metadata for data model objects in the profile category, including Individual, Contact Point Email, Unified Individual, and Contact Point Address objects. Metadata includes the objects, their fields, and category.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput getProfileMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput

getProfileMetadata(dataModelName)

Get Salesforce CDP metadata for a data model object in the profile category, such as Individual, Contact Point Email, Unified Individual, and Contact Point Address. Metadata includes the list of fields, data types, and indexes available for lookup.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput getProfileMetadata(String dataModelName)
```

Parameters

dataModelName
Type: String

Name of the data model object, for example, `UnifiedIndividual__dlm`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput

queryANSISql(input)

Synchronously query Salesforce CDP data across data model, lake, unified, and linked objects. This query returns up to 4,999 rows.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryANSISql(ConnectApi.CdpQueryInput input)
```

Parameters

input
Type: ConnectApi.CdpQueryInput

A ConnectApi.CdpQueryInput body with the SQL query.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput

queryCalculatedInsights(ciName, dimensions, measures, orderby, filters, batchSize, offset)

Query a Salesforce CDP Calculated Insight object.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryCalculatedInsights(String ciName, String dimensions, String measures, String orderby, String filters, Integer batchSize, Integer offset)
```

Parameters

ciName
Type: String

Name of the Calculated Insight object, for example, IndividualChildrenCount__cio.

dimensions
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 10 dimensions, such as GenderId__c, to project. If unspecified, this parameter includes all of the available dimensions.

measures
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 5 measures, such as TotalSales__c, to project. If unspecified, this parameter includes all of the available measures.

orderby
Type: String

Sort order for the result set, such as GenderId__c ASC,Occupation__c DESC. If unspecified, items are returned in the order they are retrieved.

filters
Type: String

Filter the result set to a more narrow scope or specific type, such as `[GenderId__c=Male,FirstName__c=Angel]`.

batchSize
Type: Integer

Number of items to return. Values are from 1–4,999. If unspecified, the default value is `4999`.

offset
Type: Integer

Number of rows to skip before returning results. If unspecified, no rows are skipped.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput`

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object using filters.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryProfileApi(String dataModelName, String filters, String fields, Integer batchSize, Integer offset, String orderby)
```

Parameters

dataModelName
Type: String

Name of the data model object, for example, `UnifiedIndividual__dlm`.

filters
Type: String

Comma-separated list of equality expressions within square brackets, for example, `[FirstName__c=DON]`.

fields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 50 field names that you want to include in the result, for example, `Id__c,FirstName__c, GenderId__c,Occupation__c`. If unspecified, an arbitrary set of fields is returned.

batchSize
Type: Integer

Number of items to return. Values are from 1–4,999. If unspecified, the default value is `100`.

offset
Type: Integer

Number of rows to skip before returning results. If unspecified, no rows are skipped.

orderby
Type: String

Sort order for the result set, such as `GenderId__c ASC,Occupation__c DESC`. If unspecified, items are returned in the order they are retrieved.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput`

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, searchKey, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object using filters and a search key.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryProfileApi(String dataModelName, String id, String searchKey, String filters, String fields, Integer batchSize, Integer offset, String orderby)
```

Parameters

dataModelName
Type: String

Name of the data model object, for example, `UnifiedIndividual__dlm`.

id
Type: String

Value of the primary or secondary key field, for example, `John`. If unspecified, defaults to the value of the primary key field.

searchKey
Type: String

If a field other than the primary key is used, name of the key field, for example, `FirstName__c`.

filters
Type: String

Comma-separated list of equality expressions within square brackets, for example, `[FirstName__c=DON]`.

fields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 50 field names that you want to include in the result, for example, `Id__c,FirstName__c, GenderId__c,Occupation__c`. If unspecified, an arbitrary set of fields is returned.

batchSize
Type: Integer

Number of items to return. Values are from 1–4,999. If unspecified, the default value is `100`.

offset
Type: Integer

Number of rows to skip before returning results. If unspecified, no rows are skipped.

orderby
Type: String

Sort order for the result set, such as `GenderId__c ASC,Occupation__c DESC`. If unspecified, items are returned in the order they are retrieved.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput`

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, childDataModelName, searchKey, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object and a child object using filters and a search key.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryProfileApi(String dataModelName, String id, String childDataModelName, String searchKey, String filters, String fields, Integer batchSize, Integer offset, String orderby)
```

Parameters

dataModelName
Type: String

Name of the data model object, for example, `UnifiedIndividual__dlm`.

id
Type: String

Value of the primary or secondary key field, for example, `John`. If unspecified, defaults to the value of the primary key field.

childDataModelName
Type: String

Name of the child data model object, for example, `UnifiedContactPointEmail__dlm`.

searchKey
Type: String

If a field other than the primary key is used, name of the key field, for example, `FirstName__c`.

filters
Type: String

Comma-separated list of equality expressions within square brackets, for example, `[FirstName__c=DON]`. Filters are applied to the parent object only.

fields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of child object field names that you want to include in the result, for example, `Id__c,EmailAddress__c`. If unspecified, the first 10 alphabetically sorted fields are returned.

batchSize
Type: Integer

Number of items to return. Values are from 1–4,999. If unspecified, the default value is `100`.

offset
Type: Integer

Number of rows to skip before returning results. If unspecified, no rows are skipped.

orderby
Type: String

Sort order for the result set, such as `GenderId__c ASC,Occupation__c DESC`. If unspecified, items are returned in the order they are retrieved.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput`

queryProfileApi(dataModelName, id, ciName, searchKey, dimensions, measures, filters, fields, batchSize, offset, orderby)

Query a Salesforce CDP Profile data model object and a Calculated Insight object using filters and a search key.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput queryProfileApi(String dataModelName, String id, String ciName, String searchKey, String dimensions, String measures, String filters, String fields, Integer batchSize, Integer offset, String orderby)
```

Parameters

dataModelName
Type: String

Name of the data model object, for example, `UnifiedIndividual__dlm`.

id
Type: String

Value of the primary or secondary key field, for example, `John`. If unspecified, defaults to the value of the primary key field.

ciName
Type: String

Name of the Calculated Insight object, for example, `IndividualChildrenCount__cio`.

searchKey
Type: String

If a field other than the primary key is used, name of the key field, for example, `FirstName__c`.

dimensions
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 10 dimensions, such as `GenderId__c`, to project. If unspecified, this parameter includes all of the available dimensions.

measures
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 5 measures, such as `TotalSales__c`, to project. If unspecified, this parameter includes all of the available measures.

filters
Type: String

Comma-separated list of equality expressions within square brackets, for example, `[FirstName__c=DON]`.

fields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to 50 field names that you want to include in the result, for example, `Id__c,FirstName__c, GenderId__c,Occupation__c`. If unspecified, an arbitrary set of fields is returned.

batchSize
Type: Integer

Number of items to return. Values are from 1–4,999. If unspecified, the default value is `100`.

offset
Type: Integer

Number of rows to skip before returning results. If unspecified, no rows are skipped.

orderby
Type: String

Sort order for the result set, such as `GenderId__c ASC,Occupation__c DESC`. If unspecified, items are returned in the order they are retrieved.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput`

Chatter Class

Access information about followers and subscriptions for records.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Chatter Methods

The following are methods for `Chatter`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteSubscription(communityId, subscriptionId)
Delete a subscription. Use this method to stop following a record, a user, or a file.

getFollowers(communityId, recordId)
Get the first page of followers for a record.

getFollowers(communityId, recordId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of followers for a record.

getSubscription(communityId, subscriptionId)
Get information about a subscription.

submitDigestJob(period)
Submit a daily or weekly Chatter email digest job.

`deleteSubscription(communityId, subscriptionId)`

Delete a subscription. Use this method to stop following a record, a user, or a file.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static void deleteSubscription(String communityId, String subscriptionId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subscriptionId
Type: String

The ID for a subscription.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

"Following" a user, group, or record is the same as "subscribing" to a user, group, or record. A "follower" is the user who followed the user, group, or record. A "subscription" is an object describing the relationship between the follower and the user, group, or record they followed.

To leave a group, call `deleteMember(communityId, membershipId)`.

Example

When you follow a user, the call to `ConnectApi.ChatterUsers.follow` returns a `ConnectApi.Subscription` object. To stop following the user, pass the `id` property of that object to this method.

```
ConnectApi.Chatter.deleteSubscription(null, '0E8RR0000004CnK0AU');
```

SEE ALSO:

Follow a Record

follow(communityId, userId, subjectId)

`getFollowers(communityId, recordId)`

Get the first page of followers for a record.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowerPage getFollowers(String communityId, String recordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or the keyword `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowerPage`

Usage

"Following" a user, group, or record is the same as "subscribing" to a user, group, or record. A "follower" is the user who followed the user, group, or record. A "subscription" is an object describing the relationship between the follower and the user, group, or record they followed.

SEE ALSO:

Follow a Record

`getFollowers(communityId, recordId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of followers for a record.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowerPage getFollowers(String communityId, String recordId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or the keyword `me`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowerPage`

Usage

"Following" a user, group, or record is the same as "subscribing" to a user, group, or record. A "follower" is the user who followed the user, group, or record. A "subscription" is an object describing the relationship between the follower and the user, group, or record they followed.

SEE ALSO:

Follow a Record

`getSubscription(communityId, subscriptionId)`

Get information about a subscription.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Subscription getSubscription(String communityId, String subscriptionId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subscriptionId
Type: String

The ID for a subscription.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Subscription`

Usage

"Following" a user, group, or record is the same as "subscribing" to a user, group, or record. A "follower" is the user who followed the user, group, or record. A "subscription" is an object describing the relationship between the follower and the user, group, or record they followed.

SEE ALSO:

Follow a Record

`submitDigestJob(period)`

Submit a daily or weekly Chatter email digest job.

API Version

37.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DigestJobRepresentation submitDigestJob(ConnectApi.DigestPeriod
period)
```

Parameters

`period`

Type: `ConnectApi.DigestPeriod`

Time period that's included in a Chatter email digest. Values are:

- `DailyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous day.
- `WeeklyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous week.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.DigestJob`

Usage

The times when Chatter sends email digests are not configurable in the UI. To control when email digests are sent and to use this method, contact Salesforce to enable API-only Chatter Digests.



Warning: Enabling API-only Chatter Digests disables the scheduled digests for your org. You must call the API for your users to receive their digests.

We recommend scheduling digest jobs by implementing the Apex `Schedulable` interface with this method. To monitor your digest jobs from Setup, enter *`Background Jobs`* in the `Quick Find` box, then select **Background Jobs**.

Example

Schedule daily digests:

```
global class ExampleDigestJob1 implements Schedulable {
   global void execute(SchedulableContext context) {
      ConnectApi.Chatter.submitDigestJob(ConnectApi.DigestPeriod.DailyDigest);
   }
}
```

Schedule weekly digests:

```
global class ExampleDigestJob2 implements Schedulable {
   global void execute(SchedulableContext context) {
      ConnectApi.Chatter.submitDigestJob(ConnectApi.DigestPeriod.WeeklyDigest);
   }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Scheduler

ChatterFavorites Class

Chatter favorites give you easy access to topics, list views, and feed searches.

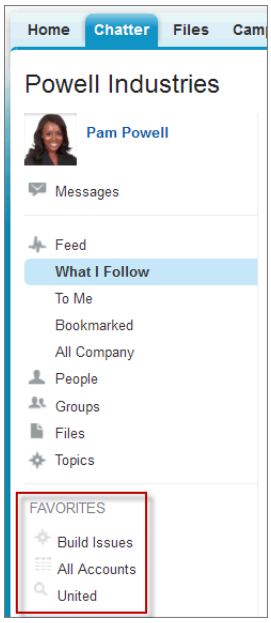
Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

Use Connect in Apex to get and delete topics, list views, and feed searches that have been added as favorites. Add topics and feed searches as favorites, and update the last view date of a feed search or list view feed to the current system time.

In this image of Salesforce, “Build Issues” is a topic, “All Accounts” is a list view, and “United” is a feed search:



ChatterFavorites Methods

The following are methods for `ChatterFavorites`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

addFavorite(communityId, subjectId, searchText)
Add a feed search favorite for a user.

addRecordFavorite(communityId, subjectId, targetId)
Add a topic as a favorite.

deleteFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)
Delete a favorite.

getFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)
Get information about a favorite.

getFavorites(communityId, subjectId)
Get a list of favorites for a user.

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)
Get the first page of feed elements for a favorite.

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed elements for a favorite.

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed elements for a favorite. Include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

updateFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, updateLastViewDate)
Update the last view date of the saved search or list view feed to the current system time.

addFavorite(communityId, subjectId, searchText)

Add a feed search favorite for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedFavorite addFavorite(String communityId, String subjectId,
String searchText)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

searchText
Type: String

Specify the text of the search to be saved as a favorite. This method can only create a feed search favorite, not a list view favorite or a topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFavorite`

addRecordFavorite(communityId, subjectId, targetId)

Add a topic as a favorite.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedFavorite addRecordFavorite(String communityId, String subjectId, String targetId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

targetId
Type: String

The ID of the topic to add as a favorite.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFavorite`

deleteFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)

Delete a favorite.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteFavorite(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

Return Value

Type: Void

getFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)

Get information about a favorite.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedFavorite getFavorite(String communityId, String subjectId,
String favoriteId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFavorite`

getFavorites(communityId, subjectId)

Get a list of favorites for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedFavorites getFavorites(String communityId, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFavorites`

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)

Get the first page of feed elements for a favorite.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElements(String communityId, String
subjectId, String favoriteId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements for a favorite.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElements(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`favoriteId`
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements for a favorite. Include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElements(String communityId, String
subjectId, String favoriteId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`updateFavorite(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, updateLastViewDate)`

Update the last view date of the saved search or list view feed to the current system time.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedFavorite updateFavorite(String communityId, String
subjectId, String favoriteId, Boolean updateLastViewDate)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`favoriteId`
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

`updateLastViewDate`
Type: Boolean

Specify whether to update the last view date of the specified favorite to the current system time (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFavorite`

ChatterFavorites Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `ChatterFavorites`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

IN THIS SECTION:

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

`setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElements(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`favoriteId`
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElements(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElements` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElements(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Retired ChatterFavorites Methods

The following methods for `ChatterFavorites` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)
Get the first page of feed items for a favorite.

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed items for a favorite.

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed items for a favorite. Include no more than the specified number of comments per feed item.

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItems` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItems` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItems` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

`getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)`

Get the first page of feed items for a favorite.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId,
String favoriteId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items for a favorite.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId,
String favoriteId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder
sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items for a favorite. Include no more than the specified number of comments per feed item.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElements(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId,
String favoriteId, Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.

- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItems` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`favoriteId`
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItems` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedItemPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a ConnectApi.FeedItemPage object to be returned when getFeedItems is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItems(String communityId, String subjectId, String favoriteId, Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

favoriteId
Type: String

ID of a favorite.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItems(communityId, subjectId, favoriteId, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ChatterFeeds Class

Get, post, and delete feed elements, likes, comments, and bookmarks. You can also search feed elements, share feed elements, and vote on polls.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

The Chatter feed is a container of feed elements. The abstract class `ConnectApi.FeedElement` is a parent class to the `ConnectApi.FeedItem` class, representing feed posts, and the `ConnectApi.GenericFeedElement` class, representing bundles and recommendations in the feed. For detailed information, see Working with Feeds and Feed Elements.

Important: Feed item methods aren't available in version 32.0. In version 32.0 and later, use feed element methods.

Message segments in a feed item are typed as `ConnectApi.MessageSegment`. Feed item capabilities are typed as `ConnectApi.FeedItemCapability`. Record fields are typed as `ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField`. These classes are all abstract and have several concrete subclasses. At runtime you can use `instanceof` to check the concrete types of these objects and then safely proceed with the corresponding downcast. When you downcast, you must have a default case that handles unknown subclasses.

Important: The composition of a feed may change between releases. Your code should always be prepared to handle instances of unknown subclasses.

ChatterFeeds Methods

The following are methods for `ChatterFeeds`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createStream(communityId, streamInput)
Create a Chatter feed stream.

deleteComment(communityId, commentId)
Delete a comment.

deleteFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
Delete a feed element.

deleteLike(communityId, likeId)
Delete a like on a comment or post.

deleteStream(communityId, streamId)
Delete a Chatter feed stream.

getComment(communityId, commentId)
Get a comment.

getCommentBatch(communityId, commentIds)
Get a list of comments.

getCommentInContext(communityId, commentId, pageSize)
Get a threaded comment in the context of its parent comments and post.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
Get comments for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)
Get comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of comments for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed)
Get a page of comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed, sortParam)
Get sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, sortParam)
Get sorted comments for a feed element.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, sortParam, threadedCommentsCollapsed)
Get sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

getExtensions(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get extensions.

getFeed(communityId, feedType)
Get a feed.

getFeed(communityId, feedType, sortParam)
Get a sorted feed.

getFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)
Get a feed for a record or user.

getFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, sortParam)
Get a sorted feed for a record or user.

getFeedDirectory(String)
Get a list of all feeds available to the context user.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
Get a feed element.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, commentSort)
Get a feed element with sorted comments.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)
Get a feed element and its comments in a threaded style.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed, commentSort)
Get a feed element and its sorted comments in a threaded style.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle)
Get a feed element with the specified number of elements per bundle including no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a feed element with its comments in a threaded style with the specified number of elements per bundle and comments per feed element.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, threadedCommentsCollapsed, commentSort)

Get a feed element with its sorted comments in a threaded style with the specified number of elements per bundle and comments per feed element.

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, commentSort)

Get a feed element with the specified number of elements per bundle including no more than the specified number of sorted comments per feed element.

getFeedElementBatch(communityId, feedElementIds)

Get a list of feed elements.

getFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId)

Get the poll associated with a feed element.

getFeedElementsFromBundle(communityId, feedElementId)

Get feed elements from a bundle.

getFeedElementsFromBundle(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, elementsPerBundle, recentCommentCount)

Get a page of feed elements from a bundle. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)

Get feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `Home` feed. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of filtered and sorted feed elements with comments in a threaded style from the `Home` feed. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)

Get feed elements from any feed other than `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` for a user or record.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from any feed other than `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from any feed other than `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a record feed. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `UserProfile` feed.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of feed elements with comments in a threaded style from the `UserProfile` feed.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the case feed.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements with comments in a threaded style for a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed.

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of filtered and sorted feed elements with comments in a threaded style from a case feed.

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)

Get feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from the `Home` feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed elements from the `Files`, `Groups`, `News`, `People`, and `Record` feeds. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a `UserProfile` feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a case feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify the maximum number of feed elements in a bundle and whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify the maximum number of feed elements in a bundle and whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a case feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the `updatedSince` parameter.

getFeedWithFeedElements(communityId, feedType, pageSize)

Get information about a feed and a page of feed elements from the feed.

getFeedWithFeedElements(communityId, feedType, pageSize, recentCommentCount)

Get a page of information about the feed and the feed elements with the specified number of comments per feed element from the feed.

getFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)

Get a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, sortParam)

Get a sorted feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFilterFeedDirectory(communityId, subjectId)

Get a feed directory of filter feeds available to the context user.

getLike(communityId, likeId)

Get a like on a post or comment.

getLikesForComment(communityId, commentId)

Get likes for a comment.

getLikesForComment(communityId, commentId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of likes for a comment.

getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Get likes for a feed element.

getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of likes for a feed element.

getLinkMetadata(communityId, urls)

Get link metadata for URLs.

getPinnedFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)

Get pinned feed elements from a group or topic feed.

getReadByForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Get information about who read a feed element and when.

getReadByForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of information about who read a feed element and when.

getRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults)

Get posts related to the context feed element.

getStream(communityId, streamId)

Get information about a Chatter feed stream.

getStream(communityId, streamId, globalScope)

Get information about a Chatter feed stream, regardless of Experience Cloud site.

getStreams(communityId)

Get the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

getStreams(communityId, sortParam)
Get and sort the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of Chatter feed streams for the context user.

getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a sorted page of Chatter feed streams for the context user.

getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)
Get a sorted page of Chatter feed streams from all Enterprise Cloud sites for the context user.

getSupportedEmojis()
Get supported emojis for the org.

getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId)
Get threaded comments for a comment.

getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of threaded comments for a comment.

getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)
Access the comments capability for a comment.

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId) (Pilot)
Get top unanswered questions for the context user in aExperience Cloud site.

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter) (Pilot)
Get filtered top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize) (Pilot)
Get a page of top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize) (Pilot)
Get a page of filtered top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

getVotesForComment(communityId, commentId, vote)
Get the first page of users who upvoted or downvoted a comment.

getVotesForComment(communityId, commentId, vote, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of users who upvoted or downvoted a comment.

getVotesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, vote)
Get the first page of users who upvoted or downvoted a feed element.

getVotesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, vote, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of users who upvoted or downvoted a feed element.

isCommentEditableByMe(communityId, commentId)
Discover whether the context user can edit a comment.

isFeedElementEditableByMe(communityId, feedElementId)
Discover whether the context user can edit a feed element.

isModified(communityId, feedType, subjectId, since)
Discover whether a news feed has been updated or changed. Use this method to poll a news feed for updates.

likeComment(communityId, commentId)
Like a comment for the context user.

likeFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Like a feed element.

postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, text)

Post a plain-text comment to a feed element.

postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, comment, feedElementFileUpload)

Post a rich-text comment to a feed element. Use this method to include mentions and to attach a file.

postFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, text)

Post a plain-text feed element.

postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement)

Post a rich-text feed element. Include mentions and hashtag topics, attach already uploaded files to a feed element, and associate action link groups with a feed element. You can also use this method to share a feed element and add a comment.

postFeedElementBatch(communityId, feedElements)

Post a list of feed elements.

publishDraftFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)

Publish a draft feed element.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q)

Get the first page of feed elements that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam)

Get the first page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get the feed elements and comments that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of feed elements that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of feed elements with comments in a threaded style that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)

Get the feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `Home` feed that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)

Get the feed elements from a feed that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a `UserProfile` feed that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)

Get the feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria.

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchStreams(communityId, q)

Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

searchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam)

Search and sort the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user and return a page of results.

searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user and return a sorted page of results.

searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)
Search the Chatter feed streams from all Experience Cloud sites for the context user and return a sorted page of results.

setCommentIsVerified(communityId, commentId, isVerified)
Mark a comment as verified or unverified.

setCommentIsVerifiedByAnonymized(communityId, commentId, isVerified, isVerifiedByAnonymized)
Mark a comment as verified by an anonymous user.

setCommentVote(communityId, commentId, upDownVote)
Upvote or downvote a comment.

setFeedCommentStatus(communityId, commentId, status)
Set the status of a comment.

setFeedElementIsClosed(communityId, feedElementId, isClosed)
Set a feed element to closed.

setFeedElementVote(communityId, feedElementId, upDownVote)
Upvote or downvote a feed element.

setFeedEntityStatus(communityId, feedElementId, status)
Set the status of a feed post.

setIsMutedByMe(communityId, feedElementId, isMutedByMe)
Mute or unmute a feed element.

setIsReadByMe(communityId, feedElementId, readBy)
Mark a feed element as read for the context user using an input class.

setIsReadByMe(communityId, feedElementId, isReadByMe)
Mark a feed element as read for the context user.

updateComment(communityId, commentId, comment)
Edit a comment.

updateDirectMessage(communityId, feedElementId, directMessage)
Update the members of a direct message.

updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)
Edit a feed element.

updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, bookmarks)
Bookmark a feed element or remove a bookmark from a feed element using an input class.

updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)
Bookmark a feed element or remove a bookmark from a feed element.

updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(communityId, feedElementIds, readBy)
Mark multiple feed elements as read by the context user at the same time using an input class.

updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(communityId, feedElementIds, isReadByMe)
Mark multiple feed elements as read by the context user at the same time.

updateLikeForComment(communityId, commentId, isLikedByCurrentUser)
Like or unlike a comment.

updateLikeForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, isLikedByCurrentUser)
Like or unlike a feed element.

updatePinnedFeedElements(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pin)
Pin or unpin feed elements to a group or topic feed.

updateStream(communityId, streamId, streamInput)
Update a Chatter feed stream.

voteOnFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId, myChoiceId)
Vote on a poll or change your vote on a poll.

createStream(communityId, streamInput)

Create a Chatter feed stream.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStream createStream(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput streamInput)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String
ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

streamInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput`
A `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput` body.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStream`

deleteComment(communityId, commentId)

Delete a comment.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Delete a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static deleteFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteLike(communityId, likeId)

Delete a like on a comment or post.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteLike(String communityId, String likeId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

likeId
Type: String

ID for a like.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteStream(communityId, streamId)

Delete a Chatter feed stream.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteStream(String communityId, String streamId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

streamId
Type: String

ID of the Chatter feed stream.

Return Value

Type: Void

getComment(communityId, commentId)

Get a comment.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment getComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

getCommentBatch(communityId, commentIds)

Get a list of comments.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getCommentBatch(String communityId, List<String>
commentIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 100 comment IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.Comment` object and errors for comments that didn't load.

getCommentInContext(communityId, commentId, pageSize)

Get a threaded comment in the context of its parent comments and post.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getCommentInContext(String communityId, String
commentId, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you don't specify a value, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

If the comment doesn't support the `comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Get comments for a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of comments for a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of comments per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a page of comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, Boolean
threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of comments per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass `null`, the default size is 25.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed, sortParam)

Get sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentsCapability getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments. Values are:

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, Boolean
threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of comments per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass `null`, the default size is 25.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments. Values are:

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, sortParam)

Get sorted comments for a feed element.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentsCapability getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments. Values are:

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentsCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, sortParam, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get sorted comments in a threaded style for a feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentsCapability getCommentsForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder sortParam, Boolean
threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments. Values are:

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentsCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getExtensions(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get extensions.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinitions getExtensions(String communityId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. The default size is 15.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinitions`

`getFeed(communityId, feedType)`

Get a feed.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

`getFeed(communityId, feedType, sortParam)`

Get a sorted feed.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

If *feedType* is DirectMessages, *sortParam* must be LastModifiedDateDesc.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Feed

getFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)

Get a feed for a record or user.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType,
String subjectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

`getFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, sortParam)`

Get a sorted feed for a record or user.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType,
String subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Feed

getFeedDirectory(String)

Get a list of all feeds available to the context user.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedDirectory getFeedDirectory(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedDirectory

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Get a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, commentSort)

Get a feed element with sorted comments.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder commentSort)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

commentSort
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments.

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

The default value is `CreatedDateLatestAsc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

`getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a feed element and its comments in a threaded style.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, threadedCommentsCollapsed, commentSort)

Get a feed element and its sorted comments in a threaded style.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder commentSort)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

commentSort
Type: ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder

Order of comments.

- CreatedDateLatestAsc—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- CreatedDateOldestAsc—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedElement

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle)

Get a feed element with the specified number of elements per bundle including no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a feed element with its comments in a threaded style with the specified number of elements per bundle and comments per feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, threadedCommentsCollapsed, commentSort)

Get a feed element with its sorted comments in a threaded style with the specified number of elements per bundle and comments per feed element.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder commentSort)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

commentSort
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments.

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

`getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, commentSort)`

Get a feed element with the specified number of elements per bundle including no more than the specified number of sorted comments per feed element.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement getFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle,
ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder commentSort)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

commentSort
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`

Order of comments.

- `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order.
- `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.

The default value is `CreatedDateLatestAsc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

getFeedElementBatch(communityId, feedElementIds)

Get a list of feed elements.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getFeedElementBatch(String communityId,
List<String> feedElementIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 500 feed element IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult[]`

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.FeedElement` object and errors for feed elements that didn't load.

`getFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId)`

Get the poll associated with a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PollCapability getFeedElementPoll(String communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PollCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Note: Triggers on FeedItem objects run before their attachment and capabilities information is saved, which means that `ConnectApi.FeedItem.attachment` information and `ConnectApi.FeedElement.capabilities` information may not be available in the trigger.

getFeedElementsFromBundle(communityId, feedElementId)

Get feed elements from a bundle.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromBundle(String communityId,
String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

getFeedElementsFromBundle(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize, elementsPerBundle, recentCommentCount)

Get a page of feed elements from a bundle. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromBundle(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, Integer elementsPerBundle,
Integer recentCommentCount)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)`

Get feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

If *feedType* is `DirectMessages`, *sortParam* must be `LastModifiedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

If *feedType* is `DirectMessages`, *sortParam* must be `LastModifiedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `Home` feed. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

When the *sortParam* is `MostViewed`, you must pass in `null` for the *pageParam*.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

When the *sortParam* is `MostViewed`, the *pageSize* must be a value from 1 to 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`filter`

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a page of filtered and sorted feed elements with comments in a threaded style from the `Home` feed. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

When the *sortParam* is MostViewed, you must pass in null for the *pageParam*.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

When the *sortParam* is MostViewed, the *pageSize* must be a value from 1 to 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.FeedFilter

Specifies the feed filters.

- AllQuestions—Feed elements that are questions.
- AuthoredBy—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- CommunityScoped—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- Read—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the Record feed of a group.
- SolvedQuestions—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- UnansweredQuestions—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- Unread—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the Record feed of a group.
- UnsolvedQuestions—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)`

Get feed elements from any feed other than `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` for a user or record.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is Record, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is Streams, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is Topics, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is UserProfile, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias me.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with setTest). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example for Getting the Context User's News Feed

```
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage fep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedElementsFromFeed(Network.getNetworkId(),
ConnectApi.FeedType.News, 'me');
```

Example for Getting Another User's Profile Feed

```
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage fep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedElementsFromFeed(Network.getNetworkId(),
ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile, '005R0000000HwMA');
```

Example for Getting Another User's Record Feed

```
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage fep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedElementsFromFeed(Network.getNetworkId(),
ConnectApi.FeedType.Record, '005R0000000HwMA');
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from any feed other than Company, DirectMessageModeration, DirectMessages, Filter, Home, Landing, Moderation, and PendingReview.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

The number of feed elements per page.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from any feed other than `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a record feed. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `UserProfile` feed.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped` or `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.AuthoredBy`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets only community-specific feed elements.

```
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage fep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedElementsFromFeed(Network.getNetworkId(),
ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile, 'me', 3, ConnectApi.FeedDensity.FewerUpdates, null, null,
 ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder.LastModifiedDateDesc, ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped);
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Get a page of feed elements with comments in a threaded style from the `UserProfile` feed.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Boolean
threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped` or `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.AuthoredBy`.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the case feed.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String customFilter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.

- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements with comments in a threaded style for a record feed. Specify the number of elements per bundle and include no more than the specified number of comments per feed element. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
```

```
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter
filter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.

- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`showInternalOnly`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`threadedCommentsCollapsed`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a page of filtered and sorted feed elements with comments in a threaded style from a case feed.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter,
Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)`

Get feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
```

```
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, and `Moderation`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the updatesToken property of the ConnectApi.FeedElementPage response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with setTest). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)

Get a page of filtered feed elements from the Home feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed elements from the `Files`, `Groups`, `News`, `People`, and `Record` feeds. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter. Each feed element contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of these values:

- `Files`
- `Groups`
- `News`
- `People`
- `Record`

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `ConnectApi.Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. Otherwise, it must be the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)`

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a `UserProfile` feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.FeedFilter

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter)`

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a case feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, String customFilter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify the maximum number of feed elements in a bundle and whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter)`

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a record feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify the maximum number of feed elements in a bundle and whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *`updatedSince`* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

`showInternalOnly`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter)`

Get a page of filtered feed elements from a case feed. Include only feed elements that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedWithFeedElements(communityId, feedType, pageSize)`

Get information about a feed and a page of feed elements from the feed.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeedWithFeedElements(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`. `Landing` is valid only when *`communityId`* is `internal`.

`pageSize`

Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in 0, feed elements aren't returned with the feed.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

`getFeedWithFeedElements(communityId, feedType, pageSize, recentCommentCount)`

Get a page of information about the feed and the feed elements with the specified number of comments per feed element from the feed.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFeedWithFeedElements(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer pageSize, Integer recentCommentCount)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`. `Landing` is valid only when *`communityId`* is `internal`.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in 0, feed elements aren't returned with the feed.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

`getFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)`

Get a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A *key prefix* is the first three characters of a record ID, which specifies the object type.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

getFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, sortParam)

Get a sorted feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Feed getFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, ConnectApi.FeedType sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Feed`

`getFilterFeedDirectory(communityId, subjectId)`

Get a feed directory of filter feeds available to the context user.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedDirectory getFilterFeedDirectory(String communityId, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDirectory`

This feed directory contains a list of filter feeds, which are the news feed filtered to include feed items whose parent is a specific entity type.

Usage

Call this method to return a directory containing a list of `ConnectApi.FeedDirectoryItem` objects. Each object contains a key prefix associated with an entity type the context user is following. A *key prefix* is the first three characters of a record ID, which specifies the object type.

Use key prefixes to filter the news feed so that it contains only feed items whose parent is the entity type associated with the key prefix. For example, get all the feed items whose parent is an Account. To get the feed items, pass a key prefix to the `ConnectApi.getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method.

The information about filter feeds never contains the key prefixes for users (`005`) or groups (`0F9`), but all users can use those key prefixes as filters.

The `ConnectApi.FeedDirectory.favorites` property is always empty when returned by a call to `getFilterFeedDirectory` because you can't filter a news feed by favorites.

Example

This example calls `getFilterFeedDirectory` and loops through the returned `FeedDirectoryItem` objects to find the key prefixes the context user can use to filter their news feed. It then copies each `keyPrefix` value to a list. Finally, it passes one of the key prefixes from the list to the `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method. The returned feed items include every feed item from the news feed whose parent is the entity type specified by the passed key prefix.

```
String communityId = null;
String subjectId = 'me';

// Create a list to populate with key prefixes.
List<String> keyPrefixList = new List<String>();

// Prepopulate with User and Group record types
// which are available to all users.
keyPrefixList.add('005');
keyPrefixList.add('0F9');

System.debug(keyPrefixList);

// Get the key prefixes available to the context user.
```

```
ConnectApi.FeedDirectory myFeedDirectory =
   ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFilterFeedDirectory(null, 'me');

// Loop through the returned feeds list.
for (ConnectApi.FeedDirectoryItem i : myFeedDirectory.feeds) {

   // Grab each key prefix and add it to the list.
   keyPrefixList.add(i.keyPrefix);
}
System.debug(keyPrefixList);

// Use a key prefix from the list to filter the feed items in the news feed.
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage myFeedItemPage =
   ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId,
keyPrefixList[0]);
System.debug(myFeedItemPage);
```

`getLike(communityId, likeId)`

Get a like on a post or comment.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLike getLike(String communityId, String likeId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

likeId
Type: String

ID for a like.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLike`

getLikesForComment(communityId, commentId)

Get likes for a comment.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

getLikesForComment(communityId, commentId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of likes for a comment.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForComment(String communityId, String commentId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

`getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)`

Get likes for a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `ChatterLikes` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of likes for a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `ChatterLikes` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getLinkMetadata(communityId, urls)`

Get link metadata for URLs.

API Version

42.0

Available to Guest Users

42.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.LinkMetadataCollection getLinkMetadata(String communityId,
String urls)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`urls`
Type: String

Comma-separated list of URL-encoded URLs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.LinkMetadataCollection`

`getPinnedFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)`

Get pinned feed elements from a group or topic feed.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PinnedFeedElements getPinnedFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. Valid values are `Record` and `Topics`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* must be a group ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PinnedFeedElements`

If the feed doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getReadByForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Get information about who read a feed element and when.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReadByPage getReadByForFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ReadByPage`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getReadByForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of information about who read a feed element and when.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReadByPage getReadByForFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ReadByPage`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults)`

Get posts related to the context feed element.

API Version

37.0

Available to Guest Users

37.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts getRelatedPosts(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPostType filter, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element. The feed element must be a question.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPostType`

Specifies the type of related post. Values are:

- `Answered`—Related questions that have at least one answer.
- `BestAnswer`—Related questions that have a best answer.
- `Generic`—All types of related questions, including answered, with a best answer, and unanswered.
- `Unanswered`—Related questions that don't have answers.

`Generic` is the default value.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

The maximum number of results to return. You can return up to 25 results; 5 is the default.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts`

In version 37.0 and later, related feed posts are questions.

Each related feed post has a score indicating how closely it's related to the context feed post. We return related feed posts sorted by score, with the highest score first.

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

getStream(communityId, streamId)

Get information about a Chatter feed stream.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStream getStream(String communityId, String streamId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

streamId
Type: String

ID of the Chatter feed stream.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStream`

getStream(communityId, streamId, globalScope)

Get information about a Chatter feed stream, regardless of Experience Cloud site.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStream getStream(String communityId, String streamId,
Boolean globalScope)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

streamId
Type: String

ID of the Chatter feed stream.

globalScope
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to get streams from all the context user's Experience Cloud sites, regardless of the *communityId* value.

Tip: If you know the *communityId* for the stream, we recommend setting *globalScope* to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStream`

getStreams(communityId)

Get the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage getStreams(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

getStreams(communityId, sortParam)

Get and sort the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage getStreams(String communityId,
ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage getStreams(String communityId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

`getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a sorted page of Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage getStreams(String communityId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.SortOrder

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- Ascending—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- Descending—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- MostRecentlyViewed—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is Ascending.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage

getStreams(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)

Get a sorted page of Chatter feed streams from all Enterprise Cloud sites for the context user.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage getStreams(String communityId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam, Boolean globalScope)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in null or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.SortOrder

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

`globalScope`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to get streams from all the context user's Experience Cloud sites, regardless of the *`communityId`* value.

Tip: If you know the *`communityId`* for the streams, we recommend setting *`globalScope`* to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

`getSupportedEmojis()`

Get supported emojis for the org.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SupportedEmojis getSupportedEmojis()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.SupportedEmojis`

Usage

To get the list, emojis must be enabled in your org.

`getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId)`

Get threaded comments for a comment.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getThreadsForFeedComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the comment doesn't support the `comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of threaded comments for a comment.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getThreadsForFeedComment(String communityId, String commentId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

If the comment doesn't support the `comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getThreadsForFeedComment(communityId, commentId, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Access the comments capability for a comment.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentsCapability getThreadsForFeedComment(String communityId,
String commentId, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentsCapability`

If the comment doesn't support the `comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId)` (Pilot)

Get top unanswered questions for the context user in aExperience Cloud site.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, result) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter)` (Pilot)

Get filtered top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
ConnectApi.TopUnansweredQuestionsFilterType filter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the filter for the feed. `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers` is the only valid value.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, result) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize)` (Pilot)

Get a page of top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 0 through 10. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 5.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize, result) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize)` (Pilot)

Get a page of filtered top unanswered questions for the context user in an Experience Cloud site.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage getTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the filter for the feed. `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers` is the only valid value.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 0 through 10. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 5.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

- setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize, result) (Pilot)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getVotesForComment(communityId, commentId, vote)`

Get the first page of users who upvoted or downvoted a comment.

API Version

42.0

Available to Guest Users

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VotePage getVotesForComment(String communityId, String
commentId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue vote)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`commentId`
Type: String

ID of the comment.

`vote`
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`

Specifies the value of the vote for the feed element. Values are:

- `Down`
- `Up`

You can't specify `None`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VotePage`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getVotesForComment(communityId, commentId, vote, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of users who upvoted or downvoted a comment.

API Version

42.0

Available to Guest Users

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VotePage getVotesForComment(String communityId, String
commentId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue vote, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`commentId`
Type: String

ID of the comment.

`vote`
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`

Specifies the value of the vote for the feed element. Values are:

- `Down`
- `Up`

You can't specify `None`.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VotePage`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getVotesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, vote)`

Get the first page of users who upvoted or downvoted a feed element.

API Version

42.0

Available to Guest Users

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VotePage getVotesForFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue vote)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

`vote`
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`

Specifies the value of the vote for the feed element. Values are:

- `Down`
- `Up`

You can't specify `None`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VotePage`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getVotesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, vote, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of users who upvoted or downvoted a feed element.

API Version

42.0

Available to Guest Users

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VotePage getVotesForFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue vote, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

vote
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`

Specifies the value of the vote for the feed element. Values are:

- `Down`
- `Up`

You can't specify `None`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VotePage`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

isCommentEditableByMe(communityId, commentId)

Discover whether the context user can edit a comment.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable isCommentEditableByMe(String communityId,
String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable`

If the comment doesn't support the `edit` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

SEE ALSO:

Edit a Comment

isFeedElementEditableByMe(communityId, feedElementId)

Discover whether the context user can edit a feed element.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable isFeedElementEditableByMe(String
communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element. Feed items are the only type of feed element that can be edited.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable`

If the feed element doesn't support the `edit` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

SEE ALSO:

Edit a Feed Element

Edit a Question Title and Post

isModified(communityId, feedType, subjectId, since)

Discover whether a news feed has been updated or changed. Use this method to poll a news feed for updates.

Important: This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedModifiedInfo isModified(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String since)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Specifies the type of feed. The only supported type is `News`

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

since
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Retrieve this token from the `FeedElementPage.isModifiedToken` property.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedModifiedInfo

likeComment(communityId, commentId)

Like a comment for the context user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLike likeComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterLike

If the context user has already liked the comment, this method is a non-operation and returns the existing like.

likeFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)

Like a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLike likeFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLike`

If the feed element doesn't support the `ChatterLikes` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example

```
ConnectApi.ChatterLike chatterLike = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.likeFeedElement(null,
'0D5D0000000KuGh');
```

postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, text)

Post a plain-text comment to a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment postCommentToFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, String text)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

text
Type: String

Text of the comment. A comment can contain up to 10,000 characters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example

```
ConnectApi.Comment comment = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(null, '0D5D0000000KuGh', 'I agree with the proposal.' );
```

postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, comment, feedElementFileUpload)

Post a rich-text comment to a feed element. Use this method to include mentions and to attach a file.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment postCommentToFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommentInput comment, ConnectApi.BinaryInput feedElementFileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

comment
Type: `ConnectApi.CommentInput`

The comment body, including text and mentions, and capabilities, such as information about an attached file. A comment can contain up to 10,000 characters.

feedElementFileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

A new binary file to attach to the comment, or `null`. If you specify a binary file, specify the title and description of the file in the *comment* parameter.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

If the feed element doesn't support the `Comments` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example for Posting a Comment with Mentions

You can post comments with mentions two ways. Use the ConnectApiHelper repository on GitHub to write a single line of code, or use this method example.

```
String communityId = null;
String feedElementId = '0D5D0000000KtW3';

ConnectApi.CommentInput commentInput = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();
ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput mentionSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

textSegmentInput.text = 'Does anyone in this group have an idea? ';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);

mentionSegmentInput.id = '005D000000000oOT';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(mentionSegmentInput);

commentInput.body = messageBodyInput;

ConnectApi.Comment commentRep = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(communityId,
 feedElementId, commentInput, null);
```

Example for Posting a Comment with an Existing File

```
String feedElementId = '0D5D0000000KtW3';

ConnectApi.CommentInput commentInput = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

textSegmentInput.text = 'I attached this file from Salesforce Files.';

messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);
commentInput.body = messageBodyInput;

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput commentCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput();
ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput contentCapabilityInput = new
ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput();

commentCapabilitiesInput.content = contentCapabilityInput;
contentCapabilityInput.contentDocumentId = '069D00000001rNJ';

commentInput.capabilities = commentCapabilitiesInput;

ConnectApi.Comment commentRep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedElementId,
commentInput, null);
```

Example for Posting a Comment with a New File

```
String feedElementId = '0D5D0000000KtW3';

ConnectApi.CommentInput commentInput = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

textSegmentInput.text = 'Enjoy this new file.';

messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);
commentInput.body = messageBodyInput;

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput commentCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput();
ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput contentCapabilityInput = new
ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput();

commentCapabilitiesInput.content = contentCapabilityInput;
contentCapabilityInput.title = 'Title';

commentInput.capabilities = commentCapabilitiesInput;
```

```
String text = 'These are the contents of the new file.';
Blob myBlob = Blob.valueOf(text);
ConnectApi.BinaryInput binInput = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(myBlob, 'text/plain',
'fileName');

ConnectApi.Comment commentRep =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedElementId,
commentInput, binInput);
```

Example for Posting a Rich-Text Comment with an Inline Image

You can post rich-text comments with inline images and mentions two ways. Use the ConnectApiHelper repository on GitHub to write a single line of code, or use this method example. In this example, the image file is existing content that has already been uploaded to Salesforce.

```
String communityId = null;
String feedElementId = '0D5R0000000SBEr';
String imageId = '069R00000000IgQ';
String mentionedUserId = '005R0000000DiMz';

ConnectApi.CommentInput input = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;
ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput mentionSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput markupBeginSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput markupEndSegment;
ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput inlineImageSegment;

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();


markupBeginSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput();
markupBeginSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Bold;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupBeginSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = 'Hello ';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

mentionSegment = new ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput();
mentionSegment.id = mentionedUserId;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(mentionSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = '!';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

markupEndSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput();
markupEndSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Bold;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupEndSegment);

inlineImageSegment = new ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput();
inlineImageSegment.altText = 'image one';
```

```
inlineImageSegment.fileId = imageId;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(inlineImageSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, input, null);
```

Example for Posting a Rich-Text Comment with a Code Block

```
String communityId = null;
String feedElementId = '0D5R0000000SBEr';
String codeSnippet = '<html>\n\t<body>\n\t\tHello, world!\n\t</body>\n</html>';

ConnectApi.CommentInput input = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput markupBeginSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput markupEndSegment;

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

markupBeginSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput();
markupBeginSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Code;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupBeginSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = codeSnippet;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

markupEndSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput();
markupEndSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Code;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupEndSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, input, null);
```

`postFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, text)`

Post a plain-text feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement postFeedElement(String communityId, String
subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedElementType feedElementType, String text)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of the parent this feed element is being posted to. This value can be the ID of a user, group, or record, or the string `me` to indicate the context user.

feedElementType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementType`

The only possible value is `FeedItem`.

text
Type: String

The text of the feed element. A feed element can contain up to 10,000 characters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

Example

```
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), '0F9d0000000TreH',
ConnectApi.FeedElementType.FeedItem, 'On vacation this week.');
```

postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement)

Post a rich-text feed element. Include mentions and hashtag topics, attach already uploaded files to a feed element, and associate action link groups with a feed element. You can also use this method to share a feed element and add a comment.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement postFeedElement(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedElementInput feedElement)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElement
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`

Specify rich text, including mentions. Optionally, specify a link, a poll, or up to 10 existing files.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

Example for Posting a Feed Element with a Mention

You can post feed elements with mentions two ways. Use the ConnectApiHelper repository on GitHub to write a single line of code, or use this method example.

```
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput mentionSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

mentionSegmentInput.id = '005RR000000Dme9';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(mentionSegmentInput);

textSegmentInput.text = 'Could you take a look?';
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);

feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;
feedItemInput.feedElementType = ConnectApi.FeedElementType.FeedItem;
feedItemInput.subjectId = '0F9RR0000004CPw';

ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

Example for Posting a Feed Element with Existing Content

```
// Define the FeedItemInput object to pass to postFeedElement
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
feedItemInput.subjectId = 'me';

ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegmentInput.text = 'Would you please review these docs?';

// The MessageBodyInput object holds the text in the post
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);
feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;
```

```
// The FeedElementCapabilitiesInput object holds the capabilities of the feed item.
// For this feed item, we define a files capability to hold the file(s).

List<String> fileIds = new List<String>();
fileIds.add('069xx00000000QO');
fileIds.add('069xx00000000QT');
fileIds.add('069xx00000000Qn');
fileIds.add('069xx00000000Qi');
fileIds.add('069xx00000000Qd');

ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput filesInput = new ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput();
filesInput.items = new List<ConnectApi.FileIdInput>();

for (String fileId : fileIds) {
    ConnectApi.FileIdInput idInput = new ConnectApi.FileIdInput();
    idInput.id = fileId;
    filesInput.items.add(idInput);
}

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
feedElementCapabilitiesInput.files = filesInput;

feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;

// Post the feed item.
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

Example for Posting a Rich-Text Feed Element with an Inline Image

You can post rich-text feed elements with inline images and mentions two ways. Use the ConnectApiHelper repository on GitHub to write a single line of code, or use this method example. In this example, the image file is existing content that has already been uploaded to Salesforce. The post also includes text and a mention.

```
String communityId = null;
String imageId = '069D00000001INA';
String mentionedUserId = '005D0000001QNpr';
String targetUserOrGroupOrRecordId  = '005D0000001Gif0';
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
input.subjectId = targetUserOrGroupOrRecordId;
input.feedElementType = ConnectApi.FeedElementType.FeedItem;

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;
ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput mentionSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput markupBeginSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput markupEndSegment;
ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput inlineImageSegment;

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

markupBeginSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput();
```

```
markupBeginSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Bold;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupBeginSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = 'Hello ';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

mentionSegment = new ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput();
mentionSegment.id = mentionedUserId;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(mentionSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = '!';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

markupEndSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput();
markupEndSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Bold;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupEndSegment);

inlineImageSegment = new ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput();
inlineImageSegment.altText = 'image one';
inlineImageSegment.fileId = imageId;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(inlineImageSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(communityId, input);
```

Example for Posting a Rich-Text Feed Element with a Code Block

```
String communityId = null;
String targetUserOrGroupOrRecordId  = 'me';
String codeSnippet = '<html>\n\t<body>\n\t\tHello, world!\n\t</body>\n</html>';
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
input.subjectId = targetUserOrGroupOrRecordId;
input.feedElementType = ConnectApi.FeedElementType.FeedItem;

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput markupBeginSegment;
ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput markupEndSegment;

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

markupBeginSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput();
markupBeginSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Code;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupBeginSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = codeSnippet;
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

markupEndSegment = new ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput();
markupEndSegment.markupType = ConnectApi.MarkupType.Code;
```

```
messageInput.messageSegments.add(markupEndSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(communityId, input);
```

Example for Sharing a Feed Element (in Version 39.0 and Later)

```
// Define the FeedItemInput object to pass to postFeedElement
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
feedItemInput.subjectId = 'me';
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegmentInput.text = 'Look at this post I'm sharing.';
// The MessageBodyInput object holds the text in the post
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);
feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;

ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput shareInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput();
shareInput.feedEntityId = '0D5R0000000SEbc';
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
feedElementCapabilitiesInput.feedEntityShare = shareInput;
feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;
// Post the feed item.
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

Example for Sending a Direct Message

```
// Define the FeedItemInput object to pass to postFeedElement
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();

ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegmentInput.text = 'Thanks for attending my presentation test run this morning. Send
 me any feedback.';

// The MessageBodyInput object holds the text in the post
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);
feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;

// The FeedElementCapabilitiesInput object holds the capabilities of the feed item.
// For this feed item, we define a direct message capability to hold the member(s) and the
 subject.

List<String> memberIds = new List<String>();
memberIds.add('005B00000016OUQ');
memberIds.add('005B0000001rIN6');
```

```
ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput dmInput = new
ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput();
dmInput.subject = 'Thank you!';
dmInput.membersToAdd = memberIds;

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
feedElementCapabilitiesInput.directMessage = dmInput;

feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;

// Post the feed item.
ConnectApi.FeedElement feedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), feedItemInput);
```

postFeedElementBatch(communityId, feedElements)

Post a list of feed elements.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] postFeedElementBatch(String communityId,
List<ConnectApi.BatchInput> feedElements)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElements
Type: List<`ConnectApi.BatchInput`>

The list can contain up to 500 `ConnectApi.BatchInput` objects. In the `ConnectApi.BatchInput` constructor, the input object must be a concrete instance of the abstract `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput` class.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.FeedElement` object.

The returned objects correspond to each of the input objects and are returned in the same order as the input objects.

The method call fails only if an error occurs that affects the entire operation (such as a parsing failure). If an individual object causes an error, the error is embedded within the `ConnectApi.BatchResult` list.

Usage

Use this method to post a list of feed elements efficiently. Create a list containing up to 500 objects and insert them all for the cost of one DML statement.

In version 36.0 and later, you can attach only one already uploaded file to each post. The `ConnectApi.BatchInput` has three constructors, but the `postFeedElementBatch` method supports only `ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input)` in version 35.0 and later. This constructor doesn't support a binary input.

In version 32.0–35.0, this method supports both `ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input)` and `ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input, ConnectApi.BinaryInput binary)` constructors. The `ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input, ConnectApi.BinaryInput binary)` constructor allows for a single binary input.

In each constructor, the input object must be an instance of `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`.

Example

This trigger bulk posts to the feeds of newly inserted accounts.

```
trigger postFeedItemToAccount on Account (after insert) {
    Account[] accounts = Trigger.new;

    // Bulk post to the account feeds.

    List<ConnectApi.BatchInput> batchInputs = new List<ConnectApi.BatchInput>();

    for (Account a : accounts) {
        ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();

        input.subjectId = a.id;

        ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput body = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
        body.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

        ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
        textSegment.text = 'Let\'s win the ' + a.name + ' account.';

        body.messageSegments.add(textSegment);
        input.body = body;

        ConnectApi.BatchInput batchInput = new ConnectApi.BatchInput(input);
        batchInputs.add(batchInput);
    }

    ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElementBatch(Network.getNetworkId(), batchInputs);
}
```

`publishDraftFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)`

Publish a draft feed element.

API Version

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement publishDraftFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.FeedElementInput feedElement)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element to publish.

feedElement
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`

Use this optional parameter to edit your draft before publishing.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

The published feed element has a new ID.

searchFeedElements(communityId, q)

Get the first page of feed elements that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam)`

Get the first page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String
q, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get the feed elements and comments that match the search criteria.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of feed elements that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed)`

Get a page of feed elements with comments in a threaded style that match the search criteria.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElements(String communityId, String
q, Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)`

Get the feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from the `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Type of feed. Valid values are Company, DirectMessageModeration, Home, Moderation, and PendingReview.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be null. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

- setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from the `Home` feed that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

When the *sortParam* is MostViewed, you must pass in null for the *pageParam*.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

When the *sortParam* is MostViewed, the *pageSize* must be a value from 1 to 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be null. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.FeedFilter

Specifies the feed filters.

- AllQuestions—Feed elements that are questions.
- AuthoredBy—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- CommunityScoped—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.

- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)`

Get the feed elements from a feed that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Order of feed items in the feed.

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Search term. Searches keywords in the user or group name. A minimum of one character is required. This parameter does not support wildcards. This parameter is required.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a `UserProfile` feed that match the search criteria.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

One or more keywords to search for in the feed elements visible to the context user. The search string can contain wildcards and must contain at least two characters that aren't wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed that match the search criteria.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, String customFilter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

One or more keywords to search for in the feed elements visible to the context user. The search string can contain wildcards and must contain at least two characters that aren't wildcards. See Wildcards.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter)

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a feed for a record or user that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed elements posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.

- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter)`

Get a page of sorted and filtered feed elements from a case feed that match the search criteria.

API Version

40.0

Available to Guest Users

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly, String
customFilter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

filter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)`

Get the feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed elements from a feed filtered by a key prefix that match the search criteria. Each feed element includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElementPage searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String
communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchStreams(communityId, q)`

Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage searchStreams(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
: Type: String

  ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
: Type: String

  Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

- setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, result)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam)`

Search and sort the Chatter feed streams for the context user.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage searchStreams(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user and return a page of results.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage searchStreams(String communityId, String q,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Search the Chatter feed streams for the context user and return a sorted page of results.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage searchStreams(String communityId, String q,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)`

Search the Chatter feed streams from all Experience Cloud sites for the context user and return a sorted page of results.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage searchStreams(String communityId, String q,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam, Boolean globalScope)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

globalScope
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to get streams from all the context user's Experience Cloud sites, regardless of the *communityId* value.

Tip: If you know the *communityId* for the streams, we recommend setting *globalScope* to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

`setCommentIsVerified(communityId, commentId, isVerified)`

Mark a comment as verified or unverified.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability setCommentIsVerified(String communityId,
String commentId, Boolean isVerified)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`commentId`
Type: String

ID of the comment on a question post. Only one comment on a question post can be marked as verified.

`isVerified`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to mark the comment as verified (`true`) or unverified (`false`).

Only verified comments can be marked as unverified, and only unverified comments can be marked as verified.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`setCommentIsVerifiedByAnonymized(communityId, commentId, isVerified, isVerifiedByAnonymized)`

Mark a comment as verified by an anonymous user.

API Version

43.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability setCommentIsVerifiedByAnonymized(String communityId, String commentId, Boolean isVerified, Boolean isVerifiedByAnonymized)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment on a question post. Only one comment on a question post can be marked as verified.

isVerified
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to mark the comment as verified (`true`) or unverified (`false`).

Only verified comments can be marked as unverified, and only unverified comments can be marked as verified.

isVerifiedByAnonymized
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to mark the comment as verified by an anonymous user (`true`).

If a user previously verified a comment and then requested the activity to be deleted, use `isVerifiedByAnonymized` to maintain the verification and anonymize the value of `lastVerifiedByUser`.

You can't set `isVerified` and `isVerifiedByAnonymized` to `true` at the same time. `isVerifiedByAnonymized` can be set to `true` only if `isVerified` is already set to `true`.

You can't set `isVerifiedByAnonymized` to `false`. After `isVerifiedByAnonymized` is set to `true`, it can be undone only when another user marks the comment as unverified and then reverifies the comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

setCommentVote(communityId, commentId, upDownVote)

Upvote or downvote a comment.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability setCommentVote(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput upDownVote)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

upDownVote
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput` object that includes your vote.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`setFeedCommentStatus(communityId, commentId, status)`

Set the status of a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.StatusCapability setFeedCommentStatus(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput status)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

status
Type: `ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput` object that includes the status you want to set.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.StatusCapability`

If the comment doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

Only users with the Can Approve Feed Post and Comment permission can set the status of a feed post or comment.

`setFeedElementIsClosed(communityId, feedElementId, isClosed)`

Set a feed element to closed.

Users can't edit (specifically the feed item body or title), comment on, or delete a closed feed element. If the closed feed element is a poll, users can't vote on it. Users can't edit (specifically the comment body) or delete a comment on a closed feed element or select or remove it as best answer.

Admins and moderators can edit and delete closed feed elements and comments on closed feed elements. Admins and moderators can select or remove the best answer status on comments on closed feed elements.

API Version

43.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CloseCapability setFeedElementIsClosed(String communityId,
String feedElementId, Boolean isClosed)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

isClosed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to set the feed element to closed (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CloseCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

setFeedElementVote(communityId, feedElementId, upDownVote)

Upvote or downvote a feed element.

API Version

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability setFeedElementVote(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput upDownVote)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

upDownVote
Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput` object that includes your vote.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`setFeedEntityStatus(communityId, feedElementId, status)`

Set the status of a feed post.

API Version

37.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.StatusCapability setFeedEntityStatus(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput status)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

status
Type: `ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput` object that includes the status you want to set.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.StatusCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

Only users with the Can Approve Feed Post and Comment permission can set the status of a feed post or comment.

`setIsMutedByMe(communityId, feedElementId, isMutedByMe)`

Mute or unmute a feed element.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.MuteCapability setIsMutedByMe(String communityId, String
feedElementId, Boolean isMutedByMe)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

isMutedByMe
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether the feed element is muted for the context user. Default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.MuteCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

setIsReadByMe(communityId, feedElementId, readBy)

Mark a feed element as read for the context user using an input class.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReadByCapability setIsReadByMe(String communityId, String
feedElementId, ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput readBy)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element to mark as read.

readBy
Type: ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput

A ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput body indicating to mark the feed elements as read.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ReadByCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is ConnectApi.NotFoundException.

setIsReadByMe(communityId, feedElementId, isReadByMe)

Mark a feed element as read for the context user.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReadByCapability setIsReadByMe(String communityId, String feedElementId, Boolean isReadByMe)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element to mark as read.

isReadByMe
Type: Boolean

Specifies to mark the feed element as read (true) for the context user.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ReadByCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is ConnectApi.NotFoundException.

updateComment(communityId, commentId, comment)

Edit a comment.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment updateComment(String communityId, String commentId,
ConnectApi.CommentInput comment)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment to be edited.

comment
Type: `ConnectApi.CommentInput`

Information about the comment to be edited.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

If the comment doesn't support the `edit` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example

```
String commentId;
String communityId = Network.getNetworkId();

// Get the last feed item created by the context user.
List<FeedItem> feedItems = [SELECT Id FROM FeedItem WHERE CreatedById = :UserInfo.getUserId()
 ORDER BY CreatedDate DESC];
if (feedItems.isEmpty()) {
    // Return null within anonymous apex.
    return null;
}
String feedElementId = feedItems[0].id;

ConnectApi.CommentPage commentPage =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId);
if (commentPage.items.isEmpty()) {
    // Return null within anonymous apex.
    return null;
}
```

```
commentId = commentPage.items[0].id;

ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable isEditable =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.isCommentEditableByMe(communityId, commentId);

if (isEditable.isEditableByMe == true){
    ConnectApi.CommentInput commentInput = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();
    ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
    ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

    messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

    textSegmentInput.text = 'This is my edited comment.';
    messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);

    commentInput.body = messageBodyInput;

    ConnectApi.Comment editedComment = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.updateComment(communityId,
 commentId, commentInput);
}
```

updateDirectMessage(communityId, feedElementId, directMessage)

Update the members of a direct message.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability updateDirectMessage(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput directMessage)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

directMessage
Type: `ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput` body that includes the members to add and remove.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)

Edit a feed element.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement updateFeedElement(String communityId, String
feedElementId, ConnectApi.FeedElementInput feedElement)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element to be edited. Feed items are the only type of feed element that can be edited.

feedElement
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`

Information about the feed item to be edited.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

If the feed element doesn't support the `edit` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example for Editing a Feed Post

```
String communityId = Network.getNetworkId();

// Get the last feed item created by the context user.
List<FeedItem> feedItems = [SELECT Id FROM FeedItem WHERE CreatedById = :UserInfo.getUserId()
 ORDER BY CreatedDate DESC];
if (feedItems.isEmpty()) {
    // Return null within anonymous apex.
    return null;
```

```
}
String feedElementId = feedItems[0].id;

ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable isEditable =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.isFeedElementEditableByMe(communityId, feedElementId);

if (isEditable.isEditableByMe == true){
    ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
    ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
    ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

    messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

    textSegmentInput.text = 'This is my edited post.';
    messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);

    feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;

    ConnectApi.FeedElement editedFeedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedItemInput);
}
```

Example for Editing a Question Title and Post

```
String communityId = Network.getNetworkId();

// Get the last feed item created by the context user.
List<FeedItem> feedItems = [SELECT Id FROM FeedItem WHERE CreatedById = :UserInfo.getUserId()
 ORDER BY CreatedDate DESC];
if (feedItems.isEmpty()) {
    // Return null within anonymous apex.
    return null;
}
String feedElementId = feedItems[0].id;

ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable isEditable =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.isFeedElementEditableByMe(communityId, feedElementId);

if (isEditable.isEditableByMe == true){

    ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
    ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput feedElementCapabilitiesInput = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
    ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput questionAndAnswersCapabilityInput = new
ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput();
    ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageBodyInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
    ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegmentInput = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();

    messageBodyInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

    textSegmentInput.text = 'This is my edited question.';
    messageBodyInput.messageSegments.add(textSegmentInput);

    feedItemInput.body = messageBodyInput;
```

```
    feedItemInput.capabilities = feedElementCapabilitiesInput;

    feedElementCapabilitiesInput.questionAndAnswers = questionAndAnswersCapabilityInput;
    questionAndAnswersCapabilityInput.questionTitle = 'Where is my edited question?';

    ConnectApi.FeedElement editedFeedElement =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedItemInput);
}
```

updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, bookmarks)

Bookmark a feed element or remove a bookmark from a feed element using an input class.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability updateFeedElementBookmarks(String
communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.BookmarksCapabilityInput bookmarks)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

bookmarks
Type: `ConnectApi.BookmarksCapabilityInput`

Information about a bookmark.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)

Bookmark a feed element or remove a bookmark from a feed element.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability updateFeedElementBookmarks(String
communityId, String feedElementId, Boolean isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

isBookmarkedByCurrentUser
Type: Boolean

Specify whether to bookmark the feed element (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example

```
ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability bookmark =
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.updateFeedElementBookmarks(null, '0D5D0000000KuGh', true);
```

updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(communityId, feedElementIds, readBy)

Mark multiple feed elements as read by the context user at the same time using an input class.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(String
communityId, List<String> feedElementIds, ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput readBy)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementIds
Type: List<String>

Up to 500 feed element IDs to mark as read.

readBy
Type: `ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput` body indicating to mark the feed elements as read.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

The returned objects correspond to each of the input objects and are returned in the same order as the input objects.

The method call fails only if an error occurs that affects the entire operation (such as a parsing failure). If an individual object causes an error, the error is embedded within the `ConnectApi.BatchResult` list.

updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(communityId, feedElementIds, isReadByMe)

Mark multiple feed elements as read by the context user at the same time.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] updateFeedElementReadByCapabilityBatch(String
communityId, List<String> feedElementIds, Boolean isReadByMe)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementIds
Type: List<String>

Up to 500 feed element IDs to mark as read.

isReadByMe
Type: Boolean

Specifies to mark the feed element as read (`true`) for the context user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

updateLikeForComment(communityId, commentId, isLikedByCurrentUser)

Like or unlike a comment.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage updateLikeForComment(String communityId, String commentId, Boolean isLikedByCurrentUser)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID of the comment.

isLikedByCurrentUser
Type: Boolean

Specifies if the context user likes (`true`) or unlikes (`false`) the comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

updateLikeForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, isLikedByCurrentUser)

Like or unlike a feed element.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage updateLikeForFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, Boolean isLikedByCurrentUser)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

isLikedByCurrentUser
Type: Boolean

Specifies if the context user likes (`true`) or unlikes (`false`) the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

If the feed element doesn't support the `ChatterLikes` capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

updatePinnedFeedElements(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pin)

Pin or unpin feed elements to a group or topic feed.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PinCapability updatePinnedFeedElements(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, ConnectApi.PinCapabilityInput pin)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. Valid values are `Record` and `Topics`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* must be a group ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID.

pin
Type: `ConnectApi.PinCapabilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.PinCapabilityInput` object indicating the feed element to pin or unpin.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PinCapability`

If the feed doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

updateStream(communityId, streamId, streamInput)

Update a Chatter feed stream.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterStream updateStream(String communityId, String streamId,
ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput streamInput)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

streamId
Type: String

ID of the Chatter feed stream.

streamInput
Type: ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput

A ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput object.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterStream

voteOnFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId, myChoiceId)

Vote on a poll or change your vote on a poll.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PollCapability voteOnFeedElementPoll(String communityId, String feedElementId, String myChoiceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

myChoiceId
Type: String

ID of the poll item you're voting for. The key prefix for poll items is 09A.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.PollCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is ConnectApi.NotFoundException.

Example

```
ConnectApi.PollCapability poll = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.voteOnFeedElementPoll(null,
'0D5D0000000XZaUKAW', '09AD000000000TKMAY');
```

ChatterFeeds Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `ChatterFeeds`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

IN THIS SECTION:

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the `getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince` method is called in a test context.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, result) (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, result) (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize, result) (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize, result) (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `searchFeedElementsInFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStream(communityId, q)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStream(communityId, q, sortParam)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The only valid value for this parameter is `Company`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.

- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

The type of feed. The only valid value is Home.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.FeedFilter

Specifies the feed filters.

- AllQuestions—Feed elements that are questions.
- AuthoredBy—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- CommunityScoped—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the UserProfile feed.
- QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.

- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`threadedCommentsCollapsed`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

`setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The feed type.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

- getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

35.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.

- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. Currently, feed elements scoped to sites have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. Currently, feed elements scoped to sites have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String customFilter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Value must be ConnectApi.FeedType.Record.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (true), or not (false). The default value is false.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.

- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter
filter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`showInternalOnly`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`threadedCommentsCollapsed`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, filter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (true), or not (false). The default value is false.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getFeedElementsFromFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (true), or not (false). The default value is false.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (true) or not (false). If you pass in null, the default is false.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, customFilter, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedElements FromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the `getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince` method is called in a test context.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *`updatedSince`* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of these values:

- `Files`
- `Groups`
- `News`
- `People`
- `Record`

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `ConnectApi.Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. Otherwise, it must be the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

35.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. Currently, feed elements scoped to sites have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, String customFilter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

The ID of a case.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

`elementsPerBundle`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

Opaque token defining the modification time stamp of the feed and the sort order.

The *`updatedSince`* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

`customFilter`
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.

- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedElementsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, Integer
elementsPerBundle, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
String updatedSince, Boolean showInternalOnly, String customFilter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

elementsPerBundle
Type: Integer

Maximum number of feed elements per bundle. The default and maximum value is 10.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` response body.

The *updatedSince* parameter doesn't return feed elements that are created in the same second as the call.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getRelatedPosts(communityId, feedElementId, filter, maxResults)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

37.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRelatedPosts(String communityId, String feedElementId,
ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPostType filter, Integer maxResults, ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts
result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element. The feed element must be a question.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPostType`

Specifies the type of related feed post. Values are:

- `Answered`—Related questions that have at least one answer.
- `BestAnswer`—Related questions that have a best answer.
- `Generic`—All types of related questions, including answered, with a best answer, and unanswered.
- `Unanswered`—Related questions that don't have answers.

`Generic` is the default value.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

The maximum number of results to return. You can return up to 25 results; 5 is the default.

result
Type: ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts

Object containing test data.

In version 37.0 and later, related feed posts are questions.

Return Value

Type: Void

setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, result) (Pilot)

Register a ConnectApi.FeedElementPage object to be returned when the matching ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, result)` (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
ConnectApi.TopUnansweredQuestionsFilterType filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the filter for the feed. `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers` is the only valid value.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize, result)` (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 0 through 10. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 5.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, pageSize) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize, result)` (Pilot)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopUnansweredQuestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: We provided top-five unanswered questions to selected customers through a pilot program that required agreement to specific terms and conditions. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

API Version

42.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopUnansweredQuestions(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the filter for the feed. `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers` is the only valid value.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 0 through 10. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 5.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopUnansweredQuestions(communityId, filter, pageSize) (Pilot)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.

- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.D

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam

Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize

Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

44.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, String
pageParam, Integer pageSize, Boolean threadedCommentsCollapsed,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

threadedCommentsCollapsed
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return threaded comments in a collapsed style (`true`) or not (`false`). If you pass in `null`, the default is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, threadedCommentsCollapsed)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElements` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElements(String communityId, String q, Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

The type of feed. The only valid value is `Home`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`result`

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If feed type is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Order of feed items in the feed.

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Search term. Searches keywords in the user or group name. A minimum of one character is required. This parameter does not support wildcards. This parameter is required.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when `searchFeedElementsInFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

35.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of any user. To specify the context user, use the user ID or the alias `me`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

The amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

One or more keywords to search for in the feed elements visible to the context user. The search string can contain wildcards and must contain at least two characters that aren't wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedFilter.CommunityScoped`. Filters the feed to include only feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. Currently, feed elements scoped to sites have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, String customFilter,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

The amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

One or more keywords to search for in the feed elements visible to the context user. The search string can contain wildcards and must contain at least two characters that aren't wildcards. See Wildcards.

customFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
```

```
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly,
ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly,
ConnectApi.FeedFilter filter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Value must be ConnectApi.FeedType.Record.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be null. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

`filter`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedFilter`

Specifies the feed filters.

- `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions.
- `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer.
- `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers.
- `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission.
- `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group.
- `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly, String
customFilter, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of a case.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed elements from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

cusotmFilter
Type: String

Custom filter that applies only to the case feed. See customFeedFilter in the *Metadata API Developer Guide* for supported values.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, customFilter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.

- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed element. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of feed elements per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStream(communityId, q)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchStreams(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchStreams(communityId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStream(communityId, q, sortParam)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchStreams(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchStreams(communityId, q, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchStreams(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchStreams(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).
- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchStreams(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, globalScope)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

41.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchStreams(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.SortOrder sortParam, Boolean globalScope,
ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam

Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize

Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 to 250. The default size is 25.

sortParam

Type: `ConnectApi.SortOrder`

Specifies the sort order. Values are:

- `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z).
- `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A).

- `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.

If not specified, default value is `Ascending`.

`globalScope`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to get streams from all the context user's Experience Cloud sites, regardless of the *`communityId`* value.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

Retired ChatterFeeds Methods

The following methods for `ChatterFeeds` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)
Delete a feed item.

getCommentsForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)
Get comments for a feed item.

getCommentsForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of comments for a feed item.

getFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)
Get a feed item.

getFeedItemBatch(communityId, feedItemIds)
Get a list of feed items.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)
Get feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)
Get feed items from a feed for a user or record.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a record feed for a user or record. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)

Get feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter.

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Get a page of feed items from the `Files`, `Groups`, `News`, `People`, and `Record` feeds. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of feed items from a record feed. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* parameter. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

getFeedPoll(communityId, feedItemId)

Get the poll associated with a feed item.

getLikesForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)

Get likes for a feed item.

getLikesForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of likes for a feed item.

likeFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)

Like a feed item for the context user.

postComment(communityId, feedItemId, text)

Post a plain-text comment to a feed item.

postComment(communityId, feedItemId, comment, feedItemFileUpload)

Post a rich-text comment to a feed item. Use this method to include mentions and to attach a file to a comment.

postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement, feedElementFileUpload)

Post a rich-text feed element. Include mentions and hashtag topics, attach a file to a feed element, and associate action link groups with a feed element. You can also use this method to share a feed element and add a comment.

postFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, text)

Post a plain-text feed item.

postFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, feedItemInput, feedItemFileUpload)

Post a rich-text feed item to a feed. Use this method to include mentions and hashtag topics and to attach a file to a feed item. You can also use this method to share a feed item and add a comment.

searchFeedItems(communityId, q)

Get the feed items that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam)

Get the sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of feed items that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)

Get the feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)

Get the feed items from a feed that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record that match the search criteria.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)

Get the feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

shareFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, originalFeedElementId)

Share the *originalFeedElementId* as the context user.

shareFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, originalFeedItemId)

Share the *originalFeedItemId* to the feed specified by the *feedType*.

updateBookmark(communityId, feedItemId, isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)

Bookmark a feed item or remove a bookmark from a feed item.

voteOnFeedPoll(communityId, feedItemId, myChoiceId)

Vote or change your vote on a feed poll.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince` method is called in a test context.

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage, results)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(communityId, q)` is called during a test.

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder)` is called during a test.

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, String, Integer)` is called during a test.

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, String, Integer, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder)` is called during a test.

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)` is called during a test.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

`deleteFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)`

Delete a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use deleteFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: Void

getCommentsForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)

Get comments for a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedItem(String communityId, String
feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

getCommentsForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of comments for a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getCommentsForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommentPage getCommentsForFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommentPage`

getFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)

Get a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItem getFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItem`

Note: Triggers on FeedItem objects run before their attachment and capabilities information is saved, which means that `ConnectApi.FeedItem.attachment` information and `ConnectApi.FeedElement.capabilities` information may not be available in the trigger.

getFeedItemBatch(communityId, feedItemIds)

Get a list of feed items.

API Version

31.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementBatch(communityId, feedElementIds).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getFeedItemBatch(String communityId, List<String>
feedItemIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 500 feed item IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.FeedItem` object and errors for feed items that didn't load.

Example

```
// Create a list of feed items.
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage feedItemPage = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsFromFeed(null,
 ConnectApi.FeedType.Company);
System.debug(feedItemPage);

// Create a list of feed item IDs.
List<String> feedItemIds = new List<String>();
for (ConnectApi.FeedItem aFeedItem : feedItemPage.items){
    feedItemIds.add(aFeedItem.id);
}

// Get info about the feed items in the list.
ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemBatch(null,
feedItemIds);

for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print the header for each feed item.
        ConnectApi.FeedItem aFeedItem;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.FeedItem) {
           aFeedItem = (ConnectApi.FeedItem) batchResult.getResult();
```

```
        }
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(aFeedItem.header.text);
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)`

Get feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)`

Get feed items from a feed for a user or record.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a record feed for a user or record. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)`

Get feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`keyPrefix`
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed items from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, elementsPerBundle, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

Opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. To retrieve this token, call `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` and take the value from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

This method returns only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* argument. A feed item is considered to be updated if it was created since the last feed request, or if `sort=LastModifiedDateDesc` and a comment was added to the feed item since the last feed request. Adding likes and topics doesn't update a feed item.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, updatedSince, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

This method returns only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* argument. A feed item is considered to be updated if it was created since the last feed request, or if `sort=LastModifiedDateDesc` and a comment was added to the feed item since the last feed request. Adding likes and topics doesn't update a feed item.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets the feed items in the company feed and grabs the `updatesToken` property from the returned object. It then passes the value of `updatesToken` to the `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` method to get the feed items updated since the first call:

```
// Get the feed items in the company feed and return the updatesToken
String communityId = null;

// Get the feed and extract the update token
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage page = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType.Company);

// page.updatesToken is opaque and has a value like '2:1384549034000'

// Get the feed items that changed since the provided updatesToken
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage feedItems= ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsUpdatedSince
  (communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType.Company, 1, ConnectApi.FeedDensity.AllUpdates, null,
1, page.updatesToken);
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage, results)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)`

Get a page of feed items from the `Files`, `Groups`, `News`, `People`, and `Record` feeds. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Each feed item contains no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of these values:

- `Files`
- `Groups`
- `News`
- `People`
- `Record`

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `ConnectApi.Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. Otherwise, it must be the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

This method returns only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* argument. A feed item is considered to be updated if it was created since the last feed request, or if `sort=LastModifiedDateDesc` and a comment was added to the feed item since the last feed request. Adding likes and topics doesn't update a feed item.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets the feed items in the news feed and grabs the `updatesToken` property from the returned object. It then passes the value of `updatesToken` to the `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` method to get the feed items updated since the first call:

```
// Get the feed items in the news feed and return the updatesToken
String communityId = null;
String subjectId = 'me';

// Get the feed and extract the update token
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage page = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType.News, subjectId);

// page.updatesToken is opaque and has a value like '2:1384549034000'

// Get the feed items that changed since the provided updatesToken
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage feedItems= ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsUpdatedSince
  (communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType.News, subjectId, 1, ConnectApi.FeedDensity.AllUpdates,
 null, 1, page.updatesToken);
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Get a page of feed items from a record feed. Include only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *updatedSince* parameter. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

`showInternalOnly`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

This method returns only feed items that have been updated since the time specified in the *`updatedSince`* argument. A feed item is considered to be updated if it was created since the last feed request, or if `sort=LastModifiedDateDesc` and a comment was added to the feed item since the last feed request. Adding likes and topics doesn't update a feed item.

If *`showInternalOnly`* is `true` and digital experiences is enabled, feed items from Experience Cloud sites are included. Otherwise, only feed items from the internal site are included.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets the feed items in the news feed and grabs the `updatesToken` property from the returned object. It then passes the value of `updatesToken` to the `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` method to get the feed items updated since the first call:

```
// Get the feed items in the news feed and return the updatesToken
String communityId = null;
String subjectId = 'me';

// Get the feed and extract the update token
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage page = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType.News, subjectId);

// page.updatesToken is opaque and has a value like '2:1384549034000'

// Get the feed items that changed since the provided updatesToken
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage feedItems= ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedItemsUpdatedSince
```

```
  (communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType.News, subjectId, 1, ConnectApi.FeedDensity.AllUpdates,
null, 1, page.updatesToken, true);
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFeedPoll(communityId, feedItemId)`

Get the poll associated with a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedPoll getFeedPoll(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedPoll`

Note: Triggers on FeedItem objects run before their attachment and capabilities information is saved, which means that `ConnectApi.FeedItem.attachment` information and `ConnectApi.FeedElement.capabilities` information may not be available in the trigger.

`getLikesForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)`

Get likes for a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

getLikesForFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of likes for a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getLikesForFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage getLikesForFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`

`likeFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)`

Like a feed item for the context user.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use likeFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterLike likeFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterLike`

If the context user already liked the feed item, this method is a non-operation and returns the existing like.

postComment(communityId, feedItemId, text)

Post a plain-text comment to a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, text).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment postComment(String communityId, String feedItemId,
String text)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

text
Type: String

The text of the comment. Mentions are downgraded to plain text. To include a mention that links to a user, call `postComment(communityId, feedItemId, comment, feedItemFileUpload)` and pass the mention in a `ConnectApi.CommentInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

Usage

If hashtags or links are detected in *text*, they are included in the comment as hashtag and link segments. Mentions are not detected in *text* and are not separated out of the text.

Feed items and comments can contain up to 10,000 characters.

postComment(communityId, feedItemId, comment, feedItemFileUpload)

Post a rich-text comment to a feed item. Use this method to include mentions and to attach a file to a comment.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, comment, feedElementFileUpload).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Comment postComment(String communityId, String feedItemId,
ConnectApi.CommentInput comment, ConnectApi.BinaryInput feedItemFileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

comment
Type: `ConnectApi.CommentInput`

In the `CommentInput` object, specify rich text, including @mentions. Optionally, in the `CommentInput.attachment` property, specify an existing file or a new file

feedItemFileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

If you specify a `NewFileAttachmentInput` object in the `CommentInput.attachment` property, specify the new binary file to attach in this argument. Otherwise, do not specify a value.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Comment`

Usage

Feed items and comments can contain up to 10,000 characters.

Sample: Posting a Comment with a New File Attachment

To post a comment and upload and attach a new file to the comment, create a `ConnectApi.CommentInput` object and a `ConnectApi.BinaryInput` object to pass to the `ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postComment` method.

```
String communityId = null;
String feedItemId = '0D5D0000000Kcd1';

ConnectApi.CommentInput input = new ConnectApi.CommentInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = 'Comment Text Body';

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.NewFileAttachmentInput attachmentInput = new ConnectApi.NewFileAttachmentInput();
attachmentInput.description = 'The description of the file';
attachmentInput.title = 'contentFile.txt';
input.attachment = attachmentInput;

String fileContents = 'This is the content of the file.';
Blob fileBlob = Blob.valueOf(fileContents);
ConnectApi.BinaryInput binaryInput = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(fileBlob, 'text/plain',
'contentFile.txt');

ConnectApi.Comment commentRep = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postComment(communityId, feedItemId,
 input, binaryInput);
```

`postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement, feedElementFileUpload)`

Post a rich-text feed element. Include mentions and hashtag topics, attach a file to a feed element, and associate action link groups with a feed element. You can also use this method to share a feed element and add a comment.

API Version

31.0–35.0

Important: In version 36.0 and later, this method is no longer available because you can't create a feed post and upload a binary file in the same call. Upload files to Salesforce first, and then use `postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement)` to create the feed post and attach the files.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement postFeedElement(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedElementInput feedElement, ConnectApi.BinaryInput feedElementFileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElement
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`

Specify rich text, including mentions. Optionally, specify a link, a poll, an existing file, or a new file.

feedElementFileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

Specify the new binary file to attach to the post only if you also specify a `NewFileAttachmentInput` object in the *feedElement* parameter. Otherwise, pass `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

Example for Posting a Feed Element with a New (Binary) File

```
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
input.subjectId = 'me';

ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput contentInput = new ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput();
contentInput.title = 'Title';

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput capabilities = new
ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput();
capabilities.content = contentInput;

input.capabilities = capabilities;

String text = 'These are the contents of the new file.';
Blob myBlob = Blob.valueOf(text);
ConnectApi.BinaryInput binInput = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(myBlob, 'text/plain',
'fileName');

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedElement(Network.getNetworkId(), input, binInput);
```

postFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, text)

Post a plain-text feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use postFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, text).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItem postFeedItem(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String text)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of the following:

- `News`
- `Record`
- `UserProfile`

Use `Record` to post to a group.

subjectId
Type: String

The value depends on the *feedType*:

- `News`—ID of the context user or the keyword `me`.
- `Record`—ID of any record with a feed, including groups.
- `UserProfile`—ID of any user.

text
Type: String

Text of the feed item. Mentions are downgraded to plain text. To include a mention that links to the user, call the `postFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, feedItemInput, feedItemFileUpload)` method and pass the mention in a `ConnectApi.FeedItemInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItem`

Note: Triggers on FeedItem objects run before their attachment and capabilities information is saved, which means that `ConnectApi.FeedItem.attachment` information and `ConnectApi.FeedElement.capabilities` information may not be available in the trigger.

Usage

Feed items and comments can contain up to 10,000 characters.

Posts to `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile` in API versions 23.0 and 24.0 created user status updates, not feed items. For posts to the User Profile Feed in those API versions, the character limit is 1,000 characters.

`postFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, feedItemInput, feedItemFileUpload)`

Post a rich-text feed item to a feed. Use this method to include mentions and hashtag topics and to attach a file to a feed item. You can also use this method to share a feed item and add a comment.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement, feedElementFileUpload).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItem postFeedItem(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedItemInput feedItemInput,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput feedItemFileUpload)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of the following:

- `News`
- `Record`
- `UserProfile`

To post a feed item to a group, use `Record` and use a group ID as the *`subjectId`*.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`feedItemInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemInput`

In the `FeedItemInput` object, specify rich text. Optionally, in the `FeedItemInput.attachment` property, specify a link, a poll, an existing file, or a new file.

`feedItemFileUpload`
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

If you specify a `NewFileAttachmentInput` object in the `FeedItemInput.attachment` property, specify the new binary file to attach in this argument. Otherwise, do not specify a value.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItem`

Note: Triggers on FeedItem objects run before their attachment and capabilities information is saved, which means that `ConnectApi.FeedItem.attachment` information and `ConnectApi.FeedElement.capabilities` information may not be available in the trigger.

Usage

Feed items and comments can contain up to 10,000 characters. Posts to `ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile` in API versions 23.0 and 24.0 created user status updates, not feed items. For posts to the User Profile Feed in those API versions, the character limit is 1,000 characters.

Example for Sharing a Feed Item and Adding a Comment

To share a feed item and add a comment, create a `ConnectApi.FeedItemInput` object containing the comment and the feed item to share. Then pass the object to `ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeeditem` in the *`feedItemInput`* argument. The message segments in the message body input are used as the comment.

```
ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
input.originalFeedItemId = '0D5D0000000JuAG';

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput body = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput> segmentList = new
List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = 'I hope you enjoy this post I found in another group.';
segmentList.add((ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput)textSegment);
body.messageSegments = segmentList;
input.body = body;

ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedItem(null, ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile, 'me', input,
null);
```

Example for Posting a Mention to a User Profile Feed

To post to a user profile feed and include an @mention, call the `ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedItem` method.

```
String communityId = null;
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType = ConnectApi.FeedType.UserProfile;

ConnectApi.FeedItemInput input = new ConnectApi.FeedItemInput();
ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput messageInput = new ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput();
ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput textSegment;
```

```
ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput mentionSegment = new ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput();

messageInput.messageSegments = new List<ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput>();

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = 'Hey there ';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

mentionSegment.id = '005D0000001LLO1';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(mentionSegment);

textSegment = new ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput();
textSegment.text = '. How are you?';
messageInput.messageSegments.add(textSegment);

input.body = messageInput;

ConnectApi.FeedItem feedItemRep = ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.postFeedItem(communityId, feedType,
 'me', input, null);
```

`searchFeedItems(communityId, q)`

Get the feed items that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElements(communityId, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

- setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, result)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam)`

Get the sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElements(communityId, q, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of feed items that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElements(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElements(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q,
Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder
sortParam)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)`

Get the feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from the `Company`, `Home`, and `Moderation` feeds that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)`

Get the feed items from a feed that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String q)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If feed type is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Order of feed items in the feed.

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`q`
Type: String

Search term. Searches keywords in the user or group name. A minimum of one character is required. This parameter does not support wildcards. This parameter is required.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)`

Get a page of sorted feed items from a feed for a user or record that match the search criteria. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments. Specify whether to return feed items posted by internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users only.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly).

Available to Guest Users

31.0 only

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Value must be `ConnectApi.FeedType.Record`.

subjectId
Type: String

Any record ID, including a group ID.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.

- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)`

Get the feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)`

Get a page of sorted feed items that match the search criteria from a feed filtered by a key prefix for a user. Each feed item includes no more than the specified number of comments.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use searchFeedElementsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItemPage searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity
density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String
q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`shareFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, originalFeedElementId)`

Share the *`originalFeedElementId`* as the context user.

API Version

31.0–38.0

Important: In version 39.0 and later, use `postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement)` or `updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)` with the `ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput` to share a feed entity with a feed element.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedElement shareFeedElement(String communityId, String
subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedElementType feedElementType, String originalFeedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

The ID of the user or group with whom to share the feed element.

feedElementType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElementType`

Values are:

- `Bundle`—A container of feed elements. A bundle also has a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values.
- `FeedItem`—A feed item has a single parent and is scoped to oneExperience Cloud site or across all Experience Cloud sites. A feed item can have capabilities such as bookmarks, canvas, content, comment, link, poll. Feed items have a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values.
- `Recommendation`—A recommendation is a feed element with a recommendations capability. A recommendation suggests records to follow, groups to join, or applications that are helpful to the context user.

originalFeedElementId
Type: String

The ID of the feed element to share.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedElement`

Example

```
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.shareFeedElement(null, '0F9RR0000004CPw',
ConnectApi.FeedElementType.FeedItem, '0D5RR0000004Gxc');
```

shareFeedItem(communityId, feedType, subjectId, originalFeedItemId)

Share the *originalFeedItemId* to the feed specified by the *feedType*.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important:

- In version 32.0–38.0, use `shareFeedElement(communityId, subjectId, feedElementType, originalFeedElementId)`.

- In version 39.0 and later, use `postFeedElement(communityId, feedElement)` or `updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)` with the `ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput`.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItem shareFeedItem(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String originalFeedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of the following:

- `News`
- `Record`
- `UserProfile`

To share a feed item with a group, use `Record` and use a group ID as the *subjectId*.

subjectId
Type: String

The value depends on the value of *feedType*:

- `News`—*subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the keyword `me`.
- `Record`—*subjectId* can be a group ID or the ID of the context user (or `me`).
- `UserProfile`—*subjectId* can be any user ID.

originalFeedItemId
Type: String

The ID of the feed item to share.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItem`

Example

To share a feed item with a group, pass in the Experience Cloud site ID (or `null`), the feed type `Record`, the group ID, and the ID of the feed item to share.

```
ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.shareFeedItem(null, ConnectApi.FeedType.Record, '0F9D00000000izf',
 '0D5D0000000JuAG');
```

updateBookmark(communityId, feedItemId, isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)

Bookmark a feed item or remove a bookmark from a feed item.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, bookmarks) or updateFeedElementBookmarks(communityId, feedElementId, isBookmarkedByCurrentUser).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedItem updateBookmark(String communityId, String feedItemId,
Boolean isBookmarkedByCurrentUser)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

isBookmarkedByCurrentUser
Type: Boolean

—Specifying `true` adds the feed item to the list of bookmarks for the context user. Specify `false` to remove a bookmark.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItem`

voteOnFeedPoll(communityId, feedItemId, myChoiceId)

Vote or change your vote on a feed poll.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use voteOnFeedElementPoll(communityId, feedElementId, myChoiceId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FeedPoll voteOnFeedPoll(String communityId, String feedItemId,
String myChoiceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID of the feed item that is associated with the poll.

myChoiceId
Type: String

ID of the item in the poll you're voting for.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedPoll`

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedItemPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a ConnectApi.FeedItemPage object to be returned when getFeedItemsFromFeed is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam,
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsFromFeed` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the get feed method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId

Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount

Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String
subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder
sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

- getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.

- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, updatedSince, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince` method is called in a test context.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(String communityId,
String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity
density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String
updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.

- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

Opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. To retrieve this token, call `getFeedItemsFromFilterFeed` and take the value from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsFromFilterFeedUpdatedSince(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage, results)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage results)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`updatedSince`
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of these values:

- `Files`
- `Groups`
- `News`
- `People`
- `Record`

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `ConnectApi.Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. Otherwise, it must be the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when `getFeedItemsUpdatedSince` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFeedItemsUpdatedSince(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount,
ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String updatedSince,
Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

One of these values:

- `Files`
- `Groups`
- `News`
- `People`
- `Record`

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `ConnectApi.Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. Otherwise, it must be the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

updatedSince
Type: String

An opaque token containing information about the last modified date of the feed. Do not construct this token. Retrieve this token from the `updatesToken` property of the `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` response body.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFeedItemsUpdatedSince(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, updatedSince, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(communityId, q)` is called during a test.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void searchFeedItems(String communityId, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItems(communityId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam, result)

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder)` is called during a test.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItems(String communityId, String q, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

The feed item test page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, String, Integer)` is called during a test.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItems(String communityId, String q, String pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

The test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(String, String, String, Integer, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder)` is called during a test.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItems(String communityId, String q, String pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

The test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, result)`

Register a test feed item page to be returned when `searchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)` is called during a test.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItems(String communityId, String q, Integer recentCommentCount, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

`sortParam`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

The test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItems(communityId, q, recentCommentCount, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values are `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Home`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.

- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: ConnectApi.FeedType

Type of feed. Valid values include every ConnectApi.FeedType except Company, DirectMessageModeration, DirectMessages, Filter, Home, Landing, Moderation, and PendingReview.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: ConnectApi.FeedDensity

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- AllUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- FewerUpdates—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, currentPageToken or nextPageToken. If you pass in null, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in null, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be null. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedItemPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId

Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *`feedType`* is `Record`, *`subjectId`* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *`feedType`* is `Streams`, *`subjectId`* must be a stream ID. If *`feedType`* is `Topics`, *`subjectId`* must be a topic ID. If *`feedType`* is `UserProfile`, *`subjectId`* can be any user ID. If the *`feedType`* is any other value, *`subjectId`* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder

Values are:

- CreatedDateAsc—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for DirectMessageModeration, Draft, Moderation, and PendingReview feeds.
- CreatedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- LastModifiedDateDesc—Sorts by most recent activity.
- MostViewed—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for Home feeds when the ConnectApi.FeedFilter is UnansweredQuestions.
- Relevance—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for Company, Home, and Topics feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in null, the default value CreatedDateDesc is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be null. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FeedItemPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a ConnectApi.FeedItemPage object to be returned when the matching ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType
feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q,
ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFeed(String communityId, ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, Integer recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, Boolean showInternalOnly, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType

Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Landing`, and `Streams`.

subjectId
Type: String

If *feedType* is `Record`, *subjectId* can be any record ID, including a group ID. If *feedType* is `Streams`, *subjectId* must be a stream ID. If *feedType* is `Topics`, *subjectId* must be a topic ID. If *feedType* is `UserProfile`, *subjectId* can be any user ID. If the *feedType* is any other value, *subjectId* must be the ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

recentCommentCount
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

density
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

showInternalOnly
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show only feed items from internal (non-Experience Cloud site) users (`true`), or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, showInternalOnly)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Specify the test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, String pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedType
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

keyPrefix
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Specify the test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, feedType, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(String communityId,
ConnectApi.FeedType feedType, String subjectId, String keyPrefix, Integer
recentCommentCount, ConnectApi.FeedDensity density, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder sortParam, String q, ConnectApi.FeedItemPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedType`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedType`

Type of feed. Valid values include every `ConnectApi.FeedType` except `Company`, `DirectMessageModeration`, `DirectMessages`, `Filter`, `Home`, `Landing`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview`.

`subjectId`
Type: String

ID of the context user or the alias `me`.

`keyPrefix`
Type: String

A key prefix that specifies record type. A key prefix is the first three characters in the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

`recentCommentCount`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of comments to return with each feed item. The default value is 3.

`density`
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedDensity`

Specify the amount of content in a feed.

- `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations.
- `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of feed items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`

Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity.
- `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`.
- `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.

Sorts the returned feed by the most recently created feed item, or by the most recently modified feed item. If you pass in `null`, the default value `CreatedDateDesc` is used.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemPage`

Specify the test feed item page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchFeedItemsInFilterFeed(communityId, subjectId, keyPrefix, recentCommentCount, density, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ChatterGroups Class

Information about groups, such as the group's members, photo, and the groups the specified user is a member of. Add members to a group, remove members, and change the group photo.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ChatterGroups Methods

The following are methods for `ChatterGroups`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

addMember(communityId, groupId, userId)
Add a user to a group as a standard member.

addMemberWithRole(communityId, groupId, userId, role)
Add a user with a role to a group.

addRecord(communityId, groupId, recordId)
Associate a record with a group.

createGroup(communityId, groupInput)
Create a group.

deleteBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId)
Delete the group banner photo.

deleteGroup(communityId, groupId)
Delete a group.

deleteMember(communityId, membershipId)
Remove a member from a group.

deletePhoto(communityId, groupId)
Delete the group photo.

getAnnouncements(communityId, groupId)
Get the first page of announcements in a group.

getAnnouncements(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of announcements in a group.

getBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId)
Get the group banner photo.

getGroup(communityId, groupId)
Get information about a group.

getGroupBatch(communityId, groupIds)
Get information about a list of groups.

getGroupMembershipRequest(communityId, requestId)
Get information about a request to join a private group.

getGroupMembershipRequests(communityId, groupId)
Get information about every request to join a private group.

getGroupMembershipRequests(communityId, groupId, status)
Get information about every request to join a private group that has a specified status.

getGroups(communityId)
Get the first page of groups.

getGroups(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of groups.

getGroups(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, archiveStatus)
Get a page of groups with an archive status.

getMember(communityId, membershipId)
Get information about a group member.

getMembers(communityId, groupId)
Get the first page of information about the members of a group.

getMembers(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of information about the members of a group.

getMembershipBatch(communityId, membershipIds)
Get information about a list of group memberships.

getMyChatterSettings(communityId, groupId)
Get the context user's Chatter settings for a group.

getPhoto(communityId, groupId)
Get the photo for a group.

getRecord(communityId, groupRecordId)
Get a record associated with a group.

getRecords(communityId, groupId)
Get the first page of records associated with a group.

getRecords(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of records associated with a group.

inviteUsers(groupId, invite)
Invite internal and external users to join a group.

postAnnouncement(communityId, groupId, announcement)
Post an announcement to a group.

removeRecord(communityId, groupRecordId)
Remove the association of a record with a group.

requestGroupMembership(communityId, groupId)
Request membership in a private group.

searchGroups(communityId, q)
Get the first page of groups that match the search criteria.

searchGroups(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of groups that match the search criteria.

searchGroups(communityId, q, archiveStatus, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of groups with the archive status that match the search criteria.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as the group banner photo.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, bannerPhoto)
Set and crop an uploaded file as the group banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group banner photo.

setPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as the group photo.

setPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo)
Set and crop an uploaded file as the group photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group photo.

updateGroup(communityId, groupId, groupInput)
Update the settings of a group.

updateGroupMember(communityId, membershipId, role)
Update the role of a group member.

updateMyChatterSettings(communityId, groupId, emailFrequency)
Update the context user's email frequency for a group.

updateRequestStatus(communityId, requestId, status)
Update a request to join a private group.

updateRequestStatus(communityId, requestId, status, responseMessage)
Update a request to join a private group and optionally provide a message when the request is denied.

`addMember(communityId, groupId, userId)`

Add a user to a group as a standard member.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMember addMember(String communityId, String groupId,
String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMember`

Usage

To execute this method, the context user must be the group owner or moderator.

addMemberWithRole(communityId, groupId, userId, role)

Add a user with a role to a group.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMember addMemberWithRole(String communityId, String
groupId, String userId, ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType role)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

role
Type: ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType

The group membership type. One of these values:

- GroupManager
- StandardMember

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.GroupMember

Usage

To execute this method, the context user must be the group owner or moderator.

addRecord(communityId, groupId, recordId)

Associate a record with a group.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupRecord addRecord(String communityId, String groupId,
String recordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, internal, or null.

groupId
Type: String

ID of the group with which to associate the record.

recordId
Type: String

ID of the record to associate with the group.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.GroupRecord

createGroup(communityId, groupInput)

Create a group.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail createGroup(String, communityId,
ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput groupInput)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String,

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput`

The properties of the group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail`

deleteBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId)

Delete the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteBannerPhoto(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID of the group.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

deleteGroup(communityId, groupId)

Delete a group.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteGroup(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteMember(communityId, membershipId)

Remove a member from a group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteMember(String communityId, String membershipId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

membershipId
Type: String

ID for a membership.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

`deletePhoto(communityId, groupId)`

Delete the group photo.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deletePhoto(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is only successful when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

getAnnouncements(communityId, groupId)

Get the first page of announcements in a group.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage getAnnouncements(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage`

Usage

To post an announcement, get information about an announcement, update the expiration date of an announcement, or delete an announcement, use the methods of the `ConnectApi.Announcements` class.

getAnnouncements(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of announcements in a group.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage getAnnouncements(String communityId, String groupId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage`

Usage

To post an announcement, get information about an announcement, update the expiration date of an announcement, or delete an announcement, use the methods of the `ConnectApi.Announcements` class.

`getBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId)`

Get the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto getBannerPhoto(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

The ID of the group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

getGroup(communityId, groupId)

Get information about a group.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail getGroup(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail`

getGroupBatch(communityId, groupIds)

Get information about a list of groups.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getGroupBatch(String communityId, List<String>
groupIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 500 group IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.ChatterGroup` object and errors embedded in the results for groups that didn't load.

Example

```
// Create a list of groups.
ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage groupPage = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.getGroups(null);

// Create a list of group IDs.
List<String> groupIds = new List<String>();
for (ConnectApi.ChatterGroup aGroup : groupPage.groups){
    groupIds.add(aGroup.id);
}

// Get info about all the groups in the list.
ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.getGroupBatch(null,
groupIds);

for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print the number of members in each group.
        ConnectApi.ChatterGroup aGroup;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.ChatterGroup) {
           aGroup = (ConnectApi.ChatterGroup) batchResult.getResult();
        }
```

```
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(aGroup.memberCount);
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

getMembershipBatch(communityId, membershipIds)

`getGroupMembershipRequest(communityId, requestId)`

Get information about a request to join a private group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest getGroupMembershipRequest(String
communityId, String requestId)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

requestId

Type: String

The ID of a request to join a private group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

getGroupMembershipRequests(communityId, groupId)

Get information about every request to join a private group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests getGroupMembershipRequests(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

getGroupMembershipRequests(communityId, groupId, status)

Get information about every request to join a private group that has a specified status.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests getGroupMembershipRequests(String communityId, String groupId, ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus status)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

status
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus`

status—Status of a request to join a private group.

- `Accepted`
- `Declined`
- `Pending`

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

`getGroups(communityId)`

Get the first page of groups.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage getGroups(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

getGroups(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of groups.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage getGroups(String communityId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

getGroups(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, archiveStatus)

Get a page of groups with an archive status.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage getGroups(String communityId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus archiveStatus)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

archiveStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus`

Archive status of groups.

- `All`—All groups, including groups that are archived and groups that aren't archived.
- `Archived`—Groups that are archived.
- `NotArchived`—Groups that aren't archived.

If you pass in `null`, the default value is `All`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

`getMember(communityId, membershipId)`

Get information about a group member.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMember getMember(String communityId, String membershipId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

membershipId
Type: String

ID for a membership.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMember`

`getMembers(communityId, groupId)`

Get the first page of information about the members of a group.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage getMembers(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage`

getMembers(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of information about the members of a group.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage getMembers(String communityId, String groupId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage`

getMembershipBatch(communityId, membershipIds)

Get information about a list of group memberships.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getMembershipBatch(String communityId,
List<String> membershipIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

membershipIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 500 group membership IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.GroupMember` object and errors embedded in the results for group memberships that didn't load.

Example

```
// Get members of a group.
ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage membersPage = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.getMembers(null,
'0F9D00000000oOT');

// Create a list of membership IDs.
List<String> membersList = new List<String>();
for (ConnectApi.GroupMember groupMember : membersPage.members){
    membersList.add(groupMember.id);
}

// Get info about all group memberships in the list.
ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.getMembershipBatch(null,
 membersList);

for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print the first name of each member.
        ConnectApi.GroupMember groupMember;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.GroupMember) {
            groupMember = (ConnectApi.GroupMember) batchResult.getResult();
        }
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(groupMember.user.firstName);
    }
```

```
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

getGroupBatch(communityId, groupIds)

getMyChatterSettings(communityId, groupId)

Get the context user's Chatter settings for a group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupChatterSettings getMyChatterSettings(String communityId,
String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupChatterSettings`

getPhoto(communityId, groupId)

Get the photo for a group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo getPhoto(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

getRecord(communityId, groupRecordId)

Get a record associated with a group.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupRecord getRecord(String communityId, String groupRecordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupRecordId
Type: String

ID of the group record.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupRecord`

getRecords(communityId, groupId)

Get the first page of records associated with a group.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage getRecords(String communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage`

getRecords(communityId, groupId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of records associated with a group.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage getRecords(String communityId, String groupId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage`

`inviteUsers(groupId, invite)`

Invite internal and external users to join a group.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Invitations inviteUsers(String groupId, ConnectApi.InviteInput
invite)
```

Parameters

groupId
Type: String

ID of the group.

invite
Type: `ConnectApi.InviteInput`

A `ConnectApi.InviteInput` body.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Invitations`

postAnnouncement(communityId, groupId, announcement)

Post an announcement to a group.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Announcement postAnnouncement(String communityId, String groupId, ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput announcement)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

announcement
Type: `ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput`

A `ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Announcement`

Usage

Use an announcement to highlight information. Users can discuss, like, and post comments on announcements. Deleting the feed post deletes the announcement.

To post an announcement, get information about an announcement, update the expiration date of an announcement, or delete an announcement, use the methods of the `ConnectApi.Announcements` class.

removeRecord(communityId, groupRecordId)

Remove the association of a record with a group.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void removeRecord(String communityId, String groupRecordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupRecordId
Type: String

ID of the group record.

Return Value

Type: Void

requestGroupMembership(communityId, groupId)

Request membership in a private group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest requestGroupMembership(String
communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest

Sample: Requesting to Join a Private Group

This sample code calls `ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.requestGroupMembership` to request to join a private group.

```
String communityId = null;
ID groupId = '0F9x00000000hAZ';

ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest membershipRequest =
ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.requestGroupMembership(communityId, groupId);
```

searchGroups(communityId, q)

Get the first page of groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage searchGroups(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchGroups(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage searchGroups(String communityId, String q,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchGroups(communityId, q, archiveStatus, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of groups with the archive status that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage searchGroups(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus archiveStatus, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

`archiveStatus`
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus`

Archive status of groups.

- `All`—All groups, including groups that are archived and groups that aren't archived.
- `Archived`—Groups that are archived.

- `NotArchived`—Groups that aren't archived.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, archiveStatus, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileId, versionNumber)`

Set an uploaded file as the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String communityId, String groupId,
String fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`groupId`
Type: String

The ID of the group.

fileId
Type: String

The ID of the already uploaded file. The key prefix must be 069, and the image must be smaller than 8 MB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the existing file. Specify either an existing version number or, to get the latest version, specify `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String communityId, String groupId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

The ID of the group.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, bannerPhoto)

Set and crop an uploaded file as the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId,
String groupId, ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

The ID of the group.

bannerPhoto
Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput

A `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput` object that specifies the ID and version of the file, and how to crop the file.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId,
String groupId, ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto, ConnectApi.BinaryInput
fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

The ID of the group.

bannerPhoto
Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileId, versionNumber)

Set an uploaded file as the group photo.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String groupId, String
fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

fileId
Type: String

ID of a file already uploaded. The key prefix must be 069, and the file must be an image that is smaller than 2 GB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the existing file. Specify either an existing version number or, to get the latest version, specify `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

Sample: Updating a Group Photo with an Existing File

When a group is created, it doesn't have a group photo. You can set an existing photo that has already been uploaded to Salesforce as the group photo. The key prefix must be 069 and the file size must be less than 2 GB.

```
String communityId = null;
ID groupId = '0F9x00000000hAK';
ID fileId = '069x00000001Ion';

// Set photo
ConnectApi.Photo photo = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.setPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileId,
null);
```

setPhoto(communityId, groupId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group photo.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String groupId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

Sample: Uploading a New File and Using It as a Group Photo

When a group is created, it doesn't have a group photo. You can upload a photo and set it as the group photo.

```
String communityId = null;
ID groupId = '0F9x00000000hAP';
ID photoId = '069x00000001Ioo';

// Set photo
List<ContentVersion> groupPhoto = [Select c.VersionData From ContentVersion c where
ContentDocumentId=:photoId];
ConnectApi.BinaryInput binary = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(groupPhoto.get(0).VersionData,
```

```
 'image/png', 'image.png');
ConnectApi.Photo photo = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.setPhoto(communityId, groupId, binary);
```

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo)

Set and crop an uploaded file as the group photo.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String groupId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object that specifies the ID and version of the file, and how to crop the file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo, fileUpload)

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as the group photo.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String groupId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object that specifies how to crop the file specified in *`fileUpload`*.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`updateGroup(communityId, groupId, groupInput)`

Update the settings of a group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroup updateGroup(String communityId, String groupId,
ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput groupInput)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

groupInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput`

A `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroup`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission. Use this method to update any settings in the `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput` class. These settings include the group title and text in the "Information" section, whether the group is public or private, and whether the group is archived.

Example

This example archives a group.

```
String groupId = '0F9D00000000qSz';
String communityId = null;

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput groupInput = new ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput();
groupInput.isArchived = true;

ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.updateGroup(communityId, groupId, groupInput);
```

updateGroupMember(communityId, membershipId, role)

Update the role of a group member.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroup updateGroupMember(String communityId, String
membershipId, ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType role)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

membershipId
Type: String

ID for a membership.

role
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType`

The group membership type. One of these values:

- `GroupManager`
- `StandardMember`

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroup`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

updateMyChatterSettings(communityId, groupId, emailFrequency)

Update the context user's email frequency for a group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupChatterSettings updateMyChatterSettings(String communityId,
String groupId, ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency emailFrequency)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`groupId`
Type: String

ID for a group.

`emailFrequency`
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency`

Frequency with which a user receives email.

- `EachPost`
- `DailyDigest`
- `WeeklyDigest`
- `Never`
- `UseDefault`

The value `UseDefault` uses the value set in a call to `updateChatterSettings(communityId, userId, defaultGroupEmailFrequency)`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupChatterSettings`

`updateRequestStatus(communityId, requestId, status)`

Update a request to join a private group.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest updateRequestStatus(String communityId,
String requestId, ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus status)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`requestId`
Type: String

ID for a request to join a private group.

`status`
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus`

Status of the request:

- `Accepted`
- `Declined`

The `Pending` value of the enum is not valid in this method.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

Sample: Accepting or Declining a Request to Join a Private Group

This sample code calls `ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.updateRequestStatus` and passes it the membership request ID and an `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus.Accepted` status. You can also pass `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus.Declined`.

```
String communityId = null;
ID groupId = '0F9x00000000hAZ';
String requestId = '0I5x000000001snCAA';

ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest membershipRequestRep =
ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.updateRequestStatus(communityId, requestId,
ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus.Accepted);
```

`updateRequestStatus(communityId, requestId, status, responseMessage)`

Update a request to join a private group and optionally provide a message when the request is denied.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest updateRequestStatus(String communityId,
String requestId, ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus status, String responseMessage)
```

Parameters

`communityId`

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

requestId
Type: String

ID for a request to join a private group.

status
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus`

Status of the request:

- `Accepted`
- `Declined`

The `Pending` value of the enum is not valid in this method.

responseMessage
Type: String

Provide a message to the user if their membership request is declined. The value of this property is used only when the value of the `status` property is `Declined`.

The maximum length is 756 characters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest`

Usage

This method is successful only when the context user is the group manager or owner, or has Modify All Data permission.

ChatterGroups Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `ChatterGroups`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchGroups` method is called in a test context. Use the test method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchGroups(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

Test `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchGroups(communityId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchGroups` method is called in a test context. Use the test method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchGroups(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

Test `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchGroups(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchGroups(communityId, q, archiveStatus, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchGroups` method is called in a test context. Use the test method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchGroups(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus, archiveStatus, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards. Can be specified as `null`.

archiveStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus`

Archive status of groups.

- `All`—All groups, including groups that are archived and groups that aren't archived.
- `Archived`—Groups that are archived.
- `NotArchived`—Groups that aren't archived.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage`

Test `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage` object.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchGroups(communityId, q, archiveStatus, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ChatterMessages Class

Get, send, search, and reply to private messages. You can also get and search private conversations, mark conversations as read, and get a count of unread private messages.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

Private messages and direct messages are different features. Direct messages are newer and offer a richer feature set for private communication in Experience Cloud sites. Direct messages are a capability within Chatter feeds. To work with direct messages, use the ChatterFeeds Class.

ChatterMessages Methods

The following are methods for `ChatterMessages`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getConversation(conversationId)
Get a conversation.

getConversation(conversationId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of a conversation.

getConversation(communityId, conversationId)
Get a conversation from an Experience Cloud site.

getConversation(communityId, conversationId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of a conversation from an Experience Cloud site.

getConversations()
Get the most recent conversations.

getConversations(pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of conversations.

getConversations(communityId)
Get the most recent conversations from an Experience Cloud site.

getConversations(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of conversations from an Experience Cloud site.

getMessage(messageId)
Get a message.

getMessage(communityId, messageId)
Get a message from an Experience Cloud site.

getMessages()
Get the most recent messages.

getMessages(pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of messages.

getMessages(communityId)
Get the most recent messages from an Experience Cloud site.

getMessages(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of messages from an Experience Cloud site.

getUnreadCount()
Get the number of conversations that are marked unread.

getUnreadCount(communityId)
Get the number of conversations that are marked unread in an Experience Cloud site.

markConversationRead(conversationId, read)
Mark a conversation as read or unread.

markConversationRead(communityId, conversationID, read)
Mark a conversation as read or unread in an Experience Cloud site.

replyToMessage(text, inReplyTo)
Reply to a message.

replyToMessage(communityId, text, inReplyTo)
Reply to a message in an Experience Cloud site.

searchConversation(conversationId, q)
Get a conversation that matches the search criteria.

searchConversation(conversationId, pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a conversation with a page of messages that match the search criteria.

searchConversation(communityId, conversationId, q)
Get a conversation with messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

searchConversation(communityId, conversationId, pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a conversation with a page of messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

searchConversations(q)
Get conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria.

searchConversations(pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a page of conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria.

searchConversations(communityId, q)
Get conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

searchConversations(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a page of conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

searchMessages(q)
Get messages that match the search criteria.

searchMessages(pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a page of messages that match the search criteria.

searchMessages(communityId, q)
Get messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

searchMessages(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, q)
Get a page of messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

sendMessage(text, recipients)
Send a message to a list of recipients.

sendMessage(communityId, text, recipients)
Send a message to a list of recipients in an Experience Cloud site.

`getConversation(conversationId)`

Get a conversation.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation getConversation(String conversationId)
```

Parameters

`conversationId`
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

getConversation(conversationId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of a conversation.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation getConversation(String conversationId,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

getConversation(communityId, conversationId)

Get a conversation from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation getConversation(String communityId, String conversationId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversation`

getConversation(communityId, conversationId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of a conversation from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation getConversation(String communityId, String conversationId, String pageParam, String pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

pageParam
Type:String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversation`

getConversations()

Get the most recent conversations.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage getConversations()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

getConversations(pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of conversations.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage getConversations(String pageParam,
Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

getConversations(communityId)

Get the most recent conversations from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage getConversations(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

getConversations(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of conversations from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage getConversations(String communityId,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type:String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

`getMessage(messageId)`

Get a message.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage getMessage(String messageId)
```

Parameters

messageId
Type: String

ID for the message.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`

getMessage(communityId, messageId)

Get a message from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage getMessage(String communityId, String messageId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

messageId
Type: String

ID for the message.

Return Value

Type:`ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`

getMessages()

Get the most recent messages.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage getMessages()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

`getMessages(pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of messages.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage getMessages(String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

`getMessages(communityId)`

Get the most recent messages from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage getMessages(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

getMessages(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of messages from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage getMessages(String communityId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

getUnreadCount()

Get the number of conversations that are marked unread.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount getUnreadCount()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount`

If there are fewer than 50 unread conversations, `ConnectApi.UreadConversationCount` returns the exact number of unread conversations and the `hasMore` property is `false`. If there are more than 50 unread conversations, `ConnectApi.UreadConversationCount` returns 50 unread conversations and the `hasMore` property is `true`.

Example

```
ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount unread = ConnectApi.ChatterMessages.getUnreadCount();
```

`getUnreadCount(communityId)`

Get the number of conversations that are marked unread in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount getUnreadCount(String communityId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount`

If there are fewer than 50 unread conversations, `ConnectApi.UreadConversationCount` returns the exact number of unread conversations and the `hasMore` property is `false`. If there are more than 50 unread conversations, `ConnectApi.UreadConversationCount` returns 50 unread conversations and the `hasMore` property is `true`.

markConversationRead(conversationId, read)

Mark a conversation as read or unread.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary markConversationRead(String conversationId, Boolean read)
```

Parameters

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

read
Type: Boolean

Specify whether the conversation is read (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary`

markConversationRead(communityId, conversationID, read)

Mark a conversation as read or unread in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary markConversationRead(String communityId, String conversationID, Boolean read)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

read
Type: Boolean

Specify whether the conversation is read (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary`

replyToMessage(text, inReplyTo)

Reply to a message.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage replyToMessage(String text, String inReplyTo)
```

Parameters

text
Type: String

Text of the message. Cannot be empty or over 10,000 characters.

inReplyTo
Type: String

ID of the message that is being responded to.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`

replyToMessage(communityId, text, inReplyTo)

Reply to a message in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage replyToMessage(String communityId, String text,
String inReplyTo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

text
Type: String

Text of the message. Cannot be empty or over 10,000 characters.

inReplyTo
Type: String

ID of the message that is being responded to.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`

searchConversation(conversationId, q)

Get a conversation that matches the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation searchConversation(String conversationId,
String q)
```

Parameters

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversation`

searchConversation(conversationId, pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a conversation with a page of messages that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation searchConversation(String conversationId,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

searchConversation(communityId, conversationId, q)

Get a conversation with messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation searchConversation(String communityId,
String conversationId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

searchConversation(communityId, conversationId, pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a conversation with a page of messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversation searchConversation(String communityId,
String conversationId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

conversationId
Type: String

ID for the conversation.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversation`

searchConversations(q)

Get conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage searchConversations(String q)
```

Parameters

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

searchConversations(pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a page of conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage searchConversations(String pageParam,
Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

pageParam

Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize

Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

searchConversations(communityId, q)

Get conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage searchConversations(String communityId,
String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

searchConversations(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a page of conversations in which member names and messages match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage searchConversations(String communityId,
String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage`

searchMessages(q)

Get messages that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage searchMessages(String q)
```

Parameters

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

searchMessages(pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a page of messages that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage searchMessages(String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

searchMessages(communityId, q)

Get messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage searchMessages(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`

searchMessages(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, q)

Get a page of messages that match the search criteria in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage searchMessages(String communityId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage

sendMessage(text, recipients)

Send a message to a list of recipients.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage sendMessage(String text, String recipients)
```

Parameters

text
Type: String

Text of the message. Cannot be empty or over 10,000 characters.

recipients
Type: String

Up to nine comma-separated IDs of the users receiving the message.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ChatterMessage

sendMessage(communityId, text, recipients)

Send a message to a list of recipients in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterMessage sendMessage(String communityId, String text,
String recipients)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type:String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

text
Type: String

Text of the message. Cannot be empty or over 10,000 characters.

recipients
Type: String

Up to nine comma-separated IDs of users to receive the message.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`

ChatterUsers Class

Access information about users, such as activity, followers, subscriptions, files, and groups.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ChatterUsers Methods

The following are methods for `ChatterUsers`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

exportUserActivities(communityId, userId)
Export Chatter-related user activity, such as bookmarks, topic endorsements, and votes.

follow(communityId, userId, subjectId)
Follow a user or record.

getChatterSettings(communityId, userId)
Get the default Chatter settings for a user.

getFollowers(communityId, userId)
Get the first page of followers for a user.

getFollowers(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of followers for a user.

getFollowings(communityId, userId)
Get the first page of users and records that a user follows.

getFollowings(communityId, userId, pageParam)
Get a page of users and records that a user follows.

getFollowings(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page with the specified number of users and records that a user follows.

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType)
Get the first page of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType, pageParam)
Get a page of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page with the specified number of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

getReputation(communityId, userId)
Get a user's reputation.

getUser(communityId, userId)
Get information about a user.

getUserBatch(communityId, userIds)
Get information about a list of users.

getUserGroups(communityId, userId)
Get a user's groups.

getUserGroups(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of a user's groups.

getUsers(communityId)
Get the first page of users.

getUsers(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of users.

purgeUserActivities(communityId, userId)
Start a job to purge Chatter-related user activity, such as bookmarks, topic endorsements, and votes.

searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q)
Get the user's groups that match the search criteria.

searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of a user's groups that match the search criteria.

searchUsers(communityId, q)
Get the first page of users that match the search criteria.

searchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of users that match the search criteria.

searchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of users that match the search criteria.

updateChatterSettings(communityId, userId, defaultGroupEmailFrequency)
Update the default Chatter settings for a user.

updateUser(communityId, userId, userInput)
Update the About Me section for a user.

`exportUserActivities(communityId, userId)`

Export Chatter-related user activity, such as bookmarks, topic endorsements, and votes.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserActivitiesJob exportUserActivities(String communityId,
String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserActivitiesJob`

Usage

The following activities can be exported.

- `Bookmark`—User bookmarked a post.
- `ChatterActivity`—Total counts of posts and comments made and likes and comments received for a user.
- `ChatterLike`—User liked a post or comment.
- `Comment`—User commented on a post.
- `CompanyVerify`—User verified comment.
- `DownVote`—User downvoted a post or comment.
- `FeedEntityRead`—User read a post.
- `FeedRead`—User read a feed.
- `Mute`—User muted a post.
- `Post`—User made a post.
- `TopicEndorsement`—User endorsed another user on a topic or received endorsement on a topic.
- `UpVote`—User upvoted a post or comment.

follow(communityId, userId, subjectId)

Follow a user or record.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Subscription follow(String communityId, String userId, String subjectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

subjectId
Type: String

ID of the user or record to follow.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Subscription`

Example

```
ChatterUsers.ConnectApi.Subscription subscriptionToRecord =
ConnectApi.ChatterUsers.follow(null, 'me', '001RR000002G4Y0');
```

SEE ALSO:

Unfollow a Record

getChatterSettings(communityId, userId)

Get the default Chatter settings for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserChatterSettings getChatterSettings(String communityId,
String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserChatterSettings`

getFollowers(communityId, userId)

Get the first page of followers for a user.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowerPage getFollowers(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowerPage`

`getFollowers(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of followers for a user.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowerPage getFollowers(String communityId, String userId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for a user.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowerPage`

getFollowings(communityId, userId)

Get the first page of users and records that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowingPage`

getFollowings(communityId, userId, pageParam)

Get a page of users and records that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId,
Integer pageParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowingPage`

`getFollowings(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page with the specified number of users and records that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowingPage`

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType)

Get the first page of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId,
String filterType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

filterType
Type: String

Specifies the key prefix to filter the type of objects returned. A key prefix is the first three characters of the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FollowingPage

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType, pageParam)

Get a page of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId,
String filterType, Integer pageParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

filterType
Type: String

Specifies the key prefix to filter the type of objects returned. A key prefix is the first three characters of the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FollowingPage

getFollowings(communityId, userId, filterType, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page with the specified number of records, filtered by key prefix, that a user follows.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowingPage getFollowings(String communityId, String userId,
String filterType, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

filterType
Type: String

Specifies the key prefix to filter the type of objects returned. A key prefix is the first three characters of the object ID, which specifies the object type. For example, User objects have a prefix of 005 and Group objects have a prefix of 0F9.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FollowingPage`

`getReputation(communityId, userId)`

Get a user's reputation.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Reputation getReputation(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Reputation`

getUser(communityId, userId)

Get information about a user.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserSummary getUser(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserDetail`

Usage

If the user is external, the properties that the `ConnectApi.UserDetail` output class shares with the `ConnectApi.UserSummary` output class can have non-null values. Other properties are always `null`.

getUserBatch(communityId, userIds)

Get information about a list of users.

API Version

31.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getUserBatch(String communityId, List<String>
userIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 500 user IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.User` object and errors for users that didn't load.

Example

```
// Get users in an organization.
ConnectApi.UserPage userPage = ConnectApi.ChatterUsers.getUsers(null);

// Create a list of user IDs.
List<String> userList = new List<String>();
for (ConnectApi.User user : userPage.users){
    userList.add(user.id);
}

// Get info about all users in the list.
ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.ChatterUsers.getUserBatch(null, userList);

for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print each user's username.
        ConnectApi.UserDetail user;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.UserDetail) {
            user = (ConnectApi.UserDetail) batchResult.getResult();
        }
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(user.username);
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

`getUserGroups(communityId, userId)`

Get a user's groups.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage getUserGroups(String communityId, String
userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage`

getUserGroups(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of a user's groups.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage getUserGroups(String communityId, String
userId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage`

getUsers(communityId)

Get the first page of users.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserPage getUsers(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

getUsers(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of users.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserPage getUsers(String communityId, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

purgeUserActivities(communityId, userId)

Start a job to purge Chatter-related user activity, such as bookmarks, topic endorsements, and votes.

API Version

42.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserActivitiesJob purgeUserActivities(String communityId,
String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserActivitiesJob`

Usage

The following activities can be purged with this method.

- `Bookmark`—User bookmarked a post.
- `ChatterActivity`—Total counts of posts and comments made and likes and comments received for a user.
- `ChatterLike`—User liked a post or comment.
- `CompanyVerify`—User verified comment.
- `DownVote`—User downvoted a post or comment.
- `FeedEntityRead`—User read a post.
- `FeedRead`—User read a feed.
- `Mute`—User muted a post.
- `TopicEndorsement`—User endorsed another user on a topic or received endorsement on a topic.
- `UpVote`—User upvoted a post or comment.

To delete a user's posts and comments, use these methods, respectively.

- deleteFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
- deleteComment(communityId, commentId)

`searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q)`

Get the user's groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage searchUserGroupDetails(String communityId,
String userId, String q)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage`

searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of a user's groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage searchUserGroupDetails(String communityId,
String userId, String q, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage`

searchUsers(communityId, q)

Get the first page of users that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserPage searchUsers(String communityId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of users that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserPage searchUsers(String communityId, String q, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of users that match the search criteria.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserPage searchUsers(String communityId, String q, String
searchContextId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

searchContextId
Type: String

A feed item ID that filters search results for feed @mentions. More useful results are listed first. When you specify this argument, you cannot query more than 500 results and you cannot use wildcards in the search term.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`updateChatterSettings(communityId, userId, defaultGroupEmailFrequency)`

Update the default Chatter settings for a user.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserChatterSettings updateChatterSettings(String communityId,
String userId, ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency defaultGroupEmailFrequency)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

defaultGroupEmailFrequency
Type: `ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency`

Frequency with which a user receives email. Values are:

- `EachPost`
- `DailyDigest`
- `WeeklyDigest`
- `Never`
- `UseDefault`

Don't pass the value `UseDefault` for the *`defaultGroupEmailFrequency`* parameter because calling `updateChatterSettings` sets the default value.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserChatterSettings`

`updateUser(communityId, userId, userInput)`

Update the About Me section for a user.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserDetail updateUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.UserInput userInput)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

`userInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.UserInput`

Specifies the updated information.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserDetail`

ChatterUsers Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `ChatterUsers`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

IN THIS SECTION:

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

`setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchUsers(String communityId, String q, ConnectApi.UserPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchUsers(communityId, q)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchUsers(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.UserPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchUsers(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestSearchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.UserPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.searchUsers` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

28.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchUsers(String communityId, String q, String
searchContextId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.UserPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q

Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

searchContextId

Type: String

A feed item ID that filters search results for feed @mentions. More useful results are listed first. When you specify this argument, you cannot query more than 500 results and you cannot use wildcards in the search term.

pageParam

Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize

Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result

Type: `ConnectApi.UserPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchUsers(communityId, q, searchContextId, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Retired ChatterUsers Methods

The following methods for `ChatterUsers` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

deletePhoto(communityId, userId)
Delete a user's photo.

getGroups(communityId, userId)
Get the groups that a user is a member of.

getGroups(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of groups that a user is a member of.

getPhoto(communityId, userId)
Get a user's photo.

searchUserGroups(communityId, userId, q)
Get the user's groups that match the search criteria.

searchUserGroups(communityId, userId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of a user's groups that match the search criteria.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as a user's photo.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the user's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)
Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

`deletePhoto(communityId, userId)`

Delete a user's photo.

API Version

28.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.deletePhoto(communityId, userId)`

Signature

```
public static Void deletePhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

Return Value

Type: Void

getGroups(communityId, userId)

Get the groups that a user is a member of.

API Version

28.0–44.0

Important: In version 45.0 and later, use `getUserGroups(communityId, userId)`.

Available to Guest Users

32.0–44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupPage getGroups(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupPage`

getGroups(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of groups that a user is a member of.

API Version

28.0–44.0

Important: In version 45.0 and later, use `getUserGroups(communityId, userId, pageParam, pageSize)`.

Available to Guest Users

32.0–44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupPage getGroups(String communityId, String userId,
Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupPage`

getPhoto(communityId, userId)

Get a user's photo.

API Version

28.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.getPhoto(communityId, userId)`.

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo getPhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

searchUserGroups(communityId, userId, q)

Get the user's groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

30.0–44.0

Important: In version 45.0 and later, use `searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q)`.

Available to Guest Users

32.0–44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupPage searchUserGroups(String communityId, String
userId, String q)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupPage`

searchUserGroups(communityId, userId, q, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of a user's groups that match the search criteria.

API Version

30.0–44.0

Important: In version 45.0 and later, use `searchUserGroupDetails(communityId, userId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`.

Available to Guest Users

32.0–44.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserGroupPage searchUserGroups(String communityId, String
userId, String q, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserGroupPage`

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)

Set an uploaded file as a user's photo.

API Version

28.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)`

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String userId, String fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

fileId
Type: String

ID of a file already uploaded. The file must be an image, and be smaller than 2 GB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the existing file. Specify either an existing version number, or `null` to get the latest version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as the user's photo.

API Version

28.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)`

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)`

Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's photo.

API Version

29.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)`

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the file ID, version number, and cropping parameters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)`

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

API Version

29.0–34.0

Important: In version 35.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.UserProfiles.setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)`

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

CommerceBuyerExperience Class

Get order delivery group, order item, order shipments, shipment items, and order summaries.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceBuyerExperience Methods

These methods are for `CommerceBuyerExperience`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId)
Get order delivery group summaries.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageSize)
Get order delivery group summaries.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageParam)
Get a page of order delivery group summaries.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields)
Get order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageParam, fields)
Get a page of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, pageSize)
Get order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, sortParam)
Get a sorted list of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a sorted list of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId)
Get order item summaries.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageSize)
Get order item summaries.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId)
Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, pageSize)
Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, pageParam)
Get a page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields)
Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageSize)
Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageParam)
Get a page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, sortParam)
Get a sorted list of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a sorted page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId)
Get order shipment items.

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId)
Get order shipment items.

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields)
Get order shipment items with specific fields.

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageToken, pageSize)
Get a page of order shipment items with specific fields.

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageToken, pageSize, sortOrder)
Get a sorted page of order shipment items.

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId)
Get order shipments.

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId)
Get order shipments.

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields)
Get order shipments with specific fields.

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken)
Get a page of order shipments with specific fields.

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder)
Get a sorted page of order shipments with specific fields.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId)
Get order summaries.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId)
Get order summaries.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields)
Get order summaries with specific fields.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken)
Get a page of order summaries with specific fields.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder)
Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder, earliestDate, latestDate)
Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields within a specific date range.

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder, earliestDate, latestDate, ownerScoped)
Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields within a specific date range and scoped to orders owned by the context user.

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId)

Get order delivery group summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection`

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageSize)

Get order delivery group summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection`

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageParam)

Get a page of order delivery group summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection`

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields)

Get order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order delivery group summary or order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageParam, fields)

Get a page of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, String pageParam, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order delivery group summary or order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, pageSize)

Get order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order delivery group summary or order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

`getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, sortParam)`

Get a sorted list of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, List<String> fields, ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummarySort sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order delivery group summary or order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummarySort`

Sort order for order delivery group summaries. Values are:

- `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9).
- `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).

If `null`, `IdAsc` is the default sort order.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection`

`getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, fields, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a sorted list of order delivery group summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection
getOrderDeliveryGroupSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
orderSummaryId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummarySort sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order delivery group summary or order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummarySort`

Sort order for order delivery group summaries. Values are:

- `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9).
- `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).

If `null`, `IdAsc` is the default sort order.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId)

Get order item summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, pageSize)

Get order item summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String
webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

`getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId)`

Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String
webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String
orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, pageSize)

Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String
webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String
orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, pageParam)

Get a page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields)

Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order item summary or product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

`getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageSize)`

Get order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order item summary or product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

`getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageParam)`

Get a page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, List<String> fields, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order item summary or product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

`getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, sortParam)`

Get a sorted list of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, List<String> fields, ConnectApi.OrderItemSummarySort sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order item summary or product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummarySort`

Sort order for order item summaries. Values are:

- `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9).
- `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).

If `null`, `IdAsc` is the default sort order.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

getOrderItemSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, orderSummaryId, orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, fields, pageSize, sortParam)

Get a sorted page of order item summaries for a delivery group summary with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection getOrderItemSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String orderSummaryId, String orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.OrderItemSummarySort sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order delivery group summary.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 order item summary or product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: ConnectApi.OrderItemSummarySort

Sort order for order item summaries. Values are:

- `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9).
- `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).

If `null`, `IdAsc` is the default sort order.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection`

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId)

Get order shipment items.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection getOrderShipmentItems(String
webstoreId, String shipmentId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

shipmentId
Type: String

ID of the shipment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection`

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId)

Get order shipment items.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection getOrderShipmentItems(String
webstoreId, String shipmentId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

shipmentId
Type: String

ID of the shipment.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection`

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields)

Get order shipment items with specific fields.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection getOrderShipmentItems(String
webstoreId, String shipmentId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

shipmentId
Type: String

ID of the shipment.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment items, order item summary, and product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection`

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageToken, pageSize)

Get a page of order shipment items with specific fields.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection getOrderShipmentItems(String webstoreId, String shipmentId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, String pageToken, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

shipmentId
Type: String

ID of the shipment.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment items, order item summary, and product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection`

getOrderShipmentItems(webstoreId, shipmentId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageToken, pageSize, sortOrder)

Get a sorted page of order shipment items.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection getOrderShipmentItems(String webstoreId, String shipmentId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, String pageToken, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemSort sortOrder)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

shipmentId
Type: String

ID of the shipment.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment items, order item summary, and product fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortOrder
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemSort`

Sort order for order shipment items. Values are:

- `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9).
- `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).

If unspecified, defaults to `IdAsc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection`

`getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId)`

Get order shipments.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection getOrderShipments(String webstoreId,
String orderSummaryId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection`

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId)

Get order shipments.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection getOrderShipments(String webstoreId,
String orderSummaryId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection`

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields)

Get order shipments with specific fields.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection getOrderShipments(String webstoreId,
String orderSummaryId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment and order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection`

`getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken)`

Get a page of order shipments with specific fields.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection getOrderShipments(String webstoreId,
String orderSummaryId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize,
String pageToken)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment and order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection`

getOrderShipments(webstoreId, orderSummaryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder)

Get a sorted page of order shipments with specific fields.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection getOrderShipments(String webstoreId,
String orderSummaryId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize,
String pageToken, ConnectApi.OrderShipmentSort sortOrder)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the order summary.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional shipment and order delivery method fields to display in the UI in each item row.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

sortOrder
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentSort`

Sort order for order shipments. Values are:

- `ExpectedDeliveryDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest expected delivery date.
- `ExpectedDeliveryDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent expected delivery date.
- `ShipmentNumberAsc`—Sorts by shipment number in ascending order (0–9).
- `ShipmentNumberDesc`—Sorts by shipment number in descending order (9–0).

If unspecified, defaults to `ShipmentNumberAsc`.

If you're sorting by expected delivery date, make sure the expected delivery date is populated on your shipment records. A `null` value isn't supported and results in an error.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection`

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId)

Get order summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId)

Get order summaries.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields)

Get order summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional order summary fields to display in the UI in each item row.

These order summary fields are returned regardless of fields specified.

- `createdDate`
- `orderSummaryId`
- `orderNumber`
- `orderedDate`
- `ownerId`
- `status`
- `totalAmount`

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation`

`getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken)`

Get a page of order summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize, String pageToken)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional order summary fields to display in the UI in each item row.

These order summary fields are returned regardless of fields specified.

- `createdDate`
- `orderSummaryId`
- `orderNumber`
- `orderedDate`
- `ownerId`
- `status`
- `totalAmount`

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation`

`getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder)`

Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize, String pageToken, ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder sortOrder)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional order summary fields to display in the UI in each item row.

These order summary fields are returned regardless of fields specified.

- `createdDate`
- `orderSummaryId`
- `orderNumber`
- `orderedDate`
- `ownerId`
- `status`
- `totalAmount`

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

sortOrder
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder`

Sort order for order summaries. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest created date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent created date.
- `OrderedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest ordered date.
- `OrderedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent ordered date.

If unspecified, defaults to `OrderedDateDesc`.

If you're sorting by ordered date, make sure the ordered date is populated on your order summary records. A `null` value isn't supported and results in an error.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation`

getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder, earliestDate, latestDate)

Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields within a specific date range.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize, String pageToken, ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder sortOrder, String earliestDate, String latestDate)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional order summary fields to display in the UI in each item row.

These order summary fields are returned regardless of fields specified.

- `createdDate`
- `orderSummaryId`
- `orderNumber`
- `orderedDate`
- `ownerId`
- `status`
- `totalAmount`

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

sortOrder
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder`

Sort order for order summaries. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest created date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent created date.
- `OrderedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest ordered date.
- `OrderedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent ordered date.

If unspecified, defaults to `OrderedDateDesc`.

If you're sorting by ordered date, make sure the ordered date is populated on your order summary records. A `null` value isn't supported and results in an error.

earliestDate
Type: String

Oldest created or ordered date, depending on the `sortOrder` value, for order summaries to return. Results include any orders on and after this date. Expected format is an ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2020-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

latestDate
Type: String

Most recent created or ordered date, depending on the `sortOrder` value, for order summaries to return. Results include any orders before this date. Expected format is an ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2020-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation`

`getOrderSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, fields, pageSize, pageToken, sortOrder, earliestDate, latestDate, ownerScoped)`

Get a sorted page of order summaries with specific fields within a specific date range and scoped to orders owned by the context user.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation getOrderSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Integer pageSize, String pageToken, ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder sortOrder, String earliestDate, String latestDate, Boolean ownerScoped)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

fields
Type: List<String>

List of up to 15 additional order summary fields to display in the UI in each item row.

These order summary fields are returned regardless of fields specified.

- `createdDate`
- `orderSummaryId`
- `orderNumber`
- `orderedDate`
- `ownerId`
- `status`
- `totalAmount`

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

pageToken
Type: String

Specifies the base64 encoded page token. Page tokens are returned as part of the response. If unspecified, the first page is returned.

sortOrder
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder`

Sort order for order summaries. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest created date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent created date.
- `OrderedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest ordered date.
- `OrderedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent ordered date.

If unspecified, defaults to `OrderedDateDesc`.

If you're sorting by ordered date, make sure the ordered date is populated on your order summary records. A `null` value isn't supported and results in an error.

earliestDate
Type: String

Oldest created or ordered date, depending on the `sortOrder` value, for order summaries to return. Results include any orders on and after this date. Expected format is an ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2020-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

latestDate
Type: String

Most recent created or ordered date, depending on the `sortOrder` value, for order summaries to return. Results include any orders before this date. Expected format is an ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2020-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

`ownerScoped`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the results are scoped to orders owned by the context user (`true`) or to orders owned by and shared with the context user (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `true`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation`

CommerceCart Class

Get, create, update, and delete carts. Get cart items, add items to carts, update and delete cart items.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceCart Methods

These methods are for `CommerceCart`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

addItemsToCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItems)
Add a batch of up to 100 items to a cart.

addItemToCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemInput)
Add an item to a cart.

copyCartToWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartToWishlistInput)
Copy the products from a cart to a wishlist.

createCart(webstoreId, cart)
Create a cart.

deleteCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)
Delete a cart.

deleteCartItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemId)
Delete an item from a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)
Get items in a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam)
Get a page of items in a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, sortParam)
Get a sorted page of items in a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a specified size page of items in a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a specified size, sorted page of items in a cart.

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, productFields, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a specified size, sorted page of items filtered by product fields in a cart.

getCartSummary(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)
Get a cart.

getOrCreateActiveCartSummary(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)
Get a cart or create an active cart if one doesn't exist.

setCartMessagesVisibility(webstoreId, activeCartOrId, effectiveAccountId, messageVisibility)
Set the visibility for cart messages.

updateCartItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemId, cartItem)
Update an item in a cart.

`addItemsToCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItems)`

Add a batch of up to 100 items to a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] addItemsToCart(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, List<ConnectApi.BatchInput> cartItems)
```

Parameters

`webstoreId`
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

`effectiveAccountId`
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

`activeCartOrId`
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

cartItems
Type: List<ConnectApi.BatchInput>

The list can contain up to 100 ConnectApi.BatchInput objects. In the ConnectApi.BatchInput constructor, the input object must be ConnectApi.CartItemInput.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BatchResult[]

The ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult() method returns a ConnectApi.CartItem object.

The returned objects correspond to each of the input objects and are returned in the same order as the input objects.

The method call fails only if an error occurs that affects the entire operation (such as a parsing failure). If an individual object causes an error, the error is embedded within the ConnectApi.BatchResult list.

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can add, update, and delete items in carts.

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addItemToCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemInput)

Add an item to a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItem addItemToCart(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, ConnectApi.CartItemInput cartItemInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If null, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

`cartItemInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemInput`

A `ConnectApi.CartItemInput` object representing an item to add to the cart.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItem`

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can add, update, and delete items in carts.

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

`copyCartToWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartToWishlistInput)`

Copy the products from a cart to a wishlist.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartToWishlistResult copyCartToWishlist(String webstoreId,
String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, ConnectApi.CartToWishlistInput
cartToWishlistInput)
```

Parameters

`webstoreId`
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

`effectiveAccountId`
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

`activeCartOrId`
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

cartToWishlistInput
Type: ConnectApi.CartToWishlistInput

A ConnectApi.CartToWishlistInput object indicating the wishlist to copy products to.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CartToWishlistResult

createCart(webstoreId, cart)

Create a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartSummary createCart(String webstoreId, ConnectApi.CartInput
cart)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

cart
Type: ConnectApi.CartInput

A ConnectApi.CartInput object representing a cart.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CartSummary

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can create and delete carts.

deleteCart(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)

Delete a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteCart(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can create and delete carts.

deleteCartItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemId)

Delete an item from a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteCartItem(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String cartItemId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

cartItemId
Type: String

ID of the cart item.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can add, update, and delete items in carts.

`getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)`

Get items in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemCollection`

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam)

Get a page of items in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemCollection`

`getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, sortParam)`

Get a sorted page of items in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String pageParam, ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder`

Sort order for items in a cart. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `NameAsc`—Sorts by name in ascending alphabetical order (A–Z).
- `NameDesc`—Sorts by name in descending alphabetical order (Z–A).
- `SalesPriceAsc`—Sorts from lowest to highest negotiated price.
- `SalesPriceDesc`—Sorts from highest to lowest negotiated price.

If `null`, the default is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CartItemCollection

getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a specified size page of items in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CartItemCollection

`getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a specified size, sorted page of items in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder`

Sort order for items in a cart. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `NameAsc`—Sorts by name in ascending alphabetical order (A–Z).
- `NameDesc`—Sorts by name in descending alphabetical order (Z–A).

- `SalesPriceAsc`—Sorts from lowest to highest negotiated price.
- `SalesPriceDesc`—Sorts from highest to lowest negotiated price.

If `null`, the default is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemCollection`

`getCartItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, productFields, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a specified size, sorted page of items filtered by product fields in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItemCollection getCartItems(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String productFields, String pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder sortParam)
```

Parameters

`webstoreId`
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

`effectiveAccountId`
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

`activeCartOrId`
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

`productFields`
Type: String

Comma-separated list of up to five product fields. Results include fields that you have access to. Some product fields (such as `productName` and `sku`) are returned even when not included in the *`productFields`* parameter.

`pageParam`
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder`

Sort order for items in a cart. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.
- `NameAsc`—Sorts by name in ascending alphabetical order (A–Z).
- `NameDesc`—Sorts by name in descending alphabetical order (Z–A).
- `SalesPriceAsc`—Sorts from lowest to highest negotiated price.
- `SalesPriceDesc`—Sorts from highest to lowest negotiated price.

If `null`, the default is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemCollection`

getCartSummary(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)

Get a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartSummary getCartSummary(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`. If you specify `active` and there isn't an active cart, you get an error.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartSummary`

getOrCreateActiveCartSummary(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId)

Get a cart or create an active cart if one doesn't exist.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartSummary getOrCreateActiveCartSummary(String webstoreId,
String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`. If you specify `active` and there isn't an active cart, one is created.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartSummary`

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can create and delete carts.

setCartMessagesVisibility(webstoreId, activeCartOrId, effectiveAccountId, messageVisibility)

Set the visibility for cart messages.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityResult setCartMessagesVisibility(String webstoreId, String activeCartOrId, String effectiveAccountId, ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityInput messageVisibility)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

messageVisibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityInput`

A `ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityInput` object specifying the visibility setting.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityResult`

updateCartItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, activeCartOrId, cartItemId, cartItem)

Update an item in a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CartItem updateCartItem(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String activeCartOrId, String cartItemId, ConnectApi.CartItemInput cartItem)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

activeCartOrId
Type: String

ID of the cart, `active`, or `current`. The `current` value is available in version 50.0 and later and indicates a cart with a status that isn't `Closed` or `PendingDelete`.

cartItemId
Type: String

ID of the cart item.

cartItem
Type: `ConnectApi.CartItemInput`

A `ConnectApi.CartItemInput` object representing a cart item to update.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CartItem`

Usage

Buyers with read access to carts can add, update, and delete items in carts.

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

CommerceCatalog Class

Get products, product categories, and product category paths.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceCatalog Methods

These methods are for `CommerceCatalog`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory)
Get a product.

getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory, excludeVariationInfo, excludeAttributeSetInfo)
Get a product with variation and attribute information.

getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory, excludeVariationInfo, excludeAttributeSetInfo, excludeQuantityRule)
Get a product with quantity rule information.

getProductCategory(webstoreId, productCategoryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia)
Get a product category.

getProductCategoryChildren(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, parentProductCategoryId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia)
Get product categories.

getProductCategoryPath(webstoreId, productCategoryId)
Get the product category path from the root category to the current category.

`getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory)`

Get a product.

API Version

49.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductDetail getProduct(String webstoreId, String productId,
String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Boolean excludeFields, List<String>
mediaGroups, Boolean excludeMedia, Boolean excludeEntitlementDetails, Boolean
excludePrimaryProductCategory)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productId
Type: String

ID of the product.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

fields
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of field names.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all fields are returned. There is no limit to the number of fields you can specify. The number of fields and number of characters in the field name may affect the URL size limit. If `excludeFields` and `fields` are specified, the `excludeFields` parameter takes precedence.

excludeFields
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the fields are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

mediaGroups
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of developer names of media group records.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all media groups are returned. If `excludeMedia` and `mediaGroups` are specified, the `excludeMedia` parameter takes precedence.

excludeMedia
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the media groups and default images of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeEntitlementDetails
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the entitlement details of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludePrimaryProductCategory
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the primary category path of the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductDetail`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

`getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory, excludeVariationInfo, excludeAttributeSetInfo)`

Get a product with variation and attribute information.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductDetail getProduct(String webstoreId, String productId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Boolean excludeFields, List<String> mediaGroups, Boolean excludeMedia, Boolean excludeEntitlementDetails, Boolean excludePrimaryProductCategory, Boolean excludeVariationInfo, Boolean excludeAttributeSetInfo)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productId
Type: String

ID of the product.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

fields
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of field names.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all fields are returned. There is no limit to the number of fields you can specify. The number of fields and number of characters in the field name may affect the URL size limit. If `excludeFields` and `fields` are specified, the `excludeFields` parameter takes precedence.

excludeFields
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the fields are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

mediaGroups
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of developer names of media group records.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all media groups are returned. If `excludeMedia` and `mediaGroups` are specified, the `excludeMedia` parameter takes precedence.

excludeMedia
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the media groups and default images of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeEntitlementDetails
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the entitlement details of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludePrimaryProductCategory
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the primary category path of the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeVariationInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the variation information for the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeAttributeSetInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the attribute set information for the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductDetail`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

getProduct(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia, excludeEntitlementDetails, excludePrimaryProductCategory, excludeVariationInfo, excludeAttributeSetInfo, excludeQuantityRule)

Get a product with quantity rule information.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductDetail getProduct(String webstoreId, String productId,
String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Boolean excludeFields, List<String>
mediaGroups, Boolean excludeMedia, Boolean excludeEntitlementDetails, Boolean
excludePrimaryProductCategory, Boolean excludeVariationInfo, Boolean
excludeAttributeSetInfo, Boolean excludeQuantityRule)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productId
Type: String

ID of the product.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

fields
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of field names.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all fields are returned. There is no limit to the number of fields you can specify. The number of fields and number of characters in the field name may affect the URL size limit. If `excludeFields` and `fields` are specified, the `excludeFields` parameter takes precedence.

excludeFields
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the fields are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

mediaGroups
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of developer names of media group records.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all media groups are returned. If `excludeMedia` and `mediaGroups` are specified, the `excludeMedia` parameter takes precedence.

excludeMedia
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the media groups and default images of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeEntitlementDetails
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the entitlement details of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludePrimaryProductCategory
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the primary category path of the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeVariationInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the variation information for the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeAttributeSetInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the attribute set information for the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

excludeQuantityRule
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the quantity rule information for the product is returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductDetail`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

getProductCategory(webstoreId, productCategoryId, effectiveAccountId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia)

Get a product category.

API Version

49.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail getProductCategory(String webstoreId,
String productCategoryId, String effectiveAccountId, List<String> fields, Boolean
excludeFields, List<String> mediaGroups, Boolean excludeMedia)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productCategoryId
Type: String

ID of the product category.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

fields
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of field names.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all fields are returned. There is no limit to the number of fields you can specify. The number of fields and number of characters in the field name may affect the URL size limit. If `excludeFields` and `fields` are specified, the `excludeFields` parameter takes precedence.

excludeFields
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the fields are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

mediaGroups
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of developer names of media group records.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all media groups are returned. If `excludeMedia` and `mediaGroups` are specified, the `excludeMedia` parameter takes precedence.

excludeMedia
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the media groups and default images of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail`

`getProductCategoryChildren(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, parentProductCategoryId, fields, excludeFields, mediaGroups, excludeMedia)`

Get product categories.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetailCollection
getProductCategoryChildren(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String
parentProductCategoryId, List<String> fields, Boolean excludeFields, List<String>
mediaGroups, Boolean excludeMedia)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

parentProductCategoryId
Type: String

ID of the product category for which you want to get all the children product categories. If `null`, returns all the top-level product categories for the store.

fields
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of field names.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all fields are returned. There is no limit to the number of fields you can specify. The number of fields and number of characters in the field name may affect the URL size limit. If `excludeFields` and `fields` are specified, the `excludeFields` parameter takes precedence.

excludeFields
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the fields are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

mediaGroups
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of developer names of media group records.

If this list is empty or unspecified, all media groups are returned. If `excludeMedia` and `mediaGroups` are specified, the `excludeMedia` parameter takes precedence.

excludeMedia
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the media groups and default images of the product are returned (`false`) or not (`true`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetailCollection

getProductCategoryPath(webstoreId, productCategoryId)

Get the product category path from the root category to the current category.

API Version

49.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductCategoryPath getProductCategoryPath(String webstoreId,
String productCategoryId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productCategoryId
Type: String

ID of the product category.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ProductCategoryPath

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

CommerceSearch Class

Get sort rules for the live search index. Get product search suggestions. Search products.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceSearch Methods

These methods are for `CommerceSearch`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSortRules(webstoreId)
Get sort rules for the live index.

getSuggestions(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, searchTerm, maxResults)
Get suggestions for product searches.

searchProducts(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, productSearchInput)
Search products.

`getSortRules(webstoreId)`

Get sort rules for the live index.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SortRulesCollection getSortRules(String webstoreId)
```

Parameters

`webstoreId`
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.SortRulesCollection`

`getSuggestions(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, searchTerm, maxResults)`

Get suggestions for product searches.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductSearchSuggestionsResults getSuggestions(String
webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String searchTerm, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

searchTerm
Type: String

Search term with up to 10 characters. If specified, the service returns autocomplete suggestions from the user's recent searches. If unspecified, the service returns suggestions from the user's recent searches.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of suggestions. Values are from 1 through 10. If unspecified, defaults to 10.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductSearchSuggestionsResults`

searchProducts(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, productSearchInput)

Search products.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults searchProducts(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, ConnectApi.ProductSearchInput productSearchInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

productSearchInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ProductSearchInput`

A `ConnectApi.ProductSearchInput` body with either a category ID or search terms.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults`

Usage

Searching products respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access this resource.

CommerceSearchSettings Class

Get indexes and create an index of a product catalog.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceSearchSettings Methods

These methods are for `CommerceSearchSettings`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createCommerceSearchIndex(webstoreId)
Create an index of a product catalog.

getCommerceSearchIndex(webstoreId, indexId)
Get a Commerce search index.

getCommerceSearchIndexes(webstoreId)
Get Commerce search indexes.

createCommerceSearchIndex(webstoreId)

Create an index of a product catalog.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex postCommerceSearchIndex(String webstoreId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex

Usage

This method creates a live index that replaces the current live index. Any indexes that are in progress are removed when you manually create an index with this method.

getCommerceSearchIndex(webstoreId, indexId)

Get a Commerce search index.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex getSingleCommerceSearchIndex(String
webstoreId, String indexId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

indexId
Type: String

ID of the index.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex

getCommerceSearchIndexes(webstoreId)

Get Commerce search indexes.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCollection getCommerceSearchIndexes(String webstoreId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCollection

CommerceStorePricing Class

Get product prices.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceStorePricing Methods

These methods are for `CommerceStorePricing`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getProductPrice(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId)
Get the list and buyer price for a product.

getProductPrices(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, pricingInput)
Get the price for multiple products.

`getProductPrice(webstoreId, productId, effectiveAccountId)`

Get the list and buyer price for a product.

API Version

49.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ProductPrice getProductPrice(String webstoreId, String
productId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

productId
Type: String

ID of the product.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ProductPrice`

Usage

This method respects buyer entitlements and only users entitled to view product and price data can access it.

To get price information, the context store and account must have 25 or fewer price books associated with them. To reduce the number of active price books for the account within the store, you can change the active status, modify valid dates, or remove assignments of price books.

`getProductPrices(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, pricingInput)`

Get the price for multiple products.

API Version

49.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PricingResult getProductPrices(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, ConnectApi.PricingInput pricingInput)
```

Parameters

`webstoreId`
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

`effectiveAccountId`
Type: String

ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If `null`, the default value is determined from context.

`pricingInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.PricingInput`

A `ConnectApi.PricingInput` body with the list of line items to price.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PricingResult`

Usage

This method respects buyer entitlements and only users entitled to view product and price data can access it.

To get price information, the context store and account must have 25 or fewer price books associated with them. To reduce the number of active price books for the account within the store, you can change the active status, modify valid dates, or remove assignments of price books.

CommerceWishlist Class

Get, create, update, and delete wishlists. Add wishlists to carts. Get wishlist items, add items to wishlists, and delete wishlist items.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommerceWishlist Methods

These methods are for `CommerceWishlist`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

addItemToWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId, wishlistItemInput)
Add an item to a wishlist for the context user.

addItemToWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistItemInput)
Add an item to a wishlist.

addWishlistToCart(webstoreId, wishlistId)
Add a wishlist to the active cart for the context user.

addWishlistToCart(webstoreId, wishlistId, effectiveAccountId)
Add a wishlist to the active cart.

addWishlistToCartWithCartId(webstoreId, wishlistId, cartId)
Add a wishlist to a cart.

addWishlistToCartWithCartId(webstoreId, wishlistId, cartId, effectiveAccountId)
Add a wishlist to a cart.

createWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistInput)
Create a wishlist for the context user.

createWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistInput)
Create a wishlist.

deleteWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId)
Delete a wishlist for the context user.

deleteWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId)
Delete a wishlist.

getWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, sortItemsBy)
Get a wishlist with product fields sorted by items.

getWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageSize, sortItemsBy)
Get a wishlist with product fields sorted by items with a specified number of items per page.

getWishlistItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageParam, sortItemsBy)
Get a page of sorted wishlist items with product fields.

getWishlistItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageParam, pageSize, sortItemsBy)
Get a page of specified size of sorted wishlist items with product fields.

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList)
Get wishlist summaries.

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList, productFields, sortItemsBy)
Get wishlist summaries with product fields sorted by items.

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList, productFields, pageSize, sortItemsBy)
Get wishlist summaries with product fields sorted by items with a specified number of items per page.

removeWishlistItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistItemId)
Remove an item from a wishlist.

updateWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId, wishlistUpdateInput)
Update the name of a wishlist for the context user.

updateWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistUpdateInput)
Update the name of a wishlist.

`addItemToWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId, wishlistItemInput)`

Add an item to a wishlist for the context user.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistItem addItemToWishlist(String webstoreId, String
wishlistId, ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput wishlistItemInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

wishlistItemInput
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput`

A `ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput` body with the item to add to the wishlist.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.WishlistItem

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addItemToWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistItemInput)

Add an item to a wishlist.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistItem addItemToWishlist(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput wishlistItemInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

wishlistItemInput
Type: ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput

A `ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput` body with the item to add to the wishlist.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.WishlistItem

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addWishlistToCart(webstoreId, wishlistId)

Add a wishlist to the active cart for the context user.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult addWishlistToCart(String webstoreId,
String wishlistId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addWishlistToCart(webstoreId, wishlistId, effectiveAccountId)

Add a wishlist to the active cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult addWishlistToCart(String webstoreId,
String wishlistId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addWishlistToCartWithCartId(webstoreId, wishlistId, cartId)

Add a wishlist to a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult addWishlistToCartWithCartId(String
webstoreId, String wishlistId, String cartId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

cartId
Type: String

ID of the cart. If `null`, wishlist items are added to the active cart.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

addWishlistToCartWithCartId(webstoreId, wishlistId, cartId, effectiveAccountId)

Add a wishlist to a cart.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult addWishlistToCartWithCartId(String webstoreId, String wishlistId, String cartId, String effectiveAccountId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

cartId
Type: String

ID of the cart. If `null`, wishlist items are added to the active cart.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult`

Usage

This method respects buyer View Product entitlements and only users entitled to view product data can access it.

createWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistInput)

Create a wishlist for the context user.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Wishlist createWishlist(String webstoreId,
ConnectApi.WishlistInput wishlistInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistInput
Type: ConnectApi.WishlistInput

A `ConnectApi.WishlistInput` body that includes the wishlist name and items.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Wishlist

createWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistInput)

Create a wishlist.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Wishlist createWishlist(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, ConnectApi.WishlistInput wishlistInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistInput
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistInput`

A `ConnectApi.WishlistInput` body that includes the wishlist name and items.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Wishlist`

deleteWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId)

Delete a wishlist for the context user.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteWishlist(String webstoreId, String wishlistId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId)

Delete a wishlist.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteWishlist(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

Return Value

Type: Void

getWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, sortItemsBy)

Get a wishlist with product fields sorted by items.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Wishlist getWishlist(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, String productFields, ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Wishlist`

`getWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageSize, sortItemsBy)`

Get a wishlist with product fields sorted by items with a specified number of items per page.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Wishlist getWishlist(String webstoreId, String
effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, String productFields, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Wishlist`

`getWishlistItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageParam, sortItemsBy)`

Get a page of sorted wishlist items with product fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection getWishlistItems(String webstoreId,
String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, String productFields, String pageParam,
ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection`

`getWishlistItems(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, productFields, pageParam, pageSize, sortItemsBy)`

Get a page of specified size of sorted wishlist items with product fields.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection getWishlistItems(String webstoreId,
String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, String productFields, String pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 200. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection`

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList)

Get wishlist summaries.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary getWishlistSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, Boolean includeDisplayedList)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

includeDisplayedList
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include the displayed list (`true`) or not (`false`). If `null`, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary`

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList, productFields, sortItemsBy)

Get wishlist summaries with product fields sorted by items.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary getWishlistSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, Boolean includeDisplayedList, String productFields, ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

includeDisplayedList
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include the displayed list (`true`) or not (`false`).

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

If *includeDisplayedList* is `false`, *productFields* is ignored.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

If *includeDisplayedList* is `false`, *sortItemsBy* is ignored.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary`

getWishlistSummaries(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, includeDisplayedList, productFields, pageSize, sortItemsBy)

Get wishlist summaries with product fields sorted by items with a specified number of items per page.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary getWishlistSummaries(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, Boolean includeDisplayedList, Integer pageSize, String productFields, pageSize, ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder sortItemsBy)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

includeDisplayedList
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include the displayed list (`true`) or not (`false`).

productFields
Type: String

Comma-separated list of custom product fields. Fields aren't case-sensitive. For example, `ProductCode` and `productcode` return the same results.

If *includeDisplayedList* is `false`, *productFields* is ignored.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortItemsBy
Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`

Sort order for wishlist items. Values are:

- `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date.
- `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

The default sort order is `CreatedDateDesc`.

If *includeDisplayedList* is `false`, *sortItemsBy* is ignored.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary`

removeWishlistItem(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistItemId)

Remove an item from a wishlist.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void removeWishlistItem(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId,
String wishlistId, String wishlistItemId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If `null`, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

wishlistItemId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist item to remove.

Return Value

Type: Void

updateWishlist(webstoreId, wishlistId, wishlistUpdateInput)

Update the name of a wishlist for the context user.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistSummary updateWishlist(String webstoreId, String
wishlistId, ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput wishlistUpdateInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

wishlistUpdateInput
Type: ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput

A ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput body with the wishlist name to update.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.WishlistSummary

updateWishlist(webstoreId, effectiveAccountId, wishlistId, wishlistUpdateInput)

Update the name of a wishlist.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.WishlistSummary updateWishlist(String webstoreId, String effectiveAccountId, String wishlistId, ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput wishlistUpdateInput)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

effectiveAccountId
Type: String

ID of the account for which the request is made. If null, defaults to the account ID for the context user.

wishlistId
Type: String

ID of the wishlist.

wishlistUpdateInput
Type: ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput

A ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput body with the wishlist name to update.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.WishlistSummary

Communities Class

Access general information about Experience Cloud sites in your org.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Communities Methods

The following are methods for Communities. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommunities()
Get a list of Experience Cloud sites that the context user has access to.

getCommunities(communityStatus)
Get a list of Experience Cloud sites with the specified status that the context user has access to.

getCommunity(communityId)
Get information about an Experience Cloud site.

getCommunities()

Get a list of Experience Cloud sites that the context user has access to.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommunityPage getCommunities()
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CommunityPage

getCommunities(communityStatus)

Get a list of Experience Cloud sites with the specified status that the context user has access to.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CommunityPage getCommunities(ConnectApi.CommunityStatus
communityStatus)
```

Parameters

communityStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityStatus`

communityStatus—Status of the Experience Cloud site. Values are:

- `Live`
- `Inactive`
- `UnderConstruction`

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityPage`

getCommunity(communityId)

Get information about an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

28.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Community getCommunity(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of an Experience Cloud site. You can't specify `null` or `internal`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Community`

CommunityModeration Class

Access information about flagged feed items and comments in an Experience Cloud site. Add and remove flags from comments and feed items.

Namespace

ConnectApi

CommunityModeration Methods

The following are methods for `CommunityModeration`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId)
Add a moderation flag to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, visibility)
Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, note)
Add a moderation flag with a note to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type with a note to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, visibility)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, visibility, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility with a note to a comment.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, visibility, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility with a note to a comment.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
Add a moderation flag to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility)
Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, note)
Add a moderation flag with a note to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type with a note to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, visibility)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility with a note to a feed element.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, visibility, note)
Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility with a note to a feed element.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId)
Get the moderation flags on a comment.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, visibility)
Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a comment.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, pageSize, pageParam)
Get a page of moderation flags on a comment.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, visibility, pageSize, pageParam)
Get a page of moderation flags with specified visibility on a comment.

getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)
Get the moderation flags on a feed element.

getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility)
Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed element.

getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of moderation flags on a feed element.

getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility, pageSize, pageParam)
Get a page of moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed element.

removeFlagFromComment(communityId, commentId, userId)
Remove a moderation flag from a comment.

removeFlagFromFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, userId)
Remove a moderation flag from a feed element.

`addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId)`

Add a moderation flag to a comment.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, visibility)

Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility to a comment.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type)`

Add a moderation flag of the specified type to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String
commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, note)`

Add a moderation flag with a note to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, String note)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`commentId`
Type: String

ID for a comment.

`note`
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, note)

Add a moderation flag of the specified type with a note to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, visibility)

Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, visibility, note)`

Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility with a note to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToComment(communityId, commentId, type, visibility, note)`

Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility with a note to a comment.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a comment, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)`

Add a moderation flag to a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility)

Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility to a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. One of these values:

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type)`

Add a moderation flag of the specified type to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, note)

Add a moderation flag with a note to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, note)

Add a moderation flag of the specified type with a note to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

type
Type: ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, visibility)

Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type,
ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. One of these values:

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility, note)

Add a moderation flag of the specified visibility with a note to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. One of these values:

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, type, visibility, note)

Add a moderation flag of the specified type and visibility with a note to a feed element.

API Version

38.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability addFlagToFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType type,
ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, String note)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`

Type of moderation flag.

- `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content.
- `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.

If a type isn't specified, it defaults to `FlagAsInappropriate`.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. One of these values:

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

note
Type: String

A note of up to 4,000 characters about the flag.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationCapability`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed element, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId)

Get the moderation flags on a comment.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnComment(String communityId, String commentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, visibility)

Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a comment.

API Version

30.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, pageSize, pageParam)`

Get a page of moderation flags on a comment.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnComment(String communityId, String commentId, Integer pageSize, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. The default size is 0.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

getFlagsOnComment(communityId, commentId, visibility, pageSize, pageParam)

Get a page of moderation flags with specified visibility on a comment.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnComment(String communityId, String commentId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, Integer pageSize, String pageParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. The default size is 0.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId)`

Get the moderation flags on a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability getFlagsOnFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility)`

Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability getFlagsOnFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedElementId`
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

`visibility`
Type: ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. One of these values:

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of moderation flags on a feed element.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability getFlagsOnFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. The default size is 0.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility, pageSize, pageParam)`

Get a page of moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed element.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationCapability getFlagsOnFeedElement(String communityId,
String feedElementId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility, Integer pageSize,
String pageParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. The default size is 0.

pageParam
Type: String

Page token to use to view the page. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, for example, `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

removeFlagFromComment(communityId, commentId, userId)

Remove a moderation flag from a comment.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags removeFlagFromComment(String communityId,
String commentId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

commentId
Type: String

ID for a comment.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

To remove a moderation flag, the context user must have added the flag or must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

removeFlagFromFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, userId)

Remove a moderation flag from a feed element.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static void removeFlagFromFeedElement(String communityId, String feedElementId,
String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

userId
Type: String

The ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Usage

To remove a moderation flag, the context user must have added the flag or must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

Retired CommunityModeration Methods

The following methods for `CommunityModeration` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

addFlagToFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)
Add a moderation flag to a feed item.

addFlagToFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, visibility)
Add a moderation flag with specified visibility to a feed item.

getFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)
Get the moderation flags on a feed item.

getFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, visibility)
Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed item.

removeFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, userId)
Remove a moderation flag from a feed item.

addFlagToFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)

Add a moderation flag to a feed item.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed item, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

addFlagToFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, visibility)

Add a moderation flag with specified visibility to a feed item.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use addFlagToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags addFlagToFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To add a flag to a feed item, Allow members to flag content must be selected for an Experience Cloud site.

`getFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId)`

Get the moderation flags on a feed item.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`getFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, visibility)`

Get the moderation flags with specified visibility on a feed item.

API Version

30.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use getFlagsOnFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, visibility).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags getFlagsOnFeedItem(String communityId, String feedItemId, ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedItemId
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`

Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types.

- `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

- `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`

Usage

To get moderation flags, the context user must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

`removeFlagsOnFeedItem(communityId, feedItemId, userId)`

Remove a moderation flag from a feed item.

API Version

29.0–31.0

Important: In version 32.0 and later, use removeFlagFromFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, userId).

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ModerationFlags removeFlagsOnFeedItem(String communityId,
String feedItemId, String userId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`feedItemId`
Type: String

ID for a feed item.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

To remove a moderation flag, the context user must have added the flag or must have the Moderate Experiences Feeds permission.

ContentHub Class

Access Files Connect repositories and their files and folders.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ContentHub Methods

The following are methods for `ContentHub`. All methods are static.

Use `ContentHub` methods to work with Files Connect repositories.

IN THIS SECTION:

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)
Add a repository item.

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)
Add a repository item in an Experience Cloud site.

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)
Add a repository item, including the binary file.

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)
Add a repository item, including the binary file, in an Experience Cloud site.

getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)
Get the item types that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder.

getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)
Get the item types, filtered by type, that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder.

getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)
Get the item types that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)
Get the item types, filtered by type, that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)
Get a repository file preview.

getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)
Get a page or page range of a repository file preview.

getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)
Get a repository file preview in an Experience Cloud site.

getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)
Get a page or page range of a repository file preview in an Experience Cloud site.

getItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)
Get information about an item type associated with a repository.

getItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)
Get information about an item type associated with a repository in an Experience Cloud site.

getPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Get information about a repository file's supported previews.

getPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Get information about a repository file's supported previews in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositories()

Get a list of repositories.

getRepositories(communityId)

Get a list of repositories in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositories(pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of repositories.

getRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of repositories in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepository(repositoryId)

Get a repository.

getRepository(communityId, repositoryId)

Get a repository in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Get a repository file.

getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)

Get a repository file with or without permissions information.

getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Get a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)

Get a repository file with or without permissions information in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get a repository folder.

getRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get a repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get repository folder items.

getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get repository folder items in an Experience Cloud site.

getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of repository folder items.

getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of repository folder items in an Experience Cloud site.

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)

Update the name of a repository file.

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)

Update the content of a repository file.

updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)
Update the name of a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)
Update the content of a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)

Add a repository item.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem addRepositoryItem(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example creates a file without binary content (metadata only) in a Google Drive repository folder. After the file is created, we show the file's ID, name, description, external URL, and download URL.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs';

final ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput newItem = new ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput();
newItem.itemTypeId = 'document'; //see getAllowedTypes for any file item types available
for creation/update
newItem.fields = new List<ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput>();

//Metadata: name field
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInput = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInput.name = 'name';
fieldValueInput.value = 'new folder item name.txt';
newItem.fields.add(fieldValueInput);

//Metadata: description field
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInputDesc = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInputDesc.name = 'description';
fieldValueInputDesc.value = 'It does describe it';
newItem.fields.add(fieldValueInputDesc);

final ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem newFolderItem =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.addRepositoryItem(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFolderId, newItem);
final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary newFile = newFolderItem.file;
System.debug(String.format('New file - id: \'\'{0}\'\', name: \'\'{1}\'\', description:
\'\'{2}\'\' \n external URL: \'\'{3}\'\', download URL: \'\'{4}\'\'', new String[]{
newFile.id, newFile.name, newFile.description, newFile.externalDocumentUrl,
newFile.downloadUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestAddRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)

Add a repository item in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem addRepositoryItem(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestAddRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)

Add a repository item, including the binary file.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem addRepositoryItem(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput
fileData)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: ConnectApi.BinaryInput

The binary file.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example creates a file with binary content and metadata in a Google Drive repository folder. After the file is created, we show the file's ID, name, description, external URL, and download URL.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs';

final ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput newItem = new ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput();
newItem.itemTypeId = 'document'; //see getAllowedTypes for any file item types available
for creation/update
newItem.fields = new List<ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput>();

//Metadata: name field
Final String newFileName = 'new folder item name.txt';
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInput = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInput.name = 'name';
fieldValueInput.value = newFileName;
newItem.fields.add(fieldValueInput);
```

```
//Metadata: description field
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInputDesc = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInputDesc.name = 'description';
fieldValueInputDesc.value = 'It does describe it';
newItem.fields.add(fieldValueInputDesc);

//Binary content
final Blob newFileBlob = Blob.valueOf('awesome content for brand new file');
final String newFileMimeType = 'text/plain';
final ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileBinaryInput = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(newFileBlob,
newFileMimeType, newFileName);

final ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem newFolderItem =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.addRepositoryItem(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFolderId, newItem,
fileBinaryInput);
final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary newFile = newFolderItem.file;
System.debug(String.format('New file - id: \'\'{0}\'\', name: \'\'{1}\'\', description:
\'\'{2}\'\' \n external URL: \'\'{3}\'\', download URL: \'\'{4}\'\'', new String[]{
newFile.id, newFile.name, newFile.description, newFile.externalDocumentUrl,
newFile.downloadUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestAddRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)

Add a repository item, including the binary file, in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem addRepositoryItem(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestAddRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)`

Get the item types that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection getAllowedItemTypes(String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)`

Get the item types, filtered by type, that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection getAllowedItemTypes(String
repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ConnectContentHubItemType filter)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType

Item types. Values are:

- Any—Includes files and folders.
- FilesOnly—Includes files only.
- FoldersOnly—Includes folders only.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with setTest). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example calls getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType.FilesOnly) to get the first ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary.id of a file. The context user can create allowed files in a repository folder in the external system.

```
final ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection allowedItemTypesColl =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId,
ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType.FilesOnly);
final List<ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary> allowedItemTypes =
allowedItemTypesColl.allowedItemTypes;
string allowedFileItemTypeId = null;
if(allowedItemTypes.size() > 0){
   ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary allowedItemTypeSummary = allowedItemTypes.get(0);

   allowedFileItemTypeId = allowedItemTypeSummary.id;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get the item types that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection getAllowedItemTypes(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)`

Get the item types, filtered by type, that the context user is allowed to create in the repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection getAllowedItemTypes(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ConnectContentHubItemType filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType`

Item types. Values are:

- `Any`—Includes files and folders.
- `FilesOnly`—Includes files only.
- `FoldersOnly`—Includes folders only.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)`

Get a repository file preview.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreview getFilePreview(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FilePreview

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example calls `getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat.Thumbnail)` to get the thumbnail format preview along with its respective URL and number of thumbnail renditions. For each thumbnail format, we show every rendition URL available.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFileId =
'document:1-zcA1BaeoQbo2_yNFiHCcK6QJTPmOke-kHFC4TYg3rk';final ConnectApi.FilePreview
filePreview =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getFilePreview(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId,
ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat.Thumbnail);System.debug(String.format('Preview - URL:
\'\'{0}\'\', format: \'\'{1}\'\', nbr of
renditions for this format: {2}', new String[]{ filePreview.url,
filePreview.format.name(),String.valueOf(filePreview.previewUrls.size())}));for(ConnectApi.FilePreviewUrl
 filePreviewUrl : filePreview.previewUrls){
```

```
    System.debug('-----> Rendition URL: ' + filePreviewUrl.previewUrl);
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)`

Get a page or page range of a repository file preview.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreview getFilePreview(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, Integer startPageNumber, Integer endPageNumber)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

startPageNumber
Type: Integer

The starting page number in the range of file preview URLs.

endPageNumber
Type: Integer

The ending page number in the range of file preview URLs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreview`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)`

Get a repository file preview in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreview getFilePreview(String communityId, String
repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreview`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)`

Get a page or page range of a repository file preview in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreview getFilePreview(String communityId, String
repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, Integer
startPageNumber, Integer endPageNumber)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

startPageNumber
Type: Integer

The starting page number in the range of file preview URLs.

endPageNumber
Type: Integer

The ending page number in the range of file preview URLs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreview`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)`

Get information about an item type associated with a repository.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail getItemType(String repositoryId,
String repositoryItemTypeId)
```

Parameters

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryItemTypeId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository item type.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)`

Get information about an item type associated with a repository in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail getItemType(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryItemTypeId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryItemTypeId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository item type.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)`

Get information about a repository file's supported previews.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection getPreviews(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFileId)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets all supported preview formats and their respective URLs and number of renditions. For each supported preview format, we show every rendition URL available.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFileId =
'document:1-zcA1BaeoQbo2_yNFiHCcK6QJTPmOke-kHFC4TYg3rk';
final ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection previewsCollection =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getPreviews(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId);
for(ConnectApi.FilePreview filePreview : previewsCollection.previews){
   System.debug(String.format('Preview - URL: \'\'{0}\'\', format: \'\'{1}\'\', nbr of
renditions for this format: {2}', new String[]{ filePreview.url,
filePreview.format.name(),String.valueOf(filePreview.previewUrls.size())}));
   for(ConnectApi.FilePreviewUrl filePreviewUrl : filePreview.previewUrls){
      System.debug('-----> Rendition URL: ' + filePreviewUrl.previewUrl);
```

```
        }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)`

Get information about a repository file's supported previews in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection getPreviews(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositories()`

Get a list of repositories.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection getRepositories()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets all repositories and gets the first SharePoint online repository found.

```
final string sharePointOnlineProviderType ='ContentHubSharepointOffice365';
final ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection repositoryCollection =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepositories();
ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository sharePointOnlineRepository = null;
for(ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository repository : repositoryCollection.repositories){
   if(sharePointOnlineProviderType.equalsIgnoreCase(repository.providerType.type)){
      sharePointOnlineRepository = repository;
      break;
```

```
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositories(result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositories(communityId)`

Get a list of repositories in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection getRepositories(String communityId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositories(communityId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositories(pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of repositories.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection getRepositories(Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositories(pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of repositories in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection getRepositories(String
communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepository(repositoryId)`

Get a repository.

API Version

369.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository getRepository(String repositoryId)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

```
final string repositoryId = '0XCxx0000000123GAA';
final ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository repository =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepository(repositoryId);
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepository(repositoryId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepository(communityId, repositoryId)`

Get a repository in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository getRepository(String communityId, String
repositoryId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepository(communityId, repositoryId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)`

Get a repository file.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail getRepositoryFile(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId)
```

Parameters

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryFileId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFileId =
'file:0B0lTys1KmM3sTmxKNjVJbWZja00';
final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail file =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepositoryFile(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId);
System.debug(String.format('File - name: \'\'{0}\'\', size: {1}, external URL: \'\'{2}\'\',
 download URL: \'\'{3}\'\'',
   new String[]{ file.name, String.valueOf(file.contentSize), file.externalDocumentUrl,
file.downloadUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)`

Get a repository file with or without permissions information.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail getRepositoryFile(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, Boolean includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include permission information, such as whether the file is shared and what are the available permission types.

Managing external file permissions is supported for Google Drive, SharePoint Online, and OneDrive for Business.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFileId =
'file:0B0lTys1KmM3sTmxKNjVJbWZja00';

final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail file =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepositoryFile(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId, true);
System.debug(String.format('File - name: \'\'{0}\'\', size: {1}, external URL: \'\'{2}\'\',
 download URL: \'\'{3}\'\'', new String[]{ file.name, String.valueOf(file.contentSize),
file.externalDocumentUrl, file.downloadUrl}));
final ConnectApi.ExternalFilePermissionInformation externalFilePermInfo =
file.externalFilePermissionInformation;

//permission types
final List<ConnectApi.ContentHubPermissionType> permissionTypes =
externalFilePermInfo.externalFilePermissionTypes;
for(ConnectApi.ContentHubPermissionType permissionType : permissionTypes){
   System.debug(String.format('Permission type - id: \'\'{0}\'\', label: \'\'{1}\'\'', new
 String[]{ permissionType.id, permissionType.label}));
}

//permission groups
final List<ConnectApi.RepositoryGroupSummary> groups =
externalFilePermInfo.repositoryPublicGroups;
for(ConnectApi.RepositoryGroupSummary ggroup : groups){
   System.debug(String.format('Group - id: \'\'{0}\'\', name: \'\'{1}\'\', type:
\'\'{2}\'\'', new String[]{ ggroup.id, ggroup.name, ggroup.type.name()}));
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Get a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail getRepositoryFile(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)`

Get a repository file with or without permissions information in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail getRepositoryFile(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, Boolean includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include permission information, such as whether the file is shared and what are the available permission types.

Managing external file permissions is supported for Google Drive, SharePoint Online, and OneDrive for Business.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)`

Get a repository folder.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail getRepositoryFolder(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs';
final ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail folder =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepositoryFolder(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFolderId);
System.debug(String.format('Folder - name: \'\'{0}\'\', description: \'\'{1}\'\', external
 URL: \'\'{2}\'\', folder items URL: \'\'{3}\'\'',
   new String[]{ folder.name, folder.description, folder.externalFolderUrl,
folder.folderItemsUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)`

Get a repository folder in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail getRepositoryFolder(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)`

Get repository folder items.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection getRepositoryFolderItems(String
repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example gets the collection of items in a repository folder. For files, we show the file's name, size, external URL, and download URL. For folders, we show the folder's name, description, and external URL.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs';
final ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection folderItemsColl =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.getRepositoryFolderItems(gDriveRepositoryId,gDriveFolderId);
final List<ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem> folderItems = folderItemsColl.items;
System.debug('Number of items in repository folder: ' + folderItems.size());
for(ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem item : folderItems){
   ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary fileSummary = item.file;
   if(fileSummary != null){
      System.debug(String.format('File item - name: \'\'{0}\'\', size: {1}, external URL:
 \'\'{2}\'\', download URL: \'\'{3}\'\'', new String[]{ fileSummary.name,
String.valueOf(fileSummary.contentSize), fileSummary.externalDocumentUrl,
fileSummary.downloadUrl}));
      }else{
         ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderSummary folderSummary = item.folder;
         System.debug(String.format('Folder item - name: \'\'{0}\'\', description:
\'\'{1}\'\'',  new String[]{ folderSummary.name, folderSummary.description}));
      }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Get repository folder items in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection getRepositoryFolderItems(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of repository folder items.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection getRepositoryFolderItems(String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of repository folder items in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection getRepositoryFolderItems(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)

Update the name of a repository file.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updateRepositoryFile(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

When updating the metadata of a repository file, only the name field can be updated.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example updates the name of a file in a Google Drive repository. After the file is updated, we show the file's ID, name, description, external URL, download URL.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs', gDriveFileId =
'document:1q9OatVpcyYBK-JWzp_PhR75ulQghwFP15zhkamKrRcQ';

final ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput updatedItem = new ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput();
updatedItem.itemTypeId = 'document'; //see getAllowedTypes for any file item types available
 for creation/update
updatedItem.fields = new List<ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput>();

//Metadata: name field
```

```
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInputName = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInputName.name = 'name';
fieldValueInputName.value =  'updated file name.txt';
updatedItem.fields.add(fieldValueInputName);

final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updatedFile =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.updateRepositoryFile(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId, updatedItem);
System.debug(String.format('Updated file - id: \'\'{0}\'\', name: \'\'{1}\'\', description:
 \'\'{2}\'\',\n external URL: \'\'{3}\'\', download URL: \'\'{4}\'\'',  new String[]{
updatedFile.id, updatedFile.name, updatedFile.description, updatedFile.externalDocumentUrl,
 updatedFile.downloadUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)

Update the content of a repository file.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updateRepositoryFile(String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput
fileData)
```

Parameters

repositoryId

Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId

Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file

Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

When updating the metadata of a repository file, only the name field can be updated.

fileData
Type: ConnectApi.BinaryInput

The binary file.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

Example

This example updates the content and name of a file in a Google Drive repository. After the file is updated, we show the file's ID, name, description, external URL, and download URL.

```
final String gDriveRepositoryId = '0XCxx00000000ODGAY', gDriveFolderId =
'folder:0B0lTys1KmM3sSVJ2bjIzTGFqSWs', gDriveFileId =
'document:1q9OatVpcyYBK-JWzp_PhR75ulQghwFP15zhkamKrRcQ';

final ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput updatedItem = new ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput();
updatedItem.itemTypeId = 'document'; //see getAllowedTypes for any file item types available
 for creation/update
updatedItem.fields = new List<ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput>();

//Metadata: name field
final ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput fieldValueInputName = new
ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput();
fieldValueInputName.name = 'name';
fieldValueInputName.value =  'updated file name.txt';
updatedItem.fields.add(fieldValueInputName);

//Binary content
final Blob updatedFileBlob = Blob.valueOf('even more awesome content for updated file');
final String updatedFileMimeType = 'text/plain';
final ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileBinaryInput = new ConnectApi.BinaryInput(updatedFileBlob,
 updatedFileMimeType, updatedFileName);

final ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updatedFile =
ConnectApi.ContentHub.updateRepositoryFile(gDriveRepositoryId, gDriveFileId, updatedItem);
System.debug(String.format('Updated file - id: \'\'{0}\'\', name: \'\'{1}\'\', description:
 \'\'{2}\'\',\n external URL: \'\'{3}\'\', download URL: \'\'{4}\'\'',  new String[]{
updatedFile.id, updatedFile.name, updatedFile.description, updatedFile.externalDocumentUrl,
 updatedFile.downloadUrl}));
```

SEE ALSO:

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)`

Update the name of a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updateRepositoryFile(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

When updating the metadata of a repository file, only the name field can be updated.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)

Update the content of a repository file in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail updateRepositoryFile(String communityId,
String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

When updating the metadata of a repository file, only the name field can be updated.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ContentHub Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `ContentHub`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestAddRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem` object to be returned when the matching `addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestAddRepositoryItem(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem
result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestAddRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem` object to be returned when the matching `addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestAddRepositoryItem(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestAddRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem` object to be returned when the matching `addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestAddRepositoryItem(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

addRepositoryItem(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestAddRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem` object to be returned when the matching `addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestAddRepositoryItem(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

addRepositoryItem(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, file, fileData)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection result)
```

Parameters

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryFolderId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType filter,
ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType`

Item types. Values are:

- `Any`—Includes files and folders.
- `FilesOnly`—Includes files only.
- `FoldersOnly`—Includes folders only.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getAllowedItemTypes(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryFolderId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetAllowedItemTypes(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType filter,
ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType`

Item types. Values are:

- `Any`—Includes files and folders.
- `FilesOnly`—Includes files only.
- `FoldersOnly`—Includes folders only.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getAllowedItemTypes(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreview` object to be returned when the matching `getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFilePreview(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId,
ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, ConnectApi.FilePreview result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- Jpg—Preview format is JPG.
- Pdf—Preview format is PDF.
- Svg—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- Thumbnail—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- ThumbnailBig—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- ThumbnailTiny—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FilePreview

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreview` object to be returned when the matching `getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFilePreview(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId,
ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, Integer startPageNumber, Integer endPageNumber,
ConnectApi.FilePreview result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

startPageNumber
Type: Integer

The starting page number in the range of file preview URLs.

endPageNumber
Type: Integer

The ending page number in the range of file preview URLs.

result
Type: ConnectApi.FilePreview

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFilePreview(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreview` object to be returned when the matching `getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFilePreview(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, ConnectApi.FilePreview result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.

- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *`general`* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreview`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreview` object to be returned when the matching `getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetFilePreview(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat formatType, Integer startPageNumber, Integer endPageNumber, ConnectApi.FilePreview result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

formatType
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`

Specifies the format of the file preview. Values are:

- `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG.
- `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF.
- `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG.
- `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG.
- `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG.
- `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.

PDF previews are available for files of type DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, TEXT, XLS, and XLSX. SVG files are generated on demand.

If you're concerned that feature-rich SVG previews don't work in your org, choose alternative file previews. To use JPG file previews, enter *general* in the Quick Find box in Setup. Select General Settings, and then select **Display alternative file previews**.

startPageNumber
Type: Integer

The starting page number in the range of file preview URLs.

endPageNumber
Type: Integer

The ending page number in the range of file preview URLs.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreview`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getFilePreview(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, formatType, startPageNumber, endPageNumber)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetItemType(String repositoryId, String repositoryItemTypeId,
ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryItemTypeId
Type: String

The ID of the repository item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getItemType(repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetItemType(String communityId, String repositoryId, String
repositoryItemTypeId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryItemTypeId
Type: String

The ID of the repository item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getItemType(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryItemTypeId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetPreviews(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId,
ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

- getPreviews(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetPreviews(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

- getPreviews(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositories(result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositories()` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositories(ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection result)
```

Parameters

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositories()

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositories(communityId, result)`

Register a `getRepositories(communityId)` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositories(String communityId, ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

result
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositories(communityId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositories(pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositories(pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositories(Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection result)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

result
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositories(pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositories(String communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositories(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepository(repositoryId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository` object to be returned when the matching `getRepository(repositoryId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepository(String repositoryId,
ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

result
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepository(repositoryId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepository(communityId, repositoryId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository` object to be returned when the matching `getRepository(communityId, repositoryId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepository(String communityId, String repositoryId,
ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

result
Type: ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepository(communityId, repositoryId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFile(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

`repositoryId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

`repositoryFileId`
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFile(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId,
Boolean includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo, ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include permission information, such as whether the file is shared and what are the available permission types.

Managing external file permissions is supported for Google Drive, SharePoint Online, and OneDrive for Business.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFile(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFile(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, Boolean includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include permission information, such as whether the file is shared and what are the available permission types.

Managing external file permissions is supported for Google Drive, SharePoint Online, and OneDrive for Business.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolder(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolder(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolder(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolder(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(String repositoryId, String
repositoryFolderId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolderItems(repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection` object to be returned when the matching `getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRepositoryFolderItems(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFolderId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFolderId
Type: String

The ID of the repository folder.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default page size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRepositoryFolderItems(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFolderId, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(String communityId, String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData, ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `updateRepositoryFile(repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(String repositoryId, String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileData, ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

fileData
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

The binary file.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail` object to be returned when the matching `updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file)` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

40.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestUpdateRepositoryFile(String communityId, String repositoryId,
String repositoryFileId, ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput file,
ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

repositoryId
Type: String

The ID of the repository.

repositoryFileId
Type: String

The ID of the repository file.

file
Type: `ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput`

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

updateRepositoryFile(communityId, repositoryId, repositoryFileId, file, fileData)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Datacloud Class

Purchase Data.com contact or company records, and retrieve purchase information.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Note: When your Data.com Prospector or Data.com Clean contract expires, Data.com features, objects, and fields will be removed from your org.

To support customers' needs around compliance and to remain a leader in trust and privacy, Salesforce removed all contact data from the Data.com service on February 1, 2021.

For more information, see Data.com Prospector and Clean Retirement.

IN THIS SECTION:

Datacloud Methods

Datacloud Methods

The following are methods for `Datacloud`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCompaniesFromOrder(orderId, pageSize, page)
Get a list of purchased company records for an order.

getCompany(companyId)
Get a company record.

getContact(contactId)
Get a contact.

getContactsFromOrder(orderId, page, pageSize)
Get a list of purchased contacts for an order.

getOrder(orderId)
Get an order.

getUsage(userId)
Get purchase usage information for a user.

postOrder(orderInput)
Purchase records that are listed in an input file.

`getCompaniesFromOrder(orderId, pageSize, page)`

Get a list of purchased company records for an order.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudCcompanies getCompaniesFromOrder(String orderId, String
pageSize, String page)
```

Parameters

orderId
Type: String

ID of an order.

page
Type: Integer

Number of the page that you want returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of companies to show on a page. The default *pageSize* is 25.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudCompanies

getCompany(companyId)

Get a company record.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany getCompany(String companyId)
```

Parameters

companyId
Type: String

ID of a company in the Data.com database.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany

getContact(contactId)

Get a contact.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudContact getContact(String contactId)
```

Parameters

contactId
Type: String

ID of a contact in the Data.com database.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudContact

getContactsFromOrder(orderId, page, pageSize)

Get a list of purchased contacts for an order.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudContacts getContactsFromOrder(String orderId, String
page, String pageSize)
```

Parameters

orderId
Type: String

ID of an order.

page
Type: Integer

Number of the page that you want returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Number of contacts to show on a page. The default *pageSize* is 25.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DataCloudContacts

getOrder(orderId)

Get an order.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder getOrder(String orderId)
```

Parameters

orderId
Type: String

ID of an order.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder

getUsage(userId)

Get purchase usage information for a user.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudPurchaseUsage getUsage(String userId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: String

ID of a user.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudPurchaseUsage

postOrder(orderInput)

Purchase records that are listed in an input file.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder postOrder(ConnectApi.DatacloudOrderInput
orderInput)
```

Parameters

orderInput
Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudOrderInput

A list that contains IDs for the contacts or companies that you want to see.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder

Example

```
ConnectApi.DatacloudOrderInput inputOrder=new ConnectApi.DatacloudOrderInput();
List<String> ids=new List<String>();
ids.add('1234');
inputOrder.companyIds=ids;
ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder datacloudOrderRep = ConnectApi.Datacloud.postOrder(inputOrder);
```

EmailMergeFieldService Class

Extract a list of merge fields for an object. A merge field is a field you can put in an email template, mail merge template, custom link, or formula to incorporate values from a record.

Namespace

ConnectApi

EmailMergeFieldService Methods

The following are methods for `EmailMergeFieldService`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getMergeFields(objectApiNames)
Extract the merge fields for a specific object.

`getMergeFields(objectApiNames)`

Extract the merge fields for a specific object.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldInfo getMergeFields(List<String> objectApiNames)
```

Parameters

`objectApiNames`
Type: List<String>

The API names for the objects being referenced.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldInfo`

EmployeeProfiles Class

Get, set and crop, and delete employee banner photos and photos.

Namespace

ConnectApi

EmployeeProfiles Methods

These methods are for `EmployeeProfiles`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteBannerPhoto(employeeId)
Delete an employee's banner photo.

deletePhoto(employeeId)
Delete an employee's photo.

getBannerPhoto(employeeId)
Get an employee's banner photo.

getPhoto(employeeId)
Get an employee's photo.

setBannerPhoto(employeeId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as an employee's banner photo.

setBannerPhoto(employeeId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, bannerPhoto)
Set and crop an uploaded file as an employee's banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's banner photo.

setPhoto(employeeId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as an employee's photo.

setPhoto(employeeId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, photo)
Set and crop an uploaded file as an employee's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, photo, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's photo.

`deleteBannerPhoto(employeeId)`

Delete an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteBannerPhoto(String employeeId)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

Return Value

Type: Void

deletePhoto(employeeId)

Delete an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deletePhoto(String employeeId)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

Return Value

Type: Void

getBannerPhoto(employeeId)

Get an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto getBannerPhoto(String employeeId)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

getPhoto(employeeId)

Get an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo getPhoto(String employeeId)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Photo

setBannerPhoto(employeeId, fileId, versionNumber)

Set an uploaded file as an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String employeeId, String fileId,
Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

fileId
Type: String

ID of the uploaded file to use as the employee banner photo. The file must be an image and be smaller than 2 GB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the file. Specify an existing version number or, to get the latest version, specify `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

setBannerPhoto(employeeId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String employeeId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, bannerPhoto)

Set and crop an uploaded file as an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String employeeId,
ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

bannerPhoto
Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput

A ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput object that specifies the ID and version of the file, and how to crop the file.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's banner photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String employeeId,
ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

bannerPhoto
Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput

A `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: ConnectApi.BinaryInput

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhoto(employeeId, fileId, versionNumber)

Set an uploaded file as an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String employeeId, String fileId, Integer
versionNumber)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

fileId
Type: String

ID of the uploaded file to use as the employee photo. The file must be an image and be smaller than 2 GB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the file. Specify an existing version number or, to get the latest version, specify `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhoto(employeeId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String employeeId, ConnectApi.BinaryInput
fileUpload)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Photo

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, photo)

Set and crop an uploaded file as an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String employeeId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

photo
Type: ConnectApi.PhotoInput

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the file ID, version number, and cropping parameters.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Photo

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhotoWithAttributes(employeeId, photo, fileUpload)

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as an employee's photo.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String employeeId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

employeeId
Type: String

ID of the employee.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

ExternalEmailServices Class

Access information about integration with external email services, such as sending email within Salesforce through an external email account.

Namespace

ConnectApi

External Email Services Methods

The following are methods for `ExternalEmailService`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getUserOauthInfo(landingPage)
Get information about whether an external email service has been authorized to send email on behalf of a user.

`getUserOauthInfo(landingPage)`

Get information about whether an external email service has been authorized to send email on behalf of a user.

API Version

37.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static getUserOauthInfo(String landingPage)
```

Parameters

`landingPage`
Type: String

The landing page that the user starts on when they are finished with the OAuth authorization process.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserOauthInfo`

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ExternalManagedAccount Class

Get externally managed accounts.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ExternalManagedAccount Methods

These methods are for `ExternalManagedAccount`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommunitiesExternalManagedAccounts(communityId)
Get externally managed accounts available to the context user across all Experience Cloud sites.

getExternalManagedAccounts(webstoreId)
Get externally managed accounts for a store.

`getCommunitiesExternalManagedAccounts(communityId)`

Get externally managed accounts available to the context user across all Experience Cloud sites.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput
getCommunitiesExternalManagedAccounts(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Note: Regardless of the ID specified, this method returns externally managed accounts available to the context user across all Experience Cloud sites.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput`

`getExternalManagedAccounts(webstoreId)`

Get externally managed accounts for a store.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput
getExternalManagedAccounts(String webstoreId)
```

Parameters

webstoreId
Type: String

ID of the webstore.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput`

FieldService Class

Preview and create shifts from a pattern.

Namespace

ConnectApi

FieldService Methods

These methods are for `FieldService`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createShiftsFromPattern(shiftsFromPatternInput, shiftPatternId)
Create up to 2,000 shifts from a pattern.

previewShiftsFromPattern(shiftsFromPatternInput, shiftPatternId)
Preview up to 2,000 shifts from a pattern.

`createShiftsFromPattern(shiftsFromPatternInput, shiftPatternId)`

Create up to 2,000 shifts from a pattern.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPattern
createShiftsFromPattern(ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput shiftsFromPatternInput, String
shiftPatternId)
```

Parameters

`shiftsFromPatternInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput`

A `ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput` object providing the pattern.

shiftPatternId
Type: String

ID of the shift pattern.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPattern

previewShiftsFromPattern(shiftsFromPatternInput, shiftPatternId)

Preview up to 2,000 shifts from a pattern.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPattern
previewShiftsFromPattern(ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput shiftsFromPatternInput,
String shiftPatternId)
```

Parameters

shiftsFromPatternInput
Type: ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput

A `ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput` object providing the pattern.

shiftPatternId
Type: String

ID of the shift pattern.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPattern

FulfillmentOrder Class

Fulfill orders in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

FulfillmentOrder Methods

The following are methods for `FulfillmentOrder`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(fulfillmentOrderId, cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput)

Cancel FulfillmentOrderLineItems from a FulfillmentOrder. This action doesn't cancel the associated OrderItemSummaries, so reallocate the canceled quantities to a new FulfillmentOrder.

createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput)

Create one or more FulfillmentOrders and FulfillmentOrderLineItems for an OrderDeliveryGroupSummary, which defines a delivery method and recipient for an OrderSummary. You specify the OrderItemSummaries to allocate, which can be fulfilled from different locations. Specifying multiple fulfillment groups creates one FulfillmentOrder for each location. For each OrderItemSummary, a FulfillmentOrderLineItem is created and assigned to the corresponding FulfillmentOrder.

createInvoice(fulfillmentOrderId, invoiceInput)

Create an invoice for a FulfillmentOrder that doesn't have one.

createMultipleFulfillmentOrder(multipleFulfillmentOrderInput)

Create FulfillmentOrders for multiple OrderDeliveryGroups in a single request.

createMultipleInvoices(invoicesInput)

Create Invoices for multiple FulfillmentOrders.

`cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(fulfillmentOrderId, cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput)`

Cancel FulfillmentOrderLineItems from a FulfillmentOrder. This action doesn't cancel the associated OrderItemSummaries, so reallocate the canceled quantities to a new FulfillmentOrder.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderCancelLineItemsOutputRepresentation
cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(String fulfillmentOrderId,
ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation
cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput)
```

Parameters

`fulfillmentOrderId`

Type: String

ID of the FulfillmentOrder.

cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput
Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation

List of FulfillmentOrderLineItems to cancel.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderCancelLineItemsOutputRepresentation

Example

```
String fulfillmentOrderId = '0a3xx0000000085AAA';
List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation> itemToCancelList = new
List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation>();

for(FulfillmentOrderLineItem fulfillmentOrderLineItem :
fulfillmentOrder.FulfillmentOrderLineItems){
  ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation itemToCancel = new
ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation();
  itemToCancel.fulfillmentOrderLineItemId = fulfillmentOrderLineItem.Id;
  itemToCancel.quantity = 1;
  itemToCancelList.add(itemToCancel);
}

ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation input = new
ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation();
input.fulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancel = itemToCancelList;

ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrderCancelLineItemsOutputRepresentation result =
ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrder.cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(fulfillmentOrderId, input);
```

createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput)

Create one or more FulfillmentOrders and FulfillmentOrderLineItems for an OrderDeliveryGroupSummary, which defines a delivery method and recipient for an OrderSummary. You specify the OrderItemSummaries to allocate, which can be fulfilled from different locations. Specifying multiple fulfillment groups creates one FulfillmentOrder for each location. For each OrderItemSummary, a FulfillmentOrderLineItem is created and assigned to the corresponding FulfillmentOrder.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation
createFulfillmentOrders(ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation
fulfillmentOrderInput)
```

Parameters

fulfillmentOrderInput
Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation

OrderItemSummaries to allocate, with location and delivery information.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation

Example

```
String orderSummaryId = '1Osxx0000004CCG';
String fulfillmentType = 'warehouse';

String warehouseFromLocationId = [SELECT Id from Location WHERE LocationType='Warehouse'
LIMIT 1].Id;

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation fulfillmentOrderInput = new
ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation();
fulfillmentOrderInput.orderSummaryId = orderSummaryId;

List<OrderDeliveryGroupSummary> orderDeliveryGroupSummaryList = [SELECT Id FROM
OrderDeliveryGroupSummary WHERE OrderSummaryId =: orderSummaryId];

for (OrderDeliveryGroupSummary orderDeliveryGroupSummary: orderDeliveryGroupSummaryList){


  fulfillmentOrderInput.orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId = orderDeliveryGroupSummary.Id;
  List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation> fulfillmentGroups = new
List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation>();
  ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation fulfillmentGroup = new
ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation();
  fulfillmentGroup.fulfilledFromLocationId = warehouseFromLocationId;
  fulfillmentGroup.fulfillmentType = fulfillmentType;

  List<ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation> orderItemSummaries = new
List<ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation>();

  List<OrderItemSummary> orderItemSummaryList = [Select Id, quantity FROM OrderItemSummary
 WHERE OrderSummaryId =: orderSummaryId AND OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryId =:
orderDeliveryGroupSummary.Id];
  for(OrderItemSummary orderItemSummary : orderItemSummaryList){
    ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation oisInputRepresentation = new
ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation();
    oisInputRepresentation.orderItemSummaryId = orderItemSummary.Id;
    oisInputRepresentation.quantity = orderItemSummary.quantity;
    orderItemSummaries.add(oisInputRepresentation);
  }

  fulfillmentGroup.orderItemSummaries = orderItemSummaries;
  fulfillmentGroups.add(fulfillmentGroup);
  fulfillmentOrderInput.fulfillmentGroups = fulfillmentGroups;
```

```
}

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation result =
ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrder.createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput);
```

createInvoice(fulfillmentOrderId, invoiceInput)

Create an invoice for a FulfillmentOrder that doesn't have one.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceOutputRepresentation createInvoice(String
fulfillmentOrderId, ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceInputRepresentation invoiceInput)
```

Parameters

fulfillmentOrderId
Type: String

ID of the FulfillmentOrder.

invoiceInput
Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceInputRepresentation

Required input with no data.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceOutputRepresentation

Example

```
String fulfillmentOrderId = '0a3xx0000000085AAA';

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceInputRepresentation input = new
ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceInputRepresentation();
ConnectAPI.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceOutputRepresentation result =
ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrder.createInvoice(fulfillmentOrderId, input);
```

createMultipleFulfillmentOrder(multipleFulfillmentOrderInput)

Create FulfillmentOrders for multiple OrderDeliveryGroups in a single request.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation
createMultipleFulfillmentOrder(ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation
multipleFulfillmentOrderInput)
```

Parameters

multipleFulfillmentOrderInput
Type: ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation

Wraps a list of inputs for creating fulfillment orders.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation

createMultipleInvoices(invoicesInput)

Create Invoices for multiple FulfillmentOrders.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesOutputRepresentation
createMultipleInvoices(ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesInputRepresentation
invoicesInput)
```

Parameters

invoicesInput
Type: ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesInputRepresentation

The FulfillmentOrders to create Invoices for.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesOutputRepresentation

Knowledge Class

Access information about trending articles in Experience Cloud sites.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Knowledge Methods

The following are methods for `Knowledge`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getTopViewedArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults)
Get the top viewed articles for a topic.

getTrendingArticles(communityId, maxResults)
Get trending articles for an Experience Cloud site.

getTrendingArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults)
Get the trending articles for a topic in an Experience Cloud site.

`getTopViewedArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults)`

Get the top viewed articles for a topic.

API Version

41.0

Available to Guest Users

41.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection
getTopViewedArticlesForTopic(String communityId, String topicId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID of the topic.

maxResults
Type: Integer

The maximum number of articles returned for each topic ID. Values can be from 1 to 25. The default value is 5.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection

getTrendingArticles(communityId, maxResults)

Get trending articles for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection getTrendingArticles(String communityId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

The maximum number of articles returned. Values can be from 0 to 25. Default is 5.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTrendingArticles(communityId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTrendingArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults)`

Get the trending articles for a topic in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection
getTrendingArticlesForTopic(String communityId, String topicId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`topicId`
Type: String

ID of the topic.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

The maximum number of articles returned. Values can be from 0 to 25. Default is 5.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTrendingArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Knowledge Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `Knowledge`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestGetTrendingArticles(communityId, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.KnowledgeVersionArticleCollection` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTrendingArticles` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

36.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTrendingArticles(String communityId, Integer maxResults,
ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

The maximum number of articles returned. Values can be from 0 to 25. Default is 5.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTrendingArticles(communityId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetTrendingArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.KnowledgeVersionArticleCollection` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTrendingArticlesForTopic` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

36.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTrendingArticlesForTopic(String communityId, String topicId,
Integer maxResults, ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID of the topic.

maxResults
Type: Integer

The maximum number of articles returned. Values can be from 0 to 25. Default is 5.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTrendingArticlesForTopic(communityId, topicId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

ManagedContent Class

Get managed content versions.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ManagedContent Methods

The following are methods for `ManagedContent`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAllContent(channelId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate)
Get all managed content versions for a channel.

getAllContent(channelId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get all managed content versions for a channel with absolute URLs.

getAllDeliveryChannels(pageParam, pageSize)
Get managed content delivery channels for the context user.

getAllManagedContent(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)
Get all managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site.

getAllManagedContent(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get all managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site with absolute URLs.

getContentByContentKeys(channelId, contentKeys, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions for a channel using a list of content keys.

getContentByIds(channelId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate)
Get managed content versions for a channel using a list of managed content IDs.

getContentByIds(channelId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions for a channel with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs.

getManagedContentByContentKeys(communityId, contentKeys, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site using a list of content keys.

getManagedContentByIds(communityId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)
Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site using a list of managed content IDs.

getManagedContentByIds(communityId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs.

getManagedContentByTopics(communityId, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)
Get managed content versions using a list of content topic names.

getManagedContentByTopics(communityId, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions with absolute URLs using a list of content topic names.

getManagedContentByTopicsAndContentKeys(communityId, contentKeys, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions using a list of content keys and content topic names.

getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(communityId, managedContentIds, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)
Get managed content versions using a list of managed content IDs and content topic names.

getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(communityId, managedContentIds, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)
Get managed content versions with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs and content topic names.

`getAllContent(channelId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate)`

Get all managed content versions for a channel.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getAllContent(String channelId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean includeMetadata, String startDate, String endDate)
```

Parameters

channelId
Type: String

ID of the channel.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

includeMetadata
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include metadata in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

startDate
Type: String

Publish start date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

endDate
Type: String

Publish end date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getAllContent(channelId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get all managed content versions for a channel with absolute URLs.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getAllContent(String channelId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean includeMetadata, String startDate, String endDate, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

channelId
Type: String

ID of the channel.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

includeMetadata
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include metadata in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

startDate
Type: String

Publish start date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

endDate
Type: String

Publish end date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

`getAllDeliveryChannels(pageParam, pageSize)`

Get managed content delivery channels for the context user.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelCollection getAllDeliveryChannels(Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelCollection`

`getAllManagedContent(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)`

Get all managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

47.0

Available to Guest Users

47.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getAllManagedContent(String communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getAllManagedContent(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get all managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site with absolute URLs.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getAllManagedContent(String
communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String
managedContentType, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getContentByContentKeys(channelId, contentKeys, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get managed content versions for a channel using a list of content keys.

API Version

51.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getContentByContentKeys(String
channelId, List<String> contentKeys, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String
language, String managedContentType, Boolean includeMetadata, String startDate, String
endDate, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

channelId
Type: String

ID of the channel.

contentKeys
Type: List<String>

List of up to 50 content keys for the managed content. A content key is a universally unique identifier (UUID) such as MCA4CCV5QS2BAB5H7YRCRPTCWGZQ.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

includeMetadata
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include metadata in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

startDate
Type: String

Publish start date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

endDate
Type: String

Publish end date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection

getContentByIds(channelId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate)

Get managed content versions for a channel using a list of managed content IDs.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getContentByIds(String channelId, List<String> managedContentIds, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean includeMetadata, String startDate, String endDate)
```

Parameters

channelId
Type: String

ID of the channel.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

includeMetadata
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include metadata in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

startDate
Type: String

Publish start date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

endDate
Type: String

Publish end date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getContentByIds(channelId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, includeMetadata, startDate, endDate, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get managed content versions for a channel with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getContentByIds(String
channelId, List<String> managedContentIds, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String
language, String managedContentType, Boolean includeMetadata, String startDate, String
endDate, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

channelId
Type: String

ID of the channel.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

includeMetadata
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include metadata in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

startDate
Type: String

Publish start date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

endDate
Type: String

Publish end date in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

`getManagedContentByContentKeys(communityId, contentKeys, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)`

Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site using a list of content keys.

API Version

51.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection
getManagedContentByContentKeys(String communityId, List<String> contentKeys, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean
showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

contentKeys
Type: List<String>

List of up to 50 content keys for the managed content. A content key is a universally unique identifier (UUID) such as MCA4CCV5QS2BAB5H7YRCRPTCWGZQ.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getManagedContentByIds(communityId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)

Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site using a list of managed content IDs.

API Version

47.0

Available to Guest Users

47.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getManagedContentByIds(String communityId, List<String> managedContentIds, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getManagedContentByIds(communityId, managedContentIds, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get managed content versions for an Experience Cloud site with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getManagedContentByIds(String communityId, List<String> managedContentIds, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getManagedContentByTopics(communityId, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)

Get managed content versions using a list of content topic names.

API Version

47.0

Available to Guest Users

47.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getManagedContentByTopics(String communityId, List<String> topics, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

topics
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of up to 15 content topic names.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

`getManagedContentByTopics(communityId, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)`

Get managed content versions with absolute URLs using a list of content topic names.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection getManagedContentByTopics(String communityId, List<String> topics, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String managedContentType, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

topics
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of up to 15 content topic names.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getManagedContentByTopicsAndContentKeys(communityId, contentKeys, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get managed content versions using a list of content keys and content topic names.

API Version

51.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection
getManagedContentByTopicsAndContentKeys(String communityId, List<String> contentKeys,
List<String> topics, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String
managedContentType, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

contentKeys
Type: List<String>

List of up to 50 content keys for the managed content. A content key is a universally unique identifier (UUID) such as MCA4CCV5QS2BAB5H7YRCRPTCWGZQ.

topics
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of up to 15 content topic names.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

`getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(communityId, managedContentIds, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType)`

Get managed content versions using a list of managed content IDs and content topic names.

API Version

47.0

Available to Guest Users

47.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection
getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(String communityId, List<String> managedContentIds,
List<String> topics, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String
managedContentType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

topics
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of up to 15 content topic names.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(communityId, managedContentIds, topics, pageParam, pageSize, language, managedContentType, showAbsoluteUrl)

Get managed content versions with absolute URLs using a list of managed content IDs and content topic names.

API Version

50.0

Available to Guest Users

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection
getManagedContentByTopicsAndIds(String communityId, List<String> managedContentIds,
List<String> topics, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, String language, String
managedContentType, Boolean showAbsoluteUrl)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

managedContentIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of managed content IDs.

topics
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of up to 15 content topic names.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 250. For performance reasons, we recommend 25 or fewer items per page. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

language
Type: String

Language locale for the managed content, for example, `en_US`. If the requested translation isn't available, the language defaults to the context user's language. If the context user's language isn't available, the language defaults to the content type's original language.

managedContentType
Type: String

The developer name of the content version.

showAbsoluteUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to show absolute URLs in the output class (`true`) or not (`false`). The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection`

ManagedTopics Class

Access information about managed topics in an Experience Cloud site. Create, delete, and reorder managed topics.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ManagedTopics Methods

The following are methods for `ManagedTopics`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createManagedTopic(communityId, recordId, managedTopicType)
Create a managed topic of a specific type for an Experience Cloud site.

createManagedTopic(communityId, recordId, managedTopicType, parentId)
Create a child managed topic for an Experience Cloud site.

createManagedTopicByName(communityId, name, managedTopicType)
Create a managed topic of a specific type by name for an Experience Cloud site.

createManagedTopicByName(communityId, name, managedTopicType, parentId)

Create a child managed topic by name for an Experience Cloud site.

deleteManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId)

Delete a managed topic from an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId)

Get a managed topic in an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId, depth)

Get a managed topic, including its parent and children managed topics, in an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopics(communityId)

Get the featured and navigational managed topics for an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType)

Get managed topics of the specified type for an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, depth)

Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, in an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, recordIds, depth)

Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, that are associated with topics in an Experience Cloud site.

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of managed topics.

reorderManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicPositionCollection)

Reorder the relative positions of managed topics in an Experience Cloud site.

createManagedTopic(communityId, recordId, managedTopicType)

Create a managed topic of a specific type for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic createManagedTopic(String communityId, String
recordId, ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID of the topic.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Specify the type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

You can create up to 25 `Featured` and 5,000 `Content` topics. You can create up to eight levels of `Navigational` managed topics with 25 top-level topics and 10 children topics per level for a maximum of 2,775 `Navigational` topics.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can create managed topics.

createManagedTopic(communityId, recordId, managedTopicType, parentId)

Create a child managed topic for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic createManagedTopic(String communityId, String
recordId, ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, String parentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID of the topic.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Specify `Navigational` for the type of managed topic to create a child managed topic.

You can create up to 25 `Featured` and 5,000 `Content` topics. You can create up to eight levels of `Navigational` managed topics with 25 top-level topics and 10 children topics per level for a maximum of 2,775 `Navigational` topics.

parentId
Type: String

ID of the parent managed topic.

You can create up to eight levels (parent, direct children, their children, etc.) of managed topics and up to 10 children managed topics per managed topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can create managed topics.

createManagedTopicByName(communityId, name, managedTopicType)

Create a managed topic of a specific type by name for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic createManagedTopicByName(String communityId,
String name, ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

name
Type: String

Name of the topic.

managedTopicType
Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType

Specify the type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

You can create up to 25 `Featured` and 5,000 `Content` topics. You can create up to eight levels of `Navigational` managed topics with 25 top-level topics and 10 children topics per level for a maximum of 2,775 `Navigational` topics.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopic

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can create managed topics.

createManagedTopicByName(communityId, name, managedTopicType, parentId)

Create a child managed topic by name for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic createManagedTopicByName(String communityId,
String name, ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, String parentId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

name
Type: String

Name of the topic.

managedTopicType
Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType

Specify `Navigational` for the type of managed topic to create a child managed topic.

You can create up to 25 `Featured` and 5,000 `Content` topics. You can create up to eight levels of `Navigational` managed topics with 25 top-level topics and 10 children topics per level for a maximum of 2,775 `Navigational` topics.

parentId
Type: String

ID of the parent managed topic.

You can create up to eight levels (parent, direct children, their children, etc.) of managed topics and up to 10 children managed topics per managed topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can create managed topics.

deleteManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId)

Delete a managed topic from an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static deleteManagedTopic(String communityId, String managedTopicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicId
Type: String

ID of managed topic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can delete managed topics.

getManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId)

Get a managed topic in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic getManagedTopic(String communityId, String managedTopicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicId
Type: String

ID of managed topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`

getManagedTopic(communityId, managedTopicId, depth)

Get a managed topic, including its parent and children managed topics, in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopic getManagedTopic(String communityId, String managedTopicId, Integer depth)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicId
Type: String

ID of managed topic.

depth
Type: Integer

Specify an integer 1–8. If you specify 1, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class is `null`. If you specify 2, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class contains the direct children managed topics, if any, of the managed topic. If you specify 3–8, you get the direct children managed topics and their children managed topics if there are any. If depth isn't specified, it defaults to 1.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`

`getManagedTopics(communityId)`

Get the featured and navigational managed topics for an Experience Cloud site.

To get the content topics for an Experience Cloud site, use `getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType)`.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection`

`getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType)`

Get managed topics of the specified type for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

If you specify `Content`, up to 50 topics are returned. If you want more than 50 `Content` topics, use `getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, pageParam, pageSize)`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, depth)

Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, Integer depth)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicType
Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType

Type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

depth
Type: Integer

Specify an integer 1–8. If you specify 1, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class is `null`. If you specify 2, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class contains the direct children managed topics, if any, of the managed topic. If you specify 3–8, you get the direct children managed topics and their children managed topics if there are any. If depth isn't specified, it defaults to 1.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection

`getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, recordIds, depth)`

Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, that are associated with topics in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

38.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, List<String> recordIds, Integer depth)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

recordIds
Type: List<String>

A list of up to 100 topic IDs associated with the managed topics.

If you list more than 10 topic IDs, you can't specify 2–8 for *depth*.

depth
Type: Integer

Specify an integer 1–8. If you specify 1, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class is `null`. If you specify 2, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class contains the direct children managed topics, if any, of the managed topic. If you specify 3–8, you get the direct children managed topics and their children managed topics if there are any. If depth isn't specified, it defaults to 1.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection`

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of managed topics.

API Version

44.0

Available to Guest Users

44.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 50.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection`

`reorderManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicPositionCollection)`

Reorder the relative positions of managed topics in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection reorderManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput managedTopicPositionCollection)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`managedTopicPositionCollection`
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput`

A collection of relative positions of managed topics. This collection can include only `Featured` and `Navigational` topics and doesn't have to include all managed topics.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection`

Usage

Only community managers (users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission) can reorder managed topics.

You can reorder parent managed topics or children managed topics with the same parent. If you don't include all managed topics in the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput`, the managed topics are reordered by respecting the positions indicated in the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput` and then by pushing down any managed topics that aren't included in the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput` to the next available position.

Example

If you have these managed topics:

Managed Topic	Position
ManagedTopicA	0
ManagedTopicB	1
ManagedTopicC	2
ManagedTopicD	3
ManagedTopicE	4

And you reorder managed topics by including this information in `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput`:

Managed Topic	Position
ManagedTopicD	0
ManagedTopicE	2

The result is:

Managed Topic	Position
ManagedTopicD	0
ManagedTopicA	1
ManagedTopicE	2
ManagedTopicB	3
ManagedTopicC	4

Retired ManagedTopics Methods

The following methods for `ManagedTopics` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, recordId, depth)
Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, that are associated with a given topic in an Experience Cloud site.

`getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, recordId, depth)`

Get managed topics of the specified type, including their parent and children managed topics, that are associated with a given topic in an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

35.0–37.0

Important: In version 38.0 and later, use `getManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicType, recordIds, depth)`.

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection getManagedTopics(String communityId,
ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType managedTopicType, String recordId, Integer depth)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

managedTopicType
Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`

Type of managed topic.

- `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content.
- `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation.
- `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.

A topic can be associated with all three managed topic types, so a topic can be a `Featured`, `Navigational`, and `Content` topic.

recordId
Type: String

ID of the topic associated with the managed topics.

depth
Type: Integer

Specify an integer 1–8. If you specify 1, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class is `null`. If you specify 2, the `children` property of the `ConnectApi.ManagedTopic` output class contains the direct children managed topics, if any, of the managed topic. If you specify 3–8, you get the direct children managed topics and their children managed topics if there are any. If depth isn't specified, it defaults to 1.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection`

Mentions Class

Access information about mentions. A mention is an "@" character followed by a user or group name. When a user or group is mentioned, they receive a notification.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Mentions Methods

The following are methods for `Mentions`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId)
Get the first page of possible users and groups to mention in a feed item body or comment body.

getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, type, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of possible mention proposals of the specified type.

getMentionValidations(communityId, parentId, recordIds, visibility)
Get information about whether the mentions are valid for the context user.

`getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId)`

Get the first page of possible users and groups to mention in a feed item body or comment body.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage getMentionCompletions (String communityId,
String q, String contextId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

A search term for matching user and group names. Searching for a group requires a minimum of 2 characters. Searching for a user doesn't require a minimum number of characters. This parameter does not support wildcards.

contextId
Type: String

A feed item ID (for a mention in a comment) or a feed subject ID (for a mention in a feed item) that narrows search results, with more useful results listed first. Use a group ID for groups that allow customers to ensure mention completion results include customers.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage`

Usage

Call this method to generate a page of proposed mentions that a user can choose from when they enter characters after @ in a feed item body or a comment body.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, type, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of possible mention proposals of the specified type.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Mentions getMentionCompletions (String communityId, String q,
String contextId, ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType type, Integer pageParam, Integer
pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

A search term for matching user and group names. Searching for a group requires a minimum of 2 characters. Searching for a user doesn't require a minimum number of characters. This parameter does not support wildcards.

contextId
Type: String

A feed item ID (for a mention in a comment) or a feed subject ID (for a mention in a feed item) that narrows search results, with more useful results listed first. Use a group ID for groups that allow customers to ensure mention completion results include customers.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType`

Type of mention completion.

- `All`—All mention completions, regardless of the type of record to which the mention refers.
- `Group`—Mention completions for groups.
- `User`—Mention completions for users.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage`

Usage

Call this method to generate a page of proposed mentions that a user can choose from when they enter characters after @ in a feed item body or a comment body.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, type, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getMentionValidations(communityId, parentId, recordIds, visibility)`

Get information about whether the mentions are valid for the context user.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Mentions getMentionValidations(String communityId, String
parentId, List<String> recordIds, ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibilityType visibility)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

parentId
Type: String

The feed item parent ID.

recordIds
Type: List<String>

A comma-separated list of IDs to be mentioned. The maximum value is 25.

visibility
Type: `ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibilityType`

Type of users who can see a feed item.

- `AllUsers`—Visibility is not limited to internal users.
- `InternalUsers`—Visibility is limited to internal users.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.MentionValidations`

Usage

Call this method to check whether the record IDs returned from a call to `ConnectApi.Mentions.getMentionCompletions` are valid for the context user. For example, the context users can't mention private groups they don't belong to. If such a group were included in the list of mention validations, the `ConnectApi.MentionValidations.hasErrors` property would be `true` and the group would have a `ConnectApi.MentionValidation.valdiationStatus` of `Disallowed`.

Mentions Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `Mentions`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestGetMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage` object to be returned when `getMentionCompletions(String, String, String)` is called in a test context.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetMentionCompletions (String communityId, String q, String contextId, ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

A search term for matching user and group names. Searching for a group requires a minimum of 2 characters. Searching for a user doesn't require a minimum number of characters. This parameter does not support wildcards.

contextId
Type: String

A feed item ID (for a mention in a comment) or a feed subject ID (for a mention in a feed item) that narrows search results, with more useful results listed first. Use a group ID for groups that allow customers to ensure mention completion results include customers.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage`

A `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage` object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, type, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage` object to be returned when `getMentionCompletions(String, String, String, ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType, Integer, Integer)` is called in a test context.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetMentionCompletions (String communityId, String q, String contextId, ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType type, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

A search term for matching user and group names. Searching for a group requires a minimum of 2 characters. Searching for a user doesn't require a minimum number of characters. This parameter does not support wildcards.

contextId
Type: String

A feed item ID (for a mention in a comment) or a feed subject ID (for a mention in a feed item) that narrows search results, with more useful results listed first. Use a group ID for groups that allow customers to ensure mention completion results include customers.

type
Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType`

Type of mention completion.

- `All`—All mention completions, regardless of the type of record to which the mention refers.
- `Group`—Mention completions for groups.
- `User`—Mention completions for users.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage`

A `ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage` object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getMentionCompletions(communityId, q, contextId, type, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Missions Class

Export and purge mission activity for users. Get a user's mission progress. Update mission activity counts for users.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Missions Methods

The following are methods for `Missions`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

exportUserMissionsActivities(communityId, userId)
Export mission activity for a user.

getUserMissionsProgress(communityId, userId)
Get mission activity progress for a user.

purgeUserMissionsActivities(communityId, userId)
Start a job to purge mission activity for a user.

purgeUserMissionsActivities(communityId)
Start a job to purge mission activity for all users.

updateUserMissionActivityCount(activityType, activityCount, communityId, userId)
Update the mission activity count for a user.

`exportUserMissionsActivities(communityId, userId)`

Export mission activity for a user.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob exportUserMissionsActivities(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob`

Usage

You can export these activities with this method.

- `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question.
- `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment.
- `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer.
- `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question.
- `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post.
- `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment.
- `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question.
- `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post.
- `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post.
- `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.

`getUserMissionsProgress(communityId, userId)`

Get mission activity progress for a user.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityCollection getUserMissionsProgress(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityCollection`

purgeUserMissionsActivities(communityId, userId)

Start a job to purge mission activity for a user.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob purgeUserMissionsActivities(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob`

Usage

This method purges these activities.

- `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question.
- `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment.
- `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer.
- `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question.
- `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post.
- `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment.
- `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question.
- `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post.
- `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post.
- `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.

purgeUserMissionsActivities(communityId)

Start a job to purge mission activity for all users.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob purgeUserMissionsActivities(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob`

Usage

This method purges these activities.

- `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question.
- `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment.
- `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer.
- `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question.
- `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post.
- `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment.
- `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question.
- `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post.
- `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post.
- `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.

`updateUserMissionActivityCount(activityType, activityCount, communityId, userId)`

Update the mission activity count for a user.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityStatus
updateUserMissionActivityCount(ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityType activityType, Integer
activityCount, String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

activityType
Type: ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityType

Type of mission activity for a user. Values are:

- `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question.
- `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment.
- `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer.
- `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question.
- `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post.
- `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment.
- `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question.
- `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post.
- `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post.
- `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.

activityCount
Type: Integer

Number of mission activities of the specified type for the user.

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityStatus

NavigationMenu Class

Get navigation menu items for an Experience Cloud site.

Namespace

ConnectApi

NavigationMenu Methods

These methods are for `NavigationMenu`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCommunityNavigationMenu(communityId, navigationLinkSetId, navigationLinkSetDeveloperName, publishStatus, includeImageUrl, addHomeMenuItem, menuItemTypesToSkip)
Get navigation menu items for an Experience Cloud site.

`getCommunityNavigationMenu(communityId, navigationLinkSetId, navigationLinkSetDeveloperName, publishStatus, includeImageUrl, addHomeMenuItem, menuItemTypesToSkip)`

Get navigation menu items for an Experience Cloud site.

API Version

52.0

Available to Guest Users

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemCollection getCommunityNavigationMenu(String communityId, String navigationLinkSetId, String navigationLinkSetDeveloperName, ConnectApi.PublishStatus publishStatus, Boolean includeImageUrl, Boolean addHomeMenuItem, List<ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemType> menuItemTypesToSkip)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of an Experience Cloud site.

navigationLinkSetId
Type: String

ID of the navigation link set.

navigationLinkSetDeveloperName
Type: String

Developer name of the navigation link set.

publishStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.PublishStatus`

Publish status of the navigation menu item. Values are:

- `Draft`
- `Live`

includeImageUrl
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include the image URL with the menu item (`true`) or not (`false`).

addHomeMenuItem
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to add the Home menu item (`true`) or not (`false`).

menuItemTypesToSkip
Type: List<`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemType`>

List of menu item types to filter out of the results. Values are:

- `Event`—Event, such as logging in, logging out, or switching accounts.
- `ExternalLink`—URL outside of your site.
- `GlobalAction`—Lets users create records that aren't related to other records.
- `InternalLink`—Relative URL inside your site.
- `MenuLabel`—Menu label.
- `NavigationalTopic`—Dropdown list with links to the navigational topics in your site.
- `SalesforceObject`—Objects such as accounts, cases, contacts, and custom objects.
- `SystemLink`—System link, such as a link to Builder, Workspaces, or Setup.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemCollection`

NextBestAction Class

Execute recommendation strategies, get recommendations, manage recommendation reactions.

Namespace

ConnectApi

NextBestAction Methods

The following are methods for `NextBestAction`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteRecommendationReaction(reactionId)
Delete a recommendation reaction.

executeStrategy(strategyName, maxResults, contextRecordId)
Execute a strategy.

executeStrategy(strategyName, maxResults, contextRecordId, debugTrace)
Execute a strategy and request a trace.

executeStrategy(strategyName, strategyInput)
Execute a strategy using an input class.

getRecommendation(recommendationId)
Get a recommendation.

getRecommendationReaction(reactionId)
Get a recommendation reaction.

getRecommendationReactions(onBehalfOfId, createdById, targetId, contextRecordId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get recommendation reactions.

setRecommendationReaction(reaction)
Record user reactions to recommendations.

`deleteRecommendationReaction(reactionId)`

Delete a recommendation reaction.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteRecommendationReaction(String reactionId)
```

Parameters

`reactionId`
Type: String

ID of the recommendation reaction.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Users with the Manage Next Best Action Recommendations or Modify All Data permission can delete recommendation reactions.

executeStrategy(strategyName, maxResults, contextRecordId)

Execute a strategy.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.NBARecommendations executeStrategy(String strategyName, Integer maxResults, String contextRecordId)
```

Parameters

strategyName
Type: String

Name of the strategy.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of results. Valid values are from 1 to 25. The default is 3.

contextRecordId
Type: String

ID of the context record. For example, if the next best action is on a case detail page, the ID of the case.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.NBARecommendations`

executeStrategy(strategyName, maxResults, contextRecordId, debugTrace)

Execute a strategy and request a trace.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.NBARecommendations executeStrategy(String strategyName, Integer
maxResults, String contextRecordId, Boolean debugTrace)
```

Parameters

strategyName
Type: String

Name of the strategy.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of results. Valid values are from 1 to 25. The default is 3.

contextRecordId
Type: String

ID of the context record. For example, if the next best action is on a case detail page, the ID of the case.

debugTrace
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to return trace and debug information in the response (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.NBARecommendations`

executeStrategy(strategyName, strategyInput)

Execute a strategy using an input class.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.NBARecommendations executeStrategy(String strategyName,
ConnectApi.NBAStrategyInput strategyInput)
```

Parameters

strategyName
Type: String

Name of the strategy.

strategyInput
Type: ConnectApi.NBAStrategyInput

A ConnectApi.NBAStrategyInput body.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.NBARecommendations

getRecommendation(recommendationId)

Get a recommendation.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Recommendation getRecommendation(String recommendationId)
```

Parameters

recommendationId
Type: String

ID of the recommendation.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Recommendation

getRecommendationReaction(reactionId)

Get a recommendation reaction.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction getRecommendationReaction(String
reactionId)
```

Parameters

reactionId
Type: String

ID of the recommendation reaction.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction

Usage

Users with the Manage Next Best Action Recommendations or Modify All Data permission can get recommendation reactions.

getRecommendationReactions(onBehalfOfId, createdById, targetId, contextRecordId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get recommendation reactions.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationReactions getRecommendationReactions(String
onBehalfOfId, String createdById, String targetId, String contextRecordId, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

onBehalfOfId
Type: String

Use the ID of the user who is indirectly reacting to the recommendation to filter the results.

createdById
Type: String

Use the ID of the user or record that created the recommendation reaction to filter the results.

targetId
Type: String

Use the ID of the target to filter the results.

contextRecordId
Type: String

Use the ID of a context record to filter the results.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationReactions`

Usage

Users with the Manage Next Best Action Recommendations or Modify All Data permission can get recommendation reactions.

`setRecommendationReaction(reaction)`

Record user reactions to recommendations.

API Version

45.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction
setRecommendationReaction(ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionInput reaction)
```

Parameters

reaction
Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionInput

A ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionInput object representing a reaction to a recommendation produced by a recommendation strategy.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction

OmnichannelInventoryService Class

Route orders to inventory locations in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

OmnichannelInventoryService Methods

The following are methods for OmnichannelInventoryService. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createReservation(createReservationInputRepresentation)
Create an inventory reservation in Omnichannel Inventory.

fulfillReservation(fulfillReservationInputRepresentation)
Fulfill one or more inventory reservations.

getInventoryAvailability(inventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation)
Retrieve inventory availability data for one or more products at one or more inventory locations or location groups.

getInventoryAvailabilityUploadStatus(uploadId)
Retrieve the status of an inventory availability upload job.

getPublishLocationStructureStatus(uploadId)
Retrieve the status of a publish location structure job.

publishLocationStructure()
Asynchronously publish information about your inventory locations and location groups to Omnichannel Inventory. The publish includes records whose IsEnabled and ShouldSyncWithOci fields are both *true*. This method returns an ID that you can use to retrieve the status of the publish job.

releaseReservation(releaseReservationInputRepresentation)
Release one or more existing inventory reservations to free up that inventory.

submitInventoryAvailabilityUpload(fileUpload)
Upload an inventory availability data file to Omnichannel Inventory.

transferReservation(transferReservationInputRepresentation)
Transfer one or more inventory reservations between locations or location groups. This API doesn't change physical quantities, but reduces the reserved quantity at the source and increases it at the destination.

createReservation(createReservationInputRepresentation)

Create an inventory reservation in Omnichannel Inventory.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationOutputRepresentation
createReservation(ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationInputRepresentation
createReservationInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

createReservationInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationInputRepresentation

Data to reserve inventory at one or more Omnichannel Inventory locations or location groups.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationOutputRepresentation

fulfillReservation(fulfillReservationInputRepresentation)

Fulfill one or more inventory reservations.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationOutputRepresentation
fulfillReservation(ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationInputRepresentation
fulfillReservationInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

fulfillReservationInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationInputRepresentation

Wraps a list of inventory reservations to fulfill.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationOutputRepresentation

getInventoryAvailability(inventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation)

Retrieve inventory availability data for one or more products at one or more inventory locations or location groups.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation
getInventoryAvailability(ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation
inventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

inventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation

Details of a request to retrieve inventory availability.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

getInventoryAvailabilityUploadStatus(uploadId)

Retrieve the status of an inventory availability upload job.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityStatusOutputRepresentation
getInventoryAvailabilityUploadStatus(String uploadId)
```

Parameters

uploadId
Type: String

The upload ID of the upload job.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityStatusOutputRepresentation

getPublishLocationStructureStatus(uploadId)

Retrieve the status of a publish location structure job.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureStatusOutputRepresentation
getPublishLocationStructureStatus(String uploadId)
```

Parameters

uploadId
Type: String

The upload ID of the publish job.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureStatusOutputRepresentation

publishLocationStructure()

Asynchronously publish information about your inventory locations and location groups to Omnichannel Inventory. The publish includes records whose IsEnabled and ShouldSyncWithOci fields are both *true*. This method returns an ID that you can use to retrieve the status of the publish job.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureOutputRepresentation
publishLocationStructure()
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureOutputRepresentation

releaseReservation(releaseReservationInputRepresentation)

Release one or more existing inventory reservations to free up that inventory.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationOutputRepresentation
releaseReservation(ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationInputRepresentation
releaseReservationInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

releaseReservationInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationInputRepresentation

Details of one or more inventory reservations to release.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationOutputRepresentation

submitInventoryAvailabilityUpload(fileUpload)

Upload an inventory availability data file to Omnichannel Inventory.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation
submitInventoryAvailabilityUpload(ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

fileUpload

Type: ConnectApi.BinaryInput

JSON file containing inventory availability data.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

Usage

To create an inventory data file, format the data as a series of JSON entries representing locations and individual inventory records.

Inventory Import Data Considerations:

- Separate the top-level entries with line feeds, not commas. Each entry must be on a single line.
- When the system reads a location entry, it assigns the subsequent inventory entries to that location until it reads another location entry.
- For each location entry, specify `"mode":"UPDATE"`.
- Each inventory record entry requires a unique recordId. Best practice is to use a UUID. The record Id protects against importing duplicate data.
- Each inventory record entry requires an effectiveDate.
- Each futures entry requires a nonzero quantity and a future expectedDate.
- The system only creates or updates entries that are included in the data. It doesn't delete entries that aren't included. However, if an included entry has an empty value, that value is deleted.

Note: The file size limit is 100 MB. For larger data sets, you can compress the file using GZIP or split the data into multiple files.

This example illustrates the data format:

Note: For readability, this example shows the first few entries on multiple lines. In the import file, each location and inventory record entry must be on a single line.

```
{
  "location":"Warehouse-A",  // location identifier
  "mode":"UPDATE"  // must be UPDATE (other operations might be available in future releases)
}
{
  "recordId":"0a87539d-f3dd-47bc-91c7-9c752e39dbe0",  // unique identifier for the inventory
 record
  "onHand":10,
  "sku":"12389156",
  "effectiveDate":"2020-12-08T14:05:22.790896-07:00",
  "futures":[  // list of future restocks
    {
    "quantity":1,
    "expectedDate":"2021-04-18T14:05:22.781-07:00"
```

```
    },
    {
    "quantity":5,
    "expectedDate":"2021-05-18T14:05:22.781-07:00"
    }
  ],
  "safetyStockCount":0
}
{
  "recordId":"0a87539d-f3dd-47bc-91c7-9c752e312345",
  "onHand":10,
  "sku":"9485728",
  "effectiveDate":"2020-12-08T14:05:22.790896-07:00",
  "futures":[
    {
    "quantity":10,
    "expectedDate":"2021-04-18T14:05:22.781-07:00"
    }
  ],
  "safetyStockCount":0
}
{"location":"Warehouse-B","mode":"UPDATE"}
{"recordId":"0a87539d-f3dd-47bc-91c7-9c752e312345","onHand":10,"sku":"12345","effectiveDate":"2020-12-08T14:05:22.790896-07:00","futures":[{"quantity":1,"expectedDate":"2021-04-18T14:05:22.781-07:00"}],"safetyStockCount":0}
{"recordId":"0a87539d-f3dd-47bc-91c7-9c752e312345","onHand":10,"sku":"98621","effectiveDate":"2020-12-08T14:05:22.790896-07:00","futures":[{"quantity":5,"expectedDate":"2021-04-18T14:05:22.781-07:00"}],"safetyStockCount":0}
```

`transferReservation(transferReservationInputRepresentation)`

Transfer one or more inventory reservations between locations or location groups. This API doesn't change physical quantities, but reduces the reserved quantity at the source and increases it at the destination.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationOutputRepresentation
transferReservation(ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationInputRepresentation
transferReservationInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

transferReservationInputRepresentation

Type: ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationInputRepresentation

Wraps a list of inventory reservation transfers and specifies whether a single failure cancels the entire list.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationOutputRepresentation`

OrderPaymentSummary Class

Work with payments in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

OrderPaymentSummary Methods

The following are methods for `OrderPaymentSummary`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createOrderPaymentSummary(orderPaymentSummaryInput)
Create an OrderPaymentSummary for an OrderSummary. Specify a payment authorization or payments that share the same payment method. In an org with the multicurrency feature enabled, the OrderPaymentSummary inherits the CurrencyIsoCode value from the OrderSummary.

`createOrderPaymentSummary(orderPaymentSummaryInput)`

Create an OrderPaymentSummary for an OrderSummary. Specify a payment authorization or payments that share the same payment method. In an org with the multicurrency feature enabled, the OrderPaymentSummary inherits the CurrencyIsoCode value from the OrderSummary.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryOutputRepresentation
createOrderPaymentSummary(ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryInputRepresentation
orderPaymentSummaryInput)
```

Parameters

`orderPaymentSummaryInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryInputRepresentation`

The OrderSummary and payment authorization or payments.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryOutputRepresentation

Example

```
String orderSummaryId = '1Osxx0000004CCG';
String paymentId1 = '0a3xx0000000085AAA';
String paymentId2 = '0a3xx0000000085BBB';

ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryInputRepresentation orderPaymentSummaryInput = new
ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryInputRepresentation();
orderPaymentSummaryInput.orderSummaryId = orderSummaryId;
List<String> paymentList = new List<String>();
paymentList.add(paymentId1);
paymentList.add(paymentId2);
orderPaymentSummaryInput.paymentIds = paymentList;

ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryOutputRepresentation result =
ConnectAPI.OrderPaymentSummary.createOrderPaymentSummary(orderPaymentSummaryInput);
```

OrderSummary Class

Work with orders in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

OrderSummary Methods

The following are methods for `OrderSummary`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

adjustPreview(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)

Retrieve the expected results of adjusting the price of one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the adjustment. The response data contains the financial changes that would result from submitting the proposed adjustment.

adjustSubmit(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)

Adjust the price of one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create one or two corresponding change orders.

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

Create a credit memo to represent the refund for one or more change orders associated with an OrderSummary.

ensureFundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureFundsInput)

Ensure funds for an invoice and apply them to it. If needed, capture authorized funds by sending a request to a payment provider. This method inserts a background operation into an asynchronous job queue and returns the ID of that operation so you can track its status. Payment gateway responses appear in the payment gateway log and do not affect the background operation status.

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

Ensure refunds for a credit memo or excess funds by sending a request to a payment provider. This method inserts a background operation into an asynchronous job queue and returns the ID of that operation so you can track its status. Payment gateway responses appear in the payment gateway log and do not affect the background operation status.

previewCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Retrieve the expected change order values for canceling one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the cancel.

previewReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Retrieve the expected change order values for returning one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the return.

submitCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Cancel one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create a corresponding change order.

submitReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Return one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create a corresponding change order.

`adjustPreview(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)`

Retrieve the expected results of adjusting the price of one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the adjustment. The response data contains the financial changes that would result from submitting the proposed adjustment.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation adjustPreview(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.AdjustOrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation adjustInput)
```

Parameters

`orderSummaryId`

Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

`adjustInput`

Type: `ConnectApi.AdjustOrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation`

A list of price adjustments to OrderItemSummaries that make up a price adjustment to an order.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation`

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

adjustSubmit(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)

`adjustSubmit(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)`

Adjust the price of one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create one or two corresponding change orders.

API Version

49.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation adjustSubmit(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.AdjustOrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation adjustInput)
```

Parameters

`orderSummaryId`
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

`adjustInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.AdjustOrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation`

A list of price adjustments to OrderItemSummaries that make up a price adjustment to an order.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation`

Usage

After submitting a price adjustment, process refunds as appropriate:

- If the discount only applied to OrderItemSummaries for which payment has not been captured, it does not require a refund. This situation normally applies to OrderItemSummaries in the US that have not been fulfilled.
- If the discount applied to OrderItemSummaries that have not been fulfilled and for which payment has been captured, process a refund. In this case, pass the *`totalExcessFundsAmount`* from the output representation to the `ensureRefundsAsync()` method.

- If the discount applied to OrderItemSummaries that have been fulfilled, process a refund. Pass the *postFulfillmentChangeOrderId* from the output representation to the `createCreditMemo()` method, then pass the CreditMemo to the `ensureRefundsAsync()` method.
- If the discount applied to both fulfilled and unfulfilled OrderItemSummaries for which payment has been captured, process both refunds. Pass the *postFulfillmentChangeOrderId* from the output representation to the `createCreditMemo()` method, then pass the credit memo and the *totalExcessFundsAmount* from the output representation to the `ensureRefundsAsync()` method.

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

adjustPreview(orderSummaryId, adjustInput)

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

Create a credit memo to represent the refund for one or more change orders associated with an OrderSummary.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoOutputRepresentation createCreditMemo(String orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoInputRepresentation creditMemoInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

creditMemoInput
Type: `ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoInputRepresentation`

The list of change order IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoOutputRepresentation`

ensureFundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureFundsInput)

Ensure funds for an invoice and apply them to it. If needed, capture authorized funds by sending a request to a payment provider. This method inserts a background operation into an asynchronous job queue and returns the ID of that operation so you can track its status. Payment gateway responses appear in the payment gateway log and do not affect the background operation status.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncOutputRepresentation ensureFundsAsync(String orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncInputRepresentation ensureFundsInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

ensureFundsInput
Type: `ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncInputRepresentation`

The ID of the invoice.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncOutputRepresentation`

Usage

This method checks the OrderPaymentSummaries associated with the specified OrderSummary for funds to apply to the invoice balance as follows:

Note: If multiple OrderPaymentSummaries have the same amount, their order of selection is random.

1. Verify that the invoice balance doesn't exceed the total amount of all the OrderPaymentSummaries.
2. If an OrderPaymentSummary exists with an amount that matches the invoice balance, use it.
3. Otherwise, if any OrderPaymentSummaries exist with an amount greater than the invoice balance, use the one with the smallest amount greater than the invoice balance.
4. Otherwise, select OrderPaymentSummaries in order from largest amount to smallest until their amounts meet or exceed the invoice balance.
5. If any selected funds are authorized, capture them.
6. Apply the selected funds to the invoice.

`ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)`

Ensure refunds for a credit memo or excess funds by sending a request to a payment provider. This method inserts a background operation into an asynchronous job queue and returns the ID of that operation so you can track its status. Payment gateway responses appear in the payment gateway log and do not affect the background operation status.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncOutputRepresentation ensureRefundsAsync(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncInputRepresentation ensureRefundsInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

ensureRefundsInput
Type: ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncInputRepresentation

Object that wraps the ID of the credit memo and the excess funds amount.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncOutputRepresentation

previewCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Retrieve the expected change order values for canceling one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the cancel.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PreviewCancelOutputRepresentation previewCancel(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation changeInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

changeInput
Type: ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation

A list of changes to OrderItemSummaries that make up an order change, such as a cancel or return.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.PreviewCancelOutputRepresentation

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

submitCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

previewReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

Retrieve the expected change order values for returning one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, without actually executing the return.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.PreviewReturnOutputRepresentation previewReturn(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation changeInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

changeInput
Type: ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation

A list of changes to OrderItemSummaries that make up an order change, such as a cancel or return.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.PreviewReturnOutputRepresentation`

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

submitReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

`submitCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)`

Cancel one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create a corresponding change order.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SubmitCancelOutputRepresentation submitCancel(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation changeInput)
```

Parameters

`orderSummaryId`
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

`changeInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation`

A list of changes to OrderItemSummaries that make up an order change, such as a cancel or return.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.SubmitCancelOutputRepresentation`

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

previewCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

`submitReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)`

Return one or more OrderItemSummaries from an OrderSummary, and create a corresponding change order.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SubmitReturnOutputRepresentation submitReturn(String
orderSummaryId, ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation changeInput)
```

Parameters

orderSummaryId
Type: String

ID of the OrderSummary.

changeInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation`

A list of changes to OrderItemSummaries that make up an order change, such as a cancel or return.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.SubmitReturnOutputRepresentation`

Usage

After submitting a return, process a refund. Pass the *changeOrderId* from the output representation to the `createCreditMemo()` method, then pass the credit memo to the `ensureRefundsAsync()` method.

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

previewReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

OrderSummaryCreation Class

Create Order Summaries in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

OrderSummaryCreation Methods

The following are methods for `OrderSummaryCreation`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createOrderSummary(orderSummaryInput)
Create an OrderSummary based on an order. That order is considered the original order for the OrderSummary. Subsequent change orders that apply to the OrderSummary are also represented as orders. You can specify whether the order is managed in Salesforce Order Management or by an external system. Most Salesforce Order Management APIs can run only on orders that it manages.

`createOrderSummary(orderSummaryInput)`

Create an OrderSummary based on an order. That order is considered the original order for the OrderSummary. Subsequent change orders that apply to the OrderSummary are also represented as orders. You can specify whether the order is managed in Salesforce Order Management or by an external system. Most Salesforce Order Management APIs can run only on orders that it manages.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.OrderSummaryOutputRepresentation
createOrderSummary(ConnectApi.OrderSummaryInputRepresentation orderSummaryInput)
```

Parameters

`orderSummaryInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryInputRepresentation`

Input object that wraps the ID of the source order.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrderSummaryOutputRepresentation`

Organization Class

Access information about an org.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Organization Methods

The following are methods for `Organization`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSettings()
Get information about the context user and the org, including which features are enabled.

`getSettings()`

Get information about the context user and the org, including which features are enabled.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi. OrganizationSettings getSettings()
```

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.OrganizationSettings`

Payments Methods

Authorize a payment, capture an authorized payment, and refund an authorized payment.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Payments Methods

The following are methods for `Payments`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

authorize(authorizePayment)
Authorize a payment.
reverseAuthorization(AuthReversalInput, authorizationId)
Reverses a payment authorization.
capture(AuthCaptureInput, authorizationId)
Capture an authorized payment.
refund(ReferencedRefundInput, paymentId)
Refund an authorized payment.

tokenizePaymentMethod(tokenizePaymentMethodInput)

Method to take the input parameters of the payment method you want to tokenize and then pass them to the payment gateway's tokenization service. The results of the tokenization request are returned as a response from the payment gateway.

`authorize(authorizePayment)`

Authorize a payment.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
global static ConnectApi.AuthorizationResponse authorize(ConnectApi.AuthorizationRequest
authorizePayment)
```

Parameters

`authorizePayment`

Type: `ConnectApi.AuthorizationRequest`

Represents a payment authorization.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AuthorizationResponse`

`reverseAuthorization(AuthReversalInput, authorizationId)`

Reverses a payment authorization.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
global static ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalResponse
reverseAuthorization(ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalRequest AuthReversalInput, String
authorizationId)
```

Parameters

AuthReversalInput
Type: ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalRequest

Input information for the payment authorization reversal.

authorizationId
Type: String

The ID of the payment authorization to be reversed.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalResponse

capture(AuthCaptureInput, authorizationId)

Capture an authorized payment.

To access Payments methods, you need the following permissions.

- Salesforce Order Management License
- PaymentsAPIUser user permission. This permission is available with the Salesforce Order Management License. Your Salesforce admin assigns it to your profile.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
global static ConnectApi.CaptureResponse capture(ConnectApi.CaptureRequest
AuthCaptureInput, String authorizationId)
```

Parameters

AuthCaptureInput
Type: ConnectApi.CaptureRequest

A `ConnectApi.CaptureRequest` object with information about the payment capture.

authorizationId
Type: String

ID of the payment authorization. Required.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.CaptureResponse

`refund(ReferencedRefundInput, paymentId)`

Refund an authorized payment.

To access Payments methods, you need the following permissions.

- Salesforce Order Management License
- PaymentsAPIUser user permission. This permission is available with the Salesforce Order Management License. Your Salesforce admin assigns it to your profile.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
global static ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundResponse
refund(ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundRequest ReferencedRefundInput, String paymentId)
```

Parameters

`ReferencedRefundInput`
Type: `ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundRequest`

A `ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundRequest` object with information about the refund.

`paymentId`
Type: String

ID of the payment to be refunded. Required.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundResponse`

`tokenizePaymentMethod(tokenizePaymentMethodInput)`

Method to take the input parameters of the payment method you want to tokenize and then pass them to the payment gateway's tokenization service. The results of the tokenization request are returned as a response from the payment gateway.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
global static ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse
tokenizePaymentMethod(ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest
tokenizePaymentMethodInput)
```

Parameters

tokenizePaymentMethodInput
Type: ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest

Information about the payment method to be tokenized.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse

Usage

Accepts input parameters representing a payment method and passes them in a tokenization request to the payment gateway. The results of the tokenization request are returned as a response from the payment gateway. If the tokenization was successful, the response contains the tokenized value and details about the tokenization process. Otherwise, the response contains an error message and details about the error.

Example

```
ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest request = new
ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest();
request.paymentGatewayId = '0b0xx0000001Ja5AAE';
ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodRequest cpmRequest = new ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodRequest();
cpmRequest.cardHolderName = 'Jo Manager';
cpmRequest.expiryMonth = 11;
cpmRequest.expiryYear = 2222;
cpmRequest.cardNumber = '4111111111111111';
cpmRequest.cvv = '111';
cpmRequest.cardCategory = ConnectApi.CardCategory.CreditCard;
cpmRequest.cardType = ConnectApi.CardType.Visa.name();
request.cardPaymentMethod = cpmRequest;
ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse response =
ConnectApi.Payments.tokenizePaymentMethod(request);
```

Personalization Class

Get assigned personalization audiences that match the user context. Create, get, update, and delete an audience. Get personalization targets that match the user context, based on the assigned audiences that include the user. Create and update targets. Get and delete a target.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Note: Personalization varies what the user can see in the browser but doesn't secure data in any way. To prevent users accessing sensitive data, use standard Salesforce security features, such as sharing rules and permission sets.

Personalization Methods

The following are methods for `Personalization`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createAudience(communityId, audience)
Create an audience.

createTargets(communityId, target)
Create targets.

deleteAudience(communityId, audienceId)
Delete an audience.

deleteTarget(communityId, targetId)
Delete a target.

getAudience(communityId, audienceId, includeAudienceCriteria)
Get an audience.

getAudienceBatch(communityId, audienceIds)
Get audience information for a comma-separated list of audience IDs.

getAudiences(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, includeAudienceCriteria, targetTypes, recordId)
Get a list of assigned audiences that match the user context and record information.

getAudiences(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, includeAudienceCriteria, targetTypes)
Get a list of assigned audiences that match the user context.

getTarget(communityId, targetId)
Get a target.

getTargetBatch(communityId, targetIds)
Get target information for a comma-separated list of target IDs.

getTargets(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, recordId, targetTypes, includeAudience, includeAllMatchingTargetsWithinGroup, groupNames)
Get a list of targets that match the user context, based on the assigned audiences that include the user.

updateAudience(communityId, audienceId, audience)
Update an audience.

updateTargets(communityId, target)
Update targets.

`createAudience(communityId, audience)`

Create an audience.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Audience createAudience(String communityId,
ConnectApi.AudienceInput audience)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

audience
Type: ConnectApi.AudienceInput

A `ConnectApi.AudienceInput` object that defines the audience.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Audience

createTargets(communityId, target)

Create targets.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TargetCollection createTargets(String communityId,
ConnectApi.TargetCollectionInput target)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

target
Type: ConnectApi.TargetCollectionInput

A `ConnectApi.TargetCollectionInput` object that defines the targets.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.TargetCollection

deleteAudience(communityId, audienceId)

Delete an audience.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteAudience(String communityId, String audienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

audienceId
Type: String

ID of the audience.

Return Value

Type: Void

deleteTarget(communityId, targetId)

Delete a target.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteTarget(String communityId, String targetId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

targetId
Type: String

ID of the target.

Return Value

Type: Void

getAudience(communityId, audienceId, includeAudienceCriteria)

Get an audience.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Audience getAudience(String communityId, String audienceId,
Boolean includeAudienceCriteria)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

audienceId
Type: String

ID of the audience.

includeAudienceCriteria
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include audience criteria (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Audience

getAudienceBatch(communityId, audienceIds)

Get audience information for a comma-separated list of audience IDs.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getAudienceBatch(String communityId, List<String>
audienceIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

audienceIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of audience IDs.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.BatchResult[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a ConnectApi.Audience object and errors for audiences that didn't load.

getAudiences(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, includeAudienceCriteria, targetTypes, recordId)

Get a list of assigned audiences that match the user context and record information.

API Version

51.0

Available to Guest Users

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AudienceCollection getAudiences(String communityId, String ipAddress, String domain, String userId, ConnectApi.PublishStatus publishStatus, Boolean includeAudienceCriteria, List<String> targetTypes, String recordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

ipAddress
Type: String

IP address of the user. If `null`, no audiences with location criteria are returned.

domain
Type: String

Name of the user's Salesforce custom domain. If `null`, no audiences with domain criteria are returned.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user. If `null`, defaults to the ID of the context user.

publishStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.PublishStatus`

Publish status of the audience. Values are:

- `Draft`
- `Live`

If `null`, defaults to `Live`.

includeAudienceCriteria
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include audience criteria (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

targetTypes
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of target types to filter the results. Supported values include:

- `ExperienceVariation` (version 48.0 and later)
- Custom object API names, such as ***`CustomObjectName`*****`__c`** (version 48.0 and later)
- `NavigationLinkSet` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Topic` (version 49.0 and later)

- `CollaborationGroup` (version 49.0 and later)
- `KnowledgeArticle` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ContentDocument` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ManagedContent` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Report` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Dashboard` (version 49.0 and later)

If `null`, all target types are returned.

recordId
Type: String

ID of the record for field based criteria. If `null`, all applicable audiences with field based criteria are returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AudienceCollection`

getAudiences(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, includeAudienceCriteria, targetTypes)

Get a list of assigned audiences that match the user context.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.AudienceCollection getAudiences(String communityId, String ipAddress, String domain, String userId, ConnectApi.PublishStatus publishStatus, Boolean includeAudienceCriteria, List<String> targetTypes)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

ipAddress
Type: String

IP address of the user. If `null`, no audiences with location criteria are returned.

domain
Type: String

Name of the user's Salesforce custom domain. If `null`, no audiences with domain criteria are returned.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user. If `null`, defaults to the ID of the context user.

publishStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.PublishStatus`

Publish status of the audience. Values are:

- `Draft`
- `Live`

If `null`, defaults to `Live`.

includeAudienceCriteria
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include audience criteria (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.

targetTypes
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of target types to filter the results. Supported values include:

- `ExperienceVariation` (version 48.0 and later)
- Custom object API names, such as ***`CustomObjectName`*****`__c`** (version 48.0 and later)
- `NavigationLinkSet` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Topic` (version 49.0 and later)
- `CollaborationGroup` (version 49.0 and later)
- `KnowledgeArticle` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ContentDocument` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ManagedContent` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Report` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Dashboard` (version 49.0 and later)

If `null`, all target types are returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.AudienceCollection`

`getTarget(communityId, targetId)`

Get a target.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Target getTarget(String communityId, String targetId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

targetId
Type: String

ID of the target.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Target

getTargetBatch(communityId, targetIds)

Get target information for a comma-separated list of target IDs.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getTargetBatch(String communityId, List<String>
targetIds)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

targetIds
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of target IDs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.Target` object and errors for targets that didn't load.

getTargets(communityId, ipAddress, domain, userId, publishStatus, recordId, targetTypes, includeAudience, includeAllMatchingTargetsWithinGroup, groupNames)

Get a list of targets that match the user context, based on the assigned audiences that include the user.

API Version

48.0

Available to Guest Users

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TargetCollection getTargets(String communityId, String ipAddress, String domain, String userId, ConnectApi.PublishStatus publishStatus, String recordId, List<String> targetTypes, Boolean includeAudience, Boolean includeAllMatchingTargetsWithinGroup, List<String> groupNames)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

ipAddress
Type: String

IP address of the user. If `null`, no audiences with location criteria are returned.

domain
Type: String

Name of the user's Salesforce custom domain. If `null`, no audiences with domain criteria are returned.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user. If `null`, the default is the ID of the context user.

publishStatus
Type: `ConnectApi.PublishStatus`

Publish status of the target. Values are:

- `Draft`
- `Live`

recordId
Type: String

ID of the record, if you want to specify field based criteria in audiences.

targetTypes
Type: List<String>

Comma-separated list of target types to filter the results. Supported values include:

- `ExperienceVariation` (version 48.0 and later)
- Custom object API names, such as ***`CustomObjectName`*****`__c`** (version 48.0 and later)
- `NavigationLinkSet` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Topic` (version 49.0 and later)
- `CollaborationGroup` (version 49.0 and later)
- `KnowledgeArticle` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ContentDocument` (version 49.0 and later)
- `ManagedContent` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Report` (version 49.0 and later)
- `Dashboard` (version 49.0 and later)

If `null`, all target types are returned.

includeAudience
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include the matching audience (`true`) or not (`false`). If `null`, the default is `false`.

includeAllMatchingTargetsWithinGroup
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to include all the matching targets within a target group (`true`) or not (`false`). If `null`, the default is `false`. If `false`, the first matching target within each group, based on priority within the group, is returned.

groupNames
Type: List<String>

A comma-separated list of group names. Groups bundle related target and audience pairs.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TargetCollection`

updateAudience(communityId, audienceId, audience)

Update an audience.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Audience updateAudience(String communityId, String audienceId,
ConnectApi.AudienceInput audience)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

audienceId
Type: String

ID of the audience.

audience
Type: ConnectApi.AudienceInput

A `ConnectApi.AudienceInput` object that defines the updates to the audience.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Audience

updateTargets(communityId, target)

Update targets.

API Version

48.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TargetCollection updateTargets(String communityId,
ConnectApi.TargetCollectionUpdateInput target)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

target
Type: `ConnectApi.TargetCollectionUpdateInput`

A `ConnectApi.TargetCollectionUpdateInput` object that defines the updates for the targets.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TargetCollection`

QuestionAndAnswers Class

Access question and answers suggestions.

Namespace

ConnectApi

IN THIS SECTION:

QuestionAndAnswers Methods

QuestionAndAnswers Methods

The following are methods for `QuestionAndAnswers`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults)
Get question and answers suggestions.

setTestGetSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions` object to be returned when `getSuggestions` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

updateQuestionAndAnswers(communityId, feedElementId, questionAndAnswersCapability)
Choose or change the best answer for a question.

`getSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults)`

Get question and answers suggestions.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions getSuggestions(String communityId,
String q, String subjectId, Boolean includeArticles, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

subjectId
Type: String

Specify a subject ID to search only questions on that object. If the ID is a topic or a user, the ID is ignored.

includeArticles
Type: Boolean

Specify `true` to include knowledge articles in the search results. To return only questions, specify `false`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

The maximum number of results to return for each type of item. Possible values are 1–10. The default value is 5.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions` object to be returned when `getSuggestions` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

32.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetSuggestions(String communityId, String q, String subjectId,
Boolean includeArticles, Integer maxResults, ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Required and cannot be `null`. Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

subjectId
Type: String

Specify a subject ID to search only questions on that object. If the ID is a topic or a user, the ID is ignored.

includeArticles
Type: Boolean

Specify `true` to include knowledge articles in the search results. To return only questions, specify `false`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

The maximum number of results to return for each type of item. Possible values are 1–10. The default value is 5.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getSuggestions(communityId, q, subjectId, includeArticles, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

updateQuestionAndAnswers(communityId, feedElementId, questionAndAnswersCapability)

Choose or change the best answer for a question.

API Version

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability updateQuestionAndAnswers(String communityId, String feedElementId, ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput questionAndAnswersCapability)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

feedElementId
Type: String

ID of the feed element.

questionAndAnswersCapability
Type: `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput`

Specify the best answer (comment ID) for the question.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability`

If the feed element doesn't support this capability, the return value is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

Example

```
ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput qaInput = new
ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput();
qaInput.bestAnswerId = '0D7D000000001MAKAY';

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability qa =
ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswers.updateQuestionAndAnswers(null, '0D5D0000000XZjJ', qaInput);
```

Recommendations Class

Get and reject Chatter, custom, and static recommendations. Create, get, update, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

For Next Best Action recommendations, see NextBestAction Class.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Recommendations Methods

The following are methods for `Recommendations`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudience)
Create an audience for a custom recommendation.

createRecommendationAudience(communityId, name)
Create an audience for a custom recommendation.

createRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinition)
Create a custom recommendation definition.

createRecommendationDefinition(communityId, name, title, actionUrl, actionUrlName, explanation)
Create a custom recommendation definition with the specified parameters.

createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendation)
Create a scheduled custom recommendation.

createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId, channel)
Create a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

deleteRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)
Delete a custom recommendation audience.

deleteRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)
Delete a custom recommendation definition.

deleteRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)
Delete a custom recommendation definition photo.

deleteScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, deleteDefinitionIfLast)
Delete a scheduled custom recommendation.

getRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)
Get information about a custom recommendation audience.

getRecommendationAudienceMembership(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)
Get the members of a custom recommendation audience.

getRecommendationAudienceMembership(communityId, recommendationAudienceId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of custom recommendation audience members.

getRecommendationAudiences(communityId)
Get custom recommendation audiences.

getRecommendationAudiences(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of custom recommendation audiences.

getRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)
Get a custom recommendation definition.

getRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)
Get a custom recommendation definition photo.

getRecommendationDefinitions(communityId)
Get custom recommendation definitions.

getRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId)
Get the Chatter, custom, or static recommendation for the context user for the specified action and object ID.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)
Get the Chatter recommendations, such as user, group, file, article, record, and topic recommendations for the context user. Get the custom and static recommendations for the context user.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)
Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)
Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action and object category.

getScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId)
Get a scheduled custom recommendation.

getScheduledRecommendations(communityId, channel)
Get scheduled custom recommendations.

rejectRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId)
Reject a Chatter, custom, or static recommendation for the context user for the specified action and object ID.

rejectRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectEnum)
Reject a static recommendation for the context user.

updateRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId, recommendationAudience)
Update a custom recommendation audience.

updateRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, name, title, actionUrl, actionUrlName, explanation)
Update a custom recommendation definition with the specified parameters.

updateRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, recommendationDefinition)
Update a custom recommendation definition.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, fileUpload)
Update a custom recommendation definition photo with a file that hasn't been uploaded.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, fileId, versionNumber)
Update a custom recommendation definition photo with an uploaded file.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo)
Update a custom recommendation definition photo with an uploaded file that requires cropping.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo, fileUpload)
Update a custom recommendation definition photo with a file that hasn't been uploaded and requires cropping.

updateScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, scheduledRecommendation)
Update a scheduled custom recommendation.

updateScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId)
Update a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

createRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudience)

Create an audience for a custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience createRecommendationAudience(String
communityId, ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput recommendationAudience)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudience
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput`

A `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

createRecommendationAudience(communityId, name)

Create an audience for a custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience createRecommendationAudience(String communityId, String name)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

name
Type: String

Name of the audience.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`createRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinition)`

Create a custom recommendation definition.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition createRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput recommendationDefinition)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinition
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput`

A `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`

Usage

Recommendation definitions allow you to create custom recommendations that appear in Experience Cloud sites, encouraging users to watch videos, take training and more.

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

These recommendations appear by default on the Customer Service template. They appear on the home and question detail pages and in the feed in Salesforce mobile web. They also appear anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder in the Customer Service template.

So that users don't see the same recommendations all the time, Salesforce periodically removes and brings back custom recommendations that haven't been accepted or dismissed.

`createRecommendationDefinition(communityId, name, title, actionUrl, actionUrlName, explanation)`

Create a custom recommendation definition with the specified parameters.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition createRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, String name, String title, String actionUrl, String actionUrlName, String explanation)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

name
Type: String

Name of the custom recommendation definition. The name is displayed in Setup.

title
Type: String

Title of the custom recommendation definition.

actionUrl
Type: String

URL for acting on the custom recommendation, for example, the URL to join a group.

actionUrlName
Type: String

Text label for the action URL in the user interface, for example, "Launch."

explanation
Type: String

Explanation, or body, of the custom recommendation.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`

Usage

Recommendation definitions allow you to create custom recommendations that appear in Experience Cloud sites, encouraging users to watch videos, take training and more.

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

These recommendations appear by default on the Customer Service template. They appear on the home and question detail pages and in the feed in Salesforce mobile web. They also appear anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder in the Customer Service template.

So that users don't see the same recommendations all the time, Salesforce periodically removes and brings back custom recommendations that haven't been accepted or dismissed.

`createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendation)`

Create a scheduled custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation createScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput scheduledRecommendation)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

scheduledRecommendation
Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput`

A `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput` object.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId, channel)`

Create a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation createScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, Integer rank, Boolean enabled, String recommendationAudienceId, ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

rank
Type: Integer

Relative rank of the scheduled custom recommendation indicated by ascending whole numbers starting with 1.

Setting the rank is comparable to an insertion into an ordered list. The scheduled custom recommendation is inserted into the position specified by the `rank`. The `rank` of all the scheduled custom recommendations after it is pushed down. See Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example.

If the specified `rank` is larger than the size of the list, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list. The `rank` of the scheduled custom recommendation is the size of the list, instead of the one specified.

If a `rank` is not specified, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list.

enabled
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether scheduling is enabled. If `true`, the custom recommendation is enabled and appears in Experience Cloud sites. If `false`, custom recommendations in feeds in Salesforce mobile web aren't removed, but no new custom recommendations appear. In Customer Service and Partner Central sites, disabled custom recommendations no longer appear.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition that this scheduled recommendation schedules.

channel
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

Use these channel values; you can't rename or create other channels.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example

If you have these scheduled custom recommendations:

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationB	2
ScheduledRecommendationC	3

And you include this information in the Scheduled Custom Recommendation Input:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationD	2

The result is:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationD	2
ScheduledRecommendationB	3
ScheduledRecommendationC	4

`deleteRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)`

Delete a custom recommendation audience.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteRecommendationAudience(String communityId, String
recommendationAudienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation audience.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`deleteRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)`

Delete a custom recommendation definition.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, String
recommendationDefinitionId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`deleteRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)`

Delete a custom recommendation definition photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void deleteRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`recommendationDefinitionId`
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`deleteScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, deleteDefinitionIfLast)`

Delete a scheduled custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String scheduledRecommendationId, Boolean deleteDefinitionIfLast)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`scheduledRecommendationId`
Type: String

ID of the scheduled custom recommendation.

`deleteDefinitionIfLast`
Type: Boolean

If `true` and if this is the last scheduled custom recommendation of a custom recommendation definition, deletes the custom recommendation definition. Default is `false`.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Deleting a scheduled custom recommendation is comparable to a deletion in an ordered list. All scheduled custom recommendations after the deleted scheduled custom recommendation receive a new, higher rank automatically.

`getRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)`

Get information about a custom recommendation audience.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience getRecommendationAudience(String communityId, String recommendationAudienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation audience.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getRecommendationAudienceMembership(communityId, recommendationAudienceId)`

Get the members of a custom recommendation audience.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserReferencePage getRecommendationAudienceMembership(String communityId, String recommendationAudienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation audience.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserReferencePage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getRecommendationAudienceMembership(communityId, recommendationAudienceId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of custom recommendation audience members.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserReferencePage getRecommendationAudienceMembership(String communityId, String recommendationAudienceId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation audience.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of members per page.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserReferencePage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

getRecommendationAudiences(communityId)

Get custom recommendation audiences.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage getRecommendationAudiences(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

getRecommendationAudiences(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)

Get a page of custom recommendation audiences.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage getRecommendationAudiences(String communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of audiences per page.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

getRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)

Get a custom recommendation definition.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition getRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId)`

Get a custom recommendation definition photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo getRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`recommendationDefinitionId`
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getRecommendationDefinitions(communityId)`

Get custom recommendation definitions.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionPage getRecommendationDefinitions(String communityId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionPage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId)`

Get the Chatter, custom, or static recommendation for the context user for the specified action and object ID.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

objectId
Type: String

Specifies the object to act on.

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectId* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID (version 36.0 and later).
- If *action* is `join`, *objectId* is a group ID.
- If *action* is `view`, *objectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, custom recommendation ID (version 34.0 and later), the enum `Today` for static recommendations (version 35.0 and later), or an article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter recommendations, such as user, group, file, article, record, and topic recommendations for the context user. Get the custom and static recommendations for the context user.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Note: Only article and file recommendations are available to guest users.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

`contextAction`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`

- `view`

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`contextObjectId`
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *`contextAction`* is `follow`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *`contextAction`* is `view`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`channel`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

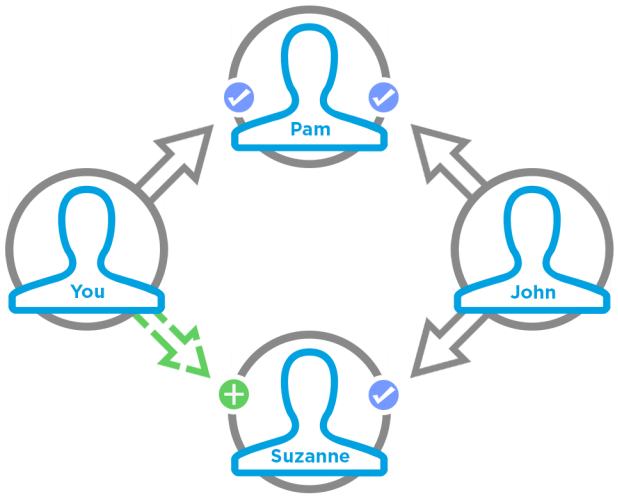
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *`contextAction`* and Pam's user ID for *`contextObjectId`*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Note: Only article and file recommendations are available to guest users.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String
communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

channel
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.

- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

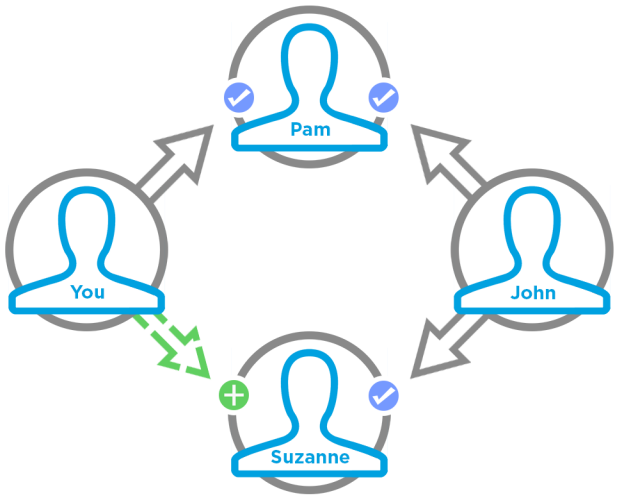
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *`contextAction`* and Pam's user ID for *`contextObjectId`*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action and object category.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

38.0

Note: Only article and file recommendations are available to guest users.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectCategory, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

objectCategory
Type: String

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, `topics`, or `records`.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `groups`.
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, `groups`, `records`, `custom`, `apps`, or `articles` (version 37.0 and later).

You can also specify a key prefix, the first three characters of the object ID, as the *objectCategory*. Valid values are:

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), `0TO` (topics), or `001` (accounts), for example.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `0F9` (groups).
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), `0F9` (groups), `0RD` (custom recommendations), `T` (static recommendations), `001` (accounts), or `kA0` (articles), for example, (version 370 and later).

contextAction

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId

Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

channel

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

maxResults

Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

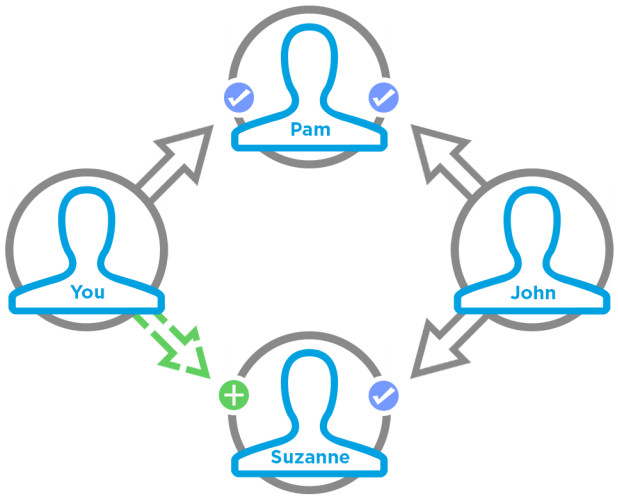
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *`contextAction`* and Pam's user ID for *`contextObjectId`*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

- setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId)`

Get a scheduled custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation getScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String scheduledRecommendationId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

scheduledRecommendationId
Type: String

ID of the scheduled custom recommendation.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`getScheduledRecommendations(communityId, channel)`

Get scheduled custom recommendations.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage getScheduledRecommendations(String communityId, ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

channel
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`rejectRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId)`

Reject a Chatter, custom, or static recommendation for the context user for the specified action and object ID.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static rejectRecommendationForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

`action`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation. Supported values are:

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

`objectId`
Type: String

Specifies the object to take action on.

- If *`action`* is `follow`, *`objectId`* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID (version 36.0 and later).
- If *`action`* is `join`, *`objectId`* is a group ID.
- If *`action`* is `view`, *`objectId`* is a custom recommendation ID, the enum `Today` for static recommendations, or an article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Return Value

Type: Void

`rejectRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectEnum)`

Reject a static recommendation for the context user.

API Version

34.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static rejectRecommendationForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, ConnectApi.RecommendedObjectType objectEnum)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation. Supported values are:

- `view`—View a static recommendation.

objectEnum
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendedObjectType`

Specifies the object type to take action on.

- `Today`—Static recommendations that don't have an ID, for example, the Today app recommendation.

Return Value

Type: Void

updateRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudienceId, recommendationAudience)

Update a custom recommendation audience.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience updateRecommendationAudience(String
communityId, String recommendationAudienceId, ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput
recommendationAudience)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation audience.

recommendationAudience
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput`

A `ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput` object.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

updateRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, name, title, actionUrl, actionUrlName, explanation)

Update a custom recommendation definition with the specified parameters.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition updateRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, String name, String title, String actionUrl, String actionUrlName, String explanation recommendationDefinition)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

name
Type: String

Name of the custom recommendation definition. The name is displayed in Setup.

title
Type: String

Title of the custom recommendation definition.

actionUrl
Type: String

URL for acting on the custom recommendation, for example, the URL to join a group.

actionUrlName
Type: String

Text label for the action URL in the user interface, for example, “Launch.”

explanation
Type: String

Explanation, or body, of the custom recommendation.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

updateRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, recommendationDefinition)

Update a custom recommendation definition.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition updateRecommendationDefinition(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput recommendationDefinition)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

recommendationDefinition
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput`

A `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput` object containing the properties to update.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, fileUpload)

Update a custom recommendation definition photo with a file that hasn't been uploaded.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(String communityId,
String recommendationDefinitionId, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, fileId, versionNumber)`

Update a custom recommendation definition photo with an uploaded file.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo updateRecommendationDefinitionPhoto(String communityId,
String recommendationDefinitionId, String fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

fileId
Type: String

ID of a file already uploaded. The file must be an image, and be smaller than 2 GB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the existing file. Specify either an existing version number, or `null` to get the latest version.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission

can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo)

Update a custom recommendation definition photo with an uploaded file that requires cropping.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the file ID, version number, and cropping parameters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo, fileUpload)

Update a custom recommendation definition photo with a file that hasn't been uploaded and requires cropping.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`updateScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, scheduledRecommendation)`

Update a scheduled custom recommendation.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation updateScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String scheduledRecommendationId, ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput scheduledRecommendation)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

scheduledRecommendationId
Type: String

ID of the scheduled custom recommendation.

scheduledRecommendation
Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput`

A `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput` object containing the properties to update.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example

If you have these scheduled custom recommendations:

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationB	2
ScheduledRecommendationC	3

And you include this information in the Scheduled Custom Recommendation Input:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationD	2

The result is:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationD	2
ScheduledRecommendationB	3
ScheduledRecommendationC	4

`updateScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendationId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId)`

Update a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation updateScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String scheduledRecommendationId, Integer rank, Boolean enabled, String recommendationAudienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

scheduledRecommendationId
Type: String

ID of the scheduled custom recommendation.

rank
Type: Integer

Relative rank of the scheduled custom recommendation indicated by ascending whole numbers starting with 1.

Setting the rank is comparable to an insertion into an ordered list. The scheduled custom recommendation is inserted into the position specified by the `rank`. The `rank` of all the scheduled custom recommendations after it is pushed down. See Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example.

If the specified `rank` is larger than the size of the list, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list. The `rank` of the scheduled custom recommendation is the size of the list, instead of the one specified.

If a `rank` is not specified, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list.

enabled
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether scheduling is enabled. If `true`, the custom recommendation is enabled and appears in Experience Cloud sites. If `false`, custom recommendations in feeds in Salesforce mobile web aren't removed, but no new custom recommendations appear. In Customer Service and Partner Central sites, disabled custom recommendations no longer appear.

recommendationAudienceId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition that this scheduled recommendation schedules.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example

If you have these scheduled custom recommendations:

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationB	2
ScheduledRecommendationC	3

And you include this information in the Scheduled Custom Recommendation Input:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationD	2

The result is:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationD	2
ScheduledRecommendationB	3
ScheduledRecommendationC	4

Recommendations Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `Recommendations`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

IN THIS SECTION:

setTestGetRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

`setTestGetRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

`action`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

`objectId`
Type: String

Specifies the object to take action on.

- If *`action`* is `follow`, *`objectId`* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID (version 36.0 and later).
- If *`action`* is `join`, *`objectId`* is a group ID.
- If *`action`* is `view`, *`objectId`* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, custom recommendation ID, the enum `Today` for static recommendations, or an article ID (version 37.0 and later).

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId,
```

```
ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer maxResults,
ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

channel
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType
contextAction, String contextObjectId, ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer
maxResults, ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

`contextAction`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`contextObjectId`
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *`contextAction`* is `follow`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *`contextAction`* is `view`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`channel`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectCategory,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel channel, Integer maxResults,
ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

objectCategory
Type: String

- If *action* is follow, *objectCategory* is users, files, records, or topics.
- If *action* is join, *objectCategory* is groups.
- If *action* is view, *objectCategory* is users, files, groups, records,custom, apps, or articles (version 37.0 and later).

You can also specify a key prefix, the first three characters of the object ID, as the *objectCategory*. Valid values are:

- If *action* is follow, *objectCategory* is 005 (users), 069 (files), 0TO (topics), or 001 (accounts), for example.
- If *action* is join, *objectCategory* is 0F9 (groups).
- If *action* is view, *objectCategory* is 005 (users), 069 (files), 0F9 (groups), 0RD (custom recommendations), T (static recommendations), 001 (accounts), or kA0 (articles), for example, (version 370 and later).

contextAction
Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- follow
- view

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify null.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is follow, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, record ID, or topic ID.
- If *contextAction* is view, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, record ID, or article ID (version 37.0 and later).

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify null.

channel
Type: ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel

A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are:

- CustomChannel1—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear.
- CustomChannel2—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- CustomChannel3—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- CustomChannel4—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.
- CustomChannel5—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.

- `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Retired Recommendations Methods

The following methods for `Recommendations` are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId)
Create a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)
Get the Chatter recommendations, such as user, group, file, and record recommendations for the context user. Get the custom and static recommendations for the context user.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)
Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action.

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)
Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action and object category.

getScheduledRecommendations(communityId)
Get scheduled custom recommendations.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)
Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId)

Create a scheduled custom recommendation with the specified parameters.

API Version

35.0 only

Important: In version 36.0 and later, use `createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, rank, enabled, recommendationAudienceId, channel)`.

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation createScheduledRecommendation(String communityId, String recommendationDefinitionId, Integer rank, Boolean enabled, String recommendationAudienceId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recommendationDefinitionId
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition.

rank
Type: Integer

Relative rank of the scheduled custom recommendation indicated by ascending whole numbers starting with 1.

Setting the rank is comparable to an insertion into an ordered list. The scheduled custom recommendation is inserted into the position specified by the `rank`. The `rank` of all the scheduled custom recommendations after it is pushed down. See Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example.

If the specified `rank` is larger than the size of the list, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list. The `rank` of the scheduled custom recommendation is the size of the list, instead of the one specified.

If a `rank` is not specified, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list.

enabled
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether scheduling is enabled. If `true`, the custom recommendation is enabled and appears in Experience Cloud sites. If `false`, custom recommendations in feeds in Salesforce mobile web aren't removed, but no new custom recommendations appear. In Customer Service and Partner Central sites, disabled custom recommendations no longer appear.

`recommendationAudienceId`
Type: String

ID of the custom recommendation definition that this scheduled recommendation schedules.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example

If you have these scheduled custom recommendations:

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationB	2
ScheduledRecommendationC	3

And you include this information in the Scheduled Custom Recommendation Input:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationD	2

The result is:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationD	2
ScheduledRecommendationB	3
ScheduledRecommendationC	4

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter recommendations, such as user, group, file, and record recommendations for the context user. Get the custom and static recommendations for the context user.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Important: In version 36.0 and later, use `getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

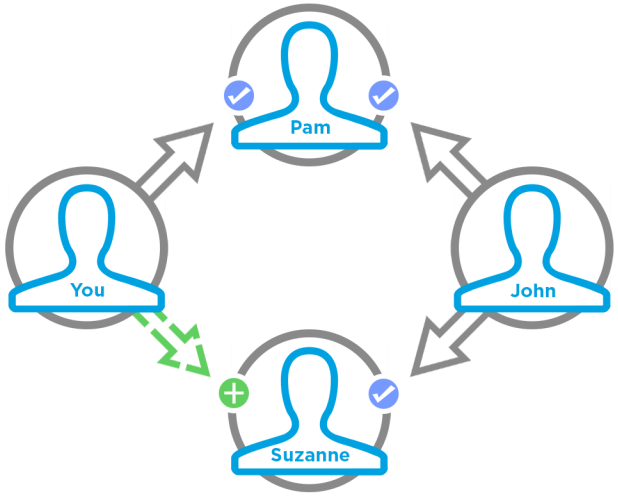
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *contextAction* and Pam's user ID for *contextObjectId*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Important: In version 36.0 and later, use `getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

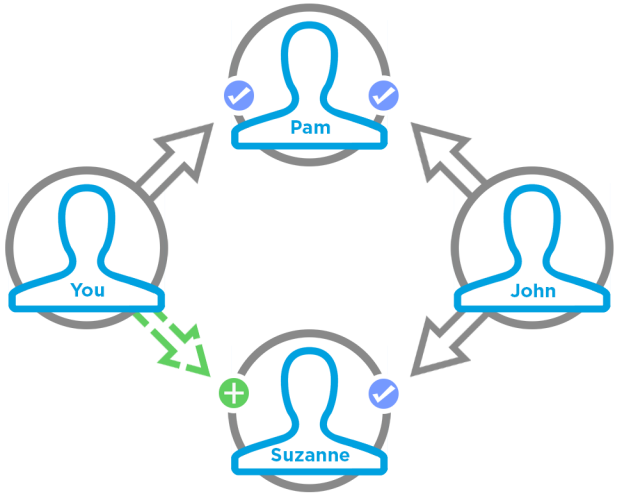
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *contextAction* and Pam's user ID for *contextObjectId*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)`

Get the Chatter, custom, and static recommendations for the context user for the specified action and object category.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Important: In version 36.0 and later, use `getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, channel, maxResults)`.

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection getRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectCategory, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

objectCategory
Type: String

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, or `records`.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `groups`.
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, `groups`, `records`, `custom`, or `apps`.

You can also specify a key prefix, the first three characters of the object ID, as the *objectCategory*. Valid values are:

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), or `001` (accounts), for example.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `0F9` (groups).
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), `0F9` (groups), `0RD` (custom recommendations), `T` (static recommendations), or `001` (accounts), for example.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

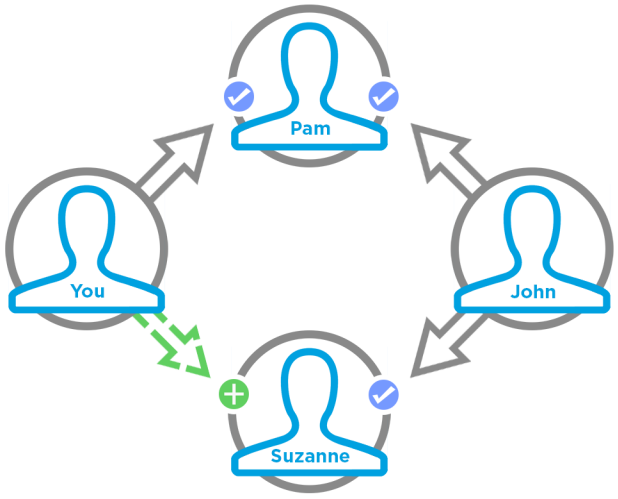
Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Usage

If you want to get recommendations based on a recent action performed, such as following a user, use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together. For example, if you just followed Pam, you specify `follow` for *contextAction* and Pam's user ID for *contextObjectId*.

This method only recommends users who are followed by people who follow Pam. In this example, John follows Pam so the method returns a recommendation for you to follow Suzanne since John also follows Suzanne.



To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getScheduledRecommendations(communityId)`

Get scheduled custom recommendations.

API Version

35.0 only

Important: In version 36.0 and later, use `getScheduledRecommendations(communityId, channel)`.

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage getScheduledRecommendations(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage`

Usage

Community managers can access, create, and delete audiences, definitions, and schedules for custom recommendations. (Community managers are users with the Create and Set Up Experiences or Manage Experiences permission.) Users with the Modify All Data permission can also access, create, and delete custom recommendation audiences, custom recommendation definitions, and scheduled custom recommendations.

`setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer
maxResults, ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType
contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer maxResults,
ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId

Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

contextAction

Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`contextObjectId`
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *`contextAction`* is `follow`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *`contextAction`* is `view`, *`contextObjectId`* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *`contextAction`* and *`contextObjectId`* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection` object to be returned when `getRecommendationsForUser` is called with matching parameters in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

API Version

33.0–35.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecommendationsForUser(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType action, String objectCategory,
```

```
ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType contextAction, String contextObjectId, Integer
maxResults, ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

action
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Specifies the action to take on a recommendation.

- `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user.
- `join`—Join a group.
- `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.

objectCategory
Type: String

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, or `records`.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `groups`.
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `users`, `files`, `groups`, `records`,`custom`, or `apps`.

You can also specify a key prefix, the first three characters of the object ID, as the *objectCategory*. Valid values are:

- If *action* is `follow`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), or `001` (accounts), for example.
- If *action* is `join`, *objectCategory* is `0F9` (groups).
- If *action* is `view`, *objectCategory* is `005` (users), `069` (files), `0F9` (groups), `0RD` (custom recommendations), `T` (static recommendations), or `001` (accounts), for example.

contextAction
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`

Action that the context user just performed. Supported values are:

- `follow`
- `view`

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

contextObjectId
Type: String

ID of the object that the context user just performed an action on.

- If *contextAction* is `follow`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, or record ID.
- If *contextAction* is `view`, *contextObjectId* is a user ID, file ID, group ID, or record ID.

Use *contextAction* and *contextObjectId* together to get new recommendations based on the action just performed. If you don't want recommendations based on a recent action, specify `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of recommendation results; default is 10. Values must be from 1 to 99.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecommendationsForUser(communityId, userId, action, objectCategory, contextAction, contextObjectId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

Records Class

Access information about record motifs, which are small icons used to distinguish record types in the Salesforce UI.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Records Methods

The following are methods for `Records`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getMotif(communityId, idOrPrefix)
Get a motif that contains the URLs for a set of small, medium, and large motif icons for a record. It can also contain a base color for the record.

getMotifBatch(communityId, idOrPrefixList)
Get a motif for a list of objects.

`getMotif(communityId, idOrPrefix)`

Get a motif that contains the URLs for a set of small, medium, and large motif icons for a record. It can also contain a base color for the record.

API Version

28.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Motif getMotif(String communityId, String idOrPrefix)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

idOrPrefix
Type: String

An ID or key prefix.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Motif`

Usage

Each Salesforce record type has its own set of motif icons.

getMotifBatch(communityId, idOrPrefixList)

Get a motif for a list of objects.

API Version

31.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BatchResult[] getMotifBatch(String communityId, List<String>
idOrPrefixList)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

idOrPrefixList
Type: List<String>

A list of object IDs or prefixes.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BatchResult`[]

The `ConnectApi.BatchResult.getResult()` method returns a `ConnectApi.Motif` object and errors for motifs that didn't load.

Example

```
String communityId = null;
List<String> prefixIds = new List<String> { '001', '01Z', '069' };

// Get info about the motifs of all records in the list.
ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.Records.getMotifBatch(communityId,
prefixIds);

for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print the color of each motif.
        ConnectApi.Motif motif;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.Motif) {
            motif = (ConnectApi.Motif) batchResult.getResult();
        }
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(motif.color);
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

ReturnOrder Class

Process ReturnOrders in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

ReturnOrder Methods

The following are methods for `ReturnOrder`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createReturnOrder(returnOrderInput)
Create a ReturnOrder and ReturnOrderLineItems for items belonging to an OrderSummary.

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

Process ReturnOrderLineItems belonging to a ReturnOrder. Processing a ReturnOrderLineItem generates a change Order and makes that ReturnOrderLineItem read-only. If a processed ReturnOrderLineItem has any remaining expected quantity, then the API creates a separate ReturnOrderLineItem representing that quantity.

createReturnOrder(returnOrderInput)

Create a ReturnOrder and ReturnOrderLineItems for items belonging to an OrderSummary.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReturnOrderOutputRepresentation
createReturnOrder(ConnectApi.ReturnOrderInputRepresentation returnOrderInput)
```

Parameters

returnOrderInput

Type: ConnectApi.ReturnOrderInputRepresentation

Data for creating a ReturnOrder and ReturnOrderLineItems.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ReturnOrderOutputRepresentation

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

Process ReturnOrderLineItems belonging to a ReturnOrder. Processing a ReturnOrderLineItem generates a change Order and makes that ReturnOrderLineItem read-only. If a processed ReturnOrderLineItem has any remaining expected quantity, then the API creates a separate ReturnOrderLineItem representing that quantity.

API Version

52.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ReturnItemsOutputRepresentation returnItems(String
returnOrderId, ConnectApi.ReturnItemsInputRepresentation returnItemsInput)
```

Parameters

returnOrderId
Type: String

ID of the ReturnOrder.

returnItemsInput
Type: `ConnectApi.ReturnItemsInputRepresentation`

Data about products and delivery charges to return.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ReturnItemsOutputRepresentation`

Routing Class

Route orders to inventory locations in Order Management.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Routing Methods

The following are methods for `Routing`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

findRoutesWithFewestSplits(findRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation)
Returns combinations of inventory locations that can fulfill an order within a specified limit of shipment splits.

rankAverageDistance(rankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation)
Calculates the average distance from sets of inventory locations to an order recipient, and ranks them. Use this method to compare the average shipping distances for different sets of locations that can fulfill an order.

`findRoutesWithFewestSplits(findRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation)`

Returns combinations of inventory locations that can fulfill an order within a specified limit of shipment splits.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsOutputRepresentation
findRoutesWithFewestSplits(ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation
findRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

findRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation

The input includes the ordered item quantities, data about available inventory, and, optionally, a maximum allowable number of shipment splits.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsOutputRepresentation

rankAverageDistance(rankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation)

Calculates the average distance from sets of inventory locations to an order recipient, and ranks them. Use this method to compare the average shipping distances for different sets of locations that can fulfill an order.

API Version

51.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceOutputRepresentation
rankAverageDistance(ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation
rankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation)
```

Parameters

rankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation
Type: ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation

An order recipient's geographic location and information about sets of inventory locations that can fulfill the order.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceOutputRepresentation

SalesforceInbox Class

Access information about Automated Activity Capture, which is available in Einstein and Salesforce Inbox.

Namespace

ConnectApi

SalesforceInbox Methods

The following are methods for `SalesforceInbox`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

shareActivity(activityId, sharingInfo)
Share emails or events with certain groups of users.

shareActivity(activityId, sharingInfo)

Share emails or events with certain groups of users.

API Version

39.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ActivitySharingResult shareActivity(String activityId,
ConnectApi.ActivitySharingInput sharingInfo)
```

Parameters

activityId
Type: String

The ID of the activity.

sharingInfo
Type: ConnectApi.ActivitySharingInput

A `ConnectApi.ActivitySharingInput` object.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ActivitySharingResult

Usage

This method is a feature of both Sales Cloud Einstein and Inbox. It lets users connect their email and calendar to Salesforce. Then, their emails and events are automatically added to related Salesforce records. Users can specify who their individual emails and events are shared with.

SmartDataDiscovery Class

Get predictions on Salesforce objects.

Use the `ConnectApi.SmartDataDiscovery.predict` method to get predictions on Salesforce objects. For more information, see Get Predictions in Apex.

SocialEngagement Class

Manage information about social accounts or fan pages for social networks.

Namespace

ConnectApi

SocialEngagement Methods

The following are methods for `SocialEngagement`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Delete a social post from its social network.

followSocialPersona(socialPersonaId, socialAccountId)
Follow a social persona in its social network.

followSocialPostPersona(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Follow a social persona on a social post in its social network.

getIntents(socialPostId)
Get available intents for a social post.

getManagedSocialAccount(id)
Get a managed social account that is in the org and assigned to the user.

getManagedSocialAccounts()
Gets a list of managed social accounts that are in the org and assigned to the user.

getManagedSocialAccounts(socialNetwork)
Get a list of managed social accounts that are in the org and assigned to the user.

getRelationship(id, socialPersonaId)
Get the follow relationship between a managed social account and a social persona.

hideSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Hide a social post in its social network.

likeSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Like a social post in its social network.

massApprove(massApproval)
Approve or reject the publishing of a large number of social posts.

recallApproval(socialPostId)
Recall an approval request to publish a social post.

unfollowSocialPersona(socialPersonaId, socialAccountId)
Stop following a social persona in its social network.

unfollowSocialPostPersona(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Stop following a social persona of a social post in its social network.

unhideSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Unhide a social post in its social network.

unlikeSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)
Unlike a social post in its social network.

deleteSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Delete a social post from its social network.

Note: Deleting a social post from its social network doesn't delete the record from Salesforce.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.DeleteSocialPostIntent deleteSocialPost(String socialPostId,
String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post to delete.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that deletes the post.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.DeleteSocialPostIntent`

followSocialPersona(socialPersonaId, socialAccountId)

Follow a social persona in its social network.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent followSocialPersona(String
socialPersonaId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPersonaId
Type: String

ID of the social persona to follow.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that follows the social persona.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent

followSocialPostPersona(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Follow a social persona on a social post in its social network.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent followSocialPostPersona(String
socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post authored by the social persona to follow.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that follows the social persona.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent

getIntents(socialPostId)

Get available intents for a social post.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents getIntents(String socialPostId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of a social post.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

getManagedSocialAccount(id)

Get a managed social account that is in the org and assigned to the user.

API Version

44.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount getManagedSocialAccount(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

Description: Internal SFDC ID for this managed social account.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount

getManagedSocialAccounts()

Gets a list of managed social accounts that are in the org and assigned to the user.

API Version

44.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccounts getManagedSocialAccounts()
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccounts

getManagedSocialAccounts(socialNetwork)

Get a list of managed social accounts that are in the org and assigned to the user.

API Version

44.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccounts
getManagedSocialAccounts(ConnectApi.SocialNetworkProvider socialNetwork)
```

Parameters

socialNetwork

Type: ConnectApi.SocialNetworkProvider

Description: Filters results based on the social network. Values are:

- Facebook
- GooglePlus
- Instagram
- InstagramBusiness

- KakaoTalk
- Kik
- Line
- LinkedIn
- Messenger
- Other
- Pinterest
- QQ
- Rypple
- SinaWeibo
- SMS
- Snapchat
- Telegram
- Twitter
- VKontakte
- WeChat
- WhatsApp
- YouTube

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccounts

getRelationship(id, socialPersonaId)

Get the follow relationship between a managed social account and a social persona.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SocialAccountRelationship getRelationship(String id, String socialPersonaId)
```

Parameters

id

Type: String

ID of the managed social account.

socialPersonaId
Type: String

ID of the social persona.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.SocialAccountRelationship

hideSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Hide a social post in its social network.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.HideSocialPostIntent hideSocialPost(String socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post to hide.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that hides the post.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.HideSocialPostIntent

likeSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Like a social post in its social network.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.LikeSocialPostIntent likeSocialPost(String socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post to like.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that likes the post.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.LikeSocialPostIntent`

massApprove(massApproval)

Approve or reject the publishing of a large number of social posts.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalOutput
massApprove(ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalInput massApproval)
```

Parameters

massApproval
Type: `ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalInput`

A `ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalInput` body that includes a list of social post IDs and the action to approve or reject publishing them.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalOutput`

recallApproval(socialPostId)

Recall an approval request to publish a social post.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void recallApproval(String socialPostId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post.

Return Value

Type: Void

unfollowSocialPersona(socialPersonaId, socialAccountId)

Stop following a social persona in its social network.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void unfollowSocialPersona(String socialPersonaId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPersonaId
Type: String

ID of the social persona to stop following.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that stops following the social persona.

Return Value

Type: Void

unfollowSocialPostPersona(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Stop following a social persona of a social post in its social network.

API Version

45.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void unfollowSocialPostPersona(String socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post authored by the social persona to stop following.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that stops following the social persona.

Return Value

Type: Void

unhideSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Unhide a social post in its social network.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void unhideSocialPost(String socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post to unhide.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that unhides the post.

Return Value

Type: Void

unlikeSocialPost(socialPostId, socialAccountId)

Unlike a social post in its social network.

API Version

46.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void unlikeSocialPost(String socialPostId, String socialAccountId)
```

Parameters

socialPostId
Type: String

ID of the social post to unlike.

socialAccountId
Type: String

ID of the social account that unlikes the post.

Return Value

Type: Void

Survey Class

Send survey invitations by email.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Survey Methods

These methods are for `Survey`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

sendSurveyInvitationEmail(surveyID, SurveyEmailInput)
Email survey invitations to up to 300 participants. You can email either leads, contacts, or users in your org. Either a link to launch the survey or a question can be embedded in the email invitations.

sendSurveyInvitationEmail(surveyID, SurveyEmailInput)

Email survey invitations to up to 300 participants. You can email either leads, contacts, or users in your org. Either a link to launch the survey or a question can be embedded in the email invitations.

API Version

50.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailOutput sendSurveyInvitationEmail(String surveyID, ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput SurveyEmailInput)
```

Parameters

surveyID
Type: String

ID of the survey.

SurveyEmailInput
Type: ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput

A `ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput` object.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailOutput

Topics Class

Access information about topics, such as their descriptions, the number of people talking about them, related topics, and information about groups contributing to the topic. Update a topic's name or description, merge topics, and add and remove topics from records and feed items.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Topics Methods

The following are methods for `Topics`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

assignTopic(communityId, recordId, topicId)
Assign a topic to a record or feed item.

assignTopicByName(communityId, recordId, topicName)
Assign a topic to a record or feed item.

createTopic(communityId, name, description)
Create a topic.

createTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, topicNames)
Create topic and article assignment rules by data category.

deleteTopic(communityId, topicId)
Delete a topic.

getGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(communityId, topicId)
Get information about the five groups that most recently contributed to a topic.

getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(communityId, groupId)
Get up to five topics most recently used in a group.

getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(communityId, userId)
Get up to five topics most recently used by a user.

getRelatedTopics(communityId, topicId)
Get up to five topics most closely related to a topic.

getTopic(communityId, topicId)
Get a topic.

getTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory)
Get topic and article assignment rules by data category.

getTopics(communityId, recordId)
Get the first page of topics assigned to a record or feed item.

getTopics(communityId)
Get the first page of topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

getTopics(communityId, sortParam)
Get the first page of sorted topics for the org or community.

getTopics(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of topics.

getTopics(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted topics.

getTopics(communityId, q, sortParam)
Get the sorted topics that match the search criteria.

getTopics(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of topics that match the search criteria.

getTopics(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)
Get a page of sorted topics that match the search criteria.

getTopics(communityId, q, exactMatch)
Get the topic that matches the exact, case-insensitive name.

getTopicsOrFallBackToRenamedTopics(communityId, q, exactMatch, fallBackToRenamedTopics)
Get the most recent renamed topic match, if there isn't an exact match.

getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, maxResults)
Get up to a specified number of suggested topics for a record or feed item.

getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId)
Get suggested topics for a record or feed item.

getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, maxResults)
Get up to a specified number of suggested topics for a string of text.

getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text)
Get suggested topics for a string of text.

getTrendingTopics(communityId)
Get trending topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

getTrendingTopics(communityId, maxResults)
Get up to a specified number of trending topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

mergeTopics(communityId, topicId, idsToMerge)
Merge up to five secondary topics with a primary topic.

reassignTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, topicNames)
Reassign topic and article assignment rules by data category by deleting the existing rules and creating new rules.

reassignTopicsByName(communityId, recordId, topicNames)
Reassign all the topics on a record or feed item, that is, remove all the assigned topics on a record or feed item and add topics. Optionally, provide a list of suggested topics to assign to a record or feed item to improve future topic suggestions.

unassignTopic(communityId, recordId, topicId)
Remove a topic from a record or feed item.

updateTopic(communityId, topicId, topic)
Update the description or name of a topic or merge up to five secondary topics with a primary topic.

updateTopicsForArticlesInDataCategory(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, articleTopicAssignmentJob)
Assign topics to articles and unassign topics from articles in a data category.

`assignTopic(communityId, recordId, topicId)`

Assign a topic to a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic assignTopic(String communityId, String recordId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Topic`

Usage

Only users with the Assign Topics permission can add existing topics to records or feed items. Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can add topics to records of that object type.

`assignTopicByName(communityId, recordId, topicName)`

Assign a topic to a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic assignTopicByName(String communityId, String recordId, String topicName)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

The ID of the record or feed item to which to assign the topic.

topicName
Type: String

The name of a new or existing topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Topic`

Usage

Only users with the Assign Topics permission can add existing topics to records or feed items. Only users with the Create Topics permission can add new topics to records or feed items. Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can add topics to records of that object type.

createTopic(communityId, name, description)

Create a topic.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic createTopic(String communityId, String name, String
description)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

name
Type: String

The name of the topic.

description
Type: String

The description of the topic.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Topic

Usage

Only users with the Create Topics permission can create a topic.

createTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, topicNames)

Create topic and article assignment rules by data category.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage createTopicDataCategoryRules(String communityId,
String dataCategoryGroup, String dataCategory, ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput topicNames)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

dataCategoryGroup
Type: String

The data category group used by articles.

dataCategory
Type: String

The data category used by articles.

topicNames
Type: ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput

A `ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput` object with the names of topics to assign to articles in a data category.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.TopicPage

deleteTopic(communityId, topicId)

Delete a topic.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteTopic(String communityId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String,

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Only users with the Delete Topics or Modify All Data permission can delete topics.

Topic deletion is asynchronous. If a topic is requested before the deletion completes, the response is successful and the `isBeingDeleted` property of `ConnectApi.Topic` is `true` in version 33.0 and later. If a topic is requested after the deletion completes, the response is `ConnectApi.NotFoundException`.

`getGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(communityId, topicId)`

Get information about the five groups that most recently contributed to a topic.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage
getGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(String communityId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(communityId, topicId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(communityId, groupId)`

Get up to five topics most recently used in a group.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(String
communityId, String groupId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(communityId, groupId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(communityId, userId)`

Get up to five topics most recently used by a user.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(String
communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(communityId, userId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getRelatedTopics(communityId, topicId)`

Get up to five topics most closely related to a topic.

Two topics that are assigned to the same feed item at least three times are related.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getRelatedTopics(String communityId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetRelatedTopics(communityId, topicId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopic(communityId, topicId)`

Get a topic.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic getTopic(String communityId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`topicId`
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Topic`

`getTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory)`

Get topic and article assignment rules by data category.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopicDataCategoryRules(String communityId, String dataCategoryGroup, String dataCategory)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

dataCategoryGroup
Type: String

The data category group used by articles.

dataCategory
Type: String

The data category used by articles.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

getTopics(communityId, recordId)

Get the first page of topics assigned to a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, String recordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can add topics to records of that object type.

`getTopics(communityId)`

Get the first page of topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopics(communityId, sortParam)`

Get the first page of sorted topics for the org or community.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, ConnectApi.TopicSort
sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSort`

Values are:

- `popularDesc`—Sorts topics by popularity with the most popular first. This value is the default.
- `alphaAsc`—Sorts topics alphabetically.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopics(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of topics.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopics(communityId, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted topics.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, Integer pageParam,
Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.TopicSort sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSort`

Values are:

- `popularDesc`—Sorts topics by popularity with the most popular first. This value is the default.
- `alphaAsc`—Sorts topics alphabetically.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

getTopics(communityId, q, sortParam)

Get the sorted topics that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, String q,
ConnectApi.TopicSort sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSort`

Values are:

- `popularDesc`—Sorts topics by popularity with the most popular first. This value is the default.
- `alphaAsc`—Sorts topics alphabetically.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopics(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of topics that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, String q, Integer
pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`q`
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards.

`pageParam`
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

`pageSize`
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopics(communityId, q, pageParam, pageSize, sortParam)`

Get a page of sorted topics that match the search criteria.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, String q, Integer pageParam, Integer pageSize, ConnectApi.TopicSort sortParam)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

sortParam
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSort`

Values are:

- `popularDesc`—Sorts topics by popularity with the most popular first. This value is the default.
- `alphaAsc`—Sorts topics alphabetically.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

getTopics(communityId, q, exactMatch)

Get the topic that matches the exact, case-insensitive name.

API Version

33.0

Available to Guest Users

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopics(String communityId, String q, Boolean exactMatch)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards.

exactMatch
Type: Boolean

Specify `true` to find a topic by its exact, case-insensitive name.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

getTopicsOrFallBackToRenamedTopics(communityId, q, exactMatch, fallBackToRenamedTopics)

Get the most recent renamed topic match, if there isn't an exact match.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTopicsOrFallBackToRenamedTopics(String communityId,
String q, Boolean exactMatch, Boolean fallBackToRenamedTopics)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards.

exactMatch
Type: Boolean

Specify `true` to find a topic by its exact, case-insensitive name or to find the most recent renamed topic match if there isn't an exact match.

fallBackToRenamedTopics
Type: Boolean

Specify `true` and if there isn't an exact match, the most recent renamed topic match is returned. If there are multiple renamed topic matches, only the most recent is returned. If there are no renamed topic matches, an empty collection is returned.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

`getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, maxResults)`

Get up to a specified number of suggested topics for a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage getTopicSuggestions(String communityId,
String recordId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Usage

Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can see suggested topics for records of that object type.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId)`

Get suggested topics for a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage getTopicSuggestions(String communityId,
String recordId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Usage

Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can see suggested topics for records of that object type.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, maxResults)`

Get up to a specified number of suggested topics for a string of text.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage getTopicSuggestionsForText(String
communityId, String text, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

text
Type: String

String of text.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text)`

Get suggested topics for a string of text.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage getTopicSuggestionsForText(String
communityId, String text)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`text`
Type: String

String of text.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTrendingTopics(communityId)`

Get trending topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTrendingTopics(String communityId)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

The more frequently people add a specific topic to their posts and comments and comment on or like posts with the same topic over a short period, the more likely it is to become a trending topic. For example, if your coworkers are attending the upcoming Dreamforce conference and have started discussing it in Chatter, you might see a trending topic for Dreamforce. A trending topic is not solely based on popularity and usually relates to a one-time or infrequent event that has a spike in activity, such as a conference or a project deadline.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTrendingTopics(communityId, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`getTrendingTopics(communityId, maxResults)`

Get up to a specified number of trending topics for the org or Experience Cloud site.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

32.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage getTrendingTopics(String communityId, Integer maxResults)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`maxResults`
Type: Integer

Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

The more frequently people add a specific topic to their posts and comments and comment on or like posts with the same topic over a short period, the more likely it is to become a trending topic. For example, if your coworkers are attending the upcoming Dreamforce conference and have started discussing it in Chatter, you might see a trending topic for Dreamforce. A trending topic is not solely based on popularity and usually relates to a one-time or infrequent event that has a spike in activity, such as a conference or a project deadline.

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestGetTrendingTopics(communityId, maxResults, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`mergeTopics(communityId, topicId, idsToMerge)`

Merge up to five secondary topics with a primary topic.

API Version

33.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic mergeTopics(String communityId, String topicId,
List<String> idsToMerge)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`topicId`
Type: String

The ID for the primary topic for the merge. If this topic is a managed topic, it retains its topic type, topic images, and children topics.

`idsToMerge`
Type: List<String>

A list of up to five comma-separated secondary topic IDs to merge with the primary topic. If any of these secondary topics are managed topics, they lose their topic type, topic images, and children topics. Their feed items are reassigned to the primary topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Topic`

Usage

Only users with the Delete Topics or Modify All Data permission can merge topics.

reassignTopicDataCategoryRules(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, topicNames)

Reassign topic and article assignment rules by data category by deleting the existing rules and creating new rules.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage reassignTopicDataCategoryRules(String communityId,
String dataCategoryGroup, String dataCategory, ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput topicNames)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

dataCategoryGroup
Type: String

The data category group used by articles.

dataCategory
Type: String

The data category used by articles.

topicNames
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput`

A `ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput` object with the names of topics to reassign to articles in a data category.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

reassignTopicsByName(communityId, recordId, topicNames)

Reassign all the topics on a record or feed item, that is, remove all the assigned topics on a record or feed item and add topics. Optionally, provide a list of suggested topics to assign to a record or feed item to improve future topic suggestions.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage reassignTopicsByName(String communityId, String recordId, ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput topicNames)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

The ID of the record or feed item to which to assign the topic.

topicNames
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput`

A list of topics to replace the currently assigned topics. Optionally, a list of suggested topics to assign to improve future topic suggestions.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Usage

Only users with the Assign Topics permission can remove topics from records or feed items and add existing topics to records or feed items. Only users with the Create Topics permission can add new topics to records or feed items. Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can add topics to records of that object type.

`unassignTopic(communityId, recordId, topicId)`

Remove a topic from a record or feed item.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void unassignTopic(String communityId, String recordId, String topicId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Only users with the Assign Topics permission can remove topics from feed items or records. Administrators must enable topics for objects before users can add topics to records of that object type.

updateTopic(communityId, topicId, topic)

Update the description or name of a topic or merge up to five secondary topics with a primary topic.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Topic updateTopic(String communityId, String topicId,
ConnectApi.TopicInput topic)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

topic
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicInput`

A `ConnectApi.TopicInput` object containing the name and description of the topic or up to five comma-separated secondary topic IDs to merge with the primary topic.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Topic`

Usage

Only users with the Edit Topics or Modify All Data permission can update topic names and descriptions. Only users with the Delete Topics or Modify All Data permission can merge topics.

updateTopicsForArticlesInDataCategory(communityId, dataCategoryGroup, dataCategory, articleTopicAssignmentJob)

Assign topics to articles and unassign topics from articles in a data category.

API Version

40.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.TopicPage updateTopicsForArticlesInDataCategory(String
communityId, String dataCategoryGroup, String dataCategory,
ConnectApi.ArticleTopicAssignmentJobInput articleTopicAssignmentJob)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

dataCategoryGroup
Type: String

The data category group used by articles.

dataCategory
Type: String

The data category used by articles.

articleTopicAssignmentJob
Type: `ConnectApi.ArticleTopicAssignmentJobInput`

A `ConnectApi.ArticleTopicAssignmentJobInput` object that indicates the operation to take on which topics.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Topics Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `Topics`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestGetGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(communityId, topicId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(String communityId, String topicId, ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage result)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`topicId`
Type: String

ID for a topic.

`result`
Type: `ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getGroupsRecentlyTalkingAboutTopic(communityId, topicId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(communityId, groupId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(String communityId,
String groupId, ConnectApi.TopicPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

groupId
Type: String

ID for a group.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForGroup(communityId, groupId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(communityId, userId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(String communityId,
String userId, ConnectApi.TopicPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Specify the test topics page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRecentlyTalkingAboutTopicsForUser(communityId, userId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetRelatedTopics(communityId, topicId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getRelatedTopics` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetRelatedTopics(String communityId, String topicId,
ConnectApi.TopicPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

topicId
Type: String

ID for a topic.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getRelatedTopics(communityId, topicId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, maxResults, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopicSuggestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopicSuggestions(String communityId, String recordId,
Integer maxResults, ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Specify the test topic suggestions page.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopicSuggestions` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopicSuggestions(String communityId, String recordId,
ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

recordId
Type: String

ID for a record or feed item.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopicSuggestions(communityId, recordId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopicSuggestionsForText` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(String communityId, String text,
Integer maxResults, ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
: Type: String

  ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

text
: Type: String

  String of text.

maxResults
: Type: Integer

  Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

result
: Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

  Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

- getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, maxResults)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTopicSuggestionsForText` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTopicSuggestionsForText(String communityId, String text,
ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

text
Type: String

String of text.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage`

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTopicSuggestionsForText(communityId, text)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestGetTrendingTopics(communityId, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTrendingTopics` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTrendingTopics(String communityId, ConnectApi.TopicPage
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

result
Type: ConnectApi.TopicPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTrendingTopics(communityId)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

setTestGetTrendingTopics(communityId, maxResults, result)

Register a `ConnectApi.TopicPage` object to be returned when the matching `ConnectApi.getTrendingTopics` method is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestGetTrendingTopics(String communityId, Integer maxResults,
ConnectApi.TopicPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Maximum number of topic suggestions that get returned. The default is 5. Value must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to 25.

result
Type: ConnectApi.TopicPage

Object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

getTrendingTopics(communityId, maxResults)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

UserProfiles Class

Access user profile data. The user profile data populates the profile page (also called the Chatter profile page). This data includes user information (such as address, manager, and phone number), some user capabilities (permissions), and a set of subtab apps, which are custom tabs on the profile page.

Namespace

ConnectApi

UserProfiles Methods

The following are methods for `UserProfiles`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteBannerPhoto(communityId, userId)
Delete a user's banner photo.

deletePhoto(communityId, userId)
Delete a user's photo.

getBannerPhoto(communityId, userId)
Get a user's banner photo.

getPhoto(communityId, userId)
Get a user's photo.

getUserProfile(communityId, userId)
Get the user profile of the context user.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as a user's banner photo.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, bannerPhoto)
Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's banner photo.

setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's banner photo.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)
Set an uploaded file as a user's photo.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)
Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)
Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's photo.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)
Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

deleteBannerPhoto(communityId, userId)

Delete a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deleteBannerPhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: Void

deletePhoto(communityId, userId)

Delete a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static Void deletePhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

Return Value

Type: Void

getBannerPhoto(communityId, userId)

Get a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto getBannerPhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

getPhoto(communityId, userId)

Get a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Available to Guest Users

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo getPhoto(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

getUserProfile(communityId, userId)

Get the user profile of the context user.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

Yes

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.UserProfile getUserProfile(String communityId, String userId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for a user.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.UserProfile`

setBannerPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)

Set an uploaded file as a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String communityId, String userId,
String fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

fileId
Type: String

ID of the uploaded file to use as the user banner. The key prefix must be 069, and the image must be smaller than 8 MB.

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Version number of the file. Specify an existing version number or, to get the latest version, specify `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setBannerPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhoto(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, bannerPhoto)`

Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId,
String userId, ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

bannerPhoto
Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput` object that specifies the ID and version of the file, and how to crop the file.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, bannerPhoto, fileUpload)`

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's banner photo.

API Version

36.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.BannerPhoto setBannerPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId,
String userId, ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput bannerPhoto, ConnectApi.BinaryInput
fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID of the user.

bannerPhoto
Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

`fileUpload`
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileId, versionNumber)`

Set an uploaded file as a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String userId, String
fileId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

`communityId`
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

`userId`
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

`fileId`
Type: String

ID of an uploaded file. The file must be an image, and be smaller than 2 GB.

`versionNumber`
Type: Integer

Version number of the existing file. Specify either an existing version number, or `null` to get the latest version.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Photo

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhoto(communityId, userId, fileUpload)

Set a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhoto(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

fileUpload
Type: ConnectApi.BinaryInput

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.Photo

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)

Set and crop an uploaded file as a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the file ID, version number, and cropping parameters.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

`setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)`

Set and crop a file that hasn't been uploaded as a user's photo.

API Version

35.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Photo setPhotoWithAttributes(String communityId, String userId,
ConnectApi.PhotoInput photo, ConnectApi.BinaryInput fileUpload)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

userId
Type: String

ID for the context user or the keyword `me`.

photo
Type: `ConnectApi.PhotoInput`

A `ConnectApi.PhotoInput` object specifying the cropping parameters.

fileUpload
Type: `ConnectApi.BinaryInput`

File to use as the photo. The content type must be usable as an image.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Photo`

Usage

Photos are processed asynchronously and may not be visible right away.

Zones Class

Access information about Chatter Answers zones in your organization. Zones organize questions into logical groups, with each zone having its own focus and unique questions.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Zones Methods

The following are methods for `Zones`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getZone(communityId, zoneId)
Get a zone.

getZones(communityId)
Get a list of zones.

getZones(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)
Get a page of zones.

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter)
Search articles or questions in a zone.

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize)
Search a page of articles or questions in a zone.

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language)
Search articles or questions in a zone, and specify the language of the results.

getZone(communityId, zoneId)

Get a zone.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Zone getZone(String communityId, String zoneId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

The ID of a zone.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.Zone`

getZones(communityId)

Get a list of zones.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ZonePage getZones(String communityId)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ZonePage`

`getZones(communityId, pageParam, pageSize)`

Get a page of zones.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.Zone getZones(String communityId, Integer pageParam, Integer
pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

pageParam
Type: Integer

Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ZonePage`

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter)

Search articles or questions in a zone.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

37.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage searchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId,
String q, ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

ID of a zone.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType

A ZoneSearchResultType enum value. One of the following:

- Article—Search results contain only articles.
- Question—Search results contain only questions.

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with setTest). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize)

Search a page of articles or questions in a zone.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Available to Guest Users

37.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage searchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId,
String q, ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter, String pageParam, Integer pageSize)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

ID of a zone.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`

A `ZoneSearchResultType` enum value. One of the following:

- `Article`—Search results contain only articles.
- `Question`—Search results contain only questions.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to use to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize, result)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language)`

Search articles or questions in a zone, and specify the language of the results.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

36.0

Available to Guest Users

37.0

Requires Chatter

No

Signature

```
public static ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage searchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId,
String q, ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter, String language)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

ID of a zone.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`

- `Article`—Search results contain only articles.
- `Question`—Search results contain only questions.

language
Type: String

The language of the articles or questions. The value must be a Salesforce supported locale code.

Return Value

Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage`

Usage

To test code that uses this method, use the matching set test method (prefix the method name with `setTest`). Use the set test method with the same parameters or the code throws an exception.

SEE ALSO:

setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language, result)

Zones Test Methods

The following are the test methods for `Zones`. All methods are static.

For information about using these methods to test your `ConnectApi` code, see Testing ConnectApi Code.

`setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage` object to be returned when `searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter)` is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId, String q,
ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter, ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

Use either the ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

The ID of a zone.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`

A `ZoneSearchResultType` enum value. One of the following:

- `Article`—Search results contain only articles.
- `Question`—Search results contain only questions.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage`

The object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage` object to be returned when `searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize)` is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

29.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId, String q,
ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter, String pageParam, Integer pageSize,
ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage result)
```

Parameters

communityId

Type: String

Use either the ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId

Type: String

The ID of a zone.

q

Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter

Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`

A `ZoneSearchResultType` enum value. One of the following:

- `Article`—Search results contain only articles.
- `Question`—Search results contain only questions.

pageParam
Type: String

Specifies the page token to be used to view a page of information. Page tokens are returned as part of the response class, such as `currentPageToken` or `nextPageToken`. If you pass in `null`, the first page is returned.

pageSize
Type: Integer

Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 100. If you pass in `null`, the default size is 25.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage`

The object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, pageParam, pageSize)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`setTestSearchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language, result)`

Register a `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage` object to be returned when `searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language)` is called in a test context. Use the method with the same parameters or you receive an exception.

Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.

API Version

36.0

Signature

```
public static Void setTestSearchInZone(String communityId, String zoneId, String q,
ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType filter, String language, ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage
result)
```

Parameters

communityId
Type: String

Use either the ID for an Experience Cloud site, `internal`, or `null`.

zoneId
Type: String

The ID of a zone.

q
Type: String

Specifies the string to search. The search string must contain at least two characters, not including wildcards. See Wildcards.

filter
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`

- `Article`—Search results contain only articles.
- `Question`—Search results contain only questions.

language
Type: String

The language of the articles or questions. The value must be a Salesforce supported locale code. In an `<apex:page>`, the default value is the language of the page. Otherwise, the default value is the user's locale.

result
Type: `ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage`

The object containing test data.

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

searchInZone(communityId, zoneId, q, filter, language)

Apex Developer Guide: Testing ConnectApi Code

`ConnectApi` Input Classes

Some `ConnectApi` methods take arguments that are instances of `ConnectApi` input classes.

Input classes are concrete unless marked abstract in this documentation. Concrete input classes have public constructors that have no parameters.

Some methods have parameters that are typed with an abstract class. You must pass in an instance of a concrete child class for these parameters.

Most input class properties can be set. Read-only properties are noted in this documentation.

ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinitionInput

The definition of an action link. An action link is a button on a feed element. Clicking an action link can take a user to a Web page, initiate a file download, or invoke an API call to Salesforce or to an external server. An action link includes a URL and an HTTP method, and can include a request body and header information, such as an OAuth token for authentication. Use action links to integrate Salesforce and third-party services into the feed so that users can take action to drive productivity and accelerate innovation.

Usage

You can use context variables in the `actionUrl`, `headers`, and `requestBody` properties. Use context variables to pass information about the user who executed the action link to your server-side code. Salesforce substitutes the value when the action link is executed.

These are the available context variables:

Context Variable	Description
`{!actionLinkId}`	The ID of the action link the user executed.
`{!actionLinkGroupId}`	The ID of the action link group containing the action link the user executed.
`{!communityId}`	The ID of the site in which the user executed the action link. The value for your internal org is the empty key `"000000000000000000"`.
`{!communityUrl}`	The URL of the site in which the user executed the action link. The value for your internal org is empty string `""`.
`{!orgId}`	The ID of the org in which the user executed the action link.
`{!userId}`	The ID of the user that executed the action link.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionType`	`ConnectApi.ActionLinkType`	Defines the type of action link. Values are: • `Api`—The action link calls a synchronous API at the action URL. Salesforce sets the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or `FailedStatus` based on the HTTP status code returned by your server. • `ApiAsync`—The action link calls an asynchronous API at the action URL. The action remains in a `PendingStatus` state until a third party makes a request to `/connect/action-links/`***`actionLinkId`*** to set the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or `FailedStatus` when the asynchronous operation is complete. • `Download`—The action link downloads a file from the action URL. • `Ui`—The action link takes the user to a web page at the action URL. Use `Ui` if you need to load a page before the user performs an action, for example, to have the user provide input or view something before the action happens. Note: Invoking `ApiAsync` action links from an app requires a call to	Required Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		set the status. However, there isn't currently a way to set the status of an action link using Apex. To set the status, use Connect REST API. See the Action Link resource in the *Connect REST API Developer Guide* for more information.		
`actionUrl`	String	The action link URL. For example, a `Ui` action link URL is a Web page. A `Download` action link URL is a link to the file to download. `Ui` and `Download` action link URLs are provided to clients. An `Api` or `ApiAsync` action link URL is a REST resource. `Api` and `ApiAsync` action link URLs aren't provided to clients. Links to Salesforce can be relative. All other links must be absolute and start with `https://`. Tip: To avoid issues due to upgrades or changing functionality in your API, we recommend using a versioned API for `actionUrl`, for example, `https://www.example.com/api/v1/exampleResource`. If your API isn't versioned, you can use the `expirationDate` property of the `ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput` class to avoid issues due to upgrades or changing functionality in your API.	Required Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`excludedUserId`	String	ID of a single user to exclude from performing the action. If you specify an `excludedUserId`, you can't specify a `userId`.	Optional Can be defined in an action link template using the `User Visibility` and `Custom User Alias` fields.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`groupDefault`	Boolean	`true` if this action is the default action link in the action link group; `false` otherwise. There can be only one default action link per action link group. The default action link gets distinct styling in the Salesforce UI.	Optional Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`headers`	List<`ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput`>	The request headers for the `Api` and `ApiAsync` action link types. See Action Links Overview, Authentication, and Security.	Optional Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`labelKey`	String	Key for the set of labels to show in the user interface. A set includes labels for these states: NewStatus, PendingStatus, SuccessStatus, FailedStatus. For example, if you use the `Approve` key, you get these labels: Approve, Pending, Approved, Failed. For a complete list of keys and labels, see Action Links Labels. If none of the predefined labels work for your action link, use a custom label. To use a custom label, create an action link template. See Create Action Link Templates.	Required Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`method`	`ConnectApi.HttpRequestMethod`	One of these HTTP methods: • `HttpDelete`—Returns HTTP 204 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpGet`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. • `HttpHead`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPatch`—Returns HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPost`—Returns HTTP 201 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. Exceptions are the batch posting resources and methods, which return HTTP 200 on success.	Required Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		• `HttpPut`—Return HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty.		
`requestBody`	String	The request body for `Api` action links. Note: Escape quotation mark characters in the `requestBody` value.	Optional Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`requires Confirmation`	Boolean	`true` to require the user to confirm the action; `false` otherwise.	Required Can be defined in an action link template.	33.0
`userId`	String	The ID of the user who can execute the action. If not specified or `null`, any user can execute the action. If you specify a `userId`, you can't specify an `excludedUserId`.	Optional Can be defined in an action link template using the `User Visibility` and `Custom User Alias` fields.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput

ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput

The definition of an action link group. All action links must belong to a group. Action links in a group are mutually exclusive and share some properties. Define stand-alone actions in their own action group.

Action link definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionLinks`	`List<ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinitionInput>`	The action links that make up this group. Within an action link group, action links are displayed in the order listed in the `actionLinks` property of the `ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput` class. Within a feed item, action link groups are displayed in the order specified in the	Required to instantiate this action link group without a template. To instantiate from a template, don't specify a value.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		`actionLinkGroupIds` property of the `ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput` class. You can create up to three action links in a `Primary` group and up to four in an `Overflow` group.		
`category`	`ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroupCategory`	Indicates the priority and relative locations of action links in an associated feed item. Values are: • `Primary`—The action link group is displayed in the body of the feed element. • `Overflow`—The action link group is displayed in the overflow menu of the feed element.	Required to instantiate this action link group without a template. To instantiate from a template, don't specify a value.	33.0
`executionsAllowed`	`ConnectApi.ActionLinkExecutionsAllowed`	Defines the number of times an action link can be executed. Values are: • `Once`—An action link can be executed only once across all users. • `OncePerUser`—An action link can be executed only once for each user. • `Unlimited`—An action link can be executed an unlimited number of times by each user. If the action link's `actionType` is `Api` or `ApiAsync`, you can't use this value.	Required to instantiate this action link group without a template. To instantiate from a template, don't specify a value.	33.0
`expirationDate`	`Datetime`	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, that represents the date and time this action link group is removed from associated feed items and can no longer be executed. The `expirationDate` must be within one year of the creation date. If the action link group definition includes an OAuth token, it is a good idea to set the expiration date of the action link group to the same value as the expiration date of the OAuth token so that users can't execute the action link and get an OAuth error.	Required to instantiate this action link group without a template. Optional to instantiate from a template.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		To set a date when instantiating from a template, see Set the Action Link Group Expiration Time.		
templateBindings	List<ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput>	A collection of key-value pairs to fill in binding variable values or a custom user alias from an action link template. To instantiate this action link group from an action link template that uses binding variables, you must provide values for all the variables. See Define Binding Variables.	To instantiate without a template, don't specify a value. Required to instantiate this action link group from a template that uses binding variables.	33.0
templateId	String	The ID of the action link group template from which to instantiate this action link group.	To instantiate without a template, don't specify a value. Required to instantiate this action link group from a template.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

- Define an Action Link and Post with a Feed Element
- Define an Action Link in a Template and Post with a Feed Element
- createActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroup)

ConnectApi.ActionLinkTemplateBindingInput

A key-value pair to fill in a binding variable value from an action link template.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
key	String	The name of the binding variable key specified in the action link template in Setup. For example, if the binding variable in the template is {!Binding.firstName}, the key is firstName	Required	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`value`	String	The value of the binding variable key. For example, if the key is `firstName`, this value could be `Joan`.	Required	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput

ConnectApi.ActivitySharingInput

Defines who a captured email or event is shared with.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`groupsToShareWith`	List<`String`>	List of IDs for the groups that you share the activity with. Valid only if `sharingType` is `MyGroups`.	Optional	39.0
`sharingType`	`ConnectApi.ActivitySharingType`	Type of sharing operation. Values are: • `Everyone`—The activity is shared with everyone. • `MyGroups`—The activity is shared only with a selection of the context user's groups. • `OnlyMe`—The activity is private.	Required	39.0

ConnectApi.AddressRequest

Address input representation for a payment method or card payment method.

Name	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`city`	String	Payment method city.	Optional	51.0
`companyName`	String	Payment method company name.	Optional	51.0
`country`	String	Payment method country.	Optional	51.0
`postalCode`	String	Payment method postal code.	Optional	51.0
`state`	String	Payment method state.	Optional	51.0
`street`	String	Payment method street.	Optional	51.0

ConnectApi.AdjustItemInputRepresentation

A price adjustment to an OrderItemSummary. It only supports discounts, not increases.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`adjustmentType`	String	Describes how the amount is calculated. It can have one of these values: • `AmountWithTax`—Value of amount is the adjustment, including tax. • `AmountWithoutTax`—Value of amount is the adjustment, not including tax. Tax is calculated on the value and added. • `Percentage`—Value of amount is a percentage discount. It is divided by 100, and then multiplied by the TotalPrice and TotalTaxAmount of the OrderItemSummary to determine the adjustment amount.	Required	49.0
`amount`	Double	Value used to calculate the adjustment amount, as described by the adjustmentType. It must be a negative value.	Required	49.0
`description`	String	Description of the adjustment.	Optional	49.0
`orderItemSummaryId`	String	ID of the OrderItemSummary.	Required	49.0
`reason`	String	Reason for the adjustment. The value must match one of the picklist values on the Reason field of the OrderItemSummaryChange object.	Required	49.0

ConnectApi.AdjustOrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation

A list of price adjustments to OrderItemSummaries that make up a price adjustment to an order.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`adjustItems`	List<`ConnectApi.AdjustItemInputRepresentation`>	List of price adjustments to OrderItemSummaries.	Required	49.0

ConnectApi.AlternativeInput

Alternative representation for an extension on a feed element.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`textRepresentation`	String	Text representation of the extension.	Required	40.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	Thumbnail URL to the extension.	Optional	40.0
`title`	String	Title of the extension.	Optional	40.0

ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput

An announcement.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available
`body`	`ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput`	Text of the announcement.	Required for creating an announcement if `feedItemId` isn't specified Don't specify for updating an announcement.	31.0
`expirationDate`	Datetime	The Salesforce UI displays an announcement until 11:59 p.m. on this date unless another announcement is posted first. The Salesforce UI ignores the time value in the `expirationDate`. However, you can use the time value to create your own display logic in your own UI.	Required for creating an announcement Optional for updating an announcement	31.0
`feedItemId`	String	ID of an `AdvancedTextPost` feed item that is the body of the announcement.	Required for creating an announcement if `body` isn't specified Don't specify for updating an announcement.	36.0
`isArchived`	Boolean	Specifies whether the announcement is archived.	Optional	36.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available
`parentId`	String	ID of the parent entity for the announcement, that is, a group ID when the announcement appears in a group.	Required for creating an announcement if `feedItemId` isn't specified Don't specify for updating an announcement.	36.0
`sendEmails`	Boolean	Specifies whether the announcement is sent as an email to all group members regardless of their email setting for the group. If Chatter emails aren't enabled for the organization, announcement emails aren't sent. Default value is `false`.	Optional for creating an announcement Don't specify for updating an announcement	36.0

SEE ALSO:

postAnnouncement(communityId, groupId, announcement)

ConnectApi.ArticleTopicAssignmentJobInput

An article and topic assignment job.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`operation`	`ConnectApi.ArticleTopicJobType`	Type of operation to perform on articles and topics. Values are: • `AssignTopicsToArticle`—Assign topics to articles in a data category. • `UnassignTopicsFromArticle`—Unassign topics from articles in a data category.	Required	40.0
`topicNames`	`ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput`	List of topic names to assign to or unassign from articles.	Required	40.0

ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput

A list of action link groups to associate with a feed element. To associate an action link group with a feed element, the call must be made from the Apex namespace that created the action link definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

An action link is a button on a feed element. Clicking an action link can take a user to a Web page, initiate a file download, or invoke an API call to Salesforce or to an external server. An action link includes a URL and an HTTP method, and can include a request body and

header information, such as an OAuth token for authentication. Use action links to integrate Salesforce and third-party services into the feed so that users can take action to drive productivity and accelerate innovation.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionLinkGroupIds`	List<String>	The action link group IDs to associate with the feed element. Associate one `Primary` and up to 10 total action link groups to a feed item. Action link groups are returned in the order specified in this property. An action link group ID is returned from a call to `ConnectApi.ActionLinks.createActionLinkGroupDefinition(communityId, actionLinkGroup)`.	Required	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.AssociateRecordsWithRecipientInput

Records associated with the survey invitation.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`associateRecordIds`	List<String>	ID of the associated records.	Required	50.0
`recipientId`	String	Participant ID with whose invitation the record should be associated.	Required	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput

ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaInput

Custom recommendation audience criteria type.

This class is abstract and has no public constructor. You can make an instance only of a subclass.

Superclass for:

- ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteriaInput
- ConnectApi.NewUserAudienceCriteriaInput

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
type	ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceCriteriaType	Specifies the custom recommendation audience criteria type. One of these values: • CustomList—A custom list of users makes up the audience. • MaxDaysInCommunity—New members make up the audience.	Optional If not specified, defaults to CustomList.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput

ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionInput

Personalization audience criterion.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
criterion	List<ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionValueInput>	List of mappings of audience criteria fields and values.	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0
criterionNumber	Integer	Number associated with the audience criterion in a formula. For example, (1 AND 2) OR 3. If unspecified, criteria are assigned numbers in the order that they're added.	Optional	48.0
criterionOperator	ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaOperator	Operator used in the personalization audience criterion. Values are: • Contains • Equal • GreaterThan • GreaterThanOrEqual • Includes • LessThan • LessThanOrEqual • NotEqual • NotIncludes • StartsWith	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`criterionType`	`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaType`	Type of personalization audience criterion. Values are: • `Default`—Audience has no criteria. • `Domain`—Audience criterion is based on domain. • `FieldBased`—Audience criterion is based on object fields. • `GeoLocation`—Audience criterion is based on location. • `Permission`—Audience criterion is based on standard or custom permissions. • `Profile`—Audience criterion is based on profile.	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AudienceInput

ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionValueInput

Audience criterion value.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`city`	String	City of a user.	Optional if creating or updating an audience with the `GeoLocation` criterion type	48.0
`country`	String	Country of a user.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `GeoLocation` criterion type	48.0
`domainId`	String	Domain ID of a user.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `Domain` criterion type	48.0
`entityField`	String	Field of an object.	Required if creating or updating an	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
			audience with the `FieldBased` criterion type	
`entityType`	String	Type of object.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `FieldBased` criterion type	48.0
`fieldValue`	String	Value of a field.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `FieldBased` criterion type	48.0
`isEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether the permission is enabled (`true`) or not (`false`) for a user.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `Permission` criterion type	48.0
`permission`	String	Valid API name of a standard user or custom permission.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `Permission` criterion type	48.0
`profileId`	String	Profile ID of a user.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `Profile` criterion type	48.0
`subdivision`	String	Subdivision of a user.	Required if creating or updating an audience with the `GeoLocation` criterion type and using the `city` property	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionInput

ConnectApi.AudienceInput

A personalization audience.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`criteria`	List<`ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionInput`>	List of audience criteria to update or add. An audience can have up to 100 criteria.	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0
`customFormula`	String	Custom formula for the audience criteria. For example, (1 AND 2) OR 3.	Required when creating an audience with the `formulaFilterType` set to `CustomLogicMatches` Optional, otherwise	48.0
`formulaFilterType`	`ConnectApi.FormulaFilterType`	Formula filter type for the personalization audience. Values are: • `AllCriteriaMatch`—All audience criteria are true (AND operation). • `AnyCriterionMatches`—Any audience criterion is true (OR operation). • `CustomLogicMatches`—Audience criteria match the custom formula (for example, (1 AND 2) OR 3).	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0
`name`	String	Name of the audience.	Required when creating an audience Optional when updating an audience	48.0

ConnectApi.AuditParamsRequest

Audit Parameters input.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`email`	String	Email of the client that made the request.	Optional	50.0
`ipAddress`	String	IP address of the client that made the request.	Optional	50.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
macAddress	String	Mac address of the client that made the request.	Optional	50.0
phone	String	Phone number of the client that made the request.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest

Payment method input representation for payment authorizations.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
cardPaymentMethod	ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodInputRepresentation	Card payment method information.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalRequest

Authorization reversal input consumed by authorization reversal service.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
accountId	String	Account for the payment authorization reversal. Must match the payment authorization's account.		51.0
amount	Double	Amount of adjustment applied to the payment authorization.		51.0
comments	String	Users can add comments to provide additional details about a record. Maximum of 1,000 characters.		51.0
effectiveDate	Datetime	Date that the adjustment takes effect on the authorization.		51.0

ConnectApi.AuthorizationRequest

Payment Authorization input consumed by Payment Authorization service.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`accountId`	String	Salesforce account that contains the payment transaction being authorized.	Required	51.0
`amount`	Double	Authorization amount.	Required	51.0
`comments`	String	Optional comments for the payment authorization.	Optional	51.0
`currencyIsoCode`	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment group record.	Required	51.0
`effectiveDate`	Datetime	Date that the authorization will be applied to the transaction.	Required	51.0
`paymentGatewayId`	String	Payment gateway that processes the authorization.	Required	51.0
`paymentGroup`	`ConnectApi.PaymentGroupRequest`	Payment group for the authorization. The payload must reference either a `paymentGroup` or a `paymentGroupId`, but not both.	Optional	51.0
`paymentMethod`	`ConnectApi.AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest`	Payment method used in the payment gateway for the authorization transaction.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.BannerPhotoInput

A banner photo.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`cropHeight`	Integer	Height of the crop rectangle in pixels.	Optional	36.0
`cropWidth`	Integer	Width of the crop rectangle in pixels.	Optional	36.0
`cropX`	Integer	X position of the crop rectangle from the left edge of the image in pixels. Top left is position (0,0).	Optional	36.0
`cropY`	Integer	Y position of the crop rectangle from the top edge of the image in pixels. Top left is position (0,0).	Optional	36.0
`fileId`	String	18 character ID of an existing file. The key prefix must be 069 and the file must be an image and be smaller than 2 GB. Note: Images uploaded on the Group page and on the User page	Required	36.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		don't have file IDs and therefore can't be used.		
`versionNumber`	Integer	Version number of an existing file. If not provided, the latest version is used.	Optional	36.0

ConnectApi.BaseRequest

Base parameters for making a request to the payment gateway.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AuditParamsRequest.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AuthorizationRequest
- ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalRequest
- ConnectApi.CaptureRequest
- ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest
- ConnectApi.RefundRequest

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`additionalData`	Map<String, String>	An optional map of additional parameters to be sent to the payment gateway.	Optional	50.0
`idempotencyKey`	String	Idempotency key.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.BaseApiPaymentMethodRequest

Payment method API input representation.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.AuthApiPaymentMethodRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`address`	`ConnectApi.AddressRequest`	Payment method address.	Required	51.0
`id`	String	Payment method record ID. Used in payment transactions.	Required	51.0
`saveForFuture`	Boolean	Shows whether Salesforce saves the payment method for future use.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.BasePaymentMethodRequest

Base payment method input representation.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodRequest.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.BatchInput

Construct a set of inputs to be passed into a method at the same time.

Use this constructor when there isn't a binary input:

```
ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input)
```

Use this constructor to pass one binary input:

```
ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input, ConnectApi.BinaryInput binary)
```

Use this constructor to pass multiple binary inputs:

```
ConnectApi.BatchInput(Object input, List<ConnectApi.BinaryInput> binaries)
```

The constructors takes these parameters:

Argument	Type	Description	Available Version
`input`	Object	An individual input object to be used in the batch operation. For example, for `postFeedElementBatch()`, this should be `ConnectApi.FeedElementInput`.	32.0
`binary`	`ConnectApi.BinaryInput`	A binary file to associate with the input object.	32.0
`binaries`	List<`ConnectApi.BinaryInput`>	A list of binary files to associate with the input object.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- Post a Batch of Feed Elements
- Post a Batch of Feed Elements with a New (Binary) File

ConnectApi.BinaryInput

Create a `ConnectApi.BinaryInput` object to attach files to feed items and comments and to add repository files.

The constructor is:

```
ConnectApi.BinaryInput(blob, contentType, filename)
```

The constructor takes these arguments:

Argument	Type	Description	Available Version
`blob`	Blob	Contents of the file to be used for input	28.0
`contentType`	String	MIME type description of the content, such as `image/jpg`	28.0
`filename`	String	File name with the file extension, such as UserPhoto.jpg	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- Post a Feed Element with a New File (Binary) Attachment
- Post a Comment with a New File
- ConnectApi.BatchInput

ConnectApi.BookmarksCapabilityInput

Create or update a bookmark on a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`isBookmarkedByCurrentUser`	Boolean	Specifies if the feed element should be bookmarked for the user (`true`) or not (`false`).	No	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodRequest

Card payment method input representation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BasePaymentMethodRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`accountId`	String	Salesforce account to which this payment method is linked.	Required	51.0
`cardCategory`	`ConnectApi.CardCategory`	Card processing type. Valid values are: • `CreditCard` • `DebitCard`	Required	51.0
`cardHolderFirstName`	String	First name of the card holder.	Required	51.0
`cardHolderLastName`	String	Last name of the card holder.	Required	51.0
`cardHolderName`	String	Full name of the card holder.	Required	51.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`cardNumber`	String	Card number.	Required	51.0
`cardType`	String	Card network type. Valid values are: • `AmericanExpress` • `DinersClub` • `JCB` • `MasterCard` • `Maestro` • `Visa`	Required	51.0
`comments`	String	Optional comments for the card payment method.	Optional	51.0
`cvv`	String	CVV.	Required	51.0
`email`	String	Email.	Required	51.0
`expiryMonth`	Integer	Card expiration month.	Required	51.0
`expiryYear`	Integer	Card expiration year.	Required	51.0
`nickName`	String	Optional nickname for the card.	Optional	51.0
`startMonth`	Integer	Start month of the card.	Optional	51.0
`startYear`	Integer	Start year of the card.	Optional	51.0

ConnectApi.CartInput

A cart.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`effectiveAccountId`	String	ID of the buyer account or guest buyer profile for which the request is made. If unspecified, the default value is determined from context.	Optional	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the cart. The name can have up to 250 Unicode characters. If unspecified, defaults to the generated name.	Optional	49.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CartType`	Type of cart. Value is `Cart`. If unspecified, defaults to `Cart`.	Optional	49.0

ConnectApi.CartItemInput

An item in a cart.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`productId`	String	ID of the product.	Required when adding an item to a cart Not supported when updating a cart item	49.0
`quantity`	String	Quantity of the cart item. Use a value that can be converted to BigDecimal.	Required	49.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CartItemType`	Type of item in a cart. Value is `Product`.	Required when adding an item to a cart Not supported when updating a cart item	49.0

ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityInput

Set the visibility for cart messages.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`visibility`	Boolean	Specifies whether to set cart messages as visible (`true`) or not (`false`).	Required	50.0

ConnectApi.CartToWishlistInput

Copy products from a cart to a wishlist.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`wishlistId`	String	ID of the wishlist to copy cart products to.	Required	50.0

ConnectApi.CanvasCapabilityInput

Create or update a canvas app associated with a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`description`	String	A description of the canvas app. The maximum size is 255 characters.	Optional	32.0
`developerName`	String	The API name (developer name) of the connected app.	Required	32.0
`height`	String	The height of the canvas app in pixels.	Optional	32.0
`namespacePrefix`	String	A unique namespace prefix for the canvas app.	Optional	32.0
`parameters`	String	JSON parameters passed to the canvas app.	Optional	32.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	A thumbnail URL to a preview image. The maximum thumbnail size is 120 pixels by 120 pixels.	Optional	32.0
`title`	String	A title for the canvas link.	Required	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.CaptureRequest

Payment capture input consumed by the payment capture service.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`accountId`	String	ID of the account linked to the capture request.	Optional	50.0
`amount`	Double	Amount captured from the previous authorization.	Required	50.0
`clientContext`	String	Context for payment APIs. Used for a payment caller to re-establish context.	Optional	50.0
`comments`	String	Comments for the payment capture.	Optional	50.0
`effectiveDate`	Datetime	Date when the payment becomes effective.	Optional	50.0
`paymentGroup`	`ConnectApi.PaymentGroupRequest`	Details about the payment group record associated with the payment request.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.CdpQueryInput

Salesforce CDP data query input.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`sql`	String	ANSI-standard SQL query.	Required	52.0

ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation

A list of changes to OrderItemSummaries that make up an order change, such as a cancel or return.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`changeItems`	List<`ConnectApi.ChangeItemInputRepresentation`>	List of changes to OrderItemSummaries.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

- previewCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- previewReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- submitCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- submitReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

ConnectApi.ChangeItemInputRepresentation

Change to an OrderItemSummary, such as a return or cancel. You specify whether to prorate the associated shipping charge based on the price change. The OrderItemSummary can't be a shipping charge.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`orderItemSummaryId`	String	ID of the OrderItemSummary.	Required	48.0
`quantity`	Double	Quantity to change. Use a positive value. For example, a value of 2 means "cancel or return 2 units."	Required	48.0
`reason`	String	Reason for the change. The value must match one of the picklist values on the Reason field of the OrderItemSummaryChange object.	Required	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`shippingReductionFlag`	Boolean	Specifies whether to prorate the shipping charge.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ChangeInputRepresentation
- previewCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- previewReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- submitCancel(orderSummaryId, changeInput)
- submitReturn(orderSummaryId, changeInput)

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput

Property	Type	Description	Available
`announcement`	String	The 18-character ID of an announcement. An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.	31.0
`canHaveChatterGuests`	Boolean	`true` if this group allows Chatter customers, `false` otherwise. After this property is set to `true`, it cannot be set to `false`.	29.0
`description`	String	The "Description" section of the group.	29.0
`information`	`ConnectApi.GroupInformationInput`	The "Information" section of a group. If the group is private, this section is visible only to members.	28.0
`isArchived`	Boolean	`true` if the group is archived, `false` otherwise. Defaults to `false`.	29.0
`isAutoArchiveDisabled`	Boolean	`true` if automatic archiving is turned off for the group, `false` otherwise. Defaults to `false`.	29.0
`name`	String	The name of the group.	29.0
`owner`	String	The ID of the group owner. This property is available for PATCH requests only.	29.0

Property	Type	Description	Available
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.GroupVisibilityType`	Group visibility type. • `PrivateAccess`—Only members of the group can see posts to this group. • `PublicAccess`—All users within the Experience Cloud site can see posts to this group. • `Unlisted`—Reserved for future use.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

createGroup(communityId, groupInput)

updateGroup(communityId, groupId, groupInput)

ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput

A Chatter feed stream.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the stream, up to 1,000 characters.	Optional	39.0
`name`	String	Name of the stream, up to 120 characters.	Required when creating a stream Optional when updating a stream	39.0
`subscriptionsToAdd`	List<`ConnectApi.StreamSubscriptionInput`>	List of up to 25 entities whose feeds are included in the stream. Adding an entity that is already added results in no operation. Including the same entity in `subscriptionsToAdd` and `subscriptionsToRemove` results in no operation.	Optional	39.0
`subscriptionsToRemove`	List<`ConnectApi.StreamSubscriptionInput`>	List of entities whose feeds are removed from the stream. Removing an entity that is already removed results in no operation. Including the same entity in `subscriptionsToAdd` and `subscriptionsToRemove` results in no operation.	Optional when updating a stream Not supported when creating a stream	39.0

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput

A container for all capabilities that can be included with a comment.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`content`	`ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput`	Content to attach to the comment.	Optional	32.0
`feedEntityShare`	`ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput`	Feed entity to share to the comment.	Optional	42.0
`record`	`ConnectApi.RecordCapabilityInput`	Existing knowledge article to attach to the comment.	Optional	42.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentInput

ConnectApi.CommentInput

A comment.

Used to add rich comments, for example, comments that include mentions or file attachments.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`attachment`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput`	Specifies an attachment for the comment. Valid values are: • `ContentAttachmentInput` • `NewFileAttachmentInput` `LinkAttachmentInput` is not permitted for comments. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the `capabilities` property.	Optional	28.0–31.0
`body`	`ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput`	Description of message body. The body can contain up to 10,000 characters and 25 mentions. Because the character limit can change, clients should make a `describeSObjects()` call on the FeedItem or FeedComment object and look at the length of the `Body` or `CommentBody` field to determine the maximum number of allowed characters.	Required	28.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		To edit this property in a comment, use `updateComment(communityId, commentId, comment)`. Editing comments is supported in version 34.0 and later. Rich text and inline images are supported in comment bodies in version 35.0 and later. Entity links are supported in version 43.0 and later.		
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.CommentCapabilitiesInput`	Specifies any capabilities for the comment, such as a file attachment.	Optional	32.0
`threadParentId`	String	ID of the parent comment for a threaded comment.	Optional	44.0

SEE ALSO:

- Post a Comment with a Mention
- Post a Comment with a New File
- Post a Comment with an Existing File
- Post a Rich-Text Comment with Inline Image
- Post a Rich-Text Feed Comment with a Code Block
- Edit a Comment
- postCommentToFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, comment, feedElementFileUpload)

ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput

Attach or update a file on a comment. Use this class to attach a new file or update a file that has already been uploaded to Salesforce.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

To attach or remove files from a feed post (instead of a comment) in version 36.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput`.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`contentDocumentId`	String	ID of the existing content.	Required for existing content	32.0
`description`	String	Description of the file to be uploaded.	Optional	32.0
`sharingOption`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingOption`	Sharing option of the file. Values are: • `Allowed`—Resharing of the file is allowed. • `Restricted`—Resharing of the file is restricted.	Optional	35.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`title`	String	Title of the file. This value is used as the file name for new content. For example, if the title is My Title, and the file is a .txt file, the file name is My Title.txt.	Required for new content	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput

The fields of the item type.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	Name of the item field. When updating the metadata of a repository file, only the name field can be updated.	Required	39.0
`value`	String	Value of the item field.	Required	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput

ConnectApi.ContentHubItemInput

The item type ID and fields of the item type.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fields`	List<`ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldValueInput`>	List of fields for the item.	Required to create a SharePoint file in a repository because the file name is required; otherwise optional	39.0
`itemTypeId`	String	ID of the item type.	Required to create a file in a repository	39.0

ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoInputRepresentation

A list of change orders used to create a credit memo.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
changeOrderIds	List<String>	List of IDs of the change orders.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

createCreditMemo(orderSummaryId, creditMemoInput)

ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryInputRepresentation

An OrderSummary for which to create an OrderPaymentSummary, with the payment authorization or payments to include in it.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderSummary.	Required	48.0
paymentAuthorizationId	String	ID of the payment authorization.	Either a payment authorization or at least one payment is required.	48.0
paymentIds	List<String>	List of IDs of the payments.	Either a payment authorization or at least one payment is required.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

createOrderPaymentSummary(orderPaymentSummaryInput)

ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteriaInput

Criteria for the custom list type of custom recommendation audience.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
memberOperationType	ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceMemberOperationType	The operation to carry out on the audience members. Values are: • Add—Adds specified members to the audience. • Remove—Removes specified members from the audience.	Required to update a recommendation audience Don't use or specify null to create a recommendation audience	36.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`members`	List<String>	A collection of user IDs. When updating an audience, you can include up to 100 members. An audience can have up to 100,000 members, and each Experience Cloud site can have up to 100 audiences.	Required to update a recommendation audience Don't use or specify `null` to create a recommendation audience	36.0

ConnectApi.DataCloudOrderInput

Input representation for a Datacloud order to purchase contacts or companies and retrieve purchase information.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`companyIds`	String	A comma-separated list of identification numbers for the companies to be purchased. You can't include any contact IDs or your purchase fails.	Required to purchase companies	32.0
`contactIds`	String	A comma-separated list of identification numbers for the contacts to be purchased. You can't include any company IDs or your purchase fails.	Required to purchase contacts	32.0
`userType`	ConnectDataCloudUserTypeEnum	Indicates the Data.com user type to be used. There are two user types. • `Monthly` (default) • `Listpool`	Optional	32.0

SEE ALSO:

postOrder(orderInput)

ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput

Create or update the members of a direct message.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`membersToAdd`	List<`String`>	List of user IDs for members to include in the direct message.	Required when creating a direct message (POST) Optional when updating a direct message (PATCH)	39.0
`membersToRemove`	List<`String`>	List of user IDs for members to remove from the direct message.	Optional when updating a direct message (PATCH) Not supported when creating a direct message (POST)	40.0
`subject`	String	Subject of the direct message.	Optional when creating a direct message (POST) Not supported when updating a direct message (PATCH)	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.DistinctValueRefinementInput

Attribute-based refinement with distinct values for product search.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.RefinementInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`values`	List<String>	Comma-separated list of attribute values.	Required	52.0

ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncInputRepresentation

ID of an invoice to ensure funds for and apply them to.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`invoiceId`	String	ID of the invoice.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ensureFundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureFundsInput)

ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncInputRepresentation

ID of a credit memo to ensure refunds for, an amount of excess funds to refund, or both. At least one is required.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`creditMemoId`	String	ID of the credit memo that represents a refund amount.	Optional, but at least one input property is required	48.0
`excessFundsAmount`	Double	Amount of excess funds to refund.	Optional, but at least one input property is required	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ensureRefundsAsync(orderSummaryId, ensureRefundsInput)

ConnectApi.EntityLinkSegmentInput

An entity link segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`entityId`	String	ID of the entity to link to. Only users with access to the entity see it. It's hidden for users without access.	Required	43.0

ConnectApi.ExtensionInput

An extension.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`alternativeRepresentation`	`ConnectApi.AlternativeInput`	Alternative representation of the extension.	Required	40.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`extensionId`	String	ID of the extension.	Required	40.0
`payload`	String	Payload associated with the extension.	Required	40.0
`payloadVersion`	String	Payload version that identifies the structure of the payload associated with the extension.	Optional	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapabilityInput

ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapabilityInput

Create or update extensions associated with a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`itemsToAdd`	List<`ConnectApi.ExtensionInput`>	List of extensions to associate with the feed element.	Required for creating an extension Optional for updating an extension	40.0
`itemsToRemove`	List<String>	List of attachment IDs to remove from the feed element.	Optional for updating an extension Don't specify for creating an extension	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

A container for all capabilities that can be included when creating a feed element.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
associatedActions	ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput	Describes actions added to the feed element.	Optional	33.0
bookmarks	ConnectApi.BookmarksCapabilityInput	Describes bookmarks added to the feed element.	Optional	32.0
canvas	ConnectApi.CanvasCapabilityInput	Describes a canvas app added to the feed element.	Optional	32.0
content	ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput	Describes content added to the feed element. **Important:** This class isn't available for feed posts in version 36.0 and later. In version 36.0 and later, use ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput.	Optional	32.0–35.0
directMessage	ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput	Describes the direct message.	Optional	39.0
extensions	ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapabilityInput	Describes the extensions associated with the feed element.	Optional	40.0
feedEntityShare	ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput	Describes the feed entity shared with the feed element.	Optional	39.0
files	ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput	Describes files attached to the feed element.	Optional	36.0
link	ConnectApi.LinkCapabilityInput	Describes a link added to the feed element.	Optional	32.0
poll	ConnectApi.PollCapabilityInput	Describes a poll added to the feed element.	Optional	32.0
questionAndAnswers	ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput	Describes a question and answer capability added to the feed element.	Optional	32.0
status	ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput	Describes the status of the feed element.	Optional	44.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`topics`	`ConnectApi.TopicsCapabilityInput`	Describes topics assigned to the feed element.	Optional	38.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementInput

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput

A feed element capability.

In API version 30.0 and earlier, most feed items can have comments, likes, topics, and so on. In version 31.0 and later, every feed item (and feed element) can have a unique set of *capabilities*. If a capability property exists on a feed element, that capability is available, even if the capability property doesn't have a value. For example, if the `ChatterLikes` capability property exists on a feed element (with or without a value), the context user can like that feed element. If the capability property doesn't exist, it isn't possible to like that feed element. A capability can also contain associated data. For example, the `Moderation` capability contains data about moderation flags.

This class is abstract and has no public constructor. You can make an instance only of a subclass.

This class is a superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.BookmarksCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.CanvasCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.LinkCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.MuteCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.PollCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.RecordCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput
- ConnectApi.TopicsCapabilityInput

ConnectApi.FeedElementInput

Feed elements are the top-level items that a feed contains. Feeds are feed element containers.

This class is abstract and has no public constructor. You can make an instance only of a subclass.

Superclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput`	The capabilities that define auxiliary information on this feed element.	Optional	31.0
`feedElementType`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementType`	The type of feed element this input represents.	Required when creating a feed element Optional when updating a feed element	31.0
`subjectId`	String	The ID of the parent this feed element is being posted to. This value can be the ID of a user, group, or record, or the string `me` to indicate the context user. In version 45.0 and later, you can move a feed element from one public group to another by setting this property to the ID of the new public group. You can't include or change any other properties when moving a feed element.	Required	31.0

SEE ALSO:

- Post a Feed Element with a Mention
- Post a Feed Element with Existing Content
- Post a Feed Element with a New File (Binary) Attachment
- Define an Action Link and Post with a Feed Element
- Define an Action Link in a Template and Post with a Feed Element
- Share a Feed Element (in Version 39.0 and Later)
- Edit a Feed Element
- Edit a Question Title and Post
- Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image

ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapabilityInput

Share a feed entity with a feed post or comment.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`feedEntityId`	String	ID of the feed entity to share with the feed post or comment.	Required	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.FeedItemInput

Used to create rich feed items, for example, feed items that include @mentions or files.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementInput as of version 31.0.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`attachment`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput`	Specifies the attachment for the feed item. The feed item type is inferred based on the provided attachment. **Important:** As of API version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities` property.	Optional	28.0–31.0
`body`	`ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput`	Message body. The body can contain up to 10,000 characters and 25 mentions. Because the character limit can change, clients should make a `describeSObjects()` call on the FeedItem or FeedComment object and look at the length of the `Body` or `CommentBody` field to determine the maximum number of allowed characters. If you specify `originalFeedElementId` to share a feed item, use the `body` property to add the first comment to the feed item. To edit this property in a feed item, use `updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)`. Editing feed posts is supported in version 34.0 and later.	Required unless the feed item has a link capability or a content capability.	28.0
`isBookmarkedByCurrentUser`	Boolean	Specifies if the new feed item should be bookmarked for the user (`true`) or not (`false`). **Important:** As of API version 32.0, use the `capabilities.bookmarks.isBookmarkedByCurrentUser` property.	Optional	28.0–31.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`originalFeedElementId`	String	To share a feed element, specify its 18-character ID. **Important:** As of API version 39.0, use the `capabilities.feedEntityShare.feedEntityId` property.	Optional	31.0–38.0
`originalFeedItemId`	String	To share a feed item, specify its 18-character ID. **Important:** In API version 32.0–38.0, use the `originalFeedElementId` property. In API version 39.0 and later, use the `capabilities.feedEntityShare.feedEntityId` property.	Optional	28.0–31.0
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibilityType` Enum	Type of users who can see a feed item. • `AllUsers`—Visibility is not limited to internal users. • `InternalUsers`—Visibility is limited to internal users. Default values: • For external users, the default value is `AllUsers`. External users must use this value to see their posts. • For internal users, the default value is `InternalUsers`. Internal users can accept this value or use the value `AllUsers` to allow external users to see their posts. If the parent of the feed item is a user, group, or direct message, the `visibility` of the feed item must be `AllUsers`.	Optional	28.0

ConnectApi.FileIdInput

Attach a file that has already been uploaded or remove a file from a feed element.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of a file that has already been uploaded.	Required	36.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`operationType`	`ConnectApi.OperationType`	Operation to carry out on the file. Values are: • `Add`—Adds the file to the feed element. • `Remove`—Removes the file from the feed element. `Remove` operations are processed before `Add` operations. Adding content that is already added and removing content that is already removed result in no operation.	Optional If not specified, defaults to `Add`.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput

ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsInputRepresentation

Data used to calculate order fulfillment routes involving the fewest number of shipment splits.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`locationAvailableInventory`	List<`ConnectApi.LocationAvailabilityInputRepresentation`>	Each list element represents the available quantity of a product at an inventory location.	At least one element is required	51.0
`maximumNumberOfSplits`	Integer	The maximum allowable number of shipment splits. Routing options that involve more than this number of splits are not returned. Note: Each split represents an additional shipment. Specifying a maximum of 0 returns only locations that can fulfill the entire order in a single shipment. A maximum of 1 returns combinations of locations that can fulfill the order in one or two shipments, and so on.	Optional	51.0
`orderedQuantities`	List<`ConnectApi.QuantityWithSkuInputRepresentation`>	Each list element represents a quantity of a product to be routed for fulfillment.	At least one element is required	51.0

ConnectApi.FilesCapabilityInput

Attach up to 10 files that have already been uploaded or remove one or more files from a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.FileIdInput`>	List of file IDs and operations to be carried out on those files.	Required	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation

A list of OrderItemSummaries to be fulfilled together, and the fulfillment location to handle them. The fulfillment type is one of the values defined for the Type field on the FulfillmentOrder object, such as "Warehouse" or "Retail Store." The specified type is assigned to the FulfillmentOrder for this fulfillment group.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fulfilledFromLocationId`	String	ID of the fulfillment location.	Required	48.0
`fulfillmentType`	String	Fulfillment type. One of the Type field values defined for FulfillmentOrders.	Required	48.0
`orderItemSummaries`	List<`ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation`>	List of OrderItemSummaries.	Required	48.0
`referenceId`	String	Reference to this input for use in troubleshooting failures. This value is only used by the APIs for creating fulfillment orders for multiple order delivery group summaries.	Optional	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation

createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput)

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation

An OrderDeliveryGroupSummary that defines a delivery method and recipient, and a list of fulfillment groups to assign to FulfillmentOrders. Each fulfillment group is a set of OrderItemSummaries that match the OrderDeliveryGroupSummary and share the same fulfillment location. The method creates a FulfillmentOrder for each fulfillment group and a FulfillmentOrderLineItem for each OrderItemSummary.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fulfillmentGroups`	List<`ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation`>	List of fulfillment groups that specify the OrderItemSummaries and fulfillment locations.	Required	48.0
`orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId`	String	ID of the OrderDeliveryGroupSummary.	Required	48.0
`orderSummaryId`	String	ID of the OrderSummary.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput)

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceInputRepresentation

Instantiate and include this object with no properties when creating an invoice.

This input class has no properties.

SEE ALSO:

createInvoice(fulfillmentOrderId, invoiceInput)

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation

A FulfillmentOrderLineItem and quantity to cancel. You can cancel less than the full quantity, in which case you reallocate the canceled quantity to a different FulfillmentOrder.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fulfillmentOrderLineItemId`	String	ID of the FulfillmentOrderLineItem.	Required	48.0
`quantity`	Double	Quantity to cancel.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation

cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(fulfillmentOrderId, cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput)

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancelInputRepresentation

A list of FulfillmentOrderLineItems and quantities to cancel.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fulfillmentOrderLineItemsToCancel`	List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderLineItemInputRepresentation>	List of FulfillmentOrderLineItems and quantities.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItems(fulfillmentOrderId, cancelFulfillmentOrderLineItemsInput)

ConnectApi.BaseRequest

Base parameters for making a request to the payment gateway.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AuditParamsRequest.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AuthorizationRequest
- ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalRequest
- ConnectApi.CaptureRequest
- ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest
- ConnectApi.RefundRequest

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`additionalData`	Map<String, String>	An optional map of additional parameters to be sent to the payment gateway.	Optional	50.0
`idempotencyKey`	String	Idempotency key.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.GroupInformationInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`text`	String	The text in the “Information” section of a group.	28.0
`title`	String	The title of the “Information” section of a group.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupInput

ConnectApi.HashtagSegmentInput

Include a hashtag in a feed item or comment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`tag`	String	Text of the hash tag without the # (hash tag) prefix Note: Closing square brackets ( ]) are not supported in hash tag text. If the text contains a closing square bracket ( ]), the hash tag ends at the bracket.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput

An inline image segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`altText`	String	Alt text for the inline image.	Optional If not specified, the title of the inline image file is used as the alt text.	35.0
`fileId`	String	ID of the inline image file.	Required	35.0

SEE ALSO:

Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.InviteInput

An invitation.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`invitees`	List<`String`>	List of email addresses to send the invitation to.	Required	39.0
`message`	String	Message to include in the invitation.	Optional	39.0

ConnectApi.LinkCapabilityInput

Create or update a link on a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`url`	String	Link URL. The URL can be to an external site.	Required	32.0
`urlName`	String	Description of the link.	Optional	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.LinkSegmentInput

Include a link segment in a feed item or comment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to be used for the link	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.LocationInputRepresentation

Inventory location data used to calculate shipping distance.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`countryCode`	String	The country code of the location.	Required	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location.	Required	51.0
`postalCode`	String	The postal code of the location.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.LocationAvailabilityInputRepresentation

The available quantity of a product at an inventory location.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
externalReferenceId	String	The external reference ID of the inventory location.	Optional	51.0
quantity	Double	The available quantity of the product.	Required	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The Stock Keeping Unit of the product.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput

A collection of relative positions of managed topics.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
managedTopicPositions	List<ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionInput>	List of relative positions of managed topics. This list can include `Featured` and `Navigational` managed topics and doesn't need to include all managed topics. For more information about reordering managed topics, see the example in reorderManagedTopics(communityId, managedTopicPositionCollection).	Required	32.0

ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionInput

Relative position of a managed topic.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
managedTopicId	String	ID of existing managed topic.	Required	32.0
position	Integer	Relative position of the managed topic, indicated by zero-indexed, ascending whole numbers.	Required	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedTopicPositionCollectionInput

ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput

The beginning tag for rich text markup.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`altText`	String	Alternative text for the `Hyperlink` segment.	Optional	45.0
`markupType`	`ConnectApi.MarkupType`	Type of rich text markup. • `Bold`—Bold tag. • `Code`—Code tag. • `Hyperlink`—Hyperlink anchor tag. • `Italic`—Italic tag. • `ListItem`—List item tag. • `OrderedList`—Ordered list tag. • `Paragraph`—Paragraph tag. • `Strikethrough`—Strikethrough tag. • `Underline`—Underline tag. • `UnorderedList`—Unordered list tag. Markup segments with a `markupType` of `Code` can include only text segments.	Required	35.0
`url`	String	URL for the `Hyperlink` segment. Supported hyperlink URLs start with `http://` or `https://`.	Required for `Hyperlink`	45.0

SEE ALSO:

Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput

The end tag for rich text markup.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`markupType`	`ConnectApi.MarkupType`	Type of rich text markup. • `Bold`—Bold tag. • `Code`—Code tag. • `Hyperlink`—Hyperlink anchor tag. • `Italic`—Italic tag. • `ListItem`—List item tag. • `OrderedList`—Ordered list tag. • `Paragraph`—Paragraph tag. • `Strikethrough`—Strikethrough tag. • `Underline`—Underline tag. • `UnorderedList`—Unordered list tag.	Required	35.0

SEE ALSO:

Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput

Include an @mention of a user or group in a feed post or comment. When creating a feed post or comment, you can include up to 25 mentions.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of the user or group to mention. To mention a user, use either `id` or `username`. You can't include both. To mention a group, you must use `id`.	28.0 Groups are available in 29.0.
`username`	String	User name of the user to mention. To mention a user, use either `id` or `username`. You can't include both.	38.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

Add rich messages to feed items and comments.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`messageSegments`	List<`ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput`>	List of message segments contained in the body	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedItemInput
- ConnectApi.CommentInput
- ConnectApi.AnnouncementInput

ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Used to add rich message segments to feed items and comments.

This class is abstract and has no public constructor. You can make an instance only of a subclass.

Superclass for:

- ConnectApi.EntityLinkSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.HashtagSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.InlineImageSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.LinkSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput
- ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput

Use the ConnectApiHelper repository on GitHub to simplify many of the tasks accomplished with ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput, such as posting with inline images, rich text, and mentions.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
type	ConnectApi.MessageSegmentType	The type of message segment. Values are: • EntityLink • FieldChange • FieldChangeName • FieldChangeValue • Hashtag • InlineImage • Link • MarkupBegin • MarkupEnd • Mention • MoreChanges • ResourceLink • Text	Required	23.0

SEE ALSO:

- Edit a Comment
- Edit a Feed Element
- Edit a Question Title and Post
- Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image
- ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation

List of inputs for creating fulfillment orders.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
fulfillmentOrders	List<ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation>	Each element contains the data to create one fulfillment order.	Required	50.0

ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesInputRepresentation

The FulfillmentOrders to create Invoices for.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`fulfillmentOrderIds`	List<String>	List of IDs of FulfillmentOrders to create Invoices for.	At least one ID is required.	52.0

ConnectApi.MuteCapabilityInput

Mute or unmute a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`isMutedByMe`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed element is muted for the context user. Default value is `false`.	Required	35.0

SEE ALSO:

setIsMutedByMe(communityId, feedElementId, isMutedByMe)

ConnectApi.NBAStrategyInput

A recommendation strategy.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`contextRecordId`	String	ID of the context record. For example, if the next best action is on a case detail page, the ID of the case.	Optional	45.0
`maxResults`	Integer	Maximum number of results. Valid values are from 1 to 25. The default is 3.	Optional	45.0
`strategyContext`	Map<String, String>	Variable and value mappings for the strategy.	Optional	45.0
`debugTrace`	Boolean	Specifies whether to return trace and debug information in the response (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, the default is `false`.	Optional	45.0

ConnectApi.NewUserAudienceCriteriaInput

Criteria for the new members type of custom recommendation audience.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`value`	Double	The maximum number of days since a user became a site member. For example, if you specify *30*, anyone who became a site member in the last 30 days is included in the new members audience.	Required	36.0

ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationInputRepresentation

Data to reserve inventory at one or more Omnichannel Inventory locations or location groups.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionRequestId`	String	A UUID that identifies the request. Use the action request IDs in response data to identify which requests succeeded or failed.	Required	51.0
`allowPartialReservations`	Boolean	When true, if the system can't create the entire reservation, then it attempts to create a partial reservation.		51.0
`createRecords`	List<`ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationSingleInputRepresentation`>	A list of product quantities and locations or location groups.	At least one element is required	51.0
`expirationSeconds`	Integer	A length of time in seconds. If the reservation is not fulfilled within this amount of time after the `reservationTime`, then it expires.		51.0
`externalRefId`	String	External reference ID.		51.0
`reservationTime`	String	The time at which to record the reservation. Example: 2020-07-24T21:13:00Z		51.0

ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationSingleInputRepresentation

A quantity of a product and an Omnichannel Inventory location or location group at which to reserve it.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`locationGroupIdentifier`	String	Identifier of the location group at which to reserve inventory.	Either locationGroupIdentifier or locationIdentifier is required, but not both	51.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
locationIdentifier	String	Identifier of the location at which to reserve inventory.	Either locationGroupIdentifier or locationIdentifier is required, but not both	51.0
quantity	Double	The quantity of the product to reserve.	Required	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of the product to reserve.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationInputRepresentation

A list of inventory reservations to fulfill.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
fulfillmentRecords	List<ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationSingleInputRepresentation>	A list of inventory reservations.	At least one element is required.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationSingleInputRepresentation

An inventory reservation to fulfill.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
actionRequestId	String	A UUID that identifies the request. Use the action request IDs in response data to identify which requests succeeded or failed.	Required	51.0
externalRefId	String	The external reference ID of the location that's fulfilling the reservation.	Optional	51.0
locationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location that's fulfilling the reservation.	Required	51.0
quantity	Double	The quantity being fulfilled.	Required	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of the product being fulfilled.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityInputRepresentation

Details of a request to retrieve inventory availability.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
locationGroupIdentifier	String	The identifier of a location group to retrieve inventory availability data for. Specifying this value retrieves inventory data for all locations belonging to this group.	Optional; can't combine with locationGroupIdentifiers or locationIdentifiers	51.0
locationGroupIdentifiers	List<String>	A list of up to 100 identifiers of location groups to retrieve inventory availability data for.	Optional; can't combine with locationGroupIdentifier or locationIdentifiers	51.0
locationIdentifiers	List<String>	A list of up to 100 identifiers of locations to retrieve inventory availability data for.	Optional; can't combine with locationGroupIdentifier or locationGroupIdentifiers	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of a product to retrieve inventory availability data for. Specifying a SKU with no locations or location groups returns availability data for that SKU at all inventory locations that are not assigned to location groups.	Optional; can't combine with stockKeepingUnits	51.0
stockKeepingUnits	List<String>	A list of up to 100 SKUs of products to retrieve inventory availability data for.	Optional; can't combine with stockKeepingUnit	51.0
useCache	Boolean	Whether to fetch the inventory data from the cache. Default value is true.	Optional	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationInputRepresentation

Details of one or more inventory reservations to release.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
releaseRecords	List<ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationSingleInputRepresentation>	List of inventory reservations to release.	At least one element is required.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationSingleInputRepresentation

A single inventory reservation to release.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionRequestId`	String	A UUID that identifies the request. Use the action request IDs in response data to identify which requests succeeded or failed.	Required	51.0
`externalRefId`	String	The external reference ID of the location or location group that has the reservation.	Optional	51.0
`locationGroupIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location group that has the reservation.	The identifier for a location or location group, but not both, is required.	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location that has the reservation.	The identifier for a location or location group, but not both, is required.	51.0
`quantity`	Double	The quantity of reserved inventory to release.	Required	51.0
`stockKeepingUnit`	String	The SKU of the product to release.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationInputRepresentation

A list of inventory reservation transfers and specifies whether a single failure cancels the entire list.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`allOrNothing TransferId`	String	Controls whether a single failed transfer cancels all other transfers in the `transferRecords` list. • To allow some transfers in the `transferRecords` list to succeed when others fail, don't include this property. • To cancel all the transfers in the `transferRecords` list when any of them fail, set this property to a UUID. The ID must be unique, but isn't otherwise used in this version.	Optional	51.0
`transferRecords`	List<`ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationSingleInputRepresentation`>	A list of inventory reservation transfers.	At least one element is required.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationSingleInputRepresentation

An inventory reservation transfer.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
actionRequestId	String	A UUID that identifies the request. Use the action request IDs in response data to identify which requests succeeded or failed.	Required	51.0
externalRefId	String	The external reference ID of the location receiving the transfer.	Optional	51.0
fromLocationGroupIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location group sending the reservation.	The identifier for a sending location or location group, but not both, is required	51.0
fromLocationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location sending the reservation.	The identifier for a sending location or location group, but not both, is required	51.0
ignoreAvailabilityCheck	Boolean	If true, force the transfer even if the receiving location doesn't have sufficient available inventory. The default value is false.	Optional	52.0
quantity	Double	The quantity of inventory being transferred.	Required	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of the product being transferred.	Required	51.0
toLocationGroupIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location group receiving the reservation.	The identifier for a receiving location or location group, but not both, is required	51.0
toLocationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location receiving the reservation.	The identifier for a receiving location or location group, but not both, is required	51.0

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryInputRepresentation

An OrderItemSummary and quantity.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
orderItemSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderItemSummary.	Required	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`quantity`	Double	Quantity to include.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupInputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInputRepresentation
- createFulfillmentOrders(fulfillmentOrderInput)

ConnectApi.OrderSummaryInputRepresentation

An order from which to create an OrderSummary, and whether it is managed in Salesforce Order Management. Optionally, you can specify an OrderNumber or Status.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	Specifies an OrderNumber to assign to the order summary.	Optional	50.0
`orderId`	String	ID of the original order.	Required	48.0
`orderLifeCycleType`	String	Specifies whether the order is managed in Salesforce Order Management or by an external system. It can have one of these values: • `MANAGED`—Managed in Salesforce Order Management. • `UNMANAGED`—Managed by an external system. If no value is specified, the default is `MANAGED`.	Optional	49.0
`status`	String	Specifies a status to assign to the order summary. The value must match one of the picklist values on the Status field of the OrderSummary object.	Optional	50.0

SEE ALSO:

- createOrderSummary(orderSummaryInput)

ConnectApi.PaymentGroupRequest

Payment group input consumed by a payment group service.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
createPaymentGroup	Boolean	Specifies whether Salesforce needs to create a payment group (true) or not (false).	Optional	50.0
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment group record.	Optional	50.0
id	String	ID of the payment group record.	Optional	50.0
sourceObjectId	String	Source object ID of the payment group record. Supports only OrderId.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationRequest

Payment method tokenization input consumed by the payment tokenization service.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
address	ConnectApi.AddressRequest	Address of the payment method.	Required	52.0
cardPaymentMethod	ConnectApi.CardPaymentMethodRequest	Object representation of the card payment method.	Required	52.0
paymentGatewayId	String	ID of the card payment method's payment gateway.	Required	52.0

ConnectApi.PhotoInput

Specify how to crop a photo that has already been uploaded.

Property	Type	Description	Available version
cropSize	Integer	The length, in pixels, of any edge of the crop square.	29.0
cropX	Integer	The position X, in pixels, from the left edge of the image to the start of the crop square. Top left is position (0,0).	29.0
cropY	Integer	The position Y, in pixels, from the top edge of the image to the start of the crop square. Top left is position (0,0).	29.0
fileId	String	18 character ID of an existing file. The key prefix must be 069 and the file must be an image and be smaller than 2 GB. Note: Images uploaded on the Group page and on the User page don't have file IDs and therefore can't be used.	25.0

Property	Type	Description	Available version
`versionNumber`	Integer	Version number of the existing content. If not provided, the latest version is used.	25.0

SEE ALSO:

- setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo)
- setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, groupId, photo, fileUpload)
- updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo)
- updateRecommendationDefinitionPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, recommendationDefinitionId, photo, fileUpload)
- setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo)
- setPhotoWithAttributes(communityId, userId, photo, fileUpload)

ConnectApi.PinCapabilityInput

Pin or unpin a feed element to a feed.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`entityId`	String	ID of the entity to pin or unpin. In version 41.0 and later, `entityId` must be a feed item ID. In version 41.0–42.0, only one feed item can be pinned per feed. In version 43.0 and later, three feed items can be pinned per feed.	Required	41.0
`isPinned`	Boolean	Specifies whether to pin (`true`) or unpin (`false`) the entity.	Required	41.0

ConnectApi.PollCapabilityInput

Create, update, or vote on a poll on a feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`choices`	List<String>	The choices used to create a new poll. You must specify 2–10 poll choices for each poll.	Required for creating a poll	32.0
`myChoiceId`	String	ID of an existing choice on the feed poll. Used to vote on an existing poll.	Required for voting on a poll	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.PricingInput

Pricing for multiple products.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`pricingLineItems`	List<`ConnectApi.PricingLineItemInput`>	Up to 500 line items for pricing.	Required	49.0

ConnectApi.PricingLineItemInput

Pricing line item.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`productId`	String	ID of the product to price.	Required	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.PricingInput

ConnectApi.ProductSearchGroupingInput

Grouping information for product search results.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`groupingOption`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchGroupingOption`	Grouping option for search results. Values are: • `NoGrouping`—Search results aren't grouped. • `VariationParent`—Search results are grouped by the variation parent.	Required	52.0
`topProductType`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchTopProductType`	Type of the top product to return for each product group in search results. Value is: • `VariationParent` If `NoGrouping` is specified for `groupingOption`, `topProductType` is ignored.	Optional	52.0

ConnectApi.ProductSearchInput

Product search.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`categoryId`	String	Category ID returns results for products in this category or its subcategories.	Required if `searchTerm` isn't specified	52.0
`fields`	List<String>	Product fields to return in search results. Search results include fields you have access to. If unspecified, all accessible fields are returned.	Optional	52.0
`grouping`	`ConnectApi.ProductSearchGroupingInput`	Specifies whether to group products in search results and how to group them.	Optional	52.0
`includePrices`	Boolean	Specifies whether to include prices for products in search results (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.	Optional	52.0
`includeQuantityRule`	Boolean	Specifies whether to include purchase quantity rule information for products in search results (`true`) or not (`false`). If unspecified, defaults to `false`.	Optional	52.0
`page`	Integer	Number of the page you want returned. Starts at 0. If you pass in `null` or 0, the first page is returned.	Optional	52.0
`pageSize`	Integer	Specifies the number of items per page. Valid values are from 1 through 200. If unspecified, the default is the value specified in Results per Page in **Search** > **Results Display Settings** > **Results Display Limits**.	Optional	52.0
`refinements`	List<`ConnectApi.RefinementInput`>	Refinements for search results.	Optional	52.0
`searchTerm`	String	A list of up to 32 space-separated search terms.	Required if `categoryId` isn't specified	52.0
`sortRuleId`	String	ID of the sort rule that specifies the order of products in the search results.	Optional	52.0

ConnectApi.QuantityWithSkuInputRepresentation

A quantity of a product.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`quantity`	Double	Quantity of the product.	Required	51.0
`stockKeepingUnit`	String	SKU of the product.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapabilityInput

Create or edit a question feed element or set the best answer of the existing question feed element.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`bestAnswerId`	String	A comment ID to use as a best answer for a question feed element. The best answer comment must already exist on the question feed element.	Required to update a feed element. Not supported when posting a feed element.	32.0
`questionTitle`	String	Title for a question feed element. To edit the title of a question, use `updateFeedElement(communityId, feedElementId, feedElement)`. Editing question titles is supported in version 34.0 and later.	Required to post a feed element. Not supported when updating a feed element.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- Edit a Question Title and Post
- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceInputRepresentation

An order recipient's geographic location and information about sets of inventory locations that can fulfill the order.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`deliveryCountryCode`	String	The country code of the order recipient.	Required	51.0
`deliveryPostalCode`	String	The postal code of the order recipient.	Required	51.0
`distanceUnit`	String	Specify *`mi`* or *`km`* to return average distances in miles or kilometers, respectively.		51.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`sortResult`	String	Specify *`ASC`* or *`DESC`* to rank the results by average shipping distance in ascending or descending order, respectively.		51.0
`targetLocations`	List<`ConnectApi.TargetLocationInputRepresentation`>	Each element is a set of inventory locations that can combine to fulfill the order.	At least one element is required	51.0

ConnectApi.ReadByCapabilityInput

Mark feed elements as read by the context user.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`isReadByMe`	Boolean	Specifies to mark the feed element as read (`true`) for the context user.	Required	40.0
`lastReadDateByMe`	Datetime	Specifies the last date, in ISO 8601 format, when the feed element is marked as read for the context user. If you don't specify a date or you specify a future date, the current system date is used.	Optional	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.RecipientEngagementContextInput

Context based on which the survey invitation is sent to a participant.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`recipientEngagementContext`	Map<String, String>	Map each recipient with the context based on which the survey invitation is emailed.	Required	50.0
`recipientId`	String	Participant ID with whom the engagement context should be associated.	Required	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceInput

A custom recommendation audience.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`criteria`	`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaInput`	The criteria for the custom recommendation audience type.	Optional If not specified when creating a recommendation audience, the audience criteria type defaults to custom list.	36.0
`memberOperationType`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceMemberOperationType`	**Important:** This property is available only in version 35.0. In version 36.0 and later, use ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteriaInput. The operation to carry out on the audience members. • `Add`—Adds specified members to the audience. • `Remove`—Removes specified members from the audience.	Required to update a recommendation audience Don't use or specify `null` to create a recommendation audience	35.0 only
`members`	List<String>	**Important:** This property is available only in version 35.0. In version 36.0 and later, use ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteriaInput. A collection of user IDs. When updating an audience, you can include up to 100 members. An audience can have up to 100,000 members, and each Experience Cloud site can have up to 100 audiences.	Required to update a recommendation audience Don't use or specify `null` to create a recommendation audience	35.0 only

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	The unique name of the custom recommendation audience.	Optional to update a recommendation audience Required to create a recommendation audience	35.0

SEE ALSO:

createRecommendationAudience(communityId, recommendationAudience)

ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionInput

A custom recommendation definition.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`actionUrl`	String	URL for acting on the custom recommendation, for example, the URL to join a group.	Required to create a recommendation definition Optional to update a recommendation definition	35.0
`actionUrlName`	String	Text label for the action URL in the user interface, for example, "Launch."	Required to create a recommendation definition Optional to update a recommendation definition	35.0
`explanation`	String	Explanation, or body, of the custom recommendation.	Required to create a recommendation definition Optional to update a recommendation definition	35.0
`name`	String	Name of the custom recommendation definition. The name is displayed in Setup.	Required to create a recommendation definition Optional to update a recommendation definition	35.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`title`	String	Title of the custom recommendation definition.	Optional	35.0

SEE ALSO:

createRecommendationDefinition(communityId, recommendationDefinition)

ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionInput

A reaction to a recommendation produced by a recommendation strategy.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`aiModel`	String	Reserved for future use.	Optional	47.0
`contextRecordId`	String	ID of the context record. For example, if the next best action is on a case detail page, the ID of the case.	Optional	45.0
`executionId`	String	ID of the original recommendation strategy execution.	Optional	45.0
`externalId`	String	External ID of the recommendation. This ID doesn't need to be a Salesforce 18-character ID. For example, it can be a product number from an external system.	Optional	46.0
`onBehalfOfId`	String	ID of the user or entity for which the reaction took place.	Optional	45.0
`reactionType`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionType`	Type of reaction to a recommendation. Values are: • `Accepted` • `Rejected`	Required	45.0
`recommendationMode`	String	Reserved for future use.	Optional	46.0
`recommendationScore`	Double	Reserved for future use.	Optional	46.0
`strategyName`	String	Name of the recommendation strategy.	Required	45.0
`targetActionId`	String	ID of the target action.	Optional	45.0
`targetActionName`	String	Name of the target action.	Required	45.0
`targetId`	String	ID of the recommendation that is being reacted to.	Required	45.0

ConnectApi.RecordCapabilityInput

Attach an existing knowledge article to a comment.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`recordId`	String	ID of the existing knowledge article to attach.	Required	42.0

ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundRequest

Referenced refund input.

Subclass of ConnectApi.RefundRequest.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`accountId`	String	ID of the account linked to the referenced refund request.	Optional	50.0
`amount`	Double	Amount refunded.	Required	50.0
`clientContext`	String	Context for payment APIs. Used for a payment caller to re-establish context.	Optional	50.0
`comments`	String	Optional comments for the refund.	Optional	50.0
`effectiveDate`	Datetime	Date when the refund becomes effective.	Optional	50.0
`paymentGroup`	`ConnectApi.PaymentGroupRequest`	Payment group details associated with the refund request.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.RefinementInput

Attribute-based refinement input for product search.

This class is abstract and is a superclass of ConnectApi.DistinctValueRefinementInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`attributeType`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchAttributeType`	Search attribute type. • `Custom` • `ProductAttribute` • `Standard`	Required	52.0
`nameOrId`	String	Developer name of the attribute. In version 52.0 and later, the ID of the attribute isn't supported.	Required	52.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetType`	Search facet type. Value is: • `DistinctValue`	Required	52.0

ConnectApi.RefundRequest

Refund input.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseRequest.

No additional properties.

Superclass of ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundRequest.

ConnectApi.RequestHeaderInput

An HTTP request header name and value pair.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	The name of the request header.	Required	33.0
`value`	String	The value of the request header.	Required	33.0

SEE ALSO:

Define an Action Link and Post with a Feed Element

ConnectApi.ReturnItemsInputRepresentation

Data about products and delivery charges to return.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`returnOrderItemDeliveryCharges`	List<`ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemDeliveryChargeInputRepresentation`>	List of ReturnOrderLineItems to return that represent delivery charges.	Optional	52.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
returnOrderItems	List<ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemInputRepresentation>	List of ReturnOrderLineItems to process that represent products, along with data about how to process them.	Required	52.0

SEE ALSO:

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderInputRepresentation

Data for creating a ReturnOrder and ReturnOrderLineItems.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderSummary containing the items to be returned. The OrderSummary's OrderLifeCycleType must be Managed.	Required	50.0
returnOrderLifeCycleType	String	The LifeCycleType of the ReturnOrder. Possible values are: • Managed—Process the ReturnOrder using the APIs and actions. It can generate change orders and affects financial fields and rollup calculations. • Unmanaged—The ReturnOrder is for tracking purposes only. It isn't involved in any financial calculations and doesn't generate any change orders. The system doesn't prevent the creation of duplicate ReturnOrderLineItems in an unmanaged ReturnOrder for the same OrderItem.	Required	51.0
returnOrderLineItems	List<ConnectApi.ReturnOrderLineItemInputRepresentation>	List of data for creating ReturnOrderLineItems.	At least one element is required	50.0
status	String	Status to assign the ReturnOrder. This value must match an entry in the ReturnOrder object's Status picklist.	Required	51.0

SEE ALSO:

createReturnOrder(returnOrderInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemInputRepresentation

ID of a ReturnOrderLineItem and instructions for updating it. After the update, the ReturnOrderLineItem is read-only. Any remaining quantity to be returned is added to a new ReturnOrderLineItem.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`quantityReceived`	Double	The quantity of the ReturnOrderLineItem that has been received. The value must be zero or greater. This value isn't used by any standard features, but is provided for use in customizations.	Required	52.0
`quantityRejected`	Double	The quantity of the ReturnOrderLineItem that has been rejected for return. The value must be zero or greater. This value isn't used by any standard features, but is provided for use in customizations.	Required	52.0
`quantityReturned`	Double	The quantity of the ReturnOrderLineItem that has been returned. The value must be greater than zero. If this value plus quantityToCancel is less than the expected return quantity, then the remaining quantity to be returned is added to a new ReturnOrderLineItem.	Required	52.0
`quantityToCancel`	Double	The quantity of the ReturnOrderLineItem to remove because it's not being returned. The value must be zero or greater. If this value plus quantityReturned is less than the expected return quantity, then the remaining quantity to be returned is added to a new ReturnOrderLineItem.	Required	52.0
`reasonForRejection`	String	The reason why the rejected quantity, if any, was rejected. This value isn't used by any standard features, but is provided for use in customizations.	Optional	52.0
`returnOrderLineItemId`	String	The ID of the ReturnOrderLineItem.	Required	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReturnItemsInputRepresentation

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemDeliveryChargeInputRepresentation

ID of a ReturnOrderLineItem representing a delivery charge.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`returnOrderLineItemId`	String	ID of a ReturnOrderLineItem to return.	Required	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReturnItemsInputRepresentation

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderLineItemInputRepresentation

Data for creating a ReturnOrderLineItem.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`canReduceShipping`	Boolean	Whether the associated shipping charge can be refunded.	Required	50.0
`orderItemSummaryId`	String	ID of the associated OrderItemSummary.	Required	50.0
`quantityExpected`	Double	Quantity expected to be returned.	Required	50.0
`quantityReceived`	Double	Quantity already physically returned.	Optional	50.0
`reasonForReturn`	String	Reason for the return. The value must match an entry in the ReturnOrderLineItem object's ReasonForReturn picklist.	Optional	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderInputRepresentation

createReturnOrder(returnOrderInput)

ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationInput

A scheduled custom recommendation.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`channel`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`	A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are: • `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by	Optional for creating a scheduled recommendation If not specified, defaults to `DefaultChannel`.	36.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear. • `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder. Use these channel values; you can't rename or create other channels.	Don't use when updating a scheduled recommendation	
`enabled`	Boolean	Indicates whether scheduling is enabled. If `true`, the custom recommendation is enabled and appears in Experience Cloud sites. If `false`, custom recommendations in feeds in Salesforce mobile web aren't removed, but no new custom recommendations appear. In Customer Service and Partner Central sites, disabled custom recommendations no longer appear.	Optional	35.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`rank`	Integer	Relative rank of the scheduled custom recommendation indicated by ascending whole numbers starting with 1. Setting the rank is comparable to an insertion into an ordered list. The scheduled custom recommendation is inserted into the position specified by the `rank`. The `rank` of all the scheduled custom recommendations after it is pushed down. See Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example. If the specified `rank` is larger than the size of the list, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list. The `rank` of the scheduled custom recommendation is the size of the list, instead of the one specified. If a `rank` is not specified, the scheduled custom recommendation is put at the end of the list.	Optional	35.0
`recommendationAudienceId`	String	ID of the audience for this scheduled custom recommendation.When updating a scheduled custom recommendation, specify `ALL` to remove the association between a custom recommendation audience and a scheduled custom recommendation.	Optional	35.0
`recommendationDefinitionId`	String	ID of the custom recommendation definition that this scheduled recommendation schedules.	Required to create a scheduled recommendation You can't specify a `recommendationDefinitionId` when updating a scheduled recommendation.	35.0

Ranking scheduled custom recommendations example

If you have these scheduled custom recommendations:

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1

Scheduled Recommendations	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationB	2
ScheduledRecommendationC	3

And you include this information in the Scheduled Custom Recommendation Input:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationD	2

The result is:

Scheduled Recommendation	Rank
ScheduledRecommendationA	1
ScheduledRecommendationD	2
ScheduledRecommendationB	3
ScheduledRecommendationC	4

SEE ALSO:

createScheduledRecommendation(communityId, scheduledRecommendation)

ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPatternInput

Shifts from a pattern.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`schedulingEndDate`	String	Scheduling end date in YYYY-MM-DD format. Provide `schedulingEndDate` or `schedulingOccurrences`. Don't provide both.	Required if `schedulingOccurrences` isn't provided	51.0
`schedulingOccurrences`	Integer	Number of scheduling occurrences. Provide `schedulingEndDate` or `schedulingOccurrences`. Don't provide both.	Required if `schedulingEndDate` isn't provided	51.0
`schedulingStartDate`	String	Scheduling start date in YYYY-MM-DD format.	Required	51.0
`serviceResourceId`	String	ID of the service resource to assign shifts to.	Optional	51.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`serviceTerritoryId`	String	ID of the service territory to assign shifts to.	Optional	51.0
`status`	String	Status of the shifts. Default values are: • `Confirmed` • `Published` • `Tentative` Additional status values can be created.	Optional	52.0

ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalInput

List of social post ids and the action to approve or reject publishing them.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`isApproved`	Boolean	Specifies whether to approve (`true`) or reject (`false`) publishing the social posts. If unspecified, defaults to `false`.	Optional	46.0
`socialPostIdList`	List<String>	A list of up to 200 social post IDs.	Required	46.0

ConnectApi.StatusCapabilityInput

Change the status of a feed post or comment.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`feedEntityStatus`	`ConnectApi.FeedEntityStatus`	Status of the feed post or comment. Values are: • `Draft`—The feed post isn't published but is visible to the author and users with Modify All Data or View All Data permission. Comments can't be drafts. • `PendingReview`—The feed post or comment isn't approved yet and therefore isn't published or visible. • `Published`—The feed post or comment is approved and visible. Posts that have a status of `PendingReview` or `Published` can't be changed to a status of `Draft` and vice versa.	Required	37.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.StreamSubscriptionInput

An entity to subscribe to for a Chatter feed stream.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`entityId`	String	The ID of any feed-enabled entity, such as a group, record, or user, that the context user can access. When subscribed, the entity's feed is included in the feed stream.	Required	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterStreamInput

ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailInput

Survey invitation email.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`allowGuestUserResponse`	Boolean	Specifies whether participants who don't have a Salesforce account can respond (`true`) or not (`false`).	Required	50.0
`allowParticipantsAccessTheirResponse`	Boolean	Specifies whether participants can see their responses (`true`) or not (`false`).	Required	50.0
`associateRecordsWithRecipients`	List<`ConnectApi.AssociateRecordsWithRecipientInput`>	Maps each recipient with another record that must be associated with the recipient's survey invitation.	Optional	50.0
`body`	String	Content of the email. Specify the email body in case you don't specify an email template. The email body must contain one of the following merge fields: • To embed a link to launch the survey: [[SURVEY_INVITATION_URL]] • To embed a survey question: {{{SurveyQuestion.QuestionName}}} and {{{SurveyQuestion.QuestionHtmlContent}}}	Optional	50.0
`collectAnonymousResponse`	Boolean	Specifies whether participants can respond anonymously (`true`) or not (`false`).	Required	50.0
`communityId`	String	ID of the site that's used to open the survey for users outside your org.	Optional	50.0
`emailTemplateId`	String	ID of the Lightning email template that's used to send the survey invitation. The template must contain the required merge fields that embed either the survey link or a question in the email. Only Lightning email templates are used to send survey invitations.	Optional	50.0
`fromEmailAddress`	String	Email ID of the user or the org-wide email address associated with the user's profile.	Required	50.0
`invitationExpirationDate`	Datetime	Date on which the survey invitation expires.	Optional	50.0
`invitationOwner`	String	ID of the owner of the survey invitation records.	Optional	50.0
`isPersonalInvitation`	Boolean	Specifies whether an unique invitation is created for each participant (`true`) or not (`false`). When a participant responds using a personal invitation, the response record is associated with the participant's Salesforce record.	Required	50.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
recipientEngagementContexts	List<ConnectApi.RecipientEngagementContextInput>	Maps each recipient with the context based on which the survey invitation is emailed.	Optional	50.0
recipients	List<String>	List of up to 300 IDs of leads, contacts, or users to whom the survey invitation is emailed.	Required	50.0
shareInvitationsWith	List<String>	IDs of the users with whom the survey invitation records must be shared. The invitation records are shared with Read access.	Optional	50.0
subject	String	Subject of the email. Specify the subject in case you don't specify an email template.	Optional	50.0
surveyQuestionIds	List<String>	IDs of the questions that are embedded in the email. You can send an email invitation for questions of the following types: Net Promoter Score (NPS), rating, and score.	Optional	50.0

ConnectApi.TargetCollectionInput

Collection of targets to create.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
targets	List<ConnectApi.TargetInput>	List of targets to create.	Required	48.0

ConnectApi.TargetCollectionUpdateInput

Collection of targets to update.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
targets	List<ConnectApi.TargetUpdateInput>	List of targets to update.	Required	48.0

ConnectApi.TargetLocationInputRepresentation

A set of inventory locations that together can fulfill an order.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`locations`	List<`ConnectApi.LocationInputRepresentation`>	A list of locations with information about their country and postal codes.	Required	51.0

ConnectApi.TargetInput

Target to create.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`audienceId`	String	ID of the audience to assign to the target.	Required	48.0
`groupName`	String	Group name of the target. Groups bundle related target and audience pairs. You can have up to 2,000 groups and 500 targets per group. To determine the group name for targets of type `ExperienceVariation`, see Personalization Target Developer and Group Names in the *Experience Cloud Developer Guide*.	Required	48.0
`priority`	Integer	Priority of the target. Within a group, priority determines which target is returned if the user matches more than one audience.	Optional	48.0
`publishStatus`	`ConnectApi.PublishStatus`	The publish status of the target. Values are: • `Draft` • `Live` We recommend setting the publish status to `Draft`. If you specify `Live`, your changes revert after you publish the site.	Optional	48.0
`targetType`	String	Type of target, indicating the nature of the data being targeted. Supported values include: • `ExperienceVariation` (version 48.0 and later) • Custom object API names, such as ***`CustomObjectName`***`__c` (version 48.0 and later) • `NavigationLinkSet` (version 49.0 and later) • `Topic` (version 49.0 and later)	Required	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
		• `CollaborationGroup` (version 49.0 and later) • `KnowledgeArticle` (version 49.0 and later) • `ContentDocument` (version 49.0 and later) • `ManagedContent` (version 49.0 and later) • `Report` (version 49.0 and later) • `Dashboard` (version 49.0 and later) You can have up to 2,500 `ExperienceVariation` targets and 25,000 record targets.		
`targetValue`	String	Value of the target. If `targetType` is `ExperienceVariation`, `targetValue` is the developer name of the experience variation. If `targetType` is ***`CustomObjectName`***`__c`, `targetValue` is the ID of the custom object. To determine the developer name for targets of type `ExperienceVariation`, see Personalization Target Developer and Group Names in the *Experience Cloud Developer Guide*.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.TargetCollectionInput

ConnectApi.TargetUpdateInput

Target to update.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`audienceId`	String	ID of the audience to assign to the target.	Required if `priority` isn't specified. Otherwise, Optional	48.0

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`priority`	Integer	Priority of the target. Within a group, priority determines which target is returned if the user matches more than one audience.	Required if `audienceId` isn't specified. Otherwise, Optional	48.0
`targetId`	String	ID of the target to update.	Required	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.TargetCollectionUpdateInput

ConnectApi.TextSegmentInput

Include a text segment in a feed item or comment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`text`	String	Plain text for this segment. If hashtags or links are detected in *`text`*, they are included in the comment as hashtag and link segments. Mentions are not detected in *`text`* and are not separated out of the text. Mentions require `ConnectApi.MentionSegmentInput`.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

Edit a Comment

Edit a Feed Element

Edit a Question Title and Post

Post a Rich-Text Feed Element with Inline Image

ConnectApi.MessageBodyInput

ConnectApi.TopicInput

Update a topic's name or description or merge topics.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the topic	29.0
`idsToMerge`	List<String>	List of up to five secondary topic IDs to merge with the primary topic If any of these secondary topics are managed topics, they lose their topic type, topic images, and children topics. Their feed items are reassigned to the primary topic.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	Name of the topic Use this property to change only the capitalization and spacing of the topic name.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

updateTopic(communityId, topicId, topic)

ConnectApi.TopicNamesInput

A list of topic names to replace currently assigned topics. Also a list of suggested topics to assign.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`topicNames`	List<String>	A list of up to 10 topic names for a feed item or 100 topic names for a record.	Required	35.0
`topicSuggestions`	List<String>	A list of suggested topics to assign to a record or feed item to improve future topic suggestions.	Optional	37.0

SEE ALSO:

reassignTopicsByName(communityId, recordId, topicNames)

ConnectApi.ArticleTopicAssignmentJobInput

ConnectApi.TopicsCapabilityInput

Assign topics to a feed element.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`contextTopicName`	String	Name of the parent topic in the site to which the feed element belongs.	Optional	38.0
`topics`	List<String>	List of topics to assign to the feed element.	Required	38.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilitiesInput

ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapabilityInput

Upvote or downvote a feed element or a comment.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`vote`	`ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`	Type of vote for a feed element or comment. Values are: • `Down` • `None` • `Up`	Required	41.0

ConnectApi.UserInput

Update a user's About Me information.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`aboutMe`	String	The `aboutMe` property of a `ConnectApi.UserDetail` output object. This property populates the About Me section of the user profile, which is visible to all members of an Experience Cloud site or org.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

updateUser(communityId, userId, userInput)

ConnectApi.WishlistInput

Wishlist to create.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	Name of the wishlist.	Required	49.0
`products`	List<`ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput`>	List of products to add to the wishlist.	Optional	49.0

ConnectApi.WishlistItemInput

Item to update or add to a wishlist.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`productId`	String	ID of the product to update or add to the wishlist.	Required	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.WishlistInput

ConnectApi.WishlistUpdateInput

Wishlist name to update.

Property	Type	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
`name`	String	Wishlist name to update.	Required	50.0

Retired `ConnectApi` Input Classes

These `ConnectApi` input classes are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectApi.CanvasAttachmentInput
Used to attach a canvas app to a feed item.

ConnectApi.ContentAttachmentInput
Used to attach existing content to a comment or feed item.

ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput
Used to attach a file to a feed item.

ConnectApi.LinkAttachmentInput
Add links to a feed item.

ConnectApi.NewFileAttachmentInput
Attach a new file to a feed item.

ConnectApi.PollAttachmentInput
Attach a poll to a feed item.

ConnectApi.CanvasAttachmentInput

Used to attach a canvas app to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.CanvasCapabilityInput.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Optional. The description of the canvas app.	29.0–31.0
`developerName`	String	The developer name (API name) of the canvas app	29.0–31.0
`height`	String	Optional. The height of the canvas app in pixels. Default height is 200 pixels.	29.0–31.0
`namespacePrefix`	String	Optional. The namespace prefix of the Developer Edition organization in which the canvas app was created.	29.0–31.0
`parameters`	String	Optional. Parameters passed to the canvas app in JSON format. Example: `{'isUpdated'='true'}`	29.0–31.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	Optional. A URL to a thumbnail image for the canvas app. Maximum dimensions are 120x120 pixels.	29.0–31.0
`title`	String	The title of the link used to call the canvas app.	29.0–31.0

ConnectApi.ContentAttachmentInput

Used to attach existing content to a comment or feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`contentDocumentId`	String	ID of the existing content.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput

Used to attach a file to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityInput.

This class is abstract and has no public constructor. You can make an instance only of a subclass.

Superclass for:

- ConnectApi.CanvasAttachmentInput
- ConnectApi.ContentAttachmentInput
- ConnectApi.LinkAttachmentInput
- ConnectApi.NewFileAttachmentInput
- ConnectApi.PollAttachmentInput

ConnectApi.LinkAttachmentInput

Add links to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.LinkCapabilityInput.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to be used for the link	28.0–31.0
`urlName`	String	Title of the link	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.NewFileAttachmentInput

Attach a new file to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.ContentCapabilityInput.

The actual binary file, that is the attachment, is provided as part of the BinaryInput in the method that takes this attachment input, such as `postFeedItem` or `postComment`.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the file to be uploaded.	28.0–31.0
`title`	String	The title of the file. This value is required and is also used as the file name. For example, if the title is My Title, and the file is a .txt file, the file name is My Title.txt.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.PollAttachmentInput

Attach a poll to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, use ConnectApi.PollCapabilityInput.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentInput

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`pollChoices`	List<String>	The text labels for the poll items. Polls must contain between 2 to 10 poll choices.	28.0–31.0

`ConnectApi` Output Classes

Most `ConnectApi` methods return instances of `ConnectApi` output classes.

All properties are read-only, except for instances of output classes created within test code.

All output classes are concrete unless marked abstract in this documentation.

All concrete output classes have no-argument constructors that you can invoke only from test code. See Testing ConnectApi Code.

ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem

A cart item.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.CartItem
- ConnectApi.CartItemWithoutPrice

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`cartId`	String	ID of the cart.	49.0
`cartItemId`	String	ID of the item.	49.0
`messagesSummary`	`ConnectApi.CartMessagesSummary`	Messages summary for the item.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the item.	
`productDetails`	`ConnectApi.CartItemProduct`	Summary of the product details.	49.0
`productId`	String	ID of the product.	49.0
`quantity`	String	Quantity of the item.	49.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CartItemType`	Type of item in a cart. Values are: • `DeliveryCharge` • `Product`	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemResult

ConnectApi.AbstractContentHubItemType

An item type associated with a repository folder.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail
- ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`contentStreamSupport`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubStreamSupport`	Support for content streaming. Values are: • `ContentStreamAllowed` • `ContentStreamNotAllowed` • `ContentStreamRequired`	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the item type.	39.0
`displayName`	String	Display name of the item type.	39.0
`id`	String	ID of the item type.	39.0
`isVersionable`	Boolean	Indicates whether the item type can have versions.	39.0
`url`	String	URL to the detailed information of the item type.	39.0

ConnectApi.AbstractDirectoryEntrySummary

A directory entry with summary information.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.RepositoryGroupSummary
- ConnectApi.RepositoryUserSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`domain`	String	Domain of the directory entry.	39.0
`email`	String	Email of the directory entry.	39.0
`id`	String	ID of the directory entry.	39.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubDirectoryEntryType`	Type of directory entry. Values are: • `GroupEntry` • `UserEntry`	39.0

ConnectApi.AbstractExtensionInformation

Extension information.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of .ConnectApi.LightningExtensionInformation

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`extensionInformationType`	`ConnectApi.ExtensionInformationType`	Information type of the extension. Values are: • `Lightning`	40.0

ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayCommonResponse

Payment gateway response fields commonly used in payment services.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
gatewayAvsCode	String	Used to verify the address mapped to a payment method when the payments platform requests tokenization from the payment gateway.	50.0
gatewayDate	Datetime	Date when the notification occurred. Some gateways don't send this value.	50.0
gatewayMessage	String	Error messages that the gateway returned for the notification request. Maximum length of 255 characters.	50.0
gatewayResultCode	String	Gateway-specific result code. You can map the result code to a Salesforce-specific result code. Maximum length of 64 characters.	50.0
gatewayResultCodeDescription	String	A description of the gateway-specific result code that a payment gateway returned. Maximum length of 1,000 characters.	50.0
salesforceResultCode	String	The Salesforce result code for the gateway result code.	50.0

ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse

Payment gateway response fields used in sale, authorization, and capture services.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayCommonResponse.

Super class of:

- ConnectApi.AuthReversalGatewayResponse
- ConnectApi.AuthorizationGatewayResponse
- ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalResponse
- ConnectApi.CaptureGatewayResponse
- ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationGatewayResponse
- ConnectApi.RefundGatewayResponse

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
gatewayReferenceDetails	String	Provides information about the gateway communication.	50.0
gatewayReferenceNumber	String	Unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.	50.0

ConnectApi.AbstractMessageBody

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.FeedBody
- ConnectApi.MessageBody

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isRichText`	Boolean	Indicates whether the body is rich text.	35.0
`messageSegments`	List<`ConnectApi.MessageSegment`>	List of message segments	28.0
`text`	String	Display-ready text. Use this text if you don't want to process the message segments.	28.0

ConnectApi.AbstractNBAAction

A recommended action of recommendation strategy.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.NBAFlowAction.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`parameters`	List<`ConnectApi.NBAActionParameter`>	List of parameters to pass to the action.	45.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.NBAActionType`	Type of action. Values are: • `Flow`—Automated process tool with multiple subtypes.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.NBARecommendation

ConnectApi.AbstractNBATarget

A recommendation target of a recommendation strategy.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.NBANativeRecommendation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
type	ConnectApi.NBATargetType	Type of target. Values are: • Recommendation	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.NBARecommendation

ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation

A Chatter, custom, or static recommendation.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.EntityRecommendation
- ConnectApi.NonEntityRecommendation

  ConnectApi.NonEntityRecommendation isn't used in version 34.0 and later. In version 34.0 and later, ConnectApi.EntityRecommendation is used for all recommendations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
explanation	ConnectApi.RecommendationExplanation	The Chatter, custom, or static recommendation explanation.	32.0
platformActionGroup	ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup	A platform action group instance with state appropriate for the context user.	34.0
recommendationType	ConnectApi.RecommendationType	Specifies the type of record being recommended.	32.0
url	String	URL for the Chatter, custom, or static recommendation.	34.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationsCapability

ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection

ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendationExplanation

Explanation for a Chatter recommendation.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.RecommendationExplanation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`summary`	String	Summary explanation for the Chatter recommendation.	32.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationExplanationType`	Indicates the reason for the Chatter recommendation. • `ArticleHasRelatedContent`—Articles with related content to a context article. • `ArticleViewedTogether`—Articles often viewed together with the article that the context user just viewed. • `ArticleViewedTogetherWithViewers`—Articles often viewed together with other records that the context user views. • `Custom`—Custom recommendations. • `FilePopular`—Files with many followers or views. • `FileViewedTogether`—Files often viewed at the same time as other files that the context user views. • `FollowedTogetherWithFollowees`—Users often followed together with other records that the context user follows. • `GroupMembersFollowed`—Groups with members that the context user follows. • `GroupNew`—Recently created groups. • `GroupPopular`—Groups with many active members. • `ItemViewedTogether`—Records often viewed at the same time as other records that the context user views. • `PopularApp`—Applications that are popular. • `RecordOwned`—Records that the context user owns. • `RecordParentOfFollowed`—Parent records of records that the context user follows. • `RecordViewed`—Records that the context user recently viewed. • `TopicFollowedTogether`—Topics often followed together with the record that the context user just followed. • `TopicFollowedTogetherWithFollowees`—Topics often followed together with other records that the context user follows.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `TopicPopularFollowed`—Topics with many followers. • `TopicPopularLiked`—Topics on posts that have many likes. • `UserDirectReport`—Users who report to the context user. • `UserFollowedTogether`—Users often followed together with the record that the context user just followed. • `UserFollowsSameUsers`—Users who follow the same users as the context user. • `UserManager`—The context user's manager. • `UserNew`—Recently created users. • `UserPeer`—Users who report to the same manager as the context user. • `UserPopular`—Users with many followers. • `UserViewingSameRecords`—Users who view the same records as the context user.	

ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField

A field on a record.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.BlankRecordField
- ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField

Message segments in a feed item are typed as `ConnectApi.MessageSegment`. Feed item capabilities are typed as `ConnectApi.FeedItemCapability`. Record fields are typed as `ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField`. These classes are all abstract and have several concrete subclasses. At runtime you can use `instanceof` to check the concrete types of these objects and then safely proceed with the corresponding downcast. When you downcast, you must have a default case that handles unknown subclasses.

Important: The composition of a feed may change between releases. Your code should always be prepared to handle instances of unknown subclasses.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	String	Type of the field. One of these values: • `Address` • `Blank` • `Boolean` • `Compound` • `CreatedBy` • `Date` • `DateTime` • `Email` • `LastModifiedBy` • `Location` • `Name` • `Number` • `Percent` • `Phone` • `Picklist` • `Reference` • `Text` • `Time`	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecordViewSection

ConnectApi.AbstractRecordView

A view of any record in the org, including a custom object record. This object is used if a specialized object, such as User or ChatterGroup, is not available for the record type.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.RecordSummary
- ConnectApi.RecordView

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	The localized name of the record.	29.0

ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFile

A repository file.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryItem.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail
- ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`checkinComment`	String	Checkin comment of the file.	39.0
`contentBody`	String	Text of the file's content if available, otherwise `null`.	43.0
`contentSize`	Integer	Length in bytes of the content of the file.	39.0
`downloadUrl`	String	URL to the repository file content.	39.0
`external ContentUrl`	String	URL of this file's content in the external system.	39.0
`external DocumentUrl`	String	URL of this file in the external system.	39.0
`external FilePermission Information`	`ConnectApi. ExternalFile PermissionInformation`	External file permission information, such as available groups, available permission types, and current sharing status, or `null` if `includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo` is `false`.	39.0
`mimeType`	String	Mime type of the file.	39.0
`previewUrl Thumbnail`	String	URL to the thumbnail preview (240 x 180 PNG).	39.0
`previewUrl ThumbnailBig`	String	URL to the big thumbnail preview (720 x 480 PNG).	39.0
`previewUrl ThumbnailTiny`	String	URL to the tiny thumbnail preview (120 x 90 PNG).	39.0
`previewsUrl`	String	URL to the previews.	39.0
`title`	String	Title of the file.	39.0
`versionId`	String	ID of the file version in the external system.	39.0

ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFolder

A repository folder.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryItem.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail
- ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`externalFolderUrl`	String	URL of this folder in the external system.	39.0
`folderItemsUrl`	String	URL that lists the files and folders in this folder.	39.0
`path`	String	Absolute path of the folder in the external system.	39.0

ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryItem

A repository item.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFile
- ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFolder

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdBy`	String	Name of the user who created the item.	39.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	Date the item was created.	39.0
`description`	String	Description of the Item.	39.0
`id`	String	ID of the item.	39.0
`itemTypeUrl`	String	URL to the item type information.	39.0
`modifiedBy`	String	Name of the user who last modified the item.	39.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	Date the item was last modified.	39.0
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif`	Motif of the item.	39.0
`name`	String	Name of the item.	39.0
`repository`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Item external repository.	39.0
`type`	String	Item type, `file` or `folder`.	39.0
`url`	String	The URL to the item.	39.0

ConnectApi.AbstractUserMissionActivity

User activity associated with missions.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.UserMission
- ConnectApi.UserMissionActivity

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`activityCount`	Integer	Number of mission activities of the specified type for the user.	45.0
`activityType`	String	Type of mission activity for a user. Values are: • `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question. • `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment. • `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer. • `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question. • `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post. • `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment. • `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question. • `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post. • `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post. • `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityCollection

ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinition

The definition of an action link. Action link definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actionUrl`	String	The action link URL. For example, a `Ui` action link URL is a Web page. A `Download` action link URL is a link to the file to download. `Ui` and `Download` action link URLs are provided to clients. An `Api` or	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		`ApiAsync` action link URL is a REST resource. `Api` and `ApiAsync` action link URLs aren't provided to clients. Links to Salesforce can be relative. All other links must be absolute and start with `https://`.	
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`excludedUserId`	String	ID of a single user to exclude from performing the action. If you specify an `excludedUserId`, you can't specify a `userId`.	33.0
`groupDefault`	Boolean	`true` if this action is the default action link in the action link group; `false` otherwise. There can be only one default action link per action link group. The default action link gets distinct styling in the Salesforce UI.	33.0
`headers`	List<`ConnectApi.RequestHeader`>	The request headers for the `Api` and `ApiAsync` action link types.	33.0
`id`	String	The 18-character ID for the action link definition.	33.0
`label`	String	A custom label to display on the action link button. A `label` value can be set only in an action link template. Action links have four statuses: NewStatus, PendingStatus, SuccessStatus, and FailedStatus. These strings are appended to the label for each status: • *label* • *label* Pending • *label* Success • *label* Failed For example, if the value of `label` is "See Example," the values of the four action link states are: See Example, See Example Pending, See Example Success, and See Example Failed. An action link can use either `label` or `labelKey` to generate label names, it can't use both. If `label` has a value, the value of `labelKey` is `None`. If `labelKey` has a value other than `None`, the value of `label` is `null`.	34.0
`labelKey`	String	Key for the set of labels to show in the user interface. A set includes labels for these states: NewStatus, PendingStatus, SuccessStatus, FailedStatus. For example, if you use the `Approve` key, you get these labels: Approve, Pending, Approved, Failed.	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		For a complete list of label keys, see Action Links Labels in the *Connect REST API Developer Guide*.	
`method`	`ConnectApi.HttpRequestMethod`	The HTTP method. One of these values: • `HttpDelete`—Returns HTTP 204 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpGet`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. • `HttpHead`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPatch`—Returns HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPost`—Returns HTTP 201 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. Exceptions are the batch posting resources and methods, which return HTTP 200 on success. • `HttpPut`—Return HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty.	33.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`requestBody`	String	The request body for `Api` and `ApiAsync` action link types. Note: Escape quotation mark characters in the `requestBody` value.	33.0
`requires Confirmation`	Boolean	`true` to require the user to confirm the action; `false` otherwise.	33.0
`templateId`	String	The ID of the action link template from which to instantiate this action link. If the action link isn't associated with a template, the value is `null`.	33.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.ActionLinkType`	Defines the type of action link. Values are: • `Api`—The action link calls a synchronous API at the action URL. Salesforce sets the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or `FailedStatus` based on the HTTP status code returned by your server. • `ApiAsync`—The action link calls an asynchronous API at the action URL. The action remains in a `PendingStatus` state until a third party makes a request to	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		`/connect/action-links/`***`actionLinkId`*** to set the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or `FailedStatus` when the asynchronous operation is complete. • `Download`—The action link downloads a file from the action URL. • `Ui`—The action link takes the user to a web page at the action URL. Note: Invoking `ApiAsync` action links from an app requires a call to set the status. However, there isn't currently a way to set the status of an action link using Apex. To set the status, use Connect REST API. See the Action Link resource in the *Connect REST API Developer Guide* for more information.	
`userId`	String	The ID of the user who can execute the action. If not specified or `null`, any user can execute the action. If you specify a `userId`, you can't specify an `excludedUserId`.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition

ConnectApi.ActionLinkDiagnosticInfo

Any diagnostic information that may exist for an executed action link. Diagnostic info is provided only for users who can access the action link.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`diagnosticInfo`	String	Any diagnostic information returned when an action link is executed. Diagnostic information is provided only for users who can access the action link.	33.0
`url`	String	The URL for this action link diagnostic information.	33.0

ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinition

The definition of an action link group. Information in the action link group definition can be sensitive to a third party (for example, OAuth bearer token headers). For this reason, only calls made from the Apex namespace that created the action link group definition can read, modify, or delete the definition. In addition, the user making the call must have created the definition or have View All Data permission.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actionLinks`	List<`ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinition`>	A collection of action link definitions that make up the action link group. Within an action link group, action links are displayed in the order listed in the `actionLinks` property of the `ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput` class. Within a feed item, action link groups are displayed in the order specified in the `actionLinkGroupIds` property of the `ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput` class.	33.0
`category`	`ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroupCategory`	Indicates the priority and location of the action links. Values are: • `Primary`—The action link group is displayed in the body of the feed element. • `Overflow`—The action link group is displayed in the overflow menu of the feed element.	33.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`executionsAllowed`	`ConnectApi.ActionLinkExecutionsAllowed`	Defines the number of times an action link can be executed. Values are: • `Once`—An action link can be executed only once across all users. • `OncePerUser`—An action link can be executed only once for each user. • `Unlimited`—An action link can be executed an unlimited number of times by each user. If the action link's `actionType` is `Api` or `ApiAsync`, you can't use this value.	33.0
`expirationDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, that represents the date and time this action group expires and can no longer be executed. If the value is `null`, there isn't an expiration date.	33.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the action link group definition.	33.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`templateId`	String	The ID of the action link group template from which to instantiate this action link group, or `null` if this group isn't associated with a template.	33.0
`url`	String	The URL for this action link group definition.	33.0

ConnectApi.ActivitySharingResult

The results of sharing a captured email or event.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`success`	Boolean	Whether the share operation succeeded or not.	39.0

ConnectApi.Actor

Actor.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.ActorWithId
- ConnectApi.RecommendedObject
- ConnectApi.UnauthenticatedUser

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	Name of the actor, such as the group name.	28.0
`type`	String	One of the following: • `file` • `group` • `recommendedObject` (version 34.0 and later) • `unauthenticateduser` • `user` • *`record type name`*—the name of the record type, such as `myCustomObject__c` or Account	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CaseCommentCapability
ConnectApi.EntityRecommendation
ConnectApi.EditCapability
ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary
ConnectApi.FeedItem
ConnectApi.FeedItemSummary
ConnectApi.Subscription

ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Actor with ID.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of: ConnectApi.Actor

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AbstractRecordView
- ConnectApi.ArticleSummary
- ConnectApi.ChatterGroup
- ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository
- ConnectApi.File
- ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPost
- ConnectApi.User

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	Actor's 18-character ID	28.0
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif`	An icon that identifies the actor as a user, group, file, or custom object. The icon isn't the user or group photo, and it isn't a preview of the file. The motif can also contain the object's base color.	28.0
`mySubscription`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	If the context user is following the item, this contains information about the subscription, else returns `null`.	28.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL for the resource	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElement
ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary
ConnectApi.GroupRecord
ConnectApi.MentionSegment
ConnectApi.RecordSummaryList

ConnectApi.Address

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`city`	String	Name of the city	28.0
`country`	String	Name of the country	28.0
`formattedAddress`	String	Formatted address per the locale of the context user	28.0
`state`	String	Name of the state, province, or so on	28.0
`street`	String	Street number	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`zip`	String	Zip or postal code	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany
- ConnectApi.DatacloudContact
- ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation

Output representation of the financial changes for an adjust items action. For a preview action, these values are the expected output. For a submit action, these values are the actual output.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changeBalances`	`ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation`	Expected (for preview) or actual (for submit) financial values for the price adjustment action. Most of the values match the change order values. If two change orders are returned, then these values combine them. The sign of a value in this output is the opposite of the corresponding value on a change order record. For example, a discount is a positive value in `changeBalances` and a negative value on a change order record.	49.0
`orderSummaryId`	String	ID of the OrderSummary.	49.0
`postFulfillmentChangeOrderId`	String	ID of the change Order that holds the financial changes applicable to order products that have been fulfilled. For an adjustPreview call, this value is always null.	49.0
`preFulfillmentChangeOrderId`	String	ID of the change Order that holds the financial changes applicable to order products that have not been fulfilled. For an adjustPreview call, this value is always null.	49.0

ConnectApi.Alternative

Alternative representation for an extension on a feed element.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`textRepresentation`	String	Text representation of the extension.	40.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	Thumbnail URL to the extension.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`title`	String	Title of the extension.	40.0

ConnectApi.Announcement

An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`expirationDate`	Datetime	The Salesforce UI displays an announcement until 11:59 p.m. on this date unless another announcement is posted first. The Salesforce UI ignores the time value in the `expirationDate`. However, you can use the time value to create your own display logic in your own UI.	31.0
`feedElement`	`ConnectApi.FeedElement`	The feed element that contains the body of the announcement and its associated comments, likes, and so on.	31.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the announcement.	31.0
`isArchived`	Boolean	Specifies whether the announcement is archived.	36.0
`sendEmails`	Boolean	Specifies whether the announcement is sent as an email to all group members.	36.0
`url`	String	The URL to the announcement.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage
- ConnectApi.ChatterGroup

ConnectApi.AnnouncementPage

A collection of announcements.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`announcements`	`List<ConnectApi.Announcement>`	A collection of `ConnectApi.Announcement` objects.	31.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	31.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	31.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	31.0

ConnectApi.ApprovalCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it includes information about an approval.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	The work item ID. The work item ID is `null` if there isn't a pending work item associated with the approval record.	32.0
`postTemplateFields`	List<`ConnectApi.ApprovalPostTemplateField`>	The details of the approval post template field.	32.0
`processInstanceStepId`	String	The process instance step ID. The associated record represents one step in an approval process.	32.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.WorkflowProcessStatus`	The status of the approval.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.ApprovalIntent

Approval intent for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isRecallable`	Boolean	Specifies whether the social post can be recalled (`true`) or not (`false`).	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.ApprovalPostTemplateField

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`displayName`	String	The field name.	28.0
`displayValue`	String	The field value or `null` if the field is set to `null`.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
record	ConnectApi.Reference	A record ID. If no record exists or if the reference is null, this value is null.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ApprovalCapability

ConnectApi.ArticleItem

Article item in question and answers suggestions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
id	String	Id of the article.	32.0
rating	Double	The rating of the article.	32.0
title	String	Title of the article.	32.0
urlLink	String	Link URL of the article.	32.0
viewCount	Integer	Number of votes given to the article.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions

ConnectApi.ArticleSummary

A knowledge article summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
articleType	String	Type of the knowledge article.	37.0
knowledgeArticleVersionId	String	ID of the knowledge article version.	39.0
lastPublishedDate	Datetime	Last published date of the knowledge article.	37.0
rating	Double	The rating of the article.	37.0
summary	String	Summary of the knowledge article contents.	37.0
title	String	Title of the knowledge article.	37.0
urlName	String	URL name of the knowledge article.	37.0
viewCount	Integer	Number of times the knowledge article has been viewed.	38.0

ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has platform actions associated with it.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`platformActionGroups`	List<`ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup`>	The platform action groups associated with a feed element. Platform action groups are returned in the order specified in the `ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput` class.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.Audience

A personalization audience.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`criteria`	List<`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaDetail`>	Criteria details for the audience.	48.0
`customFormula`	String	Custom formula for the audience criteria. For example, (1 AND 2) OR 3.	48.0
`formulaFilterType`	`ConnectApi.FormulaFilterType`	Formula filter type for the personalization audience. Values are: • `AllCriteriaMatch`—All audience criteria are true (AND operation). • `AnyCriterionMatches`—Any audience criterion is true (OR operation). • `CustomLogicMatches`—Audience criteria match the custom formula (for example, (1 AND 2) OR 3).	48.0
`id`	String	ID of the audience.	48.0
`name`	String	Name of the audience.	48.0
`targets`	List<`ConnectApi.AudienceTargetAssignment`>	Target assignments for the audience.	48.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to this audience.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AudienceCollection

ConnectApi.AudienceCollection

Collection of personalization audiences.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`audiences`	List<`ConnectApi.Audience`>	Collection of audiences.	48.0

ConnectApi.AudienceCriteria

Custom recommendation audience criteria.

This class is abstract.

This class is a superclass of:

- ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteria
- ConnectApi.NewUserAudienceCriteria

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceCriteriaType`	Specifies the custom recommendation audience criteria type. One of these values: • `CustomList`—A custom list of users makes up the audience. • `MaxDaysInCommunity`—New members make up the audience.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience

ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaDetail

Personalization audience criteria.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`criterion`	List<`ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionDetail`>	List of mappings of audience criteria fields and values.	48.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`criterionNumber`	Integer	Number associated with the audience criterion in a formula. For example, (1 AND 2) OR 3. If unspecified, criteria are assigned numbers in the order that they're added.	48.0
`criterionOperator`	`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaOperator`	Operator used in the personalization audience criterion. Values are: • `Contains` • `Equal` • `GreaterThan` • `GreaterThanOrEqual` • `Includes` • `LessThan` • `LessThanOrEqual` • `NotEqual` • `NotIncludes` • `StartsWith`	48.0
`criterionType`	`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaType`	Type of personalization audience criterion. Values are: • `Default`—Audience has no criteria. • `Domain`—Audience criterion is based on domain. • `FieldBased`—Audience criterion is based on object fields. • `GeoLocation`—Audience criterion is based on location. • `Permission`—Audience criterion is based on standard or custom permissions. • `Profile`—Audience criterion is based on profile.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Audience

ConnectApi.AudienceCriterionDetail

Audience criterion information.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`value`	Map<String, String>	Mapping of an audience criterion value and field.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaDetail

ConnectApi.AudienceTarget

Personalization audience assigned to a target.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`audienceName`	String	Name of the audience assigned to the target.	48.0
`id`	String	ID of the audience assigned to the target.	48.0
`url`	String	URL to the audience assigned to the target.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Target

ConnectApi.AudienceTargetAssignment

Target assignments for a personalization audience.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`formulaScope`	`ConnectApi.FormulaScope`	Formula scope of the target.	51.0
`groupName`	String	Group name of the target. Groups bundle related target and audience pairs.	48.0
`id`	String	ID of the target.	48.0
`isMatch`	Boolean	Specifies whether the target matches the current context (`true`) or doesn't (`false`).	48.0
`priority`	Integer	Priority of the target. Within a group, priority determines which target is returned if the user matches more than one audience.	48.0
`publishStatus`	`ConnectApi.PublishStatus`	Publish status of the target. Values are: • `Draft` • `Live`	48.0
`targetType`	String	Type of target, indicating the nature of the data being targeted.	48.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
targetValue	String	Value of the target.	48.0
url	String	URL to the target.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Audience

ConnectApi.AvailableLocationOutputRepresentation

A set of inventory locations that can combine to fulfill an order.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
locations	List<String>	A list of inventory locations.	51.0

ConnectApi.AverageDistanceResultOutputRepresentation

Wraps inventory location shipping distance calculation results.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
distanceCalculation	ConnectApi.DistanceCalculationOutputRepresentation	Results of the shipping distance calculations.	51.0

ConnectApi.PaymentAuthAdjustmentResponse

Authorization Adjustment output representation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
accountId	String	ID of the account containing the payment authorization being adjusted.	51.0
amount	Double	Amount of the payment authorization adjustment.	51.0
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment authorization adjustment.	51.0
effectiveDate	Datetime	Date when the authorization adjustment becomes effective.	51.0
id	String	ID of the PaymentAuthAdjustment record.	51.0
paymentAuthAdjustmentNumber	String	System-defined reference number.	51.0
requestDate	Datetime	Date when the authorization adjustment transaction occurred.	51.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`status`	String	Status of the payment authorization adjustment.Possible values are: • `Canceled`: The payment authorization reversal has been canceled. The parent authorization has returned to its pre-reversal balance. • `Draft`: The payment authorization reversal can be edited before applying it against the parent authorization. • `Processed`: The payment authorization reversal has been finalized. Users can change the status as follows: • Draft to Processed • Processed to Canceled • Draft to Canceled	51.0

ConnectApi.AuthReversalGatewayResponse

Authorization Reversal Gateway Response Representation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.AuthorizationReversalResponse

Authorization Reversal output representation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`error`	`ConnectApi.ErrorResponse`	Error response representation for the authorization reversal.	51.0
`gatewayResponse`	`ConnectApi.AuthReversalGatewayResponse`	Gateway response representation for authorization reversal.	51.0
`paymentAuthAdjustment`	`ConnectApi.PaymentAuthAdjustmentResponse`	Payment authorization adjustment response representation for the authorization reversal.	51.0
`paymentGatewayLogs`	List<`ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse`>	Gateway log collection representation for the authorization reversal.	51.0

ConnectApi.AuthorizationGatewayResponse

Payment gateway authorization response representation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
gatewayAuthorizationCode	String	Gateway authorization code.	51.0

ConnectApi.AuthorizationResponse

Payment Authorization output representation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
error	ConnectApi.ErrorResponse	Error representation for the payment authorization.	51.0
gatewayResponse	ConnectApi.AuthorizationGatewayResponse	Gateway response representation for the payment authorization.	51.0
paymentAuthorization	ConnectApi.PaymentAuthorizationResponse	Payment authorization representation.	51.0
paymentGatewayLogs	List<ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse>	Gateway log list representation for the payment authorization.	51.0
paymentGroup	ConnectApi.PaymentGroupResponse	Payment group representation for the payment authorization.	51.0
paymentMethod	ConnectApi.PaymentMethodResponse	Payment method representation for the payment authorization.	51.0

ConnectApi.BannerCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a banner motif and style.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
motif	ConnectApi.Motif	A banner motif.	31.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`style`	`ConnectApi.BannerStyle`	Decorates a feed item with a color and set of icons. Possible value: • `Announcement`—An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.	31.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.BannerPhoto

A banner photo.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`bannerPhotoUrl`	String	URL to the banner photo in a large format. This URL is available only to authenticated users.	36.0
`bannerPhoto VersionId`	String	18-character version ID of the banner photo.	36.0
`url`	String	URL to the banner photo.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterGroup

ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.BaseManagedSocialAccount

Base information describing a managed social account or fan page of a social network.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`defaultResponse AccountId`	String	Default response account to use when replying to posts sent to this account.	44.0
`displayName`	String	Real name (or user name if real name not available) for this account on the social network.	44.0
`externalPictureUrl`	String	URL to the account's avatar image.	44.0
`id`	String	Internal SFDC ID for this managed social account.	44.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Label for the social account.	44.0
`profileUrl`	String	URL to the account's profile.	44.0
`socialNetwork`	`ConnectApi.SocialNetworkProvider`	Social network that this account belongs to. Values are: • `Facebook` • `GooglePlus` • `Instagram` • `InstagramBusiness` • `KakaoTalk` • `Kik` • `Line` • `LinkedIn` • `Messenger` • `Other` • `Pinterest` • `QQ` • `Rypple` • `SinaWeibo` • `SMS` • `Snapchat` • `Telegram` • `Twitter` • `VKontakte` • `WeChat` • `WhatsApp` • `YouTube`	44.0
`uniqueName`	String	Unique name used for distinguishing same name fan pages; acts like a user name for a fan page.	44.0
`username`	String	Unique user name or handle for this account on the social network.	44.0

ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation

Base Order Management output class.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AdjustOrderSummaryOutputRepresentation

- ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderCancelLineItemsOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.OrderSummaryOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.PreviewCancelOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.PreviewReturnOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.ReturnItemsOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemSplitLineOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.ReturnOrderOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.SubmitCancelOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.SubmitReturnOutputRepresentation

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errors`	List<`ConnectApi.ErrorResponse`>	Any errors that were returned.	48.0
`success`	Boolean	Indicates whether the transaction was successful.	48.0

ConnectApi.BatchResult

The result of an operation returned by a batch method.

Namespace

ConnectApi

Usage

Calls to batch methods return a list of `BatchResult` objects. Each element in the `BatchResult` list corresponds to the strings in the list parameter passed to the batch method. The first element in the `BatchResult` list matches the first string passed in the list parameter, the second element corresponds with the second string, and so on. If only one string is passed, the `BatchResult` list contains a single element.

Example

The following example shows how to obtain and iterate through the returned `ConnectApi.BatchResult` objects. The code adds two group IDs to a list. One of group IDs is incorrect, which causes a failure when the code calls the batch method. After it calls the batch method, it iterates through the results to determine whether the operation was successful or not for each group ID in the list. The code writes the ID of every group that was processed successfully to the debug log. The code writes an error message for every failed group.

This example generates one successful operation and one failure.

```
List<String> myList = new List<String>();
// Add one correct group ID.
myList.add('0F9D00000000oOT');
// Add one incorrect group ID.
myList.add('0F9D00000000izf');

ConnectApi.BatchResult[] batchResults = ConnectApi.ChatterGroups.getGroupBatch(null,
myList);

// Iterate through each returned result.
for (ConnectApi.BatchResult batchResult : batchResults) {
    if (batchResult.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful.
        // Print the group ID.
        ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary groupSummary;
        if(batchResult.getResult() instanceof ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary) {
           groupSummary = (ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary) batchResult.getResult();
        }
        System.debug('SUCCESS');
        System.debug(groupSummary.id);
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed. Print errors.
        System.debug('FAILURE');
        System.debug(batchResult.getErrorMessage());
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

BatchResult Methods

BatchResult Methods

The following are instance methods for `BatchResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getError()

If an error occurred, returns a `ConnectApi.ConnectApiException` object providing the error code and description.

getErrorMessage()

Returns a String that contains an error message.

getErrorTypeName()
Returns a String that contains the name of the error type.

getResult()
Returns an object that contains the results of the batch operation. The object is typed according to the batch method. For example, if you call `getMembershipBatch()`, a successful call to BatchResult `getResult()` returns a `ConnectApi.GroupMembership` object.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean that is set to `true` if the batch operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

getError()

If an error occurred, returns a `ConnectApi.ConnectApiException` object providing the error code and description.

Signature

```
public ConnectApi.ConnectApiException getError()
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.ConnectApiException

getErrorMessage()

Returns a String that contains an error message.

Signature

```
public String getErrorMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The error message doesn't make a round trip through a Visualforce view state, because exceptions can't be serialized.

getErrorTypeName()

Returns a String that contains the name of the error type.

Signature

```
public String getErrorTypeName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getResult()

Returns an object that contains the results of the batch operation. The object is typed according to the batch method. For example, if you call `getMembershipBatch()`, a successful call to BatchResult `getResult()` returns a `ConnectApi.GroupMembership` object.

Signature

```
public Object getResult()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

isSuccess()

Returns a Boolean that is set to `true` if the batch operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

ConnectApi.BlankRecordField

Record field displayed as a place holder in a grid of fields.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField

ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability

If a feed element has this capability, the context user can bookmark it.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isBookmarkedByCurrentUser`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed element has been bookmarked by the context user (`true`) or not (`false`).	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.BookmarkSummary

Summary of a bookmark.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.BundleCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a container of feed elements called a *bundle*.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.GenericBundleCapability
- ConnectApi.TrackedChangeBundleCapability

.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`bundleType`	`ConnectApi.BundleType`	Defines this feed element's bundle type. The bundle type determines what additional information appears in the bundle.	31.0
`page`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`	A collection of feed elements.	31.0
`totalElements`	Integer	The total number of feed elements that this bundle aggregates.	31.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.CallCollaborationCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a recording comment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`commentEndTime`	Integer	End time of the comment on the media player, in seconds.	51.0
`commentStartTime`	Integer	Start time of the comment on the media player, in seconds.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.CandidateAnswersStatus

The status of candidate answers on a feed element.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`hasCandidateAnswers`	Boolean	Indicates whether candidate answers are available for a question.	41.0
`hasCandidateAnswersPublished`	Boolean	Indicates whether any candidate answers are published.	41.0
`hasCandidateAnswersRated`	Boolean	Indicates whether any candidate answers are rated.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability

ConnectApi.CanvasCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it renders a canvas app.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	A description of the canvas app. The maximum size is 255 characters.	32.0
`developerName`	String	The API name (developer name) of the connected app.	32.0
`height`	String	The height of the canvas app in pixels.	32.0
`icon`	`ConnectApi.Icon`	The icon for the canvas app.	32.0
`namespacePrefix`	String	A unique namespace prefix for the canvas app.	32.0
`parameters`	String	JSON parameters passed to the canvas app.	32.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	A thumbnail URL to a preview image. The maximum thumbnail size is 120 pixels by 120 pixels.	32.0
`title`	String	A title for the canvas link.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.CaptureGatewayResponse

Gateway capture response.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.CaptureResponse

Capture output.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`error`	`ConnectApi.ErrorResponse`	Error response representation for an authorization capture.	50.0
`gatewayResponse`	`ConnectApi.CaptureGatewayResponse`	Gateway log response containing details about gateway logs created during the process of the capture request.	50.0
`payment`	`ConnectApi.PaymentResponse`	Payment response object for the capture request. Contains the information related to a payment object created during request processing.	50.0
`paymentGatewayLogs`	List<`ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse`>	Gateway log collection for an authorization capture.	50.0
`paymentGroup`	`ConnectApi.PaymentGroupResponse`	Payment group associated with the capture request.	50.0

ConnectApi.CartItem

An item in a cart.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`itemizedAdjustmentAmount`	String	Reserved for future use.	52.0
`listPrice`	String	List price for the item.	49.0
`salesPrice`	String	Sales price for the item.	49.0
`totalAdjustmentAmount`	String	Total adjustment amount for the item.	50.0
`totalAmount`	String	Total amount for the item.	49.0
`totalListPrice`	String	Total list price for the item.	49.0
`totalPrice`	String	Total price for the item including adjustments but excluding taxes.	49.0
`totalTax`	String	Total tax for the item.	49.0
`unitAdjustedPrice`	String	Unit price, including adjustments, for the item. This value is informational only and isn't used in pricing calculations.	50.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
unitAdjustmentAmount	String	Adjustments made to the unit price for the item. This value is informational only and isn't used in pricing calculations.	50.0

ConnectApi.CartItemCollection

Cart item collection.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
cartItems	List<ConnectApi.CartItemResult>	Collection of cart item results.	49.0
cartSummary	ConnectApi.CartSummary	Summary of the cart.	49.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	49.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	49.0
hasErrors	Boolean	Specifies whether at least one of the results contains an error.	49.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	49.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	49.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	49.0
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	49.0

ConnectApi.CartItemProduct

Product summary for a cart item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
fields	Map<String, String>	Map of product fields and values.	49.0
name	String	Name of the product.	49.0
productId	String	ID of the product.	49.0
purchaseQuantityRule	ConnectApi.PurchaseQuantityRule	If one exists, purchase quantity rule for the product.	52.0
sku	String	SKU of the product.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
thumbnailImage	ConnectApi.ProductMedia	Thumbnail image of the product.	49.0
variationAttributes	Map<String, ConnectApi.CartProductAttribute>	Variation attributes associated with the product.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem

ConnectApi.WishlistItem

ConnectApi.CartItemResult

Result after requesting a cart item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
cartItem	ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem	Cart item.	49.0
message	String	Message when the request isn't successful.	49.0
status	String	Status for the request.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemCollection

ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult

ConnectApi.CartItemWithoutPrice

An item without price information in a cart.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.CartMessage

Cart message.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
message	String	Cart message.	49.0
messageId	String	ID of the object supplying the message.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`relatedEntityId`	String	ID of the entity, for example, cart, cart item, or cart tax, associated with the message.	49.0
`severity`	`ConnectApi.CartMessageSeverity`	Severity of cart message. Values are: • `Error` • `Info` • `Warning`	49.0
`type`	String	Type of message. Standard values include `Inventory`, `Taxes`, `Pricing`, `Shipping`, `Entitlement`, `SystemError`, and `Other`.	49.0
`visible`	Boolean	Specifies whether the message is visible (`true`) or dismissed (`false`).	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartMessagesSummary

ConnectApi.CartMessagesSummary

Cart messages summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errorCount`	Integer	In `ConnectApi.CartItemResult`, the count of messages with the `Error` severity level.	49.0
`hasErrors`	Boolean	Specifies whether there are messages related to the entity (`true`) or not (`false`).	49.0
`limitedMessages`	List<`ConnectApi.CartMessage`>	In `ConnectApi.CartItemResult`, a limited list of messages related to the cart item. In `ConnectApi.CartSummary`, each message can be related to the cart or to another cart-related entity.	49.0
`relatedEntityId`	String	In `ConnectApi.CartItemResult`, the ID of the related cart item. In `ConnectApi.CartSummary`, each message can be related to the cart or to another cart-related entity.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`totalLineItemsWithErrors`	Integer	In `ConnectApi.CartItemResult`, either `null` if the cart item has no errors or `1` if the cart item has errors. In `ConnectApi.CartSummary`, the total number of product line items that contain errors.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractCartItem

ConnectApi.CartMessagesVisibilityResult

Result of setting the visibility for cart messages.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`visibility`	Boolean	Specifies whether cart messages are set to visible (`true`) or not (`false`).	50.0

ConnectApi.CartProductAttribute

Product attribute for a cart item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Label or display name of the attribute.	50.0
`sequence`	Integer	Sequence of the attribute within the attribute set.	50.0
`value`	String	Display value of the attribute.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemProduct

ConnectApi.CartSummary

A cart summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`accountId`	String	ID of the account for the cart.	49.0
`cartId`	String	ID of the cart.	49.0
`currencyIsoCode`	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the cart.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`grandTotalAmount`	String	Grand total amount including shipping and tax for items in the cart, in the currency of the cart.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the cart.	49.0
`ownerId`	String	ID of the owner of the cart.	49.0
`purchaseOrderNumber`	String	Purchase order for the cart.	50.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.CartStatus`	Status of the cart. Values are: • `Active`—Cart is active. • `Checkout`—Cart is in checkout. • `Closed`—Cart is closed. • `PendingDelete`—Cart is pending delete, for example, a user deleted the cart but the job hasn't completed yet. • `Processing`—Cart is processing.	49.0
`totalChargeAmount`	String	Total amount for shipping and other charges in the currency of the cart.	49.0
`totalListPrice`	String	Total list price for the cart.	49.0
`totalProductAmount`	String	Total amount including discounts, but excluding shipping and tax, for product items in the cart.	49.0
`totalProductAmount AfterAdjustments`	String	Total product amount.	52.0
`totalProductCount`	String	Total count of items in the cart.	49.0
`totalPromotional AdjustmentAmount`	String	Reserved for future use.	52.0
`totalTaxAmount`	String	Total tax amount for the cart, including tax on shipping, if applicable.	49.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CartType`	Type of cart. Value is `Cart`.	49.0
`uniqueProductCount`	Integer	Total count of unique items, or SKUs, in the cart.	49.0
`webstoreId`	String	ID of the webstore of the cart.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemCollection

ConnectApi.CartToWishlistResult

Result of copying products from a cart to a wishlist.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
productsAddedCount	Integer	Number of products copied from the cart to the wishlist.	50.0
wishlistId	String	ID of the wishlist that cart products were copied to.	50.0

ConnectApi.CaseCommentCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a case comment on the case feed.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
actorType	ConnectApi.CaseActorType	Specifies the type of user who made the comment.	32.0
createdBy	ConnectApi.Actor	Information about the user who created the comment.	32.0
createdDate	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	32.0
eventType	ConnectApi.CaseCommentEventType	Specifies an event type for a comment in the case feed.	32.0
id	String	18-character ID of case comment.	32.0
published	Boolean	Specifies whether the comment has been published.	32.0
text	String	Text of the case comment.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.CdpQueryMetadataOutput

Salesforce CDP query metadata result.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
metadata	List<Object>	Metadata set.	52.0

ConnectApi.CdpQueryOutput

Salesforce CDP query result.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`data`	List<`Object`>	Result data set.	52.0
`done`	Boolean	Specifies whether the query is done (`true`) or not (`false`).	52.0
`endTime`	String	Query end time.	52.0
`metadata`	Map<String, `Object`>	Result metadata set.	52.0
`queryId`	String	Query ID.	52.0
`rowCount`	Integer	Number of rows in the result data set.	52.0
`startTime`	String	Query start time.	52.0

ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation

The financial changes resulting from a change to one or more OrderItemSummaries. Most of the values represent the deltas of the values on the associated OrderSummary. The sign of each value is the opposite of the corresponding value on a change order record. For example, a discount is a positive value here and a negative value on a change order record.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`grandTotalAmount`	Double	Change to the GrandTotalAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjDelivery AmtWithTax`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjDeliveryAmtWithTax field.	49.0
`totalAdjDist AmountWithTax`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjDistAmountWithTax field.	49.0
`totalAdjProduct AmtWithTax`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjProductAmtWithTax field.	49.0
`totalAdjusted DeliveryAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustedDeliveryAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjusted DeliveryTaxAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustedDeliveryTaxAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjusted ProductAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustedProductAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjusted ProductTaxAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustedProductTaxAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjustment DistributedAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustmentDistributedAmount field.	48.0
`totalAdjustment DistributedTaxAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAdjustmentDistributedTaxAmount field.	48.0
`totalAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalAmount field.	48.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`totalExcessFundsAmount`	Double	Amount of excess funds available on the OrderPaymentSummaries related to the OrderSummary. It is equal to the captured amount that is owed as a refund but is not associated with an invoice or credit memo. Excess funds normally occur when order items are canceled before fulfillment but after payment has been captured. This situation is not common in the US, where funds are normally authorized but not captured until the fulfillment process begins. This value includes all current excess funds related to the OrderSummary, not only the funds related to the current change.	48.0
`totalRefundableAmount`	Double	Total amount available to be refunded. It is the sum of the excess funds and any outstanding change order grand total amounts that apply to post-fulfillment changes. This value includes all current refundable amounts related to the OrderSummary, not only the amount related to the current change.	48.0
`totalTaxAmount`	Double	Change to the TotalTaxAmount field.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.PreviewCancelOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.PreviewReturnOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.SubmitCancelOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.SubmitReturnOutputRepresentation

ConnectApi.ChatterActivity

Chatter activity.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`commentCount`	Integer	Total number of comments in the org or site made by the user.	28.0
`commentReceivedCount`	Integer	Total number of comments in the org or site received by the user.	28.0
`likeReceivedCount`	Integer	Total number of likes and upvotes (in version 45.0 and later) on posts and comments in the org or site received by the user.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`postCount`	Integer	Total number of posts in the org or site made by the user.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.ChatterActivitySummary

Summary of Chatter activity.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`commentCount`	Integer	Total number of comments in the org or site made by the user.	42.0
`commentReceivedCount`	Integer	Total number of comments in the org or site received by the user.	42.0
`likeReceivedCount`	Integer	Total number of likes and upvotes (in version 45.0 and later) on posts and comments in the org or site received by the user.	42.0
`postCount`	Integer	Total number of posts in the org or site made by the user.	42.0

ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

Chatter conversation.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`conversationId`	String	ID for the conversation.	29.0
`conversationUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the conversation.	29.0
`members`	`List<ConnectApi.UserSummary>`	List of users in the conversation.	29.0
`messages`	`ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage`	Content of the conversation.	29.0
`read`	Boolean	Specifies if the conversation is read (`true`) or not read (`false`).	29.0

ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage

Chatter conversation page.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`conversations`	`List<ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary>`	List of conversations on the page.	29.0
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	29.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0

ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary

Chatter conversation summary.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID for the conversation summary.	29.0
`latestMessage`	`ConnectApi.ChatterMessage`	Contents of the latest message.	29.0
`members`	`List<ConnectApi.UserSummary>`	List of members in the conversation.	29.0
`read`	Boolean	Specifies if the conversation is read (`true`) or not read (`false`).	29.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to the conversation summary.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterConversationPage

ConnectApi.ChatterGroup

Chatter group.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail
- ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
additionalLabel	String	An extra label for the group, for example, "Archived," "Private," or "Private With Customers." If there isn't an extra label, the value is null.	30.0
announcement	ConnectApi.Announcement	The current announcement for this group. An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.	31.0
bannerPhoto	ConnectApi.BannerPhoto	The banner photo for the group.	36.0
canHaveChatterGuests	Boolean	true if this group allows Chatter guests.	28.0
community	ConnectApi.Reference	Information about the Experience Cloud site the group is in.	28.0
description	String	Group's description.	28.0
emailToChatterAddress	String	Group's email address for posting to this group by email. Returns null if Chatter emails and posting to Chatter by email aren't both enabled in your organization.	30.0
isArchived	Boolean	Specifies whether the group is archived (true) or not (false).	29.0
isAutoArchiveDisabled	Boolean	Specifies whether automatic archiving is disabled for the group (true) or not (false).	29.0
isBroadcast	Boolean	Specifies whether the group is a broadcast group (true) or not (false). In a broadcast group, only group owners and managers can post to the group.	36.0
lastFeedElementPostDate	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, of the most recent feed element posted to the group.	31.0
lastFeedItemPostDate	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, of the most recent feed item posted to the group. Use lastFeedElementPosted.	28.0–30.0
memberCount	Integer	Total number of group members.	28.0
myRole	ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType Enum	Type of membership the user has with the group. • GroupOwner • GroupManager • NotAMember • NotAMemberPrivateRequested • StandardMember	28.0
mySubscription	ConnectApi.Reference	If the context user is a member of this group, contains information about that subscription; otherwise, returns null.	28.0
name	String	Name of the group.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
owner	ConnectApi.UserSummary	Information about the owner of the group.	28.0
photo	ConnectApi.Photo	Information about the group photo.	28.0
visibility	ConnectApi.GroupVisibilityType	Group visibility type. Valid values are: • PrivateAccess—Only members of the group can see posts to this group. • PublicAccess—All users within the Experience Cloud site can see posts to this group. • Unlisted—Reserved for future use.	28.0

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail

Chatter group details.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ChatterGroup.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
fileCount	Integer	The number of files posted to the group.	28.0
information	ConnectApi.GroupInformation	Describes the Information section of the group. If the group is private, this section is visible only to members. If the context user is not a member of the group or does not have Modify All Data or View All Data permission, this value is null.	28.0
pendingRequests	Integer	The number of requests to join a group that are in a pending state.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage

ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupPage

Page of groups.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
groups	List<ConnectApi.Chatter	List of group details.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
	`Group Detail>`		
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
`previous PageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary

Subclass of ConnectApi.ChatterGroup.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fileCount`	Integer	The number of files posted to the group.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage
- ConnectApi.UserGroupPage

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummaryPage

Page of group summaries.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
`groups`	`List<ConnectApi. ChatterGroup Summary>`	List of group summary objects.	29.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	29.0

ConnectApi.ChatterLike

Chatter like information.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
id	String	Like's 18-character ID	28.0
likedItem	ConnectApi.Reference	A reference to the liked comment or feed element.	28.0
url	String	Like's Connect REST API URL	28.0
user	ConnectApi.UserSummary	Like's creator	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage

ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage

Page of Chatter likes.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	Integer	Token identifying the current page.	28.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
items	List<ConnectApi.ChatterLike>	List of likes.	32.0
likes	List<ConnectApi.ChatterLike>	List of likes. **Important:** As of API version 32.0, use the `items` property.	28.0–31.0
nextPageToken	Integer	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
previousPageToken	Integer	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
total	Integer	Total number of likes across all pages.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterLikesCapability

ConnectApi.Comment

ConnectApi.ChatterLikesCapability

If a feed element has this capability, the context user can like it. Exposes information about existing likes.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isLikedBy CurrentUser`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed element is liked by the context user (`true`) or not (`false`).	32.0
`page`	`ConnectApi. ChatterLikePage`	Likes information for this feed element.	32.0
`likesMessage`	`ConnectApi. MessageBody`	A message body that describes who likes the feed element.	32.0
`myLike`	`ConnectApi. Reference`	If the context user has liked the feed element, this property is a reference to the specific like, `null` otherwise.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.ChatterMessage

Chatter message.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`body`	`ConnectApi.MessageBody`	Contents of the message.	29.0
`conversationId`	String	ID for the conversation.	29.0
`conversationUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the conversation.	29.0
`id`	String	ID of the message.	29.0
`recipients`	`List<ConnectApi.UserSummary>`	List of the recipients of the message.	29.0
`sender`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Sender of the message.	29.0
`sendingCommunity`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Information about the Experience Cloud site from which the message was sent. Returns `null` for the default site or if digital experiences isn't enabled.	32.0
`sentDate`	Datetime	The date and time the message was sent.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page of the conversation.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary

ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage

ConnectApi.ChatterMessagePage

Chatter message page.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	29.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
`messages`	`List<ConnectApi.ChatterMessage>`	Messages on the current page.	29.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterConversation

ConnectApi.ChatterStream

A Chatter feed stream.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`community`	`ConnectApi.CommunitySummary`	Experience Cloud site where the stream is.	41.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	Date the stream was created.	39.0
`description`	String	Description of the stream.	39.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the stream.	39.0
`name`	String	Name of the stream.	39.0
`subscriptions`	`List<ConnectApi.FeedEnabledEntity>`	List of entities whose feeds are included in the stream.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to the stream.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage

ConnectApi.ChatterStreamPage

A collection of Chatter feed streams.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	URL to the current page of streams.	39.0
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.ChatterStream`>	List of streams.	39.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	URL to the next page of streams. In version 39.0, all streams are included in `currentPageUrl` and `nextPageUrl` is `null`.	39.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of streams in the collection.	39.0

ConnectApi.ClientInfo

Client information.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`applicationName`	String	Name of the connected app used for authentication.	28.0
`applicationUrl`	String	Value from the `Info URL` field of the connected app used for authentication.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Comment

ConnectApi.FeedItem

ConnectApi.CloseCapability

If a feed element has this capability, users with permission can close it.

Users can't edit (specifically the feed item body or title), comment on, or delete a closed feed element. If the closed feed element is a poll, users can't vote on it. Users can't edit (specifically the comment body) or delete a comment on a closed feed element or select or remove it as best answer.

Admins and moderators can edit and delete closed feed elements and comments on closed feed elements. Admins and moderators can select or remove the best answer status on comments on closed feed elements.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canContextUserUpdateIsClosed`	Boolean	Specifies whether the context user has permission to set the feed element to closed (`true`) or not (`false`).	43.0
`isClosed`	Boolean	Specifies whether the feed element is closed (`true`) or not (`false`).	43.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.Comment

A comment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attachment`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment`	If the comment contains an attachment, property value is `ContentAttachment`. If the comment does not contain an attachment, it is `null`. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the `capabilities` property.	28.0–31.0
`body`	`ConnectApi.FeedBody`	Body of the comment.	28.0
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities`	Capabilities associated with the comment, such as any file attachments.	32.0
`clientInfo`	`ConnectApi.ClientInfo`	Information about the connected app used to authenticate the connection.	28.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	28.0
`feedElement`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Feed element on which the comment is posted.	
`feedItem`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Feed item on which the comment is posted. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the `feedElement` property.	28.0–31.0
`id`	String	Comment's 18–character ID.	28.0
`isDeleteRestricted`	Boolean	If this property is `true`, the context user can't delete the comment. If this property is `false`, the context user might be able to delete the comment.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`likes`	`ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`	The first page of likes for the comment. This property has no information for comments on direct messages.	28.0
`likesMessage`	`ConnectApi.MessageBody`	A message body that describes who likes the comment. This property is `null` for comments on direct messages.	28.0
`moderationFlags`	`ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`	Information about the moderation flags on a comment. If `ConnectApi.Features.communityModeration` is `false`, this property is `null`.	29.0
`myLike`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	If the context user liked the comment, this property is a reference to the specific like, `null` otherwise. This property is `null` for comments on direct messages.	28.0
`parent`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Information about the parent feed-item for this comment.	28.0
`relativeCreatedDate`	String	The created date formatted as a relative, localized string, for example, "17m ago" or "Yesterday."	28.0
`threadLevel`	Integer	Level of nesting for a comment. 0 indicates a standard comment with a parent post. 1 indicates a threaded comment with a parent comment and a parent post. 2 indicates a threaded comment with two parent comments and a parent post. The UI is limited to these three levels.	44.0
`threadParentId`	String	ID of the parent comment for a threaded comment.	44.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CommentType` Enum	Type of comment. • `ContentComment`—Comment holds a content capability. • `TextComment`—Comment contains only text.	28.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to this comment.	28.0
`user`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Information about the comment author.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentPage

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities

A set of capabilities on a comment.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
comments	ConnectApi.CommentsCapability	If a comment has this capability, it has threaded comments.	44.0
content	ConnectApi.ContentCapability	If a comment has this capability, it has a file attachment. Most ConnectApi.ContentCapability properties are null if the content has been deleted from the feed element or if the access has changed to private.	32.0
edit	ConnectApi.EditCapability	If a comment has this capability, users who have permission can edit it.	34.0
feedEntityShare	ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapability	If a comment has this capability, a feed entity is shared with it.	42.0
record	ConnectApi.RecordCapability	If a comment has this capability, it has a record attachment.	42.0
status	ConnectApi.StatusCapability	If a comment has this capability, it has a status that determines its visibility.	38.0
upDownVote	ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability	If a comment has this capability, users can upvote or downvote it.	41.0
verified	ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability	If a comment has this capability, users with permission can mark it as verified or unverified.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Comment

ConnectApi.CommentPage

A page of comments.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
comments	List<ConnectApi.Comment>	Collection of comments. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the items property.	28.0–31.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	28.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
items	List<ConnectApi.Comment>	Collection of comments for this feed element.	32.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page. If you want to read more of the comments in search results, all the comments in the thread are refreshed, not just the ones that match the search term. Avoid using `nextPageToken` until the comments are refreshed.	28.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page. If you want to read more of the comments in search results, all the comments in the thread are refreshed, not just the ones that match the search term. Avoid using `nextPageUrl` until the comments are refreshed.	28.0
`previousPageToken`	String	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	44.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	44.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of published comments for the parent feed element.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentsCapability

ConnectApi.CommentSummary

Summary of the comment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`commentId`	String	ID of the comment.	42.0

ConnectApi.CommentsCapability

If a feed element or comment has this capability, the context user can add a comment to it.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
page	ConnectApi.CommentPage	The comments information for this feed element or comment. Threaded comments are supported in version 44.0 and later.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex

Index information.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
completionDate	Datetime	Completion date and time of the index.	52.0
createdDate	Datetime	Creation date of the index.	52.0
creationType	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCreationType	Creation type of the index. Values are: • Manual • Scheduled	52.0
id	String	ID of the index.	52.0
indexStatus	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexStatus	Status of the index. Values are: • Completed • Failed • InProgress	52.0
indexUsage	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexUsage	Usage of the index. Values are: • Live • OutOfUse	52.0
message	String	Detailed message for the index status.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCollection

ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCollection

Collection of indexes.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
indexes	List<ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndex>	List of up to two indexes. Returns the completed, live index and either the in-progress, out-of-use index or the most-recently-failed, out-of-use index.	52.0

ConnectApi.Community

Experience Cloud site.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
allowChatterAccessWithoutLogin	Boolean	Specifies if guest users can access public groups without logging in.	31.0
allowMembersToFlag	Boolean	Specifies if members can flag content.	30.0
builderBasedSnaEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether the Service Not Available page is an auto-generated Experience Builder-based page (true) or a static resource page that's set in **Workspaces** > **Administration** > **Pages** (false).	52.0
description	String	Site description.	28.0
guestMemberVisibilityEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether guest members can see other members (true) or not (false).	47.0
id	String	Site ID.	28.0
invitationsEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether users can invite other external users.	28.0
knowledgeableEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether knowledgeable people and endorsements are available for topics (true), or not (false).	30.0
loginUrl	String	Login URL for the site.	36.0
memberVisibilityEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether members can see other members (true) or not (false).	45.0
name	String	Site name.	28.0
nicknameDisplayEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether nicknames are displayed.	32.0
privateMessagesEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether members can send and receive private messages to and from other members (true) or not (false).	30.0
reputationEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether reputation is calculated and displayed for members.	31.0
sendWelcomeEmail	Boolean	Specifies whether emails are sent to all new users when they join.	28.0
siteAsContainerEnabled	Boolean	Specifies whether the site is an Experience Builder site (true) or a Salesforce Tabs + Visualforce site (false).	41.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`siteUrl`	String	URL for the site, which is your Experience Cloud sites domain plus a URL prefix. For example, *`MyDomainName`*`.my.site.com/customers`. Note: If you're not using enhanced domains, your org's Experience Cloud sites URL is different. For details, see My Domain URL Formats in Salesforce Help.	30.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.CommunityStatus` Enum	Status of the Experience Cloud site. • `Live` • `Inactive` • `UnderConstruction`	28.0
`templateName`	String	Name of the Experience Builder template.	46.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to the site.	28.0
`urlPathPrefix`	String	Site-specific URL prefix. For example, in the site URL *`MyDomainName`*`.my.site.com/customers`, `customers` is the `UrlPathPrefix`.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommunityPage

ConnectApi.CommunityPage

Page of Experience Cloud sites.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`communities`	`List<ConnectApi.Community>`	List of Experience Cloud sites the context user has access to.	28.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of Experience Cloud sites.	28.0

ConnectApi.CommunitySummary

Summary of an Experience Cloud site.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	18-character ID of the site.	41.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
name	String	Localized name of the site.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary

ConnectApi.CompanyVerifySummary

Company verify summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.ComplexSegment

Complex segments of field changes.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Superclass of ConnectApi.FieldChangeSegment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
segments	List<ConnectApi.MessageSegment>	List of message segments.	28.0

ConnectApi.CompoundRecordField

Record field that is a composite of subfields.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
fields	List<ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField>	Collection of subfields that make up the compound field.	29.0

ConnectApi.Content

A file attached to a feed item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
checksum	String	MD5 checksum for the file.	36.0
contentUrl	String	URL of the content for links.	36.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the attachment.	36.0
`downloadUrl`	String	URL to the content.	36.0
`fileExtension`	String	Extension of the file.	36.0
`fileSize`	String	Size of the file in bytes. If size can't be determined, returns `unknown`.	36.0
`fileType`	String	Type of file, such as PDF.	36.0
`hasPdfPreview`	Boolean	`true` if the file has a PDF preview available; `false` otherwise.	36.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the content.	36.0
`imageDetails`	`ConnectApi.ContentImageFileDetails`	Image details, or `null` if the file isn't an image.	40.0
`isInMyFileSync`	Boolean	`true` if the file is synced with Salesforce Files Sync. Note: Salesforce Files Sync was retired on May 25, 2018.	36.0
`mimeType`	String	MIME type of the file.	36.0
`renditionUrl`	String	URL to the rendition resource for the file. For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	36.0
`renditionUrl240By180`	String	URL to the 240 x 180 pixel rendition resource for the file. For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	36.0
`renditionUrl720By480`	String	URL to the 720 x 480 pixel rendition resource for the file. For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	36.0
`sharingOption`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingOption`	Sharing option of the file. Values are: • `Allowed`—Resharing of the file is allowed. • `Restricted`—Resharing of the file is restricted.	36.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`textPreview`	String	Text preview of the file if available; `null` otherwise.	36.0
`thumb120By90RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 120 x 90 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	36.0
`thumb240By180RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 240 x 180 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	36.0
`thumb720By480RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 720 x 480 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	36.0
`title`	String	Title of the file.	36.0
`versionId`	String	Version ID of the file.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FilesCapability

ConnectApi.ContentCapability

If a comment has this capability, it has a file attachment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

For files attached to a feed post (instead of a comment) in version 36.0 and later, use `ConnectApi.FilesCapability`.

If content is deleted from a feed element after it's posted or if the access to the content is changed to private, the `ConnectApi.ContentCapability` exists, however most of its properties are null.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`checksum`	String	MD5 checksum for the file.	32.0
`contentUrl`	String	URL of the content for links and Google docs.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the attachment.	32.0
`downloadUrl`	String	URL to the content.	32.0
`fileExtension`	String	Extension of the file.	32.0
`fileSize`	String	Size of the file in bytes. If size cannot be determined, returns `Unknown`.	32.0
`fileType`	String	Type of file.	32.0
`hasPdfPreview`	Boolean	`true` if the file has a PDF preview available, `false` otherwise.	32.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the content.	32.0
`isInMyFileSync`	Boolean	`true` if the file is synced with Salesforce Files Sync; `false` otherwise. **Note:** Salesforce Files Sync was retired on May 25, 2018.	32.0
`mimeType`	String	MIME type of the file.	32.0
`renditionUrl`	String	URL to the rendition resource for the file. Renditions are processed asynchronously and may not be available immediately after the file has been uploaded.	32.0
`renditionUrl240By180`	String	URL to the 240x180 size rendition resource for the file. Renditions are processed asynchronously and may not be available immediately after the file has been uploaded.	32.0
`renditionUrl720By480`	String	URL to the 720x480 size rendition resource for the file. Renditions are processed asynchronously and may not be available immediately after the file has been uploaded.	32.0
`sharingOption`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingOption`	Sharing option of the file. Values are: • `Allowed`—Resharing of the file is allowed. • `Restricted`—Resharing of the file is restricted.	35.0
`textPreview`	String	Text preview of the file if available, `null` otherwise. The maximum number of characters is 200.	32.0
`thumb120By90RenditionStatus`	String	The status of the rendering of the 120x90 pixel sized preview image of the file. Should be either Processing, Failed, Success, or Na if unavailable.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`thumb240By180RenditionStatus`	String	The status of the rendering of the 240x180 pixel sized preview image of the file. Should be either Processing, Failed, Success, or Na if unavailable.	32.0
`thumb720By480RenditionStatus`	String	The status of the rendering of the 720x480 pixel sized preview image of the file. Should be either Processing, Failed, Success, or Na if unavailable.	32.0
`title`	String	Title of the file.	32.0
`versionId`	String	Version ID of the file.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities

ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection

The item types that the context user is allowed to create in a repository folder.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`allowedItemTypes`	List<`ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary`>	A collection of item types that the context user is allowed to create in a repository folder.	39.0

ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldDefinition

A field definition.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`displayName`	String	Label or caption of this field.	39.0
`isMandatory`	Boolean	Specifies whether this field is mandatory for the item type.	39.0
`maxLength`	Integer	Maximum length of the value of this field.	39.0
`name`	String	Name of the field.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubVariableType`	Data type of the value of the field. Values are: • `BooleanType` • `DateTimeType` • `DecimalType` • `HtmlType` • `IdType` • `IntegerType` • `StringType` • `UriType` • `XmlType`	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail

ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeDetail

The details of an item type associated with a repository folder.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractContentHubItemType

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fields`	List<`ConnectApi.ContentHubFieldDefinition`>	A list of fields that the context user is allowed to set in the metadata of this item type.	39.0

ConnectApi.ContentHubItemTypeSummary

The summary of an item type associated with a repository folder.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractContentHubItemType

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubAllowedItemTypeCollection

ConnectApi.ContentHubPermissionType

A permission type.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	Internal ID of the permission type in the repository.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
label	String	Label as returned by the repository.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExternalFilePermissionInformation

ConnectApi.ContentHubProviderType

The type of repository.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
label	String	Localized label of the provider type.	39.0
type	String	Provider type. One of these values: • ContentHubBox • ContentHubGDrive • ContentHubSharepoint • ContentHubSharepointOffice365 • ContentHubSharepointOneDrive • SimpleUrl	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

A repository.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
authentication	ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryAuthentication	Repository authentication information.	40.0
features	ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryFeatures	Repository features.	39.0
label	String	Repository label.	39.0
name	String	Repository name.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`providerType`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubProviderType`	Repository provider type.	39.0
`rootFolderItemsUrl`	String	URL to the list of items in the repository root folder.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryAuthentication

Authentication information for a repository.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`authFlowUrl`	String	Depends on the `authProtocol`. • `NoAuthentication`—`null`. • `Oauth`—URL to start the OAuth flow. • `Password`—URL to the authentication settings for external systems.	40.0
`authProtocol`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubAuthenticationProtocol`	Authentication protocol used for the repository. Values are: • `NoAuthentication`—Repository doesn't require authentication. • `Oauth`—Repository uses OAuth authentication protocol. • `Password`—Repository uses user name and password authentication protocol.	40.0
`userHasAuthSettings`	Boolean	Specifies whether the user has credentials or the administrator configured the external data source to use the same set of credentials for every user (`true`). Otherwise, `false`.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryCollection

A collection of repositories.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	URL to the current page of repositories.	39.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	URL to the next page of repositories, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	39.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	URL to the previous page of repositories, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	39.0
`repositories`	List<`ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository`>	Collection of repositories.	39.0

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepositoryFeatures

The features of a repository.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canBrowse`	Boolean	Specifies whether the repository's folder hierarchy can be browsed (`true`) or not (`false`).	39.0
`canSearch`	Boolean	Specifies whether the repository can be searched (`true`) or not (`false`).	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ContentHubRepository

ConnectApi.ContentImageFileDetails

Image file details.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`height`	Integer	Image's height in pixels.	40.0
`imageFormat`	String	Image's format.	40.0
`orientation`	String	Image's EXIF orientation value, if present.	40.0
`width`	Integer	Image's width in pixels.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.InlineImageSegment

ConnectApi.CreateCreditMemoOutputRepresentation

ID of a created Credit Memo.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
creditMemoId	String	ID of the created Credit Memo.	48.0

ConnectApi.CreateOrderPaymentSummaryOutputRepresentation

ID of the created Order Payment Summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
orderPaymentSummaryId	String	ID of the Order Payment Summary.	48.0

ConnectApi.CurrencyRecordField

Record field containing a currency value.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField

ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteria

Criteria for the custom list type of custom recommendation audience.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AudienceCriteria.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
memberCount	Integer	Total number of members in the custom recommendation audience.	36.0
members	ConnectApi.UserReferencePage	Members of the custom recommendation audience.	36.0

ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshot

Represents both dashboard component snapshots and alerts you receive when a dashboard component value crosses a threshold.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
componentId	String	18-character ID of the dashboard component.	32.0
componentName	String	The dashboard component name.	32.0
dashboardBodyText	String	Display this text next to the actor in the feed element.Use this text in place of the default body text.	32.0
dashboardId	String	18-character ID of the dashboard.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`dashboardName`	String	The name of the dashboard.	32.0
`fullSizeImageUrl`	String	The source URL to retrieve the full-size image of a snapshot. Access this URL with OAuth credentials.	32.0
`lastRefreshDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date specifying when this dashboard component was last refreshed.	32.0
`lastRefresh DateDisplayText`	String	Display text for the last refresh date, for example, "Last Refreshed on October 31, 2013."	32.0
`runningUser`	`ConnectApi. UserSummary`	The running user of the dashboard at the time the snapshot was posted. This value may be `null`. Each dashboard has a running user, whose security settings determine which data to display in a dashboard.	32.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	The source URL to retrieve the thumbnail image of a snapshot. Access this URL with OAuth credentials.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshotCapability

ConnectApi.DatacloudCompanies

ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshotCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a dashboard component snapshot. A snapshot is a static image of a dashboard component at a specific point in time.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`dashboardComponent Snapshot`	ConnectApi. DashboardComponent Snapshot	The dashboard component snapshot.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany

Information about a Data.com company.

All company information is visible for companies that you purchased and own. If you haven't purchased a company, some of the fields are hidden. Hidden fields are fully or partially hidden by asterisks "***."

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
activeContacts	Integer	The number of active Data.com contacts who work in the company.	32.0
address	ConnectApi.Address	The postal address for the company. This is typically a physical address that can include the city, state, street, and postal code.	32.0
annualRevenue	Double	The amount of money that the company makes in one year. Annual revenue is measured in US dollars.	32.0
companyId	String	A unique numerical identifier for the company. This is the Data.com identifier for a company.	32.0
description	String	A brief synopsis of the company that provides a general overview of the company and what it does.	32.0
dunsNumber	String	A randomly generated nine-digit number that's assigned by Dun & Bradstreet (D&B) to identify unique business establishments.	32.0
industry	String	A description of the type of industry such as "Telecommunications," "Agriculture," or "Electronics."	32.0
isInactive	Boolean	Indicates whether this company is active (true) or not (false). Inactive companies have out-of-date information in Data.com.	32.0
isOwned	Boolean	• True: You or your organization owns this company. • False: Neither you nor your organization owns this company.	32.0
naicsCode	String	North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) codes were created to provide more details about a business's service orientation. The code descriptions are focused on what a business does.	32.0
naicsDescription	String	A description of the NAICS classification.	32.0
name	String	The name of the company.	32.0
numberOfEmployees	Integer	The number of employees who are working for the company.	32.0
ownership	String	The type of ownership of the company: • Public • Private	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• Government • Other	
`phoneNumbers`	ConnectApi.PhoneNumber	The list of telephone numbers for the company, including the type. Here are some possible types of telephone numbers. • Mobile • Work • Fax	32.0
`sic`	String	Standard Industrial Codes (SIC) is a numbering convention that indicates what type of service a business provides. It's a four-digit value.	32.0
`sicDescription`	String	A description of the SIC classification.	32.0
`site`	String	Company's site. For example, HQ, Single Location, or Branch. An organization status of the company. • Branch: a secondary location to a headquarter location. • Headquarter: the parent company has branches or subsidiaries. • Single Location: a single business with no subsidiaries or branches.	32.0
`tickerSymbol`	String	The symbol that uniquely identifies companies that are traded on public stock exchanges.	32.0
`tradeStyle`	String	A legal name under which a company conducts business.	32.0
`updatedDate`	Datetime	The date of the most recent change to this company's information.	32.0
`website`	String	The standard URL for the company's home page.	32.0
`yearStarted`	String	The year when the company was founded.	32.0

ConnectApi.DatacloudCompanies

Lists all companies that were purchased in a specific order, page URLs, and the number of companies in the order.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`companies`	ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany	A detailed list of companies that were part of a single order.	32.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	The URL for the current page of a list of companies.	32.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	32.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	The URL to the previous page of companies that were viewed before the current page. If this value is `null`, there's no previous page.	32.0
`total`	Integer	The number of companies in the order. You can calculate the number of pages to display by dividing this number by your page size. The default page size is 25.	32.0

ConnectApi.DatacloudContact

Information about a Data.com contact.

All contact information is visible for contacts that you purchased. If you have not purchased a contact, some of the fields will be hidden. Hidden fields are fully or partially hidden by asterisks "***."

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`address`	ConnectApi.Address	The contact's business address.	32.0
`companyId`	String	A unique numerical identifier for the company where the contact works. This is the Data.com identifier for a company.	32.0
`companyName`	String	The company name where the contact works.	32.0
`contactId`	String	A unique numerical identifier for the contact. This is the Data.com identifier for a contact.	32.0
`department`	String	The department in the company where the contact works. Here are some possible departments. • Engineering • IT • Marketing • Sales	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`email`	String	The most current business email address for the contact.	32.0
`firstName`	String	The first name of the contact.	32.0
`isInactive`	Boolean	Whether this contact is active (true) or not (false). Inactive contacts have out-of-date information in Data.com.	32.0
`isOwned`	Boolean	Whether this contact is owned (true) or not (false).	32.0
`lastName`	String	The last name of the contact.	32.0
`level`	String	A human resource label that designates a person's level in the company. Here are some possible levels. • C-Level • Director • Manager • Staff	32.0
`phoneNumbers`	ConnectApi.PhoneNumber	Telephone numbers for the contact, which can include direct-dial business telephone numbers, mobile telephone numbers, and business headquarters telephone numbers. The type of telephone number is also indicated.	32.0
`title`	String	The title of the contact, such as CEO or Vice President.	32.0
`updatedDate`	Datetime	The date of the most recent change to this contact's information.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DatacloudContacts

ConnectApi.DatacloudContacts

Lists all contacts that were purchased in the specific order, page URLs, and the number of contacts in the order.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`contacts`	List<`ConnectApi.DatacloudContact`>	A detailed list of purchased contacts.	32.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	URL to the current page of contacts.	32.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page of contacts. This value is null if there is no previous page.	32.0
total	Integer	Number of contacts that are associated with this order. Can be greater than the number of contacts that are shown on a single page.	32.0

ConnectApi.DatacloudOrder

Represents a Datacloud order.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
entityUrl	String	URL to a list of contacts or companies that were purchased with this order.	32.0
id	String	Unique number that's used to track your order information.	32.0
purchaseCount	Integer	Number of contacts or companies that were purchased for this order.	32.0
purchaseDate	Datetime	Purchase date for this order.	32.0
url	String	GET request URL for this order.	32.0

ConnectApi.DatacloudPurchaseUsage

Information about Data.com point usage for monthly and list pool users.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
listpoolCreditsAvailable	Integer	The points or credits that are available in a pool of credits for your organization. This pool of credits can be used by any List Pool User in your organization.	32.0
listpoolCreditsUsed	Integer	The points or credits that have been used from a pool of credits that are used by List Pool Users to purchase records.	32.0
monthlyCreditsAvailable	Integer	The total credits that are assigned to a Monthly User. Unused credits expire at the end of each month.	32.0
monthlyCreditsUsed	Integer	The credits that are used by a Monthly User for the current month.	32.0

ConnectApi.DateRecordField

Record field containing a date.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`dateValue`	Datetime	Date that a machine can read. Ignore the trailing `00:00:00.000Z` characters.	29.0

ConnectApi.DeleteIntent

Delete intent for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`managedSocialAccount`	`ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount`	Managed social account that deletes the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DeleteIntents

ConnectApi.DeleteIntents

List of delete intents for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`deletes`	List<`ConnectApi.DeleteIntent`>	List of delete intents for the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.DeleteSocialPostIntent

Delete intent for the social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`socialAccountId`	String	ID of the social account that deletes the social post.	46.0
`socialPostId`	String	ID of the social post to delete.	46.0

ConnectApi.DigestJob

Represents a successfully enqueued API digest job request.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`period`	`ConnectApi.DigestPeriod`	Time period that's included in a Chatter email digest. Values are: • `DailyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous day. • `WeeklyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous week.	37.0

ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it's a direct message.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`memberChanges`	`ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivityPage`	Member activities of the direct message, with the most recent activity first.	40.0
`members`	`ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage`	Members included in the direct message.	39.0
`originalMembers`	`ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage`	Original members of the direct message.	40.0
`subject`	String	Subject of the direct message.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivity

Direct message member activity.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`activityDate`	Datetime	Direct message member activity date.	40.0
`actor`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User who changed the direct message membership.	40.0
`membersAdded`	`ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage`	Members added to the direct message as part of the activity.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
membersRemoved	ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage	Members removed from the direct message as part of the activity.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivityPage

ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivityPage

A page of direct message member activities.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
activities	List<ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivity>	Collection of direct message member activities.	40.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	40.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	40.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability

ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage

A collection of direct message members.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	String	Page token to access the current page of direct message members.	39.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of direct message members.	39.0
nextPageToken	String	Page token to access the next page of direct message members.	39.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of direct message members.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
users	List<ConnectApi.UserSummary>	Collection of direct message members.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability

ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability

ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivity

ConnectApi.DistanceCalculationOutputRepresentation

Shipping distance data for a set of inventory locations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
averageDistance	Double	The average distance from the locations to the order recipient.	51.0
locations	List<ConnectApi.LocationOutputRepresentation>	The list of locations and their distances to the order recipient.	51.0
rank	Integer	This result's rank among all results by average distance to the order recipient.	51.0

ConnectApi.DistinctFacetValue

Distinct facet value.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.FacetValue.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
displayName	String	Display name of the facet value.	52.0
nameOrId	String	Developer name of the attribute.	52.0
productCount	Long	Number of products in the search result that match the facet value.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DistinctValueSearchFacet

ConnectApi.DistinctValueSearchFacet

Facet with distinct values in product search results.

This class is a subclass of ConnectApi.SearchFacet.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
values	List<ConnectApi.DistinctFacetValue>	Values of the facet found in the search result. Sorted by display name in alphabetical order.	52.0

ConnectApi.DownVoteSummary

Summary of a downvote.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.EditCapability

If a feed element or comment has this capability, users who have permission can edit it.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
isEditRestricted	Boolean	Specifies whether editing this feed element or comment is restricted. If `true`, the context user can't edit this feed element or comment. If `false`, the context user may or may not have permission to edit this feed element or comment. To determine if the context user can edit a feed element or comment, use the `isFeedElementEditableByMe(communityId, feedElementId)` or `isCommentEditableByMe(communityId, commentId)` method.	34.0
isEditableByMeUrl	String	The URL to check if the context user is able to edit this feed element or comment.	34.0
lastEditedBy	ConnectApi.Actor	Who last edited this feed element or comment.	34.0
lastEditedDate	Datetime	The most recent edit date of this feed element or comment.	34.0
latestRevision	Integer	The most recent revision of this feed element or comment.	34.0
relativeLastEditedDate	String	Relative last edited date, for example, "2h ago."	34.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities
- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.EmailAddress

Email address.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`displayName`	String	The display name for the email address.	29.0
`emailAddress`	String	The email address.	29.0
`relatedRecord`	`ConnectApi.RecordSummary`	The summary of a related record, for example, a contact or user summary.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability

ConnectApi.EmailAttachment

An email attachment in an email message.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attachment`	`ConnectApi.RecordSummary`	Record summary of the attachment.	36.0
`contentType`	String	Type of attachment.	36.0
`fileName`	String	Name of the attachment.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability

ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldCollectionInfo

The merge fields for an object.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`mergeFields`	List<String>	List of merge fields for a single object.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldInfo

ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldInfo

The map for objects and their merge fields.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
entityToMergeFieldsMap	Map<String, ConnectApi.EmailMergeFieldCollectionInfo>	Map for multiple objects and their merge field collections.	39.0

ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has an email message from a case.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
attachments	List<ConnectApi.EmailAttachment>	Attachments in the email message.	36.0
bccAddresses	List<ConnectApi.EmailAddress>	BCC addresses for the email message.	36.0
body	String	Body of the email message.	36.0
ccAddresses	List<ConnectApi.EmailAddress>	CC addresses for the email message.	36.0
direction	ConnectApi.EmailMessageDirection	Direction of the email message. Values are: • Inbound—An inbound message (sent by a customer). • Outbound—An outbound message (sent to a customer by a support agent).	32.0
emailMessageId	String	ID of the email message.	32.0
fromAddress	ConnectApi.EmailAddress	From address for the email message.	36.0
htmlExpandEmailThread	Integer	Start location of previous email thread.	47.0
isRichText	Boolean	Indicates whether the body of the email message is in rich text format.	36.0
status	ConnectApi.EmailMessageStatus	Status of an email message on a case. Values are: • DraftStatus • ForwardedStatus • NewStatus • ReadStatus • RepliedStatus • SentStatus	47.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`subject`	String	Subject of the email message.	32.0
`textBody`	String	Body of the email message. **Important:** In version 36.0 and later, use the `body` property.	32.0–35.0
`toAddresses`	List<`ConnectApi.EmailAddress`>	To addresses of the email message.	32.0
`totalAttachments`	Integer	Total number of attachments in the email message.	38.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.Emoji

An emoji.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`category`	String	Emoji category.	39.0
`shortcut`	String	Emoji shortcut.	39.0
`unicodeCharacter`	String	Emoji's unicode character.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.EmojiCollection

ConnectApi.EmojiCollection

A collection of emojis.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`emojis`	List<`ConnectApi.Emoji`>	A collection of emojis.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SupportedEmojis

ConnectApi.EnhancedLinkCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a link that may contain supplemental information like an icon, a title, and a description.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	A description with a 500 character limit.	32.0
`icon`	`ConnectApi.Icon`	A icon.	32.0
`linkRecordId`	String	A ID associated with the link if the link URL refers to a Salesforce record.	32.0
`linkUrl`	String	A link URL to a detail page if available content can't display inline.	32.0
`title`	String	A title to a detail page.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.EnsureFundsAsyncOutputRepresentation

ID of the background operation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`backgroundOperationId`	String	ID of the background operation.	48.0

ConnectApi.EnsureRefundsAsyncOutputRepresentation

ID of the background operation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`backgroundOperationId`	String	ID of the background operation.	48.0

ConnectApi.EntityLabel

An entity's label.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Localized singular label of the entity.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`labelPlural`	String	Localized plural label of the entity.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecordSummary

ConnectApi.EntityLinkSegment

Entity link segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif Class`	A set of small, medium, and large icons that indicate whether the entity is a file, group, record, or user. The motif can also contain the object's base color.	28.0
`reference`	`ConnectApi. Reference`	A reference to the link object if applicable, otherwise, `null`.	28.0

ConnectApi.EntityRecommendation

A Chatter, custom, or static recommendation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actOnUrl`	String	For user, file, group, topic, and record `entity` types, use this Connect REST URL with a POST request to take action on the recommendation. For `ConnectApi.RecommendedObject entity` types, such as custom recommendations, use the `actionUrl` property of the ConnectApi.PlatformAction to take action on the recommendation.	32.0
`action`	`ConnectApi. RecommendationActionType`	Specifies the action to take on a recommendation. • `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user. • `join`—Join a group. • `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.	32.0
`entity`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	The entity with which the receiver is recommended to take action.	32.0

ConnectApi.ErrorResponse

Base error response.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errorCode`	String	Error code.	48.0
`message`	String	More error detail, if available.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation

ConnectApi.Extension

An extension.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`alternativeRepresentation`	`ConnectApi.Alternative`	Alternative representation of the extension.	40.0
`attachmentId`	String	Attachment ID of the extension.	41.0
`extensionId`	String	ID of the extension.	40.0
`payload`	String	Payload associated with the extension.	40.0
`payloadVersion`	String	Payload version that identifies the structure of the payload associated with the extension.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapability

ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinition

An extension's definition.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canAccess`	Boolean	Indicates whether users can access the extension when it's associated with a feed element.	40.0
`canCreate`	Boolean	Indicates whether users can create a feed element with the extension in the org.	40.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	Date when the extension was created.	40.0
`description`	String	Description of the extension.	40.0
`iconUrl`	String	URL to the icon for the extension.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of the extension.	40.0
`information Collection`	List<`ConnectApi.AbstractExtensionInformation`>	Collection of extension information.	40.0
`isEnabled InCommunity`	Boolean	Indicates whether the extension is enabled in the site.	40.0 only
`isEnabled InLightningPublisher`	Boolean	Indicates whether the extension is enabled in the Lightning publisher.	40.0 only
`name`	String	Name of the extension.	40.0
`position`	Integer	Position in which the extension is displayed in the publisher.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinitions

ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinitions

A collection of extension definitions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	40.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	40.0
`extension Definitions`	List<`ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinition`>	Collection of extension definitions.	40.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of extensions returned.	40.0

ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more extension attachments.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
items	List<ConnectApi.Extension>	List of extensions associated with the feed element.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.ExternalFilePermissionInformation

External file permission information.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
externalFilePermissionTypes	List<ConnectApi.ContentHubPermissionType>	Available permission types for the parent folder of the external file, or null for non-external files or when includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo is false.	39.0
externalFilePermissionsFailure	Boolean	true if the retrieval of external file information failed or if includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo is false; false otherwise.	39.0
externalFilePermissionsInfoFailureReason	String	Explanation of the failure if a failure occurred and includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo is true; null otherwise.	39.0
externalFileSharingStatus	ConnectApi.ContentHubExternalItemSharingType	Sharing status for the external file. Values are: • DomainSharing—File is shared with the domain. • PrivateSharing—File is private or shared only with individuals. • PublicSharing—File is publicly shared. Value is null for non-external files or when includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo is false.	39.0
repositoryPublicGroups	List<ConnectApi.RepositoryGroupSummary>	Available public groups in the external repository or null for non-external files or when includeExternalFilePermissionsInfo is false.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFile

ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput

Collection of externally managed accounts.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`externalManagedAccounts`	List<`ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountOutput`>	Collection of externally managed accounts.	49.0
`totalExternalManagedAccounts`	Integer	Total number of externally managed accounts.	49.0

ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountOutput

Externally managed account.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`accountId`	String	ID of the account managed by another account.	49.0
`externalManagedAccountId`	String	ID of the external managed account record.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExternalManagedAccountCollectionOutput

ConnectApi.FacetValue

Facet value.

This class is abstract and is a superclass of ConnectApi.DistinctFacetValue.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetType`	Search facet type. Value is: • `DistinctValue`	52.0

ConnectApi.Features

Features available to the context user in the org.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`activityReminderNotificationsEnabled`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	37.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`chatter`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter is enabled.	28.0
`chatterActivity`	Boolean	Specifies whether user details include information about Chatter activity.	28.0
`chatterAnswers`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter Answers is enabled. Note: With the Spring '18 release, Salesforce no longer supports Chatter Answers. Users of Chatter Answers can post, answer, comment, or view existing Chatter Answers data, but support and updates are scheduled to end. We recommend transitioning to Chatter Questions. For more information, see End of Support for Chatter Answers in Spring '18.	29.0
`chatterGlobalInfluence`	Boolean	Specifies whether user details include global Chatter activity.	28.0
`chatterGroupRecords`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter groups can have records associated with them.	30.0
`chatterGroupRecordSharing`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter records are implicitly shared among group members when records are added to groups.	30.0
`chatterMessages`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter messages are enabled.	28.0
`chatterTopics`	Boolean	Specifies whether topics are enabled.	28.0
`communitiesEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether digital experiences is enabled.	31.0
`communityModeration`	Boolean	Specifies whether moderation is enabled.	29.0
`communityReputation`	Boolean	Specifies whether reputation is enabled.	32.0
`dashboardComponentSnapshots`	Boolean	Specifies whether the user can post dashboard component snapshots.	28.0
`defaultCurrencyIsoCode`	String	ISO code of the default currency. Applicable only when `multiCurrency` is `false`.	28.0
`einsteinVoiceEnabled`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`einsteinVoiceInPilotEnabled`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	46.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`einsteinVoiceLoggingEnabled`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`einsteinVoiceProviderId`	Integer	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`favoritesEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether favorites in Lightning are enabled.	41.0
`feedPolling`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	28.0
`feedStreamEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether Chatter feed streams are enabled.	39.0
`files`	Boolean	Specifies whether files can act as resources for Connect REST API.	28.0
`filesOnComments`	Boolean	Specifies whether files can be attached to comments.	28.0
`forecasting3AggregatedEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether aggregated forecasting is enabled for mobile clients.	38.0
`forecastingEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether forecasting is enabled.	38.0
`forecastingPeriodRange`	Integer	Range of the forecasting period.	38.0
`forecastingPeriodStart`	Integer	Start index for the forecasting period.	38.0
`forecastingPeriodType`	`ConnectApi.PeriodType`	Time period used for forecasting. Values are: • `Month` • `Quarter` • `Week` • `Year`	38.0
`groupsCanFollow`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	28.0–29.0
`ideas`	Boolean	Specifies whether Ideas is enabled.	29.0
`liveAgentHostName`	String	Live Agent host name configured for the org.	41.0
`managedTopicsEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether managed topics are enabled.	32.0
`maxEntitySubscriptionsPerStream`	Integer	Specifies the maximum number of feed-enabled entities that can be subscribed to in a Chatter stream.	39.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`maxFilesPerFeedItem`	Integer	Specifies the maximum number of files that can be added to a feed item.	36.0
`maxStreamsPerPerson`	Integer	Specifies the maximum number of Chatter streams that a user can have.	39.0
`mobileNotificationsEnabled`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	29.0
`multiCurrency`	Boolean	Specifies whether the org uses multiple currencies (`true`) or not (`false`). When `false`, the `defaultCurrencyIsoCode` indicates the ISO code of the default currency.	28.0
`offlineEditEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether the offline object permissions are enabled for Salesforce for Android and Salesforce for iOS mobile clients.	37.0
`publisherActions`	Boolean	Specifies whether actions in the publisher are enabled.	28.0
`storeDataOnDevicesEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether the Salesforce for Android and Salesforce for iOS can use secure, persistent storage on mobile devices to cache data.	30.0
`thanksAllowed`	Boolean	Reserved for future use.	28.0
`trendingTopics`	Boolean	Specifies whether trending topics are enabled.	28.0
`userNavItemsEnabled`	Boolean	Specifies whether users can customize the navigation bar in Lightning.	41.0
`viralInvitesAllowed`	Boolean	Specifies whether existing Chatter users can invite people in their company to use Chatter.	28.0
`wave`	Boolean	Specifies whether Tableau CRM is enabled.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

- getSettings()
- ConnectApi.OrganizationSettings

ConnectApi.Feed

Chatter feed.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedElementPostUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL to post feed elements to this subject.	31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedElements`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementPage`	Page of feed elements for the feed specified in `redirectedFeedType`. Otherwise, `null`.	40.0
`feedElementsUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL to feed elements.	31.0
`feedItemsUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL to feed items.	28.0–31.0
`isModifedUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL with a *`since`* request parameter that contains an opaque token that describes when the feed was last modified. Returns `null` if the feed isn't a news feed. Use this URL to poll a news feed for updates. **Important:** This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.	28.0
`pinnedFeedElementsUrl`	String	URL to pinned feed items.	41.0
`redirectedFeedFilter`	`ConnectApi.FeedFilter`	Filter for the feed specified in `redirectedFeedType`. Otherwise, `null`.	42.0
`redirectedFeedSort`	`ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`	Sort order for the feed specified in `redirectedFeedType`. Otherwise, `null`.	42.0
`redirectedFeedType`	`ConnectApi.FeedType`	Specifies which feed is returned if `pageSize` is specified. Otherwise, `null`.	40.0
`respectsMute`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed respects the mute feature. If `true`, the feed shows the ability to mute or unmute each element, depending on the value of `isMutedByMe`; `null` if the mute feature is disabled for the organization.	35.0

ConnectApi.FeedBody

Feed body.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractMessageBody

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.Comment
- ConnectApi.FeedElement
- ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary

ConnectApi.FeedDirectory

Directory of feeds and favorites.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`favorites`	`List<ConnectApi.FeedFavorite>`	A list of feed favorites	30.0
`feeds`	`List<ConnectApi.FeedDirectoryItem>`	A list of feeds	30.0

ConnectApi.FeedDirectoryItem

Definition of a feed.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedElementsUrl`	String	Connect REST API resource URL for the feed elements.	
`feedItemsUrl`	String	Connect REST API resource URL for the feed items of a specific feed.	30.0–31.0
`feedType`	`ConnectApi.FeedType` Enum	The feed type. One of these values: • `Bookmarks`—Contains all feed items saved as bookmarks by the context user. • `Company`—Contains all feed items except feed items of type `TrackedChange`. To see the feed item, the user must have sharing access to its parent. • `DirectMessageModeration`—Contains all direct messages that are flagged for moderation. The Direct Message Moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Chatter Messages permissions. • `DirectMessages`—Contains all feed items of the context user's direct messages. • `Draft`—Contains all the feed items that the context user drafted. • `Files`—Contains all feed items that contain files posted by people or groups that the context user follows. • `Filter`—Contains the news feed filtered to contain feed items whose parent is a specified object type. • `Groups`—Contains all feed items from all groups the context user either owns or is a member of. • `Home`—Contains all feed items associated with any managed topic in an Experience Cloud site. • `Landing`—Contains all feed items that best drive user engagement when the feed is requested. Allows clients to avoid an empty feed when there aren't many personalized feed items.	30.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `Moderation`—Contains all feed items that are flagged for moderation, except direct messages. The moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Feeds permissions. • `Mute`—Contains all feed items that the context user muted. • `News`—Contains all updates for people the context user follows, groups the user is a member of, and files and records the user is following. Contains all updates for records whose parent is the context user. • `PendingReview`—Contains all feed items and comments that are pending review. • `People`—Contains all feed items posted by all people the context user follows. • `Record`—Contains all feed items whose parent is a specified record, which could be a group, user, object, file, or any other standard or custom object. When the record is a group, the feed also contains feed items that mention the group. When the record is a user, the feed contains only feed items on that user. You can get another user's record feed. • `Streams`—Contains all feed items for any combination of up to 25 feed-enabled entities that the context user subscribes to in a stream. Examples of feed-enabled entities include people, groups, and records, • `To`—Contains all feed items with mentions of the context user. Contains feed items the context user commented on and feed items created by the context user that are commented on. • `Topics`—Contains all feed items that include the specified topic. • `UserProfile`—Contains feed items created when a user changes records that can be tracked in a feed. Contains feed items whose parent is the user and feed items that @mention the user. This feed is different than the news feed, which returns more feed items, including group updates. You can get another user's user profile feed.	
`feedUrl`	String	Connect REST API resource URL for a specific feed	30.0
`keyPrefix`	String	A *key prefix* is the first three characters of a record ID, which specifies the object type. For filter feeds, this value is the key prefix associated with the object type used to filter this feed. All feed items in this feed have a parent whose object type matches this key prefix value. For non-filter feeds, this value is `null`.	30.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Localized label of the feed	30.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedDirectory

ConnectApi.FeedElement

Feed elements are the top-level items that a feed contains. Feeds are feed element containers.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.FeedItem
- ConnectApi.GenericFeedElement

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`body`	`ConnectApi.FeedBody`	Information about the feed element. **Important:** Use the `header.text` property as the default value for rendering text because the `body.text` property can be `null`.	22.0
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities`	A container for all capabilities that can be included with a feed element.	31.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	31.0
`feedElementType`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementType`	Feed elements are the top-level objects that a feed contains. The feed element type describes the characteristics of that feed element. One of these values: • `Bundle`—A container of feed elements. A bundle also has a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values. • `FeedItem`—A feed item has a single parent and is scoped to oneExperience Cloud site or across all Experience Cloud sites. A feed item can have capabilities such as bookmarks, canvas, content, comment, link, poll. Feed items have a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values.	31.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `Recommendation`—A recommendation is a feed element with a recommendations capability. A recommendation suggests records to follow, groups to join, or applications that are helpful to the context user.	
`header`	`ConnectApi.MessageBody`	The header is the title of the post. This property contains renderable plain text for all the segments of the message. If a client doesn't know how to render a feed element type, it should render this text.	31.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the feed element.	22.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	31.0
`parent`	`ConnectApi.ActorWithId`	Feed element's parent	28.0
`relativeCreatedDate`	String	The created date formatted as a relative, localized string, for example, "17m ago" or "Yesterday."	31.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to this feed element.	22.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.Announcement
- ConnectApi.FeedElementPage
- ConnectApi.PinnedFeedElements
- ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

A container for all capabilities that can be included with a feed element.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`approval`	`ConnectApi.ApprovalCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, it includes information about an approval.	32.0
`associatedActions`	`ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, it has platform actions associated with it.	33.0
`banner`	`ConnectApi.BannerCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, it has a banner motif and style.	31.0
`bookmarks`	`ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, the context user can bookmark it.	31.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
bundle	ConnectApi.BundleCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a container of feed elements called a *bundle*.	31.0
callCollaboration	ConnectApi.CallCollaborationCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a recording comment.	51.0
canvas	ConnectApi.CanvasCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it renders a canvas app.	32.0
caseComment	ConnectApi.CaseCommentCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a case comment on the case feed.	32.0
chatterLikes	ConnectApi.ChatterLikesCapability	If a feed element has this capability, the context user can like it. Exposes information about existing likes.	31.0
close	ConnectApi.CloseCapability	If a feed element has this capability, users with permission can close it.	43.0
comments	ConnectApi.CommentsCapability	If a feed element or comment has this capability, the context user can add a comment to it.	31.0
content	ConnectApi.ContentCapability	If a comment has this capability, it has a file attachment. Most ConnectApi.ContentCapability properties are null if the content has been deleted from the feed element or if the access has changed to private. **Important:** In version 36.0 and later, use the files property.	32.0–35.0
dashboardComponentSnapshot	ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshotCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a dashboard component snapshot. A snapshot is a static image of a dashboard component at a specific point in time.	32.0
directMessage	ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it's a direct message.	39.0
edit	ConnectApi.EditCapability	If a feed element has this capability, users who have permission can edit it.	34.0
emailMessage	ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has an email message from a case.	32.0
enhancedLink	ConnectApi.EnhancedLinkCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a link that may contain supplemental information like an icon, a title, and a description.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
extensions	ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more extension attachments.	40.0
feedEntityShare	ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapability	If a feed element or comment has this capability, a feed entity is shared with it.	39.0
files	ConnectApi.FilesCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more file attachments.	36.0
interactions	ConnectApi.InteractionsCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has information about user interactions.	37.0
link	ConnectApi.LinkCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a link.	32.0
mediaReferences	ConnectApi.MediaReferenceCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more media references.	41.0
moderation	ConnectApi.ModerationCapability	If a feed element has this capability, users in an Experience Cloud site can flag it for moderation.	31.0
mute	ConnectApi.MuteCapability	If a feed element has this capability, users can mute it.	35.0
origin	ConnectApi.OriginCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it was created by a feed action.	33.0
pin	ConnectApi.PinCapability	If a feed element has this capability, users who have permission can pin it to a feed.	41.0
poll	ConnectApi.PollCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it includes a poll.	31.0
questionAndAnswers	ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a question and comments on the feed element are answers to the question.	31.0
readBy	ConnectApi.ReadByCapability	If a feed element has this capability, the context user can mark it as read.	40.0
recommendations	ConnectApi.RecommendationsCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it has a recommendation.	32.0
recordSnaphot	ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotCapability	If a feed element has this capability, it contains all the snapshotted fields of a record for a single create record event.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`socialPost`	`ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, it can interact with a social post on a social network.	36.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.StatusCapability`	If a feed post or comment has this capability, it has a status that determines its visibility.	37.0
`topics`	`ConnectApi.TopicsCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, the context user can add topics to it. Topics help users organize and discover conversations.	31.0
`trackedChanges`	`ConnectApi.TrackedChangesCapability`	If a feed element has this capability, it contains all changes to a record for a single tracked change event.	32.0
`upDownVote`	`ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability`	If a feed post or comment has this capability, users can upvote or downvote it.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedElement
- ConnectApi.FeedItemSummary

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability

A feed element capability, which defines the characteristics of a feed element.

In API version 30.0 and earlier, most feed items can have comments, likes, topics, and so on. In version 31.0 and later, every feed item (and feed element) can have a unique set of *capabilities*. If a capability property exists on a feed element, that capability is available, even if the capability property doesn't have a value. For example, if the `ChatterLikes` capability property exists on a feed element (with or without a value), the context user can like that feed element. If the capability property doesn't exist, it isn't possible to like that feed element. A capability can also contain associated data. For example, the `Moderation` capability contains data about moderation flags.

This class is abstract.

This class is a superclass of:

- ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapability
- ConnectApi.ApprovalCapability
- ConnectApi.BannerCapability
- ConnectApi.BookmarksCapability
- ConnectApi.BundleCapability
- ConnectApi.CallCollaborationCapability
- ConnectApi.CanvasCapability
- ConnectApi.CaseCommentCapability
- ConnectApi.ChatterLikesCapability
- ConnectApi.CloseCapability
- ConnectApi.CommentsCapability

- ConnectApi.ContentCapability
- ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshotCapability
- ConnectApi.DirectMessageCapability
- ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability
- ConnectApi.EnhancedLinkCapability
- ConnectApi.ExtensionsCapability
- ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapability
- ConnectApi.FilesCapability
- ConnectApi.InteractionsCapability
- ConnectApi.LinkCapability
- ConnectApi.MediaReferenceCapability
- ConnectApi.ModerationCapability
- ConnectApi.MuteCapability
- ConnectApi.OriginCapability
- ConnectApi.PinCapability
- ConnectApi.PollCapability
- ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability
- ConnectApi.ReadByCapability
- ConnectApi.RecommendationsCapability
- ConnectApi.RecordCapability
- ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotCapability
- ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability
- ConnectApi.StatusCapability
- ConnectApi.TopicsCapability
- ConnectApi.TrackedChangesCapability
- ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability
- ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability

This class doesn't have any properties.

ConnectApi.FeedElementPage

A paged collection of `ConnectApi.FeedElement` objects.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	31.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	31.0
`elements`	List<`ConnectApi.FeedElement`>	Collection of feed elements.	31.0
`isModifiedToken`	String	Opaque polling token to use in the *`since`* parameter of the `ChatterFeeds.isModified`	31.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		method. The token describes when the feed was last modified. **Important:** This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.	
`isModifiedUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL with a *`since`* request parameter that contains an opaque token that describes when the feed was last modified. Returns `null` if the feed isn't a news feed. Use this URL to poll a news feed for updates. **Important:** This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.	31.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	31.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	31.0
`updatesToken`	String	A token to use in a request to the `ConnectApi.ChatterFeeds.getFeedElementsUpdatedSince` method.	31.0
`updatesUrl`	String	Connect REST API feed resource containing the feed elements that have been updated since the feed was refreshed. If the feed doesn't support this feature, the value is `null`.	31.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.BundleCapability

ConnectApi.Feed

ConnectApi.FeedEnabledEntity

An entity that can have feeds associated with it.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	The 18-character ID of the record.	39.0
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif`	Small, medium, and large icons indicating the record's type.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	The localized name of the record.	39.0
`type`	String	The type of the record.	39.0
`url`	String	URL to the record.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterStream

ConnectApi.FeedEntityIsEditable

Indicates if the context user can edit a feed element or comment.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`areAttachmentsEditableByMe`	Boolean	`true` if the context user can add and remove attachments on the feed element or comment, `false` otherwise.	36.0
`feedEntityUrl`	String	URL of the feed element or comment.	34.0
`isEditableByMe`	Boolean	`true` if the context user can edit the feed element or comment, `false` otherwise.	34.0

ConnectApi.FeedEntityNotAvailableSummary

A summary when the feed entity isn't available.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.FeedEntityReadSummary

Summary of the feed post or comment that was read.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapability

If a feed element or comment has this capability, a feed entity is shared with it.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedEntity`	`ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary`	The summary of the feed entity that is shared with the feed element or comment.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary

The summary of a feed entity that is shared with a feed element.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.FeedItemSummary
- ConnectApi.FeedEntityNotAvailableSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actor`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	Entity that created the feed entity.	39.0
`body`	`ConnectApi.FeedBody`	Information about the feed entity.	39.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, when the entity was created.	39.0
`feedElementType`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementType`	Type of feed entity. • `Bundle`—A container of feed elements. A bundle also has a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values. • `FeedItem`—A feed item has a single parent and is scoped to oneExperience Cloud site or across all Experience Cloud sites. A feed item can have capabilities such as bookmarks, canvas, content, comment, link, poll. Feed items have a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values. • `Recommendation`—A recommendation is a feed element with a recommendations capability. A recommendation suggests records to follow, groups to join, or applications that are helpful to the context user.	39.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the feed entity.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
isEntityAvailable	Boolean	Specifies whether the entity is available. If false, either the user doesn't have access to the entity or the entity was deleted.	39.0
parent	ConnectApi.ActorWithId	Parent of the feed entity.	39.0
relativeCreatedDate	String	Relative created date, for example, "2h ago."	39.0
url	String	URL to the feed entity.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedEntityShareCapability

ConnectApi.FeedFavorite

Feed favorite.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
community	ConnectApi.Reference	Information about the Experience Cloud site that contains the favorite.	28.0
createdBy	ConnectApi.UserSummary	Favorite's creator.	28.0
feedUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the feed item for this favorite.	28.0
id	String	Favorite's 18–character ID.	28.0
lastViewDate	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	28.0
name	String	Favorite's name.	28.0
searchText	String	If the favorite is from a search, contains the search text, otherwise, an empty string.	28.0
target	ConnectApi.Reference	A reference to the topic if applicable, null otherwise.	28.0
type	ConnectApi.FeedFavoriteType Enum	An empty string or one of the following values: • ListView • Search • Topic	28.0
url	String	Connect REST API URL to this favorite.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`user`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Information about the user who saved this favorite.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedDirectory

ConnectApi.FeedFavorites

ConnectApi.FeedFavorites

Feed favorites.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`favorites`	`List<ConnectApi.FeedFavorite>`	Complete list of favorites.	28.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of favorites.	28.0

ConnectApi.FeedItem

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElement Class as of 31.0.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actor`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	The entity that created the feed item.	28.0
`attachment`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment`	Information about the attachment. If there is no attachment, returns `null`. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities` property.	28.0–31.0
`canShare`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed item can be shared. If a feed item has multiple file attachments and at least one attachment has been deleted or is inaccessible, the feed item can't be shared. The `canShare` value is incorrectly set to `true` in these cases. **Important:** As of version 39.0, use the `isSharable` property.	28.0–38.0
`clientInfo`	`ConnectApi.ClientInfo`	Information about the connected app used to authenticate the connection.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`comments`	`ConnectApi.CommentPage`	First page of comments for this feed item. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities.comments.page` property.	28.0–31.0
`event`	Boolean	`true` if feed item is created due to an event change, `false` otherwise.	22.0
`hasVerifiedComment`	Boolean	`true` if the feed item has a verified comment, otherwise `false`.	41.0
`isBookmarkedByCurrentUser`	Boolean	`true` if the context user has bookmarked this feed item, otherwise, `false`. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities.bookmarks.isBookmarkedByCurrentUser` property.	28.0–31.0
`isDeleteRestricted`	Boolean	If this property is `true` the comment cannot be deleted by the context user. If it is `false`, it might be possible for the context user to delete the comment, but it is not guaranteed.	28.0
`isLikedByCurrentUser`	Boolean	`true` if the context user has liked this feed item, otherwise, `false`. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities.chatterLikes.isLikedByCurrentUser` property.	28.0–31.0
`isSharable`	Boolean	Indicates whether the feed item can be shared.	39.0
`likes`	`ConnectApi.ChatterLikePage`	First page of likes for this feed item. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities.chatterLikes.page` property.	28.0–31.0
`likesMessage`	`ConnectApi.MessageBody`	A message body the describes who likes the feed item. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited `capabilities.chatterLikes.likesMessage` property.	28.0–31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
moderationFlags	ConnectApi.ModerationFlags	Information about the moderation flags on a feed item. If ConnectApi.Features.communityModeration is false, this property is null. **Important:** As of version 31.0, use the inherited capabilities.moderation.moderationFlags property.	29.0–30.0
myLike	ConnectApi.Reference	If the context user has liked the feed item, this property is a reference to the specific like, otherwise, null. **Important:** As of version 32.0, use the inherited capabilities.chatterLikes.myLike property.	28.0–31.0
originalFeedItem	ConnectApi.Reference	A reference to the original feed item if this feed item is a shared feed item, otherwise, null.	28.0
originalFeedItemActor	ConnectApi.Actor	If this feed item is a shared feed item, returns information about the original poster of the feed item, otherwise, returns null.	28.0
photoUrl	String	URL of the photo associated with the feed item	28.0
preamble	ConnectApi.MessageBody	A collection of message segments, including the unformatted text of the message that you can use as the title of a feed item. Message segments include name, link, and motif icon information for the actor that created the feed item. **Important:** For API versions 29.0 and 30.0, use the ConnectApi.FeedItem.preamble.text property as the default case to render text. For API versions 31.0 and later, use the ConnectApi.FeedElement.header.text property as the default case to render text.	28.0-30.0
topics	ConnectApi.FeedItemTopicPage	Topics for this feed item. **Important:** As of version 31.0, use the inherited capabilities.topics.items property.	28.0–31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemType`	Type of feed item. **Important:** As of API version 32.0, use the `capabilities` property to determine what can be done with a feed item. See Working with Feeds and Feed Elements. One of these values: • `ActivityEvent`—Feed item generated in Case Feed when an event or task associated with a parent record with a feed enabled is created or updated. • `AdvancedTextPost`—A feed item with advanced text formatting, such as a group announcement post. • `ApprovalPost`—Feed item with an approval capability. Approvers can act on the feed item parent. • `AttachArticleEvent`—Feed item generated when an article is attached to a case in Case Feed. • `BasicTemplateFeedItem`—Feed item with an enhanced link capability. • `CallLogPost`—Feed item generated when a call log is saved to a case in Case Feed. • `CanvasPost`—Feed item generated by a canvas app in the publisher or from Connect REST API or Connect in Apex. The post itself is a link to a canvas app. • `CaseCommentPost`—Feed item generated when a case comment is saved in Case Feed. • `ChangeStatusPost`—Feed item generated when the status of a case is changed in Case Feed. • `ChatTranscriptionPost`—Feed item generated in Case Feed when a Live Agent chat transcript is saved to a case. • `CollaborationGroupCreated`—Feed item generated when a new public group is created. Contains a link to the new group. • `CollaborationGroupUnarchived`—Deprecated. Feed item generated when an archived group is activated. • `ContentPost`—Feed item with a content capability.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `CreateRecordEvent`—Feed item that describes a record created in the publisher. • `DashboardComponentAlert`—Feed item with a dashboard alert. • `DashboardComponentSnapshot`—Feed item with a dashboard component snapshot capability. • `EmailMessageEvent`—Feed item generated when an email is sent from a case in Case Feed. • `FacebookPost`—Deprecated. Feed item generated when a Facebook post is created from a case in Case Feed. • `LinkPost`—Feed item with a link capability. • `MilestoneEvent`—Feed item generated when a case milestone is either completed or reaches a violation status. Contains a link to the case milestone. • `PollPost`—Feed item with a poll capability. Viewers of the feed item are allowed to vote on the options in the poll. • `ProfileSkillPost`—Feed item generated when a skill is added to a user's profile. • `QuestionPost`—Feed item generated when a question is asked. As of API version 33.0, a feed item of this type can have a content capability and a link capability. • `ReplyPost`—Feed item generated by a Chatter Answers reply. • `RypplePost`—Feed item generated when a user posts thanks. • `SocialPost`—Feed item generated when a social post is created from a case in Case Feed. • `TextPost`—Feed item containing text only. • `TrackedChange`—Feed item created when one or more fields on a record have been changed. • `UserStatus`—Deprecated. A user's post to their own profile.	
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibilityType`	Type of users who can see a feed item. • `AllUsers`—Visibility is not limited to internal users.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `InternalUsers`—Visibility is limited to internal users.	

ConnectApi.FeedItemSummary

A feed item summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedEntitySummary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities`	Container for all capabilities that can be included with a feed item.	39.0
`header`	`ConnectApi.MessageBody`	Title of the post. This property contains renderable plain text for all the message segments. If a client doesn't know how to render a feed element type, it should render this text.	39.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	When the feed item was modified in the form of an ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	39.0
`originalFeedItem`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Reference to the original feed item if this feed item is a shared feed item; otherwise, `null`.	39.0
`originalFeedItemActor`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	If this feed item is a shared feed item, information about the original poster of the feed item; otherwise, `null`.	39.0
`photoUrl`	String	URL of the photo associated with the feed item.	39.0
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibility`	Specifies who can see a feed item. • `AllUsers`—Visibility is not limited to internal users. • `InternalUsers`—Visibility is limited to internal users.	39.0

ConnectApi.FeedModifiedInfo

Important: This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isModified`	Boolean	`true` if the news feed has been modified since the last time it was polled; `false` otherwise. Returns `null` if the feed is not a news feed.	28.0
`isModifiedToken`	String	Opaque polling token to use in the *`since`* parameter of the `ChatterFeeds.isModified` method. The token describes when the feed was last modified.	28.0
`nextPollUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL with a *`since`* request parameter that contains an opaque token that describes when the feed was last modified. Returns `null` if the feed isn't a news feed. Use this URL to poll a news feed for updates.	28.0

ConnectApi.FeedPollChoice

Feed poll choice.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	Poll choice ID.	28.0
`position`	Integer	The location in the poll where this poll choice exists. The first poll choice starts at 1.	28.0
`text`	String	Label text associated with the poll choice.	28.0
`voteCount`	Integer	Total number of votes for this poll choice.	28.0
`voteCountRatio`	Double	The ratio of total number of votes for this poll choice to all votes cast in the poll. Multiply the ratio by 100 to get the percentage of votes cast for this poll choice.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.PollCapability

ConnectApi.FeedPostSummary

Summary of the post.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedItemId`	String	ID of the post.	42.0

ConnectApi.FeedReadSummary

Summary of the feed that was read.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`containerId`	String	ID of the parent of the feed.	42.0
`feedType`	`ConnectApi.FeedType`	Type of feed. • `Bookmarks`—Contains all feed items saved as bookmarks by the context user. • `Company`—Contains all feed items except feed items of type `TrackedChange`. To see the feed item, the user must have sharing access to its parent. • `DirectMessageModeration`—Contains all direct messages that are flagged for moderation. The Direct Message Moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Chatter Messages permissions. • `DirectMessages`—Contains all feed items of the context user's direct messages. • `Draft`—Contains all the feed items that the context user drafted. • `Files`—Contains all feed items that contain files posted by people or groups that the context user follows. • `Filter`—Contains the news feed filtered to contain feed items whose parent is a specified object type. • `Groups`—Contains all feed items from all groups the context user either owns or is a member of. • `Home`—Contains all feed items associated with any managed topic in an Experience Cloud site. • `Landing`—Contains all feed items that best drive user engagement when the feed is requested. Allows clients to avoid an empty feed when there aren't many personalized feed items. • `Moderation`—Contains all feed items that are flagged for moderation, except direct messages. The moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Feeds permissions. • `Mute`—Contains all feed items that the context user muted. • `News`—Contains all updates for people the context user follows, groups the user is a member of, and files and records the user is following.	42.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		Contains all updates for records whose parent is the context user. • `PendingReview`—Contains all feed items and comments that are pending review. • `People`—Contains all feed items posted by all people the context user follows. • `Record`—Contains all feed items whose parent is a specified record, which could be a group, user, object, file, or any other standard or custom object. When the record is a group, the feed also contains feed items that mention the group. When the record is a user, the feed contains only feed items on that user. You can get another user's record feed. • `Streams`—Contains all feed items for any combination of up to 25 feed-enabled entities that the context user subscribes to in a stream. Examples of feed-enabled entities include people, groups, and records, • `To`—Contains all feed items with mentions of the context user. Contains feed items the context user commented on and feed items created by the context user that are commented on. • `Topics`—Contains all feed items that include the specified topic. • `UserProfile`—Contains feed items created when a user changes records that can be tracked in a feed. Contains feed items whose parent is the user and feed items that @mention the user. This feed is different than the news feed, which returns more feed items, including group updates. You can get another user's user profile feed.	

ConnectApi.FieldChangeSegment

Field change segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ComplexSegment.

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MoreChangesSegment

ConnectApi.FieldChangeNameSegment

Field change name segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.FieldChangeValueSegment

Field change value segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`valueType`	`ConnectApi.FieldChangeValueType Enum`	Value type of a field change. • `NewValue`—A new value • `OldValue`—An old value	28.0
`url`	String	URL value if the field change is to a URL field (such as a web address)	28.0

ConnectApi.FieldValue

Field's value in product search results.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`value`	String	Value of the field.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSummary

ConnectApi.File

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId.

Superclass of ConnectApi.FileSummary.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`checksum`	String	MD5 checksum for the file.	28.0
`contentModifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z. File-specific modified date, which is updated only for direct file operations, such as rename. Modifications to the file from outside of Salesforce can update this date.	32.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`contentSize`	Integer	Size of the file in bytes.	28.0
`contentUrl`	String	If the file is a link, returns the URL, otherwise, the string `null`.	28.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string when the file was created.	41.0
`description`	String	Description of the file.	28.0
`downloadUrl`	String	URL to the file, that can be used for downloading the file.	28.0
`fileExtension`	String	Extension of the file.	28.0
`fileType`	String	Type of file, such as PDF, PowerPoint.	28.0
`flashRenditionStatus`	String	Specifies if a flash preview version of the file has been rendered. Note: Flash renditions were retired on July 16, 2021.	28.0
`isFileAsset`	Boolean	Specifies whether the file is an asset.	46.0
`isInMyFileSync`	Boolean	`true` if the file is synced with Salesforce Files Sync; `false` otherwise. Note: Salesforce Files Sync was retired on May 25, 2018.	28.0
`isMajorVersion`	Boolean	`true` if the file is a major version; `false` if the file is a minor version. Major versions can't be replaced.	31.0
`mimeType`	String	File's MIME type.	28.0
`moderationFlags`	`ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`	Information about the moderation flags on a file. If `ConnectApi.Features.communityModeration` is `false`, this property is `null`.	30.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z. Modifications to the file from within Salesforce update this date.	28.0
`name`	String	Name of the file.	28.0
`origin`	String	Specifies the file source. Valid values are: • `Chatter`—file came from Chatter • `Content`—file came from content	28.0
`owner`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	File's owner.	28.0
`pdfRenditionStatus`	String	Specifies if a PDF preview version of the file has been rendered.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`publishStatus`	`ConnectApi.FilePublishStatus`	Specifies the publish status of the file. • `PendingAccess`—File is pending publishing. • `PrivateAccess`—File is private. • `PublicAccess`—File is public.	28.0
`renditionUrl`	String	URL to the rendition for the file.	28.0
`renditionUrl240By180`	String	URL to the 240 x 180 rendition resource for the file. For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	29.0
`renditionUrl720By480`	String	URL to the 720 x 480 rendition resource for the file. For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	29.0
`sharingOption`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingOption`	Sharing option of the file. Values are: • `Allowed`—Resharing of the file is allowed. • `Restricted`—Resharing of the file is restricted.	35.0
`sharingPrivacy`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingPrivacy`	Sharing privacy of a file. Values are: • `None`—File is visible to anyone with record access. • `PrivateOnRecords`—File is private on records.	41.0
`sharingRole`	`ConnectApi.FileSharingType`	Sharing role of the file. • `Admin`—Owner permission, but doesn't own the file. • `Collaborator`—Viewer permission, and can edit, change permissions, and upload a new version of a file. • `Owner`—Collaborator permission, and can make a file private, and delete a file. • `Viewer`—Can view, download, and share a file. • `WorkspaceManaged`—Permission controlled by the library.	28.0
`systemModstamp`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string indicating when a user or any automated system process, such as a trigger, updated the file.	41.0
`textPreview`	String	Text preview of the file if available; `null` otherwise.	30.0
`thumb120By90RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 120 x 90 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	
`thumb240By180RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 240 x 180 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	28.0
`thumb720By480RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 720 x 480 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	28.0
`title`	String	Title of the file.	28.0
`versionNumber`	String	File's version number.	28.0

ConnectApi.FileAsset

An asset file.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`baseAssetUrl`	String	Base download URL of the asset.	45.0
`baseUnauthenticatedAssetUrl`	String	Base download URL of the asset for unauthenticated users if `isVisibleByExternalUsers` is `true`, otherwise `null`.	45.0
`id`	String	ID of the asset.	45.0
`isVisibleByExternalUsers`	Boolean	Indicates whether unauthenticated users can see the asset file (`true`) or not (`false`).	45.0
`masterLabel`	String	Master label of the asset.	45.0
`name`	String	Unique name of the asset.	45.0
`namespacePrefix`	String	Namespace prefix of the package containing the asset.	45.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	String	Type of asset.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Recommendation

ConnectApi.NBANativeRecommendation

ConnectApi.FilePreview

A file preview.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`format`	`ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`	The format of the preview. Values are: • `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG. • `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF. • `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG. • `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG. • `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG. • `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.	39.0
`previewUrlCount`	Integer	The total number of preview URLs for this preview format.	39.0
`previewUrls`	List<`ConnectApi.FilePreviewUrl`>	A list of file preview URLs.	39.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.FilePreviewStatus`	The availability status of the preview. Values are: • `Available`—Preview is available. • `InProgress`—Preview is being processed. • `NotAvailable`—Preview is unavailable. • `NotScheduled`—Generation of the preview isn't scheduled yet.	39.0
`url`	String	The URL for the file preview.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection

ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection

A collection of file previews.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fileId`	String	ID of the file.	39.0
`previews`	List<`ConnectApi.FilePreview`>	Previews supported for the file.	39.0
`url`	String	URL to the current page of file previews.	39.0
`versionNumber`	String	Version number of the file.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.InlineImageSegment

ConnectApi.FilePreviewUrl

A URL to a file preview.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`pageNumber`	Integer	Preview page number starting from zero, or `null` for PDF files.	39.0
`previewUrl`	String	File preview URL.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FilePreview

ConnectApi.FilesCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more file attachments.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.Content`>	Collection of files.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.FileSummary

A file summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.File.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.FindRoutesWithFewestSplitsOutputRepresentation

A list of inventory location combinations that can fulfill an order without exceeding the maximum number of shipments.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`targetLocations`	List<`ConnectApi.AvailableLocationOutputRepresentation`>	Each element of the list is a set of inventory locations that together can fulfill the order being routed.	51.0

ConnectApi.FollowerPage

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
`followers`	`List<ConnectApi.Subscription>`	List of subscriptions.	28.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of followers across all pages.	28.0

ConnectApi.FollowingCounts

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`people`	Integer	Number of people user is following.	28.0
`records`	Integer	Number of records user is following. Topics are a type of record that can be followed as of version 29.0.	28.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of items user is following.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.FollowingPage

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
following	List<ConnectApi.Subscription>	List of subscriptions.	28.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or null if there isn't a next page.	28.0
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or null if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
total	Integer	Total number of records being followed across all pages.	28.0

ConnectApi.FollowIntents

A list of follow intents for a social persona.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
follows	List<ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent>	List of follow intents for the social persona.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.FollowSocialPersonaIntent

Follow intent on a social persona.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
managedSocialAccount	ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount	Managed social account that follows the social persona.	45.0
socialPersonaId	String	ID of the social persona to follow.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FollowIntents

ConnectApi.FormulaScope

Formula scope for a target.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`contextValues`	Map<String, String>	Map of context values for the scope. Note: In version 52.0 and later, use the `contextValuesMap` property.	50.0–51.0
`contextValuesMap`	Map<String, Object>	Map of context values for the scope.	52.0
`fields`	List<String>	List of fields of the scope.	50.0
`formula`	String	Formula of the scope.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Target

ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupOutputRepresentation

Information about one FulfillmentOrder from a request to create fulfillment orders from multiple OrderDeliveryGroupSummaries. If the FulfillmentOrder was created, then its ID is returned. If it failed, then data from the input is returned so you can resubmit it.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fulfilledFromLocationId`	String	(Creation failed) The input FulfilledFromLocationId.	50.0
`fulfillmentOrderId`	String	The FulfillmentOrderId from the successfully created FulfillmentOrder.	50.0
`fulfillmentType`	String	(Creation failed) The input FulfillmentType.	50.0
`orderDeliveryGroupSummaryId`	String	(Creation failed) The input OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryId.	50.0
`orderItemSummaries`	List<`ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryOutputRepresentation`>	(Creation failed) The input list of OrderItemSummaries.	50.0
`orderSummaryId`	String	(Creation failed) The input OrderSummaryId.	50.0
`referenceId`	String	The referenceId from the FulfillmentGroup input representation. Use this value to troubleshoot a failure.	50.0

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderCancelLineItemsOutputRepresentation

Wraps the base output.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderInvoiceOutputRepresentation

ID of the created invoice.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`invoiceId`	String	ID of the created invoice.	48.0

ConnectApi.FulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation

A list of IDs of the created FulfillmentOrders.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fulfillment OrderIds`	List<String>	A list of IDs of created Fulfillment Orders.	48.0

ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse

Gateway log output.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdDate`	Datetime	Date when the gateway log was created.	50.0
`gatewayResultCode`	String	Result codes that show the status of a transaction as it is passed to the financial institution and then returned to the client.	50.0
`id`	String	ID of the gateway log record.	50.0
`interactionStatus`	String	Gateway interaction status. It can be SUCCESS, FAILED, or TIMEOUT.	50.0

ConnectApi.GenericBundleCapability

If a feed element has this capability, the feed element has a group of other feed elements condensed into one feed element. This group is called a *bundle*.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BundleCapability.

ConnectApi.GenericFeedElement

A concrete implementation of the abstract `ConnectApi.FeedElement` class.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElement

ConnectApi.GlobalInfluence

Chatter influence.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`percentile`	String	Percentile value for the user's influence rank within the org or Experience Cloud site.	28.0
`rank`	Integer	Number indicating the user's influence rank, relative to all other users within the org or Experience Cloud site.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.GroupChatterSettings

A user's Chatter settings for a specific group.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`emailFrequency`	`ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency` Enum	The frequency with which a group member receives email from a group.	28.0

ConnectApi.GroupInformation

Describes the Information section of the group. If the group is private, this section is visible only to members.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`text`	String	The text of the "Information" section of the group.	28.0
`title`	String	The title of the "Information" section of the group.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail

ConnectApi.GroupMember

Member of a group.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	User's 18-character ID.	28.0
`lastFeedAccessDate`	Datetime	The date and time at which the group member last accessed the group feed.	31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`role`	`ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType` Enum	Type of membership the user has with the group. • `GroupOwner` • `GroupManager` • `NotAMember` • `NotAMemberPrivateRequested` • `StandardMember`	28.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to this membership.	28.0
`user`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Information about the user who is subscribed to this group.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage

ConnectApi.GroupMemberPage

Page of group members.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
`members`	`List<ConnectApi.GroupMember>`	List of group members.	28.0
`myMembership`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	If the context user is a member of this group, returns information about that membership, otherwise, `null`.	28.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
`totalMemberCount`	Integer	Total number of group members across all pages.	28.0

ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest

Request to become a group member.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	28.0
`id`	String	ID for the group membership request object.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`lastUpdateDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	28.0
`requestedGroup`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Information about the group the context user is requesting to join.	28.0
`responseMessage`	String	A message for the user if their membership request is declined. The value of this property is used only when the value of the `status` property is `Declined`. The maximum length is 756 characters.	28.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus` Enum	Status of a request to join a private group. Values are: • `Accepted` • `Declined` • `Pending`	28.0
`url`	String	URL of the group membership request object.	28.0
`user`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Information about the user requesting membership in a group.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests

ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequests

Requests to become group members.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`requests`	`List<ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest>`	Information about group membership requests.	28.0
`total`	Integer	The total number of requests.	28.0

ConnectApi.GroupRecord

A record associated with a group.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	Record's 18-character ID.	33.0
`record`	`ConnectApi.ActorWithId`	Information about the record associated with the group.	33.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	Record URL.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage

ConnectApi.GroupRecordPage

A paginated list of `ConnectApi.GroupRecord` objects.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	33.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	33.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	33.0
`records`	`List<ConnectApi.GroupRecord>`	List of records on the current page.	33.0
`totalRecordCount`	Integer	Total number of records associated with the group.	33.0

ConnectApi.HashtagSegment

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`tag`	String	Text of the topic without the hash symbol (#).	28.0
`topicUrl`	String	Connect REST API Topics resource that searches for the topic: `/services/data/v52.0/chatter/topics?exactMatch=true&q=topic`	28.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API Feed Items resource URL that searches for the topic in all feed items in an organization: `/services/data/v52.0/chatter/feed-items?q=topic`	28.0

ConnectApi.HideSocialPostIntent

Hide intent for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
isHidden	Boolean	Specifies whether the managed social account hid the social post (true) or not (false).	45.0
managedSocialAccount	ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount	Managed social account that hides the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.Icon

Icon.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
height	Integer	The height of the icon in pixels.	28.0
width	Integer	The width of the icon in pixels.	28.0
url	String	The URL of the icon. This URL is available to unauthenticated users. This URL does not expire.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CanvasCapability

ConnectApi.EnhancedLinkCapability

ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability

ConnectApi.InlineImageSegment

An inline image in the feed body.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
altText	String	Alt text for the inline image.	35.0
contentSize	Integer	Size of the file in bytes.	35.0
fileExtension	String	Extension of the file, such as gif.	37.0
thumbnails	ConnectApi.FilePreviewCollection	Information about the available thumbnails for the image.	35.0
url	String	URL to the latest version of the inline image.	35.0

ConnectApi.InteractionsCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has information about user interactions.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`count`	Long	The number of individual views, likes, and comments on a feed post. Note: This count appears in the UI under the feed post as the number of views, for example, "5 views."	37.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.RelatedQuestion

ConnectApi.Invitation

An invitation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`email`	String	Email address of the user.	39.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.GroupViralInvitationsStatus`	Specifies the status of an invitation to join a group. Values are: • `ActedUponUser`—The user was added to the group. An email was sent asking the user to visit the group. • `Invited`—An email was sent asking the user to sign up for the org. • `MaxedOutUsers`—The group has the maximum allowed members. • `MultipleError`—The user wasn't invited due to multiple errors. • `NoActionNeededUser`—The user is already a member of the group. • `NotVisibleToExternalInviter`—The user is not accessible to the user sending the invitation. • `Unhandled`—The user couldn't be added to the group for an unknown reason.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`userId`	String	ID of the user.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Invitations

ConnectApi.Invitations

A collection of invitations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`invitations`	List<`ConnectApi.Invitation`>	Collection of invitations.	39.0

ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersion

A knowledge article version.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`articleType`	String	Type of the knowledge article.	36.0
`id`	String	ID of the knowledge article version.	36.0
`knowledgeArticleId`	String	ID of the corresponding knowledge article.	36.0
`lastPublishedDate`	Datetime	Last published date of the knowledge article.	36.0
`summary`	String	Summary of the knowledge article contents.	36.0
`title`	String	Title of the knowledge article.	36.0
`urlName`	String	URL name of the knowledge article.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection

ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersionCollection

A collection of knowledge article versions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.KnowledgeArticleVersion`>	A collection of knowledge article versions.	36.0

ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.CompoundRecordField
- ConnectApi.CurrencyRecordField
- ConnectApi.DateRecordField
- ConnectApi.PercentRecordField
- ConnectApi.PicklistRecordField
- ConnectApi.RecordField
- ConnectApi.ReferenceRecordField
- ConnectApi.ReferenceWithDateRecordField

Record field containing a label and a text value.

Important: The composition of a feed may change between releases. Your code should always be prepared to handle instances of unknown subclasses.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Localized string describing the record field.	29.0
`text`	String	Text value of the record field. All record fields have a text value. To ensure that all clients can consume new content, inspect the record field's `type` property. If it isn't recognized, render the text value as the default case.	29.0

ConnectApi.LightningExtensionInformation

Lightning extension information.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractExtensionInformation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`compositionComponent`	String	Component to use in compose state.	40.0
`headerTextLabel`	String	Label for the extension's header.	40.0
`hoverTextLabel`	String	Label for hovering over the extension.	40.0
`renderComponent`	String	Component to use in render or preview state.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExtensionDefinition

ConnectApi.LikeIntent

Like intent for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isLiked`	Boolean	Specifies whether the managed social account liked the social post (`true`) or not (`false`).	45.0
`managedSocialAccount`	`ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount`	Managed social account that likes the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.LikeIntents

ConnectApi.LikeIntents

List of like intents for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`likes`	List<`ConnectApi.LikeIntent`>	List of like intents for the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.LikeSocialPostIntent

Like intent on a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`socialAccountId`	String	ID of the social account that likes the social post.	46.0
`socialPostId`	String	ID of the social post to like.	46.0

ConnectApi.LikeSummary

Summary of a like.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`likeId`	String	ID of the like.	42.0

ConnectApi.LinkCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a link.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	Link URL. The URL can be to an external site.	32.0
`urlName`	String	Description of the link.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.LinkMetadata

Metadata for a link.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the link.	42.0
`frameSource`	String	HTML required to display the resource.	42.0
`height`	Integer	Height required to display the HTML.	42.0
`originalUrl`	String	Original URL that was used to request the metadata.	42.0
`providerUrl`	String	URL of the provider that the information is retrieved from.	42.0
`source`	`ConnectApi.LinkMetadataSource`	Source of the link metadata. Values are: • `None`—Link metadata wasn't retrieved. • `Sfdc`—Salesforce is the source.	42.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	Thumbnail of the resource.	42.0
`title`	String	Title of the link.	42.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.LinkMetadataType`	Type of link that the metadata represents. Values are: • `Error`—Link metadata couldn't be retrieved. • `Link`—Represents a link. • `None`—Link metadata wasn't retrieved because the link isn't an allowed domain. • `Photo`—Represents a photo. • `Rich`—Represents rich content, typically HTML content. • `Unknown`—Link metadata was retrieved, but the type is unknown. • `Video`—Represents a video.	42.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL of the image to display, if one is available.	42.0
`width`	Integer	Width required to display the HTML.	42.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.LinkMetadataCollection

ConnectApi.LinkMetadataCollection

Collection of link metadata.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`linkMetadataList`	List<`ConnectApi.LinkMetadata`>	List of metadata for links.	42.0

ConnectApi.LinkSegment

Link segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	The link URL.	28.0

ConnectApi.LocationOutputRepresentation

An inventory location's distance to an order recipient.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`distance`	Double	The distance from the location to the order recipient.	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	The location identifier.	51.0

ConnectApi.MaintenanceInfo

Information about the upcoming scheduled maintenance for the organization.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the maintenance.	34.0
`maintenanceTitle`	String	Title of the maintenance.	34.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`maintenanceType`	`ConnectApi.MaintenanceType`	Type of maintenance. Values are: • `Downtime`—Downtime maintenance. • `GenerallyAvailable`—Maintenance with generally available mode. • `MaintenanceWithDowntime`—Scheduled maintenance with downtime. • `ReadOnly`—Maintenance with read-only mode.	34.0
`messageEffectiveTime`	Datetime	Effective time when users start seeing the maintenance message.	34.0
`messageExpirationTime`	Datetime	Expiration time of the maintenance message.	34.0
`scheduledEndDowntime`	Datetime	Scheduled end of downtime. `null` for `GenerallyAvailable` and `ReadOnly` maintenance types.	34.0
`scheduledEndMaintenanceTime`	Datetime	Scheduled end of maintenance. `null` for `Downtime` maintenance type.	34.0
`scheduledStartDowntime`	Datetime	Scheduled start of downtime. `null` for `GenerallyAvailable` and `ReadOnly` maintenance types.	34.0
`scheduledStartMaintenanceTime`	Datetime	Scheduled start time of maintenance. `null` for `Downtime` maintenance type.	34.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrganizationSettings

ConnectApi.ManagedContentAssociations

Content topics associated with managed content.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`topics`	`List<ConnectApi.TopicSummary>`	A collection of topics associated with the managed content.	47.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersion

ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannel

Managed content channel.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`channelId`	String	ID of the managed content channel.	48.0
`channelName`	String	Name of the managed content channel.	48.0
`channelType`	`ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelType`	Type of managed content channel. Values are: • `CloudToCloud` • `Community` • `ConnectedApp` • `PublicUnauthenticated`	48.0
`domain`	String	ID or name of the domain assigned to the channel.	52.0
`domainId`	String	ID of the domain assigned to the channel. In version 52.0 and later, this information is returned in the `domain` property.	50.0–51.0
`domainName`	String	Name of the domain assigned to the channel.	50.0
`isChannelSearchable`	Boolean	Specifies whether the text contents of the channel are searchable (`true`) or not (`false`).	48.0
`isDomainLocked`	Boolean	Specifies whether the domain is locked and can't be changed (`true`) or not (`false`).	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelCollection

ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelCollection

Collection of managed content channels.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`channels`	List<`ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannel`>	List of managed content channels.	48.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	48.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	48.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	48.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`totalChannels`	Integer	Total number of managed content channels.	48.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentDateAndTimeNodeValue

Managed content node of date and time type.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`dateTimeValue`	Datetime	UTC date and time value of the managed content node.	48.0
`timeZone`	String	Time zone in which the date and time is authored.	48.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentDateNodeValue

Managed content node of date type.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`value`	Datetime	Date value of the managed content node.	48.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaNodeValue

Managed content node of media type.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`altText`	String	Alternative text for the managed content node.	47.0
`altUrl`	String	Alternative URL to the managed content node. In version 49.0 and later, this information is returned in the `thumbnailUrl` property.	47.0–48.0
`contentKey`	String	Content key of the managed content.	51.0
`fileName`	String	File name of the managed content node.	48.0
`mediaType`	`ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaType`	Type of managed content media. Value is `Image`.	47.0
`mimeType`	String	MIME type of the managed content node.	47.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`resourceUrl`	String	Resource URL to the image. In version 48.0, the resource URL is available if referencing asset files and is `null` if referencing media. In version 49.0 and later, the resource URL is available if referencing asset files or media.	48.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	URL to the thumbnail of the media.	49.0
`title`	String	Title of the managed content node.	47.0
`unauthenticatedUrl`	String	Unauthenticated URL to the image or `null` if the image isn't visible to external users.	48.0
`url`	String	URL to the image.	47.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaSourceNodeValue

Source of managed content media.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fileName`	String	File name of the media source.	49.0
`isExternal`	Boolean	Specifies whether the media source is referenced via an external URL (`true`) or uploaded (`false`).	49.0
`mediaType`	`ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaType`	Type of managed content media. Values are: • `Document` • `Image`	49.0
`mimeType`	String	MIME type of the media source.	49.0
`referenceId`	String	Reference ID of the uploaded media source.	49.0
`resourceUrl`	String	Resource URL of the media source.	49.0
`unauthenticatedUrl`	String	URL to the media source for unauthenticated users, or `null` if the media source isn't available to external users.	49.0
`url`	String	URL to the media source for authenticated users.	49.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeType

Managed content node type.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	Label of the managed content node type.	47.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
name	String	Developer name of the managed content node type.	47.0
nodeType	ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeTypeEnum	Type of managed content node. Values are: • Date • DateTime • Media • MediaSource • MultilineText • NameField • RichText • Text • Url	47.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentType

ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue

Managed content node.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.ManagedContentDateAndTimeNodeValue
- ConnectApi.ManagedContentDateNodeValue
- ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaNodeValue
- ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaSourceNodeValue
- ConnectApi.ManagedContentTextNodeValue

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
nodeType	ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeType	Type of managed content node. Values are: • Date • DateTime • Media • MediaSource • MultilineText • NameField • RichText • Text • Url	47.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersion

ConnectApi.ManagedContentTextNodeValue

Managed content node of text type.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
value	String	Text value of the managed content node.	47.0

ConnectApi.ManagedContentType

Managed content type.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
label	String	Label of the managed content type.	47.0
name	String	Developer name of the managed content type.	47.0
nodeTypes	Map<String, ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeType>	Map of node types for the managed content type.	47.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersion

Managed content version.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
associations	ConnectApi.ManagedContentAssociations	Content topics associated with the managed content.	47.0
contentKey	String	Content key of the managed content.	51.0
contentNodes	Map<String, ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeValue>	Map of content nodes.	47.0
contentUrlName	String	Content URL name of the managed content version.	48.0
language	String	Language of the managed content version.	48.0
managedContentId	String	ID of the managed content.	47.0
publishedDate	Datetime	Date when the managed content version was last published.	47.0
title	String	Title of the managed content version.	47.0
type	String	Type of managed content version.	47.0
typeLabel	String	Type label of the managed content type.	47.0
unauthenticatedUrl	String	Unauthenticated delivery URL.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection

ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersionCollection

Collection of managed content versions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	47.0
items	List<ConnectApi.ManagedContentVersion>	List of managed content versions.	47.0
managedContentTypes	Map<String, ConnectApi.ManagedContentType>	Map of managed content types.	47.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	47.0
`total`	Integer	Total number of managed content versions.	47.0
`totalTypes`	Integer	Total number of managed content types.	47.0

ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount

Information describing a managed social account or fan page of a social network.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseManagedSocialAccount

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccounts

A list of managed social accounts.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`managedSocialAccounts`	List<`ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount`>	List of managed social accounts.	44.0

ConnectApi.ManagedTopic

Represents a managed topic in an Experience Cloud site.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`children`	List<`ConnectApi.ManagedTopic`>	Children managed topics of the managed topic; `null` if the `depth` request parameter isn't specified or is *1*.	35.0
`id`	String	ID of managed topic.	32.0
`managedTopicType`	`ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`	Type of managed topic. • `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content. • `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation. • `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.	32.0
`parent`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Parent managed topic of the managed topic.	35.0
`topic`	`ConnectApi.Topic`	Information about the topic.	32.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to the managed topic.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection

ConnectApi.ManagedTopicCollection

A collection of managed topics.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	32.0
`managedTopics`	`List<ConnectApi.ManagedTopic>`	List of managed topics.	32.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	44.0

ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegment

The beginning of rich text markup.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`altText`	String	Alternative text for the segment, if available.	45.0
`htmlTag`	String	The HTML tag for this markup.	35.0
`markupType`	`ConnectApi.MarkupType`	Type of rich text markup. • `Bold`—Bold tag. • `Code`—Code tag. • `Hyperlink`—Hyperlink anchor tag. • `Italic`—Italic tag. • `ListItem`—List item tag. • `OrderedList`—Ordered list tag. • `Paragraph`—Paragraph tag. • `Strikethrough`—Strikethrough tag. • `Underline`—Underline tag. • `UnorderedList`—Unordered list tag.	35.0
`url`	String	URL to the segment, if available.	45.0

ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegment

The end of rich text markup.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`htmlTag`	String	The HTML tag for this markup.	35.0
`markupType`	`ConnectApi.MarkupType`	Type of rich text markup. • `Bold`—Bold tag. • `Code`—Code tag. • `Hyperlink`—Hyperlink anchor tag. • `Italic`—Italic tag. • `ListItem`—List item tag. • `OrderedList`—Ordered list tag. • `Paragraph`—Paragraph tag. • `Strikethrough`—Strikethrough tag. • `Underline`—Underline tag. • `UnorderedList`—Unordered list tag.	35.0

ConnectApi.MediaReference

A media reference.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`mediaUrl`	String	URL to stream or download the media.	41.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	If one exists, URL of the media's thumbnail.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities
ConnectApi.MediaReferenceCapability

ConnectApi.MediaReferenceCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has one or more media references.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`media`	List<`ConnectApi.MediaReference`>	Collection of media references.	41.0

ConnectApi.MentionCompletion

Information about a record that could be used to @mention a user or group.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`additionalLabel`	String	If one exists, an additional label for the record represented by this completion, for example, "(Customer)" or "(Acme Corporation)".	29.0
`description`	String	A description of the record represented by this completion.	29.0
`name`	String	The name of the record represented by this completion. The name is localized, if possible.	29.0
`outOfOffice`	`ConnectApi.OutOfOffice`	If the record represented by this completion is a user, an additional out-of-office message, if one exists, for the user.	40.0
`photoUrl`	String	A URL to the photo or icon of the record represented by this completion.	29.0
`recordId`	String	The ID of the record represented by this completion.	29.0
`userType`	`ConnectApi.UserType` Enum	If the record represented by this completion is a user, this value is the user type associated with that user; otherwise the value is `null`. One of these values: • `ChatterGuest`—User is an external user in a private group. • `ChatterOnly`—User is a Chatter Free customer. • `Guest`—User is unauthenticated. • `Internal`—User is a standard org member. • `Portal`—User is an external user in an Experience Cloud site. • `System`—User is Chatter Expert or a system user. • `Undefined`—User is a user type that is a custom object.	30.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage

ConnectApi.MentionCompletionPage

Paginated list of Mention Completion response bodies.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
`mentionCompletions`	`List<ConnectApi.MentionCompletion>`	A list of mention completion proposals. Use these proposals to build a feed post body.	29.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or null if there isn't a previous page.	29.0

ConnectApi.MentionSegment

Mention segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
accessible	Boolean	Specifies whether the mentioned user or group can see the post in which they are mentioned (true) or not (false).	28.0
name	String	Name of the mentioned user or group.	28.0
record	ConnectApi.ActorWithId	Information about the mentioned user or group.	29.0
user	ConnectApi.UserSummary	Information about the mentioned user. **Important:** In versions 29.0 and later, use the record property.	28.0 only In versions before 29.0, if the mention is not a user, the mention is in a ConnectApi.TextSegment object.

ConnectApi.MentionValidation

Information about whether a proposed mention is valid for the context user.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recordId	String	The ID of the mentioned record.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
validationStatus	ConnectApi.MentionValidationStatus Enum	Type of validation error for a proposed mention, if any. • Disallowed—The proposed mention is invalid and is rejected because the context user is trying to mention something that is not allowed. For example, a user who is not a member of a private group is trying to mention the private group. • Inaccessible—The proposed mention is allowed, but the user or record being mentioned isn't notified. They don't have access to the parent record that's being discussed. • Ok—There is no validation error for this proposed mention.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.MentionValidations

ConnectApi.MentionValidations

Information about whether a set of mentions is valid for the context user.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
hasErrors	Boolean	Indicates whether at least one of the proposed mentions has an error (true), or not (false). For example, context users can't mention private groups they don't belong to. If such a group is included in the list of mention validations, hasErrors is true and the group has a validationStatus of Disallowed in its mention validation.	29.0
mentionValidations	List<ConnectApi.MentionValidation>	List of mention validation information in the same order as the provided record IDs.	29.0

ConnectApi.MessageBody

Message body.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractMessageBody

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ChatterLikesCapability
- ConnectApi.ChatterMessage
- ConnectApi.Comment
- ConnectApi.FeedElement
- ConnectApi.FeedItemSummary

ConnectApi.MessageSegment

Message segment.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.ComplexSegment
- ConnectApi.EntityLinkSegment
- ConnectApi.FieldChangeSegment
- ConnectApi.FieldChangeNameSegment
- ConnectApi.FieldChangeValueSegment
- ConnectApi.HashtagSegment
- ConnectApi.InlineImageSegment
- ConnectApi.LinkSegment
- ConnectApi.MarkupBeginSegment
- ConnectApi.MarkupEndSegment
- ConnectApi.MentionSegment
- ConnectApi.MoreChangesSegment
- ConnectApi.ResourceLinkSegment
- ConnectApi.TextSegment

Message segments in a feed item are typed as `ConnectApi.MessageSegment`. Feed item capabilities are typed as `ConnectApi.FeedItemCapability`. Record fields are typed as `ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField`. These classes are all abstract and have several concrete subclasses. At runtime you can use `instanceof` to check the concrete types of these objects and then safely proceed with the corresponding downcast. When you downcast, you must have a default case that handles unknown subclasses.

Important: The composition of a feed may change between releases. Your code should always be prepared to handle instances of unknown subclasses.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`text`	String	Text-only rendition of this segment. If a client encounters an unknown message segment type, it can render this value.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.MessageSegmentType` Enum	The message segment type. One of these values: • `EntityLink` • `FieldChange` • `FieldChangeName` • `FieldChangeValue` • `Hashtag` • `InlineImage` • `Link` • `MarkupBegin` • `MarkupEnd` • `Mention` • `MoreChanges` • `ResourceLink` • `Text`	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractMessageBody

ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

If a feed element has this capability, users in an Experience Cloud site can flag it for moderation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`moderationFlags`	`ConnectApi.ModerationFlags`	The moderation flags for this feed element. Moderators can view and take action on flagged items.	31.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.ModerationFlagItemDetail

Flag details on a feed item, comment, or file.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdBy`	String	ID of the user who flagged the item.	40.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	Date when the item was flagged.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of the moderation flag.	40.0
`moderationType`	`ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`	Type of moderation flag. Values are: • `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content. • `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.	40.0
`note`	String	Note from user who flagged the item.	40.0
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`	Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. Values are: • `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item. • `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ModerationFlagsCollection

ConnectApi.ModerationFlags

Information about the moderation flags on a feed item, comment, or file.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`flagCount`	Integer	Number of moderation flags on this feed item, comment, or file. If the context user is not a moderator, the property is `null`.	29.0
`flagCountByReason`	`Map<ConnectApi.CommunityFlagReasonType, Integer>`	Number of moderation flags categorized by reason. Values for `ConnectApi.CommunityFlagReasonType` are: • `FlaggedByRule`—Moderation rule flagged the item. • `FlaggedBySystem`—Einstein flagged the item. • `FlaggedByUserAsInappropriate`—User flagged the item as inappropriate. • `FlaggedByUserAsSpam`—User flagged the item as spam.	40.0
`flaggedByMe`	Boolean	`true` if the context user flagged the feed item, comment, or file for moderation; `false` otherwise.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
flags	ConnectApi.ModerationFlagsCollection	Collection of flags.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Comment

ConnectApi.File

ConnectApi.ModerationCapability

ConnectApi.ModerationFlagsCollection

A collection of flags on a feed item, comment, or file.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	40.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	40.0
flags	List<ConnectApi.ModerationFlagItemDetail>	List of flag details.	40.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
pageSize	Integer	Number of items per page.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ModerationFlags

ConnectApi.MoreChangesSegment

In feed items with a large number of tracked changes, the message is formatted as: "changed A, B, and made X more changes." The `MoreChangesSegment` contains the "X more changes."

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
moreChanges	List<ConnectApi.FieldChangeSegment>	Complete list of tracked changes.	29.0
moreChangesCount	Integer	Number of additional changes.	28.0

ConnectApi.Motif

The motif properties contain URLs for small, medium, and large icons that indicate the Salesforce record type. Common record types are files, users, and groups, but all record types have a set of motif icons. Custom object records use their tab style icon. All icons are available to unauthenticated users so that, for example, you can display the motif icons in an email. The motif can also contain the record type's base color.

The motif images are icons, not user uploaded images or photos. For example, every user has the same set of motif icons.

Custom object records use their tab style icon, for example, the following custom object uses the "boat" tab style:

```
  "motif": {
     "color: "8C004C",
     "largeIconUrl": "/img/icon/custom51_100/boat64.png",
     "mediumIconUrl": "/img/icon/custom51_100/boat32.png",
     "smallIconUrl": "/img/icon/custom51_100/boat16.png",
     "svgIconUrl": null
  },
```

Users use the following icons:

```
  "motif": {
     "color: "1797C0",
     "largeIconUrl": "/img/icon/profile64.png",
     "mediumIconUrl": "/img/icon/profile32.png",
     "smallIconUrl": "/img/icon/profile16.png",
     "svgIconUrl": null
  },
```

Groups use the following icons:

```
  "motif": {
     "color: "1797C0",
     "largeIconUrl": "/img/icon/groups64.png",
     "mediumIconUrl": "/img/icon/groups32.png",
     "smallIconUrl": "/img/icon/groups16.png",
     "svgIconUrl": null
  },
```

Files use the following icons:

```
 "motif": {
     "color: "1797C0",
     "largeIconUrl": "/img/content/content64.png",
     "mediumIconUrl": "/img/content/content32.png",
     "smallIconUrl": "/img/icon/files16.png",
     "svgIconUrl": null
  },
```

Note: To view the icons in the previous examples, preface the URL with `https://instance_name`. For example, `https://instance_name/img/icon/profile64.png`.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`color`	String	A hex value representing the base color of the record type, or `null`.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`largeIconUrl`	String	A large icon indicating the record type.	28.0
`mediumIconUrl`	String	A medium icon indicating the record type.	28.0
`smallIconUrl`	String	A small icon indicating the record type.	28.0
`svgIconUrl`	String	An icon in SVG format indicating the record type, or `null` if the icon doesn't exist.	34.0

ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderInvoicesOutputRepresentation

IDs of the created Invoices.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`invoiceIds`	List<String>	List of IDs of the created Invoices.	52.0

ConnectApi.MultipleFulfillmentOrderOutputRepresentation

List of responses for the individual FulfillmentOrder creation attempts from a create multiple fulfillment orders request.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fulfillmentOrders`	List<`ConnectApi.FulfillmentGroupOutputRepresentation`>	A list of response data for created and failed FulfillmentOrders.	50.0

ConnectApi.MuteCapability

If a feed element has this capability, users can mute it. Muted feed elements are visible in the muted feed, and invisible in all other feeds that respect mute.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isMutedByMe`	Boolean	Indicates whether the context user muted the feed element.	35.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.MuteSummary

Summary of a mute.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItem

Navigation menu item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actionType`	`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemActionType`	URL type or event of the navigation menu item. Values are: • `Event`—Event-based navigation. Note: `Event` is internal only and can't be used in custom components. • `ExternalLink`—URL outside of your Experience Cloud site. • `InternalLink`—Relative URL inside your Experience Cloud site.	52.0
`actionValue`	String	Route URL or event fully qualified name for the navigation menu item.	52.0
`imageUrl`	String	URL to the image of the navigation menu item.	52.0
`label`	String	Label for the navigation menu item.	52.0
`subMenu`	List<`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItem`>	Submenu for the navigation menu item.	52.0
`target`	`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemOpenTarget`	Target for the navigation menu item. Values are: • `CurrentWindow`—Navigation menu item opens in the current window. • `NewWindow`—Navigation menu item opens in a new window.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemCollection

ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemCollection

Collection of navigation menu items.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
menuItems	List<ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItem>	Collection of navigation menu items.	52.0

ConnectApi.NBAActionParameter

A parameter for an action.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
name	String	Name of the parameter.	45.0
type	String	Type of the parameter.	45.0
value	String	Value of the parameter.	45.0

ConnectApi.NBAFlowAction

A recommended flow.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractNBAAction.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
flowLabel	String	Label of the recommended flow.	47.0
flowType	ConnectApi.NBAFlowType	Type of recommended flow. Values are: • AutoLaunchedFlow—Autolaunched flow that runs in the background. • Flow—Screen flow that accepts user inputs.	47.0
id	String	ID of the flow.	45.0
name	String	Name of the flow.	45.0

ConnectApi.NBANativeRecommendation

A record the user is recommended to take action on.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractNBATarget.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
id	String	ID of the recommendation.	45.0
name	String	Name of the recommendation.	45.0
url	String	URL to the recommendation.	45.0

ConnectApi.NBARecommendation

A recommendation returned by a recommendation strategy.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`aiModel`	String	Reserved for future use.	47.0
`acceptanceLabel`	String	Text indicating user acceptance of the recommendation.	45.0
`description`	String	Description of the recommendation.	45.0
`externalId`	String	External ID of the recommendation. This ID doesn't need to be a Salesforce 18-character ID. For example, it can be a product number from an external system.	46.0
`imageUrl`	String	URL to the asset file to display.	45.0
`recommendationMode`	String	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`recommendationScore`	Double	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`rejectionLabel`	String	Text indicating user rejection of the recommendation.	45.0
`target`	`ConnectApi.AbstractNBATarget`	Target to act on.	45.0
`targetAction`	`ConnectApi.AbstractNBAAction`	Action to recommend.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.NBARecommendations

ConnectApi.NBARecommendations

Recommendations returned by a recommendation strategy.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`debug`	String	Runtime debug information recorded during recommendation strategy execution.	45.0
`errors`	String	Runtime errors that occurred during recommendation strategy execution.	45.0
`executionId`	String	ID of the recommendation strategy execution.	45.0
`onBehalfOfId`	String	ID of the user or entity for which the recommendation strategy was executed.	45.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recommendations	List<ConnectApi.NBARecommendation>	List of recommendations returned by a recommendation strategy.	45.0
trace	ConnectApi.StrategyTrace	Trace information for the recommendation strategy execution, if requested.	45.0

ConnectApi.NewUserAudienceCriteria

Criteria for the new members type of custom recommendation audience.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AudienceCriteria.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
maxDaysInCommunity	Double	The maximum number of days since a user became a site member.	36.0

ConnectApi.OauthProviderInfo

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
authorizationUrl	String	The URL used for authorization.	37.0
name	String	The name of the OAuth service provider.	37.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserOauthInfo

ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation

Base Omnichannel Inventory output class.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureStatusOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation
- ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityStatusOutputRepresentation

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
errors	List<ConnectApi.ErrorResponse>	Any errors that were returned.	51.0
success	Boolean	Indicates whether the request was successful.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationErrorOutputRepresentation

Error returned from an attempt to create an Omnichannel Inventory reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errorCode`	String	The error code.	51.0
`message`	String	Details of the error, if available.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationOutputRepresentation

Result of an Omnichannel Inventory reservation creation request.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`details`	List<`ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationSingleOutputRepresentation`>	Details for each product in the reservation.	51.0
`errors`	List<`ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationErrorOutputRepresentation`>	Any errors returned by the reservation request.	51.0
`expirationTime`	String	The time at which the reservation would expire.	51.0
`reservationTime`	String	The time when the reservation was recorded.	51.0
`success`	Boolean	Indicates whether the reservation was successfully created.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCICreateReservationSingleOutputRepresentation

Details of an inventory reservation for one product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errorCode`	String	The error code, if any.	51.0
`locationGroupIdentifier`	String	Identifier of the location group where the inventory is reserved.	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	Identifier of the location where the inventory is reserved.	51.0
`quantity`	Double	The reserved quantity of the product.	51.0
`stockKeepingUnit`	String	The SKU of the reserved product.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationErrorOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to fulfill one inventory reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
details	ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationSingleOutputRepresentation	Details of the fulfilled reservation, if successful.	51.0
errorCode	String	Error code, if any.	51.0
message	String	Details of the error, if available.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to fulfill one or more inventory reservations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
errors	List<ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationErrorOutputRepresentation>	Responses for the individual reservations in the fulfillment request.	51.0
success	Boolean	Indicates whether the request was successful.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFulfillReservationSingleOutputRepresentation

Details of a single fulfilled reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
actionRequestId	String	The UUID that identifies the original fulfill reservation request.	51.0
externalRefId	String	The external reference ID of the location that fulfilled the reservation.	51.0
locationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location that fulfilled the reservation.	51.0
quantity	Double	The fulfilled quantity.	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of the fulfilled product.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIFutureInventoryOutputRepresentation

An expected future inventory restock.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
expectedDate	Datetime	Date when the future inventory is expected.	51.0
quantity	Double	Quantity of the future inventory.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIGetInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

Response to a request for inventory availability data.

Subclass of ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`locationGroups`	List<`ConnectApi.OCILocationGroupAvailabilityOutputRepresentation`>	A list of inventory availability data for individual location groups.	51.0
`locations`	List<`ConnectApi.OCILocationAvailabilityOutputRepresentation`>	A list of inventory availability data for individual locations.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIInventoryRecordOutputRepresentation

Inventory availability data for a product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`availableToFulfill`	Double	The Available To Fulfill quantity.	51.0
`availableToOrder`	Double	The Available To Order quantity.	51.0
`effectiveDate`	Datetime	The effective date of the inventory.	51.0
`futures`	List<`ConnectApi.OCIFutureInventoryOutputRepresentation`>	A list of any expected future inventory restocks.	51.0
`onHand`	Double	The On Hand quantity.	51.0
`reserved`	Double	The Reserved quantity.	51.0
`safetyStockCount`	Double	The Safety Stock Count.	51.0
`stockKeepingUnit`	String	The SKU of the product.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCILocationAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

A set of inventory availability data for one inventory location.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`inventoryRecords`	List<`ConnectApi.OCIInventoryRecordOutputRepresentation`>	A list of availability data for individual products at this location.	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCILocationGroupAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

A set of inventory availability data for one inventory location group.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`inventoryRecords`	List<`ConnectApi.OCIInventoryRecordOutputRepresentation`>	A list of availability data for individual products. The data combines the quantities for all locations belonging to this location group.	51.0
`locationGroupIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location group.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureOutputRepresentation

Response to a publish location structure request.

Subclass of ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`uploadId`	String	Identifier of the publish job. Use this value to retrieve the status of the job.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIPublishLocationStructureStatusOutputRepresentation

Detailed status of a publish location structure job.

Subclass of ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`endTimeUTC`	String	The UTC time when the job finished. (for example: "2020-07-06T22:54:08.012Z")	51.0
`recordsProcessedCount`	Integer	The number of records processed by the job.	51.0
`recordsReadCount`	Integer	The number of records read by the job.	51.0
`recordsSkippedCount`	Integer	The number of records skipped by the job.	51.0
`startTimeUTC`	String	The UTC time when the job started. (for example: "2020-07-06T22:53:06.788Z")	51.0
`status`	String	The status of the job. (e.g., "PENDING," "COMPLETED," etc.).	51.0
`uploadId`	String	Identifier of the job.	51.0
`validationErrors`	List<`String`>	List of any validation errors returned by the job.	51.0
`validationStatus`	String	The validation status of the job.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationErrorOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to release one inventory reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`details`	`ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationSingleOutputRepresentation`	Details of the released reservation, if successful.	51.0
`errorCode`	String	Error code, if any.	51.0
`message`	String	Details of the error, if available.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to release one or more inventory reservations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errors`	List<`ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationErrorOutputRepresentation`>	Responses for the individual reservations in the release request.	51.0
`success`	Boolean	Indicates whether the request was successful.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIReleaseReservationSingleOutputRepresentation

Details of a single released reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actionRequestId`	String	The UUID that identifies the original release reservation request.	51.0
`externalRefId`	String	The external reference ID of the location that released the reservation.	51.0
`locationGroupIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location group that released the reservation.	51.0
`locationIdentifier`	String	The identifier of the location that released the reservation.	51.0
`quantity`	Double	The released quantity.	51.0
`stockKeepingUnit`	String	The SKU of the released product.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationErrorOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to fulfill one inventory reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
details	ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationSingleOutputRepresentation	Details of the transferred reservation, if successful.	51.0
errorCode	String	Error code, if any.	51.0
message	String	Details of the error, if available.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationOutputRepresentation

Response to a request to transfer one or more inventory reservations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
errors	List<ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationErrorOutputRepresentation>	Responses for the individual reservations in the transfer request.	51.0
success	Boolean	Indicates whether the request was successful.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCITransferReservationSingleOutputRepresentation

Details of a single transferred reservation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
actionRequestId	String	The UUID that identifies the original transfer reservation request.	51.0
externalRefId	String	The external reference ID of the location that received the reservation.	51.0
fromLocationGroupIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location group that sent the reservation.	51.0
fromLocationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location that sent the reservation.	51.0
ignoreAvailabilityCheck	Boolean	Whether this call ignored availability data at the location that received the reservation.	52.0
quantity	Double	The quantity of transferred inventory.	51.0
stockKeepingUnit	String	The SKU of the transferred product.	51.0
toLocationGroupIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location group that received the reservation.	51.0
toLocationIdentifier	String	The identifier of the location that received the reservation.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityOutputRepresentation

Response to an upload inventory availability job.

Subclass of ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`uploadId`	String	Identifier of the upload job. Use this value to retrieve the status of the job.	51.0

ConnectApi.OCIUploadInventoryAvailabilityStatusOutputRepresentation

Detailed status of an upload inventory availability job.

Subclass of ConnectApi.OCIBaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`endTimeUTC`	String	The UTC time when the job finished. (for example: "2020-07-06T22:54:08.012Z")	51.0
`recordsProcessedCount`	Integer	The number of records processed by the job.	51.0
`recordsReadCount`	Integer	The number of records read by the job.	51.0
`recordsSkippedCount`	Integer	The number of records skipped by the job.	51.0
`startTimeUTC`	String	The UTC time when the job started. (for example: "2020-07-06T22:53:06.788Z")	51.0
`status`	String	The status of the job. (e.g., "PENDING," "COMPLETED," etc.).	51.0
`uploadId`	String	Identifier of the job.	51.0
`validationErrors`	List<`String`>	List of any validation errors returned by the job.	51.0
`validationStatus`	String	The validation status of the job.	51.0

ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummary

Order delivery group summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fields`	Map<String, `ConnectApi.RecordField`>	Map of fields from order delivery group summary and other related objects that were queried.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummaryCollection

Collection of order delivery group summaries.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
orderDeliveryGroups	List<ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummary>	Collection of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying previous page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page of order delivery group summaries.	51.0

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummary

Order item summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.RecordField>	Map of fields from order item summary and other related objects that were queried.	51.0
orderItemSummaryId	String	ID of the order item summary.	51.0
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the order summary.	51.0
product	ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct	Associated product item information.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryCollection

Collection of order item summaries.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page of items.	51.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of items.	51.0
items	List<ConnectApi.OrderItemSummary>	Collection of order item summaries.	51.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page of items.	51.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of items.	51.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying the previous page of items.	51.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page of items.	51.0

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryOutputRepresentation

Details of an OrderItemSummary from a failed FulfillmentOrder in a create multiple fulfillment orders request.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
errors	List<ConnectApi.ErrorResponse>	List of errors specific to the OrderItemSummary, if any.	50.0
orderItemSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderItemSummary.	50.0
quantity	Double	Quantity of the OrderItemSummary.	50.0

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct

Product item mapped to the order item summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
canViewProduct	Boolean	Specifies whether the context user can view the product (true) or not (false).	51.0
errorCode	String	Error code for the product with errors.	51.0
errorMessage	String	Error message for the product with errors.	51.0
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.RecordField>	Map of the product fields queried.	51.0
media	ConnectApi.ProductMedia	Associated product media.	51.0
productAttributes	ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetSummary	Summary of the product attributes.	51.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
productId	String	ID of the product.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummary

ConnectApi.OrderShipment

Order shipment.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
expectedDeliveryDate	Datetime	Expected delivery date for the shipment.	52.0
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.RecordField>	Map of requested fields.	52.0
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the order summary.	52.0
shipmentId	String	ID of the shipment.	52.0
shipmentNumber	String	Number of the shipment.	52.0
status	String	Status of the shipment.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection

ConnectApi.OrderShipmentCollection

Collection of order shipments.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
count	Integer	Total number of records returned in the collection.	52.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page of order shipments.	52.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of order shipments.	52.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page of order shipments.	52.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of order shipments.	52.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying the previous page of order shipments.	52.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page of order shipments.	52.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
shipments	List<ConnectApi.OrderShipment>	Collection of order shipments.	52.0
sortOrder	ConnectApi.OrderShipmentSort	Sort order for order shipments. Values are: • ExpectedDeliveryDateAsc—Sorts by the oldest expected delivery date. • ExpectedDeliveryDateDesc—Sorts by the most recent expected delivery date. • ShipmentNumberAsc—Sorts by shipment number in ascending order (0–9). • ShipmentNumberDesc—Sorts by shipment number in descending order (9–0).	52.0

ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItem

Shipment item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.RecordField>	Map of requested fields.	52.0
orderItemSummaryId	String	ID of the order item summary.	52.0
product	ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct	Product mapped to an order item summary.	52.0
productId	String	ID of the product.	52.0
quantity	Double	Quantity of the product.	52.0
shipmentId	String	ID of the shipment.	52.0
shipmentItemId	String	ID of the shipment item.	52.0

ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemCollection

Collection of order shipment items.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
count	Integer	Total number of records returned in a page.	52.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page of order shipment items.	52.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of order shipment items.	52.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
items	List<ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItem>	Collection of order shipment items.	52.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page of order shipment items.	52.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of order shipment items.	52.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying the previous page of order shipment items.	52.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page of order shipment items.	52.0
sortOrder	ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemSort	Sort order for order shipment items. Values are: • IdAsc—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • IdDesc—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).	52.0

ConnectApi.OrderSummaryOutputRepresentation

ID of the created Order Summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the Order Summary.	48.0

ConnectApi.OrderSummaryRepresentation

Order summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
createdDate	Datetime	Created date of the order summary.	51.0
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.RecordField>	Map of requested order summary fields.	51.0
orderNumber	String	Order number of the order summary.	51.0
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the order summary.	51.0
orderedDate	Datetime	Ordered date of the order summary.	51.0
ownerId	String	ID of the owner of the order summary.	51.0
status	String	Status of the order summary.	51.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`totalAmount`	String	Total amount of the order summary.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation

ConnectApi.OrderSummaryCollectionRepresentation

Collection of order summaries.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`count`	Integer	Total count of order summaries returned on the current page.	51.0
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	51.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	51.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	51.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	51.0
`orderSummaries`	List<`ConnectApi.OrderSummaryRepresentation`>	Collection of order summaries.	51.0
`previousPageToken`	String	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	51.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	51.0
`sortOrder`	`ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder`	Sort order for order summaries. Values are: • `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest created date. • `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent created date. • `OrderedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest ordered date. • `OrderedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent ordered date.	51.0

ConnectApi.OrganizationSettings

Org settings.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`accessTimeout`	Integer	Amount of time after which the system prompts users who have been inactive to log out or continue working.	28.0
`features`	`ConnectApi.Features`	Information about features available in the org.	28.0
`maintenanceInfo`	List<`ConnectApi.MaintenanceInfo`>	Information about a list of upcoming scheduled maintenances for the org.	34.0
`name`	String	Org name.	28.0
`orgId`	String	18-character ID for the org.	28.0
`userSettings`	`ConnectApi.UserSettings`	Information about the org permissions for the user.	28.0

ConnectApi.OriginCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it was created by a feed action.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actor`	ConnectApi.User Summary	The user who executed the feed action.	33.0
`originRecord`	ConnectApi.Reference	A reference to the feed element containing the feed action.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.OutOfOffice

User's out-of-office message.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`message`	String	Out-of-office message for the user.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.User

ConnectApi.MentionCompletion

ConnectApi.PaymentAuthorizationResponse

Payment authorization output representation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
accountId	String	Salesforce account for the payment authorization.	51.0
amount	Double	Amount that the gateway authorized for the payment transaction.	51.0
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment group record.	51.0
effectiveDate	Datetime	Date that the authorization becomes effective.	51.0
expirationDate	Datetime	Date that the authorization expires.	51.0
id	String	ID of the payment authorization record.	51.0
paymentAuthorizationNumber	String	System-defined number for the payment authorization record.	51.0
requestDate	Datetime	Date that the authorization occurred.	51.0
status	String	Status of the payment authorization as returned by the gateway.	51.0

ConnectApi.PaymentGroupResponse

Payment group.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment group record.	50.0
id	String	ID of the payment group record.	50.0
sourceObjectId	String	Source object ID of the payment group record. Supports only OrderId.	50.0

ConnectApi.PaymentMethodResponse

Output representation for payment methods.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
accountId	String	Account for the payment method.	51.0
id	String	ID of the payment method.	51.0
status	String	Status of the payment method.	51.0

ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationGatewayResponse

Payment method tokenization gateway response representation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
gatewayToken	String	The payment method token sent from the gateway.	52.0

ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationResponse

Payment method tokenization output representation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
error	ConnectApi.ErrorResponse	Error representation for the payment method tokenization process. Sent only if the tokenization process encounters an error in the gateway.	52.0
gatewayResponse	ConnectApi.PaymentMethodTokenizationGatewayResponse	Response containing the tokenized payment method value from the payment gateway.	52.0
paymentGatewayLogs	List<ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse>	Logs showing more details about the tokenization process that occurred in the gateway.	52.0
paymentMethod	ConnectApi.PaymentMethodResponse	Object representation of the payment method object that was tokenized.	52.0

ConnectApi.PaymentResponse

Payment output.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
accountId	String	ID of the account related the payment record.	50.0
amount	Double	Total amount of the payment transaction performed in the payment request.	50.0
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment output.	50.0
effectiveDate	Datetime	Date that the payment becomes effective.	50.0
id	String	ID of the payment record.	50.0
paymentNumber	String	Number of the payment record created as a result of the request processing.	50.0
requestDate	Datetime	Date when the payment transaction occurred.	50.0
status	String	Status of the new payment record. Can be DRAFT, PROCESSED or CANCELLED.	50.0

ConnectApi.PercentRecordField

Record field containing a percentage value.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`value`	Double	Value of the percentage.	29.0

ConnectApi.PhoneNumber

Phone number.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`label`	String	A localized string indicating the phone type.	30.0
`phoneNumber`	String	Phone number.	28.0
`phoneType`	String	Phone type. Values are: • `Fax` • `Mobile` • `Work` These values are not localized.	30.0
`type`	String	Note: This property is not available after version 29.0. Use the `phoneType` property instead. Values are: • `Fax` • `Mobile` • `Work` These values are not localized.	28.0–29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.DatacloudCompany
ConnectApi.DatacloudContact
ConnectApi.UserDetail

ConnectApi.Photo

Profile photo.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fullEmailPhotoUrl`	String	A temporary URL to the large profile picture. The URL expires after 30 days and is available to unauthenticated users.	28.0
`largePhotoUrl`	String	URL to the large profile picture. The default width is 200 pixels, and the height is scaled so the original image proportions are maintained. If a user hasn't uploaded a photo, this URL points to a default photo. If the user hasn't uploaded a photo and the request header included `X-Connect-Theme: Salesforce1`, this URL points to a default photo based on a theme that the admin selected for the org.	28.0
`mediumPhotoUrl`	String	URL to the medium profile picture. The default width is 160 pixels, and the height is scaled so the original image proportions are maintained. If a user hasn't uploaded a photo, this URL points to a default photo. If the user hasn't uploaded a photo and the request header included `X-Connect-Theme: Salesforce1`, this URL points to a default photo based on a theme that the admin selected for the org.	37.0
`photoVersionId`	String	18–character ID to that version of the photo	28.0
`smallPhotoUrl`	String	URL to the small profile picture. The default size is 64x64 pixels. If a user hasn't uploaded a photo, this URL points to a default photo. If the user hasn't uploaded a photo and the request header included `X-Connect-Theme: Salesforce1`, this URL points to a default photo based on a theme that the admin selected for the org.	28.0
`standardEmailPhotoUrl`	String	A temporary URL to the small profile. The URL expires after 30 days and is available to unauthenticated users.	28.0
`url`	String	A resource that returns a Photo object: for example, `/services/data/v52.0/chatter/users/005D0000001LL8OIAW/photo`	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ChatterGroup
- ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition
- ConnectApi.User

ConnectApi.PicklistRecordField

Record field containing an enumerated value.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField.

ConnectApi.PinCapability

If a feed element has this capability, users who have permission can pin it to a feed.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isPinnableByMe`	Boolean	Specifies whether the context user can pin or unpin the entity to the feed (`true`) or not (`false`).	41.0
`isPinned`	Boolean	Specifies whether the entity is pinned (`true`) or not pinned (`false`) to the feed.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.PinnedFeedElements

List of pinned feed elements for a feed.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`elements`	List<`ConnectApi.FeedElement`>	List of pinned feed elements.	41.0

ConnectApi.PlatformAction

A platform action instance with state information for the context user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actionUrl`	String	For action links of `subtype` `Ui` or `Download`, direct the user to download or visit the UI from this link. Salesforce issues a Javascript redirect for the link in this format: `/action-link-redirect/`***`communityId`***`/`***`actionLinkId`***`?_bearer=`***`bearerToken`***. For `Api` action links and for all platform actions, this value is `null` and Salesforce handles the call.	33.0
`apiName`	String	The API name. The value may be `null`.	33.0
`confirmationMessage`	String	If this action requires a confirmation and has a status of `NewStatus`, this is a default localized message that should be shown to an end user prior to invoking the action. Otherwise, this is `null`.	33.0
`executingUser`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	The user who initiated execution of this platform action.	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`groupDefault`	Boolean	`true` if this platform action is the default or primary platform action in the platform action group; `false` otherwise. There can be only one default platform action per platform action group.	33.0
`iconUrl`	String	The URL of the icon for the platform action. This value may be `null`.	33.0
`id`	String	The ID for the platform action. If the `type` is `QuickAction` and the `subtype` is `Create`, this value is `null`.	33.0
`label`	String	The localized label for this platform action.	33.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`platformActionGroup`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	A reference to the platform action group containing this platform action.	33.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.PlatformActionStatus`	The execution status of the platform action. Values are: • `FailedStatus`—The action link execution failed. • `NewStatus`—The action link is ready to be executed. Available for `Download` and `Ui` action links only. • `PendingStatus`—The action link is executing. Choosing this value triggers the API call for `Api` and `ApiAsync` action links. • `SuccessfulStatus`—The action link executed successfully.	33.0
`subtype`	String	The subtype of a platform action or `null`. If the `type` property is `ActionLink`, possible values are: • `Api`—The action link calls a synchronous API at the action URL. Salesforce sets the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or `FailedStatus` based on the HTTP status code returned by your server. • `ApiAsync`—The action link calls an asynchronous API at the action URL. The action remains in a `PendingStatus` state until a third party makes a request to `/connect/action-links/`***`actionLinkId`*** to set the status to `SuccessfulStatus` or	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		`FailedStatus` when the asynchronous operation is complete. • `Download`—The action link downloads a file from the action URL. • `Ui`—The action link takes the user to a web page at the action URL. Note: Invoking `ApiAsync` action links from an app requires a call to set the status. However, there isn't currently a way to set the status of an action link using Apex. To set the status, use Connect REST API. See the Action Link resource in the *Connect REST API Developer Guide* for more information.	
`type`	`ConnectApi.PlatformActionType`	The type of platform action. Values are: • `ActionLink`—An indicator on a feed element that targets an API, a web page, or a file, represented by a button in the Salesforce UI. • `CustomButton`—When clicked, opens a URL or a Visualforce page in a window or executes JavaScript. • `ProductivityAction`—Productivity actions are predefined and attached to a limited set of objects. Productivity actions include Send Email, Call, Map, View Website, and Read News. Except for the Call action, you can't edit productivity actions. • `QuickAction`—A global or object-specific action. • `StandardButton`—A predefined Salesforce button such as New, Edit, or Delete.	33.0
`url`	String	The URL for this platform action. If the `type` is `QuickAction` and the `subtype` is `Create`, this value is `null`.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup

ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup

A platform action group instance with state appropriate for the context user.

Action link groups are one type of platform action group and are therefore represented as `ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroup` output classes.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`category`	`ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroupCategory`	Indicates the priority and relative locations of platform actions. Values are: • `Primary`—The action link group is displayed in the body of the feed element. • `Overflow`—The action link group is displayed in the overflow menu of the feed element.	33.0
`id`	String	The 18-character ID or an opaque string ID of the platform action group. If the `ConnectApi.PlatformAction` `type` is `QuickAction` and the `subtype` is `Create`, this value is `null`.	33.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2014-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	33.0
`platformActions`	List<`ConnectApi.PlatformAction`>	The platform action instances for this group. Within an action link group, action links are displayed in the order listed in the `actionLinks` property of the `ConnectApi.ActionLinkGroupDefinitionInput` class. Within a feed item, action link groups are displayed in the order specified in the `actionLinkGroupIds` property of the `ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapabilityInput` class.	33.0
`url`	String	The URL for this platform action group. If the `ConnectApi.PlatformAction` `type` is `QuickAction` and the `subtype` is `Create`, this value is `null`.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation
ConnectApi.AssociatedActionsCapability

ConnectApi.PollCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it includes a poll.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
choices	List<ConnectApi.FeedPollChoice>	Collection of poll choices that make up the poll.	32.0
myChoiceId	String	18-character ID of the poll choice that the context user has voted for in this poll. Returns null if the context user has not voted.	32.0
totalVoteCount	Integer	Total number of votes cast on the feed poll element.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.PreviewCancelOutputRepresentation

Expected financial values for a proposed cancel action.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
changeBalances	ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation	Expected financial values for the proposed cancel action.	48.0
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderSummary.	48.0

ConnectApi.PreviewReturnOutputRepresentation

Expected financial values for a proposed return action.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
changeBalances	ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation	Expected financial values for the proposed return action.	48.0
orderSummaryId	String	ID of the OrderSummary.	48.0

ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentSchedule

Price adjustment schedule.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
id	String	ID of the price adjustment schedule.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
priceAdjustmentTiers	List<ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentTier>	List of price adjustment tiers.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductPrice

ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentTier

Price adjustment tier.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
adjustmentType	ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentTierType	Type of price adjustment for the tier. Values are: • AmountBasedAdjustment—Price is adjusted by a specified amount. • PercentageBasedAdjustment—Price is adjusted by a specified percentage.	49.0
adjustmentValue	String	Adjustment value of the tier.	49.0
id	String	ID of the price adjustment tier.	49.0
lowerBound	String	Lower limit of the tier.	49.0
tierUnitPrice	String	Unit price of the tier.	49.0
upperBound	String	Upper limit of the tier.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentSchedule

ConnectApi.PricingResult

Product pricing result.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the product.	49.0
error	ConnectApi.ErrorResponse	Error code and message.	49.0
pricingLineItemResults	List<ConnectApi.PricingResultLineItem>	Pricing result line Items.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`success`	Boolean	Specifies whether the execution was successful (`true`) or not (`false`).	49.0

ConnectApi.PricingResultLineItem

Pricing result line item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`error`	`ConnectApi.ErrorResponse`	Error code and message.	49.0
`listPrice`	String	List price for the product.	49.0
`pricebookEntryId`	String	ID of the pricebook entry.	49.0
`productId`	String	ID of the product to price.	49.0
`success`	Boolean	Specifies whether the execution was successful (`true`) or not (`false`).	49.0
`unitPrice`	String	Unit price for the product.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.PricingResult
- ConnectApi.ProductSummary

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeInfo

Product attribute metadata.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`allowableValues`	List<String>	Active attribute picklist values that can be used to create variations.	50.0
`apiName`	String	API name of the attribute.	50.0
`availableValues`	List<String>	Attribute picklist values that are available for the product in the store.	50.0
`fieldEnumOrId`	String	Field ID for custom fields or enumeration value for standard fields.	50.0
`label`	String	Label of the attribute.	50.0
`objectName`	String	Name of the object that contains the field.	50.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`sequence`	Integer	Sequence of the attribute in the attribute set.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ProductDetail
- ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetInfo
- ConnectApi.ProductVariationInfo

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSelectionInfo

Product attribute.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`apiName`	String	API name of the attribute.	50.0
`label`	String	Label of the attribute.	50.0
`sequence`	Integer	Sequence of the attribute in the attribute set.	50.0
`value`	String	Display value of the attribute.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ProductAttributesToProductEntry

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSet

Product attribute set data.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attributes`	Map<String, String>	Map of the attributes that are members of the attribute set.	50.0
`developerName`	String	Name of the attribute set.	50.0
`id`	String	ID of the product attribute record that represents the product attribute set.	50.0

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetInfo

Attribute set metadata.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attributeInfo`	Map<String, `ConnectApi.ProductAttributeInfo`>	Map of the API name of the attribute field to the attribute metadata.	50.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the attribute set.	50.0
`developerName`	String	Developer name of the attribute set.	50.0
`id`	String	ID of the attribute set.	50.0
`masterLabel`	String	Master label of the attribute set.	50.0
`sequence`	Integer	Sequence of the attribute set for the product.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetSummary

Summary of a product attribute set.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`apiName`	String	API name of the attribute set.	51.0
`attributes`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSummary`>	List of attributes in the attribute set.	51.0
`label`	String	Display label of the attribute set.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct

ConnectApi.ProductSummary

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSummary

Summary of a product attribute.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`apiName`	String	API name of the attribute.	51.0
`label`	String	Display label of the attribute.	51.0
`sequence`	Integer	Sequence of the attribute in the attribute set.	51.0
`value`	String	Display value of the attribute.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetSummary

ConnectApi.ProductAttributesToProductEntry

Mapping of an attribute value combination to a variation product ID.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canonicalKey`	String	Attribute API values concatenated with an underscore (_) based on the sequence number of the attributes in the attribute set.	50.0
`productId`	String	Variation product ID for the selection of attributes.	50.0
`selectedAttributes`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSelectionInfo`>	Ordered list of attribute values and metadata that can be used to form a key that maps to product ID.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductVariationInfo

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryData

Product category.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the category.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the category.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the category.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryPath

ConnectApi.SearchCategory

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail

Details of a product category.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`bannerImage`	`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMedia`	Banner image of the product category.	49.0
`fields`	Map<String, String>	List of fields for the product category.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product category.	49.0
`mediaGroups`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMediaGroup`>	List of media groups of the product category.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`tileImage`	`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMedia`	Tile image of the product category.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetailCollection

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetailCollection

Collection of product category details.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`productCategories`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail`>	List of product category details.	52.0

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMedia

Media associated with a product category.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`alternateText`	String	Alternative text for the product category media.	49.0
`contentVersionId`	String	ID of the latest published content version if the media is stored as a ContentDocument. If the image is a customer-provided external URL, the value is `null`.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product category image.	49.0
`mediaType`	`ConnectApi.ProductMediaType`	Type of product media. Values are: • `Document` • `Image` • `Video`	49.0
`sortOrder`	Integer	Sort order of a media item inside a media group.	49.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	URL of the thumbnail for product category media. If a value exists, it should be used for the thumbnail whether the image is natively uploaded or hosted externally.	49.0
`title`	String	Title of the product category media.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL of the product category media.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMediaGroup

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMediaGroup

Media group associated with a product category.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`developerName`	String	API name of the product category media group.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product category media group.	49.0
`mediaItems`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryMedia`>	List of media items within a product category media group.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the product category media group.	49.0
`usageType`	`ConnectApi.ProductMediaUsageType`	Usage type of a product media item within a media group. Values are: • `Attachment`—Product media group with product documents as attachments. • `Banner`—Product category media group with banner images of the product. • `Listing`—Product media group with listing images of the product. • `Standard`—Product media group with standard images and videos of the product. • `Tile`—Product category media group with tile images of the product.	49.0

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryPath

List of product categories in a path.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`path`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryData`>	List of product categories in a path.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

Details of a product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attributeSetInfo`	Map<String, `ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetInfo`>	Map of the attribute set developer name to its metadata.	50.0
`defaultImage`	`ConnectApi.ProductMedia`	Default image of the product.	49.0
`entitlement`	`ConnectApi.ProductEntitlement`	Entitlement details for the product.	49.0
`fields`	Map<String, String>	List of fields for the product.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product.	49.0
`mediaGroups`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductMediaGroup`>	List of media groups of the product.	49.0
`primaryProductCategoryPath`	`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryPath`	Primary category path of the product.	49.0
`productClass`	`ConnectApi.ProductClass`	Class of product. Values are: • `Simple` • `Variation` • `VariationParent`	50.0
`purchaseQuantityRule`	`ConnectApi.PurchaseQuantityRule`	If one exists, purchase quantity rule for the product.	52.0
`variationAttributeSet`	`ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSet`	Variation attribute set for the product.	50.0
`variationInfo`	`ConnectApi.ProductVariationInfo`	Available and allowable values for variation attributes and a map to resolve variation product IDs from attribute value combinations.	50.0
`variationParentId`	String	ID of the variation parent.	50.0

ConnectApi.ProductEntitlement

Entitlements for a product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canViewPrice`	Boolean	Specifies whether the product's price can be viewed (`true`) or not (`false`).	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductMedia

Media associated with a product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`alternateText`	String	Alternative text for the product media.	49.0
`contentVersionId`	String	ID of the latest published content version if the media is stored as a ContentDocument. If the image is a customer-provided external URL, the value is `null`.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product image.	49.0
`mediaType`	`ConnectApi.ProductMediaType`	Type of product media. Values are: • `Document` • `Image` • `Video`	49.0
`sortOrder`	Integer	Sort order of a media item within a media group.	49.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	URL of the thumbnail for product media. If a value exists, it should be used for the thumbnail whether the image is natively uploaded or hosted externally.	49.0
`title`	String	Title of the product media.	49.0
`url`	String	URL of the product media.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemProduct
ConnectApi.ProductDetail
ConnectApi.ProductMediaGroup
ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct
ConnectApi.ProductSummary

ConnectApi.ProductMediaGroup

Media group associated with a product.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`developerName`	String	API name of the product media group.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the product media group.	49.0
`mediaItems`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductMedia`>	List of media items within a product media group.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the product media group.	49.0
`usageType`	`ConnectApi.ProductMediaUsageType`	Usage type of a product media item within a media group. Values are: • `Attachment`—Product media group with product documents as attachments. • `Banner`—Product category media group with banner images of the product. • `Listing`—Product media group with listing images of the product. • `Standard`—Product media group with standard images and videos of the product. • `Tile`—Product category media group with tile images of the product.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductCategoryDetail

ConnectApi.ProductPrice

Product price.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currencyIsoCode`	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the product.	49.0
`listPrice`	String	List price for the product.	49.0
`priceAdjustment`	`ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentSchedule`	Price adjustment schedule for the product.	49.0
`pricebookEntryId`	String	ID of the pricebook entry.	49.0
`unitPrice`	String	Unit price for the product.	49.0

ConnectApi.ProductVariationInfo

Product variation attributes, metadata, and mappings of attribute combinations to variation product IDs.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`attributesToProductMappings`	List<`ConnectApi.ProductAttributesToProductEntry`>	Map of the attribute value combinations to the variation product ID.	50.0
`variationAttributeInfo`	Map<String, `ConnectApi.ProductAttributeInfo`>	Map of field API name to product attribute information.	51.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults

Product search results.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`categories`	`ConnectApi.SearchCategory`	Categories from the search results.	52.0
`facets`	List<`ConnectApi.SearchFacet`>	Facets from the search results.	52.0
`locale`	String	Locale of the search results.	52.0
`productsPage`	`ConnectApi.ProductSummaryPage`	Page of products from the search results.	52.0

ConnectApi.ProductSearchSuggestionsResults

Product search suggestions results.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`recentSearchSuggestions`	List<`ConnectApi.SearchSuggestion`>	Suggestions based on the user's recent searches.	52.0

ConnectApi.ProductSummary

Product summary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
defaultImage	ConnectApi.ProductMedia	Default image of the product.	52.0
fields	Map<String, ConnectApi.FieldValue>	Map of fields belonging to the product.	52.0
id	String	ID of the product.	52.0
name	String	Name of the product.	52.0
prices	ConnectApi.PricingResultLineItem	Prices of the product.	52.0
productClass	ConnectApi.ProductClass	Class of product. Values are: • Simple • Variation • VariationParent	52.0
purchaseQuantityRule	ConnectApi.PurchaseQuantityRule	If one exists, purchase quantity rule for the product.	52.0
variationAttributeSet	ConnectApi.ProductAttributeSetSummary	Variation attribute set that's associated with the product.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSummaryPage

ConnectApi.ProductSummaryPage

Page of product summaries.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the product.	52.0
pageSize	Integer	Number of products per page in the search results.	52.0
products	List<ConnectApi.ProductSummary>	Collection of product summaries.	52.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`total`	Long	Total number of products in the search results.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults

ConnectApi.PurchaseQuantityRule

Rule that restricts the quantity of a product that can be purchased.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`increment`	String	Increment value of the quantity that can be purchased.	52.0
`maximum`	String	Maximum quantity that can be purchased.	52.0
`minimum`	String	Minimum quantity that can be purchased.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CartItemProduct

ConnectApi.ProductDetail

ConnectApi.ProductSummary

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a question and comments on the feed element are answers to the question.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`bestAnswer`	`ConnectApi.Comment`	Comment selected as the best answer for the question.	32.0
`bestAnswerSelectedBy`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User who selected the best answer for the question.	32.0
`canCurrentUserSelectOrRemoveBestAnswer`	Boolean	Indicates whether the context user can select or remove a best answer (`true`) or not (`false`).	32.0
`candidateAnswers`	`ConnectApi.CandidateAnswersStatus`	Status of candidate answers for the question.	41.0
`escalatedCase`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	If a question post is escalated, this is the case to which it was escalated.	33.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
questionTitle	String	Title for the question.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersSuggestions

Question and answers suggestions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
articles	List<ConnectApi.ArticleItem>	List of articles.	32.0
questions	List<ConnectApi.FeedElement>	List of questions.	32.0

ConnectApi.RankAverageDistanceOutputRepresentation

The results of calculating the average distances from sets of inventory locations to an order recipient.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
distanceUnit	String	The specified unit of distance (miles or kilometers).	51.0
results	List<ConnectApi.AverageDistanceResultOutputRepresentation>	The results of the shipping distance calculations.	51.0

ConnectApi.ReadBy

Information about who read the feed element and when.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
lastReadDateByUser	Datetime	When the user last read the feed element in ISO 8601 format.	40.0
user	ConnectApi.UserSummary	Information about the user who read the feed element.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReadByPage

ConnectApi.ReadByCapability

If a feed element has this capability, the context user can mark it as read.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isReadByMe`	Boolean	Specifies whether the feed element has been read (`true`) or not (`false`) by the context user.	40.0
`lastReadDateByMe`	Datetime	Last date when the feed element was marked read for the context user in ISO 8601 format. Otherwise, `null`.	40.0
`page`	`ConnectApi.ReadByPage`	First page of information about who read the feed element and when.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.ReadByPage

A collection of information about who read the feed element and when.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	40.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page. The default is 25 items per page.	40.0
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.ReadBy`>	Collection of read-by information, including users and when they last read the feed element.	40.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	40.0
`previousPageToken`	String	Reserved for future use.	40.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Reserved for future use.	40.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`total`	Integer	Total number of users who read the feed element. Note: This count appears in the UI under feed posts in private and unlisted Chatter groups as the "seen by" number, for example, "Seen by 48."	40.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReadByCapability

ConnectApi.Recommendation

A Next Best Action recommendation object.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`acceptanceLabel`	String	Text indicating user acceptance of the recommendation.	45.0
`actionReference`	String	Reference to the action to perform, for example, launching a flow.	45.0
`description`	String	Description of the recommendation.	45.0
`externalId`	String	External ID of the recommendation. This ID doesn't need to be a Salesforce 18-character ID. For example, it can be a product number from an external system.	46.0
`id`	String	ID of the recommendation.	45.0
`image`	`ConnectApi.FileAsset`	Image to display.	45.0
`name`	String	Name of the recommendation.	45.0
`rejectionLabel`	String	Text indicating user rejection of the recommendation.	45.0
`url`	String	URL to the recommendation.	45.0

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience

A custom recommendation audience.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`criteria`	`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteria`	The criteria for the custom recommendation audience type.	36.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the custom recommendation audience.	35.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
memberCount	Integer	**Important:** This property is available only in version 35.0. In version 36.0 and later, this property is available in ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteria. Number of members in the custom recommendation audience.	35.0 only
members	ConnectApi.UserReferencePage	**Important:** This property is available only in version 35.0. In version 36.0 and later, this property is available in ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteria. Members of the custom recommendation audience.	35.0 only
modifiedBy	ConnectApi.User	User who last modified the custom recommendation audience.	36.0
modifiedDate	Datetime	ISO 8601 format date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	36.0
name	String	Name of the custom recommendation audience.	35.0
url	String	URL to the custom recommendation audience.	35.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudiencePage

A list of custom recommendation audiences.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
audienceCount	Integer	The total number of custom recommendation audiences.	35.0
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page.	35.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page.	35.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page.	35.0
recommendationAudiences	List<ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience>	A list of custom recommendation audiences.	35.0

ConnectApi.RecommendationCollection

A list of Chatter, custom, and static recommendations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recommendations	List<ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation>	Collection of Chatter, custom, and static recommendations.	33.0

ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition

Represents a custom recommendation definition.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
actionUrl	String	The URL for acting on this custom recommendation.	35.0
actionUrlName	String	The text label for the action URL in the user interface.	35.0
explanation	String	Explanation of the custom recommendation definition.	35.0
id	String	18-character ID of the custom recommendation definition.	35.0
name	String	Name of the custom recommendation definition. The name is displayed in Setup.	35.0
photo	ConnectApi.Photo	Photo of the custom recommendation definition.	35.0
title	String	Title of the custom recommendation definition.	35.0
url	String	URL to the Connect REST API resource for the custom recommendation definition.	35.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionPage
- ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation

ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinitionPage

A list of custom recommendation definitions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recommendationDefinitions	List<ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition>	A list of custom recommendation definitions.	35.0
url	String	URL to the Connect REST API resource for the recommendation definition collection.	35.0

ConnectApi.RecommendationExplanation

Explanation for a Chatter recommendation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendationExplanation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`detailsUrl`	String	URL to explanation details or `null` if the Chatter recommendation doesn't have a detailed explanation.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation

ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction

A reaction to a recommendation produced by a recommendation strategy

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`aiModel`	String	Reserved for future use.	47.0
`contextRecord`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Reference to the context record.	45.0
`createdBy`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Reference to the reaction creator.	45.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	Reaction creation date.	45.0
`externalId`	String	External target ID of the recommendation reacted on. This ID doesn't need to be a Salesforce 18-character ID. For example, it can be a product number from an external system.	46.0
`id`	String	Reaction record ID.	45.0
`onBehalfOf`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Reference to the user or record that is indirectly reacting to the recommendation.	45.0
`reactionType`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionType`	Type of reaction to a recommendation. Values are: • `Accepted` • `Rejected`	45.0
`recommendationMode`	String	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`recommendationScore`	Double	Reserved for future use.	46.0
`strategy`	`ConnectApi.RecordSnapshot`	Strategy that recommended the target record.	45.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
targetAction	ConnectApi.RecordSnapshot	Target action that is recommended.	45.0
targetRecord	ConnectApi.Reference	Reference to the target record.	45.0
url	String	URL to the recommendation reaction.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationReactions

ConnectApi.RecommendationReactions

A list of recommendation reactions.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page of reactions in the collection.	45.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page of reactions in the collection.	45.0
reactions	List<ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction>	Collection of recommendation reactions.	45.0

ConnectApi.RecommendationsCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a recommendation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
items	List<ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation>	A list of recommendations.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.RecommendedObject

A recommended object, such as a custom or static recommendation.

Subclass of ConnectApi.Actor

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`idOrEnum`	String	ID of a recommendation definition for a custom recommendation or the enum value `Today` for static recommendations that don't have an ID (version 35.0 and later).	34.0
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif`	Motif of the recommended object.	34.0

ConnectApi.RecordCapability

If a comment has this capability, it has a record attachment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`recordId`	String	ID of the record.	42.0
`url`	String	URL to the record.	42.0

ConnectApi.RecordField

Generic record field containing a label and text value.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField.

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.CompoundRecordField
- ConnectApi.OrderItemSummary
- ConnectApi.OrderItemSummaryProduct
- ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummary
- ConnectApi.OrderSummaryRepresentation

ConnectApi.RecordSnapshot

A record snapshot in a recommendation reaction.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of the record.	45.0
`nameAtSnapshot`	String	Name of the record when the ID was recorded.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.RecommendationReaction

ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it contains all the snapshotted fields of a record for a single create record event.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`recordView`	`ConnectApi.RecordView`	A record representation that includes metadata and data so you can display the record easily.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.RecordSummary

Record summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecordView.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`entityLabel`	`ConnectApi.EntityLabel`	Label of the record's entity.	40.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.EmailAddress
- ConnectApi.EmailAttachment
- ConnectApi.ReferenceRecordField
- ConnectApi.ReferenceWithDateRecordField

ConnectApi.RecordSummaryList

Summary information about a list of records in the organization including custom objects.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`records`	`List<ConnectApi.ActorWithId>`	A list of records.	30.0
`url`	String	The URL to this list of records.	30.0

ConnectApi.RecordView

A view of any record in the org, including a custom object record. This object is used if a specialized object, such as User or ChatterGroup, is not available for the record type.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecordView.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`sections`	`List<ConnectApi.RecordViewSection>`	List of record view sections.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotCapability

ConnectApi.RecordViewSection

Section of record fields and values on a record detail.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`columnCount`	Integer	Number of columns to use to lay out the fields in a record section.	29.0
`columnOrder`	`ConnectApi.RecordColumnOrder` Enum	Order of the fields to use in the `fields` property to lay out the fields in a record section. • `LeftRight`—Fields are rendered from left to right. • `TopDown`—Fields are rendered from the top down.	29.0
`fields`	`ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField`	Fields and values for the record contained in this section.	29.0
`heading`	String	Localized label to display when rendering this section of fields.	29.0
`isCollapsible`	Boolean	Indicates whether the section can be collapsed to hide all the fields (`true`) or not (`false`).	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecordView

ConnectApi.Reference

Reference to a record.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	The ID of the record being referenced, which could be an 18-character ID or some other string identifier.	28.0
`url`	String	The URL to the resource endpoint.	28.0

ConnectApi.ReferenceRecordField

Record field with a label and text value.

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
reference	ConnectApi.RecordSummary	Object referenced by the record field.	29.0

ConnectApi.ReferencedRefundResponse

Refund comprehensive output.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
error	ConnectApi.ErrorResponse	Error response representation for the refund.	50.0
gatewayResponse	ConnectApi.RefundGatewayResponse	Gateway response received for the processed refund request.	50.0
paymentGatewayLogs	List<ConnectApi.GatewayLogResponse>	Gateway log collection representation for the refund.	50.0
paymentGroup	ConnectApi.PaymentGroupResponse	Payment group associated with the refund.	50.0
refund	ConnectApi.RefundResponse	Refund response representation.	50.0

ConnectApi.ReferenceWithDateRecordField

Record field containing a referenced object that acted at a specific time, for example, "Created By...".

Subclass of ConnectApi.LabeledRecordField.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
dateValue	Datetime	Time at which the referenced object acted.	29.0
reference	ConnectApi.RecordSummary	Object referenced by the record field.	29.0

ConnectApi.RefundGatewayResponse

Refund gateway response.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractGatewayResponse.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.RefundResponse

Refund output.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`accountId`	String	ID of the account related to the refund record.	50.0
`amount`	Double	Total amount of the refund transaction performed in the payment request.	50.0
`currencyIsoCode`	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment group record.	50.0
`effectiveDate`	Datetime	Date that the refund becomes effective.	50.0
`id`	String	ID of the refund record.	50.0
`refundNumber`	String	Number of the refund record that was created as a result of the request processing.	50.0
`requestDate`	Datetime	Date when the refund occurred.	50.0
`status`	String	Indicates the results of processing the refund transaction in the gateway. Can be DRAFT, PROCESSED or CANCELLED.	50.0

ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPost

This class is abstract.

Subclass of: ConnectApi.ActorWithId

Superclass of: ConnectApi.RelatedQuestion

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`score`	Double	Score of the related feed post that indicates how closely related it is to the context feed post.	37.0
`title`	String	Title of the related feed post.	37.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts

ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPosts

A collection of related feed posts.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`relatedFeedPosts`	List<`ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPost`>	Collection of related feed posts.	37.0

ConnectApi.RelatedQuestion

A related question.

Subclass of: ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPost

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`hasBestAnswer`	Boolean	Indicates whether the question has a best answer.	37.0
`interactions`	`ConnectApi.InteractionsCapability`	The number of individual views, likes, and comments on a question.	38.0

ConnectApi.ReplyIntent

Reply intent for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`managedSocialAccount`	`ConnectApi.ManagedSocialAccount`	Managed social account that replies to the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReplyIntents

ConnectApi.ReplyIntents

List of reply intents for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`replies`	List<`ConnectApi.ReplyIntent`>	List of reply intents for the social post.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

ConnectApi.RepositoryFileDetail

A detailed description of a repository file.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFile

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary

A summary of a repository file.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFile

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderDetail

A detailed description of a repository folder.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFolder

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem

A folder item.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`file`	`ConnectApi.RepositoryFileSummary`	If the folder item is a file, the file summary. If the folder item is a folder, `null`.	39.0
`folder`	`ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderSummary`	If the folder item is a folder, the folder summary. If the folder item is a file, `null`.	39.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.FolderItemType`	Type of item in a folder. Values are: • `file` • `folder`	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItemsCollection

A collection of repository folder items.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	URL to the current page of items.	39.0
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem`>	Collection of items in a repository folder.	39.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	URL to the next page of items, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	39.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`previousPageUrl`	String	URL to the previous page of items, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	39.0

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderSummary

A summary of a repository folder.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRepositoryFolder

No additional properties.

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RepositoryFolderItem

ConnectApi.RepositoryGroupSummary

A group summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractDirectoryEntrySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`groupType`	`ConnectApi.ContentHubGroupType`	Type of group. Values are: • `Everybody`—Group is public to everybody. • `EverybodyInDomain`—Group is public to everybody in the same domain. • `Unknown`—Group type is unknown.	39.0
`name`	String	Name of the group.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ExternalFilePermissionInformation

ConnectApi.RepositoryUserSummary

A user summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractDirectoryEntrySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`firstName`	String	First name of the user.	39.0
`lastName`	String	Last name of the user.	39.0

ConnectApi.Reputation

Reputation for a user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`reputationLevel`	`ConnectApi.ReputationLevel`	User's reputation level.	32.0
`reputationPoints`	Double	User's reputation points, which can be earned by performing different activities.	32.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to the reputation.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.User

ConnectApi.ReputationLevel

Reputation level for a user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`levelImageUrl`	String	URL to the reputation level image.	32.0
`levelName`	String	Name of the reputation level.	32.0
`levelNumber`	Integer	Reputation level number, which is the numerical rank of the level, with the lowest level at 1. Administrators define the reputation level point ranges.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Reputation

ConnectApi.RequestHeader

An HTTP request header name and value pair.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	The name of the request header.	33.0
`value`	String	The value of the request header.	33.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ActionLinkDefinition

ConnectApi.ResourceLinkSegment

Resource link segment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to a resource not otherwise identified by an ID field, for example, a link to a list of users.	28.0

ConnectApi.ReturnItemsOutputRepresentation

Output of Return Items. Includes the ID of the generated change order, plus information about any ReturnOrderLineItems that were created to represent remaining return quantities.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changeOrderId`	String	ID of the change order representing the ReturnOrderLineItem processing performed by this call.	52.0
`returnLineItemSplits`	List<`ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemSplitLineOutputRepresentation`>	A list of properties representing any remaining quantities from partial returns processed by this call. Each element of the list includes the ID of a split ReturnOrderLineItem and the ID of the partially processed ReturnOrderLineItem whose remaining quantity it holds.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderItemSplitLineOutputRepresentation

After a change order is created for a ReturnOrderLineItem, that ReturnOrderLineItem is read-only. If the Return Items API is used to return a partial quantity, it creates a new "split" ReturnOrderLineItem to hold the remaining quantity to be returned. In that case, it returns this output property, which contains the IDs of the original and split ReturnOrderLineItems.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`newReturnOrderItemId`	String	ID of the new ReturnOrderLineItem that holds the remaining return quantity.	52.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`originalReturnOrderItemId`	String	ID of the original ReturnOrderLineItem.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ReturnItemsOutputRepresentation

returnItems(returnOrderId, returnItemsInput)

ConnectApi.ReturnOrderOutputRepresentation

ID of the created ReturnOrder.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`returnOrderId`	String	ID of the created ReturnOrder.	50.0

SEE ALSO:

createReturnOrder(returnOrderInput)

ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation

Represents a scheduled custom recommendation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`channel`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`	A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. Values are: • `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear. • `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.	36.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.	
`enabled`	Boolean	Indicates whether scheduling is enabled. If `true`, the custom recommendation is enabled and appears in Experience Cloud sites. If `false`, custom recommendations in feeds in Salesforce mobile web aren't removed, but no new custom recommendations appear. In Customer Service and Partner Central sites, disabled custom recommendations no longer appear.	35.0
`id`	String	18-character ID of the scheduled custom recommendation.	35.0
`rank`	Integer	The rank determining the order of this scheduled custom recommendation.	35.0
`recommendationAudienceId`	String	ID of the audience for the scheduled custom recommendation.	35.0
`recommendationDefinitionRepresentation`	`ConnectApi.RecommendationDefinition`	Custom recommendation definition that this scheduled recommendation schedules.	35.0
`url`	String	URL to the Connect REST API resource for the scheduled custom recommendation.	35.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage

ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendationPage

A list of scheduled custom recommendations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`scheduledRecommendations`	List<`ConnectApi.ScheduledRecommendation`>	A list of scheduled custom recommendations.	35.0
`url`	String	URL to the Connect REST API resource for the scheduled custom recommendation collection.	35.0

ConnectApi.Scope

Scope information for a target.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`name`	String	Name of the scope for the target.	48.0–49.0
`value`	String	Value of the scope for the target.	48.0–49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Target

ConnectApi.SearchCategory

Search category.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`category`	`ConnectApi.ProductCategoryData`	Information about the category.	52.0
`children`	List<`ConnectApi.SearchCategory`>	First-level child categories of the category searched with non-empty search results.	52.0
`productCount`	Long	Number of products in the search results that belong to the category.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults

ConnectApi.SearchFacet

Search facet.

This class is abstract and is a superclass of ConnectApi.DistinctValueSearchFacet.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
attributeType	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchAttributeType	Search attribute type. Values are: • Custom • ProductAttribute • ProductCategory • Standard	52.0
displayName	String	Display name of the facet.	52.0
displayRank	Integer	Display rank of the facet. Valid values are from 1 through 50.	52.0
displayType	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetDisplayType	Display type of the facet. Values are: • CategoryTree • DatePicker • MultiSelect • SingleSelect	52.0
facetType	ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetType	Search facet type. Value is: • DistinctValue	52.0
nameOrId	String	Developer name of the attribute. In version 52.0 and later, the ID of the attribute isn't supported.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSearchResults

ConnectApi.SearchSuggestion

Search suggestion.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
value	String	Search suggestion.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ProductSearchSuggestionsResults

ConnectApi.ShiftsFromPattern

Shifts created from a pattern.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
count	Integer	Total count of created shifts.	51.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recordIds	List<String>	Collection of created shift IDs.	51.0

ConnectApi.SocialAccount

A social account on a social network.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
externalSocialAccountId	String	ID of the external social account, if available.	38.0
handle	String	Social handle, screen name, or alias that identifies this account.	36.0
name	String	Name of the account as defined by the account's owner.	36.0
profileUrl	String	URL to the account's profile.	36.0
socialPersonaId	String	ID of the social persona account, if the external social account ID isn't available.	39.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability

ConnectApi.SocialAccountRelationship

Follow relationship between a managed social account and a social persona.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
isFollowed	Boolean	Specifies whether the social account is followed by the social persona.	46.0
isFollowing	Boolean	Specifies whether the social account is following the social persona.	46.0
socialAccountId	String	ID of the social account.	46.0
socialPersonaId	String	ID of the social persona.	46.0

ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it can interact with a social post on a social network.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
author	ConnectApi.SocialAccount	Social account that authored the social post.	36.0
content	String	Content body of the social post.	36.0
deletedBy	ConnectApi.UserSummary	User who deleted the social post.	38.0
hiddenBy	ConnectApi.UserSummary	User who hid the social post.	41.0
icon	ConnectApi.Icon	Icon of the social network.	36.0
id	String	ID associated with the social post Salesforce record.	36.0
isOutbound	Boolean	If true, the social post originated from the Salesforce application.	36.0
likedBy	String	External social account who liked the social post.	40.0
messageType	ConnectApi.SocialPostMessageType	Message type of the social post. Values are: • Comment • Direct • Post • PrivateMessage • Reply • Retweet • Tweet	38.0
name	String	Title or heading of the social post.	36.0
postUrl	String	External URL to the social post on the social network.	36.0
provider	ConnectApi.SocialNetworkProvider	Social network that this social post belongs to. Values are: • Facebook • GooglePlus • Instagram • InstagramBusiness • KakaoTalk • Kik • Line • LinkedIn • Messenger • Other • Pinterest • QQ	36.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• Rypple • SinaWeibo • SMS • Snapchat • Telegram • Twitter • VKontakte • WeChat • WhatsApp • YouTube	
recipient	ConnectApi.SocialAccount	Social account that is the recipient of the social post.	36.0
recipientId	String	ID of the recipient of the social post.	38.0
reviewScale	Double	Review scale of the social post.	40.0
reviewScore	Double	Review score of the social post.	40.0
status	ConnectApi.SocialPostStatus	Status of the social post.	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.SocialPostIntents

Intents available for a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
approvalIntent	ConnectApi.ApprovalIntent	Approval intent for the social post.	45.0
deleteIntent	ConnectApi.DeleteIntents	Delete intents for the social post.	45.0
followIntent	ConnectApi.FollowIntents	Follow intents for the social persona.	45.0
hideIntent	ConnectApi.HideSocialPostIntent	Hide intent for the social post.	45.0
likeIntent	ConnectApi.LikeIntents	Like intents for the social post.	45.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`replyIntent`	`ConnectApi.ReplyIntents`	Reply intents for the social post.	45.0

ConnectApi.SocialPostMassApprovalOutput

Approval or rejection of a large number of social posts.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isApproved`	Boolean	Specifies whether the social posts were approved (`true`) or rejected (`false`) for publishing.	46.0

ConnectApi.SocialPostStatus

The status of a social post.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`message`	String	Status message.	36.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.SocialPostStatusType`	Status type. Values are: • `ApprovalPending` • `ApprovalRecalled` • `ApprovalRejected` • `Deleted` • `Failed` • `Hidden` • `Pending` • `Sent` • `Unknown`	36.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability

ConnectApi.Stamp

A user stamp.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Description of the stamp.	39.0–43.0
`id`	String	ID of the stamp.	39.0–43.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`imageUrl`	String	Image URL of the stamp.	39.0–43.0
`label`	String	Label of the stamp.	39.0–43.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.User

ConnectApi.SortRule

Sort rule.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`direction`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchSortRuleDirection`	Direction of the sort rule. Values are: • `Ascending`—Sorts in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • `Default`—If there isn't an ascending or descending direction, sorts in default order. For example, sorting by relevancy. • `Descending`—Sorts in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).	52.0
`label`	String	Label of the sort rule.	52.0
`nameOrId`	String	Name of the sort rule field or, if the sort rule is based on a custom field, ID.	52.0
`sortRuleId`	String	ID of the sort rule.	52.0
`type`	`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchSortRuleType`	Type of sort rule. Values are: • `Custom`—Custom field or non-product object sort rule. • `ProductBased`—Product sort rule. • `Relevancy`—Relevancy sort rule.	52.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.SortRulesCollection

ConnectApi.SortRulesCollection

Collection of sort rules.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`sortRules`	List<`ConnectApi.SortRule`>	Collection of sort rules.	52.0

ConnectApi.StatusCapability

If a feed post or comment has this capability, it has a status that determines its visibility.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedEntityStatus`	`ConnectApi.FeedEntityStatus`	Status of the feed post or comment. Values are: • `Draft`—The feed post isn't published but is visible to the author and users with Modify All Data or View All Data permission. Comments can't be drafts. • `PendingReview`—The feed post or comment isn't approved yet and therefore isn't published or visible. • `Published`—The feed post or comment is approved and visible.	37.0
`isApprovableByMe`	Boolean	Specifies whether the context user can change the status of the feed post or comment.	37.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.StrategyTrace

Messages and trace nodes for a recommendation strategy execution.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`messages`	List<String>	Messages and errors from the strategy execution.	45.0
`nodes`	List<`ConnectApi.StrategyTraceNode`>	Nodes of the strategy execution used for debugging.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.NBARecommendations

ConnectApi.StrategyTraceNode

A trace node for a recommendation strategy execution.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`inputCount`	Integer	Number of items put into the node.	45.0
`messages`	List<String>	Messages that occurred during node execution.	45.0
`nodeName`	String	Name of the node.	45.0
`nodeTime`	Long	Time spent processing inside the node.	45.0
`nodeType`	String	Type of node.	45.0
`outputCount`	Integer	Number of items returned from the node.	45.0
`outputs`	List<String>	Recommendations that are returned from the node.	45.0
`totalTime`	Long	Total time spent processing.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.StrategyTrace

ConnectApi.SubmitCancelOutputRepresentation

ID of the change order created for a cancel action, and a set of its financial values.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changeBalances`	`ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation`	Financial values resulting from the cancel.	48.0
`changeOrderId`	String	ID of the created change order.	48.0

ConnectApi.SubmitReturnOutputRepresentation

ID of the change order created for a return action, and a set of its financial values.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BaseOutputRepresentation.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changeBalances`	`ConnectApi.ChangeItemOutputRepresentation`	Financial values resulting from the return.	48.0
`changeOrderId`	String	ID of the created change order.	48.0

ConnectApi.Subscription

Subscription.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`community`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Information about the Experience Cloud site in which the subscription exists.	28.0
`id`	String	Subscription's 18–character ID.	28.0
`subject`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	Information about the parent, that is, the thing or person being followed.	28.0
`subscriber`	`ConnectApi.Actor`	Information about the subscriber, that is, the person following this item.	28.0
`url`	String	Connect REST API URL to this specific subscription.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FollowerPage
- ConnectApi.FollowingPage

ConnectApi.SupportedEmojis

A collection of supported emojis.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`supportedEmojis`	`ConnectApi.EmojiCollection`	A collection of supported emojis.	39.0

ConnectApi.SurveyInvitationEmailOutput

Survey invitation email.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`errorCode`	Integer	Error code for the failed call.	50.0
`errorMessage`	String	Details explaining why the call failed.	50.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.SurveyEmailStatusEnum`	Status of a survey invitation email. Values are: • `Failed`—The survey invitation email wasn't sent. • `Queued`—The survey invitation email is queued for sending.	50.0

ConnectApi.Target

Personalization target information.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`audience`	`ConnectApi.AudienceTarget`	Audience assigned to the target.	48.0
`formulaScope`	`ConnectApi.FormulaScope`	Formula scope of the target.	50.0
`groupName`	String	Group name of the target. Groups bundle related target and audience pairs.	48.0
`id`	String	ID of the target.	48.0
`priority`	Integer	Priority of the target. Within a group, priority determines which target is returned if the user matches more than one audience.	48.0
`publishStatus`	`ConnectApi.PublishStatus`	Publish status of the target. Values are: • `Draft` • `Live`	48.0
`scope`	List<`ConnectApi.Scope`>	List of scopes for the target. In version 50.0 and later, the `formulaScope` property returns this information.	48.0–49.0
`targetType`	String	Type of target, indicating the nature of the data being targeted.	48.0
`targetValue`	String	Value of the target.	48.0
`url`	String	URL to the target.	48.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.TargetCollection

ConnectApi.TargetCollection

List of personalization targets.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`targets`	List<`ConnectApi.Target`>	List of personalization targets.	48.0

ConnectApi.TextSegment

Text segment.

Subclass of ConnectApi.MessageSegment.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.TimeZone

User's time zone as selected in the user's personal settings in Salesforce. This value does not reflect a device's current location.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`gmtOffset`	Double	Signed offset, in hours, from GMT.	30.0
`name`	String	Display name of this time zone.	30.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserSettings

ConnectApi.Topic

Topic.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	29.0
`description`	String	Description of the topic.	29.0
`id`	String	18-character ID.	29.0
`images`	`ConnectApi.TopicImages`	Images associated with the topic.	32.0
`isBeingDeleted`	Boolean	`true` if the topic is currently being deleted; `false` otherwise. After the topic is deleted, when attempting to retrieve the topic, the output is NOT_FOUND.	33.0
`name`	String	Name of the topic.	29.0
`nonLocalizedName`	String	Non-localized name of the topic.	36.0
`talkingAbout`	Integer	Number of people talking about this topic over the last two months, based on factors such as topic additions and comments on posts with the topic.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`url`	String	URL to the topic detail page.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ManagedTopic
- ConnectApi.TopicPage
- ConnectApi.TopicEndorsement.
- ConnectApi.TopicEndorsementCollection
- ConnectApi.TopicSuggestion
- ConnectApi.TopicsCapability

ConnectApi.TopicEndorsement.

Represents one user endorsing another user for a single topic.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`endorsee`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User being endorsed.	30.0
`endorsementId`	String	18-character ID of the endorsement record.	30.0
`endorser`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User performing the endorsement.	30.0
`topic`	`ConnectApi.Topic`	Topic the user is being endorsed for.	30.0
`url`	String	URL to the resource for the endorsement record.	30.0

ConnectApi.TopicEndorsementCollection

Collection of topic endorsement response bodies.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	30.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	30.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	30.0
`topicEndorsements`	`List<ConnectApi.Topic>`	List of topic endorsements.	30.0

ConnectApi.TopicEndorsementSummary

Topic endorsement summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`endorsementId`	`ID`	ID of the topic endorsement.	42.0

ConnectApi.TopicImages.

Images associated with a topic.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`coverImageUrl`	String	URL to a topic's cover image, which appears on the topic page. Both topics and managed topics can have cover images.	32.0
`featuredImageUrl`	String	URL to a managed topic's featured image, which appears wherever you feature it, for example, on your Experience Cloud site home page.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Topic

ConnectApi.TopicPage

Page of topics.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	29.0
`topics`	`List<ConnectApi.Topic>`	List of topics.	29.0

ConnectApi.TopicsCapability

If a feed element has this capability, the context user can add topics to it. Topics help users organize and discover conversations.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canAssignTopics`	Boolean	`true` if a topic can be assigned to the feed element, `false` otherwise.	32.0
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.Topic`>	A collection of topics associated with this feed element.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.TopicSuggestion

Topic suggestion.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`existingTopic`	`ConnectApi.Topic`	Topic that already exists or `null` for a new topic	29.0
`name`	String	Topic name	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage

ConnectApi.TopicSuggestionPage

Page of topic suggestions.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`TopicSuggestions`	`List<ConnectApi.TopicSuggestion>`	List of topic suggestions.	29.0

ConnectApi.TopicSummary

Summary of a topic.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	ID of the topic.	47.0
`name`	String	Name of the topic.	47.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ManagedContentAssociations

ConnectApi.TrackedChangeBundleCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it has a group of other feed elements aggregated into one feed element called a *bundle*. This type of bundle aggregates feed tracked changes.

Subclass of ConnectApi.BundleCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changes`	List<`ConnectApi.TrackedChangeItem`>	Collection of feed tracked changes.	31.0

ConnectApi.TrackedChangeItem

Tracked change item.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`fieldName`	String	The name of the field that was updated.	28.0
`newValue`	String	The new value of the field or `null` if the field length is long.	28.0
`oldValue`	String	The old value of the field or `null` if the field length is long.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.TrackedChangesCapability
- ConnectApi.TrackedChangeBundleCapability

ConnectApi.TrackedChangesCapability

If a feed element has this capability, it contains all changes to a record for a single tracked change event.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`changes`	List<`ConnectApi.TrackedChangeItem`>	Collection of feed tracked changes.	32.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.UnauthenticatedUser

Unauthenticated user.

Subclass of ConnectApi.Actor.

No additional properties.

Instances of this class are used as the actor for feed items and comments posted by Chatter customers.

ConnectApi.UnreadConversationCount

Unread count for a conversation.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`hasMore`	Boolean	Specifies if there are more than 50 unread messages (`true`) or not (`false`).	29.0
`unreadCount`	Integer	The total number of unread messages.	29.0

ConnectApi.UpDownVoteCapability

If a feed post or comment has this capability, users can upvote or downvote it.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`downVoteCount`	Long	Number of downvotes.	41.0
`myVote`	`ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`	Specifies the context user's vote. Values are: • `Down` • `None` • `Up`	41.0
`upVoteCount`	Long	Number of upvotes.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities

ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilities

ConnectApi.UpVoteSummary

Summary of an upvote.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.User

User.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.ActorWithId.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.UserDetail
- ConnectApi.UserSummary

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`additionalLabel`	String	If one exists, an extra label for the user, for example, “Customer,” “Partner,” or “Acme Corporation.”	30.0
`communityNickname`	String	User’s nickname in the site.	32.0
`companyName`	String	Name of the company. If your Experience Cloud site allows access without logging in, the value is `null` for guest users.	28.0
`displayName`	String	User’s name that is displayed in the site. If nicknames are enabled, the nickname is displayed. If nicknames aren’t enabled, the full name is displayed.	32.0
`firstName`	String	User's first name. In version 39.0 and later, if nicknames are enabled, `firstName` is `null`.	28.0
`isChatterGuest`	Boolean	`true` if user is a Chatter customer; `false` otherwise.	28.0
`isInThisCommunity`	Boolean	`true` if user is in the same site as the context user; `false` otherwise.	28.0
`lastName`	String	User's last name. In version 39.0 and later, if nicknames are enabled, `lastName` is `null`.	28.0
`outOfOffice`	`ConnectApi.OutOfOffice`	If one exists, extra out-of-office message for the user.	40.0
`photo`	`ConnectApi.Photo`	Information about the user's photos.	28.0
`reputation`	`ConnectApi.Reputation`	Reputation of the user.	32.0
`stamps`	List<`ConnectApi.Stamp`>	Collection of the user’s stamps. In version 44.0 and later, use SOQL to get a user’s stamps.	39.0–43.0
`title`	String	User’s title. If your Experience Cloud site allows access without logging in, the value is `null` for guest users.	28.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`userType`	`ConnectApi.UserType` Enum	Type of user. • `ChatterGuest`—User is an external user in a private group. • `ChatterOnly`—User is a Chatter Free customer. • `Guest`—User is unauthenticated. • `Internal`—User is a standard org member. • `Portal`—User is an external user in an Experience Cloud site. • `System`—User is Chatter Expert or a system user. • `Undefined`—User is a user type that is a custom object.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.RecommendationAudience

ConnectApi.UserActivitiesJob

User activities job.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`jobToken`	String	Token that identifies the user activities job.	42.0
`jobType`	String	Type of user activities job. Value is `export` or `purge`.	42.0
`message`	String	Message describing the status and expected outcome of the job. When the job completes, you receive an email with information about the Salesforce file that contains `ConnectApi.UserActivityCollection`.	42.0

ConnectApi.UserActivityCollection

User activity collection.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`activityType`	String	Type of user activity. Values are: • `Bookmark`—User bookmarked a post.	42.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `ChatterActivity`—Total counts of posts and comments made and likes and comments received for a user. • `ChatterLike`—User liked a post or comment. • `Comment`—User commented on a post. • `CompanyVerify`—User verified comment. • `DownVote`—User downvoted a post or comment. • `FeedEntityRead`—User read a post. • `FeedRead`—User read a feed. • `Mute`—User muted a post. • `Post`—User made a post. • `TopicEndorsement`—User endorsed another user on a topic or received endorsement on a topic. • `UpVote`—User upvoted a post or comment.	
`userActivities`	List<`ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary`>	Collection of user activities.	42.0

ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary

User activity summary.

This class is abstract.

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.CommentSummary
- ConnectApi.FeedPostSummary
- ConnectApi.FeedReadSummary
- ConnectApi.TopicEndorsementSummary
- ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`activityDate`	Datetime	Date of the user activity.	42.0
`activityType`	String	Type of user activity. Values are: • `Bookmark`—User bookmarked a post. • `ChatterActivity`—Total counts of posts and comments made and likes and comments received for a user. • `ChatterLike`—User liked a post or comment.	42.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		• `Comment`—User commented on a post. • `CompanyVerify`—User verified comment. • `DownVote`—User downvoted a post or comment. • `FeedEntityRead`—User read a post. • `FeedRead`—User read a feed. • `Mute`—User muted a post. • `Post`—User made a post. • `TopicEndorsement`—User endorsed another user on a topic or received endorsement on a topic. • `UpVote`—User upvoted a post or comment.	
`activityUrl`	String	URL to the user activity.	42.0
`community`	`ConnectApi.CommunitySummary`	Experience Cloud site in which the user performed the activity.	42.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserActivityCollection

ConnectApi.UserCapabilities

Capabilities associated with a user profile.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canChat`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can use Chatter Messenger with the subject user (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`canDirectMessage`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can direct message the subject user (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`canEdit`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can edit the subject user's account (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`canFollow`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can follow the subject user's feed (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`canViewFeed`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can view the feed of the subject user (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`canViewFullProfile`	Boolean	Specifies if the context user can view the full profile of the subject user (`true`) or only the limited profile (`false`)	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isModerator`	Boolean	Specifies if the subject user is a Chatter moderator or admin (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserProfile

ConnectApi.UserChatterSettings

User's global Chatter settings.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`defaultGroupEmailFrequency`	`ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency` Enum	The default frequency with which a user receives email from a group when they join it.	28.0

ConnectApi.UserDetail

Details about a user in an org.

Subclass of ConnectApi.User.

If the context user doesn't have permission to see a property, its value is set to `null`.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`aboutMe`	String	Text from user's profile.	28.0
`address`	`ConnectApi.Address`	User's address.	28.0
`bannerPhoto`	`ConnectApi.BannerPhoto`	User's banner photo.	36.0
`chatterActivity`	`ConnectApi.ChatterActivity`	Chatter activity statistics.	28.0
`chatterInfluence`	`ConnectApi.GlobalInfluence`	User's influence rank.	28.0
`email`	String	User's email address.	28.0
`followersCount`	Integer	Number of users following this user.	28.0
`followingCounts`	`ConnectApi.FollowingCounts`	Information about items the user is following.	28.0
`groupCount`	Integer	Number of groups user is following.	28.0
`hasChatter`	Boolean	`true` if user has access to Chatter; `false` otherwise.	31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isActive`	Boolean	`true` if user is active; `false` otherwise.	28.0
`managerId`	String	18-character ID of the user's manager.	28.0
`managerName`	String	Locale-based concatenation of manager's first and last names.	28.0
`phoneNumbers`	`List<ConnectApi.PhoneNumber>`	Collection of user's phone numbers.	28.0
`thanksReceived`	Integer	The number of times the user has been thanked.	29.0
`username`	String	Username of the user, such as *`Admin@mycompany.com`*.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserPage

ConnectApi.UserProfile

ConnectApi.UserFeedEntityActivitySummary

User feed entity activity summary.

This class is abstract.

Subclass of ConnectApi.UserActivitySummary

Superclass of:

- ConnectApi.BookmarkSummary
- ConnectApi.ChatterActivitySummary
- ConnectApi.CompanyVerifySummary
- ConnectApi.DownVoteSummary
- ConnectApi.FeedEntityReadSummary
- ConnectApi.LikeSummary
- ConnectApi.MuteSummary
- ConnectApi.UpVoteSummary

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`feedEntityId`	String	ID of the feed entity.	42.0

ConnectApi.UserGroupDetailPage

A page of groups that a user is a member of.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageUrl	String	URL to the current page.	45.0
groups	List<ConnectApi.ChatterGroupDetail>	Collection of groups that the user is a member of.	45.0
nextPageUrl	String	URL to the next page, or null if there is no next page.	45.0
previousPageUrl	String	URL to the previous page, or null if there is no previous page.	45.0
total	Integer	Total number of groups that the user is a member of.	45.0

ConnectApi.UserGroupPage

A paginated list of groups the context user is a member of.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
groups	List<ConnectApi.ChatterGroupSummary>	List of groups.	28.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or null if there isn't a next page.	28.0
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or null if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
total	Integer	Total number of groups across all pages.	28.0

ConnectApi.UserMission

Mission details for a user.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractUserMissionActivity.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
missionName	String	Name of the mission.	46.0
missionThreshold	Integer	Threshold of the mission. When a user reaches this activity count, the mission is achieved.	46.0

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob

User mission activities job.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`jobToken`	String	Token that identifies the mission user activities job.	45.0
`jobType`	String	Type of user activities job, either `export` or `purge`.	45.0
`message`	String	Message describing the status and expected outcome of the job. When the job completes, you receive an email with information about the Salesforce file that contains `ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityCollection`.	45.0

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivity

User activity associated with missions.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractUserMissionActivity.

No additional properties.

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityCollection

List of mission activities for a user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`community`	`ConnectApi.CommunitySummary`	Experience Cloud site in which the user performed activities.	45.0
`userId`	String	ID of the user.	45.0
`userMissionActivities`	List<`ConnectApi.AbstractUserMissionActivity`>	List of mission activities performed by the user.	45.0
`userName`	String	Name of the user.	45.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivitiesJob

ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityStatus

Status of mission activity for a user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`message`	String	Success or error message.	45.0
`status`	String	Status of mission activity for a user.	45.0

ConnectApi.UserOauthInfo

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`availableExternalEmailService`	`Connect.OauthProviderInfo`	The available OAuth service provider.	37.0
`isAuthenticated`	Boolean	Specifies whether the user is authenticated (`true`) or not (`false`).	37.0

ConnectApi.UserPage

Page of users.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the current page.	28.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0
`nextPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0
`previousPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	28.0
`users`	`List<ConnectApi.UserDetail>`	List of user detail information. If the context user doesn't have permission to see a property, the property is set to `null`.	28.0

ConnectApi.UserProfile

Details necessary to render a view of a user profile.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`capabilities`	`ConnectApi.UserCapabilities`	The context user's capabilities specific to the subject user's profile.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	The ID of the user attached to the profile.	29.0
`tabs`	`List<ConnectApi.UserProfileTab>`	The tabs visible to the context user specific to the subject user's profile.	29.0
`url`	String	The URL of the user's profile.	29.0
`userDetail`	`ConnectApi.UserDetail`	The details about the user attached to the profile.	29.0

ConnectApi.UserProfileTab

Information about a profile tab.

Name	Type	Descriptio	Available Version
`id`	String	The tab's unique identifier or 18–character ID	29.0
`isDefault`	Boolean	Specifies if the tab appears first when clicking the user profile (`true`) or not (`false`)	29.0
`tabType`	`ConnectApi.UserProfileTabType` Enum	Specifies the type of tab • `CustomVisualForce`—Tab that displays data from a Visualforce page. • `CustomWeb`—Tab that displays data from any external web-based application or web page. • `Element`—Tab that displays generic content inline. • `Feed`—Tab that displays the Chatter feed. • `Overview`—Tab that displays user details.	29.0
`tabUrl`	String	The current tab's content URL (for non built-in tab types)	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.UserProfile

ConnectApi.UserReferencePage

A list of user references.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageUrl`	String	URL to the current page.	35.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`nextPageUrl`	String	URL to the next page.	35.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	URL to the previous page.	35.0
`userCount`	Integer	Number of users in the collection.	35.0
`users`	List<`ConnectApi.Reference`>	A collection of user references.	35.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CustomListAudienceCriteria

ConnectApi.UserSettings

Settings specific to a user.

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`approvalPosts`	Boolean	User can approve workflows from Chatter posts.	28.0
`canAccessPersonalStreams`	Boolean	User can access personal stream feeds.	40.0
`canFollow`	Boolean	User can follow users and records.	28.0
`canModifyAllData`	Boolean	User has Modify all Data permission.	28.0
`canOwnGroups`	Boolean	User can own groups.	28.0
`canViewAllData`	Boolean	User has View all Data permission.	28.0
`canViewAllGroups`	Boolean	User has View all Groups permission.	28.0
`canViewAllUsers`	Boolean	User has View all Users permission.	28.0
`canViewCommunitySwitcher`	Boolean	User can see the site switcher menu.	34.0
`canViewFullUserProfile`	Boolean	User can see other user's Chatter profile.	28.0
`canViewPublicFiles`	Boolean	User can see all files that are public.	28.0
`currencySymbol`	String	Currency symbol to use for displaying currency values. Applicable only when the `ConnectApi.Features.multiCurrency` property is `false`.	28.0
`externalUser`	Boolean	User is a Chatter customer.	28.0
`fileSyncLimit`	Integer	Maximum number of files user can sync.	32.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`fileSyncStorageLimit`	Integer	Maximum storage for synced files, in megabytes (MB).	29.0
`folderSyncLimit`	Integer	Maximum number of folders user can sync.	32.0
`hasAccessToInternalOrg`	Boolean	User is a member of the internal org.	28.0
`hasChatter`	Boolean	User has access to Chatter.	31.0
`hasFileSync`	Boolean	User has Sync Files permission.	28.0
`hasFieldServiceLocationTracking`	Boolean	User has Field Service GPS tracking enabled.	41.0
`hasFieldServiceMobileAccess`	Boolean	User has access to the Field Service mobile app.	41.0
`hasFileSyncManagedClientAutoUpdate`	Boolean	Administrator for the user's org allows file sync clients to update automatically.	34.0
`hasRestDataApiAccess`	Boolean	User has access to REST API.	29.0
`timeZone`	`ConnectApi.TimeZone`	The user's time zone as selected in the user's personal settings in Salesforce. This value does not reflect a device's current location.	30.0
`userDefaultCurrencyIsoCode`	String	The ISO code for the default currency. Applicable only when the `ConnectApi.Features.multiCurrency` property is `true`.	28.0
`userId`	String	18-character ID of the user.	28.0
`userLocale`	String	Locale of user.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.OrganizationSettings

ConnectApi.UserSummary

User summary.

Subclass of ConnectApi.User.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isActive`	Boolean	`true` if user is active; `false` otherwise.	28.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.ChatterConversation
- ConnectApi.ChatterConversationSummary
- ConnectApi.ChatterGroup
- ConnectApi.ChatterLike
- ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshot
- ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage
- ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequest
- ConnectApi.GroupMember
- ConnectApi.FeedFavorite
- ConnectApi.OriginCapability
- ConnectApi.PlatformAction
- ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberPage
- ConnectApi.DirectMessageMemberActivity
- ConnectApi.ChatterMessage
- ConnectApi.Comment
- ConnectApi.File
- ConnectApi.MentionSegment
- ConnectApi.QuestionAndAnswersCapability
- ConnectApi.SocialPostCapability
- ConnectApi.TopicEndorsement.

ConnectApi.VerifiedCapability

If a comment has this capability, users with permission can mark it as verified or unverified.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isVerifiableByMe`	Boolean	Specifies whether the context user has permission to mark comments as verified or unverified (`true`) or not (`false`).	41.0
`isVerified`	Boolean	Specifies whether the comment is marked as verified (`true`) or not (`false`).	41.0
`isVerifiedBy Anonymized`	Boolean	Specifies whether the comment is marked as verified by an anonymous user (`true`) or not (`false`). If the comment has never been marked as verified or	43.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
		unverified, `null`. Also `null` if the context user doesn't have permission to mark comments as verified or unverified.	
`lastVerifiedByUser`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User who last marked the comment as verified or unverified, otherwise `null`. Also `null` if the context user doesn't have permission to mark comments as verified or unverified.	41.0
`lastVerifiedDate`	Datetime	Date when the comment was last marked as verified or unverified, otherwise `null`. Also `null` if the context user doesn't have permission to mark comments as verified or unverified.	41.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.CommentCapabilities

ConnectApi.Vote

An upvote or downvote on a feed element or comment.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`type`	`ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`	Type of vote for a feed element or comment. • `Down` • `Up`	42.0
`user`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	User who voted on the feed element or comment.	42.0
`votedItem`	`ConnectApi.Reference`	Reference to the feed element or comment that was voted on.	42.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.VotePage

ConnectApi.VotePage

A page of upvotes or downvotes on a feed element or comment.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the current page.	42.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	42.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`items`	List<`ConnectApi.Vote`>	Collection of users and their upvotes or downvotes. Upvotes include likes and upvotes. For example, if a post receives five likes and three upvotes, the number of upvotes is eight. For this reason, the collection of users and their upvotes also includes users who liked the post or comment. If a user both liked and upvoted a post, they appear only once in the collection.	42.0
`nextPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	42.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	42.0
`previousPageToken`	Integer	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	42.0
`previousPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	42.0
`total`	Long	Total number of upvotes or downvotes for the feed element or comment. The number of upvotes includes the number of likes and upvotes. For example, if a post receives five likes and three upvotes, the total number of upvotes is eight. If a user both liked and upvoted a post, we count that as two upvotes.	42.0

ConnectApi.Wishlist

Wishlist, including summary and items.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`page`	`ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection`	Page of wishlist items.	49.0
`summary`	`ConnectApi.WishlistSummary`	Summary of the wishlist.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary

ConnectApi.WishlistItem

Item in a wishlist.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the product.	49.0
error	ConnectApi.ErrorResponse	Error information.	49.0
listPrice	Double	List price of the wishlist item.	49.0
productSummary	ConnectApi.CartItemProduct	Product summary for the wishlist item.	49.0
salesPrice	Double	Sales price of the wishlist item.	49.0
wishlistItemId	String	ID of the wishlist item.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection

ConnectApi.WishlistItemCollection

Collection of wishlist items.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currencyIsoCode	String	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the product.	49.0
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	49.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	49.0
hasErrors	Boolean	Specifies whether at least one of the results contains an error (`true`) or not (`false`).	49.0
items	List<ConnectApi.WishlistItem>	Collection of wishlist items.	49.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	49.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	49.0
previousPageToken	String	Token identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	49.0
previousPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the previous page, or `null` if there isn't a previous page.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.Wishlist

ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary

List of wishlist summaries and the displayed list for the context user.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`displayedList`	`ConnectApi.Wishlist`	Oldest wishlist displayed for the context user.	49.0
`summaries`	List<`ConnectApi.WishlistSummary`>	Summary of wishlists belonging to the context user.	49.0
`wishlistCount`	Integer	Total number of wishlists belonging to the context user.	49.0

ConnectApi.WishlistSummary

Summary of a wishlist.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`createdDate`	Datetime	Created date for the wishlist in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	49.0
`id`	String	ID of the wishlist.	49.0
`modifiedDate`	Datetime	Last modified date of the wishlist in ISO 8601 format, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z.	49.0
`name`	String	Name of the wishlist.	49.0
`wishlistProductCount`	Integer	Unique product count in the wishlist.	49.0

SEE ALSO:

- ConnectApi.Wishlist
- ConnectApi.WishlistsSummary

ConnectApi.WishlistToCartResult

Result of adding a wishlist to a cart.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`cartId`	String	ID of the cart to which the products were added.	49.0
`failedWishlistToCartItems`	List<`ConnectApi.CartItemResult`>	Wishlist items that weren't successfully added to the cart.	49.0
`productsFailedCount`	Integer	Total number of products that weren't added to the cart.	49.0

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`productsRequestedCount`	Integer	Total number of products requested to add to the cart.	49.0
`productsSucceededCount`	Integer	Total number of products that were successfully added to the cart.	49.0
`succeededWishlistToCartItems`	List<`ConnectApi.CartItemResult`>	Wishlist items that were successfully added to the cart.	49.0

ConnectApi.Zone

Information about a Chatter Answers zone.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	The description of the zone.	29.0
`id`	String	The zone ID.	29.0
`isActive`	Boolean	Indicates whether or not the zone is active.	29.0
`isChatterAnswers`	Boolean	Indicates whether or not the zone is available for Chatter Answers.	29.0
`name`	String	Name of the zone.	29.0
`url`	String	The URL of the zone.	30.0
`visibility`	`ConnectApi.ZoneShowIn`	Zone visibility type. • `Community`—Available in an Experience Cloud site. • `Internal`—Available internally only. • `Portal`—Available in a portal.	29.0
`visibilityId`	String	If the zone is available in a site, this property contains the ID of the site. If the zone is available to all sites, this property contains the value `All`.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ZonePage

ConnectApi.ZonePage

Page of zones.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
zones	List<ConnectApi.Zone>	A list of one or more zones.	29.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or null if there isn't a next page.	29.0

ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage

Page of zone search results.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
currentPageToken	String	Token identifying the current page.	29.0
currentPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	29.0
items	List<ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResult>	List of search results.	29.0
nextPageToken	String	Token identifying the next page, or null if there isn't a next page.	29.0
nextPageUrl	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or null if there isn't a next page.	29.0

ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResult

Information about a specific zone search result.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
hasBestAnswer	Boolean	Indicates if the search result has a best answer.	29.0
id	String	ID of the search result. The search result can be a question or an article.	29.0
title	String	Title of the search result.	29.0
type	ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType Enum	Specifies the zone search result type. • Article—Search results contain only articles. • Question—Search results contain only questions.	29.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`voteCount`	String	Number of votes given to the search result.	29.0

SEE ALSO:

ConnectApi.ZoneSearchPage

Retired `ConnectApi` Output Classes

These `ConnectApi` output classes are retired.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectApi.ApprovalAttachment
Attach an approval to a feed item.

ConnectApi.BasicTemplateAttachment
Attachments in feed items with type `BasicTemplate`.

ConnectApi.CanvasTemplateAttachment
Attachments in feed items with type `CanvasPost`.

ConnectApi.CaseComment
Attachments in feed items with type `CaseCommentPost`.

ConnectApi.ContentAttachment
Attachments in feed items with the type `ContentPost`.

ConnectApi.DashboardComponentAttachment
Attachments in feed items with type `DashboardSnapshot`.

ConnectApi.EmailMessage
Email message from a case.

ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment
Feed item attachment.

ConnectApi.FeedItemPage
A paged collection of `ConnectApi.FeedItem` objects.

ConnectApi.FeedItemTopicPage
Feed item topic page.

ConnectApi.FeedPoll
Attachment of `ConnectApi.FeedItem` objects where the `type` property is `PollPost`.

ConnectApi.LinkAttachment
Link attached to a feed item.

ConnectApi.NonEntityRecommendation
A recommendation for a non-Salesforce entity, such as an application.

ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotAttachment
Fields of a record at the point in time when the record was created.

ConnectApi.TrackedChangeAttachment
Tracked change attachment to a feed item.

ConnectApi.ApprovalAttachment

Attach an approval to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.ApprovalCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`id`	String	A work item ID.	28.0–31.0
`postTemplateFields`	`List<ConnectApi.ApprovalPostTemplateField>`	Collection of approval post template fields	28.0–31.0
`processInstanceStepId`	String	An approval step ID.	30.0–31.0
`status`	`ConnectApi.WorkflowProcessStatus` Enum	Status of a workflow process. • `Approved` • `Fault` • `Held` • `NoResponse` • `Pending` • `Reassigned` • `Rejected` • `Removed` • `Started`	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.BasicTemplateAttachment

Attachments in feed items with type `BasicTemplate`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.EnhancedLinkCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	An optional description with a 500 character limit.	28.0–31.0
`icon`	`ConnectApi.Icon`	An optional icon.	28.0–31.0

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`linkRecordId`	String	If `linkURL` refers to a Salesforce record, `linkRecordId` contains the ID of the record.	28.0–31.0
`linkUrl`	String	An optional URL to a detail page if there is more content that can't be displayed inline. Do not specify `linkUrl` unless you specify a `title`.	28.0–31.0
`title`	String	An optional title to the detail page. If `linkUrl` is specified, the title links to `linkUrl`.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.CanvasTemplateAttachment

Attachments in feed items with type `CanvasPost`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.CanvasCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Property	Type	Description	Available Version
`description`	String	Optional. Description of the canvas app. The maximum length of this field is 500 characters.	29.0–31.0
`developerName`	String	Specifies the developer name (API name) of the canvas app.	29.0–31.0
`height`	String	Optional. The height of the canvas app in pixels. Default height is 200 pixels.	29.0–31.0
`icon`	ConnectApi.Icon	The canvas app icon.	29.0–31.0
`namespacePrefix`	String	Optional. The namespace prefix of the Developer Edition organization in which the canvas app was created.	29.0–31.0
`parameters`	String	Optional. Parameters passed to the canvas app in JSON format. Example: `{'isUpdated'='true'}`	29.0–31.0
`thumbnailUrl`	String	Optional. A URL to a thumbnail image for the canvas app. Maximum dimensions are 120x120 pixels.	29.0–31.0
`title`	String	Specifies the title of the link used to call the canvas app.	29.0–31.0

ConnectApi.CaseComment

Attachments in feed items with type `CaseCommentPost`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.CaseCommentCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`actorType`	`ConnectApi.CaseActorType` Enum	Type of user who made the comment. • `Customer`—if a Chatter customer made the comment • `CustomerService`—if a service representative made the comment	28.0–31.0
`createdBy`	`ConnectApi.UserSummary`	Comment's creator	28.0–31.0
`createdDate`	Datetime	ISO 8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z	28.0–31.0
`id`	String	Comment's 18–character ID	28.0–31.0
`published`	Boolean	Specifies whether the comment has been published	28.0–31.0
`text`	String	Comment's text	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.ContentAttachment

Attachments in feed items with the type `ContentPost`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.ContentCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`checkSum`	String	MD5 checksum for the file.	28.0–31.0
`contentUrl`	String	URL for link files and Google Docs; otherwise the value is `null`.	31.0–31.0
`description`	String	Description of the attachment.	28.0–31.0
`downloadUrl`	String	File's URL. This value is `null` if the content is a link or a Google Doc.	28.0–31.0
`fileExtension`	String	File's extension.	28.0–31.0
`fileSize`	String	Size of the file in bytes. If size cannot be determined, returns `unknown`.	28.0–31.0
`fileType`	String	Type of file.	28.0–31.0
`hasImagePreview`	Boolean	`true` if the file has a preview image available, otherwise ,`false`.	28.0–29.0
`hasPdfPreview`	Boolean	`true` if the file has a PDF preview available, otherwise, `false`.	28.0–31.0
`id`	String	Content's 18-character ID.	28.0–31.0
`isInMyFileSync`	Boolean	`true` if the file is synced with Salesforce Files Sync; `false` otherwise. **Note:** Salesforce Files Sync was retired on May 25, 2018.	28.0–31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`mimeType`	String	File's MIME type.	28.0–31.0
`renditionUrl`	String	URL to the file's rendition resource.	28.0–31.0
`renditionUrl240By180`	String	URL to the 240 x 180 rendition resource for the file.For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	30.0–31.0
`renditionUrl720By480`	String	URL to the 720 x 480 rendition resource for the file.For shared files, renditions process asynchronously after upload. For private files, renditions process when the first file preview is requested, and aren't available immediately after the file is uploaded.	30.0–31.0
`textPreview`	String	Text preview of the file if available; `null` otherwise.	30.0–31.0
`thumb120By90RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 120 x 90 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	30.0–31.0
`thumb240By180RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 240 x 180 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	30.0–31.0
`thumb720By480RenditionStatus`	String	Specifies the rendering status of the 720 x 480 preview image of the file. One of these values: • `Processing`—Image is being rendered. • `Failed`—Rendering process failed. • `Success`—Rendering process was successful. • `Na`—Rendering is not available for this image.	30.0–31.0
`title`	String	Title of the file.	28.0–31.0
`versionId`	String	18-character ID for this version of the content.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.DashboardComponentAttachment

Attachments in feed items with type `DashboardSnapshot`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.DashboardComponentSnapshotCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
componentId	String	Component's 18–character ID.	28.0–31.0
componentName	String	Name of the component. If no name is saved with the component, returns the localized string, "Untitled Component.".	28.0–31.0
dashboardBodyText	String	Text displayed next to the actor in the body of a feed item. This is used instead of the default body text. If no text is specified, and there is no default body text, returns null.	28.0–31.0
dashboardId	String	Dashboard's 18–character ID.	28.0–31.0
dashboardName	String	Name of the dashboard.	28.0–31.0
fullSizeImageUrl	String	URL of the full-sized dashboard image.	28.0–31.0
lastRefreshDate	Datetime	ISO8601 date string, for example, 2011-02-25T18:24:31.000Z, specifying when this dashboard was last refreshed.	28.0–31.0
lastRefreshDate DisplayText	String	The text of the last refresh date to be displayed, such as, "Last refreshed on October 31, 2011."	28.0–31.0
runningUser	ConnectApi. User Summary	The user running the dashboard.	28.0–31.0
thumbnailUrl	String	URL of the thumbnail-sized dashboard image.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.EmailMessage

Email message from a case.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.EmailMessageCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
direction	ConnectApi.Email MessageDirection Enum	The direction of the email message. • Inbound—An inbound message (sent by a customer). • Outbound—An outbound message (sent to a customer by a support agent).	29.0–31.0
emailMessageId	String	The ID of the email message.	29.0–31.0
subject	String	The subject of the email message.	29.0–31.0
textBody	String	The body of the email message.	29.0–31.0
toAddresses	List<ConnectApi.EmailAddress>	A list of email addresses to send the message to.	29.0–31.0

ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment

Feed item attachment.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.FeedElementCapability is used.

This class is abstract.

Subclasses:

- ConnectApi.ApprovalAttachment
- ConnectApi.BasicTemplateAttachment
- ConnectApi.CanvasTemplateAttachment
- ConnectApi.EmailMessage
- ConnectApi.CaseComment
- ConnectApi.ContentAttachment
- ConnectApi.DashboardComponentAttachment
- ConnectApi.FeedPoll
- ConnectApi.LinkAttachment
- ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotAttachment
- ConnectApi.TrackedChangeAttachment

Message segments in a feed item are typed as `ConnectApi.MessageSegment`. Feed item capabilities are typed as `ConnectApi.FeedItemCapability`. Record fields are typed as `ConnectApi.AbstractRecordField`. These classes are all abstract and have several concrete subclasses. At runtime you can use `instanceof` to check the concrete types of these objects and then safely proceed with the corresponding downcast. When you downcast, you must have a default case that handles unknown subclasses.

Important: The composition of a feed may change between releases. Your code should always be prepared to handle instances of unknown subclasses.

ConnectApi.FeedItemPage

A paged collection of `ConnectApi.FeedItem` objects.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.FeedElementPage is used.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`currentPageToken`	String	Token identifying the current page.	28.0–31.0
`currentPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the current page.	28.0–31.0
`isModifiedToken`	String	Opaque polling token to use in the *`since`* parameter of the `ChatterFeeds.isModified` method. The token describes when the feed was last modified. **Important:** This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.	28.0–31.0

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`isModifiedUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL with a *`since`* request parameter that contains an opaque token that describes when the feed was last modified. Returns `null` if the feed isn't a news feed. Use this URL to poll a news feed for updates. **Important:** This feature is available through a Feed Polling pilot program. This pilot program is closed and not accepting new participants.	28.0–31.0
`items`	`List<ConnectApi.FeedItem>`	List of feed items	28.0–31.0
`nextPageToken`	String	Token identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0–31.0
`nextPageUrl`	String	Connect REST API URL identifying the next page, or `null` if there isn't a next page.	28.0–31.0
`updatesToken`	String	Token to use in an `updatedSince` parameter, or `null` if not available.	30.0–31.0
`updatesUrl`	String	A Connect REST API resource with a query string containing the value of the `updatesToken` property. The resource returns the feed items that have been updated since the last request. Use the URL as it is—do not modify it. Property is `null` if not available.	30.0–31.0

ConnectApi.FeedItemTopicPage

Feed item topic page.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.TopicsCapability is used.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`canAssignTopics`	Boolean	`true` if a topic can be assigned to the feed item, `false` otherwise.	28.0–31.0
`topics`	`List<ConnectApi.Topic>`	List of topics.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.FeedPoll

Attachment of `ConnectApi.FeedItem` objects where the `type` property is `PollPost`.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.PollCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`choices`	List<ConnectApi.FeedPollChoice>	List of choices for poll.	28.0–31.0
`myChoiceId`	String	ID of the poll choice that the context user has voted for in this poll. Returns `null` if the context user hasn't voted.	28.0–31.0
`totalVoteCount`	Integer	Total number of votes cast on the feed poll item.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.LinkAttachment

Link attached to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.LinkCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`title`	String	Title given to the link if available, otherwise, `null`.	28.0–31.0
`url`	String	The link URL.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi.NonEntityRecommendation

A recommendation for a non-Salesforce entity, such as an application.

Subclass of ConnectApi.AbstractRecommendation.

Important: ConnectApi.NonEntityRecommendation isn't used in version 34.0 and later. In version 34.0 and later, ConnectApi.EntityRecommendation is used for all recommendations.

Property Name	Type	Description	Available Version
`displayLabel`	String	Localized label of the non-entity object.	32.0
`motif`	`ConnectApi.Motif`	Motif for the non-entity object.	32.0

ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotAttachment

Fields of a record at the point in time when the record was created.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.RecordSnapshotCapability is used.

Subclass of ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachment.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
recordView	ConnectApi.RecordView	The representation of the record.	29.0–31.0

ConnectApi.TrackedChangeAttachment

Tracked change attachment to a feed item.

Important: This class isn't available in version 32.0 and later. In version 32.0 and later, ConnectApi.TrackedChangesCapability is used.

Name	Type	Description	Available Version
changes	List<ConnectApi.TrackedChangeItem>	A list of tracked changes.	28.0–31.0

ConnectApi Enums

Enums specific to the ConnectApi namespace.

ConnectApi enums inherit all properties and methods of Apex enums.

Enums are not versioned. Enum values are returned in all API versions. Clients should handle values they don't understand gracefully.

Enum	Description
ConnectApi.ActionLinkExecutionsAllowed	Number of times an action link can be executed. • Once—An action link can be executed only once across all users. • OncePerUser—An action link can be executed only once for each user. • Unlimited—An action link can be executed an unlimited number of times by each user. If the action link's actionType is Api or ApiAsync, you can't use this value.
ConnectApi.ActionLinkType	Type of action link. • Api—The action link calls a synchronous API at the action URL. Salesforce sets the status to SuccessfulStatus or FailedStatus based on the HTTP status code returned by your server. • ApiAsync—The action link calls an asynchronous API at the action URL. The action remains in a PendingStatus state until a third party makes a request to /connect/action-links/***actionLinkId*** to set the status to SuccessfulStatus or FailedStatus when the asynchronous operation is complete. • Download—The action link downloads a file from the action URL. • Ui—The action link takes the user to a web page at the action URL.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.ActivitySharingTypeEnum`	Type of sharing operation. • `Everyone`—The activity is shared with everyone. • `MyGroups`—The activity is shared only with a selection of the context user's groups. • `OnlyMe`—The activity is private.
`ConnectApi.ArticleTopicJobType`	Type of operation to perform on articles and topics. • `AssignTopicsToArticle`—Assign topics to articles in a data category. • `UnassignTopicsFromArticle`—Unassign topics from articles in a data category.
`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaOperator`	Operator used in the personalization audience criterion. • `Contains` • `Equal` • `GreaterThan` • `GreaterThanOrEqual` • `Includes` • `LessThan` • `LessThanOrEqual` • `NotEqual` • `NotIncludes` • `StartsWith`
`ConnectApi.AudienceCriteriaType`	Type of personalization audience criterion. • `Default`—Audience has no criteria. • `Domain`—Audience criterion is based on domain. • `FieldBased`—Audience criterion is based on object fields. • `GeoLocation`—Audience criterion is based on location. • `Permission`—Audience criterion is based on standard or custom permissions. • `Profile`—Audience criterion is based on profile.
`ConnectApi.BannerStyle`	Decorates a feed item with a color and set of icons. • `Announcement`—An announcement displays in a designated location in the Salesforce UI until 11:59 p.m. on its expiration date, unless it's deleted or replaced by another announcement.
`ConnectApi.BundleType`	Type of bundle. • `GenericBundle`—A bundle that contains no additional information and is just a collection of feed elements. • `TrackedChanges`—A bundle that represents a collection of feed tracked changes. The bundle includes summary information about the feed tracked changes that make up the bundle.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.CardCategory`	Shows whether a card is a credit card or debit card. • `CreditCard` • `DebitCard`
`ConnectApi.CardType`	Credit card provider. • `AmericanExpress` • `DinersClub` • `JCB` • `Maestro` • `MasterCard` • `Visa`
`ConnectApi.CartItemSortOrder`	Sort order for items in a cart. • `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. • `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date. • `NameAsc`—Sorts by name in ascending alphabetical order (A–Z). • `NameDesc`—Sorts by name in descending alphabetical order (Z–A). • `SalesPriceAsc`—Sorts from lowest to highest negotiated price. • `SalesPriceDesc`—Sorts from highest to lowest negotiated price.
`ConnectApi.CartItemType`	Type of item in a cart. • `DeliveryCharge` • `Product`
`ConnectApi.CartMessageSeverity`	Severity of cart message. • `Error` • `Info` • `Warning`
`ConnectApi.CartStatus`	Status of the cart. • `Active`—Cart is active. • `Checkout`—Cart is in checkout. • `Closed`—Cart is closed. • `PendingDelete`—Cart is pending delete, for example, a user deleted the cart but the job hasn't completed yet. • `Processing`—Cart is processing.
`ConnectApi.CartType`	Type of cart. • `Cart`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.CaseActorType`	Type of user who made the comment. • `Customer`—if a Chatter customer made the comment • `CustomerService`—if a service representative made the comment
`ConnectApi.CaseCommentEventType`	Event type of a comment in Case Feed. • `NewInternal`—A case comment that has newly been marked Internal Only. • `NewPublished`—A newly published case comment. • `NewPublishedByCustomer`—A case comment by a customer that was newly published. • `PublishExisting`—An existing case comment that was republished. • `PublishExistingByCustomer`—An existing case comment by a customer that was republished. • `UnpublishExistingByCustomer`—An existing case comment by a customer that was unpublished. • `UnpublishExsiting`—An existing case comment that was unpublished. Note: Unfortunately, this typo is in the code, not the documentation. Use this spelling in your code.
`ConnectApi.CommentType`	Type of comment. • `ContentComment`—Comment holds a content capability. • `TextComment`—Comment contains only text.
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchAttributeType`	Search attribute type. • `Custom` • `ProductAttribute` • `ProductCategory` • `Standard`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetDisplayType`	Display type of the facet. • `CategoryTree` • `DatePicker` • `MultiSelect` • `SingleSelect`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchFacetType`	Search facet type. • `DistinctValue`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchGroupingOption`	Grouping option for search results. • `NoGrouping`—Search results aren't grouped. • `VariationParent`—Search results are grouped by the variation parent.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexCreationType`	Creation type of the index. • `Manual` • `Scheduled`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexStatus`	Status of the index. • `Completed` • `Failed` • `InProgress`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchIndexUsage`	Usage of the index. • `Live` • `OutOfUse`
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchSortRuleDirection`	Direction of the sort rule. • `Ascending`—Sorts in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • `Default`—If there isn't an ascending or descending direction, sorts in default order. For example, sorting by relevancy. • `Descending`—Sorts in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchSortRuleType`	Type of sort rule. • `Custom`—Custom field or non-product object sort rule. • `ProductBased`—Product sort rule. • `Relevancy`—Relevancy sort rule.
`ConnectApi.CommerceSearchTopProductType`	Type of the top product to return for each product group in search results. • `VariationParent`
`ConnectApi.CommunityFlagReasonType`	Reason a post, comment, or file is flagged. • `FlaggedByRule`—Moderation rule flagged the item. • `FlaggedBySystem`—Einstein flagged the item. • `FlaggedByUserAsInappropriate`—User flagged the item as inappropriate. • `FlaggedByUserAsSpam`—User flagged the item as spam.
`ConnectApi.CommunityFlagType`	Type of moderation flag. • `FlagAsInappropriate`—Flag for inappropriate content. • `FlagAsSpam`—Flag for spam.
`ConnectApi.CommunityFlagVisibility`	Visibility behavior of a flag for various user types. • `ModeratorsOnly`—The flag is visible only to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.

Enum	Description
	• `SelfAndModerators`—The flag is visible to the creator of the flag and to users with moderation permissions on the flagged element or item.
`ConnectApi.CommunityStatus`	Status of the Experience Cloud site. • `Live` • `Inactive` • `UnderConstruction`
`ConnectApi.ActivityType`	Type of activity. • `All` • `Event` • `Task`
`ConnectApi.ContentHubAuthenticationProtocol`	Authentication protocol used for the repository. • `NoAuthentication`—Repository doesn't require authentication. • `Oauth`—Repository uses OAuth authentication protocol. • `Password`—Repository uses user name and password authentication protocol.
`ConnectApi.ContentHubDirectoryEntryType`	Type of directory entry. • `GroupEntry` • `UserEntry`
`ConnectApi.ContentHubExternalItemSharingType`	Sharing status for the external file. • `DomainSharing`—File is shared with the domain. • `PrivateSharing`—File is private or shared only with individuals. • `PublicSharing`—File is publicly shared.
`ConnectApi.ContentHubGroupType`	Type of group. • `Everybody`—Group is public to everybody. • `EverybodyInDomain`—Group is public to everybody in the same domain. • `Unknown`—Group type is unknown.
`ConnectApi.ContentHubItemType`	Item types. • `Any`—Includes files and folders. • `FilesOnly`—Includes files only. • `FoldersOnly`—Includes folders only.
`ConnectApi.ContentHubStreamSupport`	Support for content streaming. • `ContentStreamAllowed` • `ContentStreamNotAllowed` • `ContentStreamRequired`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.ContentHubVariableType`	Data type of the value of the field. • `BooleanType` • `DateTimeType` • `DecimalType` • `HtmlType` • `IdType` • `IntegerType` • `StringType` • `UriType` • `XmlType`
`ConnectApi.DatacloudUserType`	Type of user. • `Monthly`—A user type that's assigned monthly point limits for purchasing Data.com records. Only the assigned user can use monthly points. Points expire at the end of the month. Monthly is the default setting for `DatacloudUserType`. • `Listpool`—A user type that allows users to draw from a pool of points to purchase Data.com records.
`ConnectApi.DatacloudImportStatusTypeEnum`	Status of the import. • `Success`—Indicates that selected records were added to the org's CRM. • `Duplicate`—Marks a record that is already in the org's CRM. The API determines whether an org allows the addition of duplicate records in its CRM. • `Error`—Indicates that the selected records weren't added to the org's CRM.
`ConnectApi.DigestPeriod`	Time period that's included in a Chatter email digest. • `DailyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous day. • `WeeklyDigest`—The email includes up to the 50 latest posts from the previous week.
`ConnectApi.EmailMessageDirection`	Direction of an email message on a case. • `Inbound`—An inbound message (sent by a customer). • `Outbound`—An outbound message (sent to a customer by a support agent).
`ConnectApi.EmailMessageStatus`	Status of an email message on a case. • `DraftStatus` • `ForwardedStatus` • `NewStatus` • `ReadStatus` • `RepliedStatus` • `SentStatus`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.ExtensionInformationType`	Information type of the extension. • `Lightning`
`ConnectApi.FeedCommentSortOrder`	Order of comments. • `CreatedDateLatestAsc`—Sorts by most recently created comments in ascending order. • `CreatedDateOldestAsc`—Sorts by oldest comments in ascending order. • `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content.
`ConnectApi.FeedDensity`	Density of the feed. • `AllUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations. • `FewerUpdates`—Displays all updates from people and records the user follows and groups the user is a member of. Also displays custom recommendations, but hides some system-generated updates from records.
`ConnectApi.FeedElementCapabilityType`	Capabilities of a feed element in API versions 31.0 and later. If a capability exists on a feed element, the capability is available, even if the value doesn't exist or is `null`. If the capability doesn't exist, it isn't available. • `AssociatedActions`—The feed element includes information about actions associated with it. • `Approval`—The feed element includes information about an approval. • `Banner`—The body of the feed element has an icon and border. • `Bookmarks`—The context user can bookmark the feed element. Bookmarked feed elements are visible in the bookmarks feed. • `Bundle`—The feed element has a group of other feed elements that display as a bundle in the feed. The bundle type determines the additional data associated with the bundle. • `CallCollaboration`—The feed element has a recording comment. • `Canvas`—The feed element renders a canvas app. • `CaseComment`—The feed element has a case comment in the case feed. • `ChatterLikes`—The context user can like the feed element. • `Close`—The feed element can't be edited, commented on, or deleted. If the feed element is a poll, it can't be voted on. • `Comments`—The context user can add comments to the feed element. • `Content`—The feed element has a file. • `DashboardComponentSnapshot`—The feed element has a dashboard component snapshot. • `DirectMessage`—The feed element is a direct message. • `Edit`—Users who have permission can edit the feed element. • `EmailMessage`—The feed element has an email message from a case.

Enum	Description
	• `EnhancedLink`—The feed element has a link that can contain supplemental information like an icon, a title, and a description. • `Extensions`—The feed element has one or more extension attachments. • `FeedEntityShare`—The feed element has a feed entity shared with it. • `Files`—The feed element has one or more file attachments. • `Interactions`—The feed element has information about user interactions. • `Link`—The feed element has a URL. • `MediaReferences`—The feed element has one or more media references. • `Moderation`—Users in an Experience Cloud site can flag the feed element for moderation. • `Mute`—The context user can mute the feed element. • `Origin`—A feed action created the feed element. • `Pin`—Users who have permission can pin the feed element. • `Poll`—The feed element has poll voting. • `QuestionAndAnswers`—The feed element has a question, and users can add answers to the feed element instead of comments. Users can also select the best answer. • `ReadBy`—The context user can mark the feed element as read. • `Recommendations`—The feed element has a recommendation. • `Record`—The comment has a record attachment. • `RecordSnapshot`—The feed element has all the snapshot fields of a record for a single create record event. • `SocialPost`—The feed element can interact with a social post on a social network. • `Status`—The feed element has a status that determines its visibility. • `Topics`—The context user can add topics to the feed element. • `TrackedChanges`—The feed element has all changes to a record for a single tracked change event. • `UpDownVote`—Users can upvote or downvote the feed element. • `Verified`—Users who have permission can mark a comment as verified or unverified.
`ConnectApi.FeedElementType`	Feed elements are the top-level objects that a feed contains. The feed element type describes the characteristics of that feed element. • `Bundle`—A container of feed elements. A bundle also has a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values. • `FeedItem`—A feed item has a single parent and is scoped to oneExperience Cloud site or across all Experience Cloud sites. A feed item can have capabilities such as bookmarks, canvas, content, comment, link, poll. Feed items have a body made up of message segments that can always be gracefully degraded to text-only values. • `Recommendation`—A recommendation is a feed element with a recommendations capability. A recommendation suggests records to follow, groups to join, or applications that are helpful to the context user.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.FeedEntityStatus`	Status of the feed post or comment. • `Draft`—The feed post isn't published but is visible to the author and users with Modify All Data or View All Data permission. Comments can't be drafts. • `PendingReview`—The feed post or comment isn't approved yet and therefore isn't published or visible. • `Published`—The feed post or comment is approved and visible.
`ConnectApi.FeedFavoriteType`	Origin of the feed favorite. • `ListView` • `Search` • `Topic`
`ConnectApi.FeedFilter`	Filter value for a feed. • `AllQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions. • `AuthoredBy`—Feed elements authored by the user profile owner. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed. • `CommunityScoped`—Feed elements that are scoped to Experience Cloud sites. Currently, these feed elements have a User or a Group parent record. However, other parent record types could be scoped to sites in the future. Feed elements that are always visible in all sites are filtered out. This value is valid only for the `UserProfile` feed. • `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission. • `QuestionsWithCandidateAnswersReviewedPublished`—Feed elements that are questions that have candidate answers that have been reviewed or published. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission. • `Read`—Feed elements that are older than 30 days or are marked as read for the context user. Includes existing feed elements when the context user joined the group. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group. • `SolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that have a best answer. • `UnansweredQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have any answers. • `UnansweredQuestionsWithCandidateAnswers`—Feed elements that are questions that don't have answers but have candidate answers associated with them. This value is valid only for users with the Access Einstein-Generated Answers permission. • `Unread`—Feed elements that are created in the past 30 days and aren't marked as read for the context user. This value is valid only for the `Record` feed of a group. • `UnsolvedQuestions`—Feed elements that are questions and that don't have a best answer.
`ConnectApi.FeedItemAttachmentType`	Attachment type for feed item output objects. • `Approval`—A feed item requiring approval.

Enum	Description
	• `BasicTemplate`—A feed item with a generic rendering of an image, link, and title. • `Canvas`—A feed item that contains the metadata to render a link to a canvas app. • `CaseComment`—A feed item created from a comment to a case record. • `CaseComment`—A feed item created from a comment to a case record. • `Content`—A feed item with a file attached. • `DashboardComponent`—A feed item with a dashboard attached. • `EmailMessage`—An email attached to a case record in Case Feed. • `Link`—A feed item with a URL attached. • `Poll`—A feed item with a poll attached. • `Question`—A feed item with a question attached. • `RecordSnapshot`—The feed item attachment contains a view of a record at a single `ConnectApi.FeedItemType.CreateRecordEvent`. • `TrackedChange`—All changes to a record for a single `ConnectApi.FeedItemType.TrackedChange` event.
`ConnectApi.FeedItemType`	Type of feed item. • `ActivityEvent`—Feed item generated in Case Feed when an event or task associated with a parent record with a feed enabled is created or updated. • `AdvancedTextPost`—A feed item with advanced text formatting, such as a group announcement post. • `ApprovalPost`—Feed item with an approval capability. Approvers can act on the feed item parent. • `AttachArticleEvent`—Feed item generated when an article is attached to a case in Case Feed. • `BasicTemplateFeedItem`—Feed item with an enhanced link capability. • `CallLogPost`—Feed item generated when a call log is saved to a case in Case Feed. • `CanvasPost`—Feed item generated by a canvas app in the publisher or from Connect REST API or Connect in Apex. The post itself is a link to a canvas app. • `CaseCommentPost`—Feed item generated when a case comment is saved in Case Feed. • `ChangeStatusPost`—Feed item generated when the status of a case is changed in Case Feed. • `ChatTranscriptionPost`—Feed item generated in Case Feed when a Live Agent chat transcript is saved to a case. • `CollaborationGroupCreated`—Feed item generated when a new public group is created. Contains a link to the new group. • `CollaborationGroupUnarchived`—Deprecated. Feed item generated when an archived group is activated. • `ContentPost`—Feed item with a content capability. • `CreateRecordEvent`—Feed item that describes a record created in the publisher. • `DashboardComponentAlert`—Feed item with a dashboard alert.

Enum	Description
	• `DashboardComponentSnapshot`—Feed item with a dashboard component snapshot capability. • `EmailMessageEvent`—Feed item generated when an email is sent from a case in Case Feed. • `FacebookPost`—Deprecated. Feed item generated when a Facebook post is created from a case in Case Feed. • `LinkPost`—Feed item with a link capability. • `MilestoneEvent`—Feed item generated when a case milestone is either completed or reaches a violation status. Contains a link to the case milestone. • `PollPost`—Feed item with a poll capability. Viewers of the feed item are allowed to vote on the options in the poll. • `ProfileSkillPost`—Feed item generated when a skill is added to a user's profile. • `QuestionPost`—Feed item generated when a question is asked. As of API version 33.0, a feed item of this type can have a content capability and a link capability. • `ReplyPost`—Feed item generated by a Chatter Answers reply. • `RypplePost`—Feed item generated when a user posts thanks. • `SocialPost`—Feed item generated when a social post is created from a case in Case Feed. • `TextPost`—Feed item containing text only. • `TrackedChange`—Feed item created when one or more fields on a record have been changed. • `UserStatus`—Deprecated. A user's post to their own profile.
`ConnectApi.FeedItemVisibilityType`	Type of users who can see a feed item. • `AllUsers`—Visibility is not limited to internal users. • `InternalUsers`—Visibility is limited to internal users.
`ConnectApi.FeedSortOrder`	Order of feed items in the feed. • `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. This sort order is available only for `DirectMessageModeration`, `Draft`, `Moderation`, and `PendingReview` feeds. • `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date. • `LastModifiedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent activity. • `MostViewed`—Sorts by most viewed content. This sort order is available only for `Home` feeds when the `ConnectApi.FeedFilter` is `UnansweredQuestions`. • `Relevance`—Sorts by most relevant content. This sort order is available only for `Company`, `Home`, and `Topics` feeds.
`ConnectApi.FeedType`	Type of feed. • `Bookmarks`—Contains all feed items saved as bookmarks by the context user.

Enum	Description
	• `Company`—Contains all feed items except feed items of type `TrackedChange`. To see the feed item, the user must have sharing access to its parent. • `DirectMessageModeration`—Contains all direct messages that are flagged for moderation. The Direct Message Moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Chatter Messages permissions. • `DirectMessages`—Contains all feed items of the context user's direct messages. • `Draft`—Contains all the feed items that the context user drafted. • `Files`—Contains all feed items that contain files posted by people or groups that the context user follows. • `Filter`—Contains the news feed filtered to contain feed items whose parent is a specified object type. • `Groups`—Contains all feed items from all groups the context user either owns or is a member of. • `Home`—Contains all feed items associated with any managed topic in an Experience Cloud site. • `Landing`—Contains all feed items that best drive user engagement when the feed is requested. Allows clients to avoid an empty feed when there aren't many personalized feed items. • `Moderation`—Contains all feed items that are flagged for moderation, except direct messages. The moderation feed is available only to users with Moderate Experiences Feeds permissions. • `Mute`—Contains all feed items that the context user muted. • `News`—Contains all updates for people the context user follows, groups the user is a member of, and files and records the user is following. Contains all updates for records whose parent is the context user. • `PendingReview`—Contains all feed items and comments that are pending review. • `People`—Contains all feed items posted by all people the context user follows. • `Record`—Contains all feed items whose parent is a specified record, which could be a group, user, object, file, or any other standard or custom object. When the record is a group, the feed also contains feed items that mention the group. When the record is a user, the feed contains only feed items on that user. You can get another user's record feed. • `Streams`—Contains all feed items for any combination of up to 25 feed-enabled entities that the context user subscribes to in a stream. Examples of feed-enabled entities include people, groups, and records, • `To`—Contains all feed items with mentions of the context user. Contains feed items the context user commented on and feed items created by the context user that are commented on. • `Topics`—Contains all feed items that include the specified topic. • `UserProfile`—Contains feed items created when a user changes records that can be tracked in a feed. Contains feed items whose parent is the user and feed items that @mention the user. This feed is different than the news feed, which returns more feed items, including group updates. You can get another user's user profile feed.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.FieldChangeValueType`	Value type of a field change. • `NewValue`—A new value • `OldValue`—An old value
`ConnectApi.FilePreviewFormat`	Format of the file preview. • `Jpg`—Preview format is JPG. • `Pdf`—Preview format is PDF. • `Svg`—Preview format is compressed SVG. • `Thumbnail`—Preview format is 240 x 180 PNG. • `ThumbnailBig`—Preview format is 720 x 480 PNG. • `ThumbnailTiny`—Preview format is 120 x 90 PNG.
`ConnectApi.FilePreviewStatus`	Availability status of the file preview. • `Available`—Preview is available. • `InProgress`—Preview is being processed. • `NotAvailable`—Preview is unavailable. • `NotScheduled`—Generation of the preview isn't scheduled yet.
`ConnectApi.FilePublishStatus`	Publish status of the file. • `PendingAccess`—File is pending publishing. • `PrivateAccess`—File is private. • `PublicAccess`—File is public.
`ConnectApi.FileSharingOption`	Sharing option of the file. • `Allowed`—Resharing of the file is allowed. • `Restricted`—Resharing of the file is restricted.
`ConnectApi.FileSharingPrivacy`	Sharing privacy of a file. • `None`—File is visible to anyone with record access. • `PrivateOnRecords`—File is private on records.
`ConnectApi.FileSharingType`	Sharing role of the file. • `Admin`—Owner permission, but doesn't own the file. • `Collaborator`—Viewer permission, and can edit, change permissions, and upload a new version of a file. • `Owner`—Collaborator permission, and can make a file private, and delete a file. • `Viewer`—Can view, download, and share a file. • `WorkspaceManaged`—Permission controlled by the library.
`ConnectApi.FolderItemType`	Type of item in a folder. • `file`

Enum	Description
	• `folder`
`ConnectApi.FormulaFilterType`	Formula filter type for the personalization audience. • `AllCriteriaMatch`—All audience criteria are true (AND operation). • `AnyCriterionMatches`—Any audience criterion is true (OR operation). • `CustomLogicMatches`—Audience criteria match the custom formula (for example, (1 AND 2) OR 3).
`ConnectApi.GroupArchiveStatus`	Archive status of groups. • `All`—All groups, including groups that are archived and groups that aren't archived. • `Archived`—Groups that are archived. • `NotArchived`—Groups that aren't archived.
`ConnectApi.GroupEmailFrequency`	Frequency with which a user receives email. • `EachPost` • `DailyDigest` • `WeeklyDigest` • `Never` • `UseDefault`
`ConnectApi.GroupMembershipType`	Type of membership the user has with the group. • `GroupOwner` • `GroupManager` • `NotAMember` • `NotAMemberPrivateRequested` • `StandardMember`
`ConnectApi.GroupMembershipRequestStatus`	Status of a request to join a private group. • `Accepted` • `Declined` • `Pending`
`ConnectApi.GroupViralInvitationsStatus`	Status of an invitation to join a group. • `ActedUponUser`—The user was added to the group. An email was sent asking the user to visit the group. • `Invited`—An email was sent asking the user to sign up for the org. • `MaxedOutUsers`—The group has the maximum allowed members. • `MultipleError`—The user wasn't invited due to multiple errors. • `NoActionNeededUser`—The user is already a member of the group. • `NotVisibleToExternalInviter`—The user is not accessible to the user sending the invitation.

Enum	Description
	• `Unhandled`—The user couldn't be added to the group for an unknown reason.
`ConnectApi.GroupVisibilityType`	Group visibility type. • `PrivateAccess`—Only members of the group can see posts to this group. • `PublicAccess`—All users within the Experience Cloud site can see posts to this group. • `Unlisted`—Reserved for future use.
`ConnectApi.HttpRequestMethod`	HTTP method. • `HttpDelete`—Returns HTTP 204 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpGet`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. • `HttpHead`—Returns HTTP 200 on success. Response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPatch`—Returns HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. • `HttpPost`—Returns HTTP 201 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty. Exceptions are the batch posting resources and methods, which return HTTP 200 on success. • `HttpPut`—Return HTTP 200 on success or HTTP 204 if the response body or output class is empty.
`ConnectApi.LinkMetadataSource`	Source of the link metadata. • `None`—Link metadata wasn't retrieved. • `Sfdc`—Salesforce is the source.
`ConnectApi.LinkMetadataType`	Type of link that the metadata represents. • `Error`—Link metadata couldn't be retrieved. • `Link`—Represents a link. • `None`—Link metadata wasn't retrieved because the link isn't an allowed domain. • `Photo`—Represents a photo. • `Rich`—Represents rich content, typically HTML content. • `Unknown`—Link metadata was retrieved, but the type is unknown. • `Video`—Represents a video.
`ConnectApi.MaintenanceType`	Type of maintenance. • `Downtime`—Downtime maintenance. • `GenerallyAvailable`—Maintenance with generally available mode. • `MaintenanceWithDowntime`—Scheduled maintenance with downtime. • `ReadOnly`—Maintenance with read-only mode.
`ConnectApi.ManagedContentChannelType`	Type of managed content channel. • `CloudToCloud` • `Community`

Enum	Description
	• `ConnectedApp` • `PublicUnauthenticated`
`ConnectApi.ManagedContentMediaType`	Type of managed content media. • `Document` • `Image`
`ConnectApi.ManagedContentNodeType`	Type of managed content node. • `Date` • `DateTime` • `Media` • `MediaSource` • `MultilineText` • `NameField` • `RichText` • `Text` • `Url`
`ConnectApi.ManagedTopicType`	Type of managed topic. • `Content`—Topics that are associated with native content. • `Featured`—Topics that are featured, for example, on the Experience Cloud site home page, but don't provide overall navigation. • `Navigational`—Topics that display in a navigational menu in the Experience Cloud site.
`ConnectApi.MarkupType`	Type of rich text markup. • `Bold`—Bold tag. • `Code`—Code tag. • `Hyperlink`—Hyperlink anchor tag. • `Italic`—Italic tag. • `ListItem`—List item tag. • `OrderedList`—Ordered list tag. • `Paragraph`—Paragraph tag. • `Strikethrough`—Strikethrough tag. • `Underline`—Underline tag. • `UnorderedList`—Unordered list tag.
`ConnectApi.MentionCompletionType`	Type of mention completion. • `All`—All mention completions, regardless of the type of record to which the mention refers.

Enum	Description
	• `Group`—Mention completions for groups. • `User`—Mention completions for users.
`ConnectApi.MentionValidationStatus`	Type of validation error for a proposed mention, if any. • `Disallowed`—The proposed mention is invalid and is rejected because the context user is trying to mention something that is not allowed. For example, a user who is not a member of a private group is trying to mention the private group. • `Inaccessible`—The proposed mention is allowed, but the user or record being mentioned isn't notified. They don't have access to the parent record that's being discussed. • `Ok`—There is no validation error for this proposed mention.
`ConnectApi.MessageSegmentType`	Type of message segment, such as text, link, field change name, or field change value. • `EntityLink` • `FieldChange` • `FieldChangeName` • `FieldChangeValue` • `Hashtag` • `InlineImage` • `Link` • `MarkupBegin` • `MarkupEnd` • `Mention` • `MoreChanges` • `ResourceLink` • `Text`
`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemActionType`	URL type or event of the navigation menu item. • `Event`—Event-based navigation. Note: `Event` is internal only and can't be used in custom components. • `ExternalLink`—URL outside of your Experience Cloud site. • `InternalLink`—Relative URL inside your Experience Cloud site.
`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemOpenTarget`	Target for the navigation menu item. • `CurrentWindow`—Navigation menu item opens in the current window. • `NewWindow`—Navigation menu item opens in a new window.
`ConnectApi.NavigationMenuItemType`	Type of navigation menu item. • `Event`—Event, such as logging in, logging out, or switching accounts. • `ExternalLink`—URL outside of your site. • `GlobalAction`—Lets users create records that aren't related to other records.

Enum	Description
	• `InternalLink`—Relative URL inside your site. • `MenuLabel`—Menu label. • `NavigationalTopic`—Dropdown list with links to the navigational topics in your site. • `SalesforceObject`—Objects such as accounts, cases, contacts, and custom objects. • `SystemLink`—System link, such as a link to Builder, Workspaces, or Setup.
`ConnectApi.NBAActionType`	Type of action. • `Flow`—Automated process tool with multiple subtypes.
`ConnectApi.NBAFlowType`	Type of recommended flow. • `AutoLaunchedFlow`—Autolaunched flow that runs in the background. • `Flow`—Screen flow that accepts user inputs.
`ConnectApi.NBATargetType`	Type of target. • `Recommendation`
`ConnectApi.OperationType`	Operation to carry out on the file. • `Add`—Adds the file to the feed element. • `Remove`—Removes the file from the feed element.
`ConnectApi.OrderDeliveryGroupSummarySort`	Sort order for order delivery group summaries. • `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).
`ConnectApi.OrderItemSummarySort`	Sort order for order item summaries. • `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).
`ConnectApi.OrderShipmentItemSort`	Sort order for order shipment items. • `IdAsc`—Sorts by ID in ascending alphanumeric order (A–Z, 0–9). • `IdDesc`—Sorts by ID in descending alphanumeric order (Z–A, 9–0).
`ConnectApi.OrderShipmentSort`	Sort order for order shipments. • `ExpectedDeliveryDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest expected delivery date. • `ExpectedDeliveryDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent expected delivery date. • `ShipmentNumberAsc`—Sorts by shipment number in ascending order (0–9). • `ShipmentNumberDesc`—Sorts by shipment number in descending order (9–0).
`ConnectApi.OrderSummarySortOrder`	Sort order for order summaries. • `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest created date. • `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent created date.

Enum	Description
	• `OrderedDateAsc`—Sorts by the oldest ordered date. • `OrderedDateDesc`—Sorts by the most recent ordered date.
`ConnectApi.PeriodType`	Time period used for forecasting. • `Month` • `Quarter` • `Week` • `Year`
`ConnectApi.PlatformActionGroupCategory`	Location of an action link group on an associated feed element. • `Primary`—The action link group is displayed in the body of the feed element. • `Overflow`—The action link group is displayed in the overflow menu of the feed element.
`ConnectApi.PlatformActionStatus`	Status of the action. • `FailedStatus`—The action link execution failed. • `NewStatus`—The action link is ready to be executed. Available for `Download` and `Ui` action links only. • `PendingStatus`—The action link is executing. Choosing this value triggers the API call for `Api` and `ApiAsync` action links. • `SuccessfulStatus`—The action link executed successfully.
`ConnectApi.PlatformActionType`	Type of platform action. • `ActionLink`—An indicator on a feed element that targets an API, a web page, or a file, represented by a button in the Salesforce UI. • `CustomButton`—When clicked, opens a URL or a Visualforce page in a window or executes JavaScript. • `ProductivityAction`—Productivity actions are predefined and attached to a limited set of objects. Productivity actions include Send Email, Call, Map, View Website, and Read News. Except for the Call action, you can't edit productivity actions. • `QuickAction`—A global or object-specific action. • `StandardButton`—A predefined Salesforce button such as New, Edit, or Delete.
`ConnectApi.PriceAdjustmentTierType`	Type of price adjustment for the tier. • `AmountBasedAdjustment`—Price is adjusted by a specified amount. • `PercentageBasedAdjustment`—Price is adjusted by a specified percentage.
`ConnectApi.ProductClass`	Class of product. • `Simple` • `Variation` • `VariationParent`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.ProductMediaType`	Type of product media. • `Document` • `Image` • `Video`
`ConnectApi.ProductMediaUsageType`	Usage type of a product media item within a media group. • `Attachment`—Product media group with product documents as attachments. • `Banner`—Product category media group with banner images of the product. • `Listing`—Product media group with listing images of the product. • `Standard`—Product media group with standard images and videos of the product. • `Tile`—Product category media group with tile images of the product.
`ConnectApi.PublishStatus`	Publish status of a personalization audience, target, or navigation menu item. • `Draft` • `Live`
`ConnectApi.RecommendationActionType`	Action to take on a recommendation. • `follow`—Follow a file, record, topic, or user. • `join`—Join a group. • `view`—View a file, group, article, record, user, custom, or static recommendation.
`ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceCriteriaType`	Custom recommendation audience criteria type. • `CustomList`—A custom list of users makes up the audience. • `MaxDaysInCommunity`—New members make up the audience.
`ConnectApi.RecommendationAudienceMemberOperationType`	Operation to carry out on the custom recommendation audience members. • `Add`—Adds specified members to the audience. • `Remove`—Removes specified members from the audience.
`ConnectApi.RecommendationChannel`	A way to tie custom recommendations together. For example, display recommendations in specific places in the UI or show recommendations based on time of day or geographic locations. • `CustomChannel1`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. For example, community managers can use Experience Builder to determine where recommendations appear. • `CustomChannel2`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel3`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel4`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels. • `CustomChannel5`—Custom recommendation channel. Not used by default. Work with your community manager to define custom channels.

Enum	Description
	• `DefaultChannel`—Default recommendation channel. Recommendations appear by default on the Home and Question Detail pages of Customer Service and Partner Central Experience Builder templates. They also appear in the feed in the Salesforce mobile web and anywhere community managers add recommendations using Experience Builder.
`ConnectApi.RecommendationExplanationType`	Reason for a Chatter recommendation. • `ArticleHasRelatedContent`—Articles with related content to a context article. • `ArticleViewedTogether`—Articles often viewed together with the article that the context user just viewed. • `ArticleViewedTogetherWithViewers`—Articles often viewed together with other records that the context user views. • `Custom`—Custom recommendations. • `FilePopular`—Files with many followers or views. • `FileViewedTogether`—Files often viewed at the same time as other files that the context user views. • `FollowedTogetherWithFollowees`—Users often followed together with other records that the context user follows. • `GroupMembersFollowed`—Groups with members that the context user follows. • `GroupNew`—Recently created groups. • `GroupPopular`—Groups with many active members. • `ItemViewedTogether`—Records often viewed at the same time as other records that the context user views. • `PopularApp`—Applications that are popular. • `RecordOwned`—Records that the context user owns. • `RecordParentOfFollowed`—Parent records of records that the context user follows. • `RecordViewed`—Records that the context user recently viewed. • `TopicFollowedTogether`—Topics often followed together with the record that the context user just followed. • `TopicFollowedTogetherWithFollowees`—Topics often followed together with other records that the context user follows. • `TopicPopularFollowed`—Topics with many followers. • `TopicPopularLiked`—Topics on posts that have many likes. • `UserDirectReport`—Users who report to the context user. • `UserFollowedTogether`—Users often followed together with the record that the context user just followed. • `UserFollowsSameUsers`—Users who follow the same users as the context user. • `UserManager`—The context user's manager. • `UserNew`—Recently created users. • `UserPeer`—Users who report to the same manager as the context user. • `UserPopular`—Users with many followers. • `UserViewingSameRecords`—Users who view the same records as the context user.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.RecommendationReactionType`	Type of reaction to a recommendation. • `Accepted` • `Rejected`
`ConnectApi.RecommendationType`	Type of record being recommended. • `apps` • `articles` • `files` • `groups` • `records` • `topics` • `users`
`ConnectApi.RecommendedObjectType`	Type of object being recommended. • `Today`—Static recommendations that don't have an ID, for example, the Today app recommendation.
`ConnectApi.RecordColumnOrder`	Order in which fields are rendered in a grid. • `LeftRight`—Fields are rendered from left to right. • `TopDown`—Fields are rendered from the top down.
`ConnectApi.RecordFieldType`	Data type of a record field. • `Address` • `Blank` • `Boolean` • `Compound` • `CreatedBy` • `Date` • `DateTime` • `Email` • `LastModifiedBy` • `Location` • `Name` • `Number` • `Percent` • `Phone` • `Picklist` • `Reference` • `Text` • `Time`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.RelatedFeedPostType`	Type of related feed post. • `Answered`—Related questions that have at least one answer. • `BestAnswer`—Related questions that have a best answer. • `Generic`—All types of related questions, including answered, with a best answer, and unanswered. • `Unanswered`—Related questions that don't have answers.
`ConnectApi.SocialNetworkProvider`	Social network provider. • `Facebook` • `GooglePlus` • `Instagram` • `InstagramBusiness` • `KakaoTalk` • `Kik` • `Line` • `LinkedIn` • `Messenger` • `Other` • `Pinterest` • `QQ` • `Rypple` • `SinaWeibo` • `SMS` • `Snapchat` • `Telegram` • `Twitter` • `VKontakte` • `WeChat` • `WhatsApp` • `YouTube`
`ConnectApi.SocialPostMessageType`	Message type of the social post. • `Comment` • `Direct` • `Post` • `PrivateMessage` • `Reply` • `Retweet` • `Tweet`

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.SocialPostStatusType`	State of the social post. • `ApprovalPending` • `ApprovalRecalled` • `ApprovalRejected` • `Deleted` • `Failed` • `Hidden` • `Pending` • `Sent` • `Unknown`
`ConnectApi.SortOrder`	Order for sorting. • `Ascending`—Items are in ascending alphabetical order (A-Z). • `Descending`—Items are in descending alphabetical order (Z-A). • `MostRecentlyViewed`—Items are in descending chronological order by view. This sort order is valid only for Chatter feed streams.
`ConnectApi.SurveyEmailStatusEnum`	Status of a survey invitation email. • `Failed`—The survey invitation email wasn't sent. • `Queued`—The survey invitation email is queued for sending.
`ConnectApi.TopicSort`	Order returned by the sort. • `popularDesc`—Sorts topics by popularity with the most popular first. This value is the default. • `alphaAsc`—Sorts topics alphabetically.
`ConnectApi.UpDownVoteValue`	Type of vote for a feed element or comment. • `Down` • `None` • `Up`
`ConnectApi.UserActivityType`	Type of user activity. • `Bookmark`—User bookmarked a post. • `ChatterActivity`—Total counts of posts and comments made and likes and comments received for a user. • `ChatterLike`—User liked a post or comment. • `Comment`—User commented on a post. • `CompanyVerify`—User verified comment. • `DownVote`—User downvoted a post or comment. • `FeedEntityRead`—User read a post.

Enum	Description
	• `FeedRead`—User read a feed. • `Mute`—User muted a post. • `Post`—User made a post. • `TopicEndorsement`—User endorsed another user on a topic or received endorsement on a topic. • `UpVote`—User upvoted a post or comment.
`ConnectApi.UserMissionActivityType`	Type of mission activity for a user. • `FeedItemAnswerAQuestion`—User answered a question. • `FeedItemLikeSomething`—User liked a post or comment. • `FeedItemMarkAnswerAsBest`—User marked an answer as the best answer. • `FeedItemPostQuestion`—User posted a question. • `FeedItemReceiveAComment`—User received a comment on a post. • `FeedItemReceiveALike`—User received a like on a post or comment. • `FeedItemReceiveAnAnswer`—User received an answer to a question. • `FeedItemWriteAComment`—User commented on a post. • `FeedItemWriteAPost`—User made a post. • `FeedItemYourAnswerMarkedBest`—User's answer was marked as the best answer.
`ConnectApi.UserProfileTabType`	Type of user profile tab. • `CustomVisualForce`—Tab that displays data from a Visualforce page. • `CustomWeb`—Tab that displays data from any external web-based application or web page. • `Element`—Tab that displays generic content inline. • `Feed`—Tab that displays the Chatter feed. • `Overview`—Tab that displays user details.
`ConnectApi.UserType`	Type of user. • `ChatterGuest`—User is an external user in a private group. • `ChatterOnly`—User is a Chatter Free customer. • `Guest`—User is unauthenticated. • `Internal`—User is a standard org member. • `Portal`—User is an external user in an Experience Cloud site. • `System`—User is Chatter Expert or a system user. • `Undefined`—User is a user type that is a custom object.
`ConnectApi.WishlistItemSortOrder`	Sort order for wishlist items. • `CreatedDateAsc`—Sorts by oldest creation date. • `CreatedDateDesc`—Sorts by most recent creation date.

Enum	Description
`ConnectApi.WorkflowProcessStatus`	Status of a workflow process. • `Approved` • `Fault` • `Held` • `NoResponse` • `Pending` • `Reassigned` • `Rejected` • `Removed` • `Started`
`ConnectApi.ZoneSearchResultType`	Zone search result type. • `Article`—Search results contain only articles. • `Question`—Search results contain only questions.
`ConnectApi.ZoneShowIn`	Zone search result location. • `Community`—Available in an Experience Cloud site. • `Internal`—Available internally only. • `Portal`—Available in a portal.

`ConnectApi` Exceptions

The `ConnectApi` namespace contains exception classes.

All exceptions classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions on page 2586.

The `ConnectApi` namespace contains these exceptions:

Exception	Description
`ConnectApi.ConnectApiException`	Any logic error in the way your application is utilizing `ConnectApi` code. This is equivalent to receiving a 400 error from Connect REST API.
`ConnectApi.NotFoundException`	Any issues with the specified resource being found. This is equivalent to receiving a 404 error from Connect REST API.
`ConnectApi.RateLimitException`	When you exceed the rate limit. This is equivalent to receiving a 503 Service Unavailable error from Connect REST API.

Database Namespace

The `Database` namespace provides classes used with DML operations.

The following are the classes in the `Database` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Batchable Interface

The class that implements this interface can be executed as a batch Apex job.

BatchableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of a batch job method and contains the batch job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

DeletedRecord Class

Contains information about a deleted record.

DeleteResult Class

Represents the result of a delete DML operation returned by the `Database.delete` method.

DMLOptions Class

Enables you to set options related to DML operations.

DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader Class

Enables setting assignment rule options.

DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader Class

Determines options for using duplicate rules to detect duplicate records. Duplicate rules are part of the Duplicate Management feature.

DmlOptions.EmailHeader Class

Enables setting email options.

DuplicateError Class

Contains information about an error that occurred when an attempt was made to save a duplicate record. Use if your organization has set up duplicate rules, which are part of the Duplicate Management feature.

EmptyRecycleBinResult Class

The result of the emptyRecycleBin DML operation returned by the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method.

Error Class

Represents information about an error that occurred during a DML operation when using a Database method.

GetDeletedResult Class

Contains the deleted records retrieved for a specific sObject type and time window.

GetUpdatedResult Class

Contains the result for the `Database.getUpdated` method call.

LeadConvert Class

Contains information used for lead conversion.

LeadConvertResult Class

The result of a lead conversion.

MergeResult Class

Contains the result of a merge Database method operation.

QueryLocator Class
Represents the record set returned by `Database.getQueryLocator` and used with Batch Apex.

QueryLocatorIterator Class
Represents an iterator over a query locator record set.

SaveResult Class
The result of an insert or update DML operation returned by a Database method.

UndeleteResult Class
The result of an undelete DML operation returned by the `Database.undelete` method.

UpsertResult Class
The result of an upsert DML operation returned by the `Database.upsert` method.

Batchable Interface

The class that implements this interface can be executed as a batch Apex job.

Namespace

Database

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Using Batch

Batchable Methods

The following are methods for `Batchable`.

IN THIS SECTION:

execute(jobId, recordList)
Gets invoked when the batch job executes and operates on one batch of records. Contains or calls the main execution logic for the batch job.

finish(jobId)
Gets invoked when the batch job finishes. Place any clean up code in this method.

start(jobId)
Gets invoked when the batch job starts. Returns the record set as an iterable that will be batched for execution.

start(jobId)
Gets invoked when the batch job starts. Returns the record set as a QueryLocator object that will be batched for execution.

`execute(jobId, recordList)`

Gets invoked when the batch job executes and operates on one batch of records. Contains or calls the main execution logic for the batch job.

Signature

```
public Void execute(Database.BatchableContext jobId, List<sObject> recordList)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Database.BatchableContext

Contains the job ID.

recordList
Type: List<sObject>

Contains the batch of records to process.

Return Value

Type: Void

finish(jobId)

Gets invoked when the batch job finishes. Place any clean up code in this method.

Signature

```
public Void finish(Database.BatchableContext jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Database.BatchableContext

Contains the job ID.

Return Value

Type: Void

start(jobId)

Gets invoked when the batch job starts. Returns the record set as an iterable that will be batched for execution.

Signature

```
public System.Iterable start(Database.BatchableContext jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Database.BatchableContext

Contains the job ID.

Return Value

Type: System.Iterable

`start(jobId)`

Gets invoked when the batch job starts. Returns the record set as a QueryLocator object that will be batched for execution.

Signature

```
public Database.QueryLocator start(Database.BatchableContext jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Database.BatchableContext

Contains the job ID.

Return Value

Type: Database.QueryLocator

BatchableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of a batch job method and contains the batch job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

Namespace

Database

SEE ALSO:

Batchable Interface

BatchableContext Methods

The following are methods for `BatchableContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getChildJobId()
Returns the ID of the current batch job chunk that is being processed.

getJobId()
Returns the batch job ID.

`getChildJobId()`

Returns the ID of the current batch job chunk that is being processed.

Signature

```
public Id getChildJobId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`getJobId()`

Returns the batch job ID.

Signature

```
public Id getJobId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

DeletedRecord Class

Contains information about a deleted record.

Namespace

Database

Usage

The `getDeletedRecords` method of the `Database.GetDeletedResult` class returns a list of `Database.DeletedRecord` objects. Use the methods in the `Database.DeletedRecord` class to retrieve details about each deleted record.

DeletedRecord Methods

The following are methods for `DeletedRecord`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDeletedDate()
Returns the deleted date of this record.

getId()
Returns the ID of a record deleted within the time window specified in the `Database.getDeleted` method.

`getDeletedDate()`

Returns the deleted date of this record.

Signature

```
public Date getDeletedDate()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

`getId()`

Returns the ID of a record deleted within the time window specified in the `Database.getDeleted` method.

Signature

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

DeleteResult Class

Represents the result of a delete DML operation returned by the `Database.delete` method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

An array of `Database.DeleteResult` objects is returned with the `delete` database method. Each element in the DeleteResult array corresponds to the sObject array passed as the *`sObject[]`* parameter in the `delete` Database method; that is, the first element in the DeleteResult array matches the first element passed in the sObject array, the second element corresponds with the second element, and so on. If only one sObject is passed in, the DeleteResult array contains a single element.

Example

The following example shows how to obtain and iterate through the returned `Database.DeleteResult` objects. It deletes some queried accounts using `Database.delete` with a false second parameter to allow partial processing of records on failure. Next, it iterates through the results to determine whether the operation was successful or not for each record. It writes the ID of every record that was processed successfully to the debug log, or error messages and fields of the failed records.

```
// Query the accounts to delete
Account[] accts = [SELECT Id from Account WHERE Name LIKE 'Acme%'];
// Delete the accounts
Database.DeleteResult[] drList = Database.delete(accts, false);

// Iterate through each returned result
for(Database.DeleteResult dr : drList) {
    if (dr.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful, so get the ID of the record that was processed
```

```
        System.debug('Successfully deleted account with ID: ' + dr.getId());
    }
    else {
        // Operation failed, so get all errors
        for(Database.Error err : dr.getErrors()) {
            System.debug('The following error has occurred.');
            System.debug(err.getStatusCode() + ': ' + err.getMessage());
            System.debug('Account fields that affected this error: ' + err.getFields());
        }
    }
}
```

DeleteResult Methods

The following are methods for `DeleteResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

getId()
Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to delete.

isSuccess()
A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error[]

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to delete.

Signature

```
public ID getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

If this field contains a value, the object was successfully deleted. If this field is empty, the operation was not successful for that object.

`isSuccess()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DMLOptions Class

Enables you to set options related to DML operations.

Namespace

Database

Usage

`Database.DMLOptions` is only available for Apex saved against API versions 15.0 and higher. DMLOptions settings take effect only for record operations performed using Apex DML and not through the Salesforce user interface. The DMLOptions class has three child options.

DML Child Options

DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader—Enables setting assignment rule options.

DmlOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader—Determines options for using duplicate rules to detect duplicate records. Duplicate rules are part of the Duplicate Management feature.

DmlOptions.EmailHeader—Enables setting email options.

DmlOptions Properties

The following are properties for `DmlOptions`.

IN THIS SECTION:

allowFieldTruncation

Specifies the truncation behavior of large strings.

assignmentRuleHeader

Specifies the assignment rule to be used when creating a case or lead.

emailHeader

Specifies additional information regarding the automatic email that gets sent when an events occurs.

localeOptions
Specifies the language of any labels that are returned by Apex.

optAllOrNone
Specifies whether the operation allows for partial success.

allowFieldTruncation

Specifies the truncation behavior of large strings.

Signature

```
public Boolean allowFieldTruncation {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

In Apex saved against API versions previous to 15.0, if you specify a value for a string and that value is too large, the value is truncated. For API version 15.0 and later, if a value is specified that is too large, the operation fails and an error message is returned. The `allowFieldTruncation` property allows you to specify that the previous behavior, truncation, be used instead of the new behavior in Apex saved against API versions 15.0 and later.

assignmentRuleHeader

Specifies the assignment rule to be used when creating a case or lead.

Signature

```
public Database.DmlOptions.Assignmentruleheader assignmentRuleHeader {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Database.DMLOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader

Usage

Note: The Database.DMLOptions object supports assignment rules for cases and leads, but not for accounts.

emailHeader

Specifies additional information regarding the automatic email that gets sent when an events occurs.

Signature

```
public Database.DmlOptions.EmailHeader emailHeader {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Database.DMLOptions.EmailHeader

Usage

The Salesforce user interface allows you to specify whether or not to send an email when the following events occur.

- Creation of a new case or task
- Conversion of a case email to a contact
- New user email notification
- Lead queue email notification
- Password reset

In Apex saved against API version 15.0 or later, the Database.DMLOptions `emailHeader` property enables you to specify additional information regarding the email that gets sent when one of the events occurs because of the code's execution.

`localeOptions`

Specifies the language of any labels that are returned by Apex.

Signature

```
public Database.DmlOptions.LocaleOptions localeOptions {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Database.DMLOptions.LocaleOptions

Usage

The value must be a valid user locale (language and country), such as de_DE or en_GB. The value is a String, 2-5 characters long. The first two characters are always an ISO language code, for example 'fr' or 'en.' If the value is further qualified by a country, then the string also has an underscore (_) and another ISO country code, for example 'US' or 'UK'. For example, the string for the United States is 'en_US', and the string for French Canadian is 'fr_CA'.

`optAllOrNone`

Specifies whether the operation allows for partial success.

Signature

```
public Boolean optAllOrNone {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If `optAllOrNone` is set to `true`, all changes are rolled back if any record causes errors. The default for this property is `false` and successfully processed records are committed while records with errors aren't.

This property is available in Apex saved against Salesforce API version 20.0 and later.

DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader Class

Enables setting assignment rule options.

Namespace

Database

Example

The following example uses the `useDefaultRule` option:

```
Database.DMLOptions dmo = new Database.DMLOptions();
dmo.assignmentRuleHeader.useDefaultRule= true;

Lead l = new Lead(company='ABC', lastname='Smith');
l.setOptions(dmo);
insert l;
```

The following example uses the `assignmentRuleID` option:

```
Database.DMLOptions dmo = new Database.DMLOptions();
dmo.assignmentRuleHeader.assignmentRuleId= '01QD0000000EqAn';

Lead l = new Lead(company='ABC', lastname='Smith');
l.setOptions(dmo);
insert l;
```

DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader Properties

The following are properties for `DmlOptions.AssignmentRuleHeader`.

IN THIS SECTION:

assignmentRuleID

Specifies the ID of a specific assignment rule to run for the case or lead. The assignment rule can be active or inactive.

useDefaultRule

If specified as `true` for a case or lead, the system uses the default (active) assignment rule for the case or lead. If specified, do not specify an `assignmentRuleId`.

`assignmentRuleID`

Specifies the ID of a specific assignment rule to run for the case or lead. The assignment rule can be active or inactive.

Signature

```
public Id assignmentRuleID {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: ID

Usage

The ID can be retrieved by querying the AssignmentRule sObject. If specified, do not specify `useDefaultRule`.

If the value is not in the correct ID format (15-character or 18-character Salesforce ID), the call fails and an exception is returned.

`useDefaultRule`

If specified as `true` for a case or lead, the system uses the default (active) assignment rule for the case or lead. If specified, do not specify an `assignmentRuleId`.

Signature

```
public Boolean useDefaultRule {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If there are no assignment rules in the organization, in API version 29.0 and earlier, creating a case or lead with `useDefaultRule` set to `true` results in the case or lead being assigned to the predefined default owner. In API version 30.0 and later, the case or lead is unassigned and doesn't get assigned to the default owner.

DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader Class

Determines options for using duplicate rules to detect duplicate records. Duplicate rules are part of the Duplicate Management feature.

Namespace

Database

Example

The following example shows how to save an account record that's been identified as a duplicate. To learn how to iterate through duplicate errors, see DuplicateError Class

```
Database.DMLOptions dml = new Database.DMLOptions();
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.allowSave = true;
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.runAsCurrentUser = true;
Account duplicateAccount = new Account(Name='dupe');
Database.SaveResult sr = Database.insert(duplicateAccount, dml);
if (sr.isSuccess()) {
 System.debug('Duplicate account has been inserted in Salesforce!');
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader Properties

DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader Properties

The following are properties for `DMLOptions.DuplicateRuleHeader`.

IN THIS SECTION:

allowSave

For a duplicate rule, when the Alert option is enabled, bypass alerts and save duplicate records by setting this property to `true`. Prevent duplicate records from being saved by setting this property to `false`.

runAsCurrentUser

Make sure that sharing rules for the current user are enforced when duplicate rules run by setting this property to `true`. Use the sharing rules specified in the class for the request by setting this property to `false`. If no sharing rules are specified, Apex code runs in system context and sharing rules for the current user are not enforced.

`allowSave`

For a duplicate rule, when the Alert option is enabled, bypass alerts and save duplicate records by setting this property to `true`. Prevent duplicate records from being saved by setting this property to `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean allowSave {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Example

This example shows how to save an account record that's been identified as a duplicate. `dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.allowSave = true` means the user should be allowed to save the duplicate. To learn how to iterate through duplicate errors, see DuplicateError Class.

```
Database.DMLOptions dml = new Database.DMLOptions();
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.allowSave = true;
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.runAsCurrentUser = true;
Account duplicateAccount = new Account(Name='dupe');
Database.SaveResult sr = Database.insert(duplicateAccount, dml);
if (sr.isSuccess()) {
 System.debug('Duplicate account has been inserted in Salesforce!');
}
```

`runAsCurrentUser`

Make sure that sharing rules for the current user are enforced when duplicate rules run by setting this property to `true`. Use the sharing rules specified in the class for the request by setting this property to `false`. If no sharing rules are specified, Apex code runs in system context and sharing rules for the current user are not enforced.

Signature

```
public Boolean runAsCurrentUser {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If specified as `true`, duplicate rules run for the current user, which ensures users can't view duplicate records that aren't available to them.

Use `runAsCurrentUser = true` to detect duplicates when converting leads to contacts. Typically, lead conversion Apex code runs in a system context and does not enforce sharing rules for the current user.

Example

This example shows how to set options so that duplicate rules run for the current user when saving a new account.

```
Database.DMLOptions dml = new Database.DMLOptions();
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.allowSave = true;
dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.runAsCurrentUser = true;
Account duplicateAccount = new Account(Name='dupe');
Database.SaveResult sr = Database.insert(duplicateAccount, dml);
if (sr.isSuccess()) {
 System.debug('Duplicate account has been inserted in Salesforce!');
}
```

DmlOptions.EmailHeader Class

Enables setting email options.

Namespace

Database

Usage

Even though auto-sent emails can be triggered by actions in the Salesforce user interface, the DMLOptions settings for `emailHeader` take effect only for DML operations carried out in Apex code.

Example

In the following example, the `triggerAutoResponseEmail` option is specified:

```
Account a = new Account(name='Acme Plumbing');

    insert a;

    Contact c = new Contact(email='jplumber@salesforce.com',
firstname='Joe',lastname='Plumber', accountid=a.id);
```

```
insert c;

Database.DMLOptions dlo = new Database.DMLOptions();

dlo.EmailHeader.triggerAutoResponseEmail = true;

Case ca = new Case(subject='Plumbing Problems', contactid=c.id);

database.insert(ca, dlo);
```

Suppose that you use an after-insert or after-update trigger to change ownership of leads, contacts, or opportunities. If you use the API to change record ownership, or if a Lightning Experience user changes a record's owner, no email notification is sent. To send email notifications to a record's new owner, set the `triggerUserEmail` property to `true`.

DmlOptions.EmailHeader Properties

The following are properties for `DmlOptions.EmailHeader`.

IN THIS SECTION:

triggerAutoResponseEmail
Indicates whether to trigger auto-response rules (`true`) or not (`false`), for leads and cases.

triggerOtherEmail
Indicates whether to trigger email outside the organization (`true`) or not (`false`).

triggerUserEmail
Indicates whether to trigger email that is sent to users in the organization (`true`) or not (`false`).

`triggerAutoResponseEmail`

Indicates whether to trigger auto-response rules (`true`) or not (`false`), for leads and cases.

Signature

```
public Boolean triggerAutoResponseEmail {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This email can be automatically triggered by a number of events, for example creating a case or resetting a user password. If this value is set to `true`, when a case is created, if there is an email address for the contact specified in `ContactID`, the email is sent to that address. If not, the email is sent to the address specified in `SuppliedEmail`

`triggerOtherEmail`

Indicates whether to trigger email outside the organization (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean triggerOtherEmail {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This email can be automatically triggered by creating, editing, or deleting a contact for a case.

Note: Email sent through Apex because of a group event includes additional behaviors. A *group event* is an event for which `IsGroupEvent` is true. The `EventAttendee` object tracks the users, leads, or contacts that are invited to a group event. Note the following behaviors for group event email sent through Apex:

- Sending a group event invitation to a lead or contact respects the `triggerOtherEmail` option
- Email sent when updating or deleting a group event also respects the `triggerUserEmail` and `triggerOtherEmail` options, as appropriate

`triggerUserEmail`

Indicates whether to trigger email that is sent to users in the organization (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean triggerUserEmail {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This email can be automatically triggered by a number of events; resetting a password, creating a new user, or creating or modifying a task.

Note: Adding comments to a case in Apex doesn't trigger email to users in the organization even if `triggerUserEmail` is set to `true`.

Note: Email sent through Apex because of a group event includes additional behaviors. A *group event* is an event for which `IsGroupEvent` is true. The EventAttendee object tracks the users, leads, or contacts that are invited to a group event. Note the following behaviors for group event email sent through Apex:

- Sending a group event invitation to a user respects the `triggerUserEmail` option
- Email sent when updating or deleting a group event also respects the `triggerUserEmail` and `triggerOtherEmail` options, as appropriate

DuplicateError Class

Contains information about an error that occurred when an attempt was made to save a duplicate record. Use if your organization has set up duplicate rules, which are part of the Duplicate Management feature.

Namespace

Database

Example

When you try to save a record that's identified as a duplicate record by a duplicate rule, you'll receive a duplicate error. If the duplicate rule contains the Allow action, an attempt will be made to bypass the error.

```
// Try to save a duplicate account
Account duplicateAccount = new Account(Name='Acme',  BillingCity='San Francisco');
Database.SaveResult sr = Database.insert(duplicateAccount, false);
if (!sr.isSuccess()) {

 // Insertion failed due to duplicate detected
 for(Database.Error duplicateError : sr.getErrors()){
  Datacloud.DuplicateResult duplicateResult =
                 ((Database.DuplicateError)duplicateError).getDuplicateResult();
  System.debug('Duplicate records have been detected by ' +
                 duplicateResult.getDuplicateRule());
  System.debug(duplicateResult.getErrorMessage());
 }

 // If the duplicate rule is an alert rule, we can try to bypass it
 Database.DMLOptions dml = new Database.DMLOptions();
 dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.AllowSave = true;
 Database.SaveResult sr2 = Database.insert(duplicateAccount, dml);
 if (sr2.isSuccess()) {
  System.debug('Duplicate account has been inserted in Salesforce!');
 }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DuplicateError Methods

SEE ALSO:

SaveResult Class

DuplicateResult Class

Error Class

DuplicateError Methods

The following are methods for `DuplicateError`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDuplicateResult()

Returns the details of a duplicate rule and duplicate records found by the duplicate rule.

getFields()
Returns an array of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

getMessage()
Returns the error message text.

getStatusCode()
Returns a code that characterizes the error.

getDuplicateResult()

Returns the details of a duplicate rule and duplicate records found by the duplicate rule.

Signature

```
public Datacloud.DuplicateResult getDuplicateResult()
```

Return Value

Type: Datacloud.DuplicateResult

Example

This example shows the code used to get the possible duplicates and related match information after saving a new contact. This code is part of a custom application that implements duplicate management when users add a contact. See DuplicateResult Class on page 1799 to check out the entire sample applicaton.

```
Datacloud.DuplicateResult duplicateResult =
                            duplicateError.getDuplicateResult();
```

getFields()

Returns an array of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

Signature

```
public List<String> getFields()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

getMessage()

Returns the error message text.

Signature

```
public String getMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStatusCode()`

Returns a code that characterizes the error.

Signature

```
public StatusCode getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: StatusCode

EmptyRecycleBinResult Class

The result of the emptyRecycleBin DML operation returned by the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

A list of `Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult` objects is returned by the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method. Each object in the list corresponds to either a record ID or an sObject passed as the parameter in the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method. The first index in the EmptyRecycleBinResult list matches the first record or sObject specified in the list, the second with the second, and so on.

EmptyRecycleBinResult Methods

The following are methods for `EmptyRecycleBinResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred during the delete for this record or sObject, returns a list of one or more Database.Error objects. If no errors occurred, the returned list is empty.

getId()
Returns the ID of the record or sObject you attempted to delete.

isSuccess()
Returns `true` if the record or sObject was successfully removed from the Recycle Bin; otherwise `false`.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred during the delete for this record or sObject, returns a list of one or more Database.Error objects. If no errors occurred, the returned list is empty.

Signature

```
public Database.Errors[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Errors []

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the record or sObject you attempted to delete.

Signature

```
public ID getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`isSuccess()`

Returns `true` if the record or sObject was successfully removed from the Recycle Bin; otherwise `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Error Class

Represents information about an error that occurred during a DML operation when using a Database method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

`Error` class is part of `SaveResult`, which is generated when a user attempts to save a Salesforce record.

SEE ALSO:

- SaveResult Class
- DuplicateError Class

Error Methods

The following are methods for `Error`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFields()
Returns an array of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

getMessage()
Returns the error message text.

getStatusCode()
Returns a code that characterizes the error.

`getFields()`

Returns an array of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

Signature

```
public String[] getFields()
```

Return Value

Type: String[]

`getMessage()`

Returns the error message text.

Signature

```
public String getMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStatusCode()`

Returns a code that characterizes the error.

Signature

```
public StatusCode getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: StatusCode

Usage

The full list of status codes is available in the WSDL file for your organization (see Downloading Salesforce WSDLs and Client Authentication Certificates in the Salesforce online help.)

GetDeletedResult Class

Contains the deleted records retrieved for a specific sObject type and time window.

Namespace

Database

Usage

The `Database.getDeleted` method returns the deleted record information as a `Database.GetDeletedResult` object.

GetDeletedResult Methods

The following are methods for `GetDeletedResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDeletedRecords()
Returns a list of deleted records for the time window specified in the `Database.getDeleted` method call.

getEarliestDateAvailable()
Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the earliest physically deleted object for the sObject type specified in `Database.getDeleted`.

getLatestDateCovered()
Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the last date covered in the `Database.getDeleted` call.

`getDeletedRecords()`

Returns a list of deleted records for the time window specified in the `Database.getDeleted` method call.

Signature

```
public List<Database.DeletedRecord> getDeletedRecords()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.DeletedRecord>

`getEarliestDateAvailable()`

Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the earliest physically deleted object for the sObject type specified in `Database.getDeleted`.

Signature

```
public Date getEarliestDateAvailable()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

`getLatestDateCovered()`

Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the last date covered in the `Database.getDeleted` call.

Signature

```
public Date getLatestDateCovered()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Usage

If there is a value, it is less than or equal to the *`endDate`* argument of `Database.getDeleted`. A value here indicates that, for safety, you should use this value for the *`startDate`* of your next call to capture the changes that started after this date but didn't complete before *`endDate`* and were, therefore, not returned in the previous call.

GetUpdatedResult Class

Contains the result for the `Database.getUpdated` method call.

Namespace

Database

Usage

Use the methods in this class to obtain detailed information about the updated records returned by `Database.getUpdated` for a specific time window.

GetUpdatedResult Methods

The following are methods for `GetUpdatedResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getIds()
Returns the IDs of records updated within the time window specified in the `Database.getUpdated` method.

getLatestDateCovered()
Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the last date covered in the `Database.getUpdated` call.

`getIds()`

Returns the IDs of records updated within the time window specified in the `Database.getUpdated` method.

Signature

```
public List<Id> getIds()
```

Return Value

Type: List<ID>

`getLatestDateCovered()`

Returns the date in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) of the last date covered in the `Database.getUpdated` call.

Signature

```
public Date getLatestDateCovered()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

LeadConvert Class

Contains information used for lead conversion.

Namespace

Database

Usage

The `convertLead` Database method converts a lead into an account and contact or an account and person account, as well as (optionally) an opportunity. The `convertLead` takes an instance of the `Database.LeadConvert` class as a parameter. Create an instance of this class and set the information required for conversion, such as setting the lead, and destination account and contact.

Note: The `Database.convertLead()` method can take one `LeadConvert` object or a list of `LeadConvert` objects.

Example

This example shows how to use the `Database.convertLead` method to convert a lead. It inserts a new lead, creates a `LeadConvert` object, sets its status to converted, then passes it to the `Database.convertLead` method. Finally, it verifies that the conversion was successful.

```
Lead myLead = new Lead(LastName = 'Fry', Company='Fry And Sons');
insert myLead;

Database.LeadConvert lc = new Database.LeadConvert();
```

```
lc.setLeadId(myLead.id);

LeadStatus convertStatus = [SELECT Id, MasterLabel FROM LeadStatus WHERE IsConverted=true
 LIMIT 1];
lc.setConvertedStatus(convertStatus.MasterLabel);

Database.LeadConvertResult lcr = Database.convertLead(lc);
System.assert(lcr.isSuccess());
```

IN THIS SECTION:

LeadConvert Constructors

LeadConvert Methods

LeadConvert Constructors

The following are constructors for `LeadConvert`.

IN THIS SECTION:

LeadConvert()
Creates a new instance of the `Database.LeadConvert` class.

`LeadConvert()`

Creates a new instance of the `Database.LeadConvert` class.

Signature

```
public LeadConvert()
```

LeadConvert Methods

The following are methods for `LeadConvert`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAccountId()
Gets the ID of the account into which the lead will be merged.

getContactId()
Gets the ID of the contact into which the lead will be merged.

getConvertedStatus()
Gets the lead status value for a converted lead.

getLeadID()
Gets the ID of the lead to convert.

getOpportunityName()
Gets the name of the opportunity to create.

getOwnerID()

Gets the ID of the person to own any newly created account, contact, and opportunity.

getRelatedPersonAccountId()

Gets the ID of the existing person account into which the lead will be converted.

getRelatedPersonAccountRecord()

Gets the entity record of the new person account into which the lead will be converted.

isDoNotCreateOpportunity()

Indicates whether an Opportunity is created during lead conversion (`false`, the default) or not (`true`).

isOverWriteLeadSource()

Indicates whether the `LeadSource` field on the target Contact object is overwritten with the contents of the `LeadSource` field in the source Lead object (`true`), or not (`false`, the default).

isSendNotificationEmail()

Indicates whether a notification email is sent to the owner specified by `setOwnerId` (`true`) or not (`false`, the default).

setAccountId(accountId)

Sets the ID of the account into which the lead is merged. This value is required only when updating an existing account, including person accounts.

setContactId(contactId)

Sets the ID of the contact into which the lead will be merged (this contact must be associated with the account specified with `setAccountId`, and `setAccountId` must be specified). This value is required only when updating an existing contact.

setConvertedStatus(status)

Sets the lead status value for a converted lead. This field is required.

setDoNotCreateOpportunity(createOpportunity)

Specifies whether to create an opportunity during lead conversion. The default value is `false`: opportunities are created by default. Set this flag to `true` only if you do not want to create an opportunity from the lead.

setLeadId(leadId)

Sets the ID of the lead to convert. This field is required.

setOpportunityId(opportunityId)

Sets the ID of the opportunity into which the lead is merged. This value is required only when updating an existing opportunity.

setOpportunityName(opportunityName)

Sets the name of the opportunity to create. If no name is specified, this value defaults to the company name of the lead.

setOverwriteLeadSource(overwriteLeadSource)

Specifies whether to overwrite the `LeadSource` field on the target contact object with the contents of the `LeadSource` field in the source lead object. The default value is `false`, to not overwrite the field. If you specify this as `true`, you must also specify `setContactId` for the target contact.

setOwnerId(ownerId)

Specifies the ID of the person to own any newly created account, contact, and opportunity. If the application does not specify this value, the owner of the new object will be the owner of the lead.

setRelatedPersonAccountId(relatedPersonAccountId)

Sets the ID of the existing person account into which to convert the lead. This value is required only when updating an existing person account.

setRelatedPersonAccountRecord(Entity relatedPersonAccountRecord)

Sets the entity record of the new person account into which to convert the lead.

setSendNotificationEmail(sendEmail)

Specifies whether to send a notification email to the owner specified by `setOwnerId`. The default value is `false`, that is, to not send email.

getAccountId()

Gets the ID of the account into which the lead will be merged.

Signature

```
public ID getAccountId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getContactId()

Gets the ID of the contact into which the lead will be merged.

Signature

```
public ID getContactId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getConvertedStatus()

Gets the lead status value for a converted lead.

Signature

```
public String getConvertedStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLeadID()

Gets the ID of the lead to convert.

Signature

```
public ID getLeadID()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getOpportunityName()

Gets the name of the opportunity to create.

Signature

```
public String getOpportunityName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOwnerID()

Gets the ID of the person to own any newly created account, contact, and opportunity.

Signature

```
public ID getOwnerID()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getRelatedPersonAccountId()

Gets the ID of the existing person account into which the lead will be converted.

Signature

```
public ID getRelatedPersonAccountId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getRelatedPersonAccountRecord()

Gets the entity record of the new person account into which the lead will be converted.

Signature

```
public ID getRelatedPersonAccountRecord()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

isDoNotCreateOpportunity()

Indicates whether an Opportunity is created during lead conversion (`false`, the default) or not (`true`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isDoNotCreateOpportunity()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isOverWriteLeadSource()`

Indicates whether the `LeadSource` field on the target Contact object is overwritten with the contents of the `LeadSource` field in the source Lead object (`true`), or not (`false`, the default).

Signature

```
public Boolean isOverWriteLeadSource()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isSendNotificationEmail()`

Indicates whether a notification email is sent to the owner specified by `setOwnerId` (`true`) or not (`false`, the default).

Signature

```
public Boolean isSendNotificationEmail()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`setAccountId(accountId)`

Sets the ID of the account into which the lead is merged. This value is required only when updating an existing account, including person accounts.

Signature

```
public Void setAccountId(ID accountId)
```

Parameters

`accountId`
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setContactId(contactId)

Sets the ID of the contact into which the lead will be merged (this contact must be associated with the account specified with `setAccountId`, and `setAccountId` must be specified). This value is required only when updating an existing contact.

Signature

```
public Void setContactId(ID contactId)
```

Parameters

contactId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If `setContactId` is specified, then the application creates a new contact that is implicitly associated with the account. The contact name and other existing data are not overwritten (unless `setOverwriteLeadSource` is set to true, in which case only the `LeadSource` field is overwritten).

Important: If you are converting a lead into a person account, do not specify `setContactId` or an error will result. Specify only `setAccountId` of the person account.

setConvertedStatus(status)

Sets the lead status value for a converted lead. This field is required.

Signature

```
public Void setConvertedStatus(String status)
```

Parameters

status
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setDoNotCreateOpportunity(createOpportunity)

Specifies whether to create an opportunity during lead conversion. The default value is `false`: opportunities are created by default. Set this flag to `true` only if you do not want to create an opportunity from the lead.

Signature

```
public Void setDoNotCreateOpportunity(Boolean createOpportunity)
```

Parameters

createOpportunity
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

setLeadId(leadId)

Sets the ID of the lead to convert. This field is required.

Signature

```
public Void setLeadId(ID leadId)
```

Parameters

leadId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setOpportunityId(opportunityId)

Sets the ID of the opportunity into which the lead is merged. This value is required only when updating an existing opportunity.

Signature

```
public Void setOpportunityId(ID opportunityId)
```

Parameters

opportunityId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setOpportunityName(opportunityName)

Sets the name of the opportunity to create. If no name is specified, this value defaults to the company name of the lead.

Signature

```
public Void setOpportunityName(String opportunityName)
```

Parameters

opportunityName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The maximum length of this field is 80 characters.

If `setDoNotCreateOpportunity` is true, no Opportunity is created and this field must be left blank; otherwise, an error is returned.

setOverwriteLeadSource(overwriteLeadSource)

Specifies whether to overwrite the `LeadSource` field on the target contact object with the contents of the `LeadSource` field in the source lead object. The default value is `false`, to not overwrite the field. If you specify this as `true`, you must also specify `setContactId` for the target contact.

Signature

```
public Void setOverwriteLeadSource(Boolean overwriteLeadSource)
```

Parameters

overwriteLeadSource
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

setOwnerId(ownerId)

Specifies the ID of the person to own any newly created account, contact, and opportunity. If the application does not specify this value, the owner of the new object will be the owner of the lead.

Signature

```
public Void setOwnerId(ID ownerId)
```

Parameters

ownerId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is not applicable when merging with existing objects—if `setOwnerId` is specified, the `ownerId` field is not overwritten in an existing account or contact.

setRelatedPersonAccountId(relatedPersonAccountId)

Sets the ID of the existing person account into which to convert the lead. This value is required only when updating an existing person account.

Signature

```
public Void setRelatedPersonAccountId(ID relatedPersonAccountId)
```

Parameters

relatedPersonAccountId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setRelatedPersonAccountRecord(Entity relatedPersonAccountRecord)

Sets the entity record of the new person account into which to convert the lead.

Signature

```
public Void setRelatedPersonAccountRecord(Entity relatedPersonAccountRecord)
```

Parameters

relatedPersonAccountRecord
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setSendNotificationEmail(sendEmail)

Specifies whether to send a notification email to the owner specified by `setOwnerId`. The default value is `false`, that is, to not send email.

Signature

```
public Void setSendNotificationEmail(Boolean sendEmail)
```

Parameters

sendEmail
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

LeadConvertResult Class

The result of a lead conversion.

Namespace

Database

Usage

An array of LeadConvertResult objects is returned with the `convertLead` Database method. Each element in the LeadConvertResult array corresponds to the sObject array passed as the *`SObject[]`* parameter in the `convertLead` Database method, that is, the first element in the LeadConvertResult array matches the first element passed in the SObject array, the second element corresponds to the second element, and so on. If only one sObject is passed in, the LeadConvertResult array contains a single element.

LeadConvertResult Methods

The following are methods for `LeadConvertResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAccountId()
The ID of the new account (if a new account was specified) or the ID of the account specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

getContactId()
The ID of the new contact (if a new contact was specified) or the ID of the contact specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

getErrors()
If an error occurred, an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description.

getLeadId()
The ID of the converted lead.

getOpportunityId()
The ID of the new opportunity, if one was created when `convertLead` was invoked.

getRelatedPersonAccountId()
The ID of the new or existing person account specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

isSuccess()
A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise

getAccountId()

The ID of the new account (if a new account was specified) or the ID of the account specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

Signature

```
public ID getAccountId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getContactId()

The ID of the new contact (if a new contact was specified) or the ID of the contact specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

Signature

```
public ID getContactId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getErrors()

If an error occurred, an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error[]

getLeadId()

The ID of the converted lead.

Signature

```
public ID getLeadId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getOpportunityId()

The ID of the new opportunity, if one was created when `convertLead` was invoked.

Signature

```
public ID getOpportunityId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`getRelatedPersonAccountId()`

The ID of the new or existing person account specified when `convertLead` was invoked.

Signature

```
public ID getRelatedPersonAccountId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`isSuccess()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

MergeResult Class

Contains the result of a merge Database method operation.

Namespace

Database

Usage

The `Database.merge` method returns a `Database.MergeResult` object for each merged record.

MergeResult Methods

The following are methods for `MergeResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
Returns a list of `Database.Error` objects representing the errors encountered, if any, during a merge operation using the `Database.merge` method. If no error occurred, returns null.

getId()
Returns the ID of the master record into which other records were merged.

getMergedRecordIds()
Returns the IDs of the records merged into the master record.

getUpdatedRelatedIds()
Returns the IDs of all related records that were reparented as a result of the merge that are viewable by the user sending the merge call.

isSuccess()
Indicates whether the merge was successful (`true`) or not (`false`).

getErrors()

Returns a list of `Database.Error` objects representing the errors encountered, if any, during a merge operation using the `Database.merge` method. If no error occurred, returns null.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

getId()

Returns the ID of the master record into which other records were merged.

Signature

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

getMergedRecordIds()

Returns the IDs of the records merged into the master record.

Signature

```
public List<String> getMergedRecordIds()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

`getUpdatedRelatedIds()`

Returns the IDs of all related records that were reparented as a result of the merge that are viewable by the user sending the merge call.

Signature

```
public List<String> getUpdatedRelatedIds()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

`isSuccess()`

Indicates whether the merge was successful (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

QueryLocator Class

Represents the record set returned by `Database.getQueryLocator` and used with Batch Apex.

Namespace

Database

QueryLocator Methods

The following are methods for `QueryLocator`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getQuery()
Returns the query used to instantiate the `Database.QueryLocator` object. This is useful when testing the `start` method.

iterator()
Returns a new instance of a query locator iterator.

`getQuery()`

Returns the query used to instantiate the `Database.QueryLocator` object. This is useful when testing the `start` method.

Signature

```
public String getQuery()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

You cannot use the `FOR UPDATE` keywords with a getQueryLocator query to lock a set of records. The `start` method automatically locks the set of records in the batch.

Example

```
System.assertEquals(QLReturnedFromStart.
getQuery(),
Database.getQueryLocator([SELECT Id
   FROM Account]).getQuery() );
```

`iterator()`

Returns a new instance of a query locator iterator.

Signature

```
public Database.QueryLocatorIterator iterator()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.QueryLocatorIterator

Usage

Warning: To iterate over a query locator, save the iterator instance that this method returns in a variable and then use this variable to iterate over the collection. Calling `iterator` every time you want to perform an iteration can result in incorrect behavior because each call returns a new iterator instance.

For an example, see QueryLocatorIterator Class.

QueryLocatorIterator Class

Represents an iterator over a query locator record set.

Namespace

Database

Example

This sample shows how to obtain an iterator for a query locator, which contains five accounts. This sample calls `hasNext` and `next` to get each record in the collection.

```
// Get a query locator
Database.QueryLocator q = Database.getQueryLocator(
    [SELECT Name FROM Account LIMIT 5]);
// Get an iterator
Database.QueryLocatorIterator it =  q.iterator();

// Iterate over the records
while (it.hasNext())
{
    Account a = (Account)it.next();
    System.debug(a);
}
```

QueryLocatorIterator Methods

The following are methods for `QueryLocatorIterator`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

hasNext()

Returns `true` if there are one or more records remaining in the collection; otherwise, returns `false`.

next()

Advances the iterator to the next sObject record and returns the sObject.

`hasNext()`

Returns `true` if there are one or more records remaining in the collection; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasNext()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`next()`

Advances the iterator to the next sObject record and returns the sObject.

Signature

```
public sObject next()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject

Usage

Because the return value is the generic sObject type, you must cast it if using a more specific type. For example:

```
Account a = (Account)myIterator.next();
```

Example

```
Account a = (Account)myIterator.next();
```

SaveResult Class

The result of an insert or update DML operation returned by a Database method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

An array of SaveResult objects is returned with the `insert` and `update` database methods. Each element in the SaveResult array corresponds to the sObject array passed as the *`sObject[]`* parameter in the Database method, that is, the first element in the SaveResult array matches the first element passed in the sObject array, the second element corresponds with the second element, and so on. If only one sObject is passed in, the SaveResult array contains a single element.

A SaveResult object is generated when a new or existing Salesforce record is saved.

Example

The following example shows how to obtain and iterate through the returned `Database.SaveResult` objects. It inserts two accounts using `Database.insert` with a false second parameter to allow partial processing of records on failure. One of the accounts is missing the Name required field, which causes a failure. Next, it iterates through the results to determine whether the operation was successful or not for each record. It writes the ID of every record that was processed successfully to the debug log, or error messages and fields of the failed records. This example generates one successful operation and one failure.

```
// Create two accounts, one of which is missing a required field
Account[] accts = new List<Account>{
    new Account(Name='Account1'),
    new Account()};
Database.SaveResult[] srList = Database.insert(accts, false);

// Iterate through each returned result
for (Database.SaveResult sr : srList) {
    if (sr.isSuccess()) {
        // Operation was successful, so get the ID of the record that was processed
        System.debug('Successfully inserted account. Account ID: ' + sr.getId());
    }
```

```
    else {
        // Operation failed, so get all errors
        for(Database.Error err : sr.getErrors()) {
            System.debug('The following error has occurred.');
            System.debug(err.getStatusCode() + ': ' + err.getMessage());
            System.debug('Account fields that affected this error: ' + err.getFields());
        }
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

Error Class

DuplicateError Class

SaveResult Methods

The following are methods for `SaveResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

getId()
Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to insert or update.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error[]

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to insert or update.

Signature

```
public ID getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

If this field contains a value, the object was successfully inserted or updated. If this field is empty, the operation was not successful for that object.

`isSuccess()`

Returns a Boolean that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

This example shows the code used to process duplicate records, which are detected when there is an unsuccessful save due to an error. This code is part of a custom application that implements duplicate management when users add a contact. See DuplicateResult Class on page 1799 to check out the entire sample applicaton.

```
if (!saveResult.isSuccess()) { ... }
```

UndeleteResult Class

The result of an undelete DML operation returned by the `Database.undelete` method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

An array of Database.UndeleteResult objects is returned with the `undelete` database method. Each element in the UndeleteResult array corresponds to the sObject array passed as the *`sObject[]`* parameter in the `undelete` Database method; that is, the first element in the UndeleteResult array matches the first element passed in the sObject array, the second element corresponds with the second element, and so on. If only one sObject is passed in, the UndeleteResults array contains a single element.

UndeleteResult Methods

The following are methods for `UndeleteResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns null.

getId()
Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to undelete.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

getErrors()

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns null.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error[]

getId()

Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to undelete.

Signature

```
public ID getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

If this field contains a value, the object was successfully undeleted. If this field is empty, the operation was not successful for that object.

isSuccess()

Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

UpsertResult Class

The result of an upsert DML operation returned by the `Database.upsert` method.

Namespace

Database

Usage

An array of Database.UpsertResult objects is returned with the `upsert` database method. Each element in the UpsertResult array corresponds to the sObject array passed as the *`sObject[]`* parameter in the `upsert` Database method; that is, the first element in the UpsertResult array matches the first element passed in the sObject array, the second element corresponds with the second element, and so on. If only one sObject is passed in, the UpsertResults array contains a single element.

UpsertResult Methods

The following are methods for `UpsertResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

getId()
Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to update or insert.

isCreated()
A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the record was created, `false` if the record was updated.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred, returns an array of one or more database error objects providing the error code and description. If no error occurred, returns an empty set.

Signature

```
public Database.Error[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.Error []

`getId()`

Returns the ID of the sObject you were trying to update or insert.

Signature

```
public ID getId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

If this field contains a value, the object was successfully updated or inserted. If this field is empty, the operation was not successful for that object.

`isCreated()`

A Boolean value that is set to `true` if the record was created, `false` if the record was updated.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCreated()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isSuccess()`

Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the DML operation was successful for this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Datacloud Namespace

The `Datacloud` namespace provides classes and methods for retrieving information about duplicate rules. Duplicate rules let you control whether and when users can save duplicate records within Salesforce.

The following are the classes in the `Datacloud` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AdditionalInformationMap Class
Represents other information, if any, about matched records.

DuplicateResult Class
Represents the details of a duplicate rule that detected duplicate records and information about those duplicate records.

FieldDiff Class

Represents the name of a matching rule field and how the values of the field compare for the duplicate and its matching record.

FindDuplicates Class

Performs rule-based searches for duplicate records. The input is an array of sObjects. Each sObject represents a record you want to find duplicates of. The output identifies the detected duplicates for each input sObject based on active duplicate rules for the given object.

FindDuplicatesByIds Class

Performs rule-based searches for duplicate records. The input is an array of IDs. Each ID specifies records to search for duplicates among. The duplicates are detected based on the active duplicate rules applicable to the object type corresponding to the input IDs.

FindDuplicatesResult Class

Output for rule-based searches for duplicate records. `FindDuplicatesResult` contains results of detecting duplicates using instances of `FindDuplicates` or `FindDuplicatesByIds` classes.

MatchRecord Class

Represents a duplicate record detected by a matching rule.

MatchResult Class

Represents the duplicate results for a matching rule.

AdditionalInformationMap Class

Represents other information, if any, about matched records.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

AdditionalInformationMap Methods

AdditionalInformationMap Methods

The following are methods for `AdditionalInformationMap`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()

Returns the element name.

getValue()

Returns the value of the element.

`getName()`

Returns the element name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value of the element.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DuplicateResult Class

Represents the details of a duplicate rule that detected duplicate records and information about those duplicate records.

Namespace

Datacloud

Usage

The `DuplicateResult` class and its methods are available to organizations that use duplicate rules.

`DuplicateResult` is contained within `DuplicateError`, which is part of `SaveResult`. `SaveResult` is generated when a user attempts to save a record in Salesforce.

Example

This example shows a custom application that lets users add a contact. When a contact is saved, an alert displays if there are duplicate records.

The sample application consists of a Visualforce page and an Apex controller. The Visualforce page is listed first so that you can see how the page makes use of the Apex controller. Save the Apex class first before saving the Visualforce page.

```
<apex:page controller="ContactDedupeController">
    <apex:form >
        <apex:pageBlock title="Duplicate Records" rendered="{!hasDuplicateResult}">
            <apex:pageMessages />
            <apex:pageBlockTable value="{!duplicateRecords}" var="item">
                <apex:column >
                    <apex:facet name="header">Name</apex:facet>
                 <apex:outputLink value="/{!item['Id']}">{!item['Name']}</apex:outputLink>
```

```
                </apex:column>
                <apex:column >
                    <apex:facet name="header">Owner</apex:facet>
                    <apex:outputField value="{!item['OwnerId']}"/>
                </apex:column>
                <apex:column >
                    <apex:facet name="header">Last Modified Date</apex:facet>
                    <apex:outputField value="{!item['LastModifiedDate']}"/>
                </apex:column>
            </apex:pageBlockTable>
        </apex:pageBlock>

        <apex:pageBlock title="Contact" mode="edit">
            <apex:pageBlockButtons >
                <apex:commandButton value="Save" action="{!save}"/>
            </apex:pageBlockButtons>

            <apex:pageBlockSection >
                <apex:inputField value="{!Contact.FirstName}"/>
                <apex:inputField value="{!Contact.LastName}"/>
                <apex:inputField value="{!Contact.Email}"/>
                <apex:inputField value="{!Contact.Phone}"/>
                <apex:inputField value="{!Contact.AccountId}"/>
            </apex:pageBlockSection>
        </apex:pageBlock>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

This sample is the Apex controller for the page. This controller contains the action method for the Save button. The `save` method inserts the new contact. If errors are returned, this method iterates through each error, checks if it's a duplicate error, adds the error message to the page, and returns information about the duplicate records to be displayed on the page.

```
public class ContactDedupeController {

    // Initialize a variable to hold the contact record you're processing
    private final Contact contact;

    // Initialize a list to hold any duplicate records
    private List<sObject> duplicateRecords;

    // Define variable that's true if there are duplicate records
    public boolean hasDuplicateResult{get;set;}

    // Define the constructor
    public ContactDedupeController() {

        // Define the values for the contact you're processing based on its ID
        Id id = ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('id');
        this.contact = (id == null) ? new Contact() :
            [SELECT Id, FirstName, LastName, Email, Phone, AccountId
             FROM Contact WHERE Id = :id];

        // Initialize empty list of potential duplicate records
        this.duplicateRecords = new List<sObject>();
        this.hasDuplicateResult = false;
```

```
}

// Return contact and its values to the Visualforce page for display
public Contact getContact() {
    return this.contact;
}

// Return duplicate records to the Visualforce page for display
public List<sObject> getDuplicateRecords() {
    return this.duplicateRecords;
}

// Process the saved record and handle any duplicates
public PageReference save() {

    // Optionally, set DML options here, use "DML" instead of "false"
    //   in the insert()
    // Database.DMLOptions dml = new Database.DMLOptions();
    // dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.allowSave = true;
    // dml.DuplicateRuleHeader.runAsCurrentUser = true;
    Database.SaveResult saveResult = Database.insert(contact, false);

    if (!saveResult.isSuccess()) {
        for (Database.Error error : saveResult.getErrors()) {
            // If there are duplicates, an error occurs
            // Process only duplicates and not other errors
            //   (e.g., validation errors)
            if (error instanceof Database.DuplicateError) {
                // Handle the duplicate error by first casting it as a
                //   DuplicateError class
                // This lets you use methods of that class
                //  (e.g., getDuplicateResult())
                Database.DuplicateError duplicateError =
                        (Database.DuplicateError)error;
                Datacloud.DuplicateResult duplicateResult =
                        duplicateError.getDuplicateResult();

                // Display duplicate error message as defined in the duplicate rule
                ApexPages.Message errorMessage = new ApexPages.Message(
                        ApexPages.Severity.ERROR, 'Duplicate Error: ' +
                        duplicateResult.getErrorMessage());
                ApexPages.addMessage(errorMessage);

                // Get duplicate records
                this.duplicateRecords = new List<sObject>();

                // Return only match results of matching rules that
                //  find duplicate records
                Datacloud.MatchResult[] matchResults =
                        duplicateResult.getMatchResults();

                // Just grab first match result (which contains the
                //   duplicate record found and other match info)
                Datacloud.MatchResult matchResult = matchResults[0];
```

```
                    Datacloud.MatchRecord[] matchRecords = matchResult.getMatchRecords();


                    // Add matched record to the duplicate records variable
                    for (Datacloud.MatchRecord matchRecord : matchRecords) {
                        System.debug('MatchRecord: ' + matchRecord.getRecord());
                        this.duplicateRecords.add(matchRecord.getRecord());
                    }
                    this.hasDuplicateResult = !this.duplicateRecords.isEmpty();
                }
            }

            //If there's a duplicate record, stay on the page
            return null;
        }

        //  After save, navigate to the view page:
        return (new ApexPages.StandardController(contact)).view();
    }

}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DuplicateResult Methods

SEE ALSO:

SaveResult Class

DuplicateError Class

DuplicateResult Methods

The following are methods for `DuplicateResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDuplicateRule()

Returns the developer name of the executed duplicate rule that returned duplicate records.

getErrorMessage()

Returns the error message configured by the administrator to warn users they may be creating duplicate records. This message is associated with a duplicate rule.

getMatchResults()

Returns the duplicate records and match information.

isAllowSave()

Indicates whether the duplicate rule will allow a record that's identified as a duplicate to be saved. Set to `true` if duplicate rule should allow save; otherwise, `false`.

getDuplicateRule()

Returns the developer name of the executed duplicate rule that returned duplicate records.

Signature

```
public String getDuplicateRule()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getErrorMessage()

Returns the error message configured by the administrator to warn users they may be creating duplicate records. This message is associated with a duplicate rule.

Signature

```
public String getErrorMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

This example shows the code used to display the error message when duplicates are found while saving a new contact. This code is part of a custom application that lets users add a contact. When a contact is saved, an alert displays if there are duplicate records. Review DuplicateResult Class on page 1799 to check out the entire sample applicaton.

```
ApexPages.Message errorMessage = new ApexPages.Message(
                            ApexPages.Severity.ERROR, 'Duplicate Error: ' +
                            duplicateResult.getErrorMessage());
                    ApexPages.addMessage(errorMessage);
```

getMatchResults()

Returns the duplicate records and match information.

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.MatchResult> getMatchResults()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Datacloud.MatchResult>

Example

This example shows the code used to return duplicate record and match information and assign it to the `matchResults` variable. This code is part of a custom application that implements duplicate management when users add a contact. See DuplicateResult Class on page 1799 to check out the entire sample applicaton.

```
Datacloud.MatchResult[] matchResults =
                            duplicateResult.getMatchResults();
```

`isAllowSave()`

Indicates whether the duplicate rule will allow a record that's identified as a duplicate to be saved. Set to `true` if duplicate rule should allow save; otherwise, `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAllowSave()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

FieldDiff Class

Represents the name of a matching rule field and how the values of the field compare for the duplicate and its matching record.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

FieldDiff Methods

FieldDiff Methods

The following are methods for `FieldDiff`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDifference()
Returns how the field values compare for the duplicate and its matching record.

getName()
Returns the name of a field on a matching rule that detected duplicates.

`getDifference()`

Returns how the field values compare for the duplicate and its matching record.

Signature

```
public String getDifference()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Possible values include:

- `SAME`: Indicates the field values match exactly.
- `DIFFERENT`: Indicates that the field values do not match.
- `NULL`: Indicates that the field values are a match because both values are blank.

`getName()`

Returns the name of a field on a matching rule that detected duplicates.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

FindDuplicates Class

Performs rule-based searches for duplicate records. The input is an array of sObjects. Each sObject represents a record you want to find duplicates of. The output identifies the detected duplicates for each input sObject based on active duplicate rules for the given object.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

FindDuplicates Methods

FindDuplicates Methods

The following are methods for `FindDuplicates`.

IN THIS SECTION:

findDuplicates(sObjects)
Identifies duplicates for sObjects provided and returns a list of `FindDuplicatesResult` objects.

`findDuplicates(sObjects)`

Identifies duplicates for sObjects provided and returns a list of `FindDuplicatesResult` objects.

Usage

Use `FindDuplicates` to apply active duplicate rules associated with an object to records represented by input sObjects.

`FindDuplicates` uses the duplicate rules for the object that has the same type as the input sObjects.

Input

- All sObjects in the input array must be of the same object type, and that type must correspond to an object type that supports duplicate rules.
- The input array is limited to 50 elements. If you exceed this limit, an exception is thrown with the following message: `Configuration error: The number of records to check is greater than the permitted batch size.`

Output

- The output of `FindDuplicates` is an array of objects with the same number of elements as the input array, and in the same order. The output objects encapsulate record IDs for duplicate records. The output objects also contain values from the duplicate records.
- Each element contains an array of `DuplicateResult` objects. If `FindDuplicates` doesn't find any duplicates, the `duplicateRule` field in `DuplicateResult` contains the name of the duplicate rule that `FindDuplicates` applied, but the `matchResults` array is empty.

Example

```
Account acct = new Account();
acct.Name = 'Acme';
acct.BillingStreet = '123 Fake St';
acct.BillingCity = 'Springfield';
acct.BillingState = 'VT';
acct.BillingCountry = 'US';

List<Account> acctList = new List<Account>();
acctList.add(acct);

if (Datacloud.FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(acctList).size() == 0) {
// If the new account doesn't have duplicates, insert it.
    insert(acct);
}
```

Signature

```
public static List<Datacloud.FindDuplicatesResult> findDuplicates(List<SObject> sObjects)
```

Parameters

sObjects

Type: List<SObject>

An array of sObjects for which you want to find duplicates.

Return Value

Type: List<FindDuplicatesResult>

FindDuplicatesByIds Class

Performs rule-based searches for duplicate records. The input is an array of IDs. Each ID specifies records to search for duplicates among. The duplicates are detected based on the active duplicate rules applicable to the object type corresponding to the input IDs.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

FindDuplicatesByIds Methods

FindDuplicatesByIds Methods

The following are methods for `FindDuplicatesByIds`.

IN THIS SECTION:

findDuplicatesByIds(ids)
Identifies duplicates of sObjects provided and returns a list of `FindDuplicatesResult` objects.

`findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`

Identifies duplicates of sObjects provided and returns a list of `FindDuplicatesResult` objects.

Usage

Use `FindDuplicatesByIds` to apply active duplicate rules associated with an object to records represented by the record IDs.

`FindDuplicatesByIds` uses the duplicate rules for the object that has the same type as the input record IDs. For example, if the record ID represents an Account, `FindDuplicatesByIds` uses the duplicate rules associated with the Account object.

Input

- All record IDs in the input array must be of the same object type, and that type must correspond to an object type that supports duplicate rules.
- The input array is limited to 50 elements. If you exceed this limit, an exception is thrown with the following message: `Configuration error: The number of records to check is greater than the permitted batch size.`

Output

- The output of `FindDuplicatesByIds` is an array of objects with the same number of elements as the input array, and in the same order. The output objects encapsulate record IDs for duplicate records. The output objects also contain values from the duplicate records.
- Each element contains an array of `DuplicateResult` objects. If `FindDuplicatesByIds` doesn't find any duplicates, the `duplicateRule` field in `DuplicateResult` contains the name of the duplicate rule that `FindDuplicatesByIds` applied, but the `matchResults` array is empty.

Example

```
Account acct = new Account(name='Salesforce');
insert acct;

List<Id> idList = new List<Id>();
idList.add(acct.id);

if (Datacloud.FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(idList).size() > 0) {
System.debug('Found duplicates');
}
```

Signature

```
public static List<Datacloud.FindDuplicatesResult> findDuplicatesByIds(List<Id> ids)
```

Parameters

ids

Type: ListID>

A list of IDs for which you want to find duplicates.

Return Value

Type: List<FindDuplicatesResult>

FindDuplicatesResult Class

Output for rule-based searches for duplicate records. `FindDuplicatesResult` contains results of detecting duplicates using instances of `FindDuplicates` or `FindDuplicatesByIds` classes.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

FindDuplicatesResult Properties

FindDuplicatesResult Methods

FindDuplicatesResult Properties

The following are properties for `FindDuplicatesResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

duplicateresults

A list of `DuplicateResult` objects representing the results of calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`. Elements in the list correspond to sObjects or IDs in the input list.

errors

A list of `Database.Error` objects holding errors resulting from calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`.

success

Boolean signifying whether the call to `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)` was successful.

duplicateresults

A list of `DuplicateResult` objects representing the results of calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`. Elements in the list correspond to sObjects or IDs in the input list.

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.DuplicateResult> duplicateresults
```

Property Value

Type: List<DuplicateResult>

errors

A list of `Database.Error` objects holding errors resulting from calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> errors {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

success

Boolean signifying whether the call to `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)` was successful.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

FindDuplicatesResult Methods

The following are methods for `FindDuplicatesResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDuplicateResults()
Returns a list of `DuplicateResult` objects representing the results of calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`. Elements in the list correspond to sObjects or IDs in the input list.

getErrors()
Returns a list of `DatabaseError` objects containing errors resulting from calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`, if errors were encountered.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean signifying whether the call to `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)` was successful.

getDuplicateResults()

Returns a list of `DuplicateResult` objects representing the results of calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`. Elements in the list correspond to sObjects or IDs in the input list.

Example

```
Account acct = new Account(name='Salesforce');
List<Account> acctList = new List<Account>();
acctList.add(acct);

Datacloud.FindDuplicatesResult[] results = Datacloud.FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(acctList);
for (Datacloud.FindDuplicatesResult findDupeResult : results) {
  for (Datacloud.DuplicateResult dupeResult : findDupeResult.getDuplicateResults()) {
    for (Datacloud.MatchResult matchResult : dupeResult.getMatchResults()) {
      for (Datacloud.MatchRecord matchRecord : matchResult.getMatchRecords()) {
          System.debug('Duplicate Record: ' + matchRecord.getRecord());
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.DuplicateResult> getDuplicateResults()
```

Return Value

Type: List<DuplicateResult>

getErrors()

Returns a list of `DatabaseError` objects containing errors resulting from calling `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)`, if errors were encountered.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

`isSuccess()`

Returns a Boolean signifying whether the call to `FindDuplicates.findDuplicates(sObjects)` or `FindDuplicatesByIds.findDuplicatesByIds(ids)` was successful.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

MatchRecord Class

Represents a duplicate record detected by a matching rule.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

MatchRecord Methods

MatchRecord Methods

The following are methods for `MatchRecord`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAdditionalInformation()
Returns other information about a matched record. For example, a `matchGrade` represents the quality of the data for the D&B fields in the matched record.

getFieldDiffs()
Returns all matching rule fields and how each field value compares for the duplicate and its matching record.

getMatchConfidence()
Returns the ranking of how similar a matched record's data is to the data in your request. Must be equal to or greater than the value of the `minMatchConfidence` specified in your request. Returns -1 if unused.

getRecord()
Returns the fields and field values for the duplicate.

getAdditionalInformation()

Returns other information about a matched record. For example, a `matchGrade` represents the quality of the data for the D&B fields in the matched record.

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.AdditionalInformationMap> getAdditionalInformation()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Datacloud.AdditionalInformationMap>

getFieldDiffs()

Returns all matching rule fields and how each field value compares for the duplicate and its matching record.

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.FieldDiff> getFieldDiffs()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Datacloud.FieldDiff>

getMatchConfidence()

Returns the ranking of how similar a matched record's data is to the data in your request. Must be equal to or greater than the value of the `minMatchConfidence` specified in your request. Returns -1 if unused.

Signature

```
public Double getMatchConfidence()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

getRecord()

Returns the fields and field values for the duplicate.

Signature

```
public SObject getRecord()
```

Return Value

Type: SObject

MatchResult Class

Represents the duplicate results for a matching rule.

Namespace

Datacloud

IN THIS SECTION:

MatchResult Methods

MatchResult Methods

The following are methods for `MatchResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEntityType()
Returns the entity type of the matching rule.

getErrors()
Returns errors that occurred during matching for the matching rule.

getMatchEngine()
Returns the match engine for the matching rule.

getMatchRecords()
Returns information about the duplicates for the matching rule.

getRule()
Returns the developer name of the matching rule.

getSize()
Returns the number of duplicates detected by the matching rule.

isSuccess()
Returns `false` if there's an error with the matching rule, and `true` if the matching rule successfully ran.

`getEntityType()`

Returns the entity type of the matching rule.

Signature

```
public String getEntityType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getErrors()`

Returns errors that occurred during matching for the matching rule.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

`getMatchEngine()`

Returns the match engine for the matching rule.

Signature

```
public String getMatchEngine()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getMatchRecords()`

Returns information about the duplicates for the matching rule.

Signature

```
public List<Datacloud.MatchRecord> getMatchRecords()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Datacloud.MatchRecord>

`getRule()`

Returns the developer name of the matching rule.

Signature

```
public String getRule()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSize()`

Returns the number of duplicates detected by the matching rule.

Signature

```
public Integer getSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`isSuccess()`

Returns `false` if there's an error with the matching rule, and `true` if the matching rule successfully ran.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DataSource Namespace

The `DataSource` namespace provides the classes for the Apex Connector Framework. Use the Apex Connector Framework to develop a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect. Then connect your Salesforce organization to any data anywhere via the Salesforce Connect custom adapter.

The following are the classes in the `DataSource` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncDeleteCallback Class

A callback class that the `Database.deleteAsync` method references. Salesforce calls this class after the remote `deleteAsync` operation is completed. This class provides the compensating transaction in the completion context of the delete operation. Extend this class to define the actions to execute after the remote delete operation finishes execution.

AsyncSaveCallback Class

A callback class that the `Database.insertAsync` or `Database.updateAsync` method references. Salesforce calls this class after the remote operation is completed. This class provides the compensating transaction in the completion context of the insert or update operation. Extend this class to define the actions to execute after the remote insert or update operation finishes execution.

AuthenticationCapability Enum

Specifies the types of authentication that can be used to access the external system.

AuthenticationProtocol Enum

Determines what type of credentials are used to authenticate to the external system.

Capability Enum

Declares which functional operations the external system supports. Also specifies required endpoint settings for the external data source definition.

Column Class

Describes a column on a `DataSource.Table`. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

ColumnSelection Class

Identifies the list of columns to return during a query or search.

Connection Class

Extend this class to enable your Salesforce org to sync the external system's schema and to handle queries, searches, and write operations (upsert and delete) of the external data. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

ConnectionParams Class

Contains the credentials for authenticating to the external system.

DataSourceUtil Class

Parent class for the `DataSource.Provider`, `DataSource.Connection`, `DataSource.Table`, and `DataSource.Column` classes.

DataType Enum

Specifies the data types that are supported by the Apex Connector Framework.

DeleteContext Class

An instance of `DeleteContext` is passed to the `deleteRows()` method on your `Database.Connection` class. The class provides context information about the delete request to the implementor of `deleteRows()`.

DeleteResult Class

Represents the result of a delete operation on an sObject record. The result is returned by the `DataSource.deleteRows` method of the `DataSource.Connection` class.

Filter Class

Represents a `WHERE` clause in a SOSL or SOQL query.

FilterType Enum

Referenced by the `type` property on a `DataSource.Filter`.

IdentityType Enum

Determines which set of credentials is used to authenticate to the external system.

Order Class

Contains details about how to sort the rows in the result set. Equivalent to an `ORDER BY` statement in a SOQL query.

OrderDirection Enum

Specifies the direction for sorting rows based on column values.

Provider Class

Extend this base class to create a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect. The class informs Salesforce of the functional and authentication capabilities that are supported by or required to connect to the external system. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

QueryAggregation Enum

Specifies how to aggregate a column in a query.

QueryContext Class

An instance of `QueryContext` is provided to the `query` method on your `DataSource.Connection` class. The instance corresponds to a SOQL request.

QueryUtils Class

Contains helper methods to locally filter, sort, and apply limit and offset clauses to data rows. This helper class is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

ReadContext Class

Abstract base class for the `QueryContext` and `SearchContext` classes.

SearchContext Class

An instance of `SearchContext` is provided to the search method on your `DataSource.Connection` class. The instance corresponds to a search or SOSL request.

SearchUtils Class

Helper class for implementing search on a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect.

Table Class

Describes a table on an external system that the Salesforce Connect custom adapter connects to. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

TableResult Class

Contains the results of a search or query.

TableSelection Class

Contains a breakdown of the SOQL or SOSL query. Its properties represent the FROM, ORDER BY, SELECT, and WHERE clauses in the query.

UpsertContext Class

An instance of `UpsertContext` is passed to the `upsertRows()` method on your `Datasource.Connection` class. This class provides context information about the upsert request to the implementor of `upsertRows()`.

UpsertResult Class

Represents the result of an upsert operation on an external object record. The result is returned by the `upsertRows` method of the `DataSource.Connection` class.

DataSource Exceptions

The `DataSource` namespace contains exception classes.

AsyncDeleteCallback Class

A callback class that the `Database.deleteAsync` method references. Salesforce calls this class after the remote `deleteAsync` operation is completed. This class provides the compensating transaction in the completion context of the delete operation. Extend this class to define the actions to execute after the remote delete operation finishes execution.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncDeleteCallback Methods

AsyncDeleteCallback Methods

The following are methods for `AsyncDeleteCallback`.

IN THIS SECTION:

processDelete(deleteResult)

Override this method to define actions that Salesforce executes after a remote `Database.deleteAsync` operation is completed. For example, based on the results of the remote operation, you can update custom object data or other data that's stored in the Salesforce org..

`processDelete(deleteResult)`

Override this method to define actions that Salesforce executes after a remote `Database.deleteAsync` operation is completed. For example, based on the results of the remote operation, you can update custom object data or other data that's stored in the Salesforce org..

Signature

```
public void processDelete(Database.DeleteResult deleteResult)
```

Parameters

`deleteResult`
Type: Database.DeleteResult

The result of the asynchronous delete operation.

Return Value

Type: void

AsyncSaveCallback Class

A callback class that the `Database.insertAsync` or `Database.updateAsync` method references. Salesforce calls this class after the remote operation is completed. This class provides the compensating transaction in the completion context of the insert or update operation. Extend this class to define the actions to execute after the remote insert or update operation finishes execution.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncSaveCallback Methods

AsyncSaveCallback Methods

The following are methods for `AsyncSaveCallback`.

IN THIS SECTION:

processSave(saveResult)
Override this method to define actions that Salesforce executes after the remote `Database.insertAsync` or `Database.updateAsync` operation is completed. For example, based on the results of the remote operation, you can update custom object data or other data that's stored in the Salesforce org.

`processSave(saveResult)`

Override this method to define actions that Salesforce executes after the remote `Database.insertAsync` or `Database.updateAsync` operation is completed. For example, based on the results of the remote operation, you can update custom object data or other data that's stored in the Salesforce org.

Signature

```
public void processSave(Database.SaveResult saveResult)
```

Parameters

saveResult
Type: Database.SaveResult

The result of the asynchronous insert or update operation.

Return Value

Type: void

AuthenticationCapability Enum

Specifies the types of authentication that can be used to access the external system.

Usage

The `DataSource.Provider` class returns `DataSource.AuthenticationCapability` enum values. The returned values determine which authentication settings are available on the external data source definition in Salesforce.

If you set up callouts in your `DataSource.Connection` class, you can specify the callout endpoints as named credentials instead of URLs. If you do so for all callouts, return `ANONYMOUS` as the sole entry in the list of data source authentication capabilities. That way, the external data source definition doesn't require authentication settings. Salesforce manages all authentication for Apex callouts that specify a named credential as the callout endpoint so that your code doesn't have to.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.AuthenticationCapability` enum.

Value	Description
`ANONYMOUS`	No credentials are required to authenticate to the external system.
`BASIC`	A username and password can be used to authenticate to the external system.
`CERTIFICATE`	A security certificate can be supplied when establishing each connection to the external system.
`OAUTH`	OAuth can be used to authenticate to the external system.

AuthenticationProtocol Enum

Determines what type of credentials are used to authenticate to the external system.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.AuthenticationProtocol` enum.

Value	Description
NONE	No credentials are used to authenticate to the external system.
OAUTH	OAuth 2.0 is used to authenticate to the external system.
PASSWORD	A username and password are used to authenticate to the external system.

Capability Enum

Declares which functional operations the external system supports. Also specifies required endpoint settings for the external data source definition.

Usage

The `DataSource.Provider` class returns `DataSource.Capability` enum values, which:

- Specify the functional capabilities of the external system.
- Determine which endpoint settings are available on the external data source definition in Salesforce.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.Capability` enum.

Value	Description
QUERY_PAGINATION_SERVER_DRIVEN	With server-driven paging, the external system determines the page sizes and batch boundaries. The external system's paging settings can optimize the external system's performance and improve the load times for external objects in your org. Also, the external data set can change while your users or the Lightning Platform are paging through the result set. Typically, server-driven paging adjusts batch boundaries to accommodate changing data sets more effectively than client-driven paging. If you enable server-driven paging on an external data source, Salesforce ignores the requested page sizes, including the default `queryMore()` batch size of 500 rows. The pages returned by the external system determine the batches, but each page can't exceed 2,000 rows. Also, the Apex code must generate a query token and use it to determine and fetch the next batch of results.
QUERY_TOTAL_SIZE	The external system can provide the total number of rows that meet the query criteria, even when requested to return a smaller batch size. This capability enables you to simplify how you paginate results by using `queryMore()`.
REQUIRE_ENDPOINT	Requires the administrator to specify the endpoint in the URL field in the external data source definition.
REQUIRE_HTTPS	Requires the endpoint URL to use secure HTTP. If `REQUIRE_ENDPOINT` isn't declared, `REQUIRE_HTTPS` is ignored.
ROW_CREATE	Allows creating of external data.
ROW_DELETE	Allows deleting external data.

Value	Description
`ROW_QUERY`	Allows API and SOQL queries of the external data. Also allows reports on the external objects.
`ROW_UPDATE`	Allows updating external data.
`SEARCH`	Allows SOSL and Salesforce searches of the external data. When the custom adapter declares the `SEARCH` capability, you can control which external objects are searchable by selecting or deselecting **Allow Search** on each external object. However, syncing always overwrites the external object's search status to match the search status of the external data source. Only text, text area, and long text area fields on external objects can be searched. If an external object has no searchable fields, searches on that object return no records.

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Help: Validate and Sync an External Data Source

Column Class

Describes a column on a `DataSource.Table`. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

A list of column metadata is provided by the `DataSource.Connection` class when the `sync()` method is invoked. Each column can become a field on an external object.

The metadata is stored in Salesforce. Updating the Apex code to return new or updated values for the column metadata doesn't automatically update the stored metadata in Salesforce.

IN THIS SECTION:

Column Properties

Column Methods

Column Properties

The following are properties for `Column`.

IN THIS SECTION:

decimalPlaces

If the data type is numeric, the number of decimal places to the right of the decimal point.

description
Description of what the column represents.

filterable
Whether a result set can be filtered based on the values of the column.

label
User-friendly name for the column that appears in the Salesforce user interface.

length
If the column is a string data type, the number of characters in the column. If the column is a numeric data type, the total number of digits on both sides of the decimal point, but excluding the decimal point.

name
Name of the column in the external system.

referenceTargetField
API name of the custom field on the parent object whose values are compared against this column's values. Matching values identify related records in an indirect lookup relationship. Applies only when the column's data type is `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`. For other data types, this value is ignored.

referenceTo
API name of the parent object in the relationship that's represented by this column. Applies only when the column's data type is `LOOKUP_TYPE`, `EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE`, or `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`. For other data types, this value is ignored.

sortable
Whether a result set can be sorted based on the values of the column via an `ORDER BY` clause.

type
Data type of the column.

decimalPlaces

If the data type is numeric, the number of decimal places to the right of the decimal point.

Signature

```
public Integer decimalPlaces {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

description

Description of what the column represents.

Signature

```
public String description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`filterable`

Whether a result set can be filtered based on the values of the column.

Signature

```
public Boolean filterable {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`label`

User-friendly name for the column that appears in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String label {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`length`

If the column is a string data type, the number of characters in the column. If the column is a numeric data type, the total number of digits on both sides of the decimal point, but excluding the decimal point.

Signature

```
public Integer length {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`name`

Name of the column in the external system.

Signature

```
public String name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`referenceTargetField`

API name of the custom field on the parent object whose values are compared against this column's values. Matching values identify related records in an indirect lookup relationship. Applies only when the column's data type is `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`. For other data types, this value is ignored.

Signature

```
public String referenceTargetField {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`referenceTo`

API name of the parent object in the relationship that's represented by this column. Applies only when the column's data type is `LOOKUP_TYPE`, `EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE`, or `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`. For other data types, this value is ignored.

Signature

```
public String referenceTo {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`sortable`

Whether a result set can be sorted based on the values of the column via an `ORDER BY` clause.

Signature

```
public Boolean sortable {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`type`

Data type of the column.

Signature

```
public DataSource.DataType type {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.DataType

Column Methods

The following are methods for `Column`.

IN THIS SECTION:

boolean(name)
Returns a new column of data type `BOOLEAN_TYPE`.

externalLookup(name, domain)
Returns a new column of data type `EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE`.

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length, decimalPlaces, referenceTo, referenceTargetField)
Returns a new column with the ten specified `Column` property values.

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length, decimalPlaces)
Returns a new column with the eight specified `Column` property values.

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length)
Returns a new column with the seven specified `Column` property values.

indirectLookup(name, domain, targetField)
Returns a new column of data type `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`.

integer(name, length)
Returns a new numeric column with no decimal places using the specified name and length.

lookup(name, domain)
Returns a new column of data type `LOOKUP_TYPE`.

number(name, length, decimalPlaces)
Returns a new column of data type `NUMBER_TYPE`.

text(name, label, length)
Returns a new column of data type `STRING_SHORT_TYPE` or `STRING_LONG_TYPE`, with the specified name, label, and length.

text(name, length)
Returns a new column of data type `STRING_SHORT_TYPE` or `STRING_LONG_TYPE`, with the specified name and length.

text(name)
Returns a new column of data type `STRING_SHORT_TYPE` with the specified name and the length of 255 characters.

textarea(name)
Returns a new column of data type `STRING_LONG_TYPE` with the specified name and the length of 32,000 characters.

url(name, length)
Returns a new column of data type `URL_TYPE` with the specified name and length.

url(name)
Returns a new column of data type `URL_TYPE` with the specified name and the length of 1,000 characters.

boolean(name)

Returns a new column of data type `BOOLEAN_TYPE`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column boolean(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

externalLookup(name, domain)

Returns a new column of data type `EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column externalLookup(String name, String domain)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

domain
Type: String

API name of the parent object in the external lookup relationship.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE
length	255

Property	Value
decimalPlaces	0
referenceTo	*domain*
referenceTargetField	null

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length, decimalPlaces, referenceTo, referenceTargetField)

Returns a new column with the ten specified `Column` property values.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column get(String name, String label, String description,
Boolean isSortable, Boolean isFilterable, DataSource.DataType type, Integer length,
Integer decimalPlaces, String referenceTo, String referenceTargetField)
```

Parameters

See Column Properties on page 1821 for information about each parameter.

name
Type: String

label
Type: String

description
Type: String

isSortable
Type: Boolean

isFilterable
Type: Boolean

type
Type: DataSource.DataType

length
Type: Integer

decimalPlaces
Type: Integer

referenceTo
Type: String

referenceTargetField
Type: String

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length, decimalPlaces)

Returns a new column with the eight specified `Column` property values.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column get(String name, String label, String description,
Boolean isSortable, Boolean isFilterable, DataSource.DataType type, Integer length,
Integer decimalPlaces)
```

Parameters

See Column Properties on page 1821 for information about each parameter.

name
Type: String

label
Type: String

description
Type: String

isSortable
Type: Boolean

isFilterable
Type: Boolean

type
Type: DataSource.DataType

length
Type: Integer

decimalPlaces
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

get(name, label, description, isSortable, isFilterable, type, length)

Returns a new column with the seven specified `Column` property values.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column get(String name, String label, String description,
Boolean isSortable, Boolean isFilterable, DataSource.DataType type, Integer length)
```

Parameters

See Column Properties on page 1821 for information about each parameter.

name
Type: String

label
Type: String

description
Type: String

isSortable
Type: Boolean

isFilterable
Type: Boolean

type
Type: DataSource.DataType

length
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

indirectLookup(name, domain, targetField)

Returns a new column of data type `INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column indirectLookup(String name, String domain, String targetField)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

domain
Type: String

API name of the parent object in the indirect lookup relationship.

targetField
Type: String

API name of the custom field on the parent object whose values are compared against this column's values. Matching values identify related records in an indirect lookup relationship.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE
length	255
decimalPlaces	0
referenceTo	*domain*
referenceTargetField	*targetField*

integer(name, length)

Returns a new numeric column with no decimal places using the specified name and length.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column integer(String name, Integer length)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

The column name.

length
Type: Integer

The column length.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

lookup(name, domain)

Returns a new column of data type `LOOKUP_TYPE`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column lookup(String name, String domain)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

domain
Type: String

API name of the parent object in the lookup relationship.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.LOOKUP_TYPE
length	255
decimalPlaces	0
referenceTo	*domain*
referenceTargetField	null

number(name, length, decimalPlaces)

Returns a new column of data type `NUMBER_TYPE`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column number(String name, Integer length, Integer
decimalPlaces)
```

Parameters

See Column Properties on page 1821 for information about each parameter.

name
Type: String

length
Type: Integer

decimalPlaces
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.NUMBER_TYPE
length	*length*
decimalPlaces	*decimalPlaces*

text(name, label, length)

Returns a new column of data type `STRING_SHORT_TYPE` or `STRING_LONG_TYPE`, with the specified name, label, and length.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column text(String name, String label, Integer length)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

label
Type: String

User-friendly name for the column that appears in the Salesforce user interface.

length
Type: Integer

Number of characters allowed in the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*label*
description	*label*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.STRING_SHORT_TYPE if *length* is 255 or less DataSource.DataType.STRING_LONG_TYPE if *length* is greater than 255
length	*length*
decimalPlaces	0

`text(name, length)`

Returns a new column of data type `STRING_SHORT_TYPE` or `STRING_LONG_TYPE`, with the specified name and length.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column text(String name, Integer length)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String
Name of the column.

length
Type: Integer
Number of characters allowed in the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true

Property	Value
type	DataSource.DataType.STRING_SHORT_TYPE if *length* is 255 or less DataSource.DataType.STRING_LONG_TYPE if *length* is greater than 255
length	*length*
decimalPlaces	0

text(name)

Returns a new column of data type STRING_SHORT_TYPE with the specified name and the length of 255 characters.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column text(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String
Name of the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.STRING_SHORT_TYPE
length	255
decimalPlaces	0

textarea(name)

Returns a new column of data type STRING_LONG_TYPE with the specified name and the length of 32,000 characters.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column textarea(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.STRING_LONG_TYPE
length	32000
decimalPlaces	0

`url(name, length)`

Returns a new column of data type `URL_TYPE` with the specified name and length.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column url(String name, Integer length)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

length
Type: Integer

Number of characters allowed in the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.URL_TYPE
length	*length*
decimalPlaces	0

`url(name)`

Returns a new column of data type `URL_TYPE` with the specified name and the length of 1,000 characters.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Column url(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the column.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Column

The returned column has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
label	*name*
description	*name*
isSortable	true
isFilterable	true
type	DataSource.DataType.URL_TYPE

Property	Value
length	1000
decimalPlaces	0

ColumnSelection Class

Identifies the list of columns to return during a query or search.

Namespace

DataSource Namespace

Usage

This class is associated with the `SELECT` clause for a SOQL query, or the `RETURNING` clause for a SOSL query.

IN THIS SECTION:

ColumnSelection Properties

ColumnSelection Properties

The following are properties for `ColumnSelection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

aggregation
How to aggregate the column's data.

columnName
Name of the selected column.

tableName
Name of the column's table.

`aggregation`

How to aggregate the column's data.

Signature

```
public DataSource.QueryAggregation aggregation {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.QueryAggregation

columnName

Name of the selected column.

Signature

```
public String columnName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

tableName

Name of the column's table.

Signature

```
public String tableName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Connection Class

Extend this class to enable your Salesforce org to sync the external system's schema and to handle queries, searches, and write operations (upsert and delete) of the external data. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

Your `DataSource.Connection` and `DataSource.Provider` classes compose a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect.

Changing the `sync` method on the `DataSource.Connection` class doesn't automatically resync any external objects.

Example

```
global class SampleDataSourceConnection extends DataSource.Connection {
    global SampleDataSourceConnection(DataSource.ConnectionParams connectionParams) {
    }

    override global List<DataSource.Table> sync() {
        List<DataSource.Table> tables = new List<DataSource.Table>();
        List<DataSource.Column> columns;
        columns = new List<DataSource.Column>();
        columns.add(DataSource.Column.text('Name', 255));
        columns.add(DataSource.Column.text('ExternalId', 255));
```

```
        columns.add(DataSource.Column.url('DisplayUrl'));
        tables.add(DataSource.Table.get('Sample', 'Title', columns));
        return tables;
    }

    override global DataSource.TableResult query(DataSource.QueryContext c) {
       return DataSource.TableResult.get(c, DataSource.QueryUtils.process(c, getRows()));

    }

    override global List<DataSource.TableResult> search(DataSource.SearchContext c) {

        List<DataSource.TableResult> results = new List<DataSource.TableResult>();
        for (DataSource.TableSelection tableSelection : c.tableSelections) {
            results.add(DataSource.TableResult.get(tableSelection, getRows()));
        }
        return results;
    }

    // Helper method to get record values from the external system for the Sample table.
    private List<Map<String, Object>> getRows () {
       // Get row field values for the Sample table from the external system via a callout.

        HttpResponse response = makeGetCallout();
        // Parse the JSON response and populate the rows.
        Map<String, Object> m = (Map<String, Object>)JSON.deserializeUntyped(
                response.getBody());
        Map<String, Object> error = (Map<String, Object>)m.get('error');
        if (error != null) {
            throwException(string.valueOf(error.get('message')));
        }
        List<Map<String,Object>> rows = new List<Map<String,Object>>();
        List<Object> jsonRows = (List<Object>)m.get('value');
        if (jsonRows == null) {
            rows.add(foundRow(m));
        } else {
            for (Object jsonRow : jsonRows) {
                Map<String,Object> row = (Map<String,Object>)jsonRow;
                rows.add(foundRow(row));
            }
        }
        return rows;
    }

    global override List<DataSource.UpsertResult> upsertRows(DataSource.UpsertContext
            context) {
       if (context.tableSelected == 'Sample') {
           List<DataSource.UpsertResult> results = new List<DataSource.UpsertResult>();
           List<Map<String, Object>> rows = context.rows;

           for (Map<String, Object> row : rows){
              // Make a callout to insert or update records in the external system.
              HttpResponse response;
              // Determine whether to insert or update a record.
```

```
            if (row.get('ExternalId') == null){
               // Send a POST HTTP request to insert new external record.
               // Make an Apex callout and get HttpResponse.
               response = makePostCallout(
                   '{"name":"' + row.get('Name') + '","ExternalId":"' +
                   row.get('ExternalId') + '"');
            }
            else {
               // Send a PUT HTTP request to update an existing external record.
               // Make an Apex callout and get HttpResponse.
               response = makePutCallout(
                   '{"name":"' + row.get('Name') + '","ExternalId":"' +
                   row.get('ExternalId') + '"',
                   String.valueOf(row.get('ExternalId')));
            }

            // Check the returned response.
            // First, deserialize it.
            Map<String, Object> m = (Map<String, Object>)JSON.deserializeUntyped(
                    response.getBody());
            if (response.getStatusCode() == 200){
                results.add(DataSource.UpsertResult.success(
                        String.valueOf(m.get('id'))));
            }
            else {
               results.add(DataSource.UpsertResult.failure(
                               String.valueOf(m.get('id')),
                   'The callout resulted in an error: ' +
                   response.getStatusCode()));
            }
        }
        return results;
    }
    return null;
}

global override List<DataSource.DeleteResult> deleteRows(DataSource.DeleteContext
        context) {
    if (context.tableSelected == 'Sample'){
        List<DataSource.DeleteResult> results = new List<DataSource.DeleteResult>();
        for (String externalId : context.externalIds){
           HttpResponse response = makeDeleteCallout(externalId);
           if (response.getStatusCode() == 200){
              results.add(DataSource.DeleteResult.success(externalId));
           }
           else {
              results.add(DataSource.DeleteResult.failure(externalId,
                          'Callout delete error:'
                          + response.getBody()));
           }
        }
        return results;
    }
    return null;
```

```
    }

    // Helper methods

    // Make a GET callout
    private static HttpResponse makeGetCallout() {
        HttpResponse response;
        // Make callout
        // ...
        return response;
    }

    // Populate a row based on values from the external system.
    private Map<String,Object> foundRow(Map<String,Object> foundRow) {
       Map<String,Object> row = new Map<String,Object>();
       row.put('ExternalId', string.valueOf(foundRow.get('Id')));
       row.put('DisplayUrl', string.valueOf(foundRow.get('DisplayUrl')));
       row.put('Name', string.valueOf(foundRow.get('Name')));
       return row;
    }

    // Make a POST callout
    private static HttpResponse makePostCallout(String jsonBody) {
        HttpResponse response;
        // Make callout
        // ...
        return response;
    }

    // Make a PUT callout
    private static HttpResponse makePutCallout(String jsonBody, String externalID) {
        HttpResponse response;
        // Make callout
        // ...
        return response;
    }

    // Make a DELETE callout
    private static HttpResponse makeDeleteCallout(String externalID) {
        HttpResponse response;
        // Make callout
        // ...
        return response;
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Connection Methods

Connection Methods

The following are methods for `Connection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

deleteRows(deleteContext)
Invoked when external object records are deleted via the Salesforce user interface, APIs, or Apex.

query(queryContext)
Invoked by a SOQL query of an external object. A SOQL query is generated and executed when a user visits an external object's list view or record detail page in Salesforce. Returns the results of the query.

search(searchContext)
Invoked by a SOSL query of an external object or when a user performs a Salesforce global search that also searches external objects. Returns the results of the query.

sync()
Invoked when an administrator clicks **Validate and Sync** on the external data source detail page. Returns a list of tables that describe the external system's schema.

upsertRows(upsertContext)
Invoked when external object records are created or updated via the Salesforce user interface, APIs, or Apex.

deleteRows(deleteContext)

Invoked when external object records are deleted via the Salesforce user interface, APIs, or Apex.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.DeleteResult> deleteRows(DataSource.DeleteContext deleteContext)
```

Parameters

deleteContext
Type: DataSource.DeleteContext

Contains context information about the delete request.

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.DeleteResult>

The results of the delete operation.

query(queryContext)

Invoked by a SOQL query of an external object. A SOQL query is generated and executed when a user visits an external object's list view or record detail page in Salesforce. Returns the results of the query.

Signature

```
public DataSource.TableResult query(DataSource.QueryContext queryContext)
```

Parameters

queryContext
Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

search(searchContext)

Invoked by a SOSL query of an external object or when a user performs a Salesforce global search that also searches external objects. Returns the results of the query.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.TableResult> search(DataSource.SearchContext searchContext)
```

Parameters

searchContext
Type: DataSource.SearchContext

Represents the query to run against an external data table.

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.TableResult>

sync()

Invoked when an administrator clicks **Validate and Sync** on the external data source detail page. Returns a list of tables that describe the external system's schema.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Table> sync()
```

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.Table>

Each returned table can be used to create an external object in Salesforce. On the Validate External Data Source page, the administrator views the list of returned tables and selects which tables to sync. When the administrator clicks **Sync**, an external object is created for each selected table. Each column within the selected tables also becomes a field in the external object.

upsertRows(upsertContext)

Invoked when external object records are created or updated via the Salesforce user interface, APIs, or Apex.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.UpsertResult> upsertRows(DataSource.UpsertContext upsertContext)
```

Parameters

upsertContext
Type: DataSource.UpsertContext

Contains context information about the upsert request.

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.UpsertResult>

The results of the upsert operation.

ConnectionParams Class

Contains the credentials for authenticating to the external system.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

If your extension of the `DataSource.Provider` class returns `DataSource.AuthenticationCapability` values that indicate support for authentication, the `DataSource.Connection` class is instantiated with a `DataSource.ConnectionParams` instance in the constructor.

The authentication credentials in the `DataSource.ConnectionParams` instance depend on the `Identity Type` field of the external data source definition in Salesforce.

- If `Identity Type` is set to `Named Principal`, the credentials come from the external data source definition.
- If `Identity Type` is set to `Per User`:
  - For queries and searches, the credentials are specific to the current user who invokes the query or search. The credentials come from the user's authentication settings for the external system.
  - For administrative connections, such as syncing the external system's schema, the credentials come from the external data source definition.

The values in this class can appear in debug logs and can be accessed by users who have the "Author Apex" permission. If you require better security, we recommend that you specify named credentials instead of URLs as your Apex callout endpoints. Salesforce manages all authentication for Apex callouts that specify a named credential as the callout endpoint so that your code doesn't have to.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectionParams Properties

ConnectionParams Properties

The following are properties for `ConnectionParams`.

IN THIS SECTION:

certificateName
The name of the certificate for establishing each connection to the external system.

endpoint
The URL of the external system.

oauthToken
The OAuth token that's issued by the external system.

password
The password for authenticating to the external system.

principalType
An instance of DataSource.IdentityType, which determines which set of credentials to use to access the external system.

protocol
The type of protocol that's used to authenticate to the external system.

repository
Reserved for future use.

username
The username for authenticating to the external system.

certificateName

The name of the certificate for establishing each connection to the external system.

Signature

```
public String certificateName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The value comes from the external data source definition in Salesforce.

endpoint

The URL of the external system.

Signature

```
public String endpoint {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The value comes from the external data source definition in Salesforce.

oauthToken

The OAuth token that's issued by the external system.

Signature

```
public String oauthToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

password

The password for authenticating to the external system.

Signature

```
public String password {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The value depends on the `Identity Type` field of the external data source definition in Salesforce.

- If `Identity Type` is set to `Named Principal`, the credentials come from the external data source definition.
- If `Identity Type` is set to `Per User`:
  - For queries and searches, the credentials are specific to the current user who invokes the query or search. The credentials come from the user's authentication settings for the external system.
  - For administrative connections, such as syncing the external system's schema, the credentials come from the external data source definition.

principalType

An instance of DataSource.IdentityType, which determines which set of credentials to use to access the external system.

Signature

```
public DataSource.IdentityType principalType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.IdentityType

protocol

The type of protocol that's used to authenticate to the external system.

Signature

```
public DataSource.AuthenticationProtocol protocol {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.AuthenticationProtocol

`repository`

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public String repository {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Reserved for future use.

`username`

The username for authenticating to the external system.

Signature

```
public String username {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The value depends on the `Identity Type` field of the external data source definition in Salesforce.

- If `Identity Type` is set to `Named Principal`, the credentials come from the external data source definition.
- If `Identity Type` is set to `Per User`:
  - For queries and searches, the credentials are specific to the current user who invokes the query or search. The credentials come from the user's authentication settings for the external system.
  - For administrative connections, such as syncing the external system's schema, the credentials come from the external data source definition.

DataSourceUtil Class

Parent class for the `DataSource.Provider`, `DataSource.Connection`, `DataSource.Table`, and `DataSource.Column` classes.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

DataSourceUtil Methods

DataSourceUtil Methods

The following are methods for `DataSourceUtil`.

IN THIS SECTION:

logWarning(message)
Logs the error message in the debug log.

throwException(message)
Throws a `DataSourceException` and displays the provided message to the user.

`logWarning(message)`

Logs the error message in the debug log.

Signature

```
public void logWarning(String message)
```

Parameters

`message`
Type: String

The error message.

Return Value

Type: void

`throwException(message)`

Throws a `DataSourceException` and displays the provided message to the user.

Signature

```
public void throwException(String message)
```

Parameters

`message`
Type: String

Error message to display to the user.

Return Value

Type: void

DataType Enum

Specifies the data types that are supported by the Apex Connector Framework.

Usage

The `DataSource.DataType` enum is referenced by the `type` property on the `DataSource.Column` class.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.DataType` enum.

Value	Description
`BOOLEAN_TYPE`	Boolean
`DATETIME_TYPE`	Date/time
`EXTERNAL_LOOKUP_TYPE`	External lookup relationship
`INDIRECT_LOOKUP_TYPE`	Indirect lookup relationship
`LOOKUP_TYPE`	Lookup relationship
`NUMBER_TYPE`	Number
`STRING_LONG_TYPE`	Long text area
`STRING_SHORT_TYPE`	Text area
`URL_TYPE`	URL

DeleteContext Class

An instance of `DeleteContext` is passed to the `deleteRows()` method on your `Database.Connection` class. The class provides context information about the delete request to the implementor of `deleteRows()`.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

The Apex Connector Framework creates context for operations. Context is comprised of parameters about the operations, which other methods can use. An instance of the `DeleteContext` class packages these parameters into an object that can be used when a `deleteRows()` operation is initiated.

IN THIS SECTION:

DeleteContext Properties

DeleteContext Properties

The following are properties for `DeleteContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

externalIds
The external IDs of the rows representing external object records to delete.

tableSelected
The name of the table to delete rows from.

`externalIds`

The external IDs of the rows representing external object records to delete.

Signature

```
public List<String> externalIds {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

`tableSelected`

The name of the table to delete rows from.

Signature

```
public String tableSelected {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

DeleteResult Class

Represents the result of a delete operation on an sObject record. The result is returned by the `DataSource.deleteRows` method of the `DataSource.Connection` class.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

A delete operation on external object records generates an array of objects of type `DataSource.DeleteResult`. Its methods create result records that indicate whether the delete operation succeeded or failed.

IN THIS SECTION:

DeleteResult Properties

DeleteResult Methods

DeleteResult Properties

The following are properties for `DeleteResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

errorMessage
The error message that's generated by a failed delete operation. Recorded with a result of type `DataSource.DeleteResult`.

externalId
The unique identifier of a row that represents an external object record to delete.

success
Indicates whether a delete operation succeeded or failed.

errorMessage

The error message that's generated by a failed delete operation. Recorded with a result of type `DataSource.DeleteResult`.

Signature

```
public String errorMessage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

externalId

The unique identifier of a row that represents an external object record to delete.

Signature

```
public String externalId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

success

Indicates whether a delete operation succeeded or failed.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

DeleteResult Methods

The following are methods for `DeleteResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `DeleteResult` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the `equals` method in Java.

failure(externalId, errorMessage)
Creates a delete result indicating the failure of a delete request for a given external ID.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `DeleteResult` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

success(externalId)
Creates a delete result indicating the successful completion of a delete request for a given external ID.

`equals(obj)`

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `DeleteResult` by determining the equality of external objects in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the `equals` method in Java.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

For information about the `equals` method, see Using Custom Types in Map Keys and Sets.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`failure(externalId, errorMessage)`

Creates a delete result indicating the failure of a delete request for a given external ID.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.DeleteResult failure(String externalId, String errorMessage)
```

Parameters

externalId
Type: String

The unique identifier of the sObject record to delete.

errorMessage
Type: String

The reason the delete operation failed.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.DeleteResult

Status result of the delete operation.

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `DeleteResult` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

success(externalId)

Creates a delete result indicating the successful completion of a delete request for a given external ID.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.DeleteResult success(String externalId)
```

Parameters

externalId
Type: String

The unique identifier of the sObject record to delete.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.DeleteResult

Status result of the delete operation for the sObject with the given external ID.

Filter Class

Represents a `WHERE` clause in a SOSL or SOQL query.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

Compound types require child filters. Specifically, the `subfilters` property can't be null if the `type` property is `NOT_`, `AND_`, or `OR_`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Filter Properties

Filter Properties

The following are properties for `Filter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

columnName
Name of the column that's being evaluated in a simple comparative type of filter.

columnValue
Value that the filter compares records against in a simple comparative type of filter.

subfilters
List of subfilters for compound filter types, such as `NOT_`, `AND_`, and `OR_`.

tableName
Name of the table whose column is being evaluated in a simple comparative type of filter.

type
Type of filter operation that limits the returned data.

`columnName`

Name of the column that's being evaluated in a simple comparative type of filter.

Signature

```
public String columnName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`columnValue`

Value that the filter compares records against in a simple comparative type of filter.

Signature

```
public Object columnValue {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Object

`subfilters`

List of subfilters for compound filter types, such as `NOT_`, `AND_`, and `OR_`.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Filter> subfilters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.Filter>

`tableName`

Name of the table whose column is being evaluated in a simple comparative type of filter.

Signature

```
public String tableName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`type`

Type of filter operation that limits the returned data.

Signature

```
public DataSource.FilterType type {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.FilterType

FilterType Enum

Referenced by the `type` property on a `DataSource.Filter`.

Usage

Determines how to limit the returned data.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.FilterType` enum.

Value	Description
`AND_`	This compound filter type returns all rows that match all the subfilters.
`CONTAINS`	Simple comparative filter type.
`ENDS_WITH`	Simple comparative filter type.
`EQUALS`	Simple comparative filter type.
`GREATER_THAN`	Simple comparative filter type.
`GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO`	Simple comparative filter type.
`LESS_THAN`	Simple comparative filter type.
`LESS_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO`	Simple comparative filter type.
`LIKE_`	Simple comparative filter type.
`NOT_`	This compound filter type returns the rows that don't match the subfilter.
`NOT_EQUALS`	Simple comparative filter type.
`OR_`	This compound filter type returns all rows that match any of the subfilters.
`STARTS_WITH`	Simple comparative filter type.

IdentityType Enum

Determines which set of credentials is used to authenticate to the external system.

Usage

The relevant credentials are passed to your `DataSource.Connection` class.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.IdentityType` enum.

Value	Description
`ANONYMOUS`	No credentials are used to authenticate to the external system.
`NAMED_USER`	The credentials in the external data source definition are used to authenticate to the external system, regardless of which user is accessing the external data from your organization.

Value	Description
PER_USER	For queries and searches, the credentials are specific to the current user who invokes the query or search. The credentials come from the user's authentication settings for the external system. For administrative connections, such as syncing the external system's schema, the credentials come from the external data source definition.

Order Class

Contains details about how to sort the rows in the result set. Equivalent to an `ORDER BY` statement in a SOQL query.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

Used in the `order` property on the `DataSource.TableSelection` class.

IN THIS SECTION:

Order Properties

Order Methods

Order Properties

The following are properties for `Order`.

IN THIS SECTION:

columnName
Name of the column whose values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

direction
Direction for sorting rows based on column values.

tableName
Name of the table whose column values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

`columnName`

Name of the column whose values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

Signature

```
public String columnName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

direction

Direction for sorting rows based on column values.

Signature

```
public DataSource.OrderDirection direction {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.OrderDirection

tableName

Name of the table whose column values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

Signature

```
public String tableName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Order Methods

The following are methods for `Order`.

IN THIS SECTION:

get(tableName, columnName, direction)
Creates an instance of the DataSource.Order class.

get(tableName, columnName, direction)

Creates an instance of the DataSource.Order class.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Order get(String tableName, String columnName,
DataSource.OrderDirection direction)
```

Parameters

tableName
Type: String

Name of the table whose column values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

columnName
Type: String

Name of the column whose values are used to sort the rows in the result set.

direction
Type: DataSource.OrderDirection

Direction for sorting rows based on column values.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Order

OrderDirection Enum

Specifies the direction for sorting rows based on column values.

Usage

Used by the direction property on the DataSource.Order class.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.OrderDirection` enum.

Value	Description
`ASCENDING`	Sort rows in ascending order (A–Z).
`DESCENDING`	Sort rows in descending order (Z–A).

Provider Class

Extend this base class to create a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect. The class informs Salesforce of the functional and authentication capabilities that are supported by or required to connect to the external system. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

Create an Apex class that extends `DataSource.Provider` to specify the following.

- The types of authentication that can be used to access the external system
- The features that are supported for the connection to the external system
- The Apex class that extends `DataSource.Connection` to sync the external system's schema and to handle the queries and searches of the external data

The values that are returned by the `DataSource.Provider` class determine which settings are available in the external data source definition in Salesforce. To access the external data source definition from Setup, enter *`External Data Sources`* in the `Quick Find` box, then select **External Data Sources**.

IN THIS SECTION:

Provider Methods

Provider Methods

The following are methods for `Provider`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAuthenticationCapabilities()
Returns the types of authentication that can be used to access the external system.

getCapabilities()
Returns the functional operations that the external system supports and the required endpoint settings for the external data source definition in Salesforce.

getConnection(connectionParams)
Returns a connection that points to an instance of the external data source.

`getAuthenticationCapabilities()`

Returns the types of authentication that can be used to access the external system.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.AuthenticationCapability> getAuthenticationCapabilities()
```

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.AuthenticationCapability>

`getCapabilities()`

Returns the functional operations that the external system supports and the required endpoint settings for the external data source definition in Salesforce.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Capability> getCapabilities()
```

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.Capability>

`getConnection(connectionParams)`

Returns a connection that points to an instance of the external data source.

Signature

```
public DataSource.Connection getConnection(DataSource.ConnectionParams connectionParams)
```

Parameters

`connectionParams`
Type: DataSource.ConnectionParams

Credentials for authenticating to the external system.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Connection

QueryAggregation Enum

Specifies how to aggregate a column in a query.

Usage

Used by the aggregation property on the DataSource.ColumnSelection class.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `DataSource.QueryAggregation` enum.

Value	Description
`AVG`	Reserved for future use.
`COUNT`	Returns the number of rows that meet the query criteria.
`MAX`	Reserved for future use.
`MIN`	Reserved for future use.
`NONE`	No aggregation.
`SUM`	Reserved for future use.

QueryContext Class

An instance of `QueryContext` is provided to the `query` method on your `DataSource.Connection` class. The instance corresponds to a SOQL request.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

QueryContext Properties

QueryContext Methods

QueryContext Properties

The following are properties for `QueryContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

queryMoreToken

Query token that's used for server-driven paging to determine and fetch the subsequent batch of results.

tableSelection

Query details that represent the `FROM`, `ORDER BY`, `SELECT`, and `WHERE` clauses in a SOQL or SOSL query.

`queryMoreToken`

Query token that's used for server-driven paging to determine and fetch the subsequent batch of results.

Signature

```
public String queryMoreToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`tableSelection`

Query details that represent the `FROM`, `ORDER BY`, `SELECT`, and `WHERE` clauses in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public DataSource.TableSelection tableSelection {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.TableSelection

QueryContext Methods

The following are methods for `QueryContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

get(metadata, offset, maxResults, tableSelection)
Creates an instance of the `QueryContext` class.

get(metadata, offset, maxResults, tableSelection)

Creates an instance of the `QueryContext` class.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.QueryContext get(List<DataSource.Table> metadata, Integer offset, Integer maxResults, DataSource.TableSelection tableSelection)
```

Parameters

metadata
Type: List<DataSource.Table>

List of table metadata that describes the external system's tables to query.

offset
Type: Integer

Used for client-driven paging. Specifies the starting row offset into the query's result set.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Used for client-driven paging. Specifies the maximum number of rows to return in each batch.

tableSelection
Type: DataSource.TableSelection

Query details that represent the `FROM`, `ORDER BY`, `SELECT`, and `WHERE` clauses in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Return Value

Type: `DataSource.QueryContext`

QueryUtils Class

Contains helper methods to locally filter, sort, and apply limit and offset clauses to data rows. This helper class is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

The `DataSource.QueryUtils` class and its helper methods can process query results locally within your Salesforce org. This class is provided for your convenience to simplify the development of your Salesforce Connect custom adapter for initial tests. However, the `DataSource.QueryUtils` class and its methods aren't supported for use in production environments that use callouts to retrieve

data from external systems. Complete the filtering and sorting on the external system before sending the query results to Salesforce. When possible, use server-driven paging or another technique to have the external system determine the appropriate data subsets according to the limit and offset clauses in the query.

IN THIS SECTION:

QueryUtils Methods

QueryUtils Methods

The following are methods for `QueryUtils`.

IN THIS SECTION:

applyLimitAndOffset(queryContext, rows)

Returns a subset of data rows after locally applying limit and offset clauses from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

filter(queryContext, rows)

Returns a subset of data rows after locally ordering and applying filters from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

process(queryContext, rows)

Returns data rows after locally filtering, sorting, ordering, and applying limit and offset clauses from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

sort(queryContext, rows)

Returns data rows after locally sorting and applying the order from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

`applyLimitAndOffset(queryContext, rows)`

Returns a subset of data rows after locally applying limit and offset clauses from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

Signature

```
public static List<Map<String,Object>> applyLimitAndOffset(DataSource.QueryContext
queryContext, List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

`queryContext`

Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

`rows`

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

`filter(queryContext, rows)`

Returns a subset of data rows after locally ordering and applying filters from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

Signature

```
public static List<Map<String,bject>> filter(DataSource.QueryContext queryContext,
List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

queryContext
Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

`process(queryContext, rows)`

Returns data rows after locally filtering, sorting, ordering, and applying limit and offset clauses from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

Signature

```
public static List<Map<String,bject>> process(DataSource.QueryContext queryContext,
List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

queryContext
Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

`sort(queryContext, rows)`

Returns data rows after locally sorting and applying the order from the query. This helper method is provided for your convenience during early development and tests, but it isn't supported for use in production environments.

Signature

```
public static List<Map<String,ject>> sort(DataSource.QueryContext queryContext,
List<Map<String,bject>> rows)
```

Parameters

queryContext
Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

ReadContext Class

Abstract base class for the `QueryContext` and `SearchContext` classes.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

ReadContext Properties

ReadContext Properties

The following are properties for `ReadContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

maxResults
Maximum number of rows that the query can return.

metadata
Describes the external system's tables to query.

offset
The starting row offset into the query's result set. Used for client-driven paging.

maxResults

Maximum number of rows that the query can return.

Signature

```
public Integer maxResults {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

metadata

Describes the external system's tables to query.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Table> metadata {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.Table>

offset

The starting row offset into the query's result set. Used for client-driven paging.

Signature

```
public Integer offset {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

SearchContext Class

An instance of `SearchContext` is provided to the search method on your `DataSource.Connection` class. The instance corresponds to a search or SOSL request.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

SearchContext Constructors

SearchContext Properties

SearchContext Constructors

The following are constructors for `SearchContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SearchContext(metadata, offset, maxResults, tableSelections, searchPhrase)
Creates an instance of the `SearchContext` class with the specified parameter values.

SearchContext()
Creates an instance of the `SearchContext` class.

`SearchContext(metadata, offset, maxResults, tableSelections, searchPhrase)`

Creates an instance of the `SearchContext` class with the specified parameter values.

Signature

```
public SearchContext(List<DataSource.Table> metadata, Integer offset, Integer maxResults,
List<DataSource.TableSelection> tableSelections, String searchPhrase)
```

Parameters

metadata
Type: List<DataSource.Table>

List of table metadata that describes the external system's tables to query.

offset
Type: Integer

Specifies the starting row offset into the query's result set.

maxResults
Type: Integer

Specifies the maximum number of rows to return in each batch.

tableSelections
Type: List<DataSource.TableSelection>

List of queries and their details. The details represent the `FROM`, `ORDER BY`, `SELECT`, and `WHERE` clauses in each SOQL or SOSL query.

searchPhrase
Type: String

The user-entered search string as a case-sensitive single phrase, with all non-alphanumeric characters removed.

`SearchContext()`

Creates an instance of the `SearchContext` class.

Signature

```
public SearchContext()
```

SearchContext Properties

The following are properties for `SearchContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

searchPhrase
The user-entered search string as a case-sensitive single phrase, with all non-alphanumeric characters removed.

tableSelections
List of queries and their details. The details represent the FROM, ORDER BY, SELECT, and WHERE clauses in each SOQL or SOSL query.

`searchPhrase`

The user-entered search string as a case-sensitive single phrase, with all non-alphanumeric characters removed.

Signature

```
public String searchPhrase {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`tableSelections`

List of queries and their details. The details represent the FROM, ORDER BY, SELECT, and WHERE clauses in each SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.TableSelection> tableSelections {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.TableSelection>

SearchUtils Class

Helper class for implementing search on a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

We recommend that you develop your own search implementation that can search columns in addition to the designated name field.

IN THIS SECTION:

SearchUtils Methods

SearchUtils Methods

The following are methods for `SearchUtils`.

IN THIS SECTION:

searchByName(searchDetails, connection)
Queries all the tables and returns each row whose designated name field contains the search phrase.

`searchByName(searchDetails, connection)`

Queries all the tables and returns each row whose designated name field contains the search phrase.

Signature

```
public static List<DataSource.TableResult> searchByName(DataSource.SearchContext
searchDetails, DataSource.Connection connection)
```

Parameters

`searchDetails`
Type: DataSource.SearchContext

The `SearchContext` class that specifies which data to search and what to search for.

`connection`
Type: DataSource.Connection

The `DataSource.Connection` class that connects to the external system.

Return Value

Type: List<DataSource.TableResult>

Table Class

Describes a table on an external system that the Salesforce Connect custom adapter connects to. This class extends the `DataSourceUtil` class and inherits its methods.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

A list of table metadata is provided by the `DataSource.Connection` class when the `sync()` method is invoked. Each table can become an external object in Salesforce.

The metadata is stored in Salesforce. Updating the Apex code to return new or updated values for the table metadata doesn't automatically update the stored metadata in Salesforce.

IN THIS SECTION:

Table Properties

Table Methods

Table Properties

The following are properties for `Table`.

IN THIS SECTION:

columns
List of table columns.

description
Description of what the table represents.

labelPlural
Plural form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelPlural` becomes the object's plural label in the Salesforce user interface.

labelSingular
Singular form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelSingular` becomes the object label in the Salesforce user interface. We recommend that you make object labels unique across all standard, custom, and external objects in the org.

name
Name of the table on the external system.

nameColumn
Name of the table column that becomes the name field of the external object when the administrator syncs the table.

`columns`

List of table columns.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Column> columns {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.Column>

`description`

Description of what the table represents.

Signature

```
public String description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

labelPlural

Plural form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelPlural` becomes the object's plural label in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String labelPlural {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

labelSingular

Singular form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelSingular` becomes the object label in the Salesforce user interface. We recommend that you make object labels unique across all standard, custom, and external objects in the org.

Signature

```
public String labelSingular {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

name

Name of the table on the external system.

Signature

```
public String name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

nameColumn

Name of the table column that becomes the name field of the external object when the administrator syncs the table.

Signature

```
public String nameColumn {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Table Methods

The following are methods for `Table`.

IN THIS SECTION:

get(name, labelSingular, labelPlural, description, nameColumn, columns)
Returns the table metadata with the specified parameter values.

get(name, nameColumn, columns)
Returns the table metadata with the specified parameter values, using the name for the labels and description.

`get(name, labelSingular, labelPlural, description, nameColumn, columns)`

Returns the table metadata with the specified parameter values.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Table get(String name, String labelSingular, String labelPlural,
String description, String nameColumn, List<DataSource.Column> columns)
```

Parameters

`name`
Type: String

Name of the external table.

`labelSingular`
Type: String

Singular form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelSingular` becomes the object label in the Salesforce user interface.

`labelPlural`
Type: String

Plural form of the user-friendly name for the table. The `labelPlural` becomes the object's plural label in the Salesforce user interface.

`description`
Type: String

Description of the external table.

`nameColumn`
Type: String

Name of the table column that becomes the name field of the external object when the administrator syncs the table.

`columns`
Type: List<DataSource.Column>

List of table columns.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Table

`get(name, nameColumn, columns)`

Returns the table metadata with the specified parameter values, using the name for the labels and description.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.Table get(String name, String nameColumn,
List<DataSource.Column> columns)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Name of the external table.

nameColumn
Type: String

Name of the table column that becomes the name field of the external object when the administrator syncs the table.

columns
Type: List<DataSource.Column>

List of table columns.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.Table

The returned table metadata has these property values.

Property	Value
name	*name*
labelSingular	*name*
labelPlural	*name*
description	*name*
nameColumn	*nameColumn*
columns	*columns*

TableResult Class

Contains the results of a search or query.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

TableResult Properties

TableResult Methods

TableResult Properties

The following are properties for `TableResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

errorMessage
Error message to display to the user.

queryMoreToken
Query token that's used for server-driven paging to determine and fetch the subsequent batch of results. This token is passed back to the Apex data source on subsequent queries in the `queryMoreToken` property on the `QueryContext`.

rows
Rows of data.

success
Whether the search or query was successful.

tableName
Name of the table that was queried.

totalSize
The total number of rows that meet the query criteria, even when the external system is requested to return a smaller batch size.

`errorMessage`

Error message to display to the user.

Signature

```
public String errorMessage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`queryMoreToken`

Query token that's used for server-driven paging to determine and fetch the subsequent batch of results. This token is passed back to the Apex data source on subsequent queries in the `queryMoreToken` property on the `QueryContext`.

Signature

```
public String queryMoreToken {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

rows

Rows of data.

Signature

```
public List<Map<String,Object>> rows {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

success

Whether the search or query was successful.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

tableName

Name of the table that was queried.

Signature

```
public String tableName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

totalSize

The total number of rows that meet the query criteria, even when the external system is requested to return a smaller batch size.

Signature

```
public Integer totalSize {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

TableResult Methods

The following are methods for `TableResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

error(errorMessage)
Returns failed search or query results with the provided error message.

get(success, errorMessage, tableName, rows, totalSize)
Returns a subset of data rows in a `TableResult` with the provided property values and the number of rows in the table.

get(success, errorMessage, tableName, rows)
Returns a subset of data rows in a `TableResult` with the provided property values.

get(queryContext, rows)
Returns the subset of data rows that meet the query criteria, and the number of rows in the table, in a `TableResult`.

get(tableSelection, rows)
Returns the subset of data rows that meet the query criteria, and the number of rows in the table, in a `TableResult`.

`error(errorMessage)`

Returns failed search or query results with the provided error message.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.TableResult error(String errorMessage)
```

Parameters

`errorMessage`
Type: String

Error message to display to the user.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

The returned `TableResult` has these property values.

Property	Value
success	false
errorMessage	*`errorMessage`*
tableName	null
rows	null

Property	Value
rows.size()	0

get(success, errorMessage, tableName, rows, totalSize)

Returns a subset of data rows in a `TableResult` with the provided property values and the number of rows in the table.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.TableResult get(Boolean success, String errorMessage, String tableName, List<Map<String,Object>> rows, Integer totalSize)
```

Parameters

success
Type: Boolean

Whether the search or query was successful.

errorMessage
Type: String

Error message to display to the user.

tableName
Type: String

Name of the table that was queried.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

totalSize
Type: Integer

The total number of rows that meet the query criteria, even when the external system is requested to return a smaller batch size.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

get(success, errorMessage, tableName, rows)

Returns a subset of data rows in a `TableResult` with the provided property values.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.TableResult get(Boolean success, String errorMessage, String tableName, List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

success
Type: Boolean

Whether the search or query was successful.

errorMessage
Type: String

Error message to display to the user.

tableName
Type: String

Name of the table that was queried.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

get(queryContext, rows)

Returns the subset of data rows that meet the query criteria, and the number of rows in the table, in a `TableResult`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.TableResult get(DataSource.QueryContext queryContext,
List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

queryContext
Type: DataSource.QueryContext

Represents the query to run against a data table.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

get(tableSelection, rows)

Returns the subset of data rows that meet the query criteria, and the number of rows in the table, in a `TableResult`.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.TableResult get(DataSource.TableSelection tableSelection,
List<Map<String,Object>> rows)
```

Parameters

tableSelection
Type: DataSource.TableSelection

Query details that represent the `FROM`, `ORDER BY`, `SELECT`, and `WHERE` clauses in a SOQL or SOSL query.

rows
Type: List<Map<String, Object>>

Rows of data.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.TableResult

TableSelection Class

Contains a breakdown of the SOQL or SOSL query. Its properties represent the FROM, ORDER BY, SELECT, and WHERE clauses in the query.

Namespace

DataSource

IN THIS SECTION:

TableSelection Properties

TableSelection Properties

The following are properties for `TableSelection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

columnsSelected
List of columns to query. Corresponds to the `SELECT` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

filter
Identifies the query filter, which can be a compound filter that has a list of subfilters. The filter corresponds to the `WHERE` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

order
Identifies the order for sorting the query results. Corresponds to the `ORDER BY` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

tableSelected
Name of the table to query. Corresponds to the `FROM` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

columnsSelected

List of columns to query. Corresponds to the `SELECT` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.ColumnSelection> columnsSelected {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.ColumnSelection>

filter

Identifies the query filter, which can be a compound filter that has a list of subfilters. The filter corresponds to the `WHERE` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public DataSource.Filter filter {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: DataSource.Filter

order

Identifies the order for sorting the query results. Corresponds to the `ORDER BY` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public List<DataSource.Order> order {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<DataSource.Order>

tableSelected

Name of the table to query. Corresponds to the `FROM` clause in a SOQL or SOSL query.

Signature

```
public String tableSelected {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

UpsertContext Class

An instance of `UpsertContext` is passed to the `upsertRows()` method on your `Datasource.Connection` class. This class provides context information about the upsert request to the implementor of `upsertRows()`.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

The Apex Connector Framework creates the contet for operations. Context is comprised of parameters about the operations, which other methods can use. An instance of the `UpsertContext` class packages these parameters into an object that can be used when an `upsertRows()` operation is initiated.

IN THIS SECTION:

UpsertContext Properties

UpsertContext Properties

The following are properties for `UpsertContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

rows
List of rows corresponding to the external object records to upsert.

tableSelected
The name of the table to upsert rows in.

`rows`

List of rows corresponding to the external object records to upsert.

Signature

```
public List<Map<String,ANY>> rows {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Map<String,Object>>

`tableSelected`

The name of the table to upsert rows in.

Signature

```
public String tableSelected {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

UpsertResult Class

Represents the result of an upsert operation on an external object record. The result is returned by the `upsertRows` method of the `DataSource.Connection` class.

Namespace

DataSource

Usage

An upsert operation on external object records generates an array of objects of type `DataSource.UpsertResult`. Its methods create result records that indicate whether the upsert operation succeeded or failed.

IN THIS SECTION:

UpsertResult Properties

UpsertResult Methods

UpsertResult Properties

The following are properties for `UpsertResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

errorMessage

The error message that's generated by a failed upsert operation.

externalId

The unique identifier of a row that represents an external object record to upsert.

success

Indicates whether a delete operation succeeded or failed.

`errorMessage`

The error message that's generated by a failed upsert operation.

Signature

```
public String errorMessage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

externalId

The unique identifier of a row that represents an external object record to upsert.

Signature

```
public String externalId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

success

Indicates whether a delete operation succeeded or failed.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

UpsertResult Methods

The following are methods for `UpsertResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(obj)
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `UpsertResult` by determining the equality of external object records in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the `equals` method in Java.

failure(externalId, errorMessage)
Creates an upsert result that indicates the failure of a delete request for a given external ID.

hashCode()
Maintains the integrity of lists of type `UpsertResult` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

success(externalId)
Creates a delete result that indicates the successful completion of an upsert request for a given external ID.

equals(obj)

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `UpsertResult` by determining the equality of external object records in a list. This method is dynamic and is based on the `equals` method in Java.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

External object whose key is to be validated.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

failure(externalId, errorMessage)

Creates an upsert result that indicates the failure of a delete request for a given external ID.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.UpsertResult failure(String externalId, String errorMessage)
```

Parameters

externalId
Type: String

The unique identifier of the external object record to upsert.

errorMessage
Type: String

The reason the upsert operation failed.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.UpsertResult

Status result for the upsert operation.

hashCode()

Maintains the integrity of lists of type `UpsertResult` by determining the uniqueness of the external object records in a list.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

success(externalId)

Creates a delete result that indicates the successful completion of an upsert request for a given external ID.

Signature

```
public static DataSource.UpsertResult success(String externalId)
```

Parameters

externalId
Type: String

The unique identifier of the external object record to upsert.

Return Value

Type: DataSource.UpsertResult

Status result of the upsert operation for the external object record with the given external ID.

DataSource Exceptions

The `DataSource` namespace contains exception classes.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions.

The `DataSource` namespace contains these exceptions.

Exception	Description	Methods
`DataSource.DataSourceException`	Throw this exception to indicate that an error occurred while communicating with an external data source.	To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.
`DataSource.OAuthTokenExpiredException`	Throw this exception to indicate that an OAuth token has expired. The system then attempts to refresh the token automatically and restart the query, search, or sync operation.	To get the error message and write it to debug log, use the `String getMessage()`.

Dom Namespace

The `Dom` namespace provides classes and methods for parsing and creating XML content.

The following are the classes in the `Dom` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Document Class
Use the `Document` class to process XML content. You can parse nested XML content that's up to 50 nodes deep.

XmlNode Class
Use the `XmlNode` class to work with a node in an XML document.

Document Class

Use the `Document` class to process XML content. You can parse nested XML content that's up to 50 nodes deep.

Namespace

Dom

Usage

One common application is to use it to create the body of a request for HttpRequest or to parse a response accessed by HttpResponse.

IN THIS SECTION:

Document Constructors

Document Methods

SEE ALSO:

Reading and Writing XML Using the DOM

Document Constructors

The following are constructors for `Document`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Document()
Creates a new instance of the `Dom.Document` class.

`Document()`

Creates a new instance of the `Dom.Document` class.

Signature

```
public Document()
```

Document Methods

The following are methods for `Document`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

createRootElement(name, namespace, prefix)
Creates the top-level root element for a document.

getRootElement()
Returns the top-level root element node in the document. If this method returns `null`, the root element has not been created yet.

load(xml)
Parse the XML representation of the document specified in the *xml* argument and load it into a document.

toXmlString()
Returns the XML representation of the document as a String.

createRootElement(name, namespace, prefix)

Creates the top-level root element for a document.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode createRootElement(String name, String namespace, String prefix)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

namespace
Type: String

prefix
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

Usage

For more information about namespaces, see Reading and Writing XML Using the DOM.

Calling this method more than once on a document generates an error as a document can have only one root element.

getRootElement()

Returns the top-level root element node in the document. If this method returns `null`, the root element has not been created yet.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode getRootElement()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

load(xml)

Parse the XML representation of the document specified in the *xml* argument and load it into a document.

Signature

```
public Void load(String xml)
```

Parameters

xml
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
Dom.Document doc = new Dom.Document();
doc.load(xml);
```

toXmlString()

Returns the XML representation of the document as a String.

Signature

```
public String toXmlString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

XmlNode Class

Use the `XmlNode` class to work with a node in an XML document.

Namespace

Dom

XmlNode Methods

The following are methods for `XmlNode`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

addChildElement(name, namespace, prefix)
Creates a child element node for this node.

addCommentNode(text)
Creates a child comment node for this node.

addTextNode(text)

Creates a child text node for this node.

getAttribute(key, keyNamespace)

Returns *namespacePrefix:attributeValue* for the given key and key namespace.

getAttributeCount()

Returns the number of attributes for this node.

getAttributeKeyAt(index)

Returns the attribute key for the given index. Index values start at 0.

getAttributeKeyNsAt(index)

Returns the attribute key namespace for the given index.

getAttributeValue(key, keyNamespace)

Returns the attribute value for the given key and key namespace.

getAttributeValueNs(key, keyNamespace)

Returns the attribute value namespace for the given key and key namespace.

getChildElement(name, namespace)

Returns the child element node for the node with the given name and namespace.

getChildElements()

Returns the child element nodes for this node. This doesn't include child text or comment nodes.

getChildren()

Returns the child nodes for this node. This includes all node types.

getName()

Returns the element name.

getNamespace()

Returns the namespace of the element.

getNamespaceFor(prefix)

Returns the namespace of the element for the given prefix.

getNodeType()

Returns the node type.

getParent()

Returns the parent of this element.

getPrefixFor(namespace)

Returns the prefix of the given namespace.

getText()

Returns the text for this node.

insertBefore(newChild, refChild)

Inserts a new child node before the specified node.

removeAttribute(key, keyNamespace)

Removes the attribute with the given key and key namespace. Returns `true` if successful, `false` otherwise.

removeChild(childNode)

Removes the given child node.

setAttribute(key, value)
Sets the key attribute value.

setAttributeNs(key, value, keyNamespace, valueNamespace)
Sets the key attribute value.

setNamespace(prefix, namespace)
Sets the namespace for the given prefix.

addChildElement(name, namespace, prefix)

Creates a child element node for this node.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode addChildElement(String name, String namespace, String prefix)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

The *name* argument can't have a `null` value.

namespace
Type: String

prefix
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

Usage

- If the *namespace* argument has a non-`null` value and the *prefix* argument is `null`, the namespace is set as the default namespace.
- If the *prefix* argument is `null`, Salesforce automatically assigns a prefix for the element. The format of the automatic prefix is `ns`***i***, where *i* is a number.If the *prefix* argument is `''`, the namespace is set as the default namespace.

addCommentNode(text)

Creates a child comment node for this node.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode addCommentNode(String text)
```

Parameters

text
Type: String

The *text* argument can't have a `null` value.

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

addTextNode(text)

Creates a child text node for this node.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode addTextNode(String text)
```

Parameters

text
Type: String

The *text* argument can't have a `null` value.

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

getAttribute(key, keyNamespace)

Returns *namespacePrefix:attributeValue* for the given key and key namespace.

Signature

```
public String getAttribute(String key, String keyNamespace)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

keyNamespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

For example, for the `<xyz a:b="c:d" />` element:

- `getAttribute` returns `c:d`
- `getAttributeValue` returns `d`

getAttributeCount()

Returns the number of attributes for this node.

Signature

```
public Integer getAttributeCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getAttributeKeyAt(index)

Returns the attribute key for the given index. Index values start at 0.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeKeyAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

getAttributeKeyNsAt(index)

Returns the attribute key namespace for the given index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeKeyNsAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

getAttributeValue(key, keyNamespace)

Returns the attribute value for the given key and key namespace.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeValue(String key, String keyNamespace)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

keyNamespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

For example, for the `<xyz a:b="c:d" />` element:

- `getAttribute` returns `c:d`
- `getAttributeValue` returns `d`

getAttributeValueNs(key, keyNamespace)

Returns the attribute value namespace for the given key and key namespace.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeValueNs(String key, String keyNamespace)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

keyNamespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

getChildElement(name, namespace)

Returns the child element node for the node with the given name and namespace.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode getChildElement(String name, String namespace)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

namespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

getChildElements()

Returns the child element nodes for this node. This doesn't include child text or comment nodes.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode[] getChildElements()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode[]

getChildren()

Returns the child nodes for this node. This includes all node types.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode[] getChildren()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode[]

getName()

Returns the element name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getNamespace()

Returns the namespace of the element.

Signature

```
public String getNamespace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getNamespaceFor(prefix)

Returns the namespace of the element for the given prefix.

Signature

```
public String getNamespaceFor(String prefix)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

getNodeType()

Returns the node type.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNodeType getNodeType()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNodeType

getParent()

Returns the parent of this element.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode getParent()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

getPrefixFor(namespace)

Returns the prefix of the given namespace.

Signature

```
public String getPrefixFor(String namespace)
```

Parameters

namespace
Type: String

The *namespace* argument can't have a `null` value.

Return Value

Type: String

getText()

Returns the text for this node.

Signature

```
public String getText()
```

Return Value

Type: String

insertBefore(newChild, refChild)

Inserts a new child node before the specified node.

Signature

```
public Dom.XmlNode insertBefore(Dom.XmlNode newChild, Dom.XmlNode refChild)
```

Parameters

newChild
Type: Dom.XmlNode

The node to insert.

refChild
Type: Dom.XmlNode

The node before the new node.

Return Value

Type: Dom.XmlNode

Usage

- If *refChild* is null, *newChild* is inserted at the end of the list.
- If *refChild* doesn't exist, an exception is thrown.

removeAttribute(key, keyNamespace)

Removes the attribute with the given key and key namespace. Returns true if successful, false otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeAttribute(String key, String keyNamespace)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

keyNamespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

removeChild(childNode)

Removes the given child node.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeChild(Dom.XmlNode childNode)
```

Parameters

childNode
Type: Dom.XmlNode

Return Value

Type: Boolean

setAttribute(key, value)

Sets the key attribute value.

Signature

```
public Void setAttribute(String key, String value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setAttributeNs(key, value, keyNamespace, valueNamespace)

Sets the key attribute value.

Signature

```
public Void setAttributeNs(String key, String value, String keyNamespace, String valueNamespace)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

value
Type: String

keyNamespace
Type: String

valueNamespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setNamespace(prefix, namespace)

Sets the namespace for the given prefix.

Signature

```
public Void setNamespace(String prefix, String namespace)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

namespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

EventBus Namespace

The `EventBus` namespace provides classes and methods for platform events and Change Data Capture events.

The following are the classes in the `EventBus` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

ChangeEventHeader Class
Contains header fields of Change Data Capture events.

TestBroker Class
Contains a method that delivers platform event or change event messages in an Apex test.

TriggerContext Class
Provides information about the platform event or change event trigger that's currently executing, such as how many times the trigger was retried due to the `EventBus.RetryableException`. Also, provides a method to resume trigger executions.

SEE ALSO:

Platform Events Developer Guide

ChangeEventHeader Class

Contains header fields of Change Data Capture events.

Namespace

EventBus

IN THIS SECTION:

ChangeEventHeader Properties

SEE ALSO:

Change Data Capture Developer Guide

ChangeEventHeader Properties

The following are properties for `ChangeEventHeader`.

IN THIS SECTION:

changedfields
A list of the fields that were changed in an update operation, including the `LastModifiedDate` system field. This field is empty for other operations, including record creation. This property is available in Apex saved using API version 47.0 or later.

changeorigin

Only populated for changes done by API apps or from Lightning Experience; empty otherwise. The Salesforce API and the API client ID that initiated the change, if set by the client. Use this field to detect whether your app initiated the change to not process the change again and potentially avoid a deep cycle of changes.

changetype

The operation that caused the change.

commitnumber

The system change number (SCN) of a committed transaction, which increases sequentially. This field is provided for diagnostic purposes. The field value is not guaranteed to be unique in Salesforce—it is unique only in a single database instance. If your Salesforce org migrates to another database instance, the commit number might not be unique or sequential.

committimestamp

The date and time when the change occurred, represented as the number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970 00:00:00 GMT.

commituser

The ID of the user that ran the change operation.

difffields

Contains the names of fields whose values are sent as a unified diff because they contain large text values.

entityname

The API name of the standard or custom object that the change pertains to. For example, Account or MyObject__c.

nulledfields

Contains the names of fields whose values were changed to null in an update operation. Use this field in Apex change event messages to determine if a field was changed to null in an update and isn't an unchanged field.

recordids

One or more record IDs for the changed records. Typically, this field contains one record ID. If in one transaction the same change occurred in multiple records of the same object type during one second, Salesforce merges the change notifications. In this case, Salesforce sends one change event for all affected records and the `recordIds` field contains the IDs for all records that have the same change.

sequencenumber

The sequence of the change within a transaction. The sequence number starts from 1.

transactionkey

A string that uniquely identifies each Salesforce transaction. You can use this key to identify and group all changes that were made in the same transaction.

`changedfields`

A list of the fields that were changed in an update operation, including the `LastModifiedDate` system field. This field is empty for other operations, including record creation. This property is available in Apex saved using API version 47.0 or later.

Signature

```
public List<String> changedfields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

changeorigin

Only populated for changes done by API apps or from Lightning Experience; empty otherwise. The Salesforce API and the API client ID that initiated the change, if set by the client. Use this field to detect whether your app initiated the change to not process the change again and potentially avoid a deep cycle of changes.

Signature

```
public String changeorigin {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The format of the `changeOrigin` field value is:

```
com/salesforce/api/<API_Name>/<API_Version>;client=<Client_ID>
```

- `<API_Name>` is the name of the Salesforce API used to make the data change. It can take one of these values: soap, rest, bulkapi, xmlrpc, oldsoap, toolingsoap, toolingrest, apex, apexdebuggerrest.
- `<API_Version>` is the version of the API call that made the change and is in the format *XX.X*.
- `<Client_ID>` is a string that contains the client ID of the app that initiated the change. If the client ID is not set in the API call, `client=<Client_ID>` is not appended to the `changeOrigin` field.

Example:

```
com/salesforce/api/soap/49.0;client=Astro
```

The client ID is set in the Call Options header of an API call. For an example on how to set the Call Options header, see:

- REST API: Sforce-Call-Options Header. (Bulk API also uses the Sforce-Call-Options header.)
- SOAP API: CallOptions Header. (Apex API also uses the CallOptions element.)

changetype

The operation that caused the change.

Signature

```
public String changetype {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Can be one of the following values:

- CREATE
- UPDATE
- DELETE
- UNDELETE

For gap events, the change type starts with the GAP_ prefix.

- GAP_CREATE

- GAP_UPDATE
- GAP_DELETE
- GAP_UNDELETE

For overflow events, the change type is GAP_OVERFLOW.

commitnumber

The system change number (SCN) of a committed transaction, which increases sequentially. This field is provided for diagnostic purposes. The field value is not guaranteed to be unique in Salesforce—it is unique only in a single database instance. If your Salesforce org migrates to another database instance, the commit number might not be unique or sequential.

Signature

```
public Long commitnumber {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Long

committimestamp

The date and time when the change occurred, represented as the number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970 00:00:00 GMT.

Signature

```
public Long committimestamp {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Long

commituser

The ID of the user that ran the change operation.

Signature

```
public String commituser {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

difffields

Contains the names of fields whose values are sent as a unified diff because they contain large text values.

Signature

```
public List<String> difffields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

SEE ALSO:

Change Data Capture Developer Guide: Sending Data Differences for Fields of Updated Records

entityname

The API name of the standard or custom object that the change pertains to. For example, Account or MyObject__c.

Signature

```
public String entityname {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

nulledfields

Contains the names of fields whose values were changed to null in an update operation. Use this field in Apex change event messages to determine if a field was changed to null in an update and isn't an unchanged field.

Signature

```
public List<String> nulledfields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

recordids

One or more record IDs for the changed records. Typically, this field contains one record ID. If in one transaction the same change occurred in multiple records of the same object type during one second, Salesforce merges the change notifications. In this case, Salesforce sends one change event for all affected records and the `recordIds` field contains the IDs for all records that have the same change.

Signature

```
public List<String> recordids {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

Examples of operations with same changes are:

- Update of fieldA to valueA in Account records.
- Deletion of Account records.
- Renaming or replacing a picklist value that results in updating the field value in all affected records.

The `recordIds` field can contain a wildcard value when a change event message is generated for custom field type conversions that cause data loss. In this case, the `recordIds` value is the three-character prefix of the object, followed by the wildcard character `*`. For example, for accounts, the value is `001*`.

`sequencenumber`

The sequence of the change within a transaction. The sequence number starts from 1.

Signature

```
public Integer sequencenumber {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

A lead conversion is an example of a transaction that can have multiple changes. A lead conversion results in the following sequence of changes, all within the same transaction.

1. Create an account
2. Create a contact
3. Create an opportunity
4. Update a lead

`transactionkey`

A string that uniquely identifies each Salesforce transaction. You can use this key to identify and group all changes that were made in the same transaction.

Signature

```
public String transactionkey {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

TestBroker Class

Contains a method that delivers platform event or change event messages in an Apex test.

Namespace

EventBus

IN THIS SECTION:

TestBroker Methods

TestBroker Methods

The following are methods for `TestBroker`.

IN THIS SECTION:

deliver()
Delivers platform event messages to the test event bus. Use this method to deliver test event messages multiple times and verify that event subscribers have processed the test events each step of the way.

`deliver()`

Delivers platform event messages to the test event bus. Use this method to deliver test event messages multiple times and verify that event subscribers have processed the test events each step of the way.

Signature

```
public void deliver()
```

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Enclose `Test.getEventBus().deliver()` within the `Test.startTest()` and `Test.stopTest()` statement block.

```
Test.startTest();
// Create test events
// ...
// Publish test events with EventBus.publish()
// ...
// Deliver test events
Test.getEventBus().deliver();
// Perform validation
// ...
Test.stopTest();
```

SEE ALSO:

Platform Events Developer Guide

TriggerContext Class

Provides information about the platform event or change event trigger that's currently executing, such as how many times the trigger was retried due to the `EventBus.RetryableException`. Also, provides a method to resume trigger executions.

Namespace

EventBus

IN THIS SECTION:

TriggerContext Properties

TriggerContext Methods

TriggerContext Properties

The following are properties for `TriggerContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

lastError

Read-only. The error message that the last thrown `EventBus.RetryableException` contains.

retries

Read-only. The number of times the trigger was retried due to throwing the `EventBus.RetryableException`.

`lastError`

Read-only. The error message that the last thrown `EventBus.RetryableException` contains.

Signature

```
public String lastError {get;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

The error message that this property returns is the message that was passed in when creating the `EventBus.RetryableException` exception, as follows.

```
throw new EventBus.RetryableException(
             'Condition is not met, so retrying the trigger again.');
```

`retries`

Read-only. The number of times the trigger was retried due to throwing the `EventBus.RetryableException`.

Signature

```
public Integer retries {get;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

TriggerContext Methods

The following are methods for `TriggerContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

currentContext()

Returns an instance of the `EventBus.TriggerContext` class containing information about the currently executing trigger.

getResumeCheckpoint()

Returns the replay ID that was set by `setResumeCheckpoint()`. The returned value is the replay ID of the event message after which trigger processing resumes in a new trigger invocation.

setResumeCheckpoint(resumeReplayId)

Sets a checkpoint in the event stream where the platform event trigger resumes execution in a new invocation. Use this method to recover from limit and uncaught exceptions, or to control the number of events processed in one trigger execution. When calling this method, pass in the replay ID of the last successfully processed event message. When the trigger stops execution before all events in `Trigger.New` are processed, either because of an uncaught exception or intentionally, the trigger is invoked again. The new execution starts with the event message in the stream after the one with the checkpointed Replay ID.

`currentContext()`

Returns an instance of the `EventBus.TriggerContext` class containing information about the currently executing trigger.

Signature

```
public static eventbus.TriggerContext currentContext()
```

Return Value

Type: EventBus.TriggerContext

Information about the currently executing trigger.

`getResumeCheckpoint()`

Returns the replay ID that was set by `setResumeCheckpoint()`. The returned value is the replay ID of the event message after which trigger processing resumes in a new trigger invocation.

Signature

```
public String getResumeCheckpoint()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setResumeCheckpoint(resumeReplayId)`

Sets a checkpoint in the event stream where the platform event trigger resumes execution in a new invocation. Use this method to recover from limit and uncaught exceptions, or to control the number of events processed in one trigger execution. When calling this method, pass in the replay ID of the last successfully processed event message. When the trigger stops execution before all events in `Trigger.New` are processed, either because of an uncaught exception or intentionally, the trigger is invoked again. The new execution starts with the event message in the stream after the one with the checkpointed Replay ID.

Signature

```
public void setResumeCheckpoint(String resumeReplayId)
```

Parameters

`resumeReplayId`
Type: String

The replay ID of the last successfully processed platform event message, after which to resume processing in a new trigger execution context.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

The method throws an `EventBus.InvalidReplayIdException` if the supplied Replay ID is not valid—the replay ID is not in the current trigger batch of events, in the `Trigger.new` list.

Example

This snippet shows how to call the method and pass in the replayId property of an event instance.

```
EventBus.TriggerContext.currentContext().setResumeCheckpoint(event.replayId);
```

Flow Namespace

The `Flow` namespace provides a class for advanced Visualforce controller access to flows.

The following is the class in the `Flow` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Interview Class
The `Flow.Interview` class provides advanced controller access to flows and the ability to start a flow.

Interview Class

The `Flow.Interview` class provides advanced controller access to flows and the ability to start a flow.

Namespace

Flow

Usage

SOQL and DML limits apply during flow execution. See Per-Transaction Flow Limits in the *Salesforce Help*.

To create an Interview object, you have two options.

- Create the object directly in your class by using:
  - No namespace: `Flow.Interview.flowName`
  - Namespace: `Flow.Interview.namespace.flowName`
- Create the object dynamically by using `createInterview()`

Note: We recommend only using `createInterview()` if you need to reuse your method or class. Using `createInterview()` has these drawbacks.

- If you package a class that uses `createInterview()`, you have to add the associated flow manually.
- If you delete a flow, Salesforce doesn't check if it's referenced with `createInterview()`.

Examples: Starting Flow Interviews

The following examples are all sample controllers that start an interview for the flow from the Build a Discount Calculator project on Trailhead. Each shows a different permutation, based on:

- Whether the interview is created statically, with `Flow.Interview.myFlow`, or dynamically, with `createInterview()`.
- Whether the flow is managed or local.

Interview Created Statically for a Local Flow

```
{
  Map<String, Object> inputs = new Map<String, Object>();
  inputs.put('AccountID', myAccount);
  inputs.put('OpportunityID', myOppty);

  Flow.Interview.Calculate_discounts myFlow =
    new Flow.Interview.Calculate_discounts(inputs);
  myFlow.start();
}
```

Interview Created Dynamically for a Local Flow

```
public void callFlow(String flowName, Map <String, Object> inputs) {
  Flow.Interview myFlow = Flow.Interview.createInterview(flowName, inputs);
  myFlow.start();
}
```

Interview Created Statically for a Managed Flow

```
{
  Map<String, Object> inputs = new Map<String, Object>();
  inputs.put('AccountID', myAccount);
  inputs.put('OpportunityID', myOppty);
```

```
  Flow.Interview.myNamespace.Calculate_discounts myFlow =
    new Flow.Interview.myNamespace.Calculate_discounts(inputs);
  myFlow.start();
}
```

Interview Created Dynamically for a Managed Flow

```
public void callFlow(String namespace, String flowName, Map <String, Object> inputs) {
  Flow.Interview myFlow = Flow.Interview.createInterview(namespace, flowName, inputs);
  myFlow.start();
}
```

Example: Getting Variable Values

This sample uses the `getVariableValue` method to obtain breadcrumb (navigation) information from a flow. If that flow contains subflow elements, and each of the referenced flows also contains a *`vaBreadCrumb`* variable, you can provide users with breadcrumbs regardless of which flow the interview is running.

```
public class SampleController {

   //Instance of the flow
   public Flow.Interview.Flow_Template_Gallery myFlow {get; set;}

   public String getBreadCrumb() {
      String aBreadCrumb;
      if (myFlow==null) { return 'Home';}
      else aBreadCrumb = (String) myFlow.getVariableValue('vaBreadCrumb');

      return(aBreadCrumb==null ? 'Home': aBreadCrumb);

   }
}
```

Interview Methods

The following are instance methods for `Interview`.

`createInterview(namespace, flowName, inputVariables)`

Creates an interview for a namespaced flow.

Signature

```
public static Flow.Interview createInterview(String namespace, String flowName,
Map<String,ANY> inputVariables)
```

Parameters

`namespace`

Type: String

The flow's namespace.

flowName
Type: String

The flow's API name.

inputVariables
Type: Map<String,Object>

Initial values for the flow's input variables.

Return Value

Type: Flow.Interview

Usage

Use this method to dynamically create a Flow.Interview object for the `start()` method.

How you get output variable values from an interview depends on the type of the Apex variable where you're storing the interview.

- If the variable is cast to a specific flow, you can use ***myFlow.myVar*** to access a variable, where ***myVar*** is the name of the variable.

```
system.debug('My Output Variable: ' + myFlow.varName);
```

- If the variable is of type Flow.Interview but not cast to a specific flow, you must use getVariableValue() to access the flow's variables.

```
system.debug('My Output Variable: ' + myFlow.getVariableValue('varName'));
```

If the flow doesn't exist in the current org, a TypeException is thrown.

createInterview(flowName, inputVariables)

Creates an interview for a flow.

Signature

```
public static Flow.Interview createInterview(String flowName, Map<String,Object>
inputVariables)
```

Parameters

flowName
Type: String

The flow's API name.

inputVariables
Type: Map<String,Object>

Initial values for the flow's input variables.

Return Value

Type: Flow.Interview

Usage

Use this method to dynamically create a Flow.Interview object for the `start()` method.

How you get output variable values from an interview depends on the type of the Apex variable where you're storing the interview.

- If the variable is cast to a specific flow, you can use ***myFlow.myVar*** to access a variable, where ***myVar*** is the name of the variable.

```
system.debug('My Output Variable: ' + myFlow.varName);
```

- If the variable is of type Flow.Interview but not cast to a specific flow, you must use getVariableValue() to access the flow's variables.

```
system.debug('My Output Variable: ' + myFlow.getVariableValue('varName'));
```

If the flow doesn't exist in the current org, a TypeException is thrown.

`getVariableValue(variableName)`

Returns the value of the specified flow variable. The flow variable can be in the flow embedded in the Visualforce page, or in a separate flow that is called by a subflow element.

Signature

```
public Object getVariableValue(String variableName)
```

Parameters

`variableName`
Type: String

Specifies the unique name of the flow variable.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

The returned variable value comes from whichever flow the interview is running. If the specified variable can't be found in that flow, the method returns `null`.

This method checks for the existence of the variable at run time only, not at compile time.

`start()`

Starts an instance (interview) for an autolaunched or user provisioning flow.

Signature

```
public Void start()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method can be used only with flows that have one of these types.

- Autolaunched Flow
- User Provisioning Flow

For details, see "Flow Types" in Salesforce Help.

When a flow user invokes an autolaunched flow, the active flow version runs. If there's no active version, the latest version runs. When a flow admin invokes a flow, the latest version always runs.

Functions Namespace (Beta)

The Functions namespace provides classes and methods used to invoke and manage Salesforce Functions.

Note: This feature is a Beta Service. Customer may opt to try such Beta Service in its sole discretion. Any use of the Beta Service is subject to the applicable Beta Services Terms provided at Agreements and Terms.

Salesforce Functions is your code, run on demand, in the Salesforce Functions trusted elastic compute cloud. Upload your complex business logic code, written using your preferred languages and frameworks, and Salesforce Functions takes care of everything else necessary to invoke your code in a secure, multi-tenant aware, and self-scaling environment. For more details on Salesforce Functions, see Salesforce Functions.

The following are the classes in the `functions` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Function Class
Use the Function class to access deployed Salesforce Functions, and invoke them synchronously or asynchronously.

FunctionCallback Interface
Represents the callback Salesforce calls when an asynchronous, queued Function invocation has completed.

FunctionErrorType Enum
Represents the error type of FunctionInvocationError.

FunctionInvocation Interface
Use FunctionInvocation to get the status and results of a synchronous or asynchronous Function invocation.

FunctionInvocationError Interface
Use FunctionInvocationError to get detailed error information about a failed Function invocation.

FunctionInvocationStatus Enum
Represents the status of a Function invocation.

Function Class

Use the Function class to access deployed Salesforce Functions, and invoke them synchronously or asynchronously.

Namespace

functions

Usage

The Function class represents an instance of a deployed Function you can invoke from your org. You can invoke Functions synchronously, or asynchronously using asynchronous Apex.

If your Function takes longer than 2 minutes to return, the request will time out. To avoid timing out, consider using asynchronous invocation. Invoking a Function asynchronously doesn't count against asynchronous Apex limits, such as Apex Queueable limits.

Before synchronously invoking a Function, commit any pending data operations in Apex, otherwise you will get a CalloutException. For asynchronous invocations, the queued invocation won't happen if the Apex transaction is not committed. Any data operations that happen in the Function itself are not considered part of the Apex transaction.

Functions cannot be invoked in an Apex test. A "Function invocations from Apex tests are not supported" CalloutException is thrown if Apex determines that a Function is being invoked during a test. If you must run tests against code that invokes Functions you'll need to mock your Function invocations during the tests. See FunctionInvocation Example Implementation for an example of a mocked FunctionInvocation that you can use in testing.

Example

The following example synchronously invokes a deployed "accountfunction" Function:

```
functions.Function accountFunction = functions.Function.get('MyProject.accountfunction');
functions.FunctionInvocation invocation = accountFunction.invoke('{ "accountName" : "Acct",
 "contactName" : "MyContact", "opportunityName" : "Oppty" }');
String jsonResponse = invocation.getResponse();
```

The following example asynchronously invokes a deployed "AccountFunction" Function, using the provided callback:

```
functions.Function accountFunction = functions.Function.get('MyProject.accountfunction');
accountFunction.invoke('{ "accountName" : "Acct", "contactName" : "MyContact",
"opportunityName" : "Oppty" }', new MyCallback());

public class MyCallback
  implements functions.FunctionCallback {
    public void handleResponse(functions.FunctionInvocation result) {
      // Handle result of function invocation
      // ...
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Function Methods

Function Methods

The following are methods for `Function`.

IN THIS SECTION:

get(functionName)
Returns the Function instance for the named Function and Project. The Function must be properly deployed and have appropriate permissions to work with the org running your Apex code.

invoke(payload, callback)
Invokes the Function asynchronously.

invoke(payload)
Invokes the Function synchronously.

get(functionName)

Returns the Function instance for the named Function and Project. The Function must be properly deployed and have appropriate permissions to work with the org running your Apex code.

Signature

```
public static functions.Function get(String functionName)
```

Parameters

functionName
Type: String

The name of the Salesforce Function and the Functions Project that the Function is part of. The format of the parameter string is "*project name*.*function name*". For example, to retrieve the `generatepdf` Function in the `Onboarding` Function Project, use `Onboarding.generatepdf`. The Function and Project must be deployed to a compute environment connected to the org.

Return Value

Type: functions.Function

Returns a Function instance that you can invoke.

Usage

The `Function.get()` method can throw the following exceptions:

- `InvalidParameterValueException` — The *`functionName`* parameter doesn't have the correct *`project name.function name`* format.
- `NoDataFoundException` — The project or Function name provided in the *`functionName`* parameter couldn't be found. Make sure the project and Function name are spelled correctly and that the project and Function have been properly deployed.

invoke(payload, callback)

Invokes the Function asynchronously.

Signature

```
public functions.FunctionInvocation invoke(String payload, functions.FunctionCallback
callback)
```

Parameters

payload
Type: String

The payload data that gets passed to the Function. Specify your payload data in a JSON-format string.

callback
Type: functions.FunctionCallback

A FunctionCallback implementation that gets called when your Function is invoked asynchronously.

Return Value

Type: functions.FunctionInvocation

Returns a FunctionInvocation that contains information about the results of the invocation, such as the Function response, or error results.

Usage

The `Function.invoke(payload, callback)` method can throw the following exceptions:

- `CalloutException` — One of the following conditions causes this exception to be thrown:
  - For the Salesforce Functions beta only, the Function is being invoked on an unsupported org type. For beta, scratch, sandbox, and trial orgs are supported.
  - Salesforce Functions isn't enabled on the current org. For more details on enabling Functions, see Configure Orgs for Functions in the Functions Developer Guide.
  - The Function is being invoked in an Apex test. Functions can't be invoked in tests.
  - The "Functions" permission set is missing or has incorrect permissions for `FunctionInvocationRequest`. For more details on the correct permissions for `FunctionInvocationRequest` see Function Permissions in the Functions Developer Guide.
  - The provided payload isn't valid JSON.
  - The Function hasn't completed deployment to a compute environment or invocation request returns a 404 HTTP error.
- `InvalidParameterValueException` — The *`callback`* parameter is null or references a class that doesn't implement `functions.FunctionCallback`.
- `NoDataFoundException` — A reference for the Function couldn't be found in the current org. Make sure the project and Function have been properly deployed.

`invoke(payload)`

Invokes the Function synchronously.

Signature

```
public functions.FunctionInvocation invoke(String payload)
```

Parameters

payload
Type: String

The payload data that gets passed to the Function. Specify your payload data in a JSON-format string.

Return Value

Type: functions.FunctionInvocation

Returns a FunctionInvocation that contains information about the results of the invocation, such as the Function response, or error results.

Usage

The `Function.invoke(payload)` method can throw the following exceptions:

- `CalloutException` — One of the following conditions causes this exception to be thrown:
  - For the Salesforce Functions beta only, the Function is being invoked on an unsupported org type. For beta, scratch, sandbox, and trial orgs are supported.
  - Salesforce Functions isn't enabled on the current org. For more details on enabling Functions, see Configure Orgs for Functions in the Functions Developer Guide.
  - The Function is being invoked in an Apex test. Functions can't be invoked in tests.
  - The provided payload isn't valid JSON.
  - There are pending DML operations.
  - The Function is being synchronously invoked from an Apex trigger.
  - The Function hasn't completed deployment to a compute environment or invocation request returns a 404 HTTP error.
  - The Function request returns a 5xx HTTP error.
  - The Function invocation has exceeded the time limit for synchronous invocations. For details on the time limit and work-arounds, see Limits in the Functions Developer Guide.
- `NoDataFoundException` — A reference for the Function couldn't be found in the current org. Make sure the project and Function have been properly deployed.

FunctionCallback Interface

Represents the callback Salesforce calls when an asynchronous, queued Function invocation has completed.

Namespace

functions

Usage

When invoking Functions asynchronously via `Function.invoke(payload, callback)`, you provide your own class that implements FunctionCallback.

IN THIS SECTION:

FunctionCallback Methods

FunctionCallback Example Implementation

FunctionCallback Methods

The following are methods for `FunctionCallback`.

IN THIS SECTION:

handleResponse(var1)
Called when an asynchronous Function invocation has completed.

`handleResponse(var1)`

Called when an asynchronous Function invocation has completed.

Signature

```
public void handleResponse(functions.FunctionInvocation var1)
```

Parameters

var1

Type: functions.FunctionInvocation

The result parameter contains JSON response information and error information.

Return Value

Type: void

FunctionCallback Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `functions.FunctionCallback` interface.

```
public class MyCallback
  implements functions.FunctionCallback {
    public void handleResponse(functions.FunctionInvocation result) {
      // Handle result of function invocation
      String jsonResponse = result.getResponse();
      System.debug('Got response ' + jsonResponse);
      JSONParser parser = JSON.createParser(jsonResponse);
      // Process JSON using your own data class...
    }
}
```

The following example uses this implementation when invoking a Function asynchronously:

```
myFunction.invoke('{ "accountName" : "Acct", "contactName" : "MyContact", "opportunityName"
 : "Oppty" }', new MyCallback());
```

FunctionErrorType Enum

Represents the error type of FunctionInvocationError.

Enum Values

These are the values of the `functions.FunctionErrorType` enum.

Value	Description
`FUNCTION_EXCEPTION`	A known exception resulting from the Function logic itself. Examples include an exception thrown from the Function code, or an exception thrown from a library or framework the Function uses.
`RUNTIME_EXCEPTION`	A known exception resulting from the Salesforce Functions runtime. For example, a malformed payload passed to the Function when invoked results in this error type.
`UNEXPECTED_FUNCTION_EXCEPTION`	An unknown exception. For example, a network or system-level issue within the Salesforce Functions infrastructure results in this error type.

FunctionInvocation Interface

Use FunctionInvocation to get the status and results of a synchronous or asynchronous Function invocation.

Namespace

functions

Usage

The results of a Function invocation are passed back via FunctionInvocation. Use this instance to determine if the invocation was successful, and any results from the Function invocation.

You can also implement your own FunctionInvocation interface if you run Apex tests with your Function invocation code. Your test code can create and use your own FunctionInvocation instance in place of using the results from a call to `Function.invoke()`.

IN THIS SECTION:

FunctionInvocation Methods

FunctionInvocation Example Implementation

FunctionInvocation Methods

The following are methods for `FunctionInvocation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getError()

Returns error information for a Function invocation.

getInvocationId()

Returns the invocation ID of the Function invocation.

getResponse()

Returns the response string of the Function invocation.

getStatus()
Returns the status of the Function invocation.

`getError()`

Returns error information for a Function invocation.

Signature

```
public functions.FunctionInvocationError getError()
```

Return Value

Type: functions.FunctionInvocationError

Contains a `FunctionInvocationError` instance that you can use to get information about any invocation errors. If the Function was invoked successfully, the returned instance is null.

`getInvocationId()`

Returns the invocation ID of the Function invocation.

Signature

```
public String getInvocationId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

This ID is available after a call to either the synchronous or asynchronous `Function.invoke()` methods. For asynchronous invocations, this ID can be used to check the status of the queued invocation.

`getResponse()`

Returns the response string of the Function invocation.

Signature

```
public String getResponse()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The response string is the raw request JSON response, which can be parsed using the JSONParser Class.

`getStatus()`

Returns the status of the Function invocation.

Signature

```
public functions.FunctionInvocationStatus getStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: functions.FunctionInvocationStatus

The result of the invocation, such as `FunctionInvocationStatus.SUCCESS` or `FunctionInvocationStatus.ERROR`.

FunctionInvocation Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `functions.FunctionInvocation` interface.

```
public class MyFunctionInvocationError
  implements functions.FunctionInvocationError {
    public String getMessage() {
      return 'Mock error message for testing';
    }
    public functions.FunctionErrorType getType() {
      return functions.FunctionErrorType.FUNCTION_EXCEPTION;
    }
}

public class MyFunctionInvocation
  implements functions.FunctionInvocation {
    public functions.FunctionInvocationStatus getStatus() {
      return functions.FunctionInvocationStatus.ERROR;
    }
    public String getResponse() {
      return 'Mock response for testing';
    }
    public String getInvocationId() {
      return 'MOCKTESTID';
    }
    public functions.FunctionInvocationError getError() {
      functions.FunctionInvocationError testError = new MyFunctionInvocationError();
      return testError;
    }
}
```

The following example tests the implementation:

```
functions.FunctionInvocation testInvocation = new MyFunctionInvocation();
if (testInvocation.getStatus() == functions.FunctionInvocationStatus.ERROR) {
    System.debug('Error: ' + (testInvocation.getError() != null ?
testInvocation.getError().getMessage() : 'UNKNOWN'));
    return;
}
```

FunctionInvocationError Interface

Use FunctionInvocationError to get detailed error information about a failed Function invocation.

Namespace

functions

Usage

FunctionInvocationError contains various error information such as the error message at the time of the error.

IN THIS SECTION:

FunctionInvocationError Methods

FunctionInvocationError Example Implementation

FunctionInvocationError Methods

The following are methods for `FunctionInvocationError`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getMessage()
Returns the error message from a Function invocation error.

getType()
Returns the error type for FunctionInvocationError.

`getMessage()`

Returns the error message from a Function invocation error.

Signature

```
public String getMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getType()`

Returns the error type for FunctionInvocationError.

Signature

```
public functions.FunctionErrorType getType()
```

Return Value

Type: functions.FunctionErrorType

FunctionInvocationError Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `functions.FunctionInvocationError` interface.

```
public class MyFunctionInvocationError
  implements functions.FunctionInvocationError {
      public String getMessage() {
          return 'Mock error message for testing';
      }
      public functions.FunctionErrorType getType() {
          return functions.FunctionErrorType.FUNCTION_EXCEPTION;
      }
}
```

This example tests the implementation.

```
functions.FunctionInvocationError testError = new MyFunctionInvocationError();
System.debug('Error: ' + testError.getMessage() + ' Type: ' + testError.getType());
```

FunctionInvocationStatus Enum

Represents the status of a Function invocation.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `functions.FunctionInvocationStatus` enum.

Value	Description
`ERROR`	The invocation failed. Check the FunctionInvocation and FunctionInvocationError returned by the invoke call to debug the issue.
`PENDING`	The invocation is pending. If the Function is being invoked asynchronously, the invocation is still in the asynch queue.
`SUCCESS`	The invocation succeeded. Use `FunctionInvocation.getResponse()` with the FunctionInvocation instance returned by the invoke call to get any response returned by the Function.

KbManagement Namespace

The `KbManagement` namespace provides a class for managing knowledge articles.

The following is the class in the `KbManagement` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

PublishingService Class

Use the methods in the `KbManagement.PublishingService` class to manage the lifecycle of an article and its translations.

PublishingService Class

Use the methods in the `KbManagement.PublishingService` class to manage the lifecycle of an article and its translations.

Namespace

KbManagement

Usage

Use the methods in the `KbManagement.PublishingService` class to manage the following parts of the lifecycle of an article and its translations:

- Publishing
- Updating
- Retrieving
- Deleting
- Submitting for translation
- Setting a translation to complete or incomplete status
- Archiving
- Assigning review tasks for draft articles or translations

Note: Date values are based on GMT.

To use the methods in this class, you must enable Salesforce Knowledge. See Salesforce Knowledge Implementation Guide for more information on setting up Salesforce Knowledge.

PublishingService Methods

The following are methods for `PublishingService`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

archiveOnlineArticle(articleId, scheduledDate)
Archives an online version of an article. If the specified scheduledDate is null, the article is archived immediately. Otherwise, it archives the article on the scheduled date.

assignDraftArticleTask(articleId, assigneeId, instructions, dueDate, sendEmailNotification)
Assigns a review task related to a draft article.

assignDraftTranslationTask(articleVersionId, assigneeId, instructions, dueDate, sendEmailNotification)
Assigns a review task related to a draft translation.

cancelScheduledArchivingOfArticle(articleId)
Cancels the scheduled archiving of an online article.

cancelScheduledPublicationOfArticle(articleId)
Cancels the scheduled publication of a draft article.

completeTranslation(articleVersionId)
Puts a translation in a completed state that is ready to publish.

deleteArchivedArticle(articleId)

Deletes an archived article.

deleteArchivedArticleVersion(articleId, versionNumber)

Deletes a specific version of an archived article.

deleteDraftArticle(articleId)

Deletes a draft article.

deleteDraftTranslation(articleVersionId)

Deletes a draft translation.

editArchivedArticle(articleId)

Creates a draft article from the archived master version and returns the new draft master version ID of the article.

editOnlineArticle(articleId, unpublish)

Creates a draft article from the online version and returns the new draft master version ID of the article. Also, unpublishes the online article, if *unpublish* is set to `true`.

editPublishedTranslation(articleId, language, unpublish)

Creates a draft version of the online translation for a specific language and returns the new draft master version ID of the article. Also, unpublishes the article, if set to `true`.

publishArticle(articleId, flagAsNew)

Publishes an article. If *flagAsNew* is set to `true`, the article is published as a major version.

restoreOldVersion(articleId, versionNumber)

Creates a draft article from an existing online article based on the specified archived version of the article and returns the article version ID.

scheduleForPublication(articleId, scheduledDate)

Schedules the article for publication as a major version. If the specified date is null, the article is published immediately.

setTranslationToIncomplete(articleVersionId)

Sets a draft translation that is ready for publication back to "in progress" status.

submitForTranslation(articleId, language, assigneeId, dueDate)

Submits an article for translation to the specified language. Also assigns the specified user and due date to the submittal and returns new ID of the draft translation.

archiveOnlineArticle(articleId, scheduledDate)

Archives an online version of an article. If the specified scheduledDate is null, the article is archived immediately. Otherwise, it archives the article on the scheduled date.

Signature

```
public static Void archiveOnlineArticle(String articleId, Datetime scheduledDate)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

scheduledDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
Datetime scheduledDate = Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2012, 12,1,13,30,0);
KbManagement.PublishingService.archiveOnlineArticle(articleId, scheduledDate);
```

assignDraftArticleTask(articleId, assigneeId, instructions, dueDate, sendEmailNotification)

Assigns a review task related to a draft article.

Signature

```
public static Void assignDraftArticleTask(String articleId, String assigneeId, String
instructions, Datetime dueDate, Boolean sendEmailNotification)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

assigneeId
Type: String

instructions
Type: String

dueDate
Type: Datetime

sendEmailNotification
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String assigneeId = '';
String instructions = 'Please review this draft.';
Datetime dueDate = Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2012, 12, 1);
KbManagement.PublishingService.assignDraftArticleTask(articleId, assigneeId, instructions,
 dueDate, true);
```

assignDraftTranslationTask(articleVersionId, assigneeId, instructions, dueDate, sendEmailNotification)

Assigns a review task related to a draft translation.

Signature

```
public static Void assignDraftTranslationTask(String articleVersionId, String assigneeId,
String instructions, Datetime dueDate, Boolean sendEmailNotification)
```

Parameters

articleVersionId
Type: String

assigneeId
Type: String

instructions
Type: String

dueDate
Type: Datetime

sendEmailNotification
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String assigneeId = 'Insert assignee ID';
String instructions = 'Please review this draft.';
Datetime dueDate = Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2012, 12, 1);
KbManagement.PublishingService.assignDraftTranslationTask(articleId, assigneeId,
instructions, dueDate, true);
```

cancelScheduledArchivingOfArticle(articleId)

Cancels the scheduled archiving of an online article.

Signature

```
public static Void cancelScheduledArchivingOfArticle(String articleId)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.cancelScheduledArchivingOfArticle (articleId);
```

cancelScheduledPublicationOfArticle(articleId)

Cancels the scheduled publication of a draft article.

Signature

```
public static Void cancelScheduledPublicationOfArticle(String articleId)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.cancelScheduledPublicationOfArticle (articleId);
```

completeTranslation(articleVersionId)

Puts a translation in a completed state that is ready to publish.

Signature

```
public static Void completeTranslation(String articleVersionId)
```

Parameters

articleVersionId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleVersionId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.completeTranslation(articleVersionId);
```

deleteArchivedArticle(articleId)

Deletes an archived article.

Signature

```
public static Void deleteArchivedArticle(String articleId)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.deleteArchivedArticle(articleId);
```

deleteArchivedArticleVersion(articleId, versionNumber)

Deletes a specific version of an archived article.

Signature

```
public static Void deleteArchivedArticleVersion(String articleId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
Integer versionNumber = 1;
KbManagement.PublishingService.deleteArchivedArticleVersion(articleId, versionNumber);
```

deleteDraftArticle(articleId)

Deletes a draft article.

Signature

```
public static Void deleteDraftArticle(String articleId)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.deleteDraftArticle(articleId);
```

deleteDraftTranslation(articleVersionId)

Deletes a draft translation.

Signature

```
public static Void deleteDraftTranslation(String articleVersionId)
```

Parameters

articleVersionId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleVersionId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.deleteDraftTranslation (articleVersionId);
```

editArchivedArticle(articleId)

Creates a draft article from the archived master version and returns the new draft master version ID of the article.

Signature

```
public static String editArchivedArticle(String articleId)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String id = KbManagement.PublishingService.editArchivedArticle(articleId);
```

editOnlineArticle(articleId, unpublish)

Creates a draft article from the online version and returns the new draft master version ID of the article. Also, unpublishes the online article, if *unpublish* is set to `true`.

Signature

```
public static String editOnlineArticle(String articleId, Boolean unpublish)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

unpublish
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String id = KbManagement.PublishingService.editOnlineArticle (articleId, true);
```

editPublishedTranslation(articleId, language, unpublish)

Creates a draft version of the online translation for a specific language and returns the new draft master version ID of the article. Also, unpublishes the article, if set to `true`.

Signature

```
public static String editPublishedTranslation(String articleId, String language, Boolean unpublish)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

language
Type: String

unpublish
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String language = 'fr';
String id = KbManagement.PublishingService.editPublishedTranslation(articleId, language, true);
```

publishArticle(articleId, flagAsNew)

Publishes an article. If *flagAsNew* is set to `true`, the article is published as a major version.

Signature

```
public static Void publishArticle(String articleId, Boolean flagAsNew)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

flagAsNew
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.publishArticle(articleId, true);
```

restoreOldVersion(articleId, versionNumber)

Creates a draft article from an existing online article based on the specified archived version of the article and returns the article version ID.

Signature

```
public static String restoreOldVersion(String articleId, Integer versionNumber)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

versionNumber
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String id = KbManagement.PublishingService.restoreOldVersion (articleId, 1);
```

scheduleForPublication(articleId, scheduledDate)

Schedules the article for publication as a major version. If the specified date is null, the article is published immediately.

Signature

```
public static Void scheduleForPublication(String articleId, Datetime scheduledDate)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

scheduledDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
Datetime scheduledDate = Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2012, 12,1,13,30,0);
KbManagement.PublishingService.scheduleForPublication(articleId, scheduledDate);
```

setTranslationToIncomplete(articleVersionId)

Sets a draft translation that is ready for publication back to "in progress" status.

Signature

```
public static Void setTranslationToIncomplete(String articleVersionId)
```

Parameters

articleVersionId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
String articleVersionId = 'Insert article ID';
KbManagement.PublishingService.setTranslationToIncomplete(articleVersionId);
```

submitForTranslation(articleId, language, assigneeId, dueDate)

Submits an article for translation to the specified language. Also assigns the specified user and due date to the submittal and returns new ID of the draft translation.

Signature

```
public static String submitForTranslation(String articleId, String language, String
assigneeId, Datetime dueDate)
```

Parameters

articleId
Type: String

language
Type: String

assigneeId
Type: String

dueDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String articleId = 'Insert article ID';
String language = 'fr';
String assigneeId = 'Insert assignee ID';
Datetime dueDate = Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2012, 12,1);
String id = KbManagement.PublishingService.submitForTranslation(articleId, language,
assigneeId, dueDate);
```

LxScheduler Namespace

The `LxScheduler` namespace provides an interface and classes for integrating Salesforce Scheduler with external calendars.

The following are the classes and the interface in the `LxScheduler` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

GetAppointmentCandidatesInput Class
Contains information about the available service resources (appointment candidates) based on work type group and service territories.

GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder Class
Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` class.

GetAppointmentSlotsInput Class
Contains information about the available appointment time slots for a resource based on given work type group and territories.

GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder Class
Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput` class.

SchedulerResources Class
Contains methods that holds the business logic to get resources availability.

SkillRequirement Class
Contains information about the set the skills that are required to complete a particular task for a work type.

SkillRequirementBuilder Class
Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirement` class.

WorkType Class
Contains information about the type of work to be performed.

WorkTypeBuilder Class
Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` class.

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Interface
Allows an implementing class to check external calendar events to find already booked time slots for the requested service resources. This interface is part of Salesforce Scheduler.

ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo Class
Represents the list of parameters that are passed to the ServiceResourceScheduleHandler interface. This class is implemented internally by Apex.

ServiceResourceInfo Class

Contains information about a service resource.

ServiceResourceSchedule Class

Use this class to pass results from your implemented Apex class to the ServiceResourceScheduleHandler interface methods.

UnavailableTimeslot Class

Use this class to pass the unavailable time slots to the lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule class.

GetAppointmentCandidatesInput Class

Contains information about the available service resources (appointment candidates) based on work type group and service territories.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Usage

The constructor for this class can't be called directly. Create an instance of this class using the GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder.build() method.

This example shows how to get a list of available appointment candidates based on `workTypeGroupId`:

```
//Build input for GetAppointmentCandidates API
   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder()
     .setWorkTypeGroupId('0VSRM0000000ABc4AM')
     .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0HhRM0000000FXd0AM'})
     .setStartTime(System.now().format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/New_York'))

.setEndTime(System.now().addDays(5).format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/New_York'))

     .setAccountId('001RM0000053iQgYAI')
     .setSchedulingPolicyId('0VrRM00000000Bx')
     .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('50.0'))
     .build();

   String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input);
```

This example shows how to get a list of available appointment candidates based on `workType`:

```
//Build WorkType
   lxscheduler.WorkType workType = new lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder()
     .setId('08qRM0000000G9RYAU')
     .build();

   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder()
     .setWorkType(workType)
     .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0HhRM0000000FXd0AM'})
     .setStartTime(System.now().format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/New_York'))

.setEndTime(System.now().addDays(5).format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/New_York'))
```

```
      .setAccountId('001RM0000053iQgYAI')
      .setSchedulingPolicyId('0VrRM00000000Bx')
      .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('50.0'))
      .build();

   String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input);
```

This example shows how to get a list of available candidate appointments based on `durationInMinutes` and without the `workTypeGroupId` or `workType` fields:

```
//Build SkillRequirement
   lxscheduler.SkillRequirement skillReq = new lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder()
     .setSkillId('0C5RM0000004EZS0A2')
     .setSkillLevel(90)
     .build();

//Build WorkType
   lxscheduler.WorkType workType = new lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder()
     .setDurationInMinutes(15)
     .setBlockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes(5)
     .setBlockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes(5)
     .setTimeFrameStartInMinutes(10080)
     .setTimeFrameEndInMinutes(40320)
     .setOperatingHoursId('0OHRM0000000FmG4AU')
     .setSkillRequirements(new List<lxscheduler.SkillRequirement>{skillReq})
     .build();

   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder()
     .setWorkType(workType)
     .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0HhRM0000000FXd0AM'})
     .setSchedulingPolicyId('0VrRM00000000Bx')
     .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('50.0'))
     .build();

   String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input);
```

This example shows a sample response of a list of available candidates:

```
[
   {
      "startTime": "2021-02-16T16:15:00.000+0000",
      "endTime": "2021-02-16T16:16:00.000+0000",
      "resources": [
         "0Hnxx0000004C9BCAU"
      ],
      "territoryId": "0Hhxx0000004C92CAE"
   },
   {
      "startTime": "2021-02-16T16:30:00.000+0000",
      "endTime": "2021-02-16T16:31:00.000+0000",
      "resources": [
        "0Hnxx0000004C9BCAU"
```

```
        ],
        "territoryId": "0Hhxx0000004C92CAE"
    },
]
```

GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder Class

Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` class.

A Builder object is obtained by invoking one of the `GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder` methods defined by the `GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` class.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder Methods

GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

build()

Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` object.

setAccountId(accountId)

Sets the ID of the associated account for which you want to create the appointments.

setAllowConcurrent(allowConcurrent)

Allows the scheduling of concurrent appointments.

setApiVersion(apiVersion)

Sets the API version of the business logic for the `getAppointmentCandidates` method.

setEndTime(endTime)

Sets the scheduling end time.

setFilterByResources(filterByResources)

Enables filtering resources using a comma-separated list of service resource IDs.

setSchedulingPolicyId(schedulingPolicyId)

Sets the ID of the AppointmentSchedulingPolicy object.

setStartTime(startTime)

Sets the scheduling start time to the specified time.

setTerritoryIds(territoryIds)

Sets the service territory IDs.

setWorkType(workType)
Sets the type of work to be performed.

setWorkTypeGroupId(workTypeGroupId)
Sets the ID of the work type group.

build()

Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput build()
```

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput

setAccountId(accountId)

Sets the ID of the associated account for which you want to create the appointments.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setAccountId(String accountId)
```

Parameters

accountId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

setAllowConcurrent(allowConcurrent)

Allows the scheduling of concurrent appointments.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setAllowConcurrent(Boolean
allowConcurrent)
```

Parameters

allowConcurrent
Type: Boolean

If true, allows scheduling of concurrent appointments in a time slot. The default is false.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setApiVersion(apiVersion)`

Sets the API version of the business logic for the `getAppointmentCandidates` method.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setApiVersion(Double apiVersion)
```

Parameters

`apiVersion`
Type: Double

Usage

The specified parameter must use the correct API version. For example, if API version is set to 45.0 and *`filterByResources`* is set (which is available in API version 51.0 and later), then this field is ignored. If no API version or incorrect API version is passed in the request body, by default the latest version is used.

Note: The API is available since version 45.0.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setEndTime(endTime)`

Sets the scheduling end time.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setEndTime(String endTime)
```

Parameters

`endTime`
Type: String

The latest time that a time slot can end (inclusive).

Note: If end time is not specified, it defaults to 31 days.

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "['yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ']" in the local time zone. Defaults to the user's time zone.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setFilterByResources(filterByResources)`

Enables filtering resources using a comma-separated list of service resource IDs.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setFilterByResources(List<String>
filterByResources)
```

Parameters

`filterByResources`
Type: List<String>

Gets only eligible resources that are both in the list and in the selected service territory sorted by the order in which the resource IDs are passed. This field is available in API version 51.0 and later.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setSchedulingPolicyId(schedulingPolicyId)`

Sets the ID of the AppointmentSchedulingPolicy object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setSchedulingPolicyId(String
schedulingPolicyId)
```

Parameters

`schedulingPolicyId`
Type: String

The ID of the `AppointmentSchedulingPolicy` object. If no scheduling policy is passed in the request body, the default configurations are used.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setStartTime(startTime)`

Sets the scheduling start time to the specified time.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setStartTime(String startTime)
```

Parameters

startTime
Type: String

The earliest time that a time slot can begin (inclusive). You can also use a time from the past.

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "['yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ']" in the local time zone. Defaults to the user's time zone.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

setTerritoryIds(territoryIds)

Sets the service territory IDs.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setTerritoryIds(List<String>
territoryIds)
```

Parameters

territoryIds
Type: List<String>

List of service territory IDs, where the work that is being requested is performed. This is a required field.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

setWorkType(workType)

Sets the type of work to be performed.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setWorkType(lxscheduler.WorkType
workType)
```

Parameters

workType
Type: lxscheduler.WorkType

This method takes input as an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` class. Build the instance of the input class using the `lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder` class.

Required if *`workTypeGroupId`* is not given. If id of the *`workType`* is given, the rest of *`workType`* fields are optional.

Usage

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

`setWorkTypeGroupId(workTypeGroupId)`

Sets the ID of the work type group.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder setWorkTypeGroupId(String
workTypeGroupId)
```

Parameters

`workTypeGroupId`
Type: String

The ID of the work type group containing the work types that are being performed. Required if *`workType`* is not given. If *`workType`* is given, then you must provide either *`id`* or *`durationInMinutes`*, but not both.

Return Value

Type: LxScheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder

GetAppointmentSlotsInput Class

Contains information about the available appointment time slots for a resource based on given work type group and territories.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Usage

The constructor for this class can't be called directly. Create an instance of this class using the GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder.build() method.

This example shows how to get a list of available time slots based on `workTypeGroupId`:

```
//Build input for GetAppointmentSlots API
   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder()
      .setWorkTypeGroupId('0VSxx0000004C92GAE')
```

```
      .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0Hhxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setStartTime(System.now().format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ'))
      .setEndTime(System.now().addDays(1).format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ'))
      .setAccountId('001xx000003GYK0AAO')
      .setRequiredResourceIds(new List<String>{'0Hnxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setSchedulingPolicyId('0Vrxx0000004CAe')
      .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('48.0'))
      .build();

String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentSlots(input);
```

This example shows how to get a list of available time slots based on `workType`:

```
//Build WorkType
   lxscheduler.WorkType workType = new lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder()
      .setId('08qxx0000004C92AAE')
      .build();

   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder()
      .setWorkType(workType)
      .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0Hhxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setStartTime(System.now().format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ'))
      .setEndTime(System.now().addDays(1).format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ'))
      .setAccountId('001xx000003GYK0AAO')
      .setRequiredResourceIds(new List<String>{'0Hnxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setSchedulingPolicyId('0Vrxx0000004CAe')
      .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('48.0'))
      .build();

String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentSlots(input);
```

This example shows how to get a list of available time slots based on `durationInMinutes` and without `workTypeGroupId` or `workType` fields:

```
//Build WorkType
   lxscheduler.WorkType workType = new lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder()
      .setDurationInMinutes(60)
      .build();

   lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder()
      .setWorkType(workType)
      .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0Hhxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setRequiredResourceIds(new List<String>{'0Hnxx0000004C92CAE'})
      .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('48.0'))
      .build();

   String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentSlots(input);
```

This example shows a sample response of a list of available time slots:

```
[
   {
     "territoryId": "0Hhxx0000004C92CAE",
     "startTime": "2021-02-10T16:00:00.000+0000",
```

```
      "endTime": "2021-02-10T16:15:00.000+0000",
      "remainingAppointments": 1
    },
    {
      "territoryId": "0Hhxx0000004C92CAE",
      "startTime": "2021-02-10T16:15:00.000+0000",
      "endTime": "2021-02-10T16:30:00.000+0000",
      "remainingAppointments": 1
    },
]
```

GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder Class

Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput` class.

A Builder object is obtained by invoking one of the `GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder` methods defined by the `GetAppointmentSlotsInput` class.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder Methods

GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

build()
Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput` object.

setAccountId(accountId)
Sets the ID of the associated account for which you want to create appointments.

setAllowConcurrentScheduling(allowConcurrentScheduling)
Allows the scheduling of concurrent appointments.

setApiVersion(apiVersion)
Sets the API version of the business logic for the `getAppointmentSlots` method.

setEndTime(endTime)
Sets the scheduling end time.

setPrimaryResourceId(primaryResourceId)
Sets the ID of the primary resource.

setRequiredResourceIds(requiredResourceIds)
Sets the resource IDs.

setSchedulingPolicyId(schedulingPolicyId)
Sets the ID of the `AppointmentSchedulingPolicy` object.

setStartTime(startTime)
Sets the scheduling start time.

setTerritoryIds(territoryIds)
Sets the IDs of service territories.

setWorkType(workType)
Sets the type of work to be performed.

setWorkTypeGroupId(workTypeGroupId)
Sets the ID of the work type group.

`build()`

Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput` object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput build()
```

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput

`setAccountId(accountId)`

Sets the ID of the associated account for which you want to create appointments.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setAccountId(String accountId)
```

Parameters

`accountId`
Type: String

The ID of the associated account.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

`setAllowConcurrentScheduling(allowConcurrentScheduling)`

Allows the scheduling of concurrent appointments.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setAllowConcurrentScheduling(Boolean allowConcurrentScheduling)
```

Parameters

allowConcurrentScheduling
Type: Boolean

If true, allows scheduling of concurrent appointments in a time slot. If false, concurrent appointments are not allowed. The default is false. Available in API version 47.0 and later.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setApiVersion(apiVersion)

Sets the API version of the business logic for the `getAppointmentSlots` method.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setApiVersion(Double apiVersion)
```

Parameters

apiVersion
Type: Double

Usage

The specified parameter must use the correct API version. For example, if API version is set to 45.0 and *primaryResourceId* is set (which is available in API version 48.0 and later), then this field is ignored. If no API version or incorrect API version is passed in the request body, by default the latest version is used.

Note: The API is available since version 45.0.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setEndTime(endTime)

Sets the scheduling end time.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setEndTime(String endTime)
```

Parameters

endTime
Type: String

The latest time that a time slot can end (inclusive). If end time is not specified, it defaults to 31 days.

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "['yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ']" in the local time zone. Defaults to the user's time zone.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setPrimaryResourceId(primaryResourceId)

Sets the ID of the primary resource.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setPrimaryResourceId(String
primaryResourceId)
```

Parameters

primaryResourceId
Type: String

The ID of the primary resource in multi-resource scheduling. Required only when multi-resource scheduling is enabled. Available in API version 48.0 and later.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setRequiredResourceIds(requiredResourceIds)

Sets the resource IDs.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setRequiredResourceIds(List<String>
requiredResourceIds)
```

Parameters

requiredResourceIds
Type: List<String>

List of resource IDs that must be available during the time slot. This is a required field.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

`setSchedulingPolicyId(schedulingPolicyId)`

Sets the ID of the `AppointmentSchedulingPolicy` object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setSchedulingPolicyId(String schedulingPolicyId)
```

Parameters

`schedulingPolicyId`
Type: String

If no scheduling policy is passed in the request body, the default configurations are used.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

`setStartTime(startTime)`

Sets the scheduling start time.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setStartTime(String startTime)
```

Parameters

`startTime`
Type: String

The earliest time that a time slot can begin (inclusive). Defaults to the current time of the request, if empty.

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "['yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ']" in the local time zone. Defaults to the user's time zone.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

`setTerritoryIds(territoryIds)`

Sets the IDs of service territories.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setTerritoryIds(List<String>
territoryIds)
```

Parameters

territoryIds
Type: List<String>

List of IDs of service territories, where the work that is being requested is performed. This is a required field.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setWorkType(workType)

Sets the type of work to be performed.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setWorkType(lxscheduler.WorkType
workType)
```

Parameters

workType
Type: lxscheduler.WorkType

This method takes input as an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` class. Build the instance of the input class using the `lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder` class.

Required if *workTypeGroupId* is not given.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

setWorkTypeGroupId(workTypeGroupId)

Sets the ID of the work type group.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder setWorkTypeGroupId(String
workTypeGroupId)
```

Parameters

workTypeGroupId
Type: String

The ID of the work type group containing the work types that are being performed.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder

SchedulerResources Class

Contains methods that holds the business logic to get resources availability.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Implementation Considerations

Apex implementation of the methods in the `SchedulerResources` class should adhere to Apex Governor Limits. It includes synchronous heap size limit, synchronous CPU time limit, and synchronous concurrent transactions for long running transactions. To avoid governor limits, you must tune the input by reducing the time frame, limiting number of service resources, or limiting number or territories at a time. This will reduce the overall transaction time and response size of the implementation. For more information on standard Apex Governer Limits, see Salesforce Developer Limits and Allocations Quick Reference.

Example

To get list of available service resources (appointment candidates):

```
String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input);
```

To get a list of available appointment time slots for a resource:

```
String response = lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

SchedulerResources Methods

SchedulerResources Methods

The following are methods for `SchedulerResources`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAppointmentCandidates(getAppointmentCandidatesInput)
Returns a list of available service resources.

getAppointmentSlots(getAppointmentSlotsInput)
Returns a list of available appointment time slots for a resource based on given work type group and territories.

setAppointmentCandidatesMock(expectedResponse)
Sets a mock object when running tests for the `getAppointmentCandidates` method.

setAppointmentSlotsMock(expectedResponse)

Sets a mock object when running tests for the `getAppointmentSlots` method.

`getAppointmentCandidates(getAppointmentCandidatesInput)`

Returns a list of available service resources.

Signature

```
public static String getAppointmentCandidates(lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput
getAppointmentCandidatesInput)
```

Parameters

`getAppointmentCandidatesInput`

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput

This method takes input as an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput` class. Build the instance of the input class using the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder` class.

Return Value

Type: String

`getAppointmentSlots(getAppointmentSlotsInput)`

Returns a list of available appointment time slots for a resource based on given work type group and territories.

Signature

```
public static String getAppointmentSlots(lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput
getAppointmentSlotsInput)
```

Parameters

`getAppointmentSlotsInput`

Type: lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput

This method takes input as an instance of the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInput` class. Build the instance of the input class using the `lxscheduler.GetAppointmentSlotsInputBuilder` class.

Return Value

Type: String

`setAppointmentCandidatesMock(expectedResponse)`

Sets a mock object when running tests for the `getAppointmentCandidates` method.

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
public static void setAppointmentCandidatesMock(String expectedResponse)
```

Parameters

expectedResponse
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

This example shows a sample implementation of the `GetAppointmentCandidates` class:

```
public class AppointmentCandidateService {
   //Instance members for parsing
   public String startTime;
   public String endTime;
   public List<String> resources;
   public String territoryId;
   public static List<AppointmentCandidateService> getAppointmentCandidates(){
      //Build input for GetAppointmentCandidates API
      lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInput input = new
lxscheduler.GetAppointmentCandidatesInputBuilder()
         .setWorkTypeGroupId('0VSRM0000000AGT4A2')
         .setTerritoryIds(new List<String>{'0HhRM0000000G8W0AU'})
        .setStartTime(System.now().format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/Los_Angeles'))


.setEndTime(System.now().addDays(2).format('yyyy-MM-dd\'T\'HH:mm:ssZ','America/Los_Angeles'))

         .setSchedulingPolicyId('0VrRM00000000D0')
         .setApiVersion(Double.valueOf('50.0'))
         .build();
      List<AppointmentCandidateService> vList =
parse(lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.getAppointmentCandidates(input));
      return vList;
   }
   private static List<AppointmentCandidateService> parse(String json) {
      return (List<AppointmentCandidateService>) System.JSON.deserialize(json,
List<AppointmentCandidateService>.class);
   }
}
```

This example shows how to set a sample mock using the `setAppointmentCandidatesMock` method:

```
@isTest
private class GetAppointmentCandidatesTest {
   static testMethod void getAppCandidatesTest() {
      String expectedResponse = '[' +
                                    '  {' +
                                   '    \"startTime\": \"2021-03-18T16:00:00.000+0000\",'
 +
```

```
                                        '    \"endTime\": \"2021-03-18T17:00:00.000+0000\",'
+
                                        '    \"resources\": [' +
                                        '      \"0HnRM0000000Fxv0AE\"' +
                                        '    ],' +
                                        '    \"territoryId\": \"0HhRM0000000G8W0AU\"' +
                                        '  },' +
                                        '  {' +
                                       '    \"startTime\": \"2021-03-18T19:00:00.000+0000\",'
 +
                                        '    \"endTime\": \"2021-03-18T20:00:00.000+0000\",'
+
                                        '    \"resources\": [' +
                                        '      \"0HnRM0000000Fxv0AE\"' +
                                        '    ],' +
                                        '    \"territoryId\": \"0HhRM0000000G8W0AU\"' +
                                        '  }' +
                                        ']';
      lxscheduler.SchedulerResources.setAppointmentCandidatesMock(expectedResponse);

      Test.startTest();
         List<AppointmentCandidateService> candidateList =
AppointmentCandidateService.getAppointmentCandidates();
         System.assertEquals(2, candidateList.size(), 'Should return only 2 records!');
      Test.stopTest();
   }
}
```

`setAppointmentSlotsMock(expectedResponse)`

Sets a mock object when running tests for the `getAppointmentSlots` method.

This constructor is intended for test usage and throws an exception if used outside of the Apex test context.

Signature

```
public static void setAppointmentSlotsMock(String expectedResponse)
```

Parameters

`expectedResponse`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

SkillRequirement Class

Contains information about the set the skills that are required to complete a particular task for a work type.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Usage

The constructor for this class can't be called directly. Create an instance of this class using the SkillRequirementBuilder.build() method.

SkillRequirementBuilder Class

Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirement` class.

A Builder object is obtained by invoking one of the `SkillRequirementBuilder` methods defined by the `SkillRequirement` class.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

SkillRequirementBuilder Methods

SkillRequirementBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `SkillRequirementBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

build()
Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirement` object.

setSkillId(skillId)
Sets the skill that is required to complete a particular task for a work type. This is a required field.

setSkillLevel(skillLevel)
Sets the level of the skill that is required to complete a particular task for a work type

`build()`

Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirement` object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.SkillRequirement build()
```

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.SkillRequirement

`setSkillId(skillId)`

Sets the skill that is required to complete a particular task for a work type. This is a required field.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder setSkillId(String skillId)
```

Parameters

skillId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder

`setSkillLevel(skillLevel)`

Sets the level of the skill that is required to complete a particular task for a work type

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder setSkillLevel(Double skillLevel)
```

Parameters

skillLevel
Type: Double

The skill levels can range from zero to 99.99. Depending on your business needs, you might want the skill level to reflect years of experience, certification levels, or license classes.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder

WorkType Class

Contains information about the type of work to be performed.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Usage

The constructor for this class can't be called directly. Create an instance of this class using the WorkTypeBuilder.build() method.

WorkTypeBuilder Class

Contains methods to build an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` class.

A Builder object is obtained by invoking one of the `WorkTypeBuilder` methods defined by the `WorkType` class.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

WorkTypeBuilder Methods

WorkTypeBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `WorkTypeBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

build()
Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` object.

setBlockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes(blockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes)
Sets the time period, in minutes.

setBlockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes(blockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes)
Sets the time period, in minutes.

setDurationInMinutes(durationInMinutes)
Sets the event length.

setId(id)
Sets the ID of the work type to the specified ID.

setOperatingHoursId(operatingHoursId)
Sets the overlap of operating hours.

setSkillRequirements(skillRequirements)
Sets the skills that are required to complete a particular task for a work type.

setTimeFrameEndInMinutes(timeFrameEndInMinutes)
Sets the end of the timeframe.

setTimeFrameStartInMinutes(timeFrameStartInMinutes)
Sets the beginning of the timeframe.

`build()`

Returns an instance of the `lxscheduler.WorkType` object.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkType build()
```

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkType

setBlockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes(blockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes)

Sets the time period, in minutes.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setBlockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes(Integer
blockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes)
```

Parameters

blockTimeAfterAppointmentInMinutes
Type: Integer

The time period after the appointment is considered unavailable.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setBlockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes(blockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes)

Sets the time period, in minutes.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setBlockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes(Integer
blockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes)
```

Parameters

blockTimeBeforeAppointmentInMinutes
Type: Integer

The time period before the appointment is considered as unavailable.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setDurationInMinutes(durationInMinutes)

Sets the event length.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setDurationInMinutes(Integer durationInMinutes)
```

Parameters

durationInMinutes
Type: Integer

Contains the event length, in minutes. Required if *id* is not given.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setId(id)

Sets the ID of the work type to the specified ID.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setId(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

The ID of the work type. Required if *durationInMinutes* is not given.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setOperatingHoursId(operatingHoursId)

Sets the overlap of operating hours.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setOperatingHoursId(String operatingHoursId)
```

Parameters

operatingHoursId
Type: String

The overlap of all operating hours from the account, work type, service territory, and service territory member are considered while determining time slots.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setSkillRequirements(skillRequirements)

Sets the skills that are required to complete a particular task for a work type.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder
setSkillRequirements(List<lxscheduler.SkillRequirement> skillRequirements)
```

Parameters

skillRequirements
Type: List<lxscheduler.SkillRequirement>

This method takes input as an instance of the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirement` class. Build the instance of the input class using the `lxscheduler.SkillRequirementBuilder` class.

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setTimeFrameEndInMinutes(timeFrameEndInMinutes)

Sets the end of the timeframe.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setTimeFrameEndInMinutes(Integer
timeFrameEndInMinutes)
```

Parameters

timeFrameEndInMinutes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

setTimeFrameStartInMinutes(timeFrameStartInMinutes)

Sets the beginning of the timeframe.

Signature

```
public lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder setTimeFrameStartInMinutes(Integer
timeFrameStartInMinutes)
```

Parameters

timeFrameStartInMinutes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: lxscheduler.WorkTypeBuilder

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Interface

Allows an implementing class to check external calendar events to find already booked time slots for the requested service resources. This interface is part of Salesforce Scheduler.

Namespace

LxScheduler

Usage

The `lxscheduler.ServiceResourceScheduleHandler` interface is called by Salesforce Scheduler APIs.

To implement this interface, you must first declare a class with the `implements` keyword as follows:

```
public class ServiceResourceScheduleHandlerImpl implements
LxScheduler.ServiceResourceScheduleHandler{}
```

Next, your class must provide an implementation for the following method:

```
public static List<LxScheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule>
getUnavailableTimeslots(LxScheduler.ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo requestInfo){
      //Your code here
}
```

The implemented method must be declared as `global` or `public`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Methods

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Example Implementation

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Methods

The following are methods for `ServiceResourceScheduleHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getUnavailableTimeslots(var1)
Passes the required information to get unavailable time slots from an external system. The implementation of this method returns the `lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule` class.

`getUnavailableTimeslots(var1)`

Passes the required information to get unavailable time slots from an external system. The implementation of this method returns the `lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule` class.

Signature

```
public List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule>
getUnavailableTimeslots(lxscheduler.ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo var1)
```

Parameters

var1

Type: lxscheduler.ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo

Represents the list of parameters that are passed to the ServiceResourceScheduleHandler interface.

Return Value

Type: List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule>

ServiceResourceScheduleHandler Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `lxscheduler.ServiceResourceScheduleHandler` interface.

```
/**
 * Implement interface lxscheduler.ServiceResourceScheduleHandler
 * This class is called when fetching service resources and time slots through Salesforce
 Scheduler API.*/
   Public class ServiceResourceScheduleHandlerImpl implements
lxscheduler.ServiceResourceScheduleHandler.{

    // The main interface method.
    public static List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule>
getUnavailableTimeslots(lxscheduler.ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo requestInfo){
        //Request info values.
        List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceInfo>
serviceResources=requestInfo.getServiceResources();
        DateTime startDate=requestInfo.getStartDate();
        DateTime endDate=requestInfo.getEndDate();


        List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule> resourceUnavailability = new
List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule>();
        Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot> unavailabilityIntervals = new
Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot>();

        //This is a dummy response. Implement your own business logic to connect to your
internal or external systems.
        for (Integer i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
             //Set the unavailability intervals of a service resource.
            unavailabilityIntervals.add(new
lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot(startDate.addMinutes(15*i),startDate.addMinutes(15*(i+1))));

        }

       for (lxscheduler.ServiceResourceInfo ServiceResource:serviceResources) {
            //Set the unavailability of Service resource.
        resourceUnavailability.add(new
lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule(serviceResource.getServiceResourceId(),unavailabilityIntervals));


       }

        return resourceUnavailability;
```

```
        }
}
```

ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo Class

Represents the list of parameters that are passed to the ServiceResourceScheduleHandler interface. This class is implemented internally by Apex.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo Methods

ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo Methods

The following are methods for `ServiceAppointmentRequestInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAccountId()
Returns the account ID of the customer if the API request contains one.

getCorrelationId()
Returns a unique identifier for a request.

getEndDate()
Returns the end date and time for which unavailable time slots are requested.

getPrimaryResourceId()
Returns the ID of the primary service resource.

getSchedulingPolicyId()
Returns the ID of the scheduling policy that the API request contains.

getServiceResources()
Returns the list of requested service resources for the unavailable time slots.

getStartDate()
Returns the start date and time for which unavailable time slots are requested.

getWorkTypeGroupId()
Returns the work type group ID if the API request contains one.

getWorkTypeId()
Returns the work type ID if the API request contains one.

`getAccountId()`

Returns the account ID of the customer if the API request contains one.

Signature

```
public String getAccountId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getCorrelationId()`

Returns a unique identifier for a request.

Signature

```
public String getCorrelationId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getEndDate()`

Returns the end date and time for which unavailable time slots are requested.

Signature

```
public Datetime getEndDate()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

`getPrimaryResourceId()`

Returns the ID of the primary service resource.

Signature

```
public String getPrimaryResourceId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSchedulingPolicyId()`

Returns the ID of the scheduling policy that the API request contains.

Signature

```
public String getSchedulingPolicyId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getServiceResources()`

Returns the list of requested service resources for the unavailable time slots.

Signature

```
public List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceInfo> getServiceResources()
```

Return Value

Type: List<lxscheduler.ServiceResourceInfo>

`getStartDate()`

Returns the start date and time for which unavailable time slots are requested.

Signature

```
public Datetime getStartDate()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

`getWorkTypeGroupId()`

Returns the work type group ID if the API request contains one.

Signature

```
public String getWorkTypeGroupId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getWorkTypeId()`

Returns the work type ID if the API request contains one.

Signature

```
public String getWorkTypeId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ServiceResourceInfo Class

Contains information about a service resource.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

ServiceResourceInfo Methods

ServiceResourceInfo Methods

The following are methods for `ServiceResourceInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEmail()
Returns the email ID of the service resource.

getResourceType()
Returns the type of the service resource such as Technician or Asset.

getServiceResourceId()
Returns the ID of the service resource.

getTerritoryIds()
Returns a list of requested service territories for the service resource.

getUserId()
Returns the user ID of the service resource.

getUserName()
Returns the user name of the service resource.

`getEmail()`

Returns the email ID of the service resource.

Signature

```
public String getEmail()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getResourceType()`

Returns the type of the service resource such as Technician or Asset.

Signature

```
public String getResourceType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getServiceResourceId()

Returns the ID of the service resource.

Signature

```
public String getServiceResourceId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getTerritoryIds()

Returns a list of requested service territories for the service resource.

Signature

```
public List<String> getTerritoryIds()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

getUserId()

Returns the user ID of the service resource.

Signature

```
public String getUserId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getUserName()

Returns the user name of the service resource.

Signature

```
public String getUserName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ServiceResourceSchedule Class

Use this class to pass results from your implemented Apex class to the ServiceResourceScheduleHandler interface methods.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

ServiceResourceSchedule Constructors

ServiceResourceSchedule Properties

ServiceResourceSchedule Constructors

The following are constructors for `ServiceResourceSchedule`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ServiceResourceSchedule(serviceResourceId, unavailableTimeslots)
Creates a new instance of lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule class.

`ServiceResourceSchedule(serviceResourceId, unavailableTimeslots)`

Creates a new instance of lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule class.

Signature

```
public ServiceResourceSchedule(String serviceResourceId,
Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot> unavailableTimeslots)
```

Parameters

`serviceResourceId`
Type: String

Record ID of the service resource.

`unavailableTimeslots`
Type: Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot>

An instance of lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot class.

ServiceResourceSchedule Properties

The following are properties for `ServiceResourceSchedule`.

IN THIS SECTION:

serviceResourceId
Record ID of the service resource.

unavailableTimeslots
An instance of lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot class.

serviceResourceId

Record ID of the service resource.

Signature

```
public String serviceResourceId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

unavailableTimeslots

An instance of lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot class.

Signature

```
public Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot> unavailableTimeslots {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Set<lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot>

UnavailableTimeslot Class

Use this class to pass the unavailable time slots to the lxscheduler.ServiceResourceSchedule class.

Namespace

LxScheduler

IN THIS SECTION:

UnavailableTimeslot Constructors

UnavailableTimeslot Properties

UnavailableTimeslot Constructors

The following are constructors for `UnavailableTimeslot`.

IN THIS SECTION:

UnavailableTimeslot(timeMin, timeMax)
Creates an instance of lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot class.

UnavailableTimeslot(timeMin, timeMax)

Creates an instance of lxscheduler.UnavailableTimeslot class.

Signature

```
public UnavailableTimeslot(Datetime timeMin, Datetime timeMax)
```

Parameters

timeMin
Type: Datetime

Start time of an unavailable time slot.

timeMax
Type: Datetime

End time of an unavailable time slot.

UnavailableTimeslot Properties

The following are properties for `UnavailableTimeslot`.

IN THIS SECTION:

timeMax
End time of an unavailable time slot.
timeMin
Start time of an unavailable time slot.

timeMax

End time of an unavailable time slot.

Signature

```
public Datetime timeMax {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

timeMin

Start time of an unavailable time slot.

Signature

```
public Datetime timeMin {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

Messaging Namespace

The `Messaging` namespace provides classes and methods for Salesforce outbound and inbound email functionality.

The following are the classes in the `Messaging` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AttachmentRetrievalOption Enum
Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

Email Class (Base Email Methods)
Contains base email methods common to both single and mass email.

EmailFileAttachment Class
EmailFileAttachment is used in SingleEmailMessage to specify attachments passed in as part of the request, as opposed to existing documents in Salesforce.

InboundEmail Class
Represents an inbound email object.

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Class
An InboundEmail object stores binary attachments in an InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment object.

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Class
An InboundEmail object stores text attachments in an InboundEmail.TextAttachment object.

InboundEmailResult Class
The InboundEmailResult object is used to return the result of the email service. If this object is null, the result is assumed to be successful.

InboundEnvelope Class
The InboundEnvelope object stores the envelope information associated with the inbound email, and has the following fields.

MassEmailMessage Class
Contains methods for sending mass email.

InboundEmail.Header Class
An InboundEmail object stores RFC 2822 email header information in an InboundEmail.Header object with the following properties.

PushNotification Class
`PushNotification` is used to configure push notifications and send them from an Apex trigger.

PushNotificationPayload Class
Contains methods to create the notification message payload for an Apple device.

CustomNotification Class
`CustomNotification` is used to create, configure, and send custom notifications from Apex code.

RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult Class
Contains the results for rendering email templates.

RenderEmailTemplateError Class
Represents an error that the `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` object can contain.

SendEmailError Class
Represents an error that the SendEmailResult object may contain.

SendEmailResult Class
Contains the result of sending an email message.

SingleEmailMessage Methods
Contains methods for sending single email messages.

AttachmentRetrievalOption Enum

Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

Use these enum values with the renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId, attachmentRetrievalOption) method.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption` enum.

Value	Description
`METADATA_ONLY`	Includes only the file name, content type, and the object ID in the `fileAttachments` property of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Note: When the template is rendered from a Visualforce template (and not from a static file attached to the template), the object ID is not available.
`METADATA_WITH_BODY`	Includes the attachment content, in addition to the file name, content type, and the object ID in the `fileAttachments` property of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`.
`NONE`	Doesn't include any attachments in `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`.

Email Class (Base Email Methods)

Contains base email methods common to both single and mass email.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

Note: If templates are not being used, all email content must be in plain text, HTML, or both.Visualforce email templates cannot be used for mass email.

Email Methods

The following are methods for `Email`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

setBccSender(bcc)
Indicates whether the email sender receives a copy of the email that is sent. For a mass mail, the sender is only copied on the first email sent.

setReplyTo(replyAddress)
Optional. The email address that receives the message when a recipient replies.

setTemplateID(templateId)
The ID of the template to be merged to create this email. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

setSaveAsActivity(saveAsActivity)
Optional. The default value is `true`, meaning the email is saved as an activity. This argument only applies if the recipient list is based on `targetObjectId` or `targetObjectIds`. If HTML email tracking is enabled for the organization, you will be able to track open rates.

setSenderDisplayName(displayName)
Optional. The name that appears on the From line of the email. This cannot be set if the object associated with a `setOrgWideEmailAddressId` for a SingleEmailMessage has defined its `DisplayName` field.

setUseSignature(useSignature)
Indicates whether the email includes an email signature if the user has one configured. The default is `true`, meaning if the user has a signature it is included in the email unless you specify `false`.

`setBccSender(bcc)`

Indicates whether the email sender receives a copy of the email that is sent. For a mass mail, the sender is only copied on the first email sent.

Signature

```
public Void setBccSender(Boolean bcc)
```

Parameters

bcc
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Note: If the BCC compliance option is set at the organization level, the user cannot add BCC addresses on standard messages. The following error code is returned: `BCC_NOT_ALLOWED_IF_BCC_ COMPLIANCE_ENABLED`. Contact your Salesforce representative for information on BCC compliance.

`setReplyTo(replyAddress)`

Optional. The email address that receives the message when a recipient replies.

Signature

```
public Void setReplyTo(String replyAddress)
```

Parameters

`replyAddress`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setTemplateID(templateId)`

The ID of the template to be merged to create this email. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

Signature

```
public Void setTemplateID(ID templateId)
```

Parameters

`templateId`
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Note: `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody` apply only to single email methods, not to mass email methods.

setSaveAsActivity(saveAsActivity)

Optional. The default value is `true`, meaning the email is saved as an activity. This argument only applies if the recipient list is based on `targetObjectId` or `targetObjectIds`. If HTML email tracking is enabled for the organization, you will be able to track open rates.

Signature

```
public Void setSaveAsActivity(Boolean saveAsActivity)
```

Parameters

saveAsActivity
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

setSenderDisplayName(displayName)

Optional. The name that appears on the From line of the email. This cannot be set if the object associated with a `setOrgWideEmailAddressId` for a SingleEmailMessage has defined its `DisplayName` field.

Signature

```
public Void setSenderDisplayName(String displayName)
```

Parameters

displayName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setUseSignature(useSignature)

Indicates whether the email includes an email signature if the user has one configured. The default is `true`, meaning if the user has a signature it is included in the email unless you specify `false`.

Signature

```
public Void setUseSignature(Boolean useSignature)
```

Parameters

useSignature
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

EmailFileAttachment Class

EmailFileAttachment is used in SingleEmailMessage to specify attachments passed in as part of the request, as opposed to existing documents in Salesforce.

Namespace

Messaging

IN THIS SECTION:

EmailFileAttachment Constructors

EmailFileAttachment Properties

EmailFileAttachment Constructors

The following are constructors for `EmailFileAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

EmailFileAttachment()
Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.EmailFileAttachment` class.

`EmailFileAttachment()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.EmailFileAttachment` class.

Signature

```
public EmailFileAttachment()
```

EmailFileAttachment Properties

The following are properties for `EmailFileAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

body
Gets or sets the attachment itself.

contenttype
Gets or sets the attachment's Content-Type.

filename
Gets or sets the name of the file to attach.

id
Read-Only. Gets the attachment ID.

inline
Specifies a Content-Disposition of inline (`true`) or attachment (`false`).

body

Gets or sets the attachment itself.

Signature

```
public Blob body {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Blob

contenttype

Gets or sets the attachment's Content-Type.

Signature

```
public String contenttype {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

filename

Gets or sets the name of the file to attach.

Signature

```
public String filename {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

id

Read-Only. Gets the attachment ID.

Signature

```
public Id id {get;}
```

Property Value

Type: Id

`inline`

Specifies a Content-Disposition of inline (`true`) or attachment (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean inline {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

InboundEmail Class

Represents an inbound email object.

Namespace

Messaging

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail Constructors

InboundEmail Properties

InboundEmail Constructors

The following are constructors for `InboundEmail`.

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail()

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail` class.

`InboundEmail()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail` class.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail()
```

InboundEmail Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEmail`.

IN THIS SECTION:

binaryAttachments
A list of binary attachments received with the email, if any.

ccAddresses
A list of carbon copy (CC) addresses, if any.

fromAddress
The email address that appears in the From field.

fromName
The name that appears in the From field, if any.

headers
A list of the RFC 2822 headers in the email.

htmlBody
The HTML version of the email, if specified by the sender.

htmlBodyIsTruncated
Indicates whether the HTML body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

inReplyTo
The In-Reply-To field of the incoming email. Identifies the email or emails to which this one is a reply (parent emails). Contains the parent email or emails' message-IDs.

messageId
The Message-ID—the incoming email's unique identifier.

plainTextBody
The plain text version of the email, if specified by the sender.

plainTextBodyIsTruncated
Indicates whether the plain body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

references
The References field of the incoming email. Identifies an email thread. Contains a list of the parent emails' References and message IDs, and possibly the In-Reply-To fields.

replyTo
The email address that appears in the reply-to header.

subject
The subject line of the email, if any.

textAttachments
A list of text attachments received with the email, if any.

toAddresses
The email address that appears in the `To` field.

binaryAttachments

A list of binary attachments received with the email, if any.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment[] binaryAttachments {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment[]

Usage

Examples of binary attachments include image, audio, application, and video files.

ccAddresses

A list of carbon copy (CC) addresses, if any.

Signature

```
public String[] ccAddresses {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String[]

fromAddress

The email address that appears in the From field.

Signature

```
public String fromAddress {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

fromName

The name that appears in the From field, if any.

Signature

```
public String fromName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

headers

A list of the RFC 2822 headers in the email.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail.Header[] headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: InboundEmail.Header[]

Usage

The list of the RFC 2822 headers includes:

- Recieved from
- Custom headers
- Message-ID
- Date

htmlBody

The HTML version of the email, if specified by the sender.

Signature

```
public String htmlBody {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

htmlBodyIsTruncated

Indicates whether the HTML body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

Signature

```
public Boolean htmlBodyIsTruncated {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

inReplyTo

The In-Reply-To field of the incoming email. Identifies the email or emails to which this one is a reply (parent emails). Contains the parent email or emails' message-IDs.

Signature

```
public String inReplyTo {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

messageId

The Message-ID—the incoming email's unique identifier.

Signature

```
public String messageId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

plainTextBody

The plain text version of the email, if specified by the sender.

Signature

```
public String plainTextBody {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

plainTextBodyIsTruncated

Indicates whether the plain body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

Signature

```
public Boolean plainTextBodyIsTruncated {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

references

The References field of the incoming email. Identifies an email thread. Contains a list of the parent emails' References and message IDs, and possibly the In-Reply-To fields.

Signature

```
public String[] references {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String[]

replyTo

The email address that appears in the reply-to header.

Signature

```
public String replyTo {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

If there is no reply-to header, this field is identical to the `fromAddress` field.

subject

The subject line of the email, if any.

Signature

```
public String subject {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

textAttachments

A list of text attachments received with the email, if any.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail.TextAttachment[] textAttachments {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: InboundEmail.TextAttachment[]

Usage

The text attachments can be any of the following:

- Attachments with a Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension (MIME) type of `text`
- Attachments with a MIME type of `application/octet-stream` and a file name that ends with either a `.vcf` or `.vcs` extension. These are saved as `text/x-vcard` and `text/calendar` MIME types, respectively.

toAddresses

The email address that appears in the `To` field.

Signature

```
public String[] toAddresses {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String[]

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Class

An InboundEmail object stores binary attachments in an InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment object.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

Examples of binary attachments include image, audio, application, and video files.

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Constructors

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Properties

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Constructors

The following are constructors for `InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment()
Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment` class.

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment()

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment` class.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment()
```

InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

body
The body of the attachment.

fileName
The name of the attached file.

headers
Any header values associated with the attachment. Examples of header names include `Content-Type`, `Content-Transfer-Encoding`, and `Content-ID`.

mimeTypeSubType
The primary and sub MIME-type.

body

The body of the attachment.

Signature

```
public Blob body {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Blob

fileName

The name of the attached file.

Signature

```
public String fileName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

headers

Any header values associated with the attachment. Examples of header names include `Content-Type`, `Content-Transfer-Encoding`, and `Content-ID`.

Signature

```
public List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header>

mimeTypeSubType

The primary and sub MIME-type.

Signature

```
public String mimeTypeSubType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Class

An InboundEmail object stores text attachments in an InboundEmail.TextAttachment object.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

The text attachments can be any of the following:

- Attachments with a Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension (MIME) type of `text`
- Attachments with a MIME type of `application/octet-stream` and a file name that ends with either a `.vcf` or `.vcs` extension. These are saved as `text/x-vcard` and `text/calendar` MIME types, respectively.

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Constructors

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Properties

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Constructors

The following are constructors for `InboundEmail.TextAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

InboundEmail.TextAttachment()
Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail.TextAttachment` class.

InboundEmail.TextAttachment()

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.InboundEmail.TextAttachment` class.

Signature

```
public InboundEmail.TextAttachment()
```

InboundEmail.TextAttachment Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEmail.TextAttachment`.

IN THIS SECTION:

body
The body of the attachment.

bodyIsTruncated
Indicates whether the attachment body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

charset
The original character set of the body field. The body is re-encoded as UTF-8 as input to the Apex method.

fileName
The name of the attached file.

headers
Any header values associated with the attachment. Examples of header names include `Content-Type`, `Content-Transfer-Encoding`, and `Content-ID`.

mimeTypeSubType
The primary and sub MIME-type.

body

The body of the attachment.

Signature

```
public String body {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

bodyIsTruncated

Indicates whether the attachment body text is truncated (`true`) or not (`false`.)

Signature

```
public Boolean bodyIsTruncated {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

charset

The original character set of the body field. The body is re-encoded as UTF-8 as input to the Apex method.

Signature

```
public String charset {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`fileName`

The name of the attached file.

Signature

```
public String fileName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`headers`

Any header values associated with the attachment. Examples of header names include `Content-Type`, `Content-Transfer-Encoding`, and `Content-ID`.

Signature

```
public List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header>

`mimeTypeSubType`

The primary and sub MIME-type.

Signature

```
public String mimeTypeSubType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

InboundEmailResult Class

The InboundEmailResult object is used to return the result of the email service. If this object is null, the result is assumed to be successful.

Namespace

Messaging

InboundEmailResult Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEmailResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

message
A message that Salesforce returns in the body of a reply email. This field can be populated with text irrespective of the value returned by the `Success` field.

success
A value that indicates whether the email was successfully processed.

message

A message that Salesforce returns in the body of a reply email. This field can be populated with text irrespective of the value returned by the `Success` field.

Signature

```
public String message {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

success

A value that indicates whether the email was successfully processed.

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If `false`, Salesforce rejects the inbound email and sends a reply email to the original sender containing the message specified in the `Message` field.

InboundEnvelope Class

The InboundEnvelope object stores the envelope information associated with the inbound email, and has the following fields.

Namespace

Messaging

InboundEnvelope Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEnvelope`.

IN THIS SECTION:

fromAddress
The name that appears in the `From` field of the envelope, if any.

toAddress
The name that appears in the `To` field of the envelope, if any.

`fromAddress`

The name that appears in the `From` field of the envelope, if any.

Signature

```
public String fromAddress {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`toAddress`

The name that appears in the `To` field of the envelope, if any.

Signature

```
public String toAddress {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

MassEmailMessage Class

Contains methods for sending mass email.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

MassEmailMessage extends Email and inherits all of its methods. All base email (`Email` class) methods are also available to the `MassEmailMessage` objects.

IN THIS SECTION:

MassEmailMessage Constructors

MassEmailMessage Methods

SEE ALSO:

Email Class (Base Email Methods)

MassEmailMessage Constructors

The following are constructors for `MassEmailMessage`.

IN THIS SECTION:

MassEmailMessage()
Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.MassEmailMessage` class.

`MassEmailMessage()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.MassEmailMessage` class.

Signature

```
public MassEmailMessage()
```

MassEmailMessage Methods

The following are methods for `MassEmailMessage`. All are instance methods. All base email (`Email` class) methods are also available to the `MassEmailMessage` objects. These methods are described in Email Class (Base Email Methods).

IN THIS SECTION:

setDescription(description)
The description of the email.

setTargetObjectIds(targetObjectIds)
A list of IDs of the contacts, leads, or users to which the email will be sent. The IDs you specify set the context and ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data. The objects must be of the same type (all contacts, all leads, or all users).

setWhatIds(whatIds)
Optional. If you specify a list of contacts for the `targetObjectIds` field, you can specify a list of `whatIds` as well. This helps to further ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

setDescription(description)

The description of the email.

Signature

```
public Void setDescription(String description)
```

Parameters

description
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setTargetObjectIds(targetObjectIds)

A list of IDs of the contacts, leads, or users to which the email will be sent. The IDs you specify set the context and ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data. The objects must be of the same type (all contacts, all leads, or all users).

Signature

```
public Void setTargetObjectIds(ID[] targetObjectIds)
```

Parameters

targetObjectIds
Type: ID[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can list multiple IDs per email. If you specify a value for the `targetObjectIds` field, optionally specify a `whatId` as well to set the email context to a user, contact, or lead. This ensures that merge fields in the template contain the correct data. Each ID counts against the sending organization's daily mass email limit.

Do not specify the IDs of records that have the `Email Opt Out` option selected.

All emails must have a recipient value in at least one of the following fields:

- `toAddresses`
- `ccAddresses`
- `bccAddresses`
- `targetObjectId`

`setWhatIds(whatIds)`

Optional. If you specify a list of contacts for the `targetObjectIds` field, you can specify a list of `whatIds` as well. This helps to further ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

Signature

```
public Void setWhatIds(ID[] whatIds)
```

Parameters

`whatIds`
Type: ID[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The values must be one of the following types:

- Contract
- Case
- Opportunity
- Product

Note: If you specify `whatIds`, specify one for each `targetObjectId`; otherwise, you will receive an `INVALID_ID_FIELD` error.

InboundEmail.Header Class

An InboundEmail object stores RFC 2822 email header information in an InboundEmail.Header object with the following properties.

Namespace

Messaging

InboundEmail.Header Properties

The following are properties for `InboundEmail.Header`.

IN THIS SECTION:

name
The name of the header parameter, such as `Date` or `Message-ID`.

value
The value of the header.

name

The name of the header parameter, such as `Date` or `Message-ID`.

Signature

```
public String name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

value

The value of the header.

Signature

```
public String value {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

PushNotification Class

`PushNotification` is used to configure push notifications and send them from an Apex trigger.

Namespace

Messaging

Example

This sample Apex trigger sends push notifications to the connected app named *`Test_App`*, which corresponds to a mobile app on iOS mobile clients. The trigger fires after cases have been updated and sends the push notification to two users: the case owner and the user who last modified the case.

```
trigger caseAlert on Case (after update) {

    for(Case cs : Trigger.New)
    {
        // Instantiating a notification
        Messaging.PushNotification msg =
            new Messaging.PushNotification();

        // Assembling the necessary payload parameters for Apple.
        // Apple params are:
        // (<alert text>,<alert sound>,<badge count>,
        // <free-form data>)
        // This example doesn't use badge count or free-form data.
```

```
        // The number of notifications that haven't been acted
        // upon by the intended recipient is best calculated
        // at the time of the push. This timing helps
        // ensure accuracy across multiple target devices.
        Map<String, Object> payload =
            Messaging.PushNotificationPayload.apple(
                'Case ' + cs.CaseNumber + ' status changed to: '
                + cs.Status, '', null, null);

        // Adding the assembled payload to the notification
        msg.setPayload(payload);

        // Getting recipient users
        String userId1 = cs.OwnerId;
        String userId2 = cs.LastModifiedById;

        // Adding recipient users to list
        Set<String> users = new Set<String>();
        users.add(userId1);
        users.add(userId2);

        // Sending the notification to the specified app and users.
        // Here we specify the API name of the connected app.
        msg.send('Test_App', users);
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PushNotification Constructors

PushNotification Methods

PushNotification Constructors

The following are the constructors for `PushNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PushNotification()

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.PushNotification` class.

PushNotification(payload)

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.PushNotification` class using the specified payload parameters as key-value pairs. When you use this constructor, you don't need to call `setPayload` to set the payload.

`PushNotification()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.PushNotification` class.

Signature

```
public PushNotification()
```

`PushNotification(payload)`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.PushNotification` class using the specified payload parameters as key-value pairs. When you use this constructor, you don't need to call `setPayload` to set the payload.

Signature

```
public PushNotification(Map<String,Object> payload)
```

Parameters

payload
Type:Map<String, Object>

The payload, expressed as a map of key-value pairs.

PushNotification Methods

The following are the methods for `PushNotification`. All are global methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

send(application, users)
Sends a push notification message to the specified users.

setPayload(payload)
Sets the payload of the push notification message.

setTtl(ttl)
Reserved for future use.

`send(application, users)`

Sends a push notification message to the specified users.

Signature

```
public void send(String application, Set<String> users)
```

Parameters

application
Type: String

The connected app API name. This corresponds to the mobile client app the notification should be sent to.

users
Type: Set

A set of user IDs that correspond to the users the notification should be sent to.

Example

See the Push Notification Example.

`setPayload(payload)`

Sets the payload of the push notification message.

Signature

```
public void setPayload(Map<String,Object> payload)
```

Parameters

payload

Type: Map<String, Object>

The payload, expressed as a map of key-value pairs.

Payload parameters can be different for each mobile OS vendor. For more information on Apple's payload parameters, search for "Apple Push Notification Service" at https://developer.apple.com/library/mac/documentation/.

To create the payload for an Apple device, see the PushNotificationPayload Class.

Example

See the Push Notification Example.

`setTtl(ttl)`

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public void setTtl(Integer ttl)
```

Parameters

ttl

Type: Integer

Reserved for future use.

`PushNotificationPayload Class`

Contains methods to create the notification message payload for an Apple device.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

Apple has specific requirements for the notification payload. and this class has helper methods to create the payload. For more information on Apple's payload parameters, search for "Apple Push Notification Service" at https://developer.apple.com/library/mac/documentation/.

Example

See the Push Notification Example.

IN THIS SECTION:

PushNotificationPayload Methods

PushNotificationPayload Methods

The following are the methods for `PushNotificationPayload`. All are global static methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

apple(alert, sound, badgeCount, userData)
Helper method that creates a valid Apple payload from the specified arguments.

apple(alertBody, actionLocKey, locKey, locArgs, launchImage, sound, badgeCount, userData)
Helper method that creates a valid Apple payload from the specified arguments.

`apple(alert, sound, badgeCount, userData)`

Helper method that creates a valid Apple payload from the specified arguments.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> apple(String alert, String sound, Integer badgeCount,
Map<String,Object> userData)
```

Parameters

alert
Type: String

Notification message to be sent to the mobile client.

sound
Type: String

Name of a sound file to be played as an alert. This sound file should be in the mobile application bundle.

badgeCount
Type: Integer

Number to display as the badge of the application icon.

userData
Type: Map<String, Object>

Map of key-value pairs that contains any additional data used to provide context for the notification. For example, it can contain IDs of the records that caused the notification to be sent. The mobile client app can use these IDs to display these records.

Return Value

Type:Map<String, Object>

Returns a formatted payload that includes all of the specified arguments.

Usage

To generate a valid payload, you must provide a value for at least one of the following parameters: `alert`, `sound`, `badgeCount`.

Example

See the Push Notification Example.

apple(alertBody, actionLocKey, locKey, locArgs, launchImage, sound, badgeCount, userData)

Helper method that creates a valid Apple payload from the specified arguments.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> apple(String alertBody, String actionLocKey, String
locKey, String[] locArgs, String launchImage, String sound, Integer badgeCount,
Map<String,Object> userData)
```

Parameters

alertBody
Type: String

Text of the alert message.

actionLocKey
Type: String

If a value is specified for the *actionLocKey* argument, an alert with two buttons is displayed. The value is a key to get a localized string in a `Localizable.strings` file to use for the right button's title.

locKey
Type: String

Key to an alert-message string in a `Localizable.strings` file for the current localization.

locArgs
Type: List<String>

Variable string values to appear in place of the format specifiers in *locKey*.

launchImage
Type: String

File name of an image file in the application bundle.

sound
Type: String

Name of a sound file to be played as an alert. This sound file should be in the mobile application bundle.

badgeCount
Type: Integer

Number to display as the badge of the application icon.

userData
Type: Map<String, Object>

Map of key-value pairs that contains any additional data used to provide context for the notification. For example, it can contain IDs of the records that caused the notification to be sent. The mobile client app can use these IDs to display these records.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, Object>

Returns a formatted payload that includes all of the specified arguments.

Usage

To generate a valid payload, you must provide a value for at least one of the following parameters: `alert`, `sound`, `badgeCount`.

CustomNotification Class

`CustomNotification` is used to create, configure, and send custom notifications from Apex code.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

`CustomNotification` allows two approaches to creating and configuring a custom notification.

- Create an instance with the default constructor, and then set notification attributes using the various setter methods.
- Create an instance and configure notification parameters at the same time using the parameterized constructor.

Once the custom notification is configured, call `send()` to send the notification.

Notification Target

The *notification target* is used by the receiving client application to navigate to an appropriate record or page when a user responds to a notification. For example, when a user is notified that a record was updated, responding to the notification can open the relevant record.

You must specify a target for a notification. The target can be specified using either the `targetID` or the `targetPageRef` attribute. Neither attribute is required, but if both are omitted, `send()` throws an exception. If there's no natural target for a notification, set the `targetID` to a dummy value, such as *000000000000000AAA*. A dummy value prevents the exception, and also prevents automatic navigation when responding to the notification in the client app.

You can set both `targetID` and `targetPageRef` in the same notification. The client app that receives the notification determines which target, if any, to use when responding to the notification.

Important: Before Winter '21 you could set only a target record (`targetID`) for a notification. Most client applications expect to find a `targetID` in the notification payload. If you can't update a client app to handle notifications that include only a `targetPageRef`, set the `targetID` to a dummy value.

Execution Context and Notification Permissions

By default Apex code executes in system mode, and doesn't require user permissions to send notifications with `CustomNotification`. However, if your Apex code runs in a user context—for example, by executing anonymous Apex in the Developer Console—the Send Custom Notifications user permission is checked, and `send()` fails if you don't have the required permission.

Example

This example Apex class provides a static method for sending a custom notification to a recipient list. Call this method from a trigger, flow, or wherever you want to send a custom notification from Apex.

```
public without sharing class CustomNotificationFromApex {

    public static void notifyUsers(Set<String> recipientsIds, String targetId) {

        // Get the Id for our custom notification type
        CustomNotificationType notificationType =
            [SELECT Id, DeveloperName
             FROM CustomNotificationType
             WHERE DeveloperName='Custom_Notification'];

        // Create a new custom notification
        Messaging.CustomNotification notification = new Messaging.CustomNotification();

        // Set the contents for the notification
        notification.setTitle('Apex Custom Notification');
        notification.setBody('The notifications are coming from INSIDE the Apex!');

        // Set the notification type and target
        notification.setNotificationTypeId(notificationType.Id);
        notification.setTargetId(targetId);

        // Actually send the notification
        try {
            notification.send(recipientsIds);
        }
        catch (Exception e) {
            System.debug('Problem sending notification: ' + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

Note: This example uses a hard-coded string, *`Custom_Notification`*, as the `DeveloperName` (also known as the API Name) of a Custom Notification Type. Use your custom notification types in your own code.

`CustomNotification.send()` can throw an exception, which is handled minimally in this example. Add more substantial error handling to code you plan to use in production.

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomNotification Constructors

CustomNotification Methods

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Help: Send Custom Notifications

Actions Developer Guide: Custom Notification Actions

Metadata API Developer Guide: CustomNotificationType

CustomNotification Constructors

The following are constructors for `CustomNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomNotification()

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.CustomNotification` class.

CustomNotification(typeId, sender, title, body, targetId, targetPageRef)

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.CustomNotification` class using the specified parameters. When you use this constructor, you don't need to call the various setter methods to define the custom notification attributes.

`CustomNotification()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.CustomNotification` class.

Signature

```
public CustomNotification()
```

`CustomNotification(typeId, sender, title, body, targetId, targetPageRef)`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.CustomNotification` class using the specified parameters. When you use this constructor, you don't need to call the various setter methods to define the custom notification attributes.

Signature

```
public CustomNotification(String typeId, String sender, String title, String body,
String targetId, String targetPageRef)
```

Parameters

typeId

Type: String

The ID of the Custom Notification Type being used for the notification.

sender

Type: String

The User ID of the sender of the notification.

title
Type: String

The title of the notification, as it will be seen by recipients. Maximum characters: 250.

body
Type: String

The body of the notification, as it will be seen by recipients. Maximum characters: 750.

targetId
Type: String

The Record ID for the target record of the notification.

You must specify either a `targetID` or a `targetPageRef`. See Custom Notification Usage.

targetPageRef
Type: String

The `PageReference` for the navigation target of the notification. To see how to specify the target using JSON, see pageReference
.

You must specify either a `targetID` or a `targetPageRef`. See Custom Notification Usage.

CustomNotification Methods

The following are methods for `CustomNotification`.

IN THIS SECTION:

send(users)
Sends a custom notification to the specified users.

setNotificationTypeId(id)
Sets the type of the custom notification.

setTitle(title)
Sets the title of the custom notification.

setBody(body)
Sets the body of the custom notification.

setSenderId(id)
Sets the sender of the custom notification.

setTargetId(targetId)
Sets the target record of the custom notification.

setTargetPageRef(pageRef)
Sets the target page of the custom notification.

`send(users)`

Sends a custom notification to the specified users.

Signature

```
public void send(Set<String> users)
```

Parameters

users
Type: Set<String>

Required. A set of recipient IDs. Each recipient ID corresponds to a recipient or recipient type that the notification should be sent to. Valid recipient or recipient type values are:

- `UserId` — The notification is sent to this user, if this user is active.
- `AccountId` — The notification is sent to all active users who are members of this account's Account Team.

  Note: This recipient type is valid if account teams are enabled for your org.

- `OpportunityId` — The notification is sent to all active users who are members of this opportunity's Opportunity Team.

  Note: This recipient type is valid if team selling is enabled for your org.

- `GroupId` — The notification is sent to all active users who are members of this group.
- `QueueId` — The notification is sent to all active users who are members of this queue.

Values can be combined in a set, up to the maximum of 500 values.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

`setNotificationTypeId(id)`

Sets the type of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setNotificationTypeId(String id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: String

The ID of the Custom Notification Type being used for the notification.

A notification type is required to send a custom notification. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

setTitle(title)

Sets the title of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setTitle(String title)
```

Parameters

title

Type: String

The title of the notification, as it will be seen by recipients. Maximum characters: 250.

A title is required to send a custom notification. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

setBody(body)

Sets the body of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setBody(String body)
```

Parameters

body

Type: String

The body of the notification, as it will be seen by recipients. Maximum characters: 750.

A body is required to send a custom notification. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

`setSenderId(id)`

Sets the sender of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setSenderId(String id)
```

Parameters

id

Type: String

The User ID of the sender of the notification.

Setting a sender is optional. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

`setTargetId(targetId)`

Sets the target record of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setTargetId(String targetId)
```

Parameters

targetId

Type: String

The Record ID for the target record of the notification.

Either a `targetID` or a `targetPageRef` is required to send a custom notification. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

`setTargetPageRef(pageRef)`

Sets the target page of the custom notification.

Signature

```
public void setTargetPageRef(String pageRef)
```

Parameters

pageRef

Type: String

The `PageReference` for the navigation target of the notification.

Either a `targetID` or a `targetPageRef` is required to send a custom notification. See Custom Notification Usage.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

See the Custom Notification Example.

RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult Class

Contains the results for rendering email templates.

Namespace

Messaging

IN THIS SECTION:

RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult Methods

RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult Methods

The following are methods for `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred during the `renderEmailTemplate` method, a `RenderEmailTemplateError` object is returned.

getMergedBody()
Returns the rendered body text with merge field references replaced with the corresponding record data.

getSuccess()
Indicates whether the operation was successful.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred during the `renderEmailTemplate` method, a `RenderEmailTemplateError` object is returned.

Signature

```
public List<Messaging.RenderEmailTemplateError> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Messaging.RenderEmailTemplateError>

`getMergedBody()`

Returns the rendered body text with merge field references replaced with the corresponding record data.

Signature

```
public String getMergedBody()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSuccess()`

Indicates whether the operation was successful.

Signature

```
public Boolean getSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

RenderEmailTemplateError Class

Represents an error that the `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` object can contain.

Namespace

Messaging

IN THIS SECTION:

RenderEmailTemplateError Methods

RenderEmailTemplateError Methods

The following are methods for `RenderEmailTemplateError`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFieldName()
Returns the name of the merge field in the error.

getMessage()
Returns a message describing the error.

getOffset()
Returns the offset within the supplied body text where the error was discovered. If the offset cannot be determined, -1 is returned.

getStatusCode()
Returns a Salesforce API status code.

getFieldName()

Returns the name of the merge field in the error.

Signature

```
public String getFieldName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getMessage()

Returns a message describing the error.

Signature

```
public String getMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOffset()

Returns the offset within the supplied body text where the error was discovered. If the offset cannot be determined, -1 is returned.

Signature

```
public Integer getOffset()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getStatusCode()

Returns a Salesforce API status code.

Signature

```
public System.StatusCode getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: System.StatusCode

SendEmailError Class

Represents an error that the SendEmailResult object may contain.

Namespace

Messaging

SendEmailError Methods

The following are methods for `SendEmailError`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFields()
A list of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

getMessage()
The text of the error message.

getStatusCode()
Returns a code that characterizes the error.

getTargetObjectId()
The ID of the target record for which the error occurred.

`getFields()`

A list of one or more field names. Identifies which fields in the object, if any, affected the error condition.

Signature

```
public String[] getFields()
```

Return Value

Type: String[]

`getMessage()`

The text of the error message.

Signature

```
public String getMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStatusCode()`

Returns a code that characterizes the error.

Signature

```
public System.StatusCode getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: System.StatusCode

Usage

The full list of status codes is available in the WSDL file for your organization. For more information about accessing the WSDL file for your organization, see "Downloading Salesforce WSDLs and Client Authentication Certificates" in the Salesforce online help.

`getTargetObjectId()`

The ID of the target record for which the error occurred.

Signature

```
public String getTargetObjectId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

SendEmailResult Class

Contains the result of sending an email message.

Namespace

Messaging

SendEmailResult Methods

The following are methods for `SendEmailResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurred during the `sendEmail` method, a `SendEmailError` object is returned.

isSuccess()
Indicates whether the email was successfully submitted for delivery (`true`) or not (`false`). Even if `isSuccess` is true, it does not mean the intended recipients received the email, as there could have been a problem with the email address or it could have bounced or been blocked by a spam blocker.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurred during the `sendEmail` method, a `SendEmailError` object is returned.

Signature

```
public SendEmailError[] getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SendEmailError[]

`isSuccess()`

Indicates whether the email was successfully submitted for delivery (`true`) or not (`false`). Even if `isSuccess` is true, it does not mean the intended recipients received the email, as there could have been a problem with the email address or it could have bounced or been blocked by a spam blocker.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

SingleEmailMessage Methods

Contains methods for sending single email messages.

Namespace

Messaging

Usage

SingleEmailMessage extends Email and inherits all of its methods. All base email (`Email` class) methods are also available to the `SingleEmailMessage` objects. Emails sent via SingleEmailMessage count against the sending organization's daily single email limit.

Email properties are readable and writable. Each property has corresponding setter and getter methods. For example, the `toAddresses()` property is equivalent to the `setToAddresses()` and `getToAddresses()` methods. Only the setter methods are documented. However, the `getTemplateName()` method doesn't have an equivalent setter method; use `setTemplateId()` to specify a template name.

IN THIS SECTION:

SingleEmailMessage Constructors

SingleEmailMessage Methods

SEE ALSO:

Email Class (Base Email Methods)

SingleEmailMessage Constructors

The following are constructors for `SingleEmailMessage`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SingleEmailMessage()
Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage` class.

`SingleEmailMessage()`

Creates a new instance of the `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage` class.

Signature

```
public SingleEmailMessage()
```

SingleEmailMessage Methods

The following are methods for `SingleEmailMessage`. All are instance methods. All base email (`Email` class) methods are also available to the `SingleEmailMessage` objects. These methods are described in Email Class (Base Email Methods).

IN THIS SECTION:

getTemplateName()
The name of the template used to create the email.

setBccAddresses(bccAddresses)
Optional. A list of blind carbon copy (BCC) addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

setCcAddresses(ccAddresses)
Optional. A list of carbon copy (CC) addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

setCharset(characterSet)

Optional. The character set for the email. If this value is null, the user's default value is used.

setDocumentAttachments(documentIds)

(Deprecated. Use `setEntityAttachments()` instead.) Optional. A list containing the ID of each document object you want to attach to the email.

setEntityAttachments(ids)

Optional. Array of IDs of Document, ContentVersion, or Attachment items to attach to the email.

setFileAttachments(fileNames)

Optional. A list containing the file names of the binary and text files you want to attach to the email.

setHtmlBody(htmlBody)

Optional. The HTML version of the email, specified by the sender. The value is encoded according to the specification associated with the organization. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

setInReplyTo(parentMessageIds)

Sets the optional In-Reply-To field of the outgoing email. This field identifies the email or emails to which this email is a reply (parent emails).

setOptOutPolicy(emailOptOutPolicy)

Optional. If you added recipients by ID instead of email address and the `Email Opt Out` option is set, this method determines the behavior of the `sendEmail()` call. If you add recipients by their email addresses, the opt-out settings for those recipients aren't checked and those recipients always receive the email.

setPlainTextBody(plainTextBody)

Optional. The text version of the email, specified by the sender. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

setOrgWideEmailAddressId(emailAddressId)

Optional. The ID of the organization-wide email address associated with the outgoing email. The object's `DisplayName` field cannot be set if the `setSenderDisplayName` field is already set.

setReferences(references)

Optional. The References field of the outgoing email. Identifies an email thread. Contains the parent emails' References and message IDs, and possibly the In-Reply-To fields.

setSubject(subject)

Optional. The email subject line. If you are using an email template, the subject line of the template overrides this value.

setTargetObjectId(targetObjectId)

Required if using a template, optional otherwise. The ID of the contact, lead, or user to which the email will be sent. The ID you specify sets the context and ensures that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

setTemplateId(templateId)

Required if using a template, optional otherwise. The ID of the template used to create the email.

setToAddresses(toAddresses)

Optional. A list of email addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

setTreatBodiesAsTemplate(treatAsTemplate)

Optional. If set to `true`, the subject, plain text, and HTML text bodies of the email are treated as template data. The merge fields are resolved using the `renderEmailTemplate` method. Default is `false`.

setTreatTargetObjectAsRecipient(treatAsRecipient)

Optional. If set to `true`, the `targetObjectId` (a contact, lead, or user) is the recipient of the email. If set to `false`, the `targetObjectId` is supplied as the `WhoId` field for template rendering but isn't a recipient of the email. The default is `true`.

setWhatId(whatId)

If you specify a contact for the `targetObjectId` field, you can specify an optional `whatId` as well. This helps to further ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

`getTemplateName()`

The name of the template used to create the email.

Signature

```
public STRING getTemplateName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

There is no equivalent setter method for `getTemplateName()`. If the email didn't use a template, `getTemplateName()` returns nothing. If you use `setTemplateId()`, and then call `getTemplateName()`, the template name associated to the template ID is returned.

`setBccAddresses(bccAddresses)`

Optional. A list of blind carbon copy (BCC) addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

Signature

```
public Void setBccAddresses(String[] bccAddresses)
```

Parameters

`bccAddresses`
Type: String[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

All emails must have a recipient value in at least one of the following fields:

- `toAddresses`
- `ccAddresses`

- `bccAddresses`
- `targetObjectId`

If the BCC compliance option is set at the organization level, the user cannot add BCC addresses on standard messages. The following error code is returned: `BCC_NOT_ALLOWED_IF_BCC_ COMPLIANCE_ENABLED`. Contact your Salesforce representative for information on BCC compliance.

`setCcAddresses(ccAddresses)`

Optional. A list of carbon copy (CC) addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

Signature

```
public Void setCcAddresses(String[] ccAddresses)
```

Parameters

`ccAddresses`
Type: String[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

All emails must have a recipient value in at least one of the following fields:

- `toAddresses`
- `ccAddresses`
- `bccAddresses`
- `targetObjectId`

`setCharset(characterSet)`

Optional. The character set for the email. If this value is null, the user's default value is used.

Signature

```
public Void setCharset(String characterSet)
```

Parameters

`characterSet`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setDocumentAttachments(documentIds)`

(Deprecated. Use `setEntityAttachments()` instead.) Optional. A list containing the ID of each document object you want to attach to the email.

Signature

```
public Void setDocumentAttachments(ID[] documentIds)
```

Parameters

documentIds
Type: ID[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can attach multiple documents as long as the total size of all attachments does not exceed 10 MB.

`setEntityAttachments(ids)`

Optional. Array of IDs of Document, ContentVersion, or Attachment items to attach to the email.

Signature

```
public void setEntityAttachments(List<String> ids)
```

Parameters

ids
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: void

`setFileAttachments(fileNames)`

Optional. A list containing the file names of the binary and text files you want to attach to the email.

Signature

```
public Void setFileAttachments(EmailFileAttachment[] fileNames)
```

Parameters

fileNames
Type: Messaging.EmailFileAttachment[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can attach multiple files as long as the total size of all attachments does not exceed 10 MB.

setHtmlBody(htmlBody)

Optional. The HTML version of the email, specified by the sender. The value is encoded according to the specification associated with the organization. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

Signature

```
public Void setHtmlBody(String htmlBody)
```

Parameters

htmlBody
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setInReplyTo(parentMessageIds)

Sets the optional In-Reply-To field of the outgoing email. This field identifies the email or emails to which this email is a reply (parent emails).

Signature

```
public Void setInReplyTo(String parentMessageIds)
```

Parameters

parentMessageIds
Type: String

Contains one or more parent email message IDs.

Return Value

Type: Void

setOptOutPolicy(emailOptOutPolicy)

Optional. If you added recipients by ID instead of email address and the `Email Opt Out` option is set, this method determines the behavior of the `sendEmail()` call. If you add recipients by their email addresses, the opt-out settings for those recipients aren't checked and those recipients always receive the email.

Signature

```
public void setOptOutPolicy(String emailOptOutPolicy)
```

Parameters

emailOptOutPolicy
Type: String

Possible values of the *emailOptOutPolicy* parameter are:

- `SEND` (default)—The email is sent to all recipients. The recipients' `Email Opt Out` setting is ignored. The setting Enforce email privacy settings is ignored.
- `FILTER`—No email is sent to recipients that have the `Email Opt Out` option set. Emails are sent to the other recipients. The setting Enforce email privacy settings is ignored.
- `REJECT`—If any of the recipients have the `Email Opt Out` option set, `sendEmail()` throws an error and no email is sent. The setting Enforce email privacy settings is respected, as are the selections in the data privacy record based on the Individual object. If any of the recipients have Don't Market, Don't Process, or Forget this Individual selected, `sendEmail()` throws an error and no email is sent.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

This example shows how to send an email with the opt-out setting enforced. Recipients are specified by their IDs. The `FILTER` option causes the email to be sent only to recipients that haven't opted out from email. This example uses dot notation of the email properties, which is equivalent to using the set methods.

```
Messaging.SingleEmailMessage message = new Messaging.SingleEmailMessage();
// Set recipients to two contact IDs.
// Replace IDs with valid record IDs in your org.
message.toAddresses = new String[] { '003D000000QDexS', '003D000000QDfW5' };
message.optOutPolicy = 'FILTER';
message.subject = 'Opt Out Test Message';
message.plainTextBody = 'This is the message body.';
Messaging.SingleEmailMessage[] messages =
    new List<Messaging.SingleEmailMessage> {message};
         Messaging.SendEmailResult[] results = Messaging.sendEmail(messages);
if (results[0].success) {
    System.debug('The email was sent successfully.');
} else {
    System.debug('The email failed to send: '
          + results[0].errors[0].message);
}
```

`setPlainTextBody(plainTextBody)`

Optional. The text version of the email, specified by the sender. Specify a value for `setTemplateId`, `setHtmlBody`, or `setPlainTextBody`. Or, you can define both `setHtmlBody` and `setPlainTextBody`.

Signature

```
public Void setPlainTextBody(String plainTextBody)
```

Parameters

plainTextBody
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setOrgWideEmailAddressId(emailAddressId)

Optional. The ID of the organization-wide email address associated with the outgoing email. The object's `DisplayName` field cannot be set if the `setSenderDisplayName` field is already set.

Signature

```
public Void setOrgWideEmailAddressId(ID emailAddressId)
```

Parameters

emailAddressId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setReferences(references)

Optional. The References field of the outgoing email. Identifies an email thread. Contains the parent emails' References and message IDs, and possibly the In-Reply-To fields.

Signature

```
public Void setReferences(String references)
```

Parameters

references
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setSubject(subject)

Optional. The email subject line. If you are using an email template, the subject line of the template overrides this value.

Signature

```
public Void setSubject(String subject)
```

Parameters

subject
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setTargetObjectId(targetObjectId)

Required if using a template, optional otherwise. The ID of the contact, lead, or user to which the email will be sent. The ID you specify sets the context and ensures that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

Signature

```
public Void setTargetObjectId(ID targetObjectId)
```

Parameters

targetObjectId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Do not specify the IDs of records that have the `Email Opt Out` option selected.

All emails must have a recipient value in at least one of the following fields:

- `toAddresses`
- `ccAddresses`
- `bccAddresses`
- `targetObjectId`

setTemplateId(templateId)

Required if using a template, optional otherwise. The ID of the template used to create the email.

Signature

```
public Void setTemplateId(ID templateId)
```

Parameters

templateId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

setToAddresses(toAddresses)

Optional. A list of email addresses or object IDs of the contacts, leads, and users you're sending the email to. The maximum size for this field is 4,000 bytes. The maximum total of `toAddresses`, `ccAddresses`, and `bccAddresses` per email is 150. All recipients in these three fields count against the limit for email sent using Apex or the API.

Signature

```
public Void setToAddresses(String[] toAddresses)
```

Parameters

toAddresses
Type: String[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

All emails must have a recipient value in at least one of the following fields:

- `toAddresses`
- `ccAddresses`
- `bccAddresses`
- `targetObjectId`

setTreatBodiesAsTemplate(treatAsTemplate)

Optional. If set to `true`, the subject, plain text, and HTML text bodies of the email are treated as template data. The merge fields are resolved using the `renderEmailTemplate` method. Default is `false`.

Signature

```
public void setTreatBodiesAsTemplate(Boolean treatAsTemplate)
```

Parameters

treatAsTemplate
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setTreatTargetObjectAsRecipient(treatAsRecipient)

Optional. If set to `true`, the `targetObjectId` (a contact, lead, or user) is the recipient of the email. If set to `false`, the `targetObjectId` is supplied as the `WhoId` field for template rendering but isn't a recipient of the email. The default is `true`.

Signature

```
public void setTreatTargetObjectAsRecipient(Boolean treatAsRecipient)
```

Parameters

treatAsRecipient
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Note: You can set TO, CC, and BCC addresses using the email messaging methods regardless of whether a template is used for the email or the target object is a recipient.

setWhatId(whatId)

If you specify a contact for the `targetObjectId` field, you can specify an optional `whatId` as well. This helps to further ensure that merge fields in the template contain the correct data.

Signature

```
public Void setWhatId(ID whatId)
```

Parameters

whatId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The value must be one of the following types:

- Account
- Asset
- Campaign
- Case
- Contract
- Opportunity
- Order
- Product
- Solution
- Custom

Metadata Namespace

The `Metadata` namespace provides classes and methods for working with custom metadata in Salesforce

Salesforce uses metadata types and components to represent org configuration and customization. Metadata is used for org settings that admins control or configuration information applied by installed apps and packages. Use the classes in the `Metadata` namespace to access metadata from within Apex code.

Metadata access in Apex is available for Apex classes using API version 40.0 and later.

For more information, see Metadata.

The following are the classes in the `Metadata` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Class
Represents the settings for a Wave Analytics dashboard on a standard or custom page.

ConsoleComponent Class
Represents a custom console component on a section of a page layout.

Container Class
Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component in the sidebars of the console.

CustomConsoleComponents Class
Represents custom console components (Visualforce pages, lookup fields, or related lists) on a page layout.

CustomMetadata Class
Represents records of custom metadata types.

CustomMetadataValue Class
Represents custom metadata values for a custom metadata component.

DeployCallback Interface
An interface for metadata deployment callback classes.

DeployCallbackContext Class
Represents context information for a deployment job.

DeployContainer Class

Represents a container for custom metadata components to be deployed.

DeployDetails Class

Contains detailed information on deployed components.

DeployMessage Class

Represents result information for the deployment of a metadata component.

DeployProblemType Enum

Describes the problem type for an unsuccessful component deploy.

DeployResult Class

Represents the results of a metadata deployment.

DeployStatus Enum

The result status of a deployment.

FeedItemTypeEnum Enum

The type of feed item in a feed-based page layout.

FeedLayout Class

Represents the values that define the feed view of a feed-based page layout. Feed-based layouts are available on Account, Case, Contact, Lead, Opportunity, custom, and external objects. They include a feed view and a detail view.

FeedLayoutComponent Class

Represents a component in the feed view of a feed-based page layout.

FeedLayoutComponentType Enum

Indicates the type of feed layout component.

FeedLayoutFilter Class

Represents a feed filter option in the feed view of a feed-based page layout. A filter can have only `standardFilter` or `feedItemType` set.

FeedLayoutFilterPosition Enum

Describes where the feed filters list is included in the layout.

FeedLayoutFilterType Enum

The type of feed layout filter.

Layout Class

Represents the metadata associated with a page layout.

LayoutColumn Class

Represents the items in a column within a layout section.

LayoutHeader Enum

Represents tagging types used for `Metadata.Layout.headers`

LayoutItem Class

Represents the valid values that define a layout item.

LayoutSection Class

Represents a section of a page layout, such as the Custom Links section.

LayoutSectionStyle Enum

Describes the possible styles for a layout section.

Metadata Class

An abstract base class that represents a custom metadata component.

MetadataType Enum

Represents the custom metadata components available in Apex.

MetadataValue Class

An abstract base class that represents a custom metadata component field.

MiniLayout Class

Represents a mini view of a record in the Console tab, hover details, and event overlays.

Operations Class

Represents a class to execute metadata operations, such as retrieving or deploying custom metadata.

PlatformActionList Class

Represents the list of actions, and their order, that display in the Salesforce mobile action bar for the layout.

PlatformActionListContextEnum Enum

Describes the different contexts of action lists.

PlatformActionListItem Class

Represents an action in the platform action list for a layout.

PlatformActionTypeEnum Enum

The type of action for a `PlatformActionListItem`.

PrimaryTabComponents Class

Represents custom console components on primary tabs in the Salesforce console.

QuickActionList Class

Represents the list of actions associated with the page layout.

QuickActionListItem Class

Represents an action in the `QuickActionList`.

RelatedContent Class

Represents the Mobile Cards section of the page layout.

RelatedContentItem Class

Represents an individual item in the `RelatedContent` list.

RelatedList Class

Represents related list custom components on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

RelatedListItem Class

Represents an item in the related list in a page layout.

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Class

Represents the settings for a report chart on a standard or custom page.

ReportChartComponentSize Enum

Describes the size of the displayed report chart component.

SidebarComponent Class

Represents a specific custom console component to display in a container that hosts multiple components in one of the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

SortOrder Enum

Describes the sort order of a related list.

StatusCode Enum

Describes the status code for an unsuccessful component deploy.

SubtabComponents Class

Represents custom console components on subtabs in the Salesforce console.

SummaryLayoutStyleEnum Enum

Describes the highlights panel style for a `SummaryLayout`.

SummaryLayout Class

Controls the appearance of the highlights panel, which summarizes key fields in a grid at the top of a page layout, when Case Feed is enabled.

SummaryLayoutItem Class

Controls the appearance of an individual field and its column and row position within the highlights panel grid, when Case Feed is enabled. You can have two fields per each grid in a highlights panel.

UiBehavior Enum

Describes the behavior for a layout item on a layout page.

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Class

Represents the settings for a Wave Analytics dashboard on a standard or custom page.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Properties

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Methods

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Properties

The following are properties for `AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

assetType

Specifies the type of Wave Analytics asset.

devName

Unique development name of the dashboard to add.

error

An error string that is populated only when an error occurred in the underlying dashboard.

filter

Dashboard filters for mapping data fields in the dashboard to the object's fields.

height

Specifies the height of the dashboard, in pixels.

hideOnError

Controls whether users see a dashboard that has an error.

showHeader

If `true`, includes the dashboard's header bar. If `false`, the dashboard appears without a header bar.

showSharing

If set to true, and the dashboard is shareable the dashboard shows the Share icon. If set to false, the dashboard doesn't show the Share icon.

showTitle

If true, includes the dashboard's title above the dashboard. If false, the dashboard appears without a title.

width

Specifies the width of the dashboard, in pixels or percentage.

`assetType`

Specifies the type of Wave Analytics asset.

Signature

```
public String assetType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`devName`

Unique development name of the dashboard to add.

Signature

```
public String devName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`error`

An error string that is populated only when an error occurred in the underlying dashboard.

Signature

```
public String error {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`filter`

Dashboard filters for mapping data fields in the dashboard to the object's fields.

Signature

```
public String filter {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`height`

Specifies the height of the dashboard, in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`hideOnError`

Controls whether users see a dashboard that has an error.

Signature

```
public Boolean hideOnError {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`showHeader`

If `true`, includes the dashboard's header bar. If `false`, the dashboard appears without a header bar.

Signature

```
public Boolean showHeader {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showSharing

If set to true, and the dashboard is shareable the dashboard shows the Share icon. If set to false, the dashboard doesn't show the Share icon.

Signature

```
public Boolean showSharing {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showTitle

If true, includes the dashboard's title above the dashboard. If false, the dashboard appears without a title.

Signature

```
public Boolean showTitle {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

width

Specifies the width of the dashboard, in pixels or percentage.

Signature

```
public String width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem Methods

The following are methods for `AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

ConsoleComponent Class

Represents a custom console component on a section of a page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "ConsoleComponent" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConsoleComponent Properties

ConsoleComponent Methods

ConsoleComponent Properties

The following are properties for `ConsoleComponent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

height
The height of the custom console component in pixels.

location
The location of the custom console component on the page layout. Valid values are right, left, top, and bottom.

visualforcePage
The unique name of the custom console component.

width
The width of the custom console component in pixels.

`height`

The height of the custom console component in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`location`

The location of the custom console component on the page layout. Valid values are right, left, top, and bottom.

Signature

```
public String location {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`visualforcePage`

The unique name of the custom console component.

Signature

```
public String visualforcePage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`width`

The width of the custom console component in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

ConsoleComponent Methods

The following are methods for `ConsoleComponent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.ConsoleComponent`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.ConsoleComponent`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

Container Class

Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component in the sidebars of the console.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "Container" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

Container Properties

Container Methods

Container Properties

The following are properties for `Container`.

IN THIS SECTION:

height
The height of the component's container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

isContainerAutoSizeEnabled
If set to true, stacked console components in the sidebars autosize vertically.

region
The location of the component's container (right, left, bottom, top).

sidebarComponents
Represents a specific custom console component to display in the components' container.

style
The style of the container in which to display multiple components (stack, tab, accordion).

unit
The unit of measurement, in pixels or percent, for the height or width of the components' container.

width
The width of the component's container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

height

The height of the component's container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

isContainerAutoSizeEnabled

If set to true, stacked console components in the sidebars autosize vertically.

Signature

```
public Boolean isContainerAutoSizeEnabled {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

region

The location of the component's container (right, left, bottom, top).

Signature

```
public String region {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

sidebarComponents

Represents a specific custom console component to display in the components' container.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.SidebarComponent> sidebarComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.SidebarComponent>

`style`

The style of the container in which to display multiple components (stack, tab, accordion).

Signature

```
public String style {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`unit`

The unit of measurement, in pixels or percent, for the height or width of the components' container.

Signature

```
public String unit {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`width`

The width of the component's container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

Signature

```
public Integer width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

Container Methods

The following are methods for `Container`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Container`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Container`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

CustomConsoleComponents Class

Represents custom console components (Visualforce pages, lookup fields, or related lists) on a page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "CustomConsoleComponents" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomConsoleComponents Properties

CustomConsoleComponents Methods

CustomConsoleComponents Properties

The following are properties for `CustomConsoleComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

primaryTabComponents

Represents custom console components on primary tabs in the Salesforce console.

subtabComponents

Represents custom console components on subtabs in the Salesforce console.

primaryTabComponents

Represents custom console components on primary tabs in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Metadata.PrimaryTabComponents primaryTabComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.PrimaryTabComponents

`subtabComponents`

Represents custom console components on subtabs in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Metadata.SubtabComponents subtabComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.SubtabComponents

CustomConsoleComponents Methods

The following are methods for `CustomConsoleComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomConsoleComponents`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomConsoleComponents`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

CustomMetadata Class

Represents records of custom metadata types.

Warning: Protected custom metadata types behave like public custom metadata types when they are outside of a managed package. Public custom metadata types are readable for all profiles, including the guest user. Do not store secrets, personally identifying information, or any private data in these records. Use protected custom metadata types only in managed packages. Outside of a managed package, use named credentials or encrypted custom fields to store secrets like OAuth tokens, passwords, and other confidential material.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use `Metadata.CustomMetadata` to represent records of custom metadata types in Apex. For more information, see Custom Metadata Types in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

Example

```
// Set up custom metadata to be created in the subscriber org.
    Metadata.CustomMetadata customMetadata =  new Metadata.CustomMetadata();
    customMetadata.fullName = 'ISVNamespace__MetadataTypeName.MetadataRecordName';

    Metadata.CustomMetadataValue customField = new Metadata.CustomMetadataValue();
    customField.field = 'customField__c';
    customField.value = 'New value';

    customMetadata.values.add(customField);
```

Note: When you assign namespaces to records, provide full, qualified record names to the app. If both the type and the record are in *Namespace*, use something like: `customMetadata.fullName = 'Namespace__MetadataTypeName.Namespace__MetadataRecordName'`

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomMetadata Properties

CustomMetadata Methods

CustomMetadata Properties

The following are properties for `CustomMetadata`.

IN THIS SECTION:

description

The description of the custom metadata.

label

The label of the custom metadata record.

protected_x

Property that describes whether the custom metadata record is a protected component.

values

A list of custom metadata values, such as custom fields, for the custom metadata record.

description

The description of the custom metadata.

Signature

```
public String description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

label

The label of the custom metadata record.

Signature

```
public String label {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

protected_x

Property that describes whether the custom metadata record is a protected component.

Signature

```
public Boolean protected_x {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

values

A list of custom metadata values, such as custom fields, for the custom metadata record.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.CustomMetadataValue> values {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.CustomMetadataValue>

CustomMetadata Methods

The following are methods for `CustomMetadata`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomMetadata`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomMetadata`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

CustomMetadataValue Class

Represents custom metadata values for a custom metadata component.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use `Metadata.CustomMetadataValue` to access values for custom fields of custom metadata records.

Supported Apex primitive types are:

- Boolean
- Date
- DateTime
- Decimal
- Double
- Integer
- Long
- String

Example

```
// Set a custom field value for a custom metadata record
Metadata.CustomMetadataValue customField = new Metadata.CustomMetadataValue();
customField.field = 'CustomField1__c';
customField.value = 'New Value';
customMetadata.values.add(customField);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

CustomMetadataValue Properties

CustomMetadataValue Methods

CustomMetadataValue Properties

The following are properties for `CustomMetadataValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

field
The field name for the custom metadata value.

value
The field value for the custom metadata value.

field

The field name for the custom metadata value.

Signature

```
public String field {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

value

The field value for the custom metadata value.

Signature

```
public Object value {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Object

Supported Apex primitive types are:

- Boolean
- Date
- DateTime
- Decimal
- Double
- Integer
- Long
- String

When setting the value for relationship fields, use the qualified API name of the related metadata, not the ID.

For more information, see Primitive Data Types.

CustomMetadataValue Methods

The following are methods for `CustomMetadataValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomMetadataValue`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.CustomMetadataValue`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

DeployCallback Interface

An interface for metadata deployment callback classes.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

You must provide a callback class for the asynchronous deployment of custom metadata through Apex. This class must implement the `Metadata.DeployCallback` interface.

Salesforce calls your `DeployCallback.handleResult()` method asynchronously once the queued deployment completes. Because the callback is called as asynchronous Apex after deployment, there may be a brief period where the deploy has completed, but your callback has not been called yet.

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployCallback Methods
DeployCallback Example Implementation

DeployCallback Methods

The following are methods for `DeployCallback`.

IN THIS SECTION:

handleResult(var1, var2)
Method that is called when the asynchronous deployment of custom metadata completes.

handleResult(var1, var2)

Method that is called when the asynchronous deployment of custom metadata completes.

Signature

```
public void handleResult(Metadata.DeployResult var1, Metadata.DeployCallbackContext
var2)
```

Parameters

var1

Type: Metadata.DeployResult

The results of the asynchronous deployment.

var2

Type: Metadata.DeployCallbackContext

The context for the queued asynchronous deployment job.

Return Value

Type: void

DeployCallback Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `Metadata.DeployCallback` interface.

```
public class MyCallback implements Metadata.DeployCallback {
    public void handleResult(Metadata.DeployResult result,
                             Metadata.DeployCallbackContext context) {
        if (result.status == Metadata.DeployStatus.Succeeded) {
            // Deployment was successful
        } else {
            // Deployment was not successful
        }
    }
}
```

The following example uses this implementation for a deployment.

```
// Setup callback and deploy
MyCallback callback = new MyCallback();
Metadata.Operations.enqueueDeployment(mdContainer, callback);
```

DeployCallbackContext Class

Represents context information for a deployment job.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

After an asynchronous metadata deployment finishes, Salesforce provides an instance of `Metadata.DeployCallbackContext` in an asynchronous call to your implementation of `handleResult()` in your `Metadata.DeployCallback` class.

Example

```
public void handleResult(Metadata.DeployResult result,
                         Metadata.DeployCallbackContext context) {
  // Check the callback job ID for the deployment
  Id jobId = context.getCallbackJobId();
  // ...process the results...
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployCallbackContext Methods

DeployCallbackContext Methods

The following are methods for `DeployCallbackContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployCallbackContext`.

getCallbackJobId()
Gets the asynchronous Apex job ID for the callback job.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployCallbackContext`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

`getCallbackJobId()`

Gets the asynchronous Apex job ID for the callback job.

Signature

```
public Id getCallbackJobId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

DeployContainer Class

Represents a container for custom metadata components to be deployed.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use `Metadata.DeployContainer` to manage custom metadata components for deployment. A container must have one or more components before being deployed.

Example

```
// Use DeployContainer for deployment
Metadata.DeployContainer mdContainer = new Metadata.DeployContainer();
mdContainer.addMetadata(customMetadata);

...

// Enqueue deploy
Metadata.Operations.enqueueDeployment(mdContainer, callback);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployContainer Methods

DeployContainer Methods

The following are methods for `DeployContainer`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addMetadata(md)

Add a custom metadata component to the container.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployContainer`.

getMetadata()

Retrieves a list of custom metadata components from the container.

removeMetadata(md)

Removes a metadata component from the container.

removeMetadataByFullName(fullName)

Removes a metadata component from the container using the component's full name.

addMetadata(md)

Add a custom metadata component to the container.

Signature

```
public void addMetadata(Metadata.Metadata md)
```

Parameters

md

Type: Metadata.Metadata

A custom metadata component class that derives from `Metadata.Metadata`. Avoid adding components to a `Metadata.DeployContainer`that have the same `Metadata.Metadata.fullName` because it causes deployment errors.

Return Value

Type: void

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployContainer`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

getMetadata()

Retrieves a list of custom metadata components from the container.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.Metadata> getMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Metadata.Metadata>

`removeMetadata(md)`

Removes a metadata component from the container.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeMetadata(Metadata.Metadata md)
```

Parameters

md
Type: Metadata.Metadata

Metadata component to remove.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the container changed as a result of the call.

`removeMetadataByFullName(fullName)`

Removes a metadata component from the container using the component's full name.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeMetadataByFullName(String fullName)
```

Parameters

fullName
Type: String

Full name of the component to remove.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the container changed as a result of the call.

DeployDetails Class

Contains detailed information on deployed components.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class to obtain a list of the successfully and unsuccessfully deployed components after a completed deployment by Salesforce in your `Metadata.DeployCallback` results.

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployDetails Properties

DeployDetails Methods

DeployDetails Properties

The following are properties for `DeployDetails`.

IN THIS SECTION:

componentFailures

Contains a list of information about components that failed to deploy.

componentSuccesses

Contains a list of information about components that deployed successfully.

`componentFailures`

Contains a list of information about components that failed to deploy.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.DeployMessage> componentFailures {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.DeployMessage>

`componentSuccesses`

Contains a list of information about components that deployed successfully.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.DeployMessage> componentSuccesses {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.DeployMessage>

DeployDetails Methods

The following are methods for `DeployDetails`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployDetails`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployDetails`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

DeployMessage Class

Represents result information for the deployment of a metadata component.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use `DeployMessage` to access detailed information about component deployments. Salesforce provides a list of `DeployMessages` for a completed deployment via the `DeployDetails` and `DeployResults` instances sent in the `DeployCallback.handleResult()` callback.

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployMessage Properties
DeployMessage Methods

DeployMessage Properties

The following are properties for `DeployMessage`.

IN THIS SECTION:

changed
Determines whether the component was changed after deployment. If true, the component was changed as a result of the deployment. If false, the deployed component was the same as the corresponding component already in the org.

columnNumber
Each component is represented by a text file. If an error occurs during deployment, this property represents the column of the text file where the error occurred.

componentType
The metadata type of the component in the deployment.

created
If true, the component was created as a result of the deployment. If false, the component was modified as a result of the deployment.

createdDate
The date and time when the component was created as a result of the deployment.

deleted
If true, the component was deleted as a result of the deployment. If false, the component was either new or modified as result of the deployment.

fileName
The name of the file in the metadata archive used to deploy the component.

fullName
Full name for the custom metadata component.

id
ID of the component that was deployed.

lineNumber
Each component is represented by a text file. If an error occurs during deployment, this field represents the line number of the text file where the error occurred.

problem
If an error or warning occurred, this field contains a description of the problem that caused the deployment to fail.

problemType
Indicates the problem type, for example, an error or warning.

success
Indicates whether the component was successfully deployed (true) or not (false).

`changed`

Determines whether the component was changed after deployment. If true, the component was changed as a result of the deployment. If false, the deployed component was the same as the corresponding component already in the org.

Signature

```
public Boolean changed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`columnNumber`

Each component is represented by a text file. If an error occurs during deployment, this property represents the column of the text file where the error occurred.

Signature

```
public Integer columnNumber {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`componentType`

The metadata type of the component in the deployment.

Signature

```
public String componentType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`created`

If true, the component was created as a result of the deployment. If false, the component was modified as a result of the deployment.

Signature

```
public Boolean created {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`createdDate`

The date and time when the component was created as a result of the deployment.

Signature

```
public Datetime createdDate {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

`deleted`

If true, the component was deleted as a result of the deployment. If false, the component was either new or modified as result of the deployment.

Signature

```
public Boolean deleted {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`fileName`

The name of the file in the metadata archive used to deploy the component.

Signature

```
public String fileName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`fullName`

Full name for the custom metadata component.

Signature

```
public String fullName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`id`

ID of the component that was deployed.

Signature

```
public Id id {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Id

`lineNumber`

Each component is represented by a text file. If an error occurs during deployment, this field represents the line number of the text file where the error occurred.

Signature

```
public Integer lineNumber {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

problem

If an error or warning occurred, this field contains a description of the problem that caused the deployment to fail.

Signature

```
public String problem {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

problemType

Indicates the problem type, for example, an error or warning.

Signature

```
public Metadata.DeployProblemType problemType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.DeployProblemType

success

Indicates whether the component was successfully deployed (true) or not (false).

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

DeployMessage Methods

The following are methods for `DeployMessage`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployMessage`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployMessage`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

DeployProblemType Enum

Describes the problem type for an unsuccessful component deploy.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.DeployProblemType` enum.

Value	Description
`Error`	The deploy problem is an error.
`Info`	The deploy problem is of type “Info”.
`Warning`	The deploy problem is a warning.

SEE ALSO:

StatusCode Enum

DeployResult Class

Represents the results of a metadata deployment.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

After an asynchronous metadata deployment finishes, Salesforce provides an instance of `Metadata.DeployResult` in a call to your implementation of `handleResult()` in your `Metadata.DeployCallback` class.

Example

```
public void handleResult(Metadata.DeployResult result,
                         Metadata.DeployCallbackContext context) {
    if (result.status == Metadata.DeployStatus.Succeeded) {
        // Deployment was successful
    } else {
        // Deployment was not successful
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DeployResult Properties

DeployResult Methods

DeployResult Properties

The following are properties for `DeployResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

canceledBy

ID of the user who canceled the queued deployment.

canceledByName

Full name of the user who canceled the queued deployment.

checkOnly

Indicates whether the deployment checked only the validity of the deployed files without making changes in the org. A check-only deployment does not deploy components or change the org in any way.

completedDate

Date and time for when the deployment process ended.

createdBy

ID of the user who created the deployment job.

createdByName

Full name of the user who created the deployment job.

createdDate

Date and time the deployment job was first queued.

details

Provides the details for components in a completed deployment.

done

Indicates whether Salesforce finished processing the deployment.

errorMessage

Message corresponding to the values in the `errorStatusCode` property, if any.

errorStatusCode

If an error occurs during deployment, a status code is returned. The message corresponding to the status code is returned in the `errorMessagefield` property.

id

ID of the deployment job.

ignoreWarnings

Specifies whether a deployment continues, even if the deployment generates warnings.

lastModifiedDate

Date and time of the last update for the deployment process.

messages

A list of all the detail messages for a deployment.

numberComponentErrors

The number of components that generated errors during the deployment.

numberComponentsDeployed

The number of components deployed in the deployment process. Use this value with the `numberComponentsTotal` property to get an estimate of the deployment's progress.

numberComponentsTotal

The total number of components in the deployment. Use this value with the `numberComponentsDeployed` property to get an estimate of the deployment's progress.

rollbackOnError

Indicates whether any failure causes a complete rollback (true) or not (false) of the deployment.

startDate

Date and time the deployment process began.

stateDetail

Indicates which component is being deployed.

status

Indicates the current state of the deployment.

success

Indicates whether the deployment was successful (true) or not (false).

`canceledBy`

ID of the user who canceled the queued deployment.

Signature

```
public String canceledBy {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

canceledByName

Full name of the user who canceled the queued deployment.

Signature

```
public String canceledByName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

checkOnly

Indicates whether the deployment checked only the validity of the deployed files without making changes in the org. A check-only deployment does not deploy components or change the org in any way.

Signature

```
public Boolean checkOnly {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

completedDate

Date and time for when the deployment process ended.

Signature

```
public Datetime completedDate {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

createdBy

ID of the user who created the deployment job.

Signature

```
public String createdBy {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

createdByName

Full name of the user who created the deployment job.

Signature

```
public String createdByName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

createdDate

Date and time the deployment job was first queued.

Signature

```
public Datetime createdDate {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

details

Provides the details for components in a completed deployment.

Signature

```
public Metadata.DeployDetails details {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.DeployDetails

done

Indicates whether Salesforce finished processing the deployment.

Signature

```
public Boolean done {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

errorMessage

Message corresponding to the values in the `errorStatusCode` property, if any.

Signature

```
public String errorMessage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`errorStatusCode`

If an error occurs during deployment, a status code is returned. The message corresponding to the status code is returned in the `errorMessagefield` property.

Signature

```
public String errorStatusCode {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

For a description of each status code value, see "StatusCode" under "Core Data Types Used in API Calls" in the SOAP API Developer Guide.

`id`

ID of the deployment job.

Signature

```
public Id id {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Id

`ignoreWarnings`

Specifies whether a deployment continues, even if the deployment generates warnings.

Signature

```
public Boolean ignoreWarnings {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`lastModifiedDate`

Date and time of the last update for the deployment process.

Signature

```
public Datetime lastModifiedDate {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

`messages`

A list of all the detail messages for a deployment.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.DeployMessage> messages {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.DeployMessage>

`numberComponentErrors`

The number of components that generated errors during the deployment.

Signature

```
public Integer numberComponentErrors {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`numberComponentsDeployed`

The number of components deployed in the deployment process. Use this value with the `numberComponentsTotal` property to get an estimate of the deployment's progress.

Signature

```
public Integer numberComponentsDeployed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`numberComponentsTotal`

The total number of components in the deployment. Use this value with the `numberComponentsDeployed` property to get an estimate of the deployment's progress.

Signature

```
public Integer numberComponentsTotal {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`rollbackOnError`

Indicates whether any failure causes a complete rollback (true) or not (false) of the deployment.

Signature

```
public Boolean rollbackOnError {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`startDate`

Date and time the deployment process began.

Signature

```
public Datetime startDate {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

`stateDetail`

Indicates which component is being deployed.

Signature

```
public String stateDetail {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`status`

Indicates the current state of the deployment.

Signature

```
public Metadata.DeployStatus status {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.DeployStatus

`success`

Indicates whether the deployment was successful (true) or not (false).

Signature

```
public Boolean success {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

DeployResult Methods

The following are methods for `DeployResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployResult`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.DeployResult`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

DeployStatus Enum

The result status of a deployment.

Usage

`Metadata.DeployResult.status` uses this enum to describe the results of the deployment.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.DeployStatus` enum.

Value	Description
`Canceled`	The queued deployment was canceled.
`Canceling`	The queued deployment is being canceled.
`Failed`	The deployment failed.
`InProgress`	The deployment has been started and is in progress.
`Pending`	The deployment has been queued but not started.
`Succeeded`	The deployment succeeded.
`SucceededPartial`	The deployment succeeded, but some components might not have been successfully deployed. Check `Metadata.DeployResult` for more details.

FeedItemTypeEnum Enum

The type of feed item in a feed-based page layout.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.FeedItemTypeEnum` enum.

Value	Description
`ActivityEvent`	Activity on tasks and events associated with a case. Available only on Case layouts.
`AdvancedTextPost`	Group announcements posted on a feed.
`AnnouncementPost`	Not used.
`ApprovalPost`	Approvals submitted on a feed.
`AttachArticleEvent`	Activity related to attaching articles to cases.
`BasicTemplateFeedItem`	Activity from the Log a Call action. Available only on layouts for objects that support Activities (tasks and events).
`CallLogPost`	Activity from the Log a Call action. Available only on layouts for objects that support Activities (tasks and events).
`CanvasPost`	Posts a canvas app makes on a feed.
`CaseCommentPost`	Activity from the Case Note action. Available only on Case layouts.
`ChangeStatusPost`	Activity from the Change Status action. Available only on Case layouts.
`ChatTranscriptPost`	Activity related to attaching Chat transcripts to cases. Available only on Case layouts.
`CollaborationGroupCreated`	Creating a public group.
`CollaborationGroupUnarchived`	Not used.
`ContentPost`	Attaching a file to a post.

Value	Description
`CreateRecordEvent`	Creating a record from the publisher.
`DashboardComponentAlert`	Not used.
`DashboardComponentSnapshot`	Posting a dashboard snapshot on a feed.
`EmailMessageEvent`	Activity from the Email action. Available only on Case layouts.
`FacebookPost`	Not used.
`LinkPost`	Attaching a URL to a post.
`MilestoneEvent`	Changing the milestone status on a case. Available only on Case layouts.
`PollPost`	Posting a poll on a feed.
`ProfileSkillPost`	Adding skills to a user's Chatter profile.
`QuestionPost`	Posting a question on a feed.
`ReplyPost`	Activity from the Portal action. Available only on Case layouts.
`RypplePost`	Creating a Thanks badge in WDC.
`SocialPost`	Activity on Twitter from the Social Post action.
`TestItem`	Creating a text post from the publisher.
`TextPost`	Making a change or group of changes to a tracked field.
`TrackedChange`	Not used.
`Undefined`	Undefined feed item.
`UserStatus`	Not used.

FeedLayout Class

Represents the values that define the feed view of a feed-based page layout. Feed-based layouts are available on Account, Case, Contact, Lead, Opportunity, custom, and external objects. They include a feed view and a detail view.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "FeedLayout" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

FeedLayout Properties

FeedLayout Methods

FeedLayout Properties

The following are properties for `FeedLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

autocollapsePublisher
Specifies whether the publisher is collapsed when the page loads (true) or not (false).

compactFeed
Specifies whether the feed-based page layout uses a compact feed (true) or not (false). If set to true, feed items on the page are collapsed by default, and the feed view has an updated design.

feedFilterPosition
Indicates where the feed filters list is included in the layout.

feedFilters
The individual filters displayed in the feed filters list.

fullWidthFeed
Specifies whether the feed expands horizontally to take up all available space on the page (`true`) or not (`false`).

hideSidebar
Specifies whether the sidebar is hidden (`true`) or not (`false`).

highlightExternalFeedItems
Controls whether to highlight external feed items (true) or not (false).

leftComponents
The individual components displayed in the left column of the feed view.

rightComponents
Lists the individual components displayed in the right column of the feed view.

useInlineFiltersInConsole
Indicates whether to use inline filters in the Salesforce console.

`autocollapsePublisher`

Specifies whether the publisher is collapsed when the page loads (true) or not (false).

Signature

```
public Boolean autocollapsePublisher {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

compactFeed

Specifies whether the feed-based page layout uses a compact feed (true) or not (false). If set to true, feed items on the page are collapsed by default, and the feed view has an updated design.

Signature

```
public Boolean compactFeed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

feedFilterPosition

Indicates where the feed filters list is included in the layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.FeedLayoutFilterPosition feedFilterPosition {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: FeedLayoutFilterPosition Enum

feedFilters

The individual filters displayed in the feed filters list.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.FeedLayoutFilter> feedFilters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<FeedLayoutFilter Class>.

fullWidthFeed

Specifies whether the feed expands horizontally to take up all available space on the page (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean fullWidthFeed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

hideSidebar

Specifies whether the sidebar is hidden (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean hideSidebar {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

highlightExternalFeedItems

Controls whether to highlight external feed items (true) or not (false).

Signature

```
public Boolean highlightExternalFeedItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

leftComponents

The individual components displayed in the left column of the feed view.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.FeedLayoutComponent> leftComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<FeedLayoutComponent Class>

rightComponents

Lists the individual components displayed in the right column of the feed view.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.FeedLayoutComponent> rightComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<FeedLayoutComponent Class>

useInlineFiltersInConsole

Indicates whether to use inline filters in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Boolean useInlineFiltersInConsole {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

FeedLayout Methods

The following are methods for `FeedLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayout`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayout`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

FeedLayoutComponent Class

Represents a component in the feed view of a feed-based page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "FeedLayoutComponent" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

FeedLayoutComponent Properties

FeedLayoutComponent Methods

FeedLayoutComponent Properties

The following are properties for `FeedLayoutComponent`.

See `FeedLayoutComponent` in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*

IN THIS SECTION:

componentType
Represents a component in the feed view of a feed-based page layout. The type of component is required.

height
The height, in pixels, of the component. Doesn't apply to `standardComponents`

page_x
The name of the Visualforce page used as a custom component.

componentType

Represents a component in the feed view of a feed-based page layout. The type of component is required.

Signature

```
public Metadata.FeedLayoutComponentType componentType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.FeedLayoutComponentType on page 2071

height

The height, in pixels, of the component. Doesn't apply to `standardComponents`

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

page_x

The name of the Visualforce page used as a custom component.

Signature

```
public String page_x {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

FeedLayoutComponent Methods

The following are methods for `FeedLayoutComponent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutComponent`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutComponent`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

FeedLayoutComponentType Enum

Indicates the type of feed layout component.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutComponentType` enum.

Value	Description
`CaseExperts`	List of case experts.
`CaseUnifiedFiles`	List of all files attached to the case.
`CustomButtons`	Custom button.
`CustomLinks`	Custom link.
`Followers`	List of followers.
`Following`	Icon that toggles between a Follow button (if the user viewing a record doesn't already follow it) and a Following indicator (if the user viewing a record does follow it).
`HelpAndToolLinks`	Icons that link to the help topic for the page, the page layout, and, the printable view of the page. Available only on Case layouts.
`Milestones`	Milestone tracker, which lets users see the status of a milestone on a case. Available only on Case layouts.
`SimilarCases`	List of similar cases.
`Topics`	List of topics related to the record.

Value	Description
`Visualforce`	Custom Visualforce component.

FeedLayoutFilter Class

Represents a feed filter option in the feed view of a feed-based page layout. A filter can have only `standardFilter` or `feedItemType` set.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "FeedLayoutFilter" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

FeedLayoutFilter Properties

FeedLayoutFilter Methods

FeedLayoutFilter Properties

The following are properties for `FeedLayoutFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

feedFilterName

The name of a `CustomFeedFilter` component. Names are prefixed with the name of the parent object. For example, `Case.MyCustomFeedFilter`.

feedFilterType

The type of filter.

feedItemType

The type of feed item to display.

`feedFilterName`

The name of a `CustomFeedFilter` component. Names are prefixed with the name of the parent object. For example, `Case.MyCustomFeedFilter`.

Signature

```
public String feedFilterName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`feedFilterType`

The type of filter.

Signature

```
public Metadata.FeedLayoutFilterType feedFilterType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: FeedLayoutFilterType Enum

`feedItemType`

The type of feed item to display.

Signature

```
public Metadata.FeedItemTypeEnum feedItemType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: FeedItemTypeEnum Enum

FeedLayoutFilter Methods

The following are methods for `FeedLayoutFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutFilter`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutFilter`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

FeedLayoutFilterPosition Enum

Describes where the feed filters list is included in the layout.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutFilterPosition` enum.

Value	Description
`CenterDropDown`	As a drop-down list in the center column.
`LeftFixed`	As a fixed list in the left column.
`LeftFloat`	As a floating list in the left column.

FeedLayoutFilterType Enum

The type of feed layout filter.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.FeedLayoutFilterType` enum.

Value	Description
`AllUpdates`	Shows all feed items on a record.
`Custom`	Shows custom feed items.
`FeedItemType`	Shows feed items only for a particular type of activity on the record.

Layout Class

Represents the metadata associated with a page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class to access layout metadata components. For more information, see Layout in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

Layout Properties
Layout Methods

Layout Properties

The following are properties for `Layout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

customButtons

The custom buttons for this layout.

customConsoleComponents

Represents custom console components (Visualforce pages, lookup fields, or related lists) on a page layout.

emailDefault

Default value for the email checkbox. Only relevant if the `showEmailCheckbox` property is set.

excludeButtons

List of standard buttons to exclude from this layout.

feedLayout

Represents the values that define the feed view of a feed-based page layout.

headers

Represents the layout headers used for tagging.

layoutSections

The main sections of the layout containing fields, s-controls, and custom links. The order here determines the layout order.

miniLayout

Represents a minilayout, which is used in the mini view of a record in the Console tab, hover details, and event overlays.

multilineLayoutFields

Fields for special multiline layout fields which appear in OpportunityProduct layouts.

platformActionList

The list of actions, and their order, that display in the Salesforce mobile action bar for the layout.

quickActionList

The list of quick actions that display in the full Salesforce site for the page layout.

relatedContent

The Related Content section of the page layout.

relatedLists

The related lists for the layout, listed in the order they appear in the user interface.

relatedObjects

The list of related objects that appears in the mini view of the console.

runAssignmentRulesDefault

Default value for the "run assignment rules" checkbox. Only relevant if the `showRunAssignmentRulesCheckbox` property is set.

showEmailCheckbox

Controls whether to show the email checkbox. Only allowed on Case, CaseClose, and Task layouts. The default state of checkbox is controlled by the `emailDefault` property.

showHighlightsPanel

If set, the highlights panel displays on pages in the Salesforce console.

showInteractionLogPanel
If set, the interaction log displays on pages in the Salesforce console.

showKnowledgeComponent
Only allowed on Case layouts. If set, the Knowledge sidebar displays on cases in the Salesforce console.

showRunAssignmentRulesCheckbox
Controls whether to show the Run Assignment Rules checkbox. Only allowed on Lead and Case layouts. The default state of checkbox is controlled by the `runAssignmentRulesDefault` property.

showSolutionSection
Only allowed on CaseClose layout. If set, the built-in solution information section shows up on the page.

showSubmitAndAttachButton
For Cast layouts only. If set, the Submit & Add Attachment button displays on case edit pages to portal users in the Customer Portal.

summaryLayout
The summary layout for this layout.

customButtons

The custom buttons for this layout.

Signature

```
public List<String> customButtons {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

customConsoleComponents

Represents custom console components (Visualforce pages, lookup fields, or related lists) on a page layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.CustomConsoleComponents customConsoleComponents {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: CustomConsoleComponents Class

emailDefault

Default value for the email checkbox. Only relevant if the `showEmailCheckbox` property is set.

Signature

```
public Boolean emailDefault {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

excludeButtons

List of standard buttons to exclude from this layout.

Signature

```
public List<String> excludeButtons {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

feedLayout

Represents the values that define the feed view of a feed-based page layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.FeedLayout feedLayout {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.FeedLayout

headers

Represents the layout headers used for tagging.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.LayoutHeader> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.LayoutHeader>

layoutSections

The main sections of the layout containing fields, s-controls, and custom links. The order here determines the layout order.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.LayoutSection> layoutSections {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.LayoutSection>

miniLayout

Represents a minilayout, which is used in the mini view of a record in the Console tab, hover details, and event overlays.

Signature

```
public Metadata.MiniLayout miniLayout {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.MiniLayout

multilineLayoutFields

Fields for special multiline layout fields which appear in OpportunityProduct layouts.

Signature

```
public List<String> multilineLayoutFields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

platformActionList

The list of actions, and their order, that display in the Salesforce mobile action bar for the layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.PlatformActionList platformActionList {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.PlatformActionList

quickActionList

The list of quick actions that display in the full Salesforce site for the page layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.QuickActionList quickActionList {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Meatadata.QuickActionL.

relatedContent

The Related Content section of the page layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.RelatedContent relatedContent {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.RelatedContent

`relatedLists`

The related lists for the layout, listed in the order they appear in the user interface.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.RelatedListItem> relatedLists {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.RelatedListItem>

`relatedObjects`

The list of related objects that appears in the mini view of the console.

Signature

```
public List<String> relatedObjects {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

`runAssignmentRulesDefault`

Default value for the "run assignment rules" checkbox. Only relevant if the `showRunAssignmentRulesCheckbox` property is set.

Signature

```
public Boolean runAssignmentRulesDefault {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`showEmailCheckbox`

Controls whether to show the email checkbox. Only allowed on Case, CaseClose, and Task layouts. The default state of checkbox is controlled by the `emailDefault` property.

Signature

```
public Boolean showEmailCheckbox {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showHighlightsPanel

If set, the highlights panel displays on pages in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Boolean showHighlightsPanel {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showInteractionLogPanel

If set, the interaction log displays on pages in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Boolean showInteractionLogPanel {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showKnowledgeComponent

Only allowed on Case layouts. If set, the Knowledge sidebar displays on cases in the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public Boolean showKnowledgeComponent {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showRunAssignmentRulesCheckbox

Controls whether to show the Run Assignment Rules checkbox. Only allowed on Lead and Case layouts. The default state of checkbox is controlled by the `runAssignmentRulesDefault` property.

Signature

```
public Boolean showRunAssignmentRulesCheckbox {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showSolutionSection

Only allowed on CaseClose layout. If set, the built-in solution information section shows up on the page.

Signature

```
public Boolean showSolutionSection {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showSubmitAndAttachButton

For Cast layouts only. If set, the Submit & Add Attachment button displays on case edit pages to portal users in the Customer Portal.

Signature

```
public Boolean showSubmitAndAttachButton {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

summaryLayout

The summary layout for this layout.

Signature

```
public Metadata.SummaryLayout summaryLayout {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.SummaryLayout

Layout Methods

The following are methods for `Layout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Layout`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Layout`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

LayoutColumn Class

Represents the items in a column within a layout section.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "LayoutColumn" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

LayoutColumn Properties
LayoutColumn Methods

LayoutColumn Properties

The following are properties for `LayoutColumn`.

IN THIS SECTION:

layoutItems
The individual items within a column (ordered from top to bottom).
reserved
This field is reserved for Salesforce.

layoutItems

The individual items within a column (ordered from top to bottom).

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.LayoutItem> layoutItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.LayoutItem>

`reserved`

This field is reserved for Salesforce.

Signature

```
public String reserved {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

LayoutColumn Methods

The following are methods for `LayoutColumn`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutColumn`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutColumn`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

LayoutHeader Enum

Represents tagging types used for `Metadata.Layout.headers`

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.LayoutHeader` enum.

Value	Description
`PersonalTagging`	Tag is set to private user.
`PublicTagging`	Tag is viewable to any user who can access the record.

LayoutItem Class

Represents the valid values that define a layout item.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "LayoutItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

LayoutItem Properties

LayoutItem Methods

LayoutItem Properties

The following are properties for `LayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

analyticsCloudComponent
A Wave Analytics dashboard component on a page.

behavior
Determines the field behavior.

canvas
References a canvas app.

component
References a component.

customLink
The custom link reference.

emptySpace
Controls if this layout item is a blank space.

field
The field name reference, relative to the layout, for example "Description" or "MyField__c".

height
For s-controls and pages only, the height in pixels.

page_x
Reference to a Visualforce page.

reportChartComponent
Refers to a report chart that you can add to a standard or custom object page.

scontrol
Reference to an s-control.

showLabel
For s-control and pages only, whether to show the label.

showScrollbars
For s-control and pages only, whether to show scrollbars.

width
For s-control and pages only, the width in pixels or percent. Pixel values are simply the number of pixels, for example, 500. Percentage values must include the percent sign, for example, 20%.

`analyticsCloudComponent`

A Wave Analytics dashboard component on a page.

Signature

```
public Metadata.AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem analyticsCloudComponent {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.AnalyticsCloudComponentLayoutItem

`behavior`

Determines the field behavior.

Signature

```
public Metadata.UiBehavior behavior {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.UiBehavior

`canvas`

References a canvas app.

Signature

```
public String canvas {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`component`

References a component.

Signature

```
public String component {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`customLink`

The custom link reference.

Signature

```
public String customLink {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`emptySpace`

Controls if this layout item is a blank space.

Signature

```
public Boolean emptySpace {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`field`

The field name reference, relative to the layout, for example “Description” or “MyField__c”.

Signature

```
public String field {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

height

For s-controls and pages only, the height in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

page_x

Reference to a Visualforce page.

Signature

```
public String page_x {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

reportChartComponent

Refers to a report chart that you can add to a standard or custom object page.

Signature

```
public Metadata.ReportChartComponentLayoutItem reportChartComponent {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.ReportChartComponentLayoutItem

scontrol

Reference to an s-control.

Signature

```
public String scontrol {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

showLabel

For s-control and pages only, whether to show the label.

Signature

```
public Boolean showLabel {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showScrollbars

For s-control and pages only, whether to show scrollbars.

Signature

```
public Boolean showScrollbars {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

width

For s-control and pages only, the width in pixels or percent. Pixel values are simply the number of pixels, for example, 500. Percentage values must include the percent sign, for example, 20%.

Signature

```
public String width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

LayoutItem Methods

The following are methods for `LayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutItem`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

LayoutSection Class

Represents a section of a page layout, such as the Custom Links section.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "LayoutSection" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

LayoutSection Properties

LayoutSection Methods

LayoutSection Properties

The following are properties for `LayoutSection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

customLabel
Indicates if this section's label is custom or standard (built-in).

detailHeading
Controls if this section appears in the detail page.

editHeading
Controls if this section appears in the edit page.

label
The label; either standard or custom, based on the customLabel property.

layoutColumns
Lists the layout columns. You can have one, two, or three columns, ordered left to right, are possible.

style
The style of the layout for this section.

`customLabel`

Indicates if this section's label is custom or standard (built-in).

Signature

```
public Boolean customLabel {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`detailHeading`

Controls if this section appears in the detail page.

Signature

```
public Boolean detailHeading {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`editHeading`

Controls if this section appears in the edit page.

Signature

```
public Boolean editHeading {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`label`

The label; either standard or custom, based on the customLabel property.

Signature

```
public String label {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`layoutColumns`

Lists the layout columns. You can have one, two, or three columns, ordered left to right, are possible.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.LayoutColumn> layoutColumns {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.LayoutColumn>

`style`

The style of the layout for this section.

Signature

```
public Metadata.LayoutSectionStyle style {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.LayoutSectionStyle

LayoutSection Methods

The following are methods for `LayoutSection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutSection`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.LayoutSection`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

LayoutSectionStyle Enum

Describes the possible styles for a layout section.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.LayoutSectionStyle` enum.

Value	Description
`CustomLinks`	Contains custom links only
`OneColumn`	One column

Value	Description
`TwoColumnsLeftToRight`	Two columns, tab goes left to right
`TwoColumnsTopToBottom`	Two columns, tab goes top to bottom

Metadata Class

An abstract base class that represents a custom metadata component.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

You can't create instances of this abstract class. Instead, create an instance of a specific custom metadata component class that derives from `Metadata.Metadata`, such as `Metadata.CustomMetadata`. For more information, see Metadata in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

Metadata Properties

Metadata Methods

Metadata Properties

The following are properties for `Metadata`.

IN THIS SECTION:

fullName
The full name of the custom metadata, which can include the namespace, type, and component name.

`fullName`

The full name of the custom metadata, which can include the namespace, type, and component name.

Signature

```
public String fullName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The format of the full name can include the namespace, metadata type, and metadata component name. If you're updating components in a namespace, you also need to qualify the namespace for the component in the full name. For example, the full name for a custom metadata "MDType1__mdt" component named "Component1" that is contained in the "myPackage" namespace is

"myPackage__MDType1__mdt.myPackage__Component1". For more information on full name formats for different metadata types, see reference documentation on the metadata types in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

Metadata Methods

The following are methods for `Metadata`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Metadata`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Metadata`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

MetadataType Enum

Represents the custom metadata components available in Apex.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.MetadataType` enum.

Value	Description
`CustomMetadata`	Records of custom metadata types
`Layout`	Layouts

MetadataValue Class

An abstract base class that represents a custom metadata component field.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

You can't create instances of this abstract class. Instead, create an instance of a specific custom metadata component value class that derives from `Metadata.MetadataValue`, such as `Metadata.CustomMetadataValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

MetadataValue Methods

MetadataValue Methods

The following are methods for `MetadataValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.MetadataValue`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.MetadataValue`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

MiniLayout Class

Represents a mini view of a record in the Console tab, hover details, and event overlays.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "MiniLayout" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

MiniLayout Properties

MiniLayout Methods

MiniLayout Properties

The following are properties for `MiniLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

fields
The fields for the mini-layout, listed in the order they appear in the UI. Fields that appear in the mini-layout must appear in the main layout.

relatedLists
The mini related lists, listed in the order they appear in the UI. You cannot set sorting on mini related lists. Fields that appear in the mini related lists must appear in the main layout.

`fields`

The fields for the mini-layout, listed in the order they appear in the UI. Fields that appear in the mini-layout must appear in the main layout.

Signature

```
public List<String> fields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

`relatedLists`

The mini related lists, listed in the order they appear in the UI. You cannot set sorting on mini related lists. Fields that appear in the mini related lists must appear in the main layout.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.RelatedListItem> relatedLists {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.RelatedListItem>

MiniLayout Methods

The following are methods for `MiniLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.MiniLayout`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.MiniLayout`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

Operations Class

Represents a class to execute metadata operations, such as retrieving or deploying custom metadata.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use the `Metadata.Operations` class to execute metadata operations. For more information on use cases and restrictions of metadata operations in Apex, see Metadata.

Example: Retrieve Metadata

The following example retrieves the "MyTestCustomMDType" custom metadata record from the subscriber org, and inspects the custom fields.

```
public class ReadMetadata {
  public void retrieveMetadata () {
    // List fullnames of components we want to retrieve
    List<String> componentNameList =
new List<String>{'ISVNamespace__TestCustomMDType.MyTestCustomMDType'};

    // Retrieve components that are records of custom metadata types
    // based on name
    List<Metadata.Metadata> components = Metadata.Operations.retrieve(
Metadata.MetadataType.CustomMetadata, componentNameList);
    Metadata.CustomMetadata customMetadataRecord = (Metadata.CustomMetadata)
components.get(0);

    // Check fields of retrieved component
    List<Metadata.CustomMetadataValue> values = customMetadataRecord.values;
    for (integer i = 0; i < values.size(); i++) {
      if (values.get(i).field == 'testField__c' &&
          values.get(i).value == 'desired value') {
        // ...process accordingly...
      }
    }
```

```
    }
}
```

Example: Deploy Metadata

The following example uses the Metadata API in Apex to update the customField custom field value of the MetadataRecordName custom metadata record and deploy this change into the subscriber org. Because the deployment is asynchronous, you must provide a callback class that implements the `Metadata.DeployCallback` interface, which is then used when the queued deployment completes.

```
public class CreateMetadata{
  public void updateAndDeployMetadata() {
    // Setup custom metadata to be created in the subscriber org.
    Metadata.CustomMetadata customMetadata =  new Metadata.CustomMetadata();
    customMetadata.fullName = 'ISVNamespace__MetadataTypeName.MetadataRecordName';

    Metadata.CustomMetadataValue customField = new Metadata.CustomMetadataValue();
    customField.field = 'customField__c';
    customField.value = 'New value';

    customMetadata.values.add(customField);

    Metadata.DeployContainer mdContainer = new Metadata.DeployContainer();
    mdContainer.addMetadata(customMetadata);

    // Setup deploy callback, MyDeployCallback implements
    // the Metadata.DeployCallback interface (code for
    // this class not shown in this example)
    MyDeployCallback callback = new MyDeployCallback();

    // Enqueue custom metadata deployment
    Id jobId = Metadata.Operations.enqueueDeployment(mdContainer, callback);
  }
}
```

Example: Create Two Metadata Records Synchronously

Create a metadata record along with another one that references it in the same transaction. If the parent record was installed with a namespace, prefix the developer name with *recordNs__*.

Note: No custom metadata relationship can relate records of the same type to each other.

```
public class CreateMetadata {

    public Id doCreate(
        String parentRecDevName,
        String parentRecLabel,
        String childRecDevName,
        String childRecLabel) {

        Metadata.DeployContainer mdContainer = new Metadata.DeployContainer();

        Metadata.CustomMetadata parentRecord = new Metadata.CustomMetadata();
        parentRecord.fullName = 'ParentType.' + parentRecDevName;
```

```
        parentRecord.label = parentRecLabel;
        mdContainer.addMetadata(parentRecord);

        Metadata.CustomMetadata childRecord = new Metadata.CustomMetadata();
        childRecord.fullName = 'ChildType.' + childRecDevName;
        childRecord.label = childRecLabel;
        Metadata.CustomMetadataValue relValue = new Metadata.CustomMetadataValue();
        relValue.field = 'Parent__c';
        relValue.value = parentRecDevName;
        childRecord.values.add(relValue);
        mdContainer.addMetadata(childRecord);

        Id jobId = Metadata.Operations.enqueueDeployment(mdContainer, null);
        return jobId;
    }

}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Operations Methods

Operations Methods

The following are methods for `Operations`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Operations`.

enqueueDeployment(container, callback)

Deploys custom metadata components asynchronously.

retrieve(type, fullNames)

Retrieves a list of custom metadata components.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.Operations`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

`enqueueDeployment(container, callback)`

Deploys custom metadata components asynchronously.

Signature

```
public static Id enqueueDeployment(Metadata.DeployContainer container,
Metadata.DeployCallback callback)
```

Parameters

container
Type: Metadata.DeployContainer

Container that contains the set of metadata components to deploy.

callback
Type: Metadata.DeployCallback

A class that implements the `Metadata.DeployCallback` interface. Used by Salesforce to return information about the deployment results.

Return Value

Type: Id

ID of deployment request.

`retrieve(type, fullNames)`

Retrieves a list of custom metadata components.

Signature

```
public static List<Metadata.Metadata> retrieve(Metadata.MetadataType type, List<String>
fullNames)
```

Parameters

type
Type: Metadata.MetadataType

The metadata component type.

fullNames
Type: List<String>

A list of component names to retrieve. For information on component name formats, see Metadata.fullName().

Return Value

Type: List<Metadata.Metadata>

PlatformActionList Class

Represents the list of actions, and their order, that display in the Salesforce mobile action bar for the layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "PlatformActionList" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

PlatformActionList Properties

PlatformActionList Methods

PlatformActionList Properties

The following are properties for `PlatformActionList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

actionListContext
The context of the action list.

platformActionListItems
The actions in the platform action list.

relatedSourceEntity
When the `actionListContext` property is "RelatedList" or" "RelatedListRecord", this field represents the API name of the related list to which the action belongs.

`actionListContext`

The context of the action list.

Signature

```
public Metadata.PlatformActionListContextEnum actionListContext {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.PlatformActionListContextEnum

`platformActionListItems`

The actions in the platform action list.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.PlatformActionListItem> platformActionListItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.PlatformActionListItem>

`relatedSourceEntity`

When the `actionListContext` property is "RelatedList" or" "RelatedListRecord", this field represents the API name of the related list to which the action belongs.

Signature

```
public String relatedSourceEntity {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

PlatformActionList Methods

The following are methods for `PlatformActionList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PlatformActionList`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PlatformActionList`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

PlatformActionListContextEnum Enum

Describes the different contexts of action lists.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.PlatformActionListContextEnum` enum.

Value	Description
`ActionDefinition`	Action definition context.
`Assistant`	Assistant context.

Value	Description
`BannerPhoto`	Banner photo context.
`Chatter`	Chatter context.
`Dockable`	Dockable context.
`FeedElement`	Feed element context.
`Flexipage`	Flexipage context.
`Global_x`	Global context.
`ListView`	Listview context.
`ListViewDefinition`	Listview definition context.
`ListViewRecord`	Listview record context.
`Lookup`	Lookup context.
`MruList`	MRU list context.
`MruRow`	MRU row context.
`ObjectHomeChart`	Object home chart context.
`Photo`	Photo context
`Record`	Record context.
`RecordEdit`	Record edit context
`RelatedList`	Related list context.
`RelatedListRecord`	Related list record context.

PlatformActionListItem Class

Represents an action in the platform action list for a layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "PlatformActionListItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

PlatformActionListItem Properties

PlatformActionListItem Methods

PlatformActionListItem Properties

The following are properties for `PlatformActionListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

actionName
The API name for the action in the list.

actionType
The type of action.

sortOrder
The placement of the action in the list.

subtype
The subtype of the action.

actionName

The API name for the action in the list.

Signature

```
public String actionName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

actionType

The type of action.

Signature

```
public Metadata.PlatformActionTypeEnum actionType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.PlatformActionTypeEnum

sortOrder

The placement of the action in the list.

Signature

```
public Integer sortOrder {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`subtype`

The subtype of the action.

Signature

```
public String subtype {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

PlatformActionListItem Methods

The following are methods for `PlatformActionListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PlatformActionListItem`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PlatformActionListItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

PlatformActionTypeEnum Enum

The type of action for a `PlatformActionListItem`.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.PlatformActionTypeEnum` enum.

Value	Description
`ActionLink`	An indicator on a feed element that targets an API, a web page, or a file, represented by a button in the Salesforce Chatter feed UI.
`CustomButton`	When clicked, opens a URL or a Visualforce page in a window or executes JavaScript.

Value	Description
`InvocableAction`	An invocable action such as posting to Chatter.
`ProductivityAction`	Productivity actions are predefined by Salesforce and are attached to a limited set of objects. You can't edit or delete productivity actions.
`QuickAction`	A global or object-specific action.
`StandardButton`	A predefined Salesforce button such as New, Edit, and Delete.

PrimaryTabComponents Class

Represents custom console components on primary tabs in the Salesforce console.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "PrimaryTabComponents" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

PrimaryTabComponents Properties

PrimaryTabComponents Methods

PrimaryTabComponents Properties

The following are properties for `PrimaryTabComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

component

Represents a custom console component (Visualforce page, lookup field, or related lists) on a section of a page layout.

containers

Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

`component`

Represents a custom console component (Visualforce page, lookup field, or related lists) on a section of a page layout.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.ConsoleComponent> component {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.ConsoleComponent>

`containers`

Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.Container> containers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.Container>

PrimaryTabComponents Methods

The following are methods for `PrimaryTabComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PrimaryTabComponents`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.PrimaryTabComponents`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

QuickActionList Class

Represents the list of actions associated with the page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "QuickActionList" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionList Properties

QuickActionList Methods

QuickActionList Properties

The following are properties for `QuickActionList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

quickActionListItems
List of `QuickActionList` objects.

`quickActionListItems`

List of `QuickActionList` objects.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.QuickActionListItem> quickActionListItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.QuickActionListItem>

QuickActionList Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.QuickActionList`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.QuickActionList`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

QuickActionListItem Class

Represents an action in the `QuickActionList`.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "QuickActionListItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionListItem Properties

QuickActionListItem Methods

QuickActionListItem Properties

The following are properties for `QuickActionListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

quickActionName
The API name of the action.

`quickActionName`

The API name of the action.

Signature

```
public String quickActionName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

QuickActionListItem Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.QuickActionListItem`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.QuickActionListItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

RelatedContent Class

Represents the Mobile Cards section of the page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "RelatedContent" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

RelatedContent Properties

RelatedContent Methods

RelatedContent Properties

The following are properties for `RelatedContent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

relatedContentItems
A list of layout items in the Mobile Cards section of the page layout.

`relatedContentItems`

A list of layout items in the Mobile Cards section of the page layout.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.RelatedContentItem> relatedContentItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.RelatedContentItem>

RelatedContent Methods

The following are methods for `RelatedContent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedContent`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedContent`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

RelatedContentItem Class

Represents an individual item in the `RelatedContent` list.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "RelatedContentItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

RelatedContentItem Properties

RelatedContentItem Methods

RelatedContentItem Properties

The following are properties for `RelatedContentItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

layoutItem
An individual layout item in the Mobile Cards section.

`layoutItem`

An individual layout item in the Mobile Cards section.

Signature

```
public Metadata.LayoutItem layoutItem {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.LayoutItem

RelatedContentItem Methods

The following are methods for `RelatedContentItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedContentItem`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedContentItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

RelatedList Class

Represents related list custom components on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "RelatedList" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

RelatedList Properties

RelatedList Methods

RelatedList Properties

The following are properties for `RelatedList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

hideOnDetail
When set to true, the related list is hidden from detail pages where it appears as a component to prevent duplicate information from showing.

name
The name of the component as it appears to console users.

`hideOnDetail`

When set to true, the related list is hidden from detail pages where it appears as a component to prevent duplicate information from showing.

Signature

```
public Boolean hideOnDetail {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`name`

The name of the component as it appears to console users.

Signature

```
public String name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

RelatedList Methods

The following are methods for `RelatedList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedList`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedList`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

RelatedListItem Class

Represents an item in the related list in a page layout.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "RelatedListItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

RelatedListItem Properties

RelatedListItem Methods

RelatedListItem Properties

The following are properties for `RelatedListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

customButtons
A list of custom buttons used in the related list.

excludeButtons
A list of excluded related-list buttons.

fields
A list of fields displayed in the related list. Uses aliases instead of field or API names.

relatedList
The name of the related list.

sortField
The name of the field used for sorting.

sortOrder
When `sortField` is set, the `sortOrder` property determines the sort order.

customButtons

A list of custom buttons used in the related list.

Signature

```
public List<String> customButtons {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

For more information, see "Define Custom Buttons and Links" in the Salesforce online help.

excludeButtons

A list of excluded related-list buttons.

Signature

```
public List<String> excludeButtons {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

fields

A list of fields displayed in the related list. Uses aliases instead of field or API names.

Signature

```
public List<String> fields {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<String>

relatedList

The name of the related list.

Signature

```
public String relatedList {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

sortField

The name of the field used for sorting.

Signature

```
public String sortField {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

sortOrder

When `sortField` is set, the `sortOrder` property determines the sort order.

Signature

```
public Metadata.SortOrder sortOrder {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.SortOrder

RelatedListItem Methods

The following are methods for `RelatedListItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedListItem`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.RelatedListItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Class

Represents the settings for a report chart on a standard or custom page.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "ReportChartComponentLayoutItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Properties

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Methods

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Properties

The following are properties for `ReportChartComponentLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

cacheData

Indicates whether to use cached data when displaying the chart. When the attribute is set to true, data is cached for 24 hours. When the attribute is set to false, the report is run every time the page is refreshed.

contextFilterableField

Unique development name of the field by which a report chart is filtered to return data relevant to the page. If set, the ID field for the parent object of the page or report type is the chart data filter. The parent object for the report type and the page must match for a chart to return relevant data.

error

Error string that is populated only when an error occurs in the underlying report.

hideOnError

Controls whether users see a chart that has an error. When an error occurs and this attribute is not set, the chart doesn't show any data except the error. Set the attribute to true to hide the chart from a page on error.

includeContext

If true, filters the report chart to return data that's relevant to the page.

reportName

Unique development name of a report that includes a chart.

showTitle

If true, applies the title from the report to the chart.

size

Size of the displayed chart. The default is medium.

`cacheData`

Indicates whether to use cached data when displaying the chart. When the attribute is set to true, data is cached for 24 hours. When the attribute is set to false, the report is run every time the page is refreshed.

Signature

```
public Boolean cacheData {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

contextFilterableField

Unique development name of the field by which a report chart is filtered to return data relevant to the page. If set, the ID field for the parent object of the page or report type is the chart data filter. The parent object for the report type and the page must match for a chart to return relevant data.

Signature

```
public String contextFilterableField {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

error

Error string that is populated only when an error occurs in the underlying report.

Signature

```
public String error {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

hideOnError

Controls whether users see a chart that has an error. When an error occurs and this attribute is not set, the chart doesn't show any data except the error. Set the attribute to true to hide the chart from a page on error.

Signature

```
public Boolean hideOnError {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

includeContext

If true, filters the report chart to return data that's relevant to the page.

Signature

```
public Boolean includeContext {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`reportName`

Unique development name of a report that includes a chart.

Signature

```
public String reportName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`showTitle`

If true, applies the title from the report to the chart.

Signature

```
public Boolean showTitle {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`size`

Size of the displayed chart. The default is medium.

Signature

```
public Metadata.ReportChartComponentSize size {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.ReportChartComponentSize

ReportChartComponentLayoutItem Methods

The following are methods for `ReportChartComponentLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.ReportChartComponentLayoutItem`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.ReportChartComponentLayoutItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

ReportChartComponentSize Enum

Describes the size of the displayed report chart component.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.ReportChartComponentSize` enum.

Value	Description
`LARGE`	Large chart size.
`MEDIUM`	Medium chart size.
`SMALL`	Small chart size.

SidebarComponent Class

Represents a specific custom console component to display in a container that hosts multiple components in one of the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "SidebarComponent" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

SidebarComponent Properties

SidebarComponent Methods

SidebarComponent Properties

The following are properties for `SidebarComponent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

componentType
Specifies the component type. Valid values are “KnowledgeOne”, “Lookup”, “Milestones”, “RelatedList”, “Topics”, “Files”, and “CaseExperts”.

createAction
If the component is a lookup field, the name of the quick action used to create a record.

enableLinking
If the component is a lookup field, lets users associate a record with this field.

height
The height of the component in the container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

knowledgeOneEnable
Indicates if the component is enabled for Knowledge One.

label
The name of the component as it displays to console users. Available for components in a container with the style of tabs or accordion.

lookup
If the component is a lookup field, the name of the field.

page_x
If the component is a Visualforce page, the name of the Visualforce page.

relatedLists
If the component is a related list component, the list of related list names.

unit
The unit of measurement (pixels or percent) for the height and width of the component in the container.

updateAction
If the component is a lookup field, the name of the quick action used to update a record.

width
The width of the component in the container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

componentType

Specifies the component type. Valid values are “KnowledgeOne”, “Lookup”, “Milestones”, “RelatedList”, “Topics”, “Files”, and “CaseExperts”.

Signature

```
public String componentType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

createAction

If the component is a lookup field, the name of the quick action used to create a record.

Signature

```
public String createAction {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

enableLinking

If the component is a lookup field, lets users associate a record with this field.

Signature

```
public Boolean enableLinking {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

height

The height of the component in the container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

knowledgeOneEnable

Indicates if the component is enabled for Knowledge One.

Signature

```
public Boolean knowledgeOneEnable {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

label

The name of the component as it displays to console users. Available for components in a container with the style of tabs or accordion.

Signature

```
public String label {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

lookup

If the component is a lookup field, the name of the field.

Signature

```
public String lookup {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

page_x

If the component is a Visualforce page, the name of the Visualforce page.

Signature

```
public String page_x {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

relatedLists

If the component is a related list component, the list of related list names.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.RelatedList> relatedLists {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.RelatedList>

unit

The unit of measurement (pixels or percent) for the height and width of the component in the container.

Signature

```
public String unit {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`updateAction`

If the component is a lookup field, the name of the quick action used to update a record.

Signature

```
public String updateAction {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`width`

The width of the component in the container. The `unit` property determines the unit of measurement, in pixels or percent.

Signature

```
public Integer width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

SidebarComponent Methods

The following are methods for `SidebarComponent`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SidebarComponent`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SidebarComponent`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

SortOrder Enum

Describes the sort order of a related list.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.SortOrder` enum.

Value	Description
`Asc_x`	Sort in ascending order.
`Desc_x`	Sort in descending order.

StatusCode Enum

Describes the status code for an unsuccessful component deploy.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.StatusCode` enum.

Value	Description
`INVALID_SCS_INBOUND_USER`	Log in as the RunAs user configured in your SCS setup.
`REQUIRE_CONNECTED_APP_SCS`	SCS Connected App is not installed.
`REQUIRE_CONNECTED_APP_SESSION_SCS`	To use the SCS connected app, the user must be authenticated.
`REQUIRE_RUNAS_USER`	A RunAs user must be configured in your org.

SEE ALSO:

DeployProblemType Enum

SubtabComponents Class

Represents custom console components on subtabs in the Salesforce console.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "SubtabComponents" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

SubtabComponents Properties

SubtabComponents Methods

SubtabComponents Properties

The following are properties for `SubtabComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

component
Represents a custom console component (Visualforce page, lookup field, or related lists) on a section of a page layout.

containers
Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

`component`

Represents a custom console component (Visualforce page, lookup field, or related lists) on a section of a page layout.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.ConsoleComponent> component {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.ConsoleComponent>

`containers`

Represents a location and style in which to display more than one custom console component on the sidebars of the Salesforce console.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.Container> containers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.Container>

SubtabComponents Methods

The following are methods for `SubtabComponents`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SubtabComponents`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SubtabComponents`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

SummaryLayoutStyleEnum Enum

Describes the highlights panel style for a `SummaryLayout`.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.SummaryLayoutStyleEnum` enum.

Value	Description
`CaseInteraction`	Case interaction style.
`ChildServiceReportTemplateStyle`	Child service report template style.
`DefaultQuoteTemplate`	Default quote template style.
`DefaultServiceReportTemplate`	Default service report style
`Default_x`	Default style.
`PathAssistant`	Path assisstant style.
`QuickActionLayoutLeftRight`	Quick action left-right layout style.
`QuickActionLayoutTopDown`	Quick action top-down layout style.
`QuoteTemplate`	Quote template style.
`ServiceReportTemplate`	Service report style.

SummaryLayout Class

Controls the appearance of the highlights panel, which summarizes key fields in a grid at the top of a page layout, when Case Feed is enabled.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "SummaryLayout" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

SummaryLayout Properties

SummaryLayout Methods

SummaryLayout Properties

The following are properties for `SummaryLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

masterLabel
The name of the layout label.

sizeX
Number of columns in the highlights pane, between 1 and 4 (inclusive).

sizeY
Number of rows in each column, either 1 or 2.

sizeZ
If provided, the setting is not visible to users.

summaryLayoutItems
Controls the appearance of an individual field and its column and row position within the highlights panel grid, when Case Feed is enabled. At least one is required.

summaryLayoutStyle
Specifies the panel style.

`masterLabel`

The name of the layout label.

Signature

```
public String masterLabel {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

sizeX

Number of columns in the highlights pane, between 1 and 4 (inclusive).

Signature

```
public Integer sizeX {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

sizeY

Number of rows in each column, either 1 or 2.

Signature

```
public Integer sizeY {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

sizeZ

If provided, the setting is not visible to users.

Signature

```
public Integer sizeZ {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

summaryLayoutItems

Controls the appearance of an individual field and its column and row position within the highlights panel grid, when Case Feed is enabled. At least one is required.

Signature

```
public List<Metadata.SummaryLayoutItem> summaryLayoutItems {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Metadata.SummaryLayoutItem>

summaryLayoutStyle

Specifies the panel style.

Signature

```
public Metadata.SummaryLayoutStyleEnum summaryLayoutStyle {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Metadata.SummaryLayoutStyleEnum

SummaryLayout Methods

The following are methods for `SummaryLayout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SummaryLayout`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SummaryLayout`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

SummaryLayoutItem Class

Controls the appearance of an individual field and its column and row position within the highlights panel grid, when Case Feed is enabled. You can have two fields per each grid in a highlights panel.

Namespace

Metadata

Usage

Use this class when accessing `Metadata.Layout` metadata components. For more information, see "SummaryLayoutItem" in the *Metadata API Developer Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

SummaryLayoutItem Properties

SummaryLayoutItem Methods

SummaryLayoutItem Properties

The following are properties for `SummaryLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

customLink
The custom link reference.

field
The field name reference, relative to the page layout. Must be a standard or custom field that also exists on the detail page.

posX
The item's column position in the highlights panel grid. Must be within the range of `sizeX`.

posY
The item's row position in the highlights panel grid. Must be within the range of `sizeY`.

posZ
Reserved for future use. If provided, the setting is not visible to users.

`customLink`

The custom link reference.

Signature

```
public String customLink {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`field`

The field name reference, relative to the page layout. Must be a standard or custom field that also exists on the detail page.

Signature

```
public String field {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`posX`

The item's column position in the highlights panel grid. Must be within the range of `sizeX`.

Signature

```
public Integer posX {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

posY

The item's row position in the highlights panel grid. Must be within the range of `sizeY`.

Signature

```
public Integer posY {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

posZ

Reserved for future use. If provided, the setting is not visible to users.

Signature

```
public Integer posZ {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

SummaryLayoutItem Methods

The following are methods for `SummaryLayoutItem`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SummaryLayoutItem`.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `Metadata.SummaryLayoutItem`.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

UiBehavior Enum

Describes the behavior for a layout item on a layout page.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Metadata.UiBehavior` enum.

Value	Description
`Edit`	The layout field can be edited but is not required.
`Readonly`	The layout field is read-only.
`Required`	The layout field can be edited and is required.

Process Namespace

The `Process` namespace provides an interface and classes for passing data between your organization and a flow.

The following are the interfaces and classes in the `Process` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Plugin Interface
Allows you to pass data between your organization and a specified flow.

PluginDescribeResult Class
Describes the input and output parameters for `Process.PluginResult`.

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Class
Describes the input parameter for `Process.PluginResult`.

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Class
Describes the output parameter for `Process.PluginResult`.

PluginRequest Class
Passes input parameters from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

PluginResult Class
Returns output parameters from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

Plugin Interface

Allows you to pass data between your organization and a specified flow.

Namespace

Process

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.
- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

IN THIS SECTION:

Plugin Methods

Plugin Example Implementation

Plugin Methods

The following are instance methods for `Plugin`.

IN THIS SECTION:

describe()

Returns a `Process.PluginDescribeResult` object that describes this method call.

invoke(request)

Primary method that the system invokes when the class that implements the interface is instantiated.

`describe()`

Returns a `Process.PluginDescribeResult` object that describes this method call.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginDescribeResult describe()
```

Return Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult

`invoke(request)`

Primary method that the system invokes when the class that implements the interface is instantiated.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginResult invoke(Process.PluginRequest request)
```

Parameters

request
Type: Process.PluginRequest

Return Value

Type: Process.PluginResult

Plugin Example Implementation

```
global class flowChat implements Process.Plugin {

// The main method to be implemented. The Flow calls this at run time.
global Process.PluginResult invoke(Process.PluginRequest request) {
        // Get the subject of the Chatter post from the flow
        String subject = (String) request.inputParameters.get('subject');

        // Use the Chatter APIs to post it to the current user's feed
        FeedItem fItem = new FeedItem();
        fItem.ParentId = UserInfo.getUserId();
        fItem.Body = 'Flow Update: ' + subject;
        insert fItem;

        // return to Flow
        Map<String,Object> result = new Map<String,Object>();
        return new Process.PluginResult(result);
    }

    // Returns the describe information for the interface
    global Process.PluginDescribeResult describe() {
        Process.PluginDescribeResult result = new Process.PluginDescribeResult();
        result.Name = 'flowchatplugin';
        result.Tag = 'chat';
        result.inputParameters = new
           List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter>{
               new Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter('subject',
               Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType.STRING, true)
            };
        result.outputParameters = new
           List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter>{ };
        return result;
    }
}
```

Test Class

The following is a test class for the above class.

```
@isTest
private class flowChatTest {

    static testmethod void flowChatTests() {
```

```
        flowChat plugin = new flowChat();
        Map<String,Object> inputParams = new Map<String,Object>();

        string feedSubject = 'Flow is alive';
        InputParams.put('subject', feedSubject);

        Process.PluginRequest request = new Process.PluginRequest(inputParams);


        plugin.invoke(request);
    }
}
```

PluginDescribeResult Class

Describes the input and output parameters for `Process.PluginResult`.

Namespace

Process

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.
- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult Constructors

PluginDescribeResult Properties

PluginDescribeResult Constructors

The following are constructors for `PluginDescribeResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult()
Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult` class.

`PluginDescribeResult()`

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult` class.

Signature

```
public PluginDescribeResult()
```

PluginDescribeResult Properties

The following are properties for `PluginDescribeResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

description
This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

inputParameters
The input parameters passed by the `Process.PluginRequest` class from a flow to the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface.

name
Unique name of the plug-in.

outputParameters
The output parameters passed by the `Process.PluginResult` class from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

`description`

This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 255 characters.

`inputParameters`

The input parameters passed by the `Process.PluginRequest` class from a flow to the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface.

Signature

```
public List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter> inputParameters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter>

`name`

Unique name of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 40 characters.

`outputParameters`

The output parameters passed by the `Process.PluginResult` class from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

Signature

```
public List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter> outputParameters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter>

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Class

Describes the input parameter for `Process.PluginResult`.

Namespace

Process

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.
- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Constructors

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Properties

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Constructors

The following are constructors for `PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(name, description, parameterType, required)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter` class using the specified name, description, parameter type, and required option.

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(name, parameterType, required)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter` class using the specified name, parameter type, and required option.

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(name, description, parameterType, required)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter` class using the specified name, description, parameter type, and required option.

Signature

```
public PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(String name, String description,
Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType parameterType, Boolean required)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Unique name of the plug-in.

description
Type: String

Describes the purpose of the plug-in.

parameterType
Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

The data type of the input parameter.

required
Type: Boolean

Set to `true` for required and `false` otherwise.

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(name, parameterType, required)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter` class using the specified name, parameter type, and required option.

Signature

```
public PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter(String name,
Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType parameterType, Boolean required)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Unique name of the plug-in.

parameterType
Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

The data type of the input parameter.

required
Type: Boolean

Set to `true` for required and `false` otherwise.

PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter Properties

The following are properties for `PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Description
This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

Name
Unique name of the plug-in.

ParameterType
The data type of the input parameter.

Required
Set to `true` for required and `false` otherwise.

`Description`

This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String Description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 255 characters.

Name

Unique name of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String Name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 40 characters.

ParameterType

The data type of the input parameter.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType ParameterType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

Required

Set to `true` for required and `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean Required {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Class

Describes the output parameter for `Process.PluginResult`.

Namespace

Process

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.

- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Constructors

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Properties

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Constructors

The following are constructors for `PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(name, description, parameterType)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter` class using the specified name, description, and parameter type.

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(name, parameterType)

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter` class using the specified name, description, and parameter type.

`PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(name, description, parameterType)`

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter` class using the specified name, description, and parameter type.

Signature

```
public PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(String name, String description,
Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType parameterType)
```

Parameters

`name`
Type: String

Unique name of the plug-in.

`description`
Type: String

Describes the purpose of the plug-in.

`parameterType`
Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

The data type of the input parameter.

`PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(name, parameterType)`

Creates a new instance of the `Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter` class using the specified name, description, and parameter type.

Signature

```
public PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter(String name,
Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType parameterType)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Unique name of the plug-in.

parameterType
Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

The data type of the input parameter.

PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter Properties

The following are properties for `PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Description
This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

Name
Unique name of the plug-in.

ParameterType
The data type of the input parameter.

`Description`

This optional field describes the purpose of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String Description {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 255 characters.

`Name`

Unique name of the plug-in.

Signature

```
public String Name {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Size limit: 40 characters.

`ParameterType`

The data type of the input parameter.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType ParameterType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType

PluginRequest Class

Passes input parameters from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

Namespace

Process

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.
- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

PluginRequest Properties

The following are properties for `PluginRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

inputParameters
Input parameters that are passed from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

`inputParameters`

Input parameters that are passed from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

Signature

```
public MAP<String,ANY> inputParameters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, Object>

PluginResult Class

Returns output parameters from the class that implements the `Process.Plugin` interface to the flow.

Tip: We recommend using the `@InvocableMethod` annotation instead of the `Process.Plugin` interface.

- The interface doesn't support Blob, Collection, sObject, and Time data types, and it doesn't support bulk operations. Once you implement the interface on a class, the class can be referenced only from flows.
- The annotation supports all data types and bulk operations. Once you implement the annotation on a class, the class can be referenced from flows, processes, and the Custom Invocable Actions REST API endpoint.

Namespace

Process

PluginResult Properties

The following are properties for `PluginResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

outputParameters
Output parameters returned from the class that implements the interface to the flow.

`outputParameters`

Output parameters returned from the class that implements the interface to the flow.

Signature

```
public MAP<String, ANY> outputParameters {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, Object>

QuickAction Namespace

The `QuickAction` namespace provides classes and methods for quick actions.

The following are the classes in the `QuickAction` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult Class
Contains describe metadata information for a quick action that is available for a specified parent.

DescribeLayoutComponent Class
Represents the smallest unit in a layout—a field or a separator.

DescribeLayoutItem Class
Represents an individual item in a `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow`.

DescribeLayoutRow Class
Represents a row in a `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

DescribeLayoutSection Class
Represents a section of a layout and consists of one or more columns and one or more rows (an array of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow`).

DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue Class
Returns a default value for a quick action.

DescribeQuickActionResult Class
Contains describe metadata information for a quick action.

QuickActionDefaults Class
Represents an abstract Apex class that provides the context for running the standard Email Action on Case Feed and the container of the Email Message fields for the action payload. You can override the target fields before the standard Email Action is rendered.

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Interface
The `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler` interface lets you specify the default values for the standard Email and Send Email actions in the case feed. You can use this interface to specify the From address, CC address, BCC address, subject, and email body for the Email action in the case feed. You can use the interface to pre-populate these fields based on the context where the action is displayed, such as the case origin (for example, country) and subject.

QuickActionRequest Class
Use the `QuickAction.QuickActionRequest` class for providing action information for quick actions to be performed by `QuickAction` class methods. Action information includes the action name, context record ID, and record.

QuickActionResult Class
After you initiate a quick action with the `QuickAction` class, use the `QuickActionResult` class for processing action results.

SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Class
Represents an Apex class that provides: the From address list; the original email's email message ID, provided that the reply action was invoked on the email message feed item; and methods to specify related settings on templates. You can override these fields before the standard Email Action is rendered.

DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult Class

Contains describe metadata information for a quick action that is available for a specified parent.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

The QuickAction `describeAvailableQuickActions` method returns an array of available quick action describe result objects (`QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult`).

DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getActionEnumOrId()
Returns the unique ID for the action. If the action doesn't have an ID, its API name is used.

getLabel()
The quick action label.

getName()
The quick action name.

getType()
The quick action type.

`getActionEnumOrId()`

Returns the unique ID for the action. If the action doesn't have an ID, its API name is used.

Signature

```
public String getActionEnumOrId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

The quick action label.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

The quick action name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getType()`

The quick action type.

Signature

```
public String getType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DescribeLayoutComponent Class

Represents the smallest unit in a layout—a field or a separator.

Namespace

QuickAction

DescribeLayoutComponent Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeLayoutComponent`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDisplayLines()
Returns the vertical lines displayed for a field. Applies to `textarea` and multi-select picklist fields.

getTabOrder()
Returns the tab order for the item in the row.

getType()
Returns the name of the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` type for this component.

getValue()
Returns the name of the field if the type for `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` is `textarea`.

`getDisplayLines()`

Returns the vertical lines displayed for a field. Applies to `textarea` and multi-select picklist fields.

Signature

```
public Integer getDisplayLines()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getTabOrder()`

Returns the tab order for the item in the row.

Signature

```
public Integer getTabOrder()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getType()`

Returns the name of the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` type for this component.

Signature

```
public String getType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the name of the field if the type for `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` is `textarea`.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DescribeLayoutItem Class

Represents an individual item in a `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow`.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

For most fields on a layout, there is only one component per layout item. However, in a display-only view, the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` might be a composite of the individual fields (for example, an address can consist of street, city, state, country, and postal code data). On the corresponding edit view, each component of the address field would be split up into separate `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItems`.

DescribeLayoutItem Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeLayoutItem`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the label text for this item.

getLayoutComponents()
Returns a list of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponents` for this item.

isEditableForNew()
Indicates whether this item can be edited for new (`true`) or not (`false`).

isEditableForUpdate()
Indicates whether this item can be edited for update(`true`) or not (`false`).

isPlaceholder()
Indicates whether this item is a placeholder (`true`) or not (`false`). If `true`, then this item is blank.

isRequired()
Indicates whether this item is required (`true`) or not (`false`).

`getLabel()`

Returns the label text for this item.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLayoutComponents()`

Returns a list of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponents` for this item.

Signature

```
public List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent> getLayoutComponents()
```

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent>

`isEditableForNew()`

Indicates whether this item can be edited for new (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isEditableForNew()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isEditableForUpdate()`

Indicates whether this item can be edited for update(`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isEditableForUpdate()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isPlaceholder()`

Indicates whether this item is a placeholder (`true`) or not (`false`). If `true`, then this item is blank.

Signature

```
public Boolean isPlaceholder()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isRequired()`

Indicates whether this item is required (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isRequired()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This is useful if, for example, you want to render required fields in a contrasting color.

DescribeLayoutRow Class

Represents a row in a `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

A `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow` consists of one or more `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` objects. For each `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow`, a `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` refers either to a specific field or to an "empty" `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` (one that contains no `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` objects). An empty `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` can be returned when a given `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow` is sparse (for example, containing more fields on the right column than on the left column).

DescribeLayoutRow Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeLayoutRow`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLayoutItems()
Returns either a specific field or an empty `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` (one that contains no `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` objects).

getNumItems()
Returns the number of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem`.

`getLayoutItems()`

Returns either a specific field or an empty `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem` (one that contains no `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutComponent` objects).

Signature

```
public List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem> getLayoutItems()
```

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem>

`getNumItems()`

Returns the number of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutItem`.

Signature

```
public Integer getNumItems()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

DescribeLayoutSection Class

Represents a section of a layout and consists of one or more columns and one or more rows (an array of `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow`).

Namespace

QuickAction

DescribeLayoutSection Properties

The following are properties for `DescribeLayoutSection`.

`collapsed`

The current view of the record details section: collapsed (`true`) or expanded (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean collapsed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`layoutsectionid`

The unique ID of the record details section in the layout.

Signature

```
public Id layoutsectionid {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Id

DescribeLayoutSection Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeLayoutSection`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColumns()
Returns the number of columns in the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

getHeading()
The heading text (label) for the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

getLayoutRows()
Returns an array of one or more `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow` objects.

getLayoutSectionId()
Returns the ID of the record details section in the layout.

getParentLayoutId()
Returns the ID of the layout upon which this `DescribeLayoutSection` resides.

getRows()
Returns the number of rows in the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

isCollapsed()
Indicates whether the record details section is collapsed (`true`) or expanded (`false`). If you build your own app, you can use this method to see whether the current user collapsed a section, and respect that preference in your own UI.

isUseCollapsibleSection()
Indicates whether the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection` is a collapsible section (`true`) or not (`false`).

isUseHeading()
Indicates whether to use the `heading` (`true`) or not (`false`).

`getColumns()`

Returns the number of columns in the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

Signature

```
public Integer getColumns()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getHeading()`

The heading text (label) for the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

Signature

```
public String getHeading()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLayoutRows()

Returns an array of one or more `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow` objects.

Signature

```
public List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow> getLayoutRows()
```

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeLayoutRow>

getLayoutSectionId()

Returns the ID of the record details section in the layout.

Signature

```
public Id getLayoutSectionId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getParentLayoutId()

Returns the ID of the layout upon which this `DescribeLayoutSection` resides.

Signature

```
public Id getParentLayoutId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getRows()

Returns the number of rows in the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection`.

Signature

```
public Integer getRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

isCollapsed()

Indicates whether the record details section is collapsed (`true`) or expanded (`false`). If you build your own app, you can use this method to see whether the current user collapsed a section, and respect that preference in your own UI.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCollapsed()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isUseCollapsibleSection()

Indicates whether the `QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection` is a collapsible section (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isUseCollapsibleSection()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isUseHeading()

Indicates whether to use the `heading` (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public Boolean isUseHeading()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue Class

Returns a default value for a quick action.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

Represents the default values of fields to use in default layouts.

DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDefaultValue()
Returns the default value of the quick action.

getField()
Returns the field name of the action.

`getDefaultValue()`

Returns the default value of the quick action.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getField()`

Returns the field name of the action.

Signature

```
public String getField()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DescribeQuickActionResult Class

Contains describe metadata information for a quick action.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

The QuickAction `describeQuickActions` method returns an array of quick action describe result objects (`QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionResult`).

IN THIS SECTION:

DescribeQuickActionResult Properties

DescribeQuickActionResult Methods

DescribeQuickActionResult Properties

The following are properties for `DescribeQuickActionResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

canvasapplicationname

The name of the Canvas application invoked by the custom action.

colors

Array of color information. Each color is associated with a theme.

contextsobjecttype

The object used for the action. Was `getsourceSobjectType()` in API version 29.0 and earlier.

defaultvalues

The action's default values.

flowdevname

If the custom action invokes a flow, the fully qualified name of the flow.

flowrecordidvar

If the custom action invokes a flow, the input variable that the custom action passes the record's ID to.

height

The height in pixels of the action pane.

iconname

The name of the icon used for the action. If a custom icon is not used, this value isn't set.

icons

Array of icons. Each icon is associated with a theme.

iconurl

The URL of the icon used for the action. This icon URL corresponds to the 32x32 icon used for the current Salesforce theme, introduced in Spring '10, or the custom icon, if there is one.

layout

The section of the layout where the action resides.

lightningcomponentbundleid

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, the ID of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

lightningcomponentbundlename

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, the name of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

lightningcomponentqualifiedname

The fully qualified name of the Lightning component invoked by the custom action.

miniiconurl

The icon's URL. This icon URL corresponds to the 16x16 icon used for the current Salesforce theme, introduced in Spring '10, or the custom icon, if there is one.

showquickactionlcheader

Indicates whether the Lightning component quick action header and footer are shown. If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

showquickactionvfheader

Indicates whether the Visualforce quick action header and footer should be shown. If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

targetparentfield

The parent object type of the action. Links the target object to the parent object. For example, the value is Account if the target object is Contact and the parent object is Account.

targetrecordtypeid

The record type of the target record.

targetsobjecttype

The action's target object type.

visualforcepagename

The name of the Visualforce page associated with the custom action.

visualforcepageurl

The URL of the Visualforce page associated with the action.

width

The width in pixels of the action pane, for custom actions that call Visualforce pages, Canvas apps, or Lightning components.

canvasapplicationname

The name of the Canvas application invoked by the custom action.

Signature

```
public String canvasapplicationname {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

colors

Array of color information. Each color is associated with a theme.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeColorResult> colors {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeColorResult> on page 2314

contextsobjecttype

The object used for the action. Was `getsourceSobjectType()` in API version 29.0 and earlier.

Signature

```
public String contextsobjecttype {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

defaultvalues

The action's default values.

Signature

```
public List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue> defaultvalues {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue>

flowdevname

If the custom action invokes a flow, the fully qualified name of the flow.

Signature

```
public String flowdevname {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

flowrecordidvar

If the custom action invokes a flow, the input variable that the custom action passes the record's ID to.

Signature

```
public String flowrecordidvar {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Valid values are *`null`* or *`recordId`*.

height

The height in pixels of the action pane.

Signature

```
public Integer height {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

iconname

The name of the icon used for the action. If a custom icon is not used, this value isn't set.

Signature

```
public String iconname {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

icons

Array of icons. Each icon is associated with a theme.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeIconResult> icons {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeIconResult> on page 2337>

If no custom icon was associated with the quick action and the quick action creates a specific object, the icons will correspond to the icons used for the created object. For example, if the quick action creates an Account, the icon array will contain the icons used for Account.

If a custom icon was associated with the quick action, the array will contain that custom icon.

iconurl

The URL of the icon used for the action. This icon URL corresponds to the 32x32 icon used for the current Salesforce theme, introduced in Spring '10, or the custom icon, if there is one.

Signature

```
public String iconurl {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`layout`

The section of the layout where the action resides.

Signature

```
public QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection layout {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection on page 2152

`lightningcomponentbundleid`

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, the ID of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

Signature

```
public String lightningcomponentbundleid {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`lightningcomponentbundlename`

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, the name of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

Signature

```
public String lightningcomponentbundlename {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`lightningcomponentqualifiedname`

The fully qualified name of the Lightning component invoked by the custom action.

Signature

```
public String lightningcomponentqualifiedname {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

miniiconurl

The icon's URL. This icon URL corresponds to the 16x16 icon used for the current Salesforce theme, introduced in Spring '10, or the custom icon, if there is one.

Signature

```
public String miniiconurl {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

showquickactionlcheader

Indicates whether the Lightning component quick action header and footer are shown. If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

Signature

```
public Boolean showquickactionlcheader {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

showquickactionvfheader

Indicates whether the Visualforce quick action header and footer should be shown. If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

Signature

```
public Boolean showquickactionvfheader {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

targetparentfield

The parent object type of the action. Links the target object to the parent object. For example, the value is Account if the target object is Contact and the parent object is Account.

Signature

```
public String targetparentfield {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

targetrecordtypeid

The record type of the target record.

Signature

```
public String targetrecordtypeid {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

targetsobjecttype

The action's target object type.

Signature

```
public String targetsobjecttype {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

visualforcepagename

The name of the Visualforce page associated with the custom action.

Signature

```
public String visualforcepagename {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

visualforcepageurl

The URL of the Visualforce page associated with the action.

Signature

```
public String visualforcepageurl {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

width

The width in pixels of the action pane, for custom actions that call Visualforce pages, Canvas apps, or Lightning components.

Signature

```
public Integer width {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

DescribeQuickActionResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeQuickActionResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getActionEnumOrId()

Returns the unique ID for the action. If the action doesn't have an ID, its API name is used.

getCanvasApplicationName()

Returns the name of the Canvas application, if used.

getColors()

Returns an array of color information. Each color is associated with a theme.

getContextSobjectType()

Returns the object used for the action. Replaces `getsourceSobjectType()` in API version 30.0 and later.

getDefaultValues()

Returns the default values for a action.

getFlowDevName()

If the custom action invokes a flow, returns the fully qualified name of the flow invoked by the custom action.

getFlowRecordIdVar()

If the custom action invokes a flow, returns the input variable that the custom action passes the record's ID to.

getHeight()

Returns the height in pixels of the action pane.

getIconName()

Returns the actions' icon name.

getIconUrl()

Returns the URL of the 32x32 icon used for the action.

getIcons()

Returns a list of `Schema.DescribeIconResult` objects that describe colors used in a tab.

getLabel()

Returns the action label.

getLayout()

Returns the layout sections that comprise an action.

getLightningComponentBundleId()

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the ID of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

getLightningComponentBundleName()
If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the name of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

getLightningComponentQualifiedName()
If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the fully qualified name of the Lightning component invoked by the custom action.

getMiniIconUrl()
Returns the 16x16 icon URL.

getName()
Returns the action name.

getShowQuickActionLcHeader()
Returns an indication of whether the Lightning component quick action header and footer are shown.

getShowQuickActionVfHeader()
Returns an indication of whether the Visualforce quick action header and footer should be shown.

getSourceSobjectType()
Returns the object type used for the action.

getTargetParentField()
Returns the parent object's type for the action.

getTargetRecordTypeId()
Returns the record type of the targeted record.

getTargetSobjectType()
Returns the action's target object type.

getType()
Returns a create or custom Visualforce action.

getVisualforcePageName()
If Visualforce is used, returns the name of the associated page for the action.

getVisualforcePageUrl()
Returns the URL of the Visualforce page associated with the action.

getWidth()
If a custom action is created, returns the width in pixels of the action pane.

`getActionEnumOrId()`

Returns the unique ID for the action. If the action doesn't have an ID, its API name is used.

Signature

```
public String getActionEnumOrId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getCanvasApplicationName()

Returns the name of the Canvas application, if used.

Syntax

```
public String getCanvasApplicationName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getColors()

Returns an array of color information. Each color is associated with a theme.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeColorResult> getColors()
```

Return Value

Type: List <Schema.DescribeColorResult>

getContextSobjectType()

Returns the object used for the action. Replaces `getsourceSobjectType()` in API version 30.0 and later.

Signature

```
public String getContextSobjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDefaultValues()

Returns the default values for a action.

Signature

```
public List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue> getDefaultValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionDefaultValue>

getFlowDevName()

If the custom action invokes a flow, returns the fully qualified name of the flow invoked by the custom action.

Signature

```
public String getFlowDevName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getFlowRecordIdVar()`

If the custom action invokes a flow, returns the input variable that the custom action passes the record's ID to.

Signature

```
public String getFlowRecordIdVar()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getHeight()`

Returns the height in pixels of the action pane.

Signature

```
public Integer getHeight()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getIconName()`

Returns the actions' icon name.

Signature

```
public String getIconName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getIconUrl()`

Returns the URL of the 32x32 icon used for the action.

Signature

```
public String getIconUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getIcons()`

Returns a list of `Schema.DescribeIconResult` objects that describe colors used in a tab.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeIconResult> getIcons()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeIconResult>

`getLabel()`

Returns the action label.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLayout()`

Returns the layout sections that comprise an action.

Signature

```
public QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection getLayout()
```

Return Value

Type: QuickAction.DescribeLayoutSection

`getLightningComponentBundleId()`

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the ID of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

Signature

```
public String getLightningComponentBundleId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLightningComponentBundleName()

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the name of the Lightning component bundle to which the component belongs.

Signature

```
public String getLightningComponentBundleName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLightningComponentQualifiedName()

If the custom action invokes a Lightning component, returns the fully qualified name of the Lightning component invoked by the custom action.

Signature

```
public String getLightningComponentQualifiedName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getMiniIconUrl()

Returns the 16x16 icon URL.

Signature

```
public String getMiniIconUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getName()

Returns the action name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getShowQuickActionLcHeader()

Returns an indication of whether the Lightning component quick action header and footer are shown.

Signature

```
public Boolean getShowQuickActionLcHeader()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

getShowQuickActionVfHeader()

Returns an indication of whether the Visualforce quick action header and footer should be shown.

Signature

```
public Boolean getShowQuickActionVfHeader()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

If `false`, then both the header containing the quick action title and the footer containing the Save and Cancel buttons aren't displayed.

getSourceSobjectType()

Returns the object type used for the action.

Signature

```
public String getSourceSobjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getTargetParentField()

Returns the parent object's type for the action.

Signature

```
public String getTargetParentField()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getTargetRecordTypeId()

Returns the record type of the targeted record.

Signature

```
public String getTargetRecordTypeId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getTargetSobjectType()

Returns the action's target object type.

Signature

```
public String getTargetSobjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getType()

Returns a create or custom Visualforce action.

Signature

```
public String getType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getVisualforcePageName()

If Visualforce is used, returns the name of the associated page for the action.

Signature

```
public String getVisualforcePageName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getVisualforcePageUrl()`

Returns the URL of the Visualforce page associated with the action.

Signature

```
public String getVisualforcePageUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getWidth()`

If a custom action is created, returns the width in pixels of the action pane.

Signature

```
public Integer getWidth()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

QuickActionDefaults Class

Represents an abstract Apex class that provides the context for running the standard Email Action on Case Feed and the container of the Email Message fields for the action payload. You can override the target fields before the standard Email Action is rendered.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

Note: You cannot extend this abstract class. You can use the getter methods when using it in the context of QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler. Salesforce provides a class that extends this class (See QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults.)

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionDefaults Methods

QuickActionDefaults Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionDefaults`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getActionName()
Returns the name of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Case.Email).

getActionType()
Returns the type of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Email).

getContextId()
The ID of the context related to the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Case ID).

getTargetSObject()
The target object of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (EmailMessage).

getActionName()

Returns the name of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Case.Email).

Signature

```
public String getActionName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getActionType()

Returns the type of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Email).

Signature

```
public String getActionType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getContextId()

The ID of the context related to the standard Email Action on Case Feed (Case ID).

Signature

```
public Id getContextId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getTargetSObject()

The target object of the standard Email Action on Case Feed (EmailMessage).

Signature

```
public SObject getTargetSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: SObject

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Interface

The `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler` interface lets you specify the default values for the standard Email and Send Email actions in the case feed. You can use this interface to specify the From address, CC address, BCC address, subject, and email body for the Email action in the case feed. You can use the interface to pre-populate these fields based on the context where the action is displayed, such as the case origin (for example, country) and subject.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

To specify default values for the standard Email action in the case feed, create a class that implements `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler`.

The `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler` interface works in Salesforce Classic and Lightning Experience.

When working in Lightning Experience, keep the following things in mind:

- The interface overrides email values set up with predefined IDs.
- The interface works with the out-of-the-box Email action provided on cases. You can also use the interface with custom Email actions for the case object.
- The interface in Lightning Experience doesn't support:
  - Email attachments
  - Custom email fields
  - Visualforce email templates, which are a type of email template available in Salesforce Classic
- The From Address picklist isn't customizable in Send Email action types via the QuickActionDefaultsHandler Interface.
- If your Apex interface adds content to the email body, merge fields display as unresolved. During preview and send, the merge fields resolve.

When you implement this interface, provide an empty parameterless constructor.

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Methods

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Example Implementations

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionDefaultsHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

onInitDefaults(actionDefaults)
Implement this method to provide default values for the standard Email action in the case feed.

onInitDefaults(actionDefaults)

Implement this method to provide default values for the standard Email action in the case feed.

Signature

```
public void onInitDefaults(QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[] actionDefaults)
```

Parameters

actionDefaults
Type: QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[]

This array contains only one item of type `QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults`.

Return Value

Type: void

QuickActionDefaultsHandler Example Implementations

These examples are implementations of the `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler` interface.

In this example, the `onInitDefaults` method checks whether the element passed in the array is for the standard Email action in the case feed. Then, it performs a query to retrieve the case that corresponds to the context ID. Next, it sets the value of the BCC address of the corresponding email message to a default value. The default value is based on the case reason. Finally, it sets the default values of the email template properties. The `onInitDefaults` method determines the default values based on two criteria: first, whether a reply action on an email message initiated the call to the method, and second, whether any previous emails attached to the case are associated with the call.

```
global class EmailPublisherLoader implements QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler {
    // Empty constructor
    global EmailPublisherLoader() {
    }

    // The main interface method
    global void onInitDefaults(QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[] defaults) {
        QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults sendEmailDefaults = null;


        // Check if the quick action is the standard case feed Send Email action
        for (Integer j = 0; j < defaults.size(); j++) {
            if (defaults.get(j) instanceof QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults &&
               defaults.get(j).getTargetSObject().getSObjectType() ==
                   EmailMessage.sObjectType &&
               defaults.get(j).getActionName().equals('Case.Email') &&
               defaults.get(j).getActionType().equals('Email')) {
                   sendEmailDefaults =
```

```
                    (QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults)defaults.get(j);
                break;
            }
        }

        if (sendEmailDefaults != null) {
            Case c = [SELECT Status, Reason FROM Case
                      WHERE Id=:sendEmailDefaults.getContextId()];

          EmailMessage emailMessage = (EmailMessage)sendEmailDefaults.getTargetSObject();

            // Set BCC address to make sure each email goes for audit
            emailMessage.BccAddress = getBccAddress(c.Reason);

            /*
            Set Template related fields
            when the In Reply To Id field is null we know the interface
            is called on page load. Here we check if
            there are any previous emails attached to the case and load
            the 'New_Case_Created' or 'Automatic_Response' template.
            When the In Reply To Id field is not null we know that
            the interface is called on click of reply/reply all
            of an email and we load the 'Default_reply_template' template
            */
            if (sendEmailDefaults.getInReplyToId() == null) {
                Integer emailCount = [SELECT count() FROM EmailMessage
                                      WHERE ParentId=:sendEmailDefaults.getContextId()];
                if (emailCount!= null && emailCount > 0) {
                    sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId(
                        getTemplateIdHelper('Automatic_Response'));
                } else {
                    sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId(
                        getTemplateIdHelper('New_Case_Created'));
                }
                sendEmailDefaults.setInsertTemplateBody(false);
                sendEmailDefaults.setIgnoreTemplateSubject(false);
            } else {
                sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId(
                    getTemplateIdHelper('Default_reply_template'));
                sendEmailDefaults.setInsertTemplateBody(false);
                sendEmailDefaults.setIgnoreTemplateSubject(true);
            }
        }
    }

    private Id getTemplateIdHelper(String templateApiName) {
        Id templateId = null;
        try {
            templateId = [select id, name from EmailTemplate
                          where developername = : templateApiName].id;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            system.debug('Unble to locate EmailTemplate using name: ' +
                templateApiName + ' refer to Setup | Communications Templates '
                    + templateApiName);
```

```
        }
        return templateId;
    }
private String getBccAddress(String reason) {
        if (reason != null && reason.equals('Technical'))
            { return 'support_technical@mycompany.com'; }
        else if (reason != null && reason.equals('Billing'))
            { return 'support_billing@mycompany.com'; }
        else { return 'support@mycompany.com'; }
    }


}
```

In this example, the `onInitDefaults` method checks whether the element passed in the array is for the standard Email action in the case feed. Then it performs a query to determine if the case Priority is set to *`High`*. If the Priority is set to *`High`*, the email address *`managers@acme.com`* is appended to the BCC field.

```
global class EmailPublisherForHighPriorityCases implements
QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler {
    // Empty constructor
    global EmailPublisherForHighPriorityCases() {
    }

    // The main interface method
    global void onInitDefaults(QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[] defaults) {
        QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults sendEmailDefaults =
(QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults)defaults.get(0);
        EmailMessage emailMessage = (EmailMessage)sendEmailDefaults.getTargetSObject();

        Case c = [SELECT CaseNumber, Priority FROM Case WHERE
Id=:sendEmailDefaults.getContextId()];

        // If case severity is "High," append "managers@acme.com" to the existing (and
possibly blank) BCC field
        if (c.Priority != null && c.Priority.equals('High')) { // Priority is 'High'
            emailMessage.BccAddress = 'managers@acme.com';
        }
    }
}
```

In this example, the `onInitDefaults` method checks whether the element passed in the array is for the standard Email action in the case feed. Then it performs a query to determine if the case Type is set to *`Problem`*. If the type is set to *`Problem`*, the *`First Response`* email template is inserted into the body of the email.

```
global class EmailPublisherForCaseType implements QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler
{
    // Empty constructor
    global EmailPublisherForCaseType() {
    }

    // The main interface method
    global void onInitDefaults(QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[] defaults) {
    QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults sendEmailDefaults =
(QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults)defaults.get(0);
```

```
    EmailMessage emailMessage = (EmailMessage)sendEmailDefaults.getTargetSObject();

    Case c = [SELECT CaseNumber, Type FROM Case WHERE Id=:sendEmailDefaults.getContextId()];


    // If case type is "Problem," insert the "First Response" email template
    if (c.CaseNumber != null && c.Type.equals('Problem')) {
        sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId('Insert Email Template ID Here');   // Set the
template Id corresponding to First Response
        sendEmailDefaults.setInsertTemplateBody(true);
        sendEmailDefaults.setIgnoreTemplateSubject(false);
    }
}
```

In this example, the `onInitDefaults` method checks whether the element passed in the array is for the standard Email action in the case feed. Then it performs a query to determine if the email is a Reply or Reply All email. If email is a Reply or Reply All email, the corresponding email templates for these emails are inserted into the body of the email.

```
global class EmailPublisherForReplyAndReplyAll implements
QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler {

    // Empty constructor
    global EmailPublisherForReplyAndReplyAll() {

    }

    // The main interface method
    global void onInitDefaults(QuickAction.QuickActionDefaults[] defaults) {

    QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults sendEmailDefaults =
(QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults)defaults.get(0);
    EmailMessage emailMessage = (EmailMessage)sendEmailDefaults.getTargetSObject();

    // If the email is a "Reply" email, insert the "Reply Email Template" to the email
body
    if (sendEmailDefaults.getActionName().equals('EmailMessage._Reply')) {
        sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId('Insert Reply Email Template ID Here');

        sendEmailDefaults.setInsertTemplateBody(true);
        sendEmailDefaults.setIgnoreTemplateSubject(false);

    // If the email is a "Reply All" email, insert the "Reply All Email Template" to the
email body
    } else if (sendEmailDefaults.getActionName().equals('EmailMessage._ReplyAll')) {
        sendEmailDefaults.setTemplateId('Insert Reply All Email Template ID Here');

        sendEmailDefaults.setInsertTemplateBody(true);
        sendEmailDefaults.setIgnoreTemplateSubject(false);

}
```

QuickActionRequest Class

Use the `QuickAction.QuickActionRequest` class for providing action information for quick actions to be performed by `QuickAction` class methods. Action information includes the action name, context record ID, and record.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 28.0, a parent ID is associated with the QuickActionRequest instead of the context ID.

The constructor of this class takes no arguments:

```
QuickAction.QuickActionRequest qar = new QuickAction.QuickActionRequest();
```

Example

In this sample, a new quick action is created to create a contact and assign a record to it.

```
QuickAction.QuickActionRequest req = new QuickAction.QuickActionRequest();
// Some quick action name
req.quickActionName = Schema.Account.QuickAction.AccountCreateContact;

// Define a record for the quick action to create
Contact c = new Contact();
c.lastname = 'last name';
req.record = c;

// Provide the context ID (or parent ID). In this case, it is an Account record.
req.contextid = '001xx000003DGcO';

QuickAction.QuickActionResult res = QuickAction.performQuickAction(req);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionRequest Constructors

QuickActionRequest Methods

SEE ALSO:

QuickAction Class

QuickActionRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `QuickActionRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

QuickActionRequest()
Creates a new instance of the `QuickAction.QuickActionRequest` class.

`QuickActionRequest()`

Creates a new instance of the `QuickAction.QuickActionRequest` class.

Signature

```
public QuickActionRequest()
```

QuickActionRequest Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionRequest`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getContextId()
Returns this QuickAction's context record ID.

getQuickActionName()
Returns this QuickAction's name.

getRecord()
Returns the QuickAction's associated record.

setContextId(contextId)
Sets this QuickAction's context ID. Returned by `getContextId`.

setQuickActionName(name)
Sets this QuickAction's name. Returned by `getQuickActionName`.

setRecord(record)
Sets a record for this QuickAction. Returned by `getRecord`.

`getContextId()`

Returns this QuickAction's context record ID.

Signature

```
public Id getContextId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`getQuickActionName()`

Returns this QuickAction's name.

Signature

```
public String getQuickActionName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getRecord()`

Returns the QuickAction's associated record.

Signature

```
public SObject getRecord()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject

`setContextId(contextId)`

Sets this QuickAction's context ID. Returned by `getContextId`.

Signature

```
public Void setContextId(Id contextId)
```

Parameters

`contextId`
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 28.0, sets this QuickAction's parent ID and is returned by `getParentId`.

`setQuickActionName(name)`

Sets this QuickAction's name. Returned by `getQuickActionName`.

Signature

```
public Void setQuickActionName(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setRecord(record)`

Sets a record for this QuickAction. Returned by `getRecord`.

Signature

```
public Void setRecord(SObject record)
```

Parameters

record
Type: sObject

Return Value

Type: Void

QuickActionResult Class

After you initiate a quick action with the `QuickAction` class, use the `QuickActionResult` class for processing action results.

Namespace

QuickAction

SEE ALSO:
QuickAction Class

QuickActionResult Methods

The following are methods for `QuickActionResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()
If an error occurs, an array of one or more database error objects, along with error codes and descriptions, is returned.

getIds()
The IDs of the QuickActions being processed.

getSuccessMessage()
Returns the success message associated with the quick action.

isCreated()
Returns `true` if the action is created; otherwise, `false`.

isSuccess()
Returns `true` if the action completes successfully; otherwise, `false`.

getErrors()

If an error occurs, an array of one or more database error objects, along with error codes and descriptions, is returned.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

getIds()

The IDs of the QuickActions being processed.

Signature

```
public List<Id> getIds()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Id>

getSuccessMessage()

Returns the success message associated with the quick action.

Signature

```
public String getSuccessMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

isCreated()

Returns `true` if the action is created; otherwise, `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCreated()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isSuccess()`

Returns `true` if the action completes successfully; otherwise, `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Class

Represents an Apex class that provides: the From address list; the original email's email message ID, provided that the reply action was invoked on the email message feed item; and methods to specify related settings on templates. You can override these fields before the standard Email Action is rendered.

Namespace

QuickAction

Usage

Note: You cannot instantiate this class. One can use the getters/setters when using it in the context of `QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Methods

SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Methods

The following are methods for `SendEmailQuickActionDefaults`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFromAddressList()
Returns a list of email addresses that are available in the From: address drop-down menu for the standard Email Action.

getInReplyToId()
Returns the email message ID of the email to which the reply/reply all action has been invoked.

setIgnoreTemplateSubject(useOriginalSubject)
Specifies whether the template subject should be ignored (true), thus using the original subject, or whether the template subject should replace the original subject (false).

setInsertTemplateBody(keepOriginalBodyContent)

Specifies whether the template body should be inserted above the original body content (true) or whether it should replace the entire content with the template body (false).

setTemplateId(templateId)

Sets the email template ID to load into the email body.

getFromAddressList()

Returns a list of email addresses that are available in the From: address drop-down menu for the standard Email Action.

Signature

```
public List<String> getFromAddressList()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

getInReplyToId()

Returns the email message ID of the email to which the reply/reply all action has been invoked.

Signature

```
public Id getInReplyToId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

setIgnoreTemplateSubject(useOriginalSubject)

Specifies whether the template subject should be ignored (true), thus using the original subject, or whether the template subject should replace the original subject (false).

Signature

```
public void setIgnoreTemplateSubject(Boolean useOriginalSubject)
```

Parameters

useOriginalSubject

Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setInsertTemplateBody(keepOriginalBodyContent)

Specifies whether the template body should be inserted above the original body content (true) or whether it should replace the entire content with the template body (false).

Signature

```
public void setInsertTemplateBody(Boolean keepOriginalBodyContent)
```

Parameters

keepOriginalBodyContent
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setTemplateId(templateId)

Sets the email template ID to load into the email body.

Signature

```
public void setTemplateId(Id templateId)
```

Parameters

templateId
Type: Id

The template ID.

Return Value

Type: void

Reports Namespace

The `Reports` namespace provides classes for accessing the same data as is available in the Salesforce Reports and Dashboards REST API.

The following are the classes in the `Reports` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AggregateColumn Class
Contains methods for describing summary fields such as Record Count, Sum, Average, Max, Min, and custom summary formulas. Includes name, label, data type, and grouping context.

BucketField Class

Contains methods and constructors to work with information about a bucket field, including bucket type, name, and bucketed values.

BucketFieldValue Class

Contains information about the report values included in a bucket field.

BucketType Enum

The types of values included in a bucket.

ColumnDataType Enum

The `Reports.ColumnDataType` enum describes the type of data in a column. It is returned by the `getDataType` method.

ColumnSortOrder Enum

The `Reports.ColumnSortOrder` enum describes the order that the grouping column uses to sort data.

CrossFilter Class

Contains methods and constructors used to work with information about a cross filter.

CsfGroupType Enum

The group level at which the custom summary format aggregate is displayed in a report.

DateGranularity Enum

The `Reports.DateGranularity` enum describes the date interval that is used for grouping.

DetailColumn Class

Contains methods for describing fields that contain detailed data. Detailed data fields are also listed in the report metadata.

Dimension Class

Contains information for each row or column grouping.

EvaluatedCondition Class

Contains the individual components of an evaluated condition for a report notification, such as the aggregate name and label, the operator, and the value that the aggregate is compared to.

EvaluatedConditionOperator Enum

The `Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator` enum describes the type of operator used to compare an aggregate to a value. It is returned by the `getOperator` method.

FilterOperator Class

Contains information about a filter operator, such as display name and API name.

FilterValue Class

Contains information about a filter value, such as the display name and API name.

FormulaType Enum

The format of the numbers in a custom summary formula.

GroupingColumn Class

Contains methods for describing fields that are used for column grouping.

GroupingInfo Class

Contains methods for describing fields that are used for grouping.

GroupingValue Class

Contains grouping values for a row or column, including the key, label, and value.

NotificationAction Interface

Implement this interface to trigger a custom Apex class when the conditions for a report notification are met.

NotificationActionContext Class

Contains information about the report instance and condition threshold for a report notification.

ReportCsf Class

Contains methods and constructors for working with information about a custom summary formula (CSF).

ReportCurrency Class

Contains information about a currency value, including the amount and currency code.

ReportDataCell Class

Contains the data for a cell in the report, including the display label and value.

ReportDescribeResult Class

Contains report, report type, and extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

ReportDetailRow Class

Contains data cells for a detail row of a report.

ReportDivisionInfo Class

Contains information about the divisions that can be used to filter a report.

ReportExtendedMetadata Class

Contains report extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

ReportFact Class

Contains the fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values.

ReportFactWithDetails Class

Contains the detailed fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values.

ReportFactWithSummaries Class

Contains the fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values, and includes summarized fields.

ReportFilter Class

Contains information about a report filter, including column, operator, and value.

ReportFormat Enum

Contains the possible report format types.

ReportFilterType Enum

The types of values included in a report filter type.

ReportInstance Class

Returns an instance of a report that was run asynchronously. Retrieves the results for that instance.

ReportManager Class

Runs a report synchronously or asynchronously and with or without details.

ReportMetadata Class

Contains report metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

ReportResults Class

Contains the results of running a report.

ReportScopeInfo Class

Contains information about possible scope values that you can choose. Scope values depend on the report type. For example, you can set the scope for opportunity reports to `All opportunities`, `My team's opportunities`, or `My opportunities`.

ReportScopeValue Class

Contains information about a possible scope value. Scope values depend on the report type. For example, you can set the scope for opportunity reports to `All opportunities`, `My team's opportunities`, or `My opportunities`.

ReportType Class

Contains the unique API name and display name for the report type.

ReportTypeColumn Class

Contains detailed report type metadata about a field, including data type, display name, and filter values.

ReportTypeColumnCategory Class

Information about categories of fields in a report type.

ReportTypeMetadata Class

Contains report type metadata, which gives you information about the fields that are available in each section of the report type, plus filter information for those fields.

SortColumn Class

Contains information about the sort column used in the report.

StandardDateFilter Class

Contains information about standard date filter available in the report—for example, the API name, start date, and end date of the standard date filter duration as well as the API name of the date field on which the filter is placed.

StandardDateFilterDuration Class

Contains information about each standard date filter—also referred to as a relative date filter. It contains the API name and display label of the standard date filter duration as well as the start and end dates.

StandardDateFilterDurationGroup Class

Contains information about the standard date filter groupings, such as the grouping display label and all standard date filters that fall under the grouping. Groupings include `Calendar Year`, `Calendar Quarter`, `Calendar Month`, `Calendar Week`, `Fiscal Year`, `Fiscal Quarter`, `Day`, and custom values based on user-defined date ranges.

StandardFilter Class

Contains information about the standard filter defined in the report, such as the filter field API name and filter value.

StandardFilterInfo Class

Is an abstract base class for an object that provides standard filter information.

StandardFilterInfoPicklist Class

Contains information about the standard filter picklist, such as the display name and type of the filter field, the default picklist value, and a list of all possible picklist values.

StandardFilterType Enum

The `StandardFilterType` enum describes the type of standard filters in a report. The `getType()` method returns a `Reports.StandardFilterType` enum value.

SummaryValue Class

Contains summary data for a cell of the report.

ThresholdInformation Class

Contains a list of evaluated conditions for a report notification.

TopRows Class

Contains methods and constructors for working with information about a row limit filter.

Reports Exceptions

The `Reports` namespace contains exception classes.

AggregateColumn Class

Contains methods for describing summary fields such as Record Count, Sum, Average, Max, Min, and custom summary formulas. Includes name, label, data type, and grouping context.

Namespace

Reports

AggregateColumn Methods

The following are methods for `AggregateColumn`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the summary field.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name for the summarized or custom summary formula field.

getDataType()
Returns the data type of the summarized or custom summary formula field.

getAcrossGroupingContext()
Returns the column grouping in the report where the summary field is displayed.

getDownGroupingContext()
Returns the row grouping in the report where the summary field is displayed.

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the summary field.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name for the summarized or custom summary formula field.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDataType()`

Returns the data type of the summarized or custom summary formula field.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ColumnDataType getDataType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnDataType

`getAcrossGroupingContext()`

Returns the column grouping in the report where the summary field is displayed.

Syntax

```
public String getAcrossGroupingContext()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDownGroupingContext()`

Returns the row grouping in the report where the summary field is displayed.

Syntax

```
public String getDownGroupingContext()
```

Return Value

Type: String

BucketField Class

Contains methods and constructors to work with information about a bucket field, including bucket type, name, and bucketed values.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

BucketField Constructors

BucketField Methods

BucketField Constructors

The following are constructors for `BucketField`.

IN THIS SECTION:

BucketField(bucketType, devloperName, label, nullTreatedAsZero, otherBucketLabel, sourceColumnName, values)
Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketField` class using the specified parameters.

BucketField()
Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketField` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

`BucketField(bucketType, devloperName, label, nullTreatedAsZero, otherBucketLabel, sourceColumnName, values)`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketField` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public BucketField(Reports.BucketType bucketType, String devloperName, String label,
Boolean nullTreatedAsZero, String otherBucketLabel, String sourceColumnName,
List<Reports.BucketFieldValue> values)
```

Parameters

`bucketType`
Type: Reports.BucketType

The type of bucket.

`devloperName`
Type: String

API name of the bucket.

`label`
Type: String

User-facing name of the bucket.

`nullTreatedAsZero`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether null values are converted to zero (`true`) or not (`false`).

`otherBucketLabel`
Type: String

Name of the fields grouped as `Other` (in buckets of `BucketType PICKLIST`).

`sourceColumnName`
Type: String

Name of the bucketed field.

values
Type: List<Reports.BucketType>

Types of the values included in the bucket.

BucketField()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketField` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

Signature

```
public BucketField()
```

BucketField Methods

The following are methods for `BucketField`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getBucketType()
Returns the bucket type.

getDevloperName()
Returns the bucket's API name.

getLabel()
Returns the user-facing name of the bucket.

getNullTreatedAsZero()
Returns `true` if null values are converted to the number zero, otherwise returns `false`.

getOtherBucketLabel()
Returns the name of fields grouped as `Other` in buckets of type `PICKLIST`.

getSourceColumnName()
Returns the API name of the bucketed field.

getValues()
Returns the report values grouped by the bucket field.

setBucketType(value)
Sets the `BucketType` of the bucket.

setBucketType(bucketType)
Sets the `BucketType` of the bucket.

setDevloperName(devloperName)
Sets the API name of the bucket.

setLabel(label)
Sets the user-facing name of the bucket.

setNullTreatedAsZero(nullTreatedAsZero)
Specifies whether null values in the bucket are converted to zero (`true`) or not (`false`).

setOtherBucketLabel(otherBucketLabel)
Sets the name of the fields grouped as `Other` (in buckets of `BucketType PICKLIST`).

setSourceColumnName(sourceColumnName)
Specifies the name of the bucketed field.

setValues(values)
Specifies which type of values are included in the bucket.

toString()
Returns a string.

getBucketType()

Returns the bucket type.

Signature

```
public Reports.BucketType getBucketType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.BucketType

getDevloperName()

Returns the bucket's API name.

Signature

```
public String getDevloperName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLabel()

Returns the user-facing name of the bucket.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getNullTreatedAsZero()

Returns `true` if null values are converted to the number zero, otherwise returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean getNullTreatedAsZero()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`getOtherBucketLabel()`

Returns the name of fields grouped as `Other` in buckets of type `PICKLIST`.

Signature

```
public String getOtherBucketLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSourceColumnName()`

Returns the API name of the bucketed field.

Signature

```
public String getSourceColumnName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValues()`

Returns the report values grouped by the bucket field.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.BucketFieldValue> getValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List on page 2682<Reports.BucketFieldValue>

`setBucketType(value)`

Sets the `BucketType` of the bucket.

Signature

```
public void setBucketType(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

See the Reports.BucketType enum for valid values.

Return Value

Type: void

setBucketType(bucketType)

Sets the `BucketType` of the bucket.

Signature

```
public void setBucketType(Reports.BucketType bucketType)
```

Parameters

bucketType
Type: Reports.BucketType

Return Value

Type: void

setDevloperName(devloperName)

Sets the API name of the bucket.

Signature

```
public void setDevloperName(String devloperName)
```

Parameters

devloperName
Type: String

The API name to assign to the bucket.

Return Value

Type: void

setLabel(label)

Sets the user-facing name of the bucket.

Signature

```
public void setLabel(String label)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setNullTreatedAsZero(nullTreatedAsZero)

Specifies whether null values in the bucket are converted to zero (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public void setNullTreatedAsZero(Boolean nullTreatedAsZero)
```

Parameters

nullTreatedAsZero
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setOtherBucketLabel(otherBucketLabel)

Sets the name of the fields grouped as `Other` (in buckets of `BucketType PICKLIST`).

Signature

```
public void setOtherBucketLabel(String otherBucketLabel)
```

Parameters

otherBucketLabel
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setSourceColumnName(sourceColumnName)

Specifies the name of the bucketed field.

Signature

```
public void setSourceColumnName(String sourceColumnName)
```

Parameters

sourceColumnName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setValues(values)

Specifies which type of values are included in the bucket.

Signature

```
public void setValues(List<Reports.BucketFieldValue> values)
```

Parameters

values
Type: List on page 2682<Reports.BucketFieldValue>

Return Value

Type: void

toString()

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

BucketFieldValue Class

Contains information about the report values included in a bucket field.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

BucketFieldValue Constructors

BucketFieldValue Methods

BucketFieldValue Constructors

The following are constructors for `BucketFieldValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

BucketFieldValue(label, sourceDimensionValues, rangeUpperBound)

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketFieldValue` class using the specified parameters.

BucketFieldValue()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketFieldValue` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

`BucketFieldValue(label, sourceDimensionValues, rangeUpperBound)`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketFieldValue` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public BucketFieldValue(String label, List<String> sourceDimensionValues, Double
rangeUpperBound)
```

Parameters

`label`
Type: String

The user-facing name of the bucket.

`sourceDimensionValues`
Type: List on page 2682<String>

A list of the values from the source field included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `PICKLIST` and buckets of type `TEXT`).

`rangeUpperBound`
Type: Double

The greatest range limit under which values are included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `NUMBER`).

`BucketFieldValue()`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.BucketFieldValue` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

Signature

```
public BucketFieldValue()
```

BucketFieldValue Methods

The following are methods for `BucketFieldValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the user-facing name of the bucket category.

getRangeUpperBound()
Returns the greatest range limit under which values are included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `NUMBER`).

getSourceDimensionValues()
Returns a list of the values from the source field included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `PICKLIST` and buckets of type `TEXT`).

setLabel(label)
Set the user-facing name of the bucket category.

setRangeUpperBound(rangeUpperBound)
Sets the greatest limit of a range under which values are included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `NUMBER`).

setSourceDimensionValues(sourceDimensionValues)
Specifies the values from the source field included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `PICKLIST` and buckets of type `TEXT`).

toString()
Returns a string.

`getLabel()`

Returns the user-facing name of the bucket category.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getRangeUpperBound()`

Returns the greatest range limit under which values are included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `NUMBER`).

Signature

```
public Double getRangeUpperBound()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

`getSourceDimensionValues()`

Returns a list of the values from the source field included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `PICKLIST` and buckets of type `TEXT`).

Signature

```
public List<String> getSourceDimensionValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

setLabel(label)

Set the user-facing name of the bucket category.

Signature

```
public void setLabel(String label)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setRangeUpperBound(rangeUpperBound)

Sets the greatest limit of a range under which values are included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `NUMBER`).

Signature

```
public void setRangeUpperBound(Double rangeUpperBound)
```

Parameters

rangeUpperBound
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: void

setSourceDimensionValues(sourceDimensionValues)

Specifies the values from the source field included in this bucket category (in buckets of type `PICKLIST` and buckets of type `TEXT`).

Signature

```
public void setSourceDimensionValues(List<String> sourceDimensionValues)
```

Parameters

sourceDimensionValues
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: void

toString()

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

BucketType Enum

The types of values included in a bucket.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.BucketType` enum.

Value	Description
`NUMBER`	Numeric values
`PICKLIST`	Picklist values
`TEXT`	String values

ColumnDataType Enum

The `Reports.ColumnDataType` enum describes the type of data in a column. It is returned by the `getDataType` method.

Namespace

Reports

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.ColumnDataType` enum.

Value	Description
BOOLEAN_DATA	Boolean (true or false) values
COMBOBOX_DATA	Comboboxes, which provide a set of enumerated values and enable the user to specify a value that is not in the list
CURRENCY_DATA	Currency values
DATETIME_DATA	DateTime values
DATE_DATA	Date values
DOUBLE_DATA	Double values
EMAIL_DATA	Email addresses
ID_DATA	An object's Salesforce ID
INT_DATA	Integer values
MULTIPICKLIST_DATA	Multi-select picklists, which provide a set of enumerated values from which multiple values can be selected
PERCENT_DATA	Percent values
PHONE_DATA	Phone numbers. Values can include alphabetic characters. Client applications are responsible for phone number formatting.
PICKLIST_DATA	Single-select picklists, which provide a set of enumerated values from which only one value can be selected
REFERENCE_DATA	Cross-references to another object, analogous to a foreign key field
STRING_DATA	String values
TEXTAREA_DATA	String values that are displayed as multiline text fields
TIME_DATA	Time values
URL_DATA	URL values that are displayed as hyperlinks

ColumnSortOrder Enum

The `Reports.ColumnSortOrder` enum describes the order that the grouping column uses to sort data.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

The `GroupingInfo.getColumnSortOrder()` method returns a `Reports.ColumnSortOrder` enum value. The `GroupingInfo.setColumnSortOrder()` method takes the enum value as an argument.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.ColumnSortOrder` enum.

Value	Description
`ASCENDING`	Sort data in ascending order (A–Z)
`DESCENDING`	Sort data in descending order (Z–A)

CrossFilter Class

Contains methods and constructors used to work with information about a cross filter.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

CrossFilter Constructors

CrossFilter Methods

CrossFilter Constructors

The following are constructors for `CrossFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

CrossFilter(criteria, includesObject, primaryEntityField, relatedEntity, relatedEntityJoinField)

Creates an instance of the `Reports.CrossFilter` class using the specified parameters.

CrossFilter()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.CrossFilter` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

`CrossFilter(criteria, includesObject, primaryEntityField, relatedEntity, relatedEntityJoinField)`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.CrossFilter` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public CrossFilter(List<Reports.ReportFilter> criteria, Boolean includesObject, String primaryEntityField, String relatedEntity, String relatedEntityJoinField)
```

Parameters

criteria

Type: List<Reports.ReportFilter>

Information about how to filter the `relatedEntity`. Relates the primary entity with a subset of the `relatedEntity`.

`includesObject`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether objects returned have a relationship with the `relatedEntity` (`true`) or not (`false`).

`primaryEntityField`
Type: String

The name of the object on which the cross filter is evaluated.

`relatedEntity`
Type: String

The name of the object that the `primaryEntityField` is evaluated against—the right-hand side of the cross filter.

`relatedEntityJoinField`
Type: String

The name of the field used to join the `primaryEntityField` and `relatedEntity`.

`CrossFilter()`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.CrossFilter` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

Signature

```
public CrossFilter()
```

CrossFilter Methods

The following are methods for `CrossFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCriteria()
Returns information about how to filter the `relatedEntity`. Describes the subset of the `relatedEntity` which the primary entity is evaluated against.

getIncludesObject()
Returns `true` if primary object has a relationship with the `relatedEntity`, otherwise returns `false`.

getPrimaryEntityField()
Returns the name of the object on which the cross filter is evaluated.

getRelatedEntity()
Returns name of the object that the `primaryEntityField` is evaluated against—the right-hand side of the cross filter.

getRelatedEntityJoinField()
Returns the name of the field used to join the `primaryEntityField` and `relatedEntity`.

setCriteria(criteria)
Specifis how to filter the `relatedEntity`. Relates the primary entity with a subset of the `relatedEntity`.

setIncludesObject(includesObject)
Specifies whether objects returned have a relationship with the `relatedEntity` (`true`) or not (`false`).

setPrimaryEntityField(primaryEntityField)
Specifies the name of the object on which the cross filter is evaluated.

setRelatedEntity(relatedEntity)
Specifies the name of the object that the `primaryEntityField` is evaluated against—the right-hand side of the cross filter.

setRelatedEntityJoinField(relatedEntityJoinField)
Specifies the name of the field used to join the `primaryEntityField` and `relatedEntity`.

toString()
Returns a string.

`getCriteria()`

Returns information about how to filter the `relatedEntity`. Describes the subset of the `relatedEntity` which the primary entity is evaluated against.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.ReportFilter> getCriteria()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportFilter>

`getIncludesObject()`

Returns `true` if primary object has a relationship with the `relatedEntity`, otherwise returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean getIncludesObject()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`getPrimaryEntityField()`

Returns the name of the object on which the cross filter is evaluated.

Signature

```
public String getPrimaryEntityField()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getRelatedEntity()`

Returns name of the object that the `primaryEntityField` is evaluated against—the right-hand side of the cross filter.

Signature

```
public String getRelatedEntity()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getRelatedEntityJoinField()

Returns the name of the field used to join the `primaryEntityField` and `relatedEntity`.

Signature

```
public String getRelatedEntityJoinField()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setCriteria(criteria)

Specifis how to filter the `relatedEntity`. Relates the primary entity with a subset of the `relatedEntity`.

Signature

```
public void setCriteria(List<Reports.ReportFilter> criteria)
```

Parameters

criteria
Type: List<Reports.ReportFilter>

Return Value

Type: void

setIncludesObject(includesObject)

Specifies whether objects returned have a relationship with the `relatedEntity` (`true`) or not (`false`).

Signature

```
public void setIncludesObject(Boolean includesObject)
```

Parameters

includesObject
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setPrimaryEntityField(primaryEntityField)

Specifies the name of the object on which the cross filter is evaluated.

Signature

```
public void setPrimaryEntityField(String primaryEntityField)
```

Parameters

primaryEntityField
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setRelatedEntity(relatedEntity)

Specifies the name of the object that the `primaryEntityField` is evaluated against—the right-hand side of the cross filter.

Signature

```
public void setRelatedEntity(String relatedEntity)
```

Parameters

relatedEntity
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setRelatedEntityJoinField(relatedEntityJoinField)

Specifies the name of the field used to join the `primaryEntityField` and `relatedEntity`.

Signature

```
public void setRelatedEntityJoinField(String relatedEntityJoinField)
```

Parameters

relatedEntityJoinField
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`toString()`

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

CsfGroupType Enum

The group level at which the custom summary format aggregate is displayed in a report.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.CsfGroupType` enum.

Value	Description
`ALL`	The aggregate is displayed at the end of every summary row.
`CUSTOM`	The aggregate is displayed at specified grouping levels.
`GRAND_TOTAL`	The aggregate is displayed only at the grand total level.

DateGranularity Enum

The `Reports.DateGranularity` enum describes the date interval that is used for grouping.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

The `GroupingInfo.getDateGranularity` method returns a `Reports.DateGranularity` enum value. The `GroupingInfo.setDateGranularity` method takes the enum value as an argument.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.DateGranularity` enum.

Value	Description
DAY	The day of the week (Monday–Sunday)
DAY_IN_MONTH	The day of the month (1–31)
FISCAL_PERIOD	The fiscal period
FISCAL_QUARTER	The fiscal quarter
FISCAL_WEEK	The fiscal week
FISCAL_YEAR	The fiscal year
MONTH	The month (January–December)
MONTH_IN_YEAR	The month number (1–12)
NONE	No date grouping
QUARTER	The quarter number (1–4)
WEEK	The week number (1–52)
YEAR	The year number (####)

DetailColumn Class

Contains methods for describing fields that contain detailed data. Detailed data fields are also listed in the report metadata.

Namespace

Reports

DetailColumn Instance Methods

The following are instance methods for `DetailColumn`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the detail column field.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of a standard field, the ID of a custom field, or the API name of a bucket field that has detailed data.

getDataType()
Returns the data type of a detail column field.

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the detail column field.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of a standard field, the ID of a custom field, or the API name of a bucket field that has detailed data.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDataType()`

Returns the data type of a detail column field.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ColumnDataType getDataType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnDataType

Dimension Class

Contains information for each row or column grouping.

Namespace

Reports

Dimension Methods

The following are methods for `Dimension`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getGroupings()
Returns information for each row or column grouping as a list.

`getGroupings()`

Returns information for each row or column grouping as a list.

Syntax

```
public List<Reports.GroupingValue> getGroupings()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.GroupingValue>

EvaluatedCondition Class

Contains the individual components of an evaluated condition for a report notification, such as the aggregate name and label, the operator, and the value that the aggregate is compared to.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

EvaluatedCondition Constructors

EvaluatedCondition Methods

EvaluatedCondition Constructors

The following are constructors for `EvaluatedCondition`.

IN THIS SECTION:

EvaluatedCondition(aggregateName, aggregateLabel, compareToValue, aggregateValue, displayCompareTo, displayValue, operator)
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.EvaluatedConditions` class using the specified parameters.

`EvaluatedCondition(aggregateName, aggregateLabel, compareToValue, aggregateValue, displayCompareTo, displayValue, operator)`

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.EvaluatedConditions` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public EvaluatedCondition(String aggregateName, String aggregateLabel, Double
compareToValue, Double aggregateValue, String displayCompareTo, String displayValue,
Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator operator)
```

Parameters

aggregateName
Type: String

The unique API name of the aggregate.

aggregateLabel
Type: String

The localized display name of the aggregate.

compareToValue
Type: Double

The value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition.

aggregateValue
Type: Double

The actual value of the aggregate when the report is run.

displayCompareTo
Type: String

The value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

displayValue
Type: String

The value of the aggregate when the report is run, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

operator
Type: Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator

The operator used in the condition.

EvaluatedCondition Methods

The following are methods for `EvaluatedCondition`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregateLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the aggregate.

getAggregateName()
Returns the unique API name of the aggregate.

getCompareTo()
Returns the value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition.

getDisplayCompareTo()
Returns the value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

getDisplayValue()
Returns the value of the aggregate when the report is run, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

getOperator()
Returns the operator used in the condition.

getValue()
Returns the actual value of the aggregate when the report is run.

getAggregateLabel()

Returns the localized display name of the aggregate.

Signature

```
public String getAggregateLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getAggregateName()

Returns the unique API name of the aggregate.

Signature

```
public String getAggregateName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getCompareTo()

Returns the value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition.

Signature

```
public Double getCompareTo()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

getDisplayCompareTo()

Returns the value that the aggregate is compared to in the condition, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

Signature

```
public String getDisplayCompareTo()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDisplayValue()`

Returns the value of the aggregate when the report is run, formatted for display. For example, a display value for a currency is $20.00 or USD20.00 instead of 20.00.

Signature

```
public String getDisplayValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getOperator()`

Returns the operator used in the condition.

Signature

```
public Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator getOperator()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator

`getValue()`

Returns the actual value of the aggregate when the report is run.

Signature

```
public Double getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

EvaluatedConditionOperator Enum

The `Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator` enum describes the type of operator used to compare an aggregate to a value. It is returned by the `getOperator` method.

Namespace

Reports

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.EvaluatedConditionOperator` enum.

Value	Description
`EQUAL`	Equality operator.
`GREATER_THAN`	Greater than operator.
`GREATER_THAN_EQUAL`	Greater than or equal to operator.
`LESS_THAN`	Less than operator.
`LESS_THAN_EQUAL`	Less than or equal to operator.
`NOT_EQUAL`	Inequality operator.

FilterOperator Class

Contains information about a filter operator, such as display name and API name.

Namespace

Reports

FilterOperator Methods

The following are methods for `FilterOperator`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the filter operator. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the filter operator. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered. For example `multipicklist` fields can use the following filter operators: “equals,” “not equal to,” “includes,” and “excludes.” Bucket fields are considered to be of the `String` type.

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the filter operator. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the filter operator. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered. For example `multipicklist` fields can use the following filter operators: “equals,” “not equal to,” “includes,” and “excludes.” Bucket fields are considered to be of the `String` type.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

FilterValue Class

Contains information about a filter value, such as the display name and API name.

Namespace

Reports

FilterValue Methods

The following are methods for `FilterValue`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the filter value. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the filter value. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the filter value. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the filter value. Possible values for this name are restricted based on the data type of the column being filtered.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

FormulaType Enum

The format of the numbers in a custom summary formula.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.FormulaType` enum.

Value	Description
`CURRENCY`	Formatted as currency. For example, $100.00.
`NUMBER`	Formatted as numbers. For example, 100.
`PERCENT`	Formatted as percentages. For example, 100%.

GroupingColumn Class

Contains methods for describing fields that are used for column grouping.

Namespace

Reports

The `GroupingColumn` class provides basic information about column grouping fields. The `GroupingInfo` class includes additional methods for describing and updating grouping fields.

GroupingColumn Methods

The following are methods for `GroupingColumn`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the field or bucket field that is used for column grouping.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the field that is used for column grouping.

getDataType()
Returns the data type of the field that is used for column grouping.

getGroupingLevel()
Returns the level of grouping for the column.

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the field or bucket field that is used for column grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the field that is used for column grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDataType()`

Returns the data type of the field that is used for column grouping.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ColumnDataType getDataType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnDataType

`getGroupingLevel()`

Returns the level of grouping for the column.

Syntax

```
public Integer getGroupingLevel()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

- In a summary report, 0, 1, or 2 indicates grouping at the first, second, or third row level.
- In a matrix report, 0 or 1 indicates grouping at the first or second row or column level.

GroupingInfo Class

Contains methods for describing fields that are used for grouping.

Namespace

Reports

GroupingInfo Methods

The following are methods for `GroupingInfo`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the field or bucket field that is used for row or column grouping.

getSortOrder()
Returns the order that is used to sort data in a row or column grouping (`ASCENDING` or `DESCENDING`).

getDateGranularity()
Returns the date interval that is used for row or column grouping.

getSortAggregate()
Returns the summary field that is used to sort data within a grouping in a summary report. The value is null when data within a grouping is not sorted by a summary field.

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the field or bucket field that is used for row or column grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSortOrder()`

Returns the order that is used to sort data in a row or column grouping (`ASCENDING` or `DESCENDING`).

Syntax

```
public Reports.ColumnSortOrder getSortOrder()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

`getDateGranularity()`

Returns the date interval that is used for row or column grouping.

Syntax

```
public Reports.DateGranularity getDateGranularity()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.DateGranularity

`getSortAggregate()`

Returns the summary field that is used to sort data within a grouping in a summary report. The value is null when data within a grouping is not sorted by a summary field.

Syntax

```
public String getSortAggregate()
```

Return Value

Type: String

GroupingValue Class

Contains grouping values for a row or column, including the key, label, and value.

Namespace

Reports

GroupingValue Methods

The following are methods for `GroupingValue`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getGroupings()
Returns a list of second- or third-level row or column groupings. If there are none, the value is an empty array.

getKey()
Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. The identifier is used by the fact map to specify data values within each grouping.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of a row or column grouping. For date and time fields, the label is the localized date or time.

getValue()
Returns the value of the field that is used as a row or column grouping.

`getGroupings()`

Returns a list of second- or third-level row or column groupings. If there are none, the value is an empty array.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.GroupingValue> getGroupings()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.GroupingValue>

`getKey()`

Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. The identifier is used by the fact map to specify data values within each grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getKey()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of a row or column grouping. For date and time fields, the label is the localized date or time.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value of the field that is used as a row or column grouping.

Syntax

```
public Object getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

The value depends on the field's data type.

- Currency fields:
  - `amount`: Of type currency. A data cell's value.
  - `currency`: Of type picklist. The ISO 4217 currency code, if available; for example, USD for US dollars or CNY for Chinese yuan. (If the grouping is on the converted currency, this value is the currency code for the report and not for the record.)
- Picklist fields: API name. For example, a custom picklist field—`Type of Business` with values 1, 2, and 3 for Consulting, Services, and Add-On Business respectively—has `1`, `2`, or `3` as the grouping value.
- ID fields: API name.
- Record type fields: API name.
- Date and time fields: Date or time in ISO-8601 format.
- Lookup fields: Unique API name. For example, for the `Opportunity Owner` lookup field, the ID of each opportunity owner's Chatter profile page can be a grouping value.

NotificationAction Interface

Implement this interface to trigger a custom Apex class when the conditions for a report notification are met.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

Report notifications for reports that users have subscribed to can trigger a custom Apex class, which must implement the `Reports.NotificationAction` interface. The `execute` method in this interface receives a `NotificationActionContext` object as a parameter, which contains information about the report instance and the conditions that must be met for a notification to be triggered.

IN THIS SECTION:

NotificationAction Methods

NotificationAction Example Implementation

NotificationAction Methods

The following are methods for `NotificationAction`.

IN THIS SECTION:

execute(context)
Executes the custom Apex action specified in the `context` parameter of the context object, `NotificationActionContext`. The object contains information about the report instance and the conditions that must be met for a notification to be triggered. The method executes whenever the specified conditions are met.

`execute(context)`

Executes the custom Apex action specified in the `context` parameter of the context object, `NotificationActionContext`. The object contains information about the report instance and the conditions that must be met for a notification to be triggered. The method executes whenever the specified conditions are met.

Signature

```
public void execute(Reports.NotificationActionContext context)
```

Parameters

context
Type: Reports.NotificationActionContext

Return Value

Type: Void

NotificationAction Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `Reports.NotificationAction` interface.

```
public class AlertOwners implements Reports.NotificationAction {

    public void execute(Reports.NotificationActionContext context) {
        Reports.ReportResults results = context.getReportInstance().getReportResults();
        for(Reports.GroupingValue g: results.getGroupingsDown().getGroupings()) {
            FeedItem t = new FeedItem();
            t.ParentId = (Id)g.getValue();
            t.Body = 'This record needs attention. Please view the report.';
            t.Title = 'Needs Attention: '+ results.getReportMetadata().getName();
            t.LinkUrl = '/' + results.getReportMetadata().getId();
            insert t;
        }
    }
}
```

NotificationActionContext Class

Contains information about the report instance and condition threshold for a report notification.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

NotificationActionContext Constructors

NotificationActionContext Methods

NotificationActionContext Constructors

The following are constructors for `NotificationActionContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

NotificationActionContext(reportInstance, thresholdInformation)
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.NotificationActionContext` class using the specified parameters.

`NotificationActionContext(reportInstance, thresholdInformation)`

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.NotificationActionContext` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public NotificationActionContext(Reports.ReportInstance reportInstance,
Reports.ThresholdInformation thresholdInformation)
```

Parameters

`reportInstance`
Type: Reports.ReportInstance

An instance of a report.

`thresholdInformation`
Type: Reports.ThresholdInformation

The evaluated conditions for the notification.

NotificationActionContext Methods

The following are methods for `NotificationActionContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getReportInstance()
Returns the report instance associated with the notification.

getThresholdInformation()
Returns the threshold information associated with the notification.

`getReportInstance()`

Returns the report instance associated with the notification.

Signature

```
public Reports.ReportInstance getReportInstance()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

`getThresholdInformation()`

Returns the threshold information associated with the notification.

Signature

```
public Reports.ThresholdInformation getThresholdInformation()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ThresholdInformation

ReportCsf Class

Contains methods and constructors for working with information about a custom summary formula (CSF).

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportCsf Constructors

ReportCsf Methods

ReportCsf Constructors

The following are constructors for `ReportCsf`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportCsf(label, description, formulaType, decimalPlaces, downGroup, downGroupType, acrossGroup, acrossGroupType, formula)
Creates an instance of the `Reports.ReportCsf` class using the specified parameters.

ReportCsf()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.ReportCsf` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

ReportCsf(label, description, formulaType, decimalPlaces, downGroup, downGroupType, acrossGroup, acrossGroupType, formula)

Creates an instance of the `Reports.ReportCsf` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public ReportCsf(String label, String description, Reports.FormulaType formulaType,
Integer decimalPlaces, String downGroup, Reports.CsfGroupType downGroupType, String
acrossGroup, Reports.CsfGroupType acrossGroupType, String formula)
```

Parameters

label

Type: String

The user-facing name of the custom summary formula.

description

Type: String

The user-facing description of the custom summary formula.

formulaType

Type: Reports.FormulaType

The format of the numbers in the custom summary formula.

decimalPlaces

Type: Integer

The number of decimal places to include in numbers.

downGroup

Type: String

The name of a row grouping when the `downGroupType` is `CUSTOM`; `null` otherwise.

downGroupType

Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

Where to display the aggregate of the custom summary formula.

acrossGroup

Type: String

The name of a column grouping when the `accrossGroupType` is `CUSTOM`; `null` otherwise.

acrossGroupType

Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

Where to display the aggregate of the custom summary formula.

formula

Type: String

The operations performed on values in the custom summary formula.

ReportCsf()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.ReportCsf` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

Signature

```
public ReportCsf()
```

ReportCsf Methods

The following are methods for `ReportCsf`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAcrossGroup()
Returns the name of a column grouping when the `acrossGroupType` is `CUSTOM`. Otherwise, returns `null`.

getAcrossGroupType()
Returns where to display the aggregate.

getDecimalPlaces()
Returns the number of decimal places that numbers in the custom summary formula have.

getDescription()
Returns the user-facing description of a custom summary formula.

getDownGroup()
Returns the name of a row grouping when the `downGroupType` is `CUSTOM`. Otherwise, returns `null`.

getDownGroupType()
Returns where to display the aggregate of the custom summary formula.

getFormula()
Returns the operations performed on values in the custom summary formula.

getFormulaType()
Returns the formula type.

getLabel()
Returns the user-facing name of the custom summary formula.

setAcrossGroup(acrossGroup)
Specifies the column for the across grouping.

setAcrossGroupType(value)
Sets where to display the aggregate.

setAcrossGroupType(acrossGroupType)
Sets where to display the aggregate.

setDecimalPlaces(decimalPlaces)
Sets the number of decimal places in numbers.

setDescription(description)
Sets the user-facing description of the custom summary formula.

setDownGroup(downGroup)
Sets the name of a row grouping when the `downGroupType` is `CUSTOM`.

setDownGroupType(value)
Sets where to display the aggregate.

setDownGroupType(downGroupType)
Sets where to display the aggregate.

setFormula(formula)
Sets the operations to perform on values in the custom summary formula.

setFormulaType(value)
Sets the format of the numbers in the custom summary formula.

setFormulaType(formulaType)
Sets the format of numbers used in the custom summary formula.

setLabel(label)
Sets the user-facing name of the custom summary formula.

toString()
Returns a string.

getAcrossGroup()

Returns the name of a column grouping when the `acrossGroupType` is `CUSTOM`. Otherwise, returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getAcrossGroup()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getAcrossGroupType()

Returns where to display the aggregate.

Signature

```
public Reports.CsfGroupType getAcrossGroupType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

getDecimalPlaces()

Returns the number of decimal places that numbers in the custom summary formula have.

Signature

```
public Integer getDecimalPlaces()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getDescription()

Returns the user-facing description of a custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDownGroup()

Returns the name of a row grouping when the `downGroupType` is `CUSTOM`. Otherwise, returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getDownGroup()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDownGroupType()

Returns where to display the aggregate of the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public Reports.CsfGroupType getDownGroupType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

getFormula()

Returns the operations performed on values in the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public String getFormula()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getFormulaType()`

Returns the formula type.

Signature

```
public Reports.FormulaType getFormulaType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.FormulaType

`getLabel()`

Returns the user-facing name of the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setAcrossGroup(acrossGroup)`

Specifies the column for the across grouping.

Signature

```
public void setAcrossGroup(String acrossGroup)
```

Parameters

acrossGroup
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setAcrossGroupType(value)`

Sets where to display the aggregate.

Signature

```
public void setAcrossGroupType(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

For possible values, see Reports.CsfGroupType.

Return Value

Type: void

setAcrossGroupType(acrossGroupType)

Sets where to display the aggregate.

Signature

```
public void setAcrossGroupType(Reports.CsfGroupType acrossGroupType)
```

Parameters

acrossGroupType
Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

Return Value

Type: void

setDecimalPlaces(decimalPlaces)

Sets the number of decimal places in numbers.

Signature

```
public void setDecimalPlaces(Integer decimalPlaces)
```

Parameters

decimalPlaces
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: void

setDescription(description)

Sets the user-facing description of the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public void setDescription(String description)
```

Parameters

description
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setDownGroup(downGroup)

Sets the name of a row grouping when the `downGroupType` is `CUSTOM`.

Signature

```
public void setDownGroup(String downGroup)
```

Parameters

downGroup
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setDownGroupType(value)

Sets where to display the aggregate.

Signature

```
public void setDownGroupType(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

For valid values, see Reports.CsfGroupType.

Return Value

Type: void

setDownGroupType(downGroupType)

Sets where to display the aggregate.

Signature

```
public void setDownGroupType(Reports.CsfGroupType downGroupType)
```

Parameters

downGroupType
Type: Reports.CsfGroupType

Return Value

Type: void

setFormula(formula)

Sets the operations to perform on values in the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public void setFormula(String formula)
```

Parameters

formula
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setFormulaType(value)

Sets the format of the numbers in the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public void setFormulaType(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

For valid values, see Reports.FormulaType.

Return Value

Type: void

setFormulaType(formulaType)

Sets the format of numbers used in the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public void setFormulaType(Reports.FormulaType formulaType)
```

Parameters

formulaType
Type: Reports.FormulaType

Return Value

Type: void

setLabel(label)

Sets the user-facing name of the custom summary formula.

Signature

```
public void setLabel(String label)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

toString()

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportCurrency Class

Contains information about a currency value, including the amount and currency code.

Namespace

Reports

ReportCurrency Methods

The following are methods for `ReportCurrency`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAmount()
Returns the amount of the currency value.

getCurrencyCode()
Returns the report currency code, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for an organization that has multicurrency enabled. The value is `null` if the organization does not have multicurrency enabled.

`getAmount()`

Returns the amount of the currency value.

Syntax

```
public Decimal getAmount()
```

Return Value

Type: Decimal

`getCurrencyCode()`

Returns the report currency code, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for an organization that has multicurrency enabled. The value is `null` if the organization does not have multicurrency enabled.

Syntax

```
public String getCurrencyCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportDataCell Class

Contains the data for a cell in the report, including the display label and value.

Namespace

Reports

ReportDataCell Methods

The following are methods for `ReportDataCell`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the value of a specified cell in the report.

getValue()
Returns the value of a specified cell of a detail row of a report.

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the value of a specified cell in the report.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value of a specified cell of a detail row of a report.

Syntax

```
public Object getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

ReportDescribeResult Class

Contains report, report type, and extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

Namespace

Reports

ReportDescribeResult Methods

The following are methods for `ReportDescribeResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getReportExtendedMetadata()
Returns additional information about grouping and summaries.

getReportMetadata()
Returns unique identifiers for groupings and summaries.

getReportTypeMetadata()
Returns the fields in each section of a report type, plus filtering information for those fields.

`getReportExtendedMetadata()`

Returns additional information about grouping and summaries.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportExtendedMetadata getReportExtendedMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportExtendedMetadata

`getReportMetadata()`

Returns unique identifiers for groupings and summaries.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportMetadata getReportMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportMetadata

`getReportTypeMetadata()`

Returns the fields in each section of a report type, plus filtering information for those fields.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportTypeMetadata getReportTypeMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportTypeMetadata

ReportDetailRow Class

Contains data cells for a detail row of a report.

Namespace

Reports

ReportDetailRow Methods

The following are methods for `ReportDetailRow`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDataCells()
Returns a list of data cells for a detail row.

getDataCells()

Returns a list of data cells for a detail row.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.ReportDataCell> getDataCells()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportDataCell>

ReportDivisionInfo Class

Contains information about the divisions that can be used to filter a report.

Available only if your organization uses divisions to segment data and you have the "Affected by Divisions" permission. If you do not have the "Affected by Divisions" permission, your reports include records in all divisions.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

Use to filter records in the report based on a division, like West Coast and East Coast.

ReportDivisionInfo Methods

The following are methods for `ReportDivisionInfo`.

getDefaultValue()

Returns the default division for the report.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getValues()

Returns a list of all possible divisions for the report.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.FilterValue> getValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.FilterValue>

ReportExtendedMetadata Class

Contains report extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

Namespace

Reports

Report extended metadata provides additional, detailed metadata about summary and grouping fields, including data type and label information.

ReportExtendedMetadata Methods

The following are methods for `ReportExtendedMetadata`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregateColumnInfo()
Returns all report summaries such as `Record Count`, `Sum`, `Average`, `Max`, `Min`, and custom summary formulas. Contains values for each summary that is listed in the report metadata.

getDetailColumnInfo()
Returns a map of two properties for each field that has detailed data identified by its unique API name. The detailed data fields are also listed in the report metadata.

getGroupingColumnInfo()
Returns a map of each row or column grouping to its metadata. Contains values for each grouping that is identified in the groupingsDown and groupingsAcross lists.

`getAggregateColumnInfo()`

Returns all report summaries such as `Record Count`, `Sum`, `Average`, `Max`, `Min`, and custom summary formulas. Contains values for each summary that is listed in the report metadata.

Syntax

```
public MAP<String,Reports.AggregateColumn> getAggregateColumnInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.AggregateColumn>

getDetailColumnInfo()

Returns a map of two properties for each field that has detailed data identified by its unique API name. The detailed data fields are also listed in the report metadata.

Syntax

```
public MAP<String,Reports.DetailColumn> getDetailColumnInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.DetailColumn>

getGroupingColumnInfo()

Returns a map of each row or column grouping to its metadata. Contains values for each grouping that is identified in the groupingsDown and groupingsAcross lists.

Syntax

```
public MAP<String,Reports.GroupingColumn> getGroupingColumnInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.GroupingColumn>

ReportFact Class

Contains the fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

`ReportFact` is the parent class of `ReportFactWithDetails` and `ReportFactWithSummaries`. If `includeDetails` is `true` when the report is run, the fact map is a `ReportFactWithDetails` object. If `includeDetails` is `false` when the report is run, the fact map is a `ReportFactWithSummaries` object.

ReportFact Methods

The following are methods for `ReportFact`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregates()
Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

getKey()
Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

`getAggregates()`

Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.SummaryValue> getAggregates()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.SummaryValue>

`getKey()`

Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getKey()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportFactWithDetails Class

Contains the detailed fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

The `ReportFactWithDetails` class extends the `ReportFact` class. A `ReportFactWithDetails` object is returned if `includeDetails` is set to `true` when the report is run. To access the detail values, you'll need to cast the return value of the `ReportResults.getFactMap` method to a `ReportFactWithDetails` object.

ReportFactWithDetails Methods

The following are methods for `ReportFactWithDetails`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregates()
Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

getKey()
Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

getRows()
Returns a list of detailed report data in the order of the detail columns that are provided by the report metadata.

`getAggregates()`

Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.SummaryValue> getAggregates()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.SummaryValue>

`getKey()`

Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getKey()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getRows()`

Returns a list of detailed report data in the order of the detail columns that are provided by the report metadata.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.ReportDetailRow> getRows()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportDetailRow>

ReportFactWithSummaries Class

Contains the fact map for the report, which represents the report's data values, and includes summarized fields.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

The `ReportFactWithSummaries` class extends the `ReportFact` class. A `ReportFactWithSummaries` object is returned if `includeDetails` is set to `false` when the report is run.

ReportFactWithSummaries Methods

The following are methods for `ReportFactWithSummaries`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregates()
Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

getKey()
Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

toString()
Returns a string.

`getAggregates()`

Returns summary-level data for a report, including the record count.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.SummaryValue> getAggregates()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.SummaryValue>

`getKey()`

Returns the unique identifier for a row or column grouping. This identifier can be used to index specific data values within each grouping.

Syntax

```
public String getKey()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`toString()`

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportFilter Class

Contains information about a report filter, including column, operator, and value.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportFilter Constructors
ReportFilter Methods

ReportFilter Constructors

The following are constructors for `ReportFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportFilter()
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class. You can then set values by using the "set" methods.
ReportFilter(column, operator, value)
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class by using the specified parameters.
ReportFilter(column, operator, value, filterType)
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class by using the specified parameters.

`ReportFilter()`

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class. You can then set values by using the "set" methods.

Signature

```
public ReportFilter()
```

`ReportFilter(column, operator, value)`

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class by using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public ReportFilter(String column, String operator, String value)
```

Parameters

column
Type: String

operator
Type: String

value
Type: String

ReportFilter(column, operator, value, filterType)

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.ReportFilter` class by using the specified parameters.

Syntax

```
public ReportFilterType(String column, String operator, String value,
Reports.ReportFilterType filterType)
```

Parameters

column
Type: String

operator
Type: String

value
Type: String

filterType
Type: ReportFilterType Enum on page 2250

ReportFilter Methods

The following are methods for `ReportFilter`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColumn()
Returns the unique API name for the field that's being filtered.

getFilterType()
Returns the type of report filter.

getOperator()
Returns the unique API name for the condition that is used to filter a field, such as "greater than" or "not equal to." Filter conditions depend on the data type of the field.

getValue()
Returns the value that the field is being filtered by. For example, the field `Age` can be filtered by a numeric value.

setColumn(column)
Sets the unique API name for the field that's being filtered.

setFilterType()
Sets the type of report filter.

setOperator(operator)
Sets the unique API name for the condition that is used to filter a field, such as "greater than" or "not equal to." Filter conditions depend on the data type of the field.

setValue(value)
Sets the value by which a field can be filtered. For example, the field `Age` can be filtered by a numeric value.

toString(column)
Returns a string representation of the filter.

`getColumn()`

Returns the unique API name for the field that's being filtered.

Syntax

```
public String getColumn()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getFilterType()`

Returns the type of report filter.

Syntax

```
public String getFilterType()
```

Return Value

Type: ReportFilterType Enum on page 2250

`getOperator()`

Returns the unique API name for the condition that is used to filter a field, such as "greater than" or "not equal to." Filter conditions depend on the data type of the field.

Syntax

```
public String getOperator()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value that the field is being filtered by. For example, the field `Age` can be filtered by a numeric value.

Syntax

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setColumn(column)`

Sets the unique API name for the field that's being filtered.

Syntax

```
public Void setColumn(String column)
```

Parameters

column
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setFilterType()`

Sets the type of report filter.

Syntax

```
public Void setFilterType(String column)
```

Parameters

column
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setOperator(operator)`

Sets the unique API name for the condition that is used to filter a field, such as “greater than” or “not equal to.” Filter conditions depend on the data type of the field.

Syntax

```
public Void setOperator(String operator)
```

Parameters

operator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setValue(value)`

Sets the value by which a field can be filtered. For example, the field `Age` can be filtered by a numeric value.

Syntax

```
public Void setValue(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`toString(column)`

Returns a string representation of the filter.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportFormat Enum

Contains the possible report format types.

Namespace

Reports

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.ReportFormat` enum.

Value	Description
`MATRIX`	Matrix report format
`SUMMARY`	Summary report format
`TABULAR`	Tabular report format

ReportFilterType Enum

The types of values included in a report filter type.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.ReportFilterType` enum.

Value	Description
`fieldToField`	Field-to-field filter
`fieldValue`	Field-to-value filter

ReportInstance Class

Returns an instance of a report that was run asynchronously. Retrieves the results for that instance.

Namespace

Reports

ReportInstance Methods

The following are methods for `ReportInstance`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCompletionDate()
Returns the date and time when the instance of the report finished running. The completion date is available only if the report instance ran successfully or couldn't be run because of an error. Date and time information is in ISO-8601 format.

getId()
Returns the unique ID for an instance of a report that was run asynchronously.

getOwnerId()
Returns the ID of the user who created the report instance.

getReportId()
Returns the unique ID of the report this instance is based on.

getReportResults()
Retrieves results for an instance of an asynchronous report. When you request your report, you can specify whether to summarize data or include details.

getRequestDate()
Returns the date and time when an instance of the report was run. Date and time information is in ISO-8601 format.

getStatus()
Returns the status of a report.

`getCompletionDate()`

Returns the date and time when the instance of the report finished running. The completion date is available only if the report instance ran successfully or couldn't be run because of an error. Date and time information is in ISO-8601 format.

Syntax

```
public Datetime getCompletionDate()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

`getId()`

Returns the unique ID for an instance of a report that was run asynchronously.

Syntax

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

`getOwnerId()`

Returns the ID of the user who created the report instance.

Syntax

```
public Id getOwnerId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getReportId()

Returns the unique ID of the report this instance is based on.

Syntax

```
public Id getReportId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getReportResults()

Retrieves results for an instance of an asynchronous report. When you request your report, you can specify whether to summarize data or include details.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportResults getReportResults()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportResults

getRequestDate()

Returns the date and time when an instance of the report was run. Date and time information is in ISO-8601 format.

Syntax

```
public Datetime getRequestDate()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

getStatus()

Returns the status of a report.

Syntax

```
public String getStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

- `New` if the report run was recently triggered through a request.
- `Success` if the report ran.
- `Running` if the report is being run.
- `Error` if the report run failed. The instance of a report run can return an error if, for example, your permission to access the report was removed after you requested the run.

ReportManager Class

Runs a report synchronously or asynchronously and with or without details.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

Gets instances of reports and describes the metadata of Reports.

ReportManager Methods

The following are methods for `ReportManager`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

describeReport(reportId)

Retrieves report, report type, and extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

getDatatypeFilterOperatorMap()

Lists the field data types that you can use to filter the report.

getReportInstance(instanceId)

Retrieves results for an instance of a report that has been run asynchronously. The settings you use when you run your asynchronous report determine whether you can retrieve summary data or detailed data.

getReportInstances(reportId)

Returns a list of instances for a report that was run asynchronously. Each item in the list represents a separate instance of the report, with metadata for the time at which the report was run.

runAsyncReport(reportId, reportMetadata, includeDetails)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Includes details if *`includeDetails`* is set to `true`. Filters the report based on the report metadata in *`reportMetadata`*.

runAsyncReport(reportId, includeDetails)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Includes details if *`includeDetails`* is set to `true`.

runAsyncReport(reportId, reportMetadata)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *`reportMetadata`*.

runAsyncReport(reportId)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID.

runReport(reportId, reportMetadata, includeDetails)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *reportMetadata*.

runReport(reportId, includeDetails)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`.

runReport(reportId, reportMetadata)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *rmData*.

runReport(reportId)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID.

describeReport(reportId)

Retrieves report, report type, and extended metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportDescribeResult describeReport(Id reportId)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportDescribeResult

getDatatypeFilterOperatorMap()

Lists the field data types that you can use to filter the report.

Syntax

```
public static MAP<String,LIST<Reports.FilterOperator>> getDatatypeFilterOperatorMap()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, List<Reports.FilterOperator>>

getReportInstance(instanceId)

Retrieves results for an instance of a report that has been run asynchronously. The settings you use when you run your asynchronous report determine whether you can retrieve summary data or detailed data.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportInstance getReportInstance(Id instanceId)
```

Parameters

instanceId
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

getReportInstances(reportId)

Returns a list of instances for a report that was run asynchronously. Each item in the list represents a separate instance of the report, with metadata for the time at which the report was run.

Syntax

```
public static LIST<Reports.ReportInstance> getReportInstances(Id reportId)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportInstance>

runAsyncReport(reportId, reportMetadata, includeDetails)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`. Filters the report based on the report metadata in *reportMetadata*.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportInstance runAsyncReport(Id reportId, Reports.ReportMetadata
reportMetadata, Boolean includeDetails)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

reportMetadata
Type: Reports.ReportMetadata

includeDetails
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

runAsyncReport(reportId, includeDetails)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportInstance runAsyncReport(Id reportId, Boolean includeDetails)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

includeDetails
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

runAsyncReport(reportId, reportMetadata)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *reportMetadata*.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportInstance runAsyncReport(Id reportId, Reports.ReportMetadata
reportMetadata)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

reportMetadata
Type: Reports.ReportMetadata

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

runAsyncReport(reportId)

Runs a report asynchronously with the report ID.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportInstance runAsyncReport(Id reportId)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportInstance

runReport(reportId, reportMetadata, includeDetails)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *reportMetadata*.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportResults runReport(Id reportId, Reports.ReportMetadata
reportMetadata, Boolean includeDetails)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

reportMetadata
Type: Reports.ReportMetadata

includeDetails
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportResults

runReport(reportId, includeDetails)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Includes details if *includeDetails* is set to `true`.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportResults runReport(Id reportId, Boolean includeDetails)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

includeDetails
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportResults

runReport(reportId, reportMetadata)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID. Filters the results based on the report metadata in *rmData*.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportResults runReport(Id reportId, Reports.ReportMetadata
reportMetadata)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

reportMetadata
Type: Reports.ReportMetadata Reports.ReportMetadata

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportResults

runReport(reportId)

Runs a report immediately with the report ID.

Syntax

```
public static Reports.ReportResults runReport(Id reportId)
```

Parameters

reportId
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportResults

ReportMetadata Class

Contains report metadata for a tabular, summary, or matrix report.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

Report metadata gives information about the report as a whole, such as the report type, format, summary fields, row or column groupings, and filters that are saved to the report. You can use the `ReportMetadata` class to retrieve report metadata and to set metadata that can be used to filter a report.

ReportMetadata Methods

The following are methods for `ReportMetadata`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregates()

Returns unique identifiers for summary or custom summary formula fields in the report.

getBuckets()

Returns a list of bucket fields in the report.

getCrossFilters()

Returns information about cross filters applied to a report.

getCurrencyCode()

Returns report currency, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for an organization that has multicurrency enabled. The value is `null` if the organization does not have multicurrency enabled.

getCustomSummaryFormula()

Returns information about custom summary formulas in a report.

getDescription()

Returns the description of the report.

getDetailColumns()

Returns unique API names (column names) for the fields that contain detailed data. For example, the method might return the following values: "OPPORTUNITY_NAME, TYPE, LEAD_SOURCE, AMOUNT."

getDeveloperName()

Returns the report API name. For example, the method might return the following value: "Closed_Sales_This_Quarter."

getDivision()

Returns the division specified in the report.

getGroupingsAcross()

Returns column groupings in a report.

getGroupingsDown()

Returns row groupings for a report.

getHasDetailRows()

Indicates whether the report has detail rows.

getHasRecordCount()

Indicates whether the report shows the total number of records.

getHistoricalSnapshotDates()

Returns a list of historical snapshot dates.

getId()

Returns the unique report ID.

getName()

Returns the report name.

getReportBooleanFilter()

Returns logic to parse custom field filters. The value is `null` when filter logic is not specified.

getReportFilters()

Returns a list of each custom filter in the report along with the field name, filter operator, and filter value.

getReportFormat()

Returns the format of the report.

getReportType()

Returns the unique API name and display name for the report type.

getScope()

Returns the API name for the scope defined for the report. Scope values depend on the report type.

getShowGrandTotal()

Indicates whether the report shows the grand total.

getShowSubtotals()

Indicates whether the report shows subtotals, such as column or row totals.

getSortBy()

Returns the list of columns on which the report is sorted. Currently, you can sort on only one column.

getStandardDateFilter()

Returns information about the standard date filter for the report, such as the start date, end date, date range, and date field API name.

getStandardFilters()

Returns a list of standard filters for the report.

getTopRows()

Returns information about a row limit filter, including the number of rows returned and the sort order.

setAggregates(aggregates)

Sets unique identifiers for standard or custom summary formula fields in the report.

setBuckets(buckets)

Creates bucket fields in a report.

setCrossFilters(crossFilters)

Applies cross filters to a report.

setCurrencyCode(currencyCode)

Sets the currency, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for report summary fields in an organization that has multicurrency enabled.

setCustomSummaryFormula(customSummaryFormula)

Adds a custom summary formula to a report.

setDescription(description)

Sets the description of the report.

setDetailColumns(detailColumns)

Sets the unique API names for the fields that contain detailed data—for example, `OPPORTUNITY_NAME`, `TYPE`, `LEAD_SOURCE`, or `AMOUNT`.

setDeveloperName(developerName)

Sets the report API name—for example, `Closed_Sales_This_Quarter`.

setDivision(division)

Sets the division of the report.

setGroupingsAcross(groupingInfo)
Sets column groupings in a report.

setGroupingsDown(groupingInfo)
Sets row groupings for a report.

setHasDetailRows(hasDetailRows)
Specifies whether the report has detail rows.

setHasRecordCount(hasRecordCount)
Specifies whether the report is configured to show the total number of records.

setHistoricalSnapshotDates(historicalSnapshot)
Sets a list of historical snapshot dates.

setId(id)
Sets the unique report ID.

setName(name)
Sets the report name.

setReportBooleanFilter(reportBooleanFilter)
Sets logic to parse custom field filters.

setReportFilters(reportFilters)
Sets a list of each custom filter in the report along with the field name, filter operator, and filter value.

setReportFormat(format)
Sets the format of the report.

setReportType(reportType)
Sets the unique API name and display name for the report type.

setScope(scopeName)
Sets the API name for the scope defined for the report. Scope values depend on the report type.

setShowGrandTotal(showGrandTotal)
Specifies whether the report shows the grand total.

setShowSubtotals(showSubtotals)
Specifies whether the report shows subtotals, such as column or row totals.

setSortBy(column)
Sets the list of columns on which the report is sorted. Currently, you can only sort on one column.

setStandardDateFilter(dateFilter)
Sets the standard date filter—which includes the start date, end date, date range, and date field API name—for the report.

setStandardFilters(filters)
Sets one or more standard filters on the report.

setTopRows(topRows)
Applies a row limit filter to a report.

`getAggregates()`

Returns unique identifiers for summary or custom summary formula fields in the report.

Syntax

```
public LIST<String> getAggregates()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

Usage

For example:

- `a!Amount` represents the average for the `Amount` column.
- `s!Amount` represents the sum of the `Amount` column.
- `m!Amount` represents the minimum value of the `Amount` column.
- `x!Amount` represents the maximum value of the `Amount` column.
- `s!<customfieldID>` represents the sum of a custom field column. For custom fields and custom report types, the identifier is a combination of the summary type and the field ID.

getBuckets()

Returns a list of bucket fields in the report.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.BucketField> getBuckets()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.BucketField>

getCrossFilters()

Returns information about cross filters applied to a report.

Signature

```
public Reports.CrossFilter getCrossFilters()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.CrossFilter>

getCurrencyCode()

Returns report currency, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for an organization that has multicurrency enabled. The value is `null` if the organization does not have multicurrency enabled.

Syntax

```
public String getCurrencyCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getCustomSummaryFormula()

Returns information about custom summary formulas in a report.

Signature

```
public Map<String,Reports.ReportCsf> getCustomSummaryFormula()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.ReportCsf>

getDescription()

Returns the description of the report.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDetailColumns()

Returns unique API names (column names) for the fields that contain detailed data. For example, the method might return the following values: "OPPORTUNITY_NAME, TYPE, LEAD_SOURCE, AMOUNT."

Syntax

```
public LIST<String> getDetailColumns()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

getDeveloperName()

Returns the report API name. For example, the method might return the following value: "Closed_Sales_This_Quarter."

Syntax

```
public String getDeveloperName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDivision()

Returns the division specified in the report.

Note: Reports that use standard filters (such as My Cases or My Team's Accounts) show records in all divisions. These reports can't be further limited to a specific division.

Signature

```
public String getDivision()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getGroupingsAcross()

Returns column groupings in a report.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.GroupingInfo> getGroupingsAcross()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.GroupingInfo>

Usage

The identifier is:

- An empty array for reports in summary format, because summary reports don't include column groupings
- `BucketField_(ID)` for bucket fields
- The ID of a custom field when the custom field is used for a column grouping

getGroupingsDown()

Returns row groupings for a report.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.GroupingInfo> getGroupingsDown()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.GroupingInfo>

Usage

The identifier is:

- `BucketField_(ID)` for bucket fields
- The ID of a custom field when the custom field is used for grouping

getHasDetailRows()

Indicates whether the report has detail rows.

Signature

```
public Boolean getHasDetailRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getHasRecordCount()

Indicates whether the report shows the total number of records.

Signature

```
public Boolean getHasRecordCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getHistoricalSnapshotDates()

Returns a list of historical snapshot dates.

Syntax

```
public LIST<String> getHistoricalSnapshotDates()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

getId()

Returns the unique report ID.

Syntax

```
public Id getId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

getName()

Returns the report name.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getReportBooleanFilter()

Returns logic to parse custom field filters. The value is `null` when filter logic is not specified.

Syntax

```
public String getReportBooleanFilter()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getReportFilters()

Returns a list of each custom filter in the report along with the field name, filter operator, and filter value.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.ReportFilter> getReportFilters()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportFilter>

getReportFormat()

Returns the format of the report.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportFormat getReportFormat()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportFormat

Usage

This value can be:

- `TABULAR`
- `SUMMARY`
- `MATRIX`

getReportType()

Returns the unique API name and display name for the report type.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportType getReportType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportType

getScope()

Returns the API name for the scope defined for the report. Scope values depend on the report type.

Signature

```
public String getScope()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getShowGrandTotal()

Indicates whether the report shows the grand total.

Signature

```
public Boolean getShowGrandTotal()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getShowSubtotals()

Indicates whether the report shows subtotals, such as column or row totals.

Signature

```
public Boolean getShowSubtotals()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getSortBy()

Returns the list of columns on which the report is sorted. Currently, you can sort on only one column.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.SortColumn> getSortBy()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.SortColumn>

getStandardDateFilter()

Returns information about the standard date filter for the report, such as the start date, end date, date range, and date field API name.

Signature

```
public Reports.StandardDateFilter getStandardDateFilter()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.StandardDateFilter

getStandardFilters()

Returns a list of standard filters for the report.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.StandardFilter> getStandardFilters()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.StandardFilter>

getTopRows()

Returns information about a row limit filter, including the number of rows returned and the sort order.

Signature

```
public Reports.TopRows getTopRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.TopRows

setAggregates(aggregates)

Sets unique identifiers for standard or custom summary formula fields in the report.

Signature

```
public void setAggregates(List<String> aggregates)
```

Parameters

aggregates
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: void

setBuckets(buckets)

Creates bucket fields in a report.

Signature

```
public void setBuckets(List<Reports.BucketField> buckets)
```

Parameters

buckets
Type: List<Reports.BucketField>

Return Value

Type: void

setCrossFilters(crossFilters)

Applies cross filters to a report.

Signature

```
public void setCrossFilters(List<Reports.CrossFilter> crossFilters)
```

Parameters

crossFilter
Type: List<Reports.CrossFilter>

Return Value

Type: void

setCurrencyCode(currencyCode)

Sets the currency, such as USD, EUR, or GBP, for report summary fields in an organization that has multicurrency enabled.

Signature

```
public void setCurrencyCode(String currencyCode)
```

Parameters

currencyCode
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setCustomSummaryFormula(customSummaryFormula)

Adds a custom summary formula to a report.

Signature

```
public void setCustomSummaryFormula(MAP<String,Reports.ReportCsf> customSummaryFormula)
```

Parameters

customSummaryFormula
Type: Map<String, Reports.ReportCsf>

Return Value

Type: void

setDescription(description)

Sets the description of the report.

Signature

```
public void setDescription(String description)
```

Parameters

description
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setDetailColumns(detailColumns)

Sets the unique API names for the fields that contain detailed data—for example, `OPPORTUNITY_NAME`, `TYPE`, `LEAD_SOURCE`, or `AMOUNT`.

Signature

```
public void setDetailColumns(List<String> detailColumns)
```

Parameters

detailColumns
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: void

setDeveloperName(developerName)

Sets the report API name—for example, `Closed_Sales_This_Quarter`.

Signature

```
public void setDeveloperName(String developerName)
```

Parameters

developerName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setDivision(division)

Sets the division of the report.

Note: Reports that use standard filters (such as My Cases or My Team's Accounts) show records in all divisions. These reports can't be further limited to a specific division.

Signature

```
public void setDivision(String division)
```

Parameters

division
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setGroupingsAcross(groupingInfo)

Sets column groupings in a report.

Signature

```
public void setGroupingsAcross(List<Reports.GroupingInfo> groupingInfo)
```

Parameters

groupingInfo
Type: List<Reports.GroupingInfo>

Return Value

Type: void

setGroupingsDown(groupingInfo)

Sets row groupings for a report.

Signature

```
public void setGroupingsDown(List<Reports.GroupingInfo> groupingInfo)
```

Parameters

groupingInfo
Type: List<Reports.GroupingInfo>

Return Value

Type: void

setHasDetailRows(hasDetailRows)

Specifies whether the report has detail rows.

Signature

```
public void setHasDetailRows(Boolean hasDetailRows)
```

Parameters

hasDetailRows
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setHasRecordCount(hasRecordCount)

Specifies whether the report is configured to show the total number of records.

Signature

```
public void setHasRecordCount(Boolean hasRecordCount)
```

Parameters

hasRecordCount
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setHistoricalSnapshotDates(historicalSnapshot)

Sets a list of historical snapshot dates.

Syntax

```
public Void setHistoricalSnapshotDates(LIST<String> historicalSnapshot)
```

Parameters

historicalSnapshot
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: Void

setId(id)

Sets the unique report ID.

Signature

```
public void setId(Id id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: Id

Return Value

Type: void

`setName(name)`

Sets the report name.

Signature

```
public void setName(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setReportBooleanFilter(reportBooleanFilter)`

Sets logic to parse custom field filters.

Syntax

```
public Void setReportBooleanFilter(String reportBooleanFilter)
```

Parameters

reportBooleanFilter
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setReportFilters(reportFilters)`

Sets a list of each custom filter in the report along with the field name, filter operator, and filter value.

Syntax

```
public Void setReportFilters(LIST<Reports.ReportFilter> reportFilters)
```

Parameters

reportFilters
Type: List<Reports.ReportFilter>

Return Value

Type: Void

setReportFormat(format)

Sets the format of the report.

Signature

```
public void setReportFormat(Reports.ReportFormat format)
```

Parameters

format
Type: Reports.ReportFormat

Return Value

Type: void

setReportType(reportType)

Sets the unique API name and display name for the report type.

Signature

```
public void setReportType(Reports.ReportType reportType)
```

Parameters

reportType
Type: Reports.ReportType

Return Value

Type: void

setScope(scopeName)

Sets the API name for the scope defined for the report. Scope values depend on the report type.

Signature

```
public void setScope(String scopeName)
```

Parameters

scopeName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setShowGrandTotal(showGrandTotal)

Specifies whether the report shows the grand total.

Signature

```
public void setShowGrandTotal(Boolean showGrandTotal)
```

Parameters

showGrandTotal
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setShowSubtotals(showSubtotals)

Specifies whether the report shows subtotals, such as column or row totals.

Signature

```
public void setShowSubtotals(Boolean showSubtotals)
```

Parameters

showSubtotals
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setSortBy(column)

Sets the list of columns on which the report is sorted. Currently, you can only sort on one column.

Signature

```
public void setSortBy(List<Reports.SortColumn> column)
```

Parameters

column
Type: List<Reports.SortColumn>

Return Value

Type: void

setStandardDateFilter(dateFilter)

Sets the standard date filter—which includes the start date, end date, date range, and date field API name—for the report.

Signature

```
public void setStandardDateFilter(Reports.StandardDateFilter dateFilter)
```

Parameters

dateFilter
Type: Reports.StandardDateFilter

Return Value

Type: void

setStandardFilters(filters)

Sets one or more standard filters on the report.

Signature

```
public void setStandardFilters(List<Reports.StandardFilter> filters)
```

Parameters

filters
Type: List<Reports.StandardFilter>

Return Value

Type: void

setTopRows(topRows)

Applies a row limit filter to a report.

Signature

```
public Reports.TopRows setTopRows(Reports.TopRows topRows)
```

Parameters

topRows
Type: Reports.TopRows

Return Value

Type: void

ReportResults Class

Contains the results of running a report.

Namespace

Reports

ReportResults Methods

The following are methods for `ReportResults`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAllData()
Returns all report data.

getFactMap()
Returns summary-level data or summary and detailed data for each row or column grouping. Detailed data is available if the `includeDetails` parameter is set to `true` when the report is run.

getGroupingsAcross()
Returns a collection of column groupings, keys, and values.

getGroupingsDown()
Returns a collection of row groupings, keys, and values.

getHasDetailRows()
Returns information about whether the fact map has detail rows.

getReportExtendedMetadata()
Returns additional, detailed metadata about the report, including data type and label information for groupings and summaries.

getReportMetadata()
Returns metadata about the report, including grouping and summary information.

`getAllData()`

Returns all report data.

Syntax

```
public Boolean getAllData()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

When `true`, indicates that all report results are returned.

When `false`, indicates that results are returned for the same number of rows as in a report run in Salesforce.

Note: For reports that contain too many records, use filters to refine results.

`getFactMap()`

Returns summary-level data or summary and detailed data for each row or column grouping. Detailed data is available if the `includeDetails` parameter is set to `true` when the report is run.

Syntax

```
public MAP<String,Reports.ReportFact> getFactMap()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.ReportFact>

`getGroupingsAcross()`

Returns a collection of column groupings, keys, and values.

Syntax

```
public Reports.Dimension getGroupingsAcross()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.Dimension

`getGroupingsDown()`

Returns a collection of row groupings, keys, and values.

Syntax

```
public Reports.Dimension getGroupingsDown()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.Dimension

`getHasDetailRows()`

Returns information about whether the fact map has detail rows.

Syntax

```
public Boolean getHasDetailRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

- When `true`, indicates that the fact map returns values for summary-level and record-level data.
- When `false`, indicates that the fact map returns summary values.

`getReportExtendedMetadata()`

Returns additional, detailed metadata about the report, including data type and label information for groupings and summaries.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportExtendedMetadata getReportExtendedMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportExtendedMetadata

`getReportMetadata()`

Returns metadata about the report, including grouping and summary information.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ReportMetadata getReportMetadata()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportMetadata

ReportScopeInfo Class

Contains information about possible scope values that you can choose. Scope values depend on the report type. For example, you can set the scope for opportunity reports to `All opportunities`, `My team's opportunities`, or `My opportunities`.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportScopeInfo Methods

ReportScopeInfo Methods

The following are methods for `ReportScopeInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDefaultValue()
Returns the default scope of the data to display in the report.

getValues()
Returns a list of scope values specified for the report.

`getDefaultValue()`

Returns the default scope of the data to display in the report.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValues()`

Returns a list of scope values specified for the report.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.ReportScopeValue> getValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportScopeValue>

ReportScopeValue Class

Contains information about a possible scope value. Scope values depend on the report type. For example, you can set the scope for opportunity reports to `All opportunities`, `My team's opportunities`, or `My opportunities`.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportScopeValue Methods

ReportScopeValue Methods

The following are methods for `ReportScopeValue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAllowsDivision()
Returns a boolean value that indicates whether you can segment the report by this scope.

getLabel()
Returns the display name of the scope of the report.

getValue()
Returns the scope value for the report.

`getAllowsDivision()`

Returns a boolean value that indicates whether you can segment the report by this scope.

Signature

```
public Boolean getAllowsDivision()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`getLabel()`

Returns the display name of the scope of the report.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the scope value for the report.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportType Class

Contains the unique API name and display name for the report type.

Namespace

Reports

ReportType Methods

The following are methods for `ReportType`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the report type.

getType()
Returns the unique identifier of the report type.

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the report type.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getType()`

Returns the unique identifier of the report type.

Syntax

```
public String getType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportTypeColumn Class

Contains detailed report type metadata about a field, including data type, display name, and filter values.

Namespace

Reports

ReportTypeColumn Methods

The following are methods for `ReportTypeColumn`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDataType()
Returns the data type of the field.

getFilterValues()
If the field data type is picklist, multi-select picklist, boolean, or checkbox, returns all filter values for a field. For example, checkbox fields always have a value of `true` or `false`. For fields of other data types, the filter value is an empty array, because their values can't be determined.

getFilterable()
If the field is of a type that can't be filtered, returns `False`. For example, fields of the type `Encrypted Text` can't be filtered.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of the field.

getName()
Returns the unique API name of the field.

`getDataType()`

Returns the data type of the field.

Syntax

```
public Reports.ColumnDataType getDataType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnDataType

`getFilterValues()`

If the field data type is picklist, multi-select picklist, boolean, or checkbox, returns all filter values for a field. For example, checkbox fields always have a value of `true` or `false`. For fields of other data types, the filter value is an empty array, because their values can't be determined.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.FilterValue> getFilterValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.FilterValue>

`getFilterable()`

If the field is of a type that can't be filtered, returns `False`. For example, fields of the type `Encrypted Text` can't be filtered.

Syntax

```
public Boolean getFilterable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of the field.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the unique API name of the field.

Syntax

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportTypeColumnCategory Class

Information about categories of fields in a report type.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

A report type column category is a set of fields that the report type grants access to. For example, an opportunity report has categories like *Opportunity Information* and *Primary Contact*. The Opportunity Information category has fields like *Amount*, *Probability*, and *Close Date*.

Get category information about a report by first getting the report metadata:

```
// Get the report ID
List <Report> reportList = [SELECT Id,DeveloperName FROM Report where DeveloperName =
'Q1_Opportunities2'];
```

```
String reportId = (String)reportList.get(0).get('Id');

// Describe the report
Reports.ReportDescribeResult describeResults =
Reports.ReportManager.describeReport(reportId);

// Get report type metadata
Reports.ReportTypeMetadata reportTypeMetadata = describeResults.getReportTypeMetadata();

// Get report type column categories
List<Reports.ReportTypeColumnCategory> reportTypeColumnCategories =
reportTypeMetadata.getCategories();

System.debug('reportTypeColumnCategories: ' + reportTypeColumnCategories);
```

ReportTypeColumnCategory Methods

The following are methods for `ReportTypeColumnCategory`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColumns()
Returns information for all fields in the report type. The information is organized by each section's unique API name.

getLabel()
Returns the localized display name of a section in the report type under which fields are organized. For example, in an Accounts with Contacts custom report type, `Account General` is the display name of the section that contains fields on general account information.

`getColumns()`

Returns information for all fields in the report type. The information is organized by each section's unique API name.

Syntax

```
public MAP<String,Reports.ReportTypeColumn> getColumns()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.ReportTypeColumn>

`getLabel()`

Returns the localized display name of a section in the report type under which fields are organized. For example, in an Accounts with Contacts custom report type, `Account General` is the display name of the section that contains fields on general account information.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ReportTypeMetadata Class

Contains report type metadata, which gives you information about the fields that are available in each section of the report type, plus filter information for those fields.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ReportTypeMetadata Methods

ReportTypeMetadata Methods

The following are methods for `ReportTypeMetadata`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCategories()
Returns all fields in the report type. The fields are organized by section.

getDivisionInfo()
Returns the default division and a list of all possible divisions that can be applied to this type of report.

getScopeInfo()
Returns information about the scopes that can be applied to this type of report.

getStandardDateFilterDurationGroups()
Returns information about the standard date filter groupings that can be applied to this type of report. Standard date filter groupings include Calendar Year, Calendar Quarter, Calendar Month, Calendar Week, Fiscal Year, Fiscal Quarter, Day and a custom value based on a user-defined date range.

getStandardFilterInfos()
Returns information about standard date filters that can be applied to this type of report.

`getCategories()`

Returns all fields in the report type. The fields are organized by section.

Syntax

```
public LIST<Reports.ReportTypeColumnCategory> getCategories()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.ReportTypeColumnCategory>

getDivisionInfo()

Returns the default division and a list of all possible divisions that can be applied to this type of report.

Signature

```
public Reports.ReportDivisionInfo getDivisionInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportDivisionInfo

getScopeInfo()

Returns information about the scopes that can be applied to this type of report.

Signature

```
public Reports.ReportScopeInfo getScopeInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ReportScopeInfo

getStandardDateFilterDurationGroups()

Returns information about the standard date filter groupings that can be applied to this type of report. Standard date filter groupings include Calendar Year, Calendar Quarter, Calendar Month, Calendar Week, Fiscal Year, Fiscal Quarter, Day and a custom value based on a user-defined date range.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.StandardDateFilterDurationGroup>
getStandardDateFilterDurationGroups()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.StandardDateFilterDurationGroup>

getStandardFilterInfos()

Returns information about standard date filters that can be applied to this type of report.

Signature

```
public Map<String,Reports.StandardFilterInfo> getStandardFilterInfos()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Reports.StandardFilterInfo>

SortColumn Class

Contains information about the sort column used in the report.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

SortColumn Methods

SortColumn Methods

The following are methods for `SortColumn`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSortColumn()
Returns the column used to sort the records in the report.

getSortOrder()
Returns the the sort order— ascending or descending—for the sort column.

setSortColumn(sortColumn)
Sets the column used to sort the records in the report.

setSortOrder(SortOrder)
Sets the sort order— ascending or descending—for the sort column.

`getSortColumn()`

Returns the column used to sort the records in the report.

Signature

```
public String getSortColumn()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSortOrder()`

Returns the the sort order— ascending or descending—for the sort column.

Signature

```
public Reports.ColumnSortOrder getSortOrder()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

`setSortColumn(sortColumn)`

Sets the column used to sort the records in the report.

Signature

```
public void setSortColumn(String sortColumn)
```

Parameters

sortColumn
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setSortOrder(SortOrder)`

Sets the sort order— ascending or descending—for the sort column.

Signature

```
public void setSortOrder(Reports.ColumnSortOrder sortOrder)
```

Parameters

sortOrder
Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

Return Value

Type: void

StandardDateFilter Class

Contains information about standard date filter available in the report—for example, the API name, start date, and end date of the standard date filter duration as well as the API name of the date field on which the filter is placed.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardDateFilter Methods

StandardDateFilter Methods

The following are methods for `StandardDateFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColumn()
Returns the API name of the standard date filter column.

getDurationValue()
Returns duration information about a standard date filter, such as start date, end date, and display name and API name of the date filter.

getEndDate()
Returns the end date of the standard date filter.

getStartDate()
Returns the start date for the standard date filter.

setColumn(standardDateFilterColumnName)
Sets the API name of the standard date filter column.

setDurationValue(durationName)
Sets the API name of the standard date filter.

setEndDate(endDate)
Sets the end date for the standard date filter.

setStartDate(startDate)
Sets the start date for the standard date filter.

`getColumn()`

Returns the API name of the standard date filter column.

Signature

```
public String getColumn()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getDurationValue()`

Returns duration information about a standard date filter, such as start date, end date, and display name and API name of the date filter.

Signature

```
public String getDurationValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getEndDate()`

Returns the end date of the standard date filter.

Signature

```
public String getEndDate()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStartDate()`

Returns the start date for the standard date filter.

Signature

```
public String getStartDate()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setColumn(standardDateFilterColumnName)`

Sets the API name of the standard date filter column.

Signature

```
public void setColumn(String standardDateFilterColumnName)
```

Parameters

`standardDateFilterColumnName`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setDurationValue(durationName)`

Sets the API name of the standard date filter.

Signature

```
public void setDurationValue(String durationName)
```

Parameters

durationName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setEndDate(endDate)

Sets the end date for the standard date filter.

Signature

```
public void setEndDate(String endDate)
```

Parameters

endDate
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setStartDate(startDate)

Sets the start date for the standard date filter.

Signature

```
public void setStartDate(String startDate)
```

Parameters

startDate
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

StandardDateFilterDuration Class

Contains information about each standard date filter—also referred to as a relative date filter. It contains the API name and display label of the standard date filter duration as well as the start and end dates.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardDateFilterDuration Methods

StandardDateFilterDuration Methods

The following are methods for `StandardDateFilterDuration`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEndDate()
Returns the end date of the date filter.

getLabel()
Returns the display name of the date filter. Possible values are relative date filters—like `Current FY` and `Current FQ`—and custom date filters.

getStartDate()
Returns the start date of the date filter.

getValue()
Returns the API name of the date filter. Possible values are relative date filters—like `THIS_FISCAL_YEAR` and `NEXT_FISCAL_QUARTER`—and custom date filters.

`getEndDate()`

Returns the end date of the date filter.

Signature

```
public String getEndDate()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the display name of the date filter. Possible values are relative date filters—like `Current FY` and `Current FQ`—and custom date filters.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStartDate()`

Returns the start date of the date filter.

Signature

```
public String getStartDate()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the API name of the date filter. Possible values are relative date filters—like `THIS_FISCAL_YEAR` and `NEXT_FISCAL_QUARTER`—and custom date filters.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

StandardDateFilterDurationGroup Class

Contains information about the standard date filter groupings, such as the grouping display label and all standard date filters that fall under the grouping. Groupings include `Calendar Year`, `Calendar Quarter`, `Calendar Month`, `Calendar Week`, `Fiscal Year`, `Fiscal Quarter`, `Day`, and custom values based on user-defined date ranges.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardDateFilterDurationGroup Methods

StandardDateFilterDurationGroup Methods

The following are methods for `StandardDateFilterDurationGroup`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the display label for the standard date filter grouping.

getStandardDateFilterDurations()
Returns the standard date filter groupings.

`getLabel()`

Returns the display label for the standard date filter grouping.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStandardDateFilterDurations()`

Returns the standard date filter groupings.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.StandardDateFilterDuration> getStandardDateFilterDurations()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.StandardDateFilterDuration>

For example, a standard filter date grouping might look like this:

```
Reports.StandardDateFilterDuration[endDate=2015-12-31, label=Current FY,
startDate=2015-01-01, value=THIS_FISCAL_YEAR],
Reports.StandardDateFilterDuration[endDate=2014-12-31, label=Previous FY,
startDate=2014-01-01, value=LAST_FISCAL_YEAR],
Reports.StandardDateFilterDuration[endDate=2014-12-31, label=Previous 2 FY,
startDate=2013-01-01, value=LAST_N_FISCAL_YEARS:2]
```

StandardFilter Class

Contains information about the standard filter defined in the report, such as the filter field API name and filter value.

Namespace

Reports

Usage

Use to get or set standard filters on a report. Standard filters vary by report type. For example, standard filters for reports on the Opportunity object are Show, Opportunity Status, and Probability.

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardFilter Methods

StandardFilter Methods

The following are methods for `StandardFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getName()
Return the API name of the standard filter.

getValue()
Returns the standard filter value.

setName(name)
Sets the API name of the standard filter.

setValue(value)
Sets the standard filter value.

`getName()`

Return the API name of the standard filter.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the standard filter value.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setName(name)`

Sets the API name of the standard filter.

Signature

```
public void setName(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

`setValue(value)`

Sets the standard filter value.

Signature

```
public void setValue(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

StandardFilterInfo Class

Is an abstract base class for an object that provides standard filter information.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardFilterInfo Methods

StandardFilterInfo Methods

The following are methods for `StandardFilterInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the display label of the standard filter.

getType()
Returns the type of standard filter.

`getLabel()`

Returns the display label of the standard filter.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getType()`

Returns the type of standard filter.

Signature

```
public Reports.StandardFilterType getType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.StandardFilterType

StandardFilterInfoPicklist Class

Contains information about the standard filter picklist, such as the display name and type of the filter field, the default picklist value, and a list of all possible picklist values.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

StandardFilterInfoPicklist Methods

StandardFilterInfoPicklist Methods

The following are methods for `StandardFilterInfoPicklist`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDefaultValue()
Returns the default value for the standard filter picklist.

getFilterValues()
Returns a list of standard filter picklist values.

getLabel()
Returns the display name of the standard filter picklist.

getType()
Returns the type of the standard filter picklist.

`getDefaultValue()`

Returns the default value for the standard filter picklist.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getFilterValues()`

Returns a list of standard filter picklist values.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.FilterValue> getFilterValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.FilterValue>

`getLabel()`

Returns the display name of the standard filter picklist.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getType()`

Returns the type of the standard filter picklist.

Signature

```
public Reports.StandardFilterType getType()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.StandardFilterType

StandardFilterType Enum

The `StandardFilterType` enum describes the type of standard filters in a report. The `getType()` method returns a `Reports.StandardFilterType` enum value.

Namespace

Reports

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Reports.StandardFilterType` enum.

Value	Description
`PICKLIST`	Values for the standard filter type.
`STRING`	String values.

SummaryValue Class

Contains summary data for a cell of the report.

Namespace

Reports

SummaryValue Methods

The following are methods for `SummaryValue`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the formatted summary data for a specified cell.

getValue()
Returns the numeric value of the summary data for a specified cell.

`getLabel()`

Returns the formatted summary data for a specified cell.

Syntax

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the numeric value of the summary data for a specified cell.

Syntax

```
public Object getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

ThresholdInformation Class

Contains a list of evaluated conditions for a report notification.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

ThresholdInformation Constructors

ThresholdInformation Methods

ThresholdInformation Constructors

The following are constructors for `ThresholdInformation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

ThresholdInformation(evaluatedConditions)
Creates a new instance of the `Reports.EvaluatedCondition` class.

`ThresholdInformation(evaluatedConditions)`

Creates a new instance of the `Reports.EvaluatedCondition` class.

Signature

```
public ThresholdInformation(List<Reports.EvaluatedCondition> evaluatedConditions)
```

Parameters

`evaluatedConditions`
Type: List<Reports.EvaluatedCondition>

A list of `Reports.EvaluatedCondition` objects.

ThresholdInformation Methods

The following are methods for `ThresholdInformation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getEvaluatedConditions()
Returns a list of evaluated conditions for a report notification.

`getEvaluatedConditions()`

Returns a list of evaluated conditions for a report notification.

Signature

```
public List<Reports.EvaluatedCondition> getEvaluatedConditions()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Reports.EvaluatedCondition>

TopRows Class

Contains methods and constructors for working with information about a row limit filter.

Namespace

Reports

IN THIS SECTION:

TopRows Constructors

TopRows Methods

TopRows Constructors

The following are constructors for `TopRows`.

IN THIS SECTION:

TopRows(rowLimit, direction)
Creates an instance of the `Reports.TopRows` class using the specified parameters.

TopRows()
Creates an instance of the `Reports.TopRows` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

`TopRows(rowLimit, direction)`

Creates an instance of the `Reports.TopRows` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public TopRows(Integer rowLimit, Reports.ColumnSortOrder direction)
```

Parameters

rowLimit
Type: Integer

The number of rows returned in the report.

direction
Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

The sort order of the report rows.

TopRows()

Creates an instance of the `Reports.TopRows` class. You can then set values by using the class's `set` methods.

Signature

```
public TopRows()
```

TopRows Methods

The following are methods for `TopRows`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDirection()
Returns the sort order of the report rows.

getRowLimit()
Returns the maximum number of rows shown in the report.

setDirection(value)
Sets the sort order of the report's rows.

setDirection(direction)
Sets the sort order of the report's rows.

setRowLimit(rowLimit)
Sets the maximum number of rows included in the report.

toString()
Returns a string.

getDirection()

Returns the sort order of the report rows.

Signature

```
public Reports.ColumnSortOrder getDirection()
```

Return Value

Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

`getRowLimit()`

Returns the maximum number of rows shown in the report.

Signature

```
public Integer getRowLimit()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`setDirection(value)`

Sets the sort order of the report's rows.

Signature

```
public void setDirection(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

For possible values, see Reports.ColumnSortOrder.

Return Value

Type: void

`setDirection(direction)`

Sets the sort order of the report's rows.

Signature

```
public void setDirection(Reports.ColumnSortOrder direction)
```

Parameters

direction
Type: Reports.ColumnSortOrder

Return Value

Type: void

`setRowLimit(rowLimit)`

Sets the maximum number of rows included in the report.

Signature

```
public void setRowLimit(Integer rowLimit)
```

Parameters

`rowLimit`
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: void

`toString()`

Returns a string.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Reports Exceptions

The `Reports` namespace contains exception classes.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions on page 2586.

The `Reports` namespace contains these exceptions:

Exception	Description	Methods
`Reports.FeatureNotSupportedException`	Invalid report format	
`Reports.InstanceAccessException`	Unable to access report instance	
`Reports.InvalidFilterException`	Filter validation error	`List<String> getFilterErrors()` returns a list of filter errors
`Reports.InvalidReportMetadataException`	Missing metadata for filters	`List<String> getReportMetadataErrors()` returns a list of metadata errors
`Reports.InvalidSnapshotDateException`	Invalid historical report format	`List<String> getSnapshotDateErrors()` returns a list of snapshot date errors

Exception	Description	Methods
`Reports.MetadataException`	No selected report columns	
`Reports.ReportRunException`	Error running report	
`Reports.UnsupportedOperationException`	Missing permissions for running reports	

Schema Namespace

The `Schema` namespace provides classes and methods for schema metadata information.

The following are the classes in the `Schema` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

ChildRelationship Class
Contains methods for accessing the child relationship as well as the child sObject for a parent sObject.

DataCategory Class
Represents the categories within a category group.

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Class
Specifies a category group and an associated object.

DescribeColorResult Class
Contains color metadata information for a tab.

DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult Class
Contains the list of the category groups associated with KnowledgeArticleVersion and Question.

DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult Class
Contains the category groups and categories associated with KnowledgeArticleVersion and Question.

DescribeFieldResult Class
Contains methods for describing sObject fields.

DescribeIconResult Class
Contains icon metadata information for a tab.

DescribeSObjectResult Class
Contains methods for describing SObjects. None of the methods take an argument.

DescribeTabResult Class
Contains tab metadata information for a tab in a standard or custom app available in the Salesforce user interface.

DescribeTabSetResult Class
Contains metadata information about a standard or custom app available in the Salesforce user interface.

DisplayType Enum
A `Schema.DisplayType` enum value is returned by the field describe result's `getType` method.

FieldDescribeOptions Enum
A `Schema.FieldDescribeOptions` enum value is a parameter in the `SObjectType.getDescribe` method.

FieldSet Class

Contains methods for discovering and retrieving the details of field sets created on sObjects.

FieldSetMember Class

Contains methods for accessing the metadata for field set member fields.

PicklistEntry Class

Represents a picklist entry.

RecordTypeInfo Class

Contains methods for accessing record type information for an sObject with associated record types.

SOAPType Enum

A `Schema.SOAPType` enum value is returned by the field describe result `getSoapType` method.

SObjectDescribeOptions Enum

A `Schema.SObjectDescribeOptions` enum value is a parameter in the `SObjectType.getDescribe` method.

SObjectField Class

A `Schema.sObjectField` object is returned from the field describe result using the `getController` and `getSObjectField` methods.

SObjectType Class

A `Schema.sObjectType` object is returned from the field describe result using the `getReferenceTo` method, or from the sObject describe result using the `getSObjectType` method.

ChildRelationship Class

Contains methods for accessing the child relationship as well as the child sObject for a parent sObject.

Namespace

Schema

Example

A ChildRelationship object is returned from the sObject describe result using the `getChildRelationship` method. For example:

```
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult R = Account.SObjectType.getDescribe();
List<Schema.ChildRelationship> C = R.getChildRelationships();
```

ChildRelationship Methods

The following are methods for `ChildRelationship`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getChildSObject()

Returns the token of the child sObject on which there is a foreign key back to the parent sObject.

getField()

Returns the token of the field that has a foreign key back to the parent sObject.

getRelationshipName()
Returns the name of the relationship.

isCascadeDelete()
Returns `true` if the child object is deleted when the parent object is deleted, `false` otherwise.

isDeprecatedAndHidden()
Reserved for future use.

isRestrictedDelete()
Returns `true` if the parent object can't be deleted because it is referenced by a child object, `false` otherwise.

getChildSObject()

Returns the token of the child sObject on which there is a foreign key back to the parent sObject.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getChildSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

getField()

Returns the token of the field that has a foreign key back to the parent sObject.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectField getField()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectField

getRelationshipName()

Returns the name of the relationship.

Signature

```
public String getRelationshipName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

isCascadeDelete()

Returns `true` if the child object is deleted when the parent object is deleted, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCascadeDelete()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isDeprecatedAndHidden()`

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDeprecatedAndHidden()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isRestrictedDelete()`

Returns `true` if the parent object can't be deleted because it is referenced by a child object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isRestrictedDelete()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DataCategory Class

Represents the categories within a category group.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `Schema.DataCategory` object is returned by the `getTopCategories` method.

DataCategory Methods

The following are methods for `DataCategory`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getChildCategories()
Returns a recursive object that contains the visible sub categories in the data category.

getLabel()
Returns the label for the data category used in the Salesforce user interface.

getName()
Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category.

`getChildCategories()`

Returns a recursive object that contains the visible sub categories in the data category.

Signature

```
public Schema.DataCategory getChildCategories()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DataCategory>

`getLabel()`

Returns the label for the data category used in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Class

Specifies a category group and an associated object.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair is used by the `describeDataCategory GroupStructures` method to return the categories available to this object.

IN THIS SECTION:

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Constructors

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Methods

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Constructors

The following are constructors for `DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair`.

IN THIS SECTION:

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair()
Creates a new instance of the `Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair` class.

`DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair()`

Creates a new instance of the `Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair` class.

Signature

```
public DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair()
```

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair Methods

The following are methods for `DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDataCategoryGroupName()
Returns the unique name used by the API to access the data category group.

getSobject()
Returns the object name associated with the data category group.

setDataCategoryGroupName(name)
Specifies the unique name used by the API to access the data category group.

setSobject(sObjectName)
Sets the sObject associated with the data category group.

getDataCategoryGroupName()

Returns the unique name used by the API to access the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getDataCategoryGroupName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getSobject()

Returns the object name associated with the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getSobject()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setDataCategoryGroupName(name)

Specifies the unique name used by the API to access the data category group.

Signature

```
public String setDataCategoryGroupName(String name)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setSobject(sObjectName)

Sets the sObject associated with the data category group.

Signature

```
public Void setSobject(String sObjectName)
```

Parameters

sObjectName
Type: String

The *sObjectName* is the object name associated with the data category group. Valid values are:

- `KnowledgeArticleVersion`—for article types.
- `Question`—for questions from Answers.

Return Value

Type: Void

DescribeColorResult Class

Contains color metadata information for a tab.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `getColors` method of the `Schema.DescribeTabResult` class returns a list of `Schema.DescribeColorResult` objects that describe colors used in a tab.

The methods in the `Schema.DescribeColorResult` class can be called using their property counterparts. For each method starting with `get`, you can omit the `get` prefix and the ending parentheses `()` to call the property counterpart. For example, `colorResultObj.color` is equivalent to `colorResultObj.getColor()`.

Example

This sample shows how to get the color information in the Sales app for the first tab's first color.

```
// Get tab set describes for each app
List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult> tabSetDesc = Schema.DescribeTabs();

// Iterate through each tab set describe for each app and display the info
for(Schema.DescribeTabSetResult tsr : tabSetDesc) {
    // Display tab info for the Sales app
    if (tsr.getLabel() == 'Sales') {
        // Get color information for the first tab
        List<Schema.DescribeColorResult> colorDesc = tsr.getTabs()[0].getColors();
        // Display the icon color, theme, and context of the first color returned
        System.debug('Color: ' + colorDesc[0].getColor());
        System.debug('Theme: ' + colorDesc[0].getTheme());
        System.debug('Context: ' + colorDesc[0].getContext());
    }
}

// Example debug statement output
// DEBUG|Color: 1797C0
```

```
// DEBUG|Theme: theme4
// DEBUG|Context: primary
```

DescribeColorResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeColorResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColor()
Returns the Web RGB color code, such as `00FF00`.

getContext()
Returns the color context. The context determines whether the color is the main color for the tab or not.

getTheme()
Returns the color theme.

`getColor()`

Returns the Web RGB color code, such as `00FF00`.

Signature

```
public String getColor()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getContext()`

Returns the color context. The context determines whether the color is the main color for the tab or not.

Signature

```
public String getContext()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getTheme()`

Returns the color theme.

Signature

```
public String getTheme()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Possible theme values include `theme3`, `theme4`, and `custom`.

- `theme3` is the Salesforce theme introduced during Spring '10.
- `theme4` is the Salesforce theme introduced in Winter '14 for the mobile touchscreen version of Salesforce.
- `custom` is the theme name associated with a custom icon.

DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult Class

Contains the list of the category groups associated with KnowledgeArticleVersion and Question.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `describeDataCategoryGroups` method returns a `Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult` object containing the list of the category groups associated with the specified object.

For additional information and code examples using `describeDataCategoryGroups`, see Accessing All Data Categories Associated with an sObject.

Example

The following is an example of how to instantiate a data category group describe result object:

```
List <String> objType = new List<String>();
objType.add('KnowledgeArticleVersion');
objType.add('Question');

List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult> describeCategoryResult =
   Schema.describeDataCategoryGroups(objType);
```

DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCategoryCount()
Returns the number of visible data categories in the data category group.

getDescription()
Returns the description of the data category group.

getLabel()
Returns the label for the data category group used in the Salesforce user interface.

getName()
Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category group.

getSobject()
Returns the object name associated with the data category group.

getCategoryCount()

Returns the number of visible data categories in the data category group.

Signature

```
public Integer getCategoryCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getDescription()

Returns the description of the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getLabel()

Returns the label for the data category group used in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getName()

Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSobject()`

Returns the object name associated with the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getSobject()
```

Return Value

Type: String

DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult Class

Contains the category groups and categories associated with KnowledgeArticleVersion and Question.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `describeDataCategoryGroupStructures` method returns a list of `Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult` objects containing the category groups and categories associated with the specified object.

For additional information and code examples, see Accessing All Data Categories Associated with an sObject.

Example

The following is an example of how to instantiate a data category group structure describe result object:

```
List <DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair> pairs =
      new List<DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair>();

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair pair1 =
      new DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair();
pair1.setSobject('KnowledgeArticleVersion');
pair1.setDataCategoryGroupName('Regions');

DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair pair2 =
      new DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair();
pair2.setSobject('Questions');
pair2.setDataCategoryGroupName('Regions');

pairs.add(pair1);
pairs.add(pair2);
```

```
List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult>results =
      Schema.describeDataCategoryGroupStructures(pairs, true);
```

DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDescription()
Returns the description of the data category group.

getLabel()
Returns the label for the data category group used in the Salesforce user interface.

getName()
Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category group.

getSobject()
Returns the name of object associated with the data category group.

getTopCategories()
Returns a `Schema.DataCategory` object, that contains the top categories visible depending on the user's data category group visibility settings.

`getDescription()`

Returns the description of the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the label for the data category group used in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the unique name used by the API to access to the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSobject()`

Returns the name of object associated with the data category group.

Signature

```
public String getSobject()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getTopCategories()`

Returns a `Schema.DataCategory` object, that contains the top categories visible depending on the user's data category group visibility settings.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DataCategory> getTopCategories()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DataCategory>

Usage

For more information on data category group visibility, see "Data Category Visibility" in the Salesforce online help.

DescribeFieldResult Class

Contains methods for describing sObject fields.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Instances of field describe results on the same `DescribeFieldResult` aren't guaranteed to be equal because the state and behavior of a describe object is determined by various factors including the API version used. To compare describe results, call the

`getSObjectField()` method on the field describe results and use the equality operator (==) to compare the `SObjectField` values.

Example

The following is an example of how to instantiate a field describe result object:

```
Schema.DescribeFieldResult dfr = Account.Description.getDescribe();
```

DescribeFieldResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeFieldResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getByteLength()
For variable-length fields (including binary fields), returns the maximum size of the field, in bytes.

getCalculatedFormula()
Returns the formula specified for this field.

getController()
Returns the token of the controlling field.

getDefaultValue()
Returns the default value for this field.

getDefaultValueFormula()
Returns the default value specified for this field if a formula is not used.

getDigits()
Returns the maximum number of digits specified for the field. This method is only valid with Integer fields.

getInlineHelpText()
Returns the content of the field-level help.

getLabel()
Returns the text label that is displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface. This label can be localized.

getLength()
Returns the maximum size of the field for the DescribeFieldResult object in Unicode characters (not bytes).

getLocalName()
Returns the name of the field, similar to the `getName` method. However, if the field is part of the current namespace, the namespace portion of the name is omitted.

getName()
Returns the field name used in Apex.

getPicklistValues()
Returns a list of PicklistEntry objects. A runtime error is returned if the field is not a picklist.

getPrecision()
For fields of type Double, returns the maximum number of digits that can be stored, including all numbers to the left and to the right of the decimal point (but excluding the decimal point character).

getReferenceTargetField()

Returns the name of the custom field on the parent standard or custom object whose values are matched against the values of the child external object's indirect lookup relationship field. The match is done to determine which records are related to each other.

getReferenceTo()

Returns a list of Schema.sObjectType objects for the parent objects of this field. If the `isNamePointing` method returns `true`, there is more than one entry in the list, otherwise there is only one.

getRelationshipName()

Returns the name of the relationship.

getRelationshipOrder()

Returns 1 if the field is a child, 0 otherwise.

getScale()

For fields of type Double, returns the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. Any extra digits to the right of the decimal point are truncated.

getSOAPType()

Returns one of the SoapType enum values, depending on the type of field.

getSObjectField()

Returns the token for this field.

getType()

Returns one of the DisplayType enum values, depending on the type of field.

isAccessible()

Returns `true` if the current user can see this field, `false` otherwise.

isAiPredictionField() (Beta)

Returns `true` if the current field is enabled to display Einstein prediction data, `false` otherwise.

isAutoNumber()

Returns `true` if the field is an Auto Number field, `false` otherwise.

isCalculated()

Returns `true` if the field is a custom formula field, `false` otherwise. Note that custom formula fields are always read-only.

isCascadeDelete()

Returns `true` if the child object is deleted when the parent object is deleted, `false` otherwise.

isCaseSensitive()

Returns `true` if the field is case sensitive, `false` otherwise.

isCreateable()

Returns `true` if the field can be created by the current user, `false` otherwise.

isCustom()

Returns `true` if the field is a custom field, `false` if it is a standard field, such as `Name`.

isDefaultedOnCreate()

Returns `true` if the field receives a default value when created, `false` otherwise.

isDependentPicklist()

Returns `true` if the picklist is a dependent picklist, `false` otherwise.

isDeprecatedAndHidden()

Reserved for future use.

isExternalID()

Returns `true` if the field is used as an external ID, `false` otherwise.

isFilterable()

Returns `true` if the field can be used as part of the filter criteria of a `WHERE` statement, `false` otherwise.

isFormulaTreatNullNumberAsZero()

Returns `true` if `null` is treated as zero in a formula field, `false` otherwise.

isGroupable()

Returns `true` if the field can be included in the `GROUP BY` clause of a SOQL query, `false` otherwise. This method is only available for Apex classes and triggers saved using API version 18.0 and higher.

isHtmlFormatted()

Returns `true` if the field has been formatted for HTML and should be encoded for display in HTML, `false` otherwise. One example of a field that returns `true` for this method is a hyperlink custom formula field. Another example is a custom formula field that has an `IMAGE` text function.

isIdLookup()

Returns `true` if the field can be used to specify a record in an `upsert` method, `false` otherwise.

isNameField()

Returns `true` if the field is a name field, `false` otherwise.

isNamePointing()

Returns `true` if the field can have multiple types of objects as parents. For example, a task can have both the `Contact/Lead ID` (`WhoId`) field and the `Opportunity/Account ID` (`WhatId`) field return `true` for this method. because either of those objects can be the parent of a particular task record. This method returns `false` otherwise.

isNillable()

Returns `true` if the field is nillable, `false` otherwise. A nillable field can have empty content. A non-nillable field must have a value for the object to be created or saved.

isPermissionable()

Returns `true` if field permissions can be specified for the field, `false` otherwise.

isRestrictedDelete()

Returns `true` if the parent object can't be deleted because it is referenced by a child object, `false` otherwise.

isRestrictedPicklist()

Returns `true` if the field is a restricted picklist, `false` otherwise

isSearchPrefilterable()

Returns `true` if a foreign key can be included in prefiltering when used in a SOSL `WHERE` clause, `false` otherwise.

isSortable()

Returns `true` if a query can sort on the field, `false` otherwise

isUnique()

Returns `true` if the value for the field must be unique, `false` otherwise

isUpdateable()

Returns `true` if the field can be edited by the current user, or child records in a master-detail relationship field on a custom object can be reparented to different parent records; `false` otherwise.

isWriteRequiresMasterRead()

Returns `true` if writing to the detail object requires read sharing instead of read/write sharing of the parent.

getByteLength()

For variable-length fields (including binary fields), returns the maximum size of the field, in bytes.

Signature

```
public Integer getByteLength()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getCalculatedFormula()

Returns the formula specified for this field.

Signature

```
public String getCalculatedFormula()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getController()

Returns the token of the controlling field.

Signature

```
public Schema.sObjectField getController()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectField

getDefaultValue()

Returns the default value for this field.

Signature

```
public Object getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

getDefaultValueFormula()

Returns the default value specified for this field if a formula is not used.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultValueFormula()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDigits()

Returns the maximum number of digits specified for the field. This method is only valid with Integer fields.

Signature

```
public Integer getDigits()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getInlineHelpText()

Returns the content of the field-level help.

Signature

```
public String getInlineHelpText()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For more information, see "Define Field-Level Help" in the Salesforce online help.

getLabel()

Returns the text label that is displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface. This label can be localized.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Note: For the Type field on standard objects, `getLabel` returns a label different from the default label. It returns a label of the form *`Object`* `Type`, where *Object* is the standard object label. For example, for the Type field on Account, `getLabel` returns `Account Type` instead of the default label `Type`. If the Type label is renamed, `getLabel` returns the new label. You can check or change the labels of all standard object fields from Setup by entering *`Rename Tabs and Labels`* in the `Quick Find box`, then selecting **Rename Tabs and Labels**.

`getLength()`

Returns the maximum size of the field for the DescribeFieldResult object in Unicode characters (not bytes).

Signature

```
public Integer getLength()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getLocalName()`

Returns the name of the field, similar to the `getName` method. However, if the field is part of the current namespace, the namespace portion of the name is omitted.

Signature

```
public String getLocalName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getName()`

Returns the field name used in Apex.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPicklistValues()`

Returns a list of PicklistEntry objects. A runtime error is returned if the field is not a picklist.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.PicklistEntry> getPicklistValues()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.PicklistEntry>

getPrecision()

For fields of type Double, returns the maximum number of digits that can be stored, including all numbers to the left and to the right of the decimal point (but excluding the decimal point character).

Signature

```
public Integer getPrecision()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getReferenceTargetField()

Returns the name of the custom field on the parent standard or custom object whose values are matched against the values of the child external object's indirect lookup relationship field. The match is done to determine which records are related to each other.

Signature

```
public String getReferenceTargetField()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For information about indirect lookup relationships, see "Indirect Lookup Relationship Fields on External Objects" in the Salesforce Help.

getReferenceTo()

Returns a list of Schema.sObjectType objects for the parent objects of this field. If the `isNamePointing` method returns `true`, there is more than one entry in the list, otherwise there is only one.

Signature

```
public List <Schema.sObjectType> getReferenceTo()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.sObjectType>

Versioned Behavior Changes

In API version 51.0 and later, the `getReferenceTo()` method returns referenced objects that aren't accessible to the context user. If the context user has access to an object's field that references another object, irrespective of the context user's access to the cross-referenced object, the method returns references. In API version 50.0 and earlier, if the context user doesn't have access to the cross-referenced object, the method returns an empty list.

`getRelationshipName()`

Returns the name of the relationship.

Signature

```
public String getRelationshipName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For more information about relationships and relationship names, see Understanding Relationship Names in the *SOQL and SOSL Reference*.

`getRelationshipOrder()`

Returns 1 if the field is a child, 0 otherwise.

Signature

```
public Integer getRelationshipOrder()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

For more information about relationships and relationship names, see Understanding Relationship Names in the *SOQL and SOSL Reference*.

`getScale()`

For fields of type Double, returns the number of digits to the right of the decimal point. Any extra digits to the right of the decimal point are truncated.

Signature

```
public Integer getScale()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

This method returns a fault response if the number has too many digits to the left of the decimal point.

getSOAPType()

Returns one of the SoapType enum values, depending on the type of field.

Signature

```
public Schema.SOAPType getSOAPType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SOAPType

getSObjectField()

Returns the token for this field.

Signature

```
public Schema.sObjectField getSObjectField()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectField

getType()

Returns one of the DisplayType enum values, depending on the type of field.

Signature

```
public Schema.DisplayType getType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.DisplayType

isAccessible()

Returns `true` if the current user can see this field, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAccessible()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isAiPredictionField()` (Beta)

Returns `true` if the current field is enabled to display Einstein prediction data, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAiPredictionField()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Custom number fields can be set to display Einstein prediction values. If you are participating in the Einstein Prediction Builder Beta program, use Einstein Prediction Builder to set up the value to display. Use this method to find out if a field is enabled to display an Einstein prediction value.

`isAutoNumber()`

Returns `true` if the field is an Auto Number field, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAutoNumber()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Analogous to a SQL IDENTITY type, Auto Number fields are read-only, non-createable text fields with a maximum length of 30 characters. Auto Number fields are used to provide a unique ID that is independent of the internal object ID (such as a purchase order number or invoice number). Auto Number fields are configured entirely in the Salesforce user interface.

`isCalculated()`

Returns `true` if the field is a custom formula field, `false` otherwise. Note that custom formula fields are always read-only.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCalculated()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isCascadeDelete()`

Returns `true` if the child object is deleted when the parent object is deleted, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCascadeDelete()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isCaseSensitive()`

Returns `true` if the field is case sensitive, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCaseSensitive()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isCreateable()`

Returns `true` if the field can be created by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCreateable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isCustom()`

Returns `true` if the field is a custom field, `false` if it is a standard field, such as `Name`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCustom()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isDefaultedOnCreate()`

Returns `true` if the field receives a default value when created, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDefaultedOnCreate()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If this method returns `true`, Salesforce implicitly assigns a value for this field when the object is created, even if a value for this field is not passed in on the create call. For example, in the Opportunity object, the Probability field has this attribute because its value is derived from the Stage field. Similarly, the Owner has this attribute on most objects because its value is derived from the current user (if the Owner field is not specified).

`isDependentPicklist()`

Returns `true` if the picklist is a dependent picklist, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDependentPicklist()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isDeprecatedAndHidden()`

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDeprecatedAndHidden()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isExternalID()`

Returns `true` if the field is used as an external ID, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isExternalID()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isFilterable()`

Returns `true` if the field can be used as part of the filter criteria of a `WHERE` statement, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isFilterable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isFormulaTreatNullNumberAsZero()

Returns `true` if `null` is treated as zero in a formula field, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isFormulaTreatNullNumberAsZero()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isGroupable()

Returns `true` if the field can be included in the `GROUP BY` clause of a SOQL query, `false` otherwise. This method is only available for Apex classes and triggers saved using API version 18.0 and higher.

Signature

```
public Boolean isGroupable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isHtmlFormatted()

Returns `true` if the field has been formatted for HTML and should be encoded for display in HTML, `false` otherwise. One example of a field that returns `true` for this method is a hyperlink custom formula field. Another example is a custom formula field that has an `IMAGE` text function.

Signature

```
public Boolean isHtmlFormatted()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isIdLookup()

Returns `true` if the field can be used to specify a record in an `upsert` method, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isIdLookup()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isNameField()

Returns `true` if the field is a name field, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isNameField()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method is used to identify the name field for standard objects (such as `AccountName` for an Account object) and custom objects. Objects can only have one name field, except where the `FirstName` and `LastName` fields are used instead (such as on the Contact object).

If a compound name is present, for example, the `Name` field on a person account, `isNameField` is set to `true` for that record.

isNamePointing()

Returns `true` if the field can have multiple types of objects as parents. For example, a task can have both the `Contact/Lead ID` (`WhoId`) field and the `Opportunity/Account ID` (`WhatId`) field return `true` for this method. because either of those objects can be the parent of a particular task record. This method returns `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isNamePointing()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isNillable()

Returns `true` if the field is nillable, `false` otherwise. A nillable field can have empty content. A non-nillable field must have a value for the object to be created or saved.

Signature

```
public Boolean isNillable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isPermissionable()

Returns `true` if field permissions can be specified for the field, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isPermissionable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isRestrictedDelete()

Returns `true` if the parent object can't be deleted because it is referenced by a child object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isRestrictedDelete()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isRestrictedPicklist()

Returns `true` if the field is a restricted picklist, `false` otherwise

Signature

```
public Boolean isRestrictedPicklist()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isSearchPrefilterable()

Returns `true` if a foreign key can be included in prefiltering when used in a SOSL `WHERE` clause, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSearchPrefilterable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Prefiltering means to filter by a specific field value before executing the full search query. Prefiltering is supported only in `WHERE` clauses with the equals (=) operator.

`isSortable()`

Returns `true` if a query can sort on the field, `false` otherwise

Signature

```
public Boolean isSortable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isUnique()`

Returns `true` if the value for the field must be unique, `false` otherwise

Signature

```
public Boolean isUnique()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isUpdateable()`

Returns `true` if the field can be edited by the current user, or child records in a master-detail relationship field on a custom object can be reparented to different parent records; `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isUpdateable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isWriteRequiresMasterRead()`

Returns `true` if writing to the detail object requires read sharing instead of read/write sharing of the parent.

Signature

```
public Boolean isWriteRequiresMasterRead()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DescribeIconResult Class

Contains icon metadata information for a tab.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `getIcons` method of the `Schema.DescribeTabResult` class returns a list of `Schema.DescribeIconResult` objects that describe colors used in a tab.

The methods in the `Schema.DescribeIconResult` class can be called using their property counterparts. For each method starting with `get`, you can omit the `get` prefix and the ending parentheses `()` to call the property counterpart. For example, `iconResultObj.url` is equivalent to `iconResultObj.getUrl()`.

Example

This sample shows how to get the icon information in the Sales app for the first tab's first icon.

```
// Get tab set describes for each app
List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult> tabSetDesc = Schema.describeTabs();

// Iterate through each tab set
for(Schema.DescribeTabSetResult tsr : tabSetDesc) {
    // Get tab info for the Sales app
    if (tsr.getLabel() == 'Sales') {
        // Get icon information for the first tab
        List<Schema.DescribeIconResult> iconDesc = tsr.getTabs()[0].getIcons();
        // Display the icon height and width of the first icon
        System.debug('Height: ' + iconDesc[0].getHeight());
        System.debug('Width: ' + iconDesc[0].getWidth());
    }
}

// Example debug statement output
// DEBUG|Height: 32
// DEBUG|Width: 32
```

DescribeIconResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeIconResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getContentType()

Returns the tab icon's content type, such as `image/png`.

getHeight()
Returns the tab icon's height in pixels.

getTheme()
Returns the tab's icon theme.

getUrl()
Returns the tab's icon fully qualified URL.

getWidth()
Returns the tab's icon width in pixels.

getContentType()

Returns the tab icon's content type, such as `image/png`.

Signature

```
public String getContentType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getHeight()

Returns the tab icon's height in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer getHeight()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Note: If the icon content type is SVG, the icon won't have a size and its height is zero.

getTheme()

Returns the tab's icon theme.

Signature

```
public String getTheme()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Possible theme values include `theme3`, `theme4`, and `custom`.

- `theme3` is the Salesforce theme introduced during Spring '10.
- `theme4` is the Salesforce theme introduced in Winter '14 for the mobile touchscreen version of Salesforce.
- `custom` is the theme name associated with a custom icon.

`getUrl()`

Returns the tab's icon fully qualified URL.

Signature

```
public String getUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getWidth()`

Returns the tab's icon width in pixels.

Signature

```
public Integer getWidth()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Note: If the icon content type is SVG, the icon won't have a size and its width is zero.

DescribeSObjectResult Class

Contains methods for describing SObjects. None of the methods take an argument.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Instances of describe results on the same `DescribeSObjectResult` aren't guaranteed to be equal because the state and behavior of a describe object is determined by various factors including the API version used. To compare describe results, call the `getSObjectType()` method on the SObject describe results and use the equality operator (==) to compare the `SObjectType` values.

DescribeSObjectResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeSObjectResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

fields

Follow `fields` with a field member variable name or with the `getMap` method.

fieldSets

Follow `fieldSets` with a field set name or with the `getMap` method.

getChildRelationships()

Returns a list of child relationships, which are the names of the sObjects that have a foreign key to the sObject being described.

getDefaultImplementation()

Reserved for future use.

getHasSubtypes()

Reserved for future use.

getImplementedBy()

Reserved for future use.

getImplementsInterfaces()

Reserved for future use.

getIsInterface()

Reserved for future use.

getKeyPrefix()

Returns the three-character prefix code for the object. Record IDs are prefixed with three-character codes that specify the type of the object (for example, accounts have a prefix of `001` and opportunities have a prefix of `006`).

getLabel()

Returns the object's label, which may or may not match the object name.

getLabelPlural()

Returns the object's plural label, which may or may not match the object name.

getLocalName()

Returns the name of the object, similar to the `getName` method. However, if the object is part of the current namespace, the namespace portion of the name is omitted.

getName()

Returns the name of the object.

getRecordTypeInfos()

Returns a list of the record types supported by this object. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this list.

getRecordTypeInfosByDeveloperName()

Returns a map that matches developer names to their associated record type. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

getRecordTypeInfosById()

Returns a map that matches record IDs to their associated record types. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

getRecordTypeInfosByName()

Returns a map that matches record labels to their associated record type. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

getSObjectDescribeOption()

Returns the effective describe option used by the system for the SObject.

getSobjectType()

Returns the Schema.SObjectType object for the sObject. You can use this to create a similar sObject.

isAccessible()

Returns `true` if the current user can see this object, `false` otherwise.

isCreateable()

Returns `true` if the object can be created by the current user, `false` otherwise.

isCustom()

Returns `true` if the object is a custom object, `false` if it is a standard object.

isCustomSetting()

Returns `true` if the object is a custom setting, `false` otherwise.

isDeletable()

Returns `true` if the object can be deleted by the current user, `false` otherwise.

isDeprecatedAndHidden()

Reserved for future use.

isFeedEnabled()

Returns `true` if Chatter feeds are enabled for the object, `false` otherwise. This method is only available for Apex classes and triggers saved using SalesforceAPI version 19.0 and later.

isMergeable()

Returns `true` if the object can be merged with other objects of its type by the current user, `false` otherwise. `true` is returned for leads, contacts, and accounts.

isMruEnabled()

Returns `true` if Most Recently Used (MRU) list functionality is enabled for the object, `false` otherwise.

isQueryable()

Returns `true` if the object can be queried by the current user, `false` otherwise

isSearchable()

Returns `true` if the object can be searched by the current user, `false` otherwise.

isUndeletable()

Returns `true` if the object can be undeleted by the current user, `false` otherwise.

isUpdateable()

Returns `true` if the object can be updated by the current user, `false` otherwise.

fields

Follow `fields` with a field member variable name or with the `getMap` method.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectTypeFields fields()
```

Return Value

Type: The return value is a special data type. See the example to learn how to use `fields`.

Usage

Note: When you describe sObjects and their fields from within an Apex class, custom fields of new field types are returned regardless of the API version that the class is saved in. If a field type, such as the geolocation field type, is available only in a recent API version, components of a geolocation field are returned even if the class is saved in an earlier API version.

Example

```
Schema.DescribeFieldResult dfr = Schema.SObjectType.Account.fields.Name;
```

To get a custom field name, specify the custom field name.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Using Field Tokens

Apex Developer Guide: Describing sObjects Using Schema Method

Apex Developer Guide: Understanding Apex Describe Information

`fieldSets`

Follow `fieldSets` with a field set name or with the `getMap` method.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectTypeFields fieldSets()
```

Return Value

Type: The return value is a special data type. See the example to learn how to use `fieldSets`.

Example

```
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult d =
  Account.sObjectType.getDescribe();
Map<String, Schema.FieldSet> FsMap =
  d.fieldSets.getMap();
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Using Field Tokens

Apex Developer Guide: Describing sObjects Using Schema Method

Apex Developer Guide: Understanding Apex Describe Information

getChildRelationships()

Returns a list of child relationships, which are the names of the sObjects that have a foreign key to the sObject being described.

Signature

```
public Schema.ChildRelationship getChildRelationships()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.ChildRelationship>

Example

For example, the Account object includes `Contacts` and `Opportunities` as child relationships.

getDefaultImplementation()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public String getDefaultImplementation()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getHasSubtypes()

Reserved for future use.

To check if Person Accounts are enabled for the current org, use this code snippet:

```
Schema.SObjectType.Account.fields.getMap().containsKey( 'isPersonAccount' );
```

Signature

```
public Boolean getHasSubtypes()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getImplementedBy()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public String getImplementedBy()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getImplementsInterfaces()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public String getImplementsInterfaces()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getIsInterface()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public Boolean getIsInterface()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getKeyPrefix()

Returns the three-character prefix code for the object. Record IDs are prefixed with three-character codes that specify the type of the object (for example, accounts have a prefix of `001` and opportunities have a prefix of `006`).

Signature

```
public String getKeyPrefix()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The DescribeSobjectResult object returns a value for objects that have a stable prefix. For object types that do not have a stable or predictable prefix, this field is blank. Client applications that rely on these codes can use this way of determining object type to ensure forward compatibility.

getLabel()

Returns the object's label, which may or may not match the object name.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The object's label might not always match the object name. For example, an organization in the medical industry might change the label for Account to Patient. This label is then used in the Salesforce user interface. See the Salesforce online help for more information.

getLabelPlural()

Returns the object's plural label, which may or may not match the object name.

Signature

```
public String getLabelPlural()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The object's plural label might not always match the object name. For example, an organization in the medical industry might change the plural label for Account to Patients. This label is then used in the Salesforce user interface. See the Salesforce online help for more information.

getLocalName()

Returns the name of the object, similar to the `getName` method. However, if the object is part of the current namespace, the namespace portion of the name is omitted.

Signature

```
public String getLocalName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getName()

Returns the name of the object.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getRecordTypeInfos()

Returns a list of the record types supported by this object. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this list.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.RecordTypeInfo> getRecordTypeInfos()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.RecordTypeInfo>

getRecordTypeInfosByDeveloperName()

Returns a map that matches developer names to their associated record type. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

Signature

```
public Map<String, Schema.RecordTypeInfo> getRecordTypeInfosByDeveloperName()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, Schema.RecordTypeInfo>

getRecordTypeInfosById()

Returns a map that matches record IDs to their associated record types. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

Signature

```
public Schema.RecordTypeInfo getRecordTypeInfosById()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<ID, Schema.RecordTypeInfo>

getRecordTypeInfosByName()

Returns a map that matches record labels to their associated record type. The current user is not required to have access to a record type to see it in this map.

Signature

```
public Schema.RecordTypeInfo getRecordTypeInfosByName()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, Schema.RecordTypeInfo>

getSObjectDescribeOption()

Returns the effective describe option used by the system for the SObject.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectDescribeOptions getSObjectDescribeOption()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectDescribeOptions

Valid values are:

- `SObjectDescribeOptions.FULL`: Indicates eager-load all elements of the describe, including child relationships, up-front at the time of method invocation.
- `SObjectDescribeOptions.DEFERRED`: Indicates lazy-load child relationships. This means that all child relationships will not be loaded at the time of first invocation of the method.

getSobjectType()

Returns the Schema.SObjectType object for the sObject. You can use this to create a similar sObject.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSobjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

isAccessible()

Returns `true` if the current user can see this object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAccessible()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isCreateable()

Returns `true` if the object can be created by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCreateable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isCustom()

Returns `true` if the object is a custom object, `false` if it is a standard object.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCustom()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isCustomSetting()

Returns `true` if the object is a custom setting, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCustomSetting()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isDeletable()

Returns `true` if the object can be deleted by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDeletable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isDeprecatedAndHidden()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDeprecatedAndHidden()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isFeedEnabled()

Returns `true` if Chatter feeds are enabled for the object, `false` otherwise. This method is only available for Apex classes and triggers saved using SalesforceAPI version 19.0 and later.

Signature

```
public Boolean isFeedEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isMergeable()

Returns `true` if the object can be merged with other objects of its type by the current user, `false` otherwise. `true` is returned for leads, contacts, and accounts.

Signature

```
public Boolean isMergeable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isMruEnabled()

Returns `true` if Most Recently Used (MRU) list functionality is enabled for the object, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isMruEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isQueryable()

Returns `true` if the object can be queried by the current user, `false` otherwise

Signature

```
public Boolean isQueryable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isSearchable()`

Returns `true` if the object can be searched by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSearchable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isUndeletable()`

Returns `true` if the object can be undeleted by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isUndeletable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isUpdateable()`

Returns `true` if the object can be updated by the current user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isUpdateable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DescribeTabResult Class

Contains tab metadata information for a tab in a standard or custom app available in the Salesforce user interface.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `getTabs` method of the `Schema.DescribeTabSetResult` returns a list of `Schema.DescribeTabResult` objects that describe the tabs of one app.

The methods in the `Schema.DescribeTabResult` class can be called using their property counterparts. For each method starting with `get`, you can omit the `get` prefix and the ending parentheses `()` to call the property counterpart. For example, `tabResultObj.label` is equivalent to `tabResultObj.getLabel()`. Similarly, for each method starting with `is`, omit the `is` prefix and the ending parentheses `()`. For example, `tabResultObj.isCustom` is equivalent to `tabResultObj.custom`.

DescribeTabResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeTabResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getColors()
Returns a list of color metadata information for all colors associated with this tab. Each color is associated with a theme and context.

getIconUrl()
Returns the URL for the main 32 x 32-pixel icon for a tab. This icon corresponds to the current theme (theme3) and appears next to the heading at the top of most pages.

getIcons()
Returns a list of icon metadata information for all icons associated with this tab. Each icon is associated with a theme and context.

getLabel()
Returns the display label of this tab.

getMiniIconUrl()
Returns the URL for the 16 x 16-pixel icon that represents a tab. This icon corresponds to the current theme (theme3) and appears in related lists and other locations.

getSobjectName()
Returns the name of the sObject that is primarily displayed on this tab (for tabs that display a particular SObject).

getUrl()
Returns a fully qualified URL for viewing this tab.

isCustom()
Returns `true` if this is a custom tab, or `false` if this is a standard tab.

`getColors()`

Returns a list of color metadata information for all colors associated with this tab. Each color is associated with a theme and context.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeColorResult> getColors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeColorResult>

getIconUrl()

Returns the URL for the main 32 x 32-pixel icon for a tab. This icon corresponds to the current theme (theme3) and appears next to the heading at the top of most pages.

Signature

```
public String getIconUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getIcons()

Returns a list of icon metadata information for all icons associated with this tab. Each icon is associated with a theme and context.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeIconResult> getIcons()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeIconResult>

getLabel()

Returns the display label of this tab.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getMiniIconUrl()

Returns the URL for the 16 x 16-pixel icon that represents a tab. This icon corresponds to the current theme (theme3) and appears in related lists and other locations.

Signature

```
public String getMiniIconUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSobjectName()`

Returns the name of the sObject that is primarily displayed on this tab (for tabs that display a particular SObject).

Signature

```
public String getSobjectName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getUrl()`

Returns a fully qualified URL for viewing this tab.

Signature

```
public String getUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`isCustom()`

Returns `true` if this is a custom tab, or `false` if this is a standard tab.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCustom()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DescribeTabSetResult Class

Contains metadata information about a standard or custom app available in the Salesforce user interface.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

The `Schema.describeTabs` method returns a list of `Schema.DescribeTabSetResult` objects that describe standard and custom apps.

The methods in the `Schema.DescribeTabSetResult` class can be called using their property counterparts. For each method starting with `get`, you can omit the `get` prefix and the ending parentheses `()` to call the property counterpart. For example,

`tabSetResultObj.label` is equivalent to `tabSetResultObj.getLabel()`. Similarly, for each method starting with `is`, omit the `is` prefix and the ending parentheses `()`. For example, `tabSetResultObj.isSelected` is equivalent to `tabSetResultObj.selected`.

Example

This example shows how to call the `Schema.describeTabs` method to get describe information for all available apps. This example iterates through each describe result and gets more metadata information for the Sales app.

```
// App we're interested to get more info about
String appName = 'Sales';

// Get tab set describes for each app
List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult> tabSetDesc = Schema.describeTabs();

// Iterate through each tab set describe for each app and display the info
for(Schema.DescribeTabSetResult tsr : tabSetDesc) {
    // Get more information for the Sales app
    if (tsr.getLabel() == appName) {
        // Find out if the app is selected
        if (tsr.isSelected()) {
            System.debug('The ' + appName + ' app is selected. ');
        }
        // Get the app's Logo URL and namespace
        String logo = tsr.getLogoUrl();
        System.debug('Logo URL: ' + logo);
        String ns = tsr.getNamespace();
        if (ns == '') {
            System.debug('The ' + appName + ' app has no namespace defined.');
        }
        else {
            System.debug('Namespace: ' + ns);
        }
        // Get the number of tabs
        System.debug('The ' + appName + ' app has ' + tsr.getTabs().size() + ' tabs.');
    }
}

// Example debug statement output
// DEBUG|The Sales app is selected.
// DEBUG|Logo URL: https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/seasonLogos/2014_winter_aloha.png
// DEBUG|The Sales app has no namespace defined.
// DEBUG|The Sales app has 14 tabs.
```

DescribeTabSetResult Methods

The following are methods for `DescribeTabSetResult`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDescription()

Returns the display description for the standard or custom app.

getLabel()
Returns the display label for the standard or custom app.

getLogoUrl()
Returns a fully qualified URL to the logo image associated with the standard or custom app.

getNamespace()
Returns the developer namespace prefix of a Salesforce AppExchange managed package.

getTabs()
Returns metadata information about the standard or custom app's displayed tabs.

isSelected()
Returns `true` if this standard or custom app is the user's currently selected app. Otherwise, returns `false`.

`getDescription()`

Returns the display description for the standard or custom app.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLabel()`

Returns the display label for the standard or custom app.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The display label changes when tabs are renamed in the Salesforce user interface. See the Salesforce online help for more information.

`getLogoUrl()`

Returns a fully qualified URL to the logo image associated with the standard or custom app.

Signature

```
public String getLogoUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getNamespace()`

Returns the developer namespace prefix of a Salesforce AppExchange managed package.

Signature

```
public String getNamespace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This namespace prefix corresponds to the namespace prefix of the Developer Edition organization that was enabled to allow publishing a managed package. This method applies to a custom app containing a set of tabs and installed as part of a managed package.

`getTabs()`

Returns metadata information about the standard or custom app's displayed tabs.

Signature

```
public List<Schema.DescribeTabResult> getTabs()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeTabResult>

`isSelected()`

Returns `true` if this standard or custom app is the user's currently selected app. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSelected()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DisplayType Enum

A `Schema.DisplayType` enum value is returned by the field describe result's `getType` method.

Namespace

Schema

Type Field Value	What the Field Object Contains
address	Address values
anytype	Any value of the following types: String, Picklist, Boolean, Integer, Double, Percent, ID, Date, DateTime, URL, or Email.
base64	Base64-encoded arbitrary binary data (of type base64Binary)
Boolean	Boolean (true or false) values
Combobox	Comboboxes, which provide a set of enumerated values and allow the user to specify a value not in the list
Currency	Currency values
DataCategoryGroupReference	Reference to a data category group or a category unique name
Date	Date values
DateTime	DateTime values
Double	Double values
Email	Email addresses
EncryptedString	Encrypted string
ID	Primary key field for an object
Integer	Integer values
Location	Location values, including latitude and longitude.
Long	Long values
MultiPicklist	Multi-select picklists, which provide a set of enumerated values from which multiple values can be selected
Percent	Percent values
Phone	Phone numbers. Values can include alphabetic characters. Client applications are responsible for phone number formatting.
Picklist	Single-select picklists, which provide a set of enumerated values from which only one value can be selected
Reference	Cross-references to a different object, analogous to a foreign key field
String	String values
TextArea	String values that are displayed as multiline text fields
Time	Time values
URL	URL values that are displayed as hyperlinks

Usage

For more information, see Field Types in the *Object Reference for Salesforce*. For more information about the methods shared by all enums, see Enum Methods.

FieldDescribeOptions Enum

A `Schema.FieldDescribeOptions` enum value is a parameter in the `SObjectType.getDescribe` method.

Usage

For more information about the method using this enum, see `getDescribe(options)`.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Schema.FieldDescribeOptions` enum.

Value	Description
`DEFAULT`	Compute context-specific, describe field results.
`FULL_DESCRIBE`	Compute all aspects of describe field results.

FieldSet Class

Contains methods for discovering and retrieving the details of field sets created on sObjects.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Use the methods in the `Schema.FieldSet` class to discover the fields contained within a field set, and get details about the field set itself, such as the name, namespace, label, and so on. The following example shows how to get a collection of field set describe result objects for an sObject. The key of the returned Map is the field set name, and the value is the corresponding field set describe result.

```
Map<String, Schema.FieldSet> FsMap =
    Schema.SObjectType.Account.fieldSets.getMap();
```

Field sets are also available from sObject describe results. The following lines of code are equivalent to the prior sample:

```
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult d =
  Account.sObjectType.getDescribe();
Map<String, Schema.FieldSet> FsMap =
  d.fieldSets.getMap();
```

To work with an individual field set, you can access it via the map of field sets on an sObject or, when you know the name of the field set in advance, using an explicit reference to the field set. The following two lines of code retrieve the same field set:

```
Schema.FieldSet fs1 = Schema.SObjectType.Account.fieldSets.getMap().get('field_set_name');
Schema.FieldSet fs2 = Schema.SObjectType.Account.fieldSets.field_set_name;
```

Example: Displaying a Field Set on a Visualforce Page

This sample uses `Schema.FieldSet` and `Schema.FieldSetMember` methods to dynamically get all the fields in the Dimensions field set for the Merchandise custom object. The list of fields is then used to construct a SOQL query that ensures those fields are available for display. The Visualforce page uses the `MerchandiseDetails` class as its controller.

```
public class MerchandiseDetails {

    public Merchandise__c merch { get; set; }

    public MerchandiseDetails() {
        this.merch = getMerchandise();
    }

    public List<Schema.FieldSetMember> getFields() {
        return SObjectType.Merchandise__c.FieldSets.Dimensions.getFields();
    }

    private Merchandise__c getMerchandise() {
        String query = 'SELECT ';
        for(Schema.FieldSetMember f : this.getFields()) {
            query += f.getFieldPath() + ', ';
        }
        query += 'Id, Name FROM Merchandise__c LIMIT 1';
        return Database.query(query);
    }
}
```

The Visualforce page using the above controller is simple:

```
<apex:page controller="MerchandiseDetails">
    <apex:form >

      <apex:pageBlock title="Product Details">
          <apex:pageBlockSection title="Product">
              <apex:inputField value="{!merch.Name}"/>
          </apex:pageBlockSection>

          <apex:pageBlockSection title="Dimensions">
              <apex:repeat value="{!fields}" var="f">
                  <apex:inputField value="{!merch[f.fieldPath]}"
                      required="{!OR(f.required, f.dbrequired)}"/>
              </apex:repeat>
          </apex:pageBlockSection>

        </apex:pageBlock>
```

```
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

One thing to note about the above markup is the expression used to determine if a field on the form should be indicated as being a required field. A field in a field set can be required by either the field set definition, or the field's own definition. The expression handles both cases.

FieldSet Methods

The following are methods for `FieldSet`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDescription()
Returns the field set's description.

getFields()
Returns a list of `Schema.FieldSetMember` objects for the fields making up the field set.

getLabel()
Returns the translation of the text label that is displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface.

getName()
Returns the field set's name.

getNamespace()
Returns the field set's namespace.

getSObjectType()
Returns the `Schema.sObjectType` of the sObject containing the field set definition.

`getDescription()`

Returns the field set's description.

Signature

```
public String getDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

Usage

Description is a required field for a field set, intended to describe the context and content of the field set. It's often intended for administrators who might be configuring a field set defined in a managed package, rather than for end users.

`getFields()`

Returns a list of `Schema.FieldSetMember` objects for the fields making up the field set.

Signature

```
public List<FieldSetMember> getFields()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.FieldSetMember>

`getLabel()`

Returns the translation of the text label that is displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

`getName()`

Returns the field set's name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

`getNamespace()`

Returns the field set's namespace.

Signature

```
public String getNamespace()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

Usage

The returned namespace is an empty string if your organization hasn't set a namespace, and the field set is defined in your organization. Otherwise, it's the namespace of your organization, or the namespace of the managed package containing the field set.

`getSObjectType()`

Returns the `Schema.sObjectType` of the sObject containing the field set definition.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSObjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: `Schema.SObjectType`

FieldSetMember Class

Contains methods for accessing the metadata for field set member fields.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Use the methods in the `Schema.FieldSetMember` class to get details about fields contained within a field set, such as the field label, type, a dynamic SOQL-ready field path, and so on. The following example shows how to get a collection of field set member describe result objects for a specific field set on an sObject:

```
List<Schema.FieldSetMember> fields =
    Schema.SObjectType.Account.fieldSets.getMap().get('field_set_name').getFields();
```

If you know the name of the field set in advance, you can access its fields more directly using an explicit reference to the field set:

```
List<Schema.FieldSetMember> fields =
    Schema.SObjectType.Account.fieldSets.field_set_name.getFields();
```

SEE ALSO:

FieldSet Class

FieldSetMember Methods

The following are methods for `FieldSetMember`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDBRequired()

Returns `true` if the field is required by the field's definition in its sObject, otherwise, `false`.

getFieldPath()

Returns a field path string in a format ready to be used in a dynamic SOQL query.

getLabel()

Returns the text label that's displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface.

getRequired()
Returns `true` if the field is required by the field set, otherwise, `false`.

getType()
Returns the field's Apex data type.

getSObjectField()
Returns the token for this field.

getDBRequired()

Returns `true` if the field is required by the field's definition in its sObject, otherwise, `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean getDBRequired()
```

Return Value

Type: `Boolean`

getFieldPath()

Returns a field path string in a format ready to be used in a dynamic SOQL query.

Signature

```
public String getFieldPath()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

Example

See Displaying a Field Set on a Visualforce Page for an example of how to use this method.

getLabel()

Returns the text label that's displayed next to the field in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: `String`

getRequired()

Returns `true` if the field is required by the field set, otherwise, `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean getRequired()
```

Return Value

Type: `Boolean`

`getType()`

Returns the field's Apex data type.

Signature

```
public Schema.DisplayType getType()
```

Return Value

Type: `Schema.DisplayType`

`getSObjectField()`

Returns the token for this field.

Signature

```
public Schema.sObjectField getSObjectField()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectField

PicklistEntry Class

Represents a picklist entry.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

Picklist fields contain a list of one or more items from which a user chooses a single item. They display as drop-down lists in the Salesforce user interface. One of the items can be configured as the default item.

A `Schema.PicklistEntry` object is returned from the field describe result using the `getPicklistValues` method. For example:

```
Schema.DescribeFieldResult F = Account.Industry.getDescribe();
List<Schema.PicklistEntry> P = F.getPicklistValues();
```

PicklistEntry Methods

The following are methods for `PicklistEntry`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLabel()
Returns the display name of this item in the picklist.

getValue()
Returns the value of this item in the picklist.

isActive()
Returns `true` if this item must be displayed in the drop-down list for the picklist field in the user interface, `false` otherwise.

isDefaultValue()
Returns `true` if this item is the default value for the picklist, `false` otherwise. Only one item in a picklist can be designated as the default.

`getLabel()`

Returns the display name of this item in the picklist.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value of this item in the picklist.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`isActive()`

Returns `true` if this item must be displayed in the drop-down list for the picklist field in the user interface, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isActive()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isDefaultValue()`

Returns `true` if this item is the default value for the picklist, `false` otherwise. Only one item in a picklist can be designated as the default.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

RecordTypeInfo Class

Contains methods for accessing record type information for an sObject with associated record types.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

A RecordTypeInfo object is returned from the sObject describe result using the `getRecordTypeInfos` method. For example:

```
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult R = Account.SObjectType.getDescribe();
List<Schema.RecordTypeInfo> RT = R.getRecordTypeInfos();
```

In addition to the `getRecordTypeInfos` method, you can use the `getRecordTypeInfosById` and the `getRecordTypeInfosByName` methods. These methods return maps that associate RecordTypeInfo with record IDs and record labels, respectively.

Example

The following example assumes at least one record type has been created for the Account object:

```
RecordType rt = [SELECT Id,Name FROM RecordType WHERE SobjectType='Account' LIMIT 1];
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult d = Schema.SObjectType.Account;
Map<Id,Schema.RecordTypeInfo> rtMapById = d.getRecordTypeInfosById();
Schema.RecordTypeInfo rtById =  rtMapById.get(rt.id);
Map<String,Schema.RecordTypeInfo> rtMapByName = d.getRecordTypeInfosByName();
Schema.RecordTypeInfo rtByName =  rtMapByName.get(rt.name);
System.assertEquals(rtById,rtByName);
```

RecordTypeInfo Methods

The following are methods for `RecordTypeInfo`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDeveloperName()
Returns the developer name for this record type.

getName()
Returns the UI label of this record type. The label can be translated into any language that Salesforce supports.

getRecordTypeId()
Returns the ID of this record type.

isActive()
Returns `true` if this record type is active, `false` otherwise.

isAvailable()
Returns `true` if this record type is available to the current user, `false` otherwise. Use this method to display a list of available record types to the user when he or she is creating a new record.

isDefaultRecordTypeMapping()
Returns `true` if this is the default record type for the user, `false` otherwise.

isMaster()
Returns `true` if this is the master record type and `false` otherwise. The master record type is the default record type that's used when a record has no custom record type associated with it.

getDeveloperName()

Returns the developer name for this record type.

Signature

```
public String getDeveloperName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getName()

Returns the UI label of this record type. The label can be translated into any language that Salesforce supports.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getRecordTypeId()

Returns the ID of this record type.

Signature

```
public ID getRecordTypeId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`isActive()`

Returns `true` if this record type is active, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isActive()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isAvailable()`

Returns `true` if this record type is available to the current user, `false` otherwise. Use this method to display a list of available record types to the user when he or she is creating a new record.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAvailable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isDefaultRecordTypeMapping()`

Returns `true` if this is the default record type for the user, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDefaultRecordTypeMapping()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isMaster()`

Returns `true` if this is the master record type and `false` otherwise. The master record type is the default record type that's used when a record has no custom record type associated with it.

Signature

```
public Boolean isMaster()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

SOAPType Enum

A `Schema.SOAPType` enum value is returned by the field describe result `getSoapType` method.

Namespace

Schema

Type Field Value	What the Field Object Contains
`anytype`	Any value of the following types: `String`, `Boolean`, `Integer`, `Double`, `ID`, `Date` or `DateTime`.
`base64binary`	Base64-encoded arbitrary binary data (of type base64Binary)
`Boolean`	Boolean (`true` or `false`) values
`Date`	Date values
`DateTime`	DateTime values
`Double`	Double values
`ID`	Primary key field for an object
`Integer`	Integer values
`String`	String values
`Time`	Time values

Usage

For more information, see SOAPTypes in the *SOAP API Developer Guide*. For more information about the methods shared by all enums, see Enum Methods.

SObjectDescribeOptions Enum

A `Schema.SObjectDescribeOptions` enum value is a parameter in the `SObjectType.getDescribe` method.

Usage

For more information about the method using this enum, see `getDescribe(options)`.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Schema.SObjectDescribeOptions` enum.

Value	Description
`DEFAULT`	Either eager-load or lazy-load depending on the API version.
`DEFERRED`	Lazy-load child relationships; do not load all child relationships at the time of first invocation of the method.
`FULL`	Eager-load all elements of the describe, including child relationships, up-front at the time of method invocation.

See `getDescribe(options)`.

SObjectField Class

A `Schema.sObjectField` object is returned from the field describe result using the `getController` and `getSObjectField` methods.

Namespace

Schema

Example

```
Schema.DescribeFieldResult F = Account.Industry.getDescribe();
Schema.sObjectField T = F.getSObjectField();
```

sObjectField Methods

The following are instance methods for `sObjectField`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDescribe()
Returns the describe field result for this field.

getDescribe(options)
Returns the describe field result for this field. This method also provides an option to get all the describe field results for an object.

`getDescribe()`

Returns the describe field result for this field.

Signature

```
public Schema.DescribeFieldResult getDescribe()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.DescribeFieldResult

`getDescribe(options)`

Returns the describe field result for this field. This method also provides an option to get all the describe field results for an object.

Signature

```
public Schema.DescribeFieldResult getDescribe(Object options)
```

Parameters

`options`
Type: Object

Use this parameter to pass `FieldDescribeOptions.FULL_DESCRIBE` when a subset of system objects could have different results for picklist values based on the context they're invoked in. This parameter computes all aspects of describe field results.

For example, `AIConversationContext.PersonType` field is a picklist that contains a list of accessible object types.

Return Value

Type: Schema.DescribeFieldResult

SObjectType Class

A `Schema.sObjectType` object is returned from the field describe result using the `getReferenceTo` method, or from the sObject describe result using the `getSObjectType` method.

Namespace

Schema

Usage

```
Schema.DescribeFieldResult F = Account.Industry.getDescribe();
List<Schema.sObjectType> P = F.getReferenceTo();
```

SObjectType Methods

The following are methods for `SObjectType`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDescribe()
Returns the describe sObject result for this field.

getDescribe(options)

Returns the describe sObject result for this field; the parameter value determines whether all child relationships are loaded up-front, or not.

newSObject()

Constructs a new sObject of this type.

newSObject(id)

Constructs a new sObject of this type, with the specified ID.

newSObject(recordTypeId, loadDefaults)

Constructs a new sObject of this type, and optionally, of the specified record type ID and with default custom field values.

`getDescribe()`

Returns the describe sObject result for this field.

Signature

```
public Schema.DescribeSObjectResult getDescribe()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.DescribeSObjectResult

`getDescribe(options)`

Returns the describe sObject result for this field; the parameter value determines whether all child relationships are loaded up-front, or not.

Signature

```
public Schema.DescribeSObjectResult getDescribe(Object options)
```

Parameters

`options`

Type: Object

The parameter values determine how the elements of the describe operation are loaded.

- Use `SObjectDescribeOptions.FULL` to eager-load all elements of the describe, including child relationships, up-front at the time of method invocation. This describe guarantees fully coherent results, even if the describe object is passed to another namespace, API version, or other Apex context that may have different results when generating describe attributes.
- Use `SObjectDescribeOptions.DEFERRED` to enable lazy initialization of describe attributes on first use. This means that all child relationships will not be loaded at the time of first invocation of the method.
- Use `SObjectDescribeOptions.DEFAULT` to default to either eager-load or lazy-load depending on the API version.

The type of describe operation, as determined by the parameter value is depicted in this table.

Table 1: Type of Load for SObjectType.getDescribe()

Parameter Value	API Version 43.0 and Earlier	API Version 44.0 and Later
Full	Eager	Eager
Deferred	Lazy	Lazy
Default	Lazy	Lazy

Return Value

Type: Schema.DescribeSObjectResult

`newSObject()`

Constructs a new sObject of this type.

Signature

```
public sObject newSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: sObject

Example

For an example, see Dynamic DML.

`newSObject(id)`

Constructs a new sObject of this type, with the specified ID.

Signature

```
public sObject newSObject(ID id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: sObject

Usage

For the argument, pass the ID of an existing record in the database.

After you create a new sObject, the sObject returned has all fields set to `null`. You can set any updateable field to desired values and then update the record in the database. Only the fields you set new values for are updated and all other fields which are not system fields are preserved.

`newSObject(recordTypeId, loadDefaults)`

Constructs a new sObject of this type, and optionally, of the specified record type ID and with default custom field values.

Signature

```
public sObject newSObject(ID recordTypeId, Boolean loadDefaults)
```

Parameters

`recordTypeId`
Type: ID

Specifies the record type ID of the sObject to create. If no record type exists for this sObject, use `null`. If the sObject has record types and you specify `null`, the default record type is used.

`loadDefaults`
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether to populate custom fields with their predefined default values (`true`) or not (`false`).

Return Value

Type: sObject

Usage

- For required fields that have no default values, make sure to provide a value before inserting the new sObject. Otherwise, the insertion results in an error. An example is the Account Name field or a master-detail relationship field.
- Since picklists and multi-select picklists can have default values specified per record type, this method populates the default value corresponding to the record type specified.
- If fields have no predefined default values and the *`loadDefaults`* argument is `true`, this method creates the sObject with field values of `null`.
- If the *`loadDefaults`* argument is `false`, this method creates the sObject with field values of `null`.
- This method populates read-only custom fields of the new sObject with default values. You can then insert the new sObject with the read-only fields, even though these fields cannot be edited after they're inserted.
- If a custom field is marked as unique and also provides a default value, inserting more than one new sObject will cause a run-time exception because of duplicate field values.

To learn more about default field values, see "Default Field Values" in the Salesforce online help.

Example: Creating New sObject with Default Values

This sample creates an account with any default values populated for its custom fields, if any, using the `newSObject` method. It also creates a second account for a specific record type. For both accounts, the sample sets the Name field, which is a required field that doesn't have a default value, before inserting the new accounts.

```
// Create an account with predefined default values
Account acct = (Account)Account.sObjectType.newSObject(null, true);
// Provide a value for Name
acct.Name = 'Acme';
// Insert new account
insert acct;

// This is for record type RT1 of Account
ID rtId = [SELECT Id FROM RecordType WHERE sObjectType='Account' AND Name='RT1'].Id;
Account acct2 = (Account)Account.sObjectType.newSObject(rtId, true);
// Provide a value for Name
acct2.Name = 'Acme2';
// Insert new account
insert acct2;
```

Search Namespace

The `Search` namespace provides classes for getting search results and suggestion results.

The following are the classes in the `Search` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

KnowledgeSuggestionFilter Class

Filter settings that narrow the results from a call to `System.Search.suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, options)` when the SOSL search query contains a KnowledgeArticleVersion object.

QuestionSuggestionFilter Class

The `Search.QuestionSuggestionFilter` class filters results from a call to `System.Search.suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, options)` when the SOSL `searchQuery` contains a `FeedItem` object.

SearchResult Class

A wrapper object that contains an sObject and search metadata.

SearchResults Class

Wraps the results returned by the `Search.find(String)` method.

SuggestionOption Class

Options that narrow record and article suggestion results returned from a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

SuggestionResult Class

A wrapper object that contains an sObject.

SuggestionResults Class

Wraps the results returned by the `Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)` method.

SEE ALSO:

find(searchQuery)

suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, suggestions)

KnowledgeSuggestionFilter Class

Filter settings that narrow the results from a call to `System.Search.suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, options)` when the SOSL search query contains a KnowledgeArticleVersion object.

Namespace

Search

KnowledgeSuggestionFilter Methods

The following are methods for `KnowledgeSuggestionFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addArticleType(articleType)

Adds a filter that narrows suggestion results to display the specified article type. This filter is optional.

addDataCategory(dataCategoryGroupName, dataCategoryName)

Adds a filter that narrows suggestion results to display articles in the specified data category. This filter is optional.

addTopic(topic)

Specifies the article topic to return. This filter is optional.

setChannel(channelName)

Sets a channel to narrow the suggestion results to articles in the specified channel. This filter is optional.

setDataCategories(dataCategoryFilters)

Adds filters that narrow suggestion results to display articles in the specified data categories. Use this method to set multiple data category group and name pairs in one call. This filter is optional.

setLanguage(localeCode)

Sets a language to narrow the suggestion results to display articles in that language. This filter value is required in calls to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

setPublishStatus(publishStatus)

Sets a publish status to narrow the suggestion results to display articles with that status. This filter value is required in calls to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

setValidationStatus(validationStatus)

Sets a validation status to narrow the suggestion results to display articles with that status. This filter is optional.

`addArticleType(articleType)`

Adds a filter that narrows suggestion results to display the specified article type. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addArticleType(String articleType)
```

Parameters

articleType
Type: String

A three-character ID prefix indicating the desired article type.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To add more than 1 article type, call the method multiple times.

addDataCategory(dataCategoryGroupName, dataCategoryName)

Adds a filter that narrows suggestion results to display articles in the specified data category. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addDataCategory(String dataCategoryGroupName, String dataCategoryName)
```

Parameters

dataCategoryGroupName
Type: String

The name of the data category group

dataCategoryName
Type: String

The name of the data category.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To set multiple data categories, call the method multiple times. The name of the data category group and name of the data category for desired articles, expressed as a mapping, for example, `Search.KnowledgeSuggestionFilter.addDataCategory('Regions', 'Asia')`.

addTopic(topic)

Specifies the article topic to return. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addTopic(String topic)
```

Parameters

addTopic
Type: String

The name of the article topic.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To add more than 1 article topic, call the method multiple times.

setChannel(channelName)

Sets a channel to narrow the suggestion results to articles in the specified channel. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setChannel(String channelName)
```

Parameters

channelName
Type: String

The name of a channel. Valid values are:

- `AllChannels`–Visible in all channels the user has access to
- `App`–Visible in the internal Salesforce Knowledge application
- `Pkb`–Visible in the public knowledge base
- `Csp`–Visible in the Customer Portal
- `Prm`–Visible in the Partner Portal

If `channel` isn't specified, the default value is determined by the type of user.

- `Pkb` for a guest user
- `Csp` for a Customer Portal user
- `Prm` for a Partner Portal user
- `App` for any other type of user

If `channel` is specified, the specified value may not be the actual value requested, because of certain requirements.

- For guest, Customer Portal, and Partner Portal users, the specified value must match the default value for each user type. If the values don't match or `AllChannels` is specified, then `App` replaces the specified value.
- For all users other than guest, Customer Portal, and Partner Portal users:
  - If `Pkb`, `Csp`, `Prm`, or `App` are specified, then the specified value is used.

- If `AllChannels` is specified, then `App` replaces the specified value.

Return Value

Type: void

`setDataCategories(dataCategoryFilters)`

Adds filters that narrow suggestion results to display articles in the specified data categories. Use this method to set multiple data category group and name pairs in one call. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setDataCategories(Map dataCategoryFilters)
```

Parameters

`dataCategoryFilters`
Type: Map

A map of data category group and data category name pairs.

Return Value

Type: void

`setLanguage(localeCode)`

Sets a language to narrow the suggestion results to display articles in that language. This filter value is required in calls to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

Signature

```
public void setLanguage(String localeCode)
```

Parameters

`localeCode`
Type: String

A locale code. For example, `'en_US'` (English–United States), or `'es'` (Spanish).

Return Value

Type: void

SEE ALSO:

Supported Locales

`setPublishStatus(publishStatus)`

Sets a publish status to narrow the suggestion results to display articles with that status. This filter value is required in calls to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

Signature

```
public void setPublishStatus(String publishStatus)
```

Parameters

`publishStatus`
Type: String

A publish status. Valid values are:

- `Draft`–Articles aren't published in Salesforce Knowledge.
- `Online`–Articles are published in Salesforce Knowledge.
- `Archived`–Articles aren't published and are available in Archived Articles view.

`setValidationStatus(validationStatus)`

Sets a validation status to narrow the suggestion results to display articles with that status. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setValidationStatus(String validationStatus)
```

Parameters

`validationStatus`
Type: String

An article validation status. These values are available in the `ValidationStatus` field on the KnowledgeArticleVersion object.

Return Value

Type: void

QuestionSuggestionFilter Class

The `Search.QuestionSuggestionFilter` class filters results from a call to `System.Search.suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, options)` when the SOSL `searchQuery` contains a `FeedItem` object.

Namespace

Search

IN THIS SECTION:

QuestionSuggestionFilter Methods

QuestionSuggestionFilter Methods

The following are methods for `QuestionSuggestionFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addGroupId(groupId)

Adds a filter to display questions associated with the single specified group whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

addNetworkId(networkId)

Adds a filter to display questions associated with the single specified network whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

addUserId(userId)

Adds a filter to display questions belonging to the single specified user whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

setGroupIds(groupIds)

Sets a new list of groups to replace the current list of groups where the group IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

setNetworkIds(networkIds)

Sets a new list of networks to replace the current list of networks where the network IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

setTopicId(topicId)

Sets a filter to display questions associated with the single specified topic whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

setUserIds(userIds)

Sets a new list of users to replace the current list of users where the users IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

`addGroupId(groupId)`

Adds a filter to display questions associated with the single specified group whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addGroupId(String groupId)
```

Parameters

`groupId`
Type: String

The ID for a group.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To add more than one group, call the method multiple times.

addNetworkId(networkId)

Adds a filter to display questions associated with the single specified network whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addNetworkId(String networkId)
```

Parameters

networkId
Type: String

The ID of the Experience Cloud site about which you're retrieving this information.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To add more than one network, call the method multiple times.

addUserId(userId)

Adds a filter to display questions belonging to the single specified user whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void addUserId(String userId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: String

The ID for the user.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

To add more than one user, call the method multiple times.

setGroupIds(groupIds)

Sets a new list of groups to replace the current list of groups where the group IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setGroupIds(List<String> groupIds)
```

Parameters

groupIds
Type: List<String>

A list of group IDs.

Return Value

Type: void

setNetworkIds(networkIds)

Sets a new list of networks to replace the current list of networks where the network IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setNetworkIds(List<String> networkIds)
```

Parameters

networkIds
Type: List<String>

A list of network IDs.

Return Value

Type: void

setTopicId(topicId)

Sets a filter to display questions associated with the single specified topic whose ID is passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setTopicId(String topicId)
```

Parameters

topicId
Type: String

The ID for a topic.

Return Value

Type: void

setUserIds(userIds)

Sets a new list of users to replace the current list of users where the users IDs are passed in as an argument. This filter is optional.

Signature

```
public void setUserIds(List<String> userIds)
```

Parameters

userIds
Type: List<String>

A list of user IDs.

Return Value

Type: void

SearchResult Class

A wrapper object that contains an sObject and search metadata.

Namespace

Search

SearchResult Methods

The following are methods for `SearchResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSObject()
Returns an sObject from a SearchResult object.

getSnippet(fieldName)
Returns a snippet from a Case, Feed, or Knowledge Article SearchResult object based on the specified field name.

getSnippet()
Returns a snippet from a SearchResult object based on the default field.

`getSObject()`

Returns an sObject from a SearchResult object.

Signature

```
public SObject getSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: SObject

SEE ALSO:

- find(searchQuery)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Dynamic SOSL

getSnippet(fieldName)

Returns a snippet from a Case, Feed, or Knowledge Article SearchResult object based on the specified field name.

Signature

```
public String getSnippet(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

The field name to use for creating the snippet.

Valid values: `Case.Casenumber`, `FeedPost.Title`, `KnowledgeArticleVersion.Title`

Return Value

Type: String

SEE ALSO:

- find(searchQuery)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Dynamic SOSL

getSnippet()

Returns a snippet from a SearchResult object based on the default field.

Signature

```
public String getSnippet()
```

Return Value

Type: String

SEE ALSO:

- find(searchQuery)
- *Apex Developer Guide*: Dynamic SOSL

SearchResults Class

Wraps the results returned by the `Search.find(String)` method.

Namespace

Search

SearchResults Methods

The following are methods for `SearchResults`.

IN THIS SECTION:

get(sObjectType)
Returns a list of `Search.SearchResult` objects that contain an sObject of the specified type.

`get(sObjectType)`

Returns a list of `Search.SearchResult` objects that contain an sObject of the specified type.

Signature

```
public List<Search.SearchResult> get(String sObjectType)
```

Parameters

`sObjectType`
Type: String

The name of an sObject in the dynamic SOSL query passed to the `Search.find(String)` method.

Return Value

Type: List<Search.SearchResult>

Usage

SOSL queries passed to the `Search.find(String)` method can return results for multiple objects. For example, the query `Search.find('FIND \'map\' IN ALL FIELDS RETURNING Account, Contact, Opportunity')` includes results for 3 objects. You can call `get(string)` to retrieve search results for 1 object at a time. For example, to get results for the Account object, call `Search.SearchResults.get('Account')`.

SEE ALSO:

find(searchQuery)
SearchResult Methods
Apex Developer Guide: Dynamic SOSL

SuggestionOption Class

Options that narrow record and article suggestion results returned from a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

Namespace

Search

SuggestionOption Methods

The following are methods for `SuggestionOption`.

IN THIS SECTION:

setFilter(knowledgeSuggestionFilter)
Set filters that narrow Salesforce Knowledge article results in a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

setLimit(limit)
The maximum number of record or article suggestions to retrieve.

`setFilter(knowledgeSuggestionFilter)`

Set filters that narrow Salesforce Knowledge article results in a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

Signature

```
public void setFilter(Search.KnowledegeSuggestionFilter knowledgeSuggestionFilter)
```

Parameters

knowledgeSuggestionFilter
Type: KnowledgeSuggestionFilter

An object containing filters that narrow the search results.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

```
Search.KnowledgeSuggestionFilter filters = new Search.KnowledgeSuggestionFilter();
filters.setLanguage('en_US');
filters.setPublishStatus('Online');
filters.setChannel('app');

Search.SuggestionOption options = new Search.SuggestionOption();
options.setFilter(filters);
```

```
Search.SuggestionResults suggestionResults = Search.suggest('all', 'KnowledgeArticleVersion',
 options);

for (Search.SuggestionResult searchResult : suggestionResults.getSuggestionResults()) {

  KnowledgeArticleVersion article = (KnowledgeArticleVersion)result.getSObject();
  System.debug(article.title);
}
```

`setLimit(limit)`

The maximum number of record or article suggestions to retrieve.

Signature

```
public void setLimit(Integer limit)
```

Parameters

limit
Type: Integer

The maximum number of record or article suggestions to retrieve.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

By default, the `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)` method returns the 5 most relevant results. However, if your query is broad, it could match more than 5 results. If `Search.SuggestionResults.hasMoreResults()` returns `true`, there are more than 5 results. To retrieve them, call `setLimit(Integer)` to increase the number of suggestions results.

```
Search.SuggestionOption option = new Search.SuggestionOption();
option.setLimit(10);
Search.suggest('my query', 'mySObjectType', option);
```

SuggestionResult Class

A wrapper object that contains an sObject.

Namespace

Search

SuggestionResult Methods

The following are methods for `SuggestionResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSObject()
Returns the sObject from a SuggestionResult object.

getSObject()

Returns the sObject from a SuggestionResult object.

Signature

```
public SObject getSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: SObject

SuggestionResults Class

Wraps the results returned by the `Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)` method.

Namespace

Search

SuggestionResults Methods

The following are methods for `SuggestionResults`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getSuggestionResults()
Returns a list of SuggestionResult objects from the response to a call to `Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

hasMoreResults()
Indicates whether a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)` has more results available than were returned.

getSuggestionResults()

Returns a list of SuggestionResult objects from the response to a call to `Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`.

Signature

```
public List<Search.SuggestionResult> getSuggestionResults()
```

Return Value

Type: List<SuggestionResult>

`hasMoreResults()`

Indicates whether a call to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)` has more results available than were returned.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasMoreResults()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If a limit isn't specified, 5 records are returned in calls to `System.Search.suggest(String, String, Search.SuggestionOption)`. If there are more suggested records than the limit specified, a call to `hasMoreResults()` returns `true`.

Sfc Namespace

The Sfc namespace contains classes used in Salesforce Files.

The following are the classes in the `Sfc` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

ContentDownloadContext Enum
This enum specifies the download context.

ContentDownloadHandler Class
Use ContentDownloadHandler to define a custom download handler that controls how content is downloaded.

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Interface
Use this interface to provide a class factory that Salesforce can call to create instances of your custom ContentDownloadHandler.

ContentDownloadContext Enum

This enum specifies the download context.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `Sfc.ContentDownloadContext` enum.

Value	Description
`CHATTER`	Download from Chatter.

Value	Description
`CONTENT`	Default value. Downloads from the Salesforce CRM Content product.
`DELIVERY`	Download of a content delivery.
`MOBILE`	Download from a mobile device.
`REST_API`	Download from the Connect API (`/connect/files/${fileId}/content` endpoint).
`RETRIEVE`	Retrieve VersionData from SObject API.
`S1`	Download from Salesforce mobile.
`SOQL`	Select VersionData from SOQL.

ContentDownloadHandler Class

Use ContentDownloadHandler to define a custom download handler that controls how content is downloaded.

Namespace

Sfc on page 2390

IN THIS SECTION:

ContentDownloadHandler Properties

ContentDownloadHandler Properties

The following are properties for `ContentDownloadHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

downloadErrorMessage
A customized error message explaining why the download isn't allowed.

isDownloadAllowed
Indicates whether or not download is allowed.

redirectUrl
The URL the user should be redirected to, for applying Information Rights Management (IRM) control, virus scanning, or other behavior.

`downloadErrorMessage`

A customized error message explaining why the download isn't allowed.

Signature

```
public String downloadErrorMessage {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

This message is used if a `redirectUrl` is not provided. If the download is not allowed, Salesforce will throw a `ContentCustomizedDownloadException` exception that contains the `downloadErrorMessage`.

`isDownloadAllowed`

Indicates whether or not download is allowed.

Signature

```
public Boolean isDownloadAllowed {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Boolean

`redirectUrl`

The URL the user should be redirected to, for applying Information Rights Management (IRM) control, virus scanning, or other behavior.

Signature

```
public String redirectUrl {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

The URL must be a valid relative URL. For example, the redirect can be a custom Visualforce page such as "/apex/IRMControl". URLs with no path, such as "www.domain.com", will result in an `InvalidParameterValueException`.

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Interface

Use this interface to provide a class factory that Salesforce can call to create instances of your custom ContentDownloadHandler.

Namespace

Sfc on page 2390

Usage

ContentDownloadHandler getContentDownloadHandler(List<ID> ids, ContentDownloadContext context);

IN THIS SECTION:

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Methods

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Example Implementation

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Methods

The following are methods for `ContentDownloadHandlerFactory`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getContentDownloadHandler(var1, var2)
Returns a ContentDownloadHandler for a given list of content IDs and a download context.

`getContentDownloadHandler(var1, var2)`

Returns a ContentDownloadHandler for a given list of content IDs and a download context.

Signature

```
public Sfc.ContentDownloadHandler getContentDownloadHandler(List<Id> var1,
Sfc.ContentDownloadContext var2)
```

Parameters

var1
Type: List<Id>

var2
Type: Sfc.ContentDownloadContext on page 2390

Return Value

Type: Sfc.ContentDownloadHandler on page 2391

ContentDownloadHandlerFactory Example Implementation

This example creates a class that implements the `Sfc.ContentDownloadHandlerFactory` interface and returns a download handler that blocks downloading content to mobile devices.

```
// Allow customization of the content Download experience
public class ContentDownloadHandlerFactoryImpl implements Sfc.ContentDownloadHandlerFactory
 {

  public Sfc.ContentDownloadHandler getContentDownloadHandler(List<ID> ids,
Sfc.ContentDownloadContext context) {
    Sfc.ContentDownloadHandler contentDownloadHandler = new Sfc.ContentDownloadHandler();


    if(context == Sfc.ContentDownloadContext.MOBILE) {
      contentDownloadHandler.isDownloadAllowed = false;
      contentDownloadHandler.downloadErrorMessage = 'Downloading a file from a mobile
device is not allowed.';
      return contentDownloadHandler;
    }
    contentDownloadHandler.isDownloadAllowed = true;
    return contentDownloadHandler;
```

```
    }
}
```

Sfdc_Checkout Namespace

The Sfdc_Checkout namespace provides an interface and classes for Lightning B2B Commerce apps in Salesforce.

The following are the classes in the `Sfdc_Checkout` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncCartProcessor Interface
Use this interface to implement asynchronous integrations in Lightning B2B Commerce.

B2BCheckoutController Class
Communicate with simple checkout Apex methods to work with data related to B2B Commerce checkout. Currently, the only data obtained is for Delivery Methods.

IntegrationInfo Class
Provides the values that Lightning B2B Commerce Checkout uses to map requests to responses, necessary metadata, and context.

IntegrationStatus Class
Supports synchronous execution of Apex integrations for Lightning B2B Commerce. The implementation must return the status of the execution.

IntegrationStatus.Status Enum
The IntegrationStatus.Status enum describes the status of the current integration.

AsyncCartProcessor Interface

Use this interface to implement asynchronous integrations in Lightning B2B Commerce.

Namespace

Sfdc_Checkout

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncCartProcessor Methods

AsyncCartProcessor Example Implementation

AsyncCartProcessor Methods

The following are methods for `AsyncCartProcessor`.

IN THIS SECTION:

startCartProcessAsync(integrationInfo, cartId)
The startCartProcessAsync method is called asynchronously by the integration framework. Calling this method begins cart processing for Commerce checkout.

`startCartProcessAsync(integrationInfo, cartId)`

The startCartProcessAsync method is called asynchronously by the integration framework. Calling this method begins cart processing for Commerce checkout.

Signature

```
public sfdc_checkout.IntegrationStatus
startCartProcessAsync(sfdc_checkout.IntegrationInfo integrationInfo, Id cartId)
```

Parameters

integrationInfo
Type: IntegrationInfo

Provides values that B2B Commerce checkout APIs use to map requests to responses, necessary metadata, and context.

cartId
Type: Id

ID of the WebCart object.

Return Value

Type: IntegrationStatus

Status of the current integration. Possible values are `SUCCESS` and `FAILED`.

AsyncCartProcessor Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `sfdc_checkout.AsyncCartProcessor` interface.

```
global interface checkout_AsyncCartProcessor {

   //Integration for async processing
   IntegrationStatus startCartProcessAsync(
      IntegrationInfo integrationInfo,
      Id cartId);
}
```

AsyncCartProcessor is a base interface. There are four interfaces that extend it, including CartInventoryValidation, CartPriceCalculations, CartShippingCharges, and CartTaxCalculations. For more information about these interfaces, including code examples and test classes, see Checkout Integrations.

B2BCheckoutController Class

Communicate with simple checkout Apex methods to work with data related to B2B Commerce checkout. Currently, the only data obtained is for Delivery Methods.

Namespace

sfdc_checkout

Usage

You must specify the `sfdc_checkout` namespace when creating an instance of this class.

IN THIS SECTION:

B2BCheckoutController Methods

B2BCheckoutController Methods

The following are methods for `B2BCheckoutController`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDeliveryMethods(activeOrCartId)
Get a list of delivery methods for the provided cartId and the associated cost that are obtained from an external shipping gateway.

`getDeliveryMethods(activeOrCartId)`

Get a list of delivery methods for the provided cartId and the associated cost that are obtained from an external shipping gateway.

Signature

```
public static List<Map<String,ANY>> getDeliveryMethods(String activeOrCartId)
```

Parameters

`activeOrCartId`
Type: String

The current `webCartId` for which a list of delivery methods is needed.

Return Value

Type: List<Map<String,ANY>>

The getDeliveryMethods method returns a list of delivery methods. Each delivery method is a map of key-value pairs. We receive the following keys for each delivery method:

- `carrier`: The name of the shipping carrier. Examples: Fedex and UPS
- `name`: The label of the delivery method. Examples: Ground Shipping and Air Shipping
- `deliveryMethodId`: The unique Id for the deliveryMethod. Example: 2Dmxx000004C92CAF
- `shippingFee`: The cost of the delivery method as provided by the shipping gateway.
- `currencyIsoCode`: The currency in which the cost is calculated. Examples: USD and EUR

IntegrationInfo Class

Provides the values that Lightning B2B Commerce Checkout uses to map requests to responses, necessary metadata, and context.

Namespace

sfdc_checkout on page 2394

Usage

This class provides information about a Lightning B2B Commerce integration. An instance of this class is passed as a parameter into the integration interface.

IN THIS SECTION:

IntegrationInfo Properties

IntegrationInfo Properties

The following are properties for `IntegrationInfo`.

IN THIS SECTION:

integrationId
The unique ID of a Lightning B2B Commerce integration.

jobId
The ID of the job, specific to the Salesforce Background Operation framework.

`integrationId`

The unique ID of a Lightning B2B Commerce integration.

Signature

```
public String integrationId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`jobId`

The ID of the job, specific to the Salesforce Background Operation framework.

Signature

```
public String jobId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

IntegrationStatus Class

Supports synchronous execution of Apex integrations for Lightning B2B Commerce. The implementation must return the status of the execution.

Namespace

sfdc_checkout on page 2394

Usage

You must specify the `sfdc_checkout` namespace when creating an instance of this class.

IN THIS SECTION:

IntegrationStatus Properties

IntegrationStatus Properties

The following are properties for `IntegrationStatus`.

IN THIS SECTION:

status
Indicates the status of the integration process and whether or not it completed successfully.

`status`

Indicates the status of the integration process and whether or not it completed successfully.

Signature

```
public sfdc_checkout.IntegrationStatus.Status status {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: sfdc_checkout.IntegrationStatus.Status on page 2398

IntegrationStatus.Status Enum

The IntegrationStatus.Status enum describes the status of the current integration.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `sfdc_checkout.IntegrationStatus.Status` enum.

Value	Description
`FAILED`	Indicates transient, unknown error, managed by the implementor. The buyer can retry this action.
`SUCCESS`	Indicates the integration executed successfully.

Site Namespace

The `Site` namespace provides an interface for rewriting Sites URLs.

The following is the interface in the `Site` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

UrlRewriter Interface
Enables rewriting Sites URLs.

Site Exceptions
The `Site` namespace contains an exception class.

UrlRewriter Interface

Enables rewriting Sites URLs.

Namespace

Site

Usage

Sites provides built-in logic that helps you display user-friendly URLs and links to site visitors. Create rules to rewrite URL requests typed into the address bar, launched from bookmarks, or linked from external websites. You can also create rules to rewrite the URLs for links within site pages. URL rewriting not only makes URLs more descriptive and intuitive for users, it allows search engines to better index your site pages.

For example, let's say that you have a blog site. Without URL rewriting, a blog entry's URL might look like this:
`https://myblog.my.salesforce-sites.com/posts?id=003D000000Q0PcN`

To rewrite URLs for a site, create an Apex class that maps the original URLs to user-friendly URLs, and then add the Apex class to your site.

UrlRewriter Methods

The following are methods for `UrlRewriter`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

generateUrlFor(salesforceUrls)
Maps a list of Salesforce URLs to a list of user-friendly URLs.

mapRequestUrl(userFriendlyUrl)
Maps a user-friendly URL to a Salesforce URL.

generateUrlFor(salesforceUrls)

Maps a list of Salesforce URLs to a list of user-friendly URLs.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference[] generateUrlFor(System.PageReference[] salesforceUrls)
```

Parameters

salesforceUrls
Type: System.PageReference[]

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference[]

Usage

You can use `List<PageReference>` instead of `PageReference[]`, if you prefer.

Important: The size and order of the input list of Salesforce URLs must exactly correspond to the size and order of the generated list of user-friendly URLs. The `generateUrlFor` method maps input URLs to output URLs based on the order in the lists.

mapRequestUrl(userFriendlyUrl)

Maps a user-friendly URL to a Salesforce URL.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference mapRequestUrl(System.PageReference userFriendlyUrl)
```

Parameters

userFriendlyUrl
Type: System.PageReference

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Site Exceptions

The `Site` namespace contains an exception class.

All exception classes support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. See Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions.

The `Site` namespace contains this exception:

Exception	Description	Methods
`Site.ExternalUserCreateException`	Unable to create external user	Use the `String getMessage()` to get the error message and write it to debug log. Use `List<String> getDisplayMessages()` to get a list of errors displayed to the end user. This exception can't be subclassed or thrown in code.

Support Namespace

The `Support` namespace provides an interface used for Case Feed.

The following is the interface in the `Support` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

EmailTemplateSelector Interface
The `Support.EmailTemplateSelector` interface enables providing default email templates in Case Feed. With default email templates, specified email templates are preloaded for cases based on criteria such as case origin or subject.

MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Interface
The `Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator` interface calculates the time trigger for a milestone.

EmailTemplateSelector Interface

The `Support.EmailTemplateSelector` interface enables providing default email templates in Case Feed. With default email templates, specified email templates are preloaded for cases based on criteria such as case origin or subject.

Namespace

Support

To specify default templates, you must create a class that implements `Support.EmailTemplateSelector`.

When you implement this interface, provide an empty parameterless constructor.

IN THIS SECTION:

EmailTemplateSelector Methods

EmailTemplateSelector Example Implementation

EmailTemplateSelector Methods

The following are methods for `EmailTemplateSelector`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDefaultTemplateId(caseId)
Returns the ID of the email template to preload for the case currently being viewed in the case feed using the specified case ID.

`getDefaultTemplateId(caseId)`

Returns the ID of the email template to preload for the case currently being viewed in the case feed using the specified case ID.

Signature

```
public ID getDefaultTemplateId(ID caseId)
```

Parameters

`caseId`
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: ID

EmailTemplateSelector Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `Support.EmailTemplateSelector` interface.

The `getDefaultEmailTemplateId` method implementation retrieves the subject and description of the case corresponding to the specified case ID. Next, it selects an email template based on the case subject and returns the email template ID.

```
global class MyCaseTemplateChooser implements Support.EmailTemplateSelector {
    // Empty constructor
    global MyCaseTemplateChooser() {    }

    // The main interface method
    global ID getDefaultEmailTemplateId(ID caseId) {
        // Select the case we're interested in, choosing any fields that are relevant to
our decision
        Case c = [SELECT Subject, Description FROM Case WHERE Id=:caseId];

        EmailTemplate et;

        if (c.subject.contains('LX-1150')) {
            et = [SELECT id FROM EmailTemplate WHERE DeveloperName = 'LX1150_template'];
        } else if(c.subject.contains('LX-1220')) {
            et = [SELECT id FROM EmailTemplate WHERE DeveloperName = 'LX1220_template'];
        }

        // Return the ID of the template selected
        return et.id;
    }
}
```

The following example tests the above code:

```
@isTest
private class MyCaseTemplateChooserTest {

    static testMethod void testChooseTemplate() {
```

```
        MyCaseTemplateChooser chooser = new MyCaseTemplateChooser();

        // Create a simulated case to test with
        Case c = new Case();
        c.Subject = 'I\'m having trouble with my LX-1150';
        Database.insert(c);

        // Make sure the proper template is chosen for this subject
        Id actualTemplateId = chooser.getDefaultEmailTemplateId(c.Id);
        EmailTemplate expectedTemplate =
          [SELECT id FROM EmailTemplate WHERE DeveloperName = 'LX1150_template'];
        Id expectedTemplateId = expectedTemplate.Id;
        System.assertEquals(actualTemplateId, expectedTemplateId);

        // Change the case properties to match a different template
        c.Subject = 'My LX1220 is overheating';
        Database.update(c);

        // Make sure the correct template is chosen in this case
       actualTemplateId = chooser.getDefaultEmailTemplateId(c.Id);
        expectedTemplate =
          [SELECT id FROM EmailTemplate WHERE DeveloperName = 'LX1220_template'];
        expectedTemplateId = expectedTemplate.Id;
        System.assertEquals(actualTemplateId, expectedTemplateId);

    }
}
```

MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Interface

The `Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator` interface calculates the time trigger for a milestone.

Namespace

Support

Implement the `Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator` interface to calculate a dynamic time trigger for a milestone based on the milestone type, the properties of the case, and case-related objects. To implement the `Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator` interface, you must first declare a class with the `implements` keyword as follows:

```
global class Employee implements Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator {
```

Next, your class must provide an implementation for the following method:

```
global Integer calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(String caseId, String milestoneTypeId)
```

The implemented method must be declared as `global` or `public`.

IN THIS SECTION:

- MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Methods
- MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Example Implementation

MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Methods

The following are instance methods for `MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator`.

IN THIS SECTION:

calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(caseId, milestoneTypeId)
Calculates the milestone trigger time based on the specified case and milestone type and returns the time in minutes.

`calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(caseId, milestoneTypeId)`

Calculates the milestone trigger time based on the specified case and milestone type and returns the time in minutes.

Syntax

```
public Integer calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(String caseId, String milestoneTypeId)
```

Parameters

caseId
Type: String

ID of the case the milestone is applied to.

milestoneTypeId
Type: String

ID of the milestone type.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The calculated trigger time in minutes.

MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator Example Implementation

This sample class demonstrates the implementation of the`Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator` interface. In this sample, the case's priority and the milestone `m1` determine that the time trigger is 18 minutes.

```
global class myMilestoneTimeCalculator implements Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator
{
     global Integer calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(String caseId, String milestoneTypeId){

        Case c = [SELECT Priority FROM Case WHERE Id=:caseId];
        MilestoneType mt = [SELECT Name FROM MilestoneType WHERE Id=:milestoneTypeId];
        if (c.Priority != null && c.Priority.equals('High')){
              if (mt.Name != null && mt.Name.equals('m1')) { return 7;}
              else { return 5; }
        }
        else {
            return 18;
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

This test class can be used to test the implementation of `Support.MilestoneTriggerTimeCalculator`.

```
@isTest
private class MilestoneTimeCalculatorTest {
    static testMethod void testMilestoneTimeCalculator() {

        // Select an existing milestone type to test with
        MilestoneType[] mtLst = [SELECT Id, Name FROM MilestoneType LIMIT 1];
        if(mtLst.size() == 0) { return; }
        MilestoneType mt = mtLst[0];

        // Create case data.
        // Typically, the milestone type is related to the case,
        // but for simplicity, the case is created separately for this test.
        Case c = new Case(priority = 'High');
        insert c;

        myMilestoneTimeCalculator calculator = new myMilestoneTimeCalculator();
       Integer actualTriggerTime = calculator.calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(c.Id, mt.Id);


        if(mt.name != null && mt.Name.equals('m1')) {
            System.assertEquals(actualTriggerTime, 7);
        }
        else {
            System.assertEquals(actualTriggerTime, 5);
        }

        c.priority = 'Low';
        update c;
        actualTriggerTime = calculator.calculateMilestoneTriggerTime(c.Id, mt.Id);
        System.assertEquals(actualTriggerTime, 18);
    }
}
```

System Namespace

The `System` namespace provides classes and methods for core Apex functionality.

The following are the classes in the `System` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

AccessType Enum

Specifies the access check type for the fields of an sObject.

Address Class

Contains methods for accessing the component fields of address compound fields.

Answers Class

Represents zone answers.

ApexPages Class

Use `ApexPages` to add and check for messages associated with the current page, as well as to reference the current page.

Approval Class

Contains methods for processing approval requests and setting approval-process locks and unlocks on records.

Blob Class

Contains methods for the Blob primitive data type.

Boolean Class

Contains methods for the Boolean primitive data type.

BusinessHours Class

Use the `BusinessHours` methods to set the business hours at which your customer support team operates.

Callable Interface

Enables developers to use a common interface to build loosely coupled integrations between Apex classes or triggers, even for code in separate packages. Agreeing upon a common interface enables developers from different companies or different departments to build upon one another's solutions. Implement this interface to enable the broader community, which might have different solutions than the ones you had in mind, to extend your code's functionality.

Cases Class

Use the `Cases` class to interact with case records.

Comparable Interface

Adds sorting support for Lists that contain non-primitive types, that is, Lists of user-defined types.

Continuation Class

Use the `Continuation` class to make callouts asynchronously to a SOAP or REST Web service.

Cookie Class

The `Cookie` class lets you access cookies for your Salesforce site using Apex.

Crypto Class

Provides methods for creating digests, message authentication codes, and signatures, as well as encrypting and decrypting information.

Custom Metadata Type Methods

Custom metadata types are customizable, deployable, packageable, and upgradeable application metadata. All custom metadata is exposed in the application cache, which allows access without repeated queries to the database. The metadata is then available for formula fields, validation rules, flows, Apex, and SOAP API. All methods are static.

Custom Settings Methods

Custom settings are similar to custom objects and enable application developers to create custom sets of data, as well as create and associate custom data for an organization, profile, or specific user. All custom settings data is exposed in the application cache, which enables efficient access without the cost of repeated queries to the database. This data is then available for formula fields, validation rules, flows, Apex, and the SOAP API.

Database Class

Contains methods for creating and manipulating data.

Date Class

Contains methods for the Date primitive data type.

Datetime Class

Contains methods for the Datetime primitive data type.

Decimal Class

Contains methods for the Decimal primitive data type.

Double Class

Contains methods for the Double primitive data type.

EncodingUtil Class

Use the methods in the `EncodingUtil` class to encode and decode URL strings, and convert strings to hexadecimal format.

Enum Methods

An enum is an abstract data type with values that each take on exactly one of a finite set of identifiers that you specify. Apex provides built-in enums, such as `LoggingLevel`, and you can define your own enum.

EventBus Class

Contains methods for publishing platform events.

Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions

An exception denotes an error that disrupts the normal flow of code execution. You can use Apex built-in exceptions or create custom exceptions. All exceptions have common methods.

FlexQueue Class

Contains methods that reorder batch jobs in the Apex flex queue.

FeatureManagement Class

Use the methods in the `System.FeatureManagement` class to check and modify the values of feature parameters, and to show or hide custom objects and custom permissions in your subscribers' orgs.

Formula Class

Contains the `recalculateFormulas` method that updates (recalculates) all formula fields on the input SObjects.

FormulaRecalcFieldError Class

The return type of the `FormulaRecalcResult.getErrors` method.

FormulaRecalcResult Class

The return type of the `Formula.recalculateFormulas` method.

Http Class

Use the `Http` class to initiate an HTTP request and response.

HttpCalloutMock Interface

Enables sending fake responses when testing HTTP callouts.

HttpRequest Class

Use the `HttpRequest` class to programmatically create HTTP requests like GET, POST, PATCH, PUT, and DELETE.

HttpResponse Class

Use the `HttpResponse` class to handle the HTTP response returned by the `Http` class.

Id Class

Contains methods for the ID primitive data type.

Ideas Class

Represents zone ideas.

InstallHandler Interface

Enables custom code to run after a managed package installation or upgrade.

Integer Class

Contains methods for the Integer primitive data type.

JSON Class

Contains methods for serializing Apex objects into JSON format and deserializing JSON content that was serialized using the `serialize` method in this class.

JSONGenerator Class

Contains methods used to serialize objects into JSON content using the standard JSON encoding.

JSONParser Class

Represents a parser for JSON-encoded content.

JSONToken Enum

Contains all token values used for parsing JSON content.

Limits Class

Contains methods that return limit information for specific resources.

List Class

Contains methods for the List collection type.

Location Class

Contains methods for accessing the component fields of geolocation compound fields.

Long Class

Contains methods for the Long primitive data type.

Map Class

Contains methods for the Map collection type.

Matcher Class

Matchers use Patterns to perform match operations on a character string.

Math Class

Contains methods for mathematical operations.

Messaging Class

Contains messaging methods used when sending a single or mass email.

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Class

Utility class used to specify a fake response using multiple resources for testing HTTP callouts.

Network Class

Represents an Experience Cloud site.

OrgLimit Class

Contains methods that provide the name, maximum value, and current value of an org limit.

OrgLimits Class

Contains methods that provide a list or map of all OrgLimit instances for Salesforce your org, such as SOAP API requests, Bulk API requests, and Streaming API limits.

PageReference Class

A PageReference is a reference to an instantiation of a page. Among other attributes, PageReferences consist of a URL and a set of query parameter names and values.

Packaging Class

Contains a method for obtaining information about managed and unlocked packages.

Pattern Class

Represents a compiled representation of a regular expression.

Queueable Interface

Enables the asynchronous execution of Apex jobs that can be monitored.

QueueableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of the `execute()` method in a class that implements the `Queueable` interface and contains the job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

QuickAction Class

Use Apex to request and process actions on objects that allow custom fields, on objects that appear in a Chatter feed, or on objects that are available globally.

Quiddity Enum

Specifies a Quiddity value used by the methods in the System.Request class

RemoteObjectController

Use `RemoteObjectController` to access the standard Visualforce Remote Objects operations in your Remote Objects override methods.

Request Class

Contains methods to obtain the request ID and Quiddity value of the current Salesforce request.

ResetPasswordResult Class

Represents the result of a password reset.

RestContext Class

Contains the `RestRequest` and `RestResponse` objects.

RestRequest Class

Use the `System.RestRequest` class to access and pass request data in a RESTful Apex method.

RestResponse Class

Represents an object used to pass data from an Apex RESTful Web service method to an HTTP response.

SandboxPostCopy Interface

To make your sandbox environment business ready, automate data manipulation or business logic tasks. Extend this interface and add methods to perform post-copy tasks, then specify the class during sandbox creation.

Schedulable Interface

The class that implements this interface can be scheduled to run at different intervals.

SchedulableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of a method in a class that implements the `Schedulable` interface and contains the scheduled job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

Schema Class

Contains methods for obtaining schema describe information.

Search Class

Use the methods of the Search class to perform dynamic SOSL queries.

Security Class

Contains methods to securely implement Apex applications.

SelectOption Class

A `SelectOption` object specifies one of the possible values for a Visualforce `selectCheckboxes`, `selectList`, or `selectRadio` component.

Set Class

Represents a collection of unique elements with no duplicate values.

Site Class

Use the `Site` Class to manage your Salesforce Sites.

SObject Class

Contains methods for the sObject data type.

SObjectAccessDecision Class

Contains the results of a call to the Security.stripInaccessible method and methods to retrieve those results.

StaticResourceCalloutMock Class

Utility class used to specify a fake response for testing HTTP callouts.

String Class

Contains methods for the String primitive data type.

StubProvider Interface

`StubProvider` is a callback interface that you can use as part of the Apex stub API to implement a mocking framework. Use this interface with the `Test.createStub()` method to create stubbed Apex objects for testing.

System Class

Contains methods for system operations, such as writing debug messages and scheduling jobs.

Test Class

Contains methods related to Apex tests.

Time Class

Contains methods for the Time primitive data type.

TimeZone Class

Represents a time zone. Contains methods for creating a new time zone and obtaining time zone properties, such as the time zone ID, offset, and display name.

Trigger Class

Use the `Trigger` class to access run-time context information in a trigger, such as the type of trigger or the list of sObject records that the trigger operates on.

TriggerOperation Enum

System.TriggerOperation enum values are associated with trigger events.

Type Class

Contains methods for getting the Apex type that corresponds to an Apex class and for instantiating new types.

UninstallHandler Interface

Enables custom code to run after a managed package is uninstalled.

URL Class

Represents a uniform resource locator (URL) and provides access to parts of the URL. Enables access to the Salesforce instance URL.

UserInfo Class

Contains methods for obtaining information about the context user.

UserManagement Class

Contains methods to manage end users, for example, to register their verification methods, verify their identity, or remove their personal information.

Version Class

Use the Version methods to get the version of a first-generation managed package, and to compare package versions.

WebServiceCallout Class

Enables making callouts to SOAP operations on an external Web service. This class is used in the Apex stub class that is auto-generated from a WSDL.

WebServiceMock Interface

Enables sending fake responses when testing Web service callouts of a class auto-generated from a WSDL.

XmlStreamReader Class

The `XmlStreamReader` class provides methods for forward, read-only access to XML data. You can pull data from XML or skip unwanted events. You can parse nested XML content that's up to 50 nodes deep.

XmlStreamWriter Class

The `XmlStreamWriter` class provides methods for writing XML data.

AccessType Enum

Specifies the access check type for the fields of an sObject.

Usage

Use these enum values for the `accessCheckType` parameter of the stripInaccessible method.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `System.AccessType` enum.

Value	Description
`CREATABLE`	Check the fields of an sObject for create access.
`READABLE`	Check the fields of an sObject for read access.
`UPDATABLE`	Check the fields of an sObject for update access.
`UPSERTABLE`	Check the fields of an sObject for both insert and update access.

Address Class

Contains methods for accessing the component fields of address compound fields.

Namespace

System

Usage

Each of these methods is also equivalent to a read-only property. For each getter method, you can access the property using dot notation. For example, `myAddress.getCity()` is equivalent to `myAddress.city`.

You can't use dot notation to access compound fields' subfields directly on the parent field. Instead, assign the parent field to a variable of type `Address`, and then access its components. For example, to access the `City` field in `myAccount.BillingAddress`, do the following:

```
Address addr = myAccount.BillingAddress;
String acctCity = addr.City;
```

Important: "Address" in Salesforce can also refer to the Address standard object. When referencing the Address object in your Apex code, always use `Schema.Address` instead of `Address` to prevent confusion with the standard Address compound field. If referencing both the Address object and the Address standard field in the same snippet, you can differentiate between the two by using `System.Address` for the field and `Schema.Address` for the object.

Example

```
// Select and access Address fields.
// Call the getDistance() method in different ways.
Account[] records = [SELECT id, BillingAddress FROM Account LIMIT 10];
for(Account acct : records) {
   Address addr = acct.BillingAddress;
   Double lat = addr.latitude;
   Double lon = addr.longitude;
   Location loc1 = Location.newInstance(30.1944,-97.6682);
   Double apexDist1 = addr.getDistance(loc1, 'mi');
   Double apexDist2 = loc1.getDistance(addr, 'mi');
   System.assertEquals(apexDist1, apexDist2);
   Double apexDist3 = Location.getDistance(addr, loc1, 'mi');
   System.assertEquals(apexDist2, apexDist3);
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Address Methods

Address Methods

The following are methods for `Address`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCity()
Returns the city field of this address.

getCountry()
Returns the text-only country/territory name component of this address.

getCountryCode()
Returns the country/territory code of this address if state and country/territory picklists are enabled in your organization. Otherwise, returns `null`.

getDistance(toLocation, unit)
Returns the distance from this location to the specified location using the specified unit.

getGeocodeAccuracy()
When using geolocation data for a given address, this method gives you relative location information based on latitude and longitude values. For example, you can find out if the latitude and longitude values point to the middle of the street, instead of the exact address.

getLatitude()
Returns the latitude field of this address.

getLongitude()
Returns the longitude field of this address.

getPostalCode()
Returns the postal code of this address.

getState()
Returns the text-only state name component of this address.

getStateCode()
Returns the state code of this address if state and country/territory picklists are enabled in your organization. Otherwise, returns `null`.

getStreet()
Returns the street field of this address.

`getCity()`

Returns the city field of this address.

Signature

```
public String getCity()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getCountry()`

Returns the text-only country/territory name component of this address.

Signature

```
public String getCountry()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getCountryCode()`

Returns the country/territory code of this address if state and country/territory picklists are enabled in your organization. Otherwise, returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getCountryCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getDistance(toLocation, unit)

Returns the distance from this location to the specified location using the specified unit.

Signature

```
public Double getDistance(Location toLocation, String unit)
```

Parameters

toLocation
Type: Location

The `Location` to which you want to calculate the distance from the current `Location`.

unit
Type: String

The distance unit you want to use: `mi` or `km`.

Return Value

Type: Double

getGeocodeAccuracy()

When using geolocation data for a given address, this method gives you relative location information based on latitude and longitude values. For example, you can find out if the latitude and longitude values point to the middle of the street, instead of the exact address.

Signature

```
public String getGeocodeAccuracy()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The `getGeocodeAccuracy()` return value tells you more about the location at a latitude and longitude for a given address. For example, `Zip` means the latitude and longitude point to the center of the zip code area, in case a match for an exact street address can't be found.

Accuracy Value	Description
`Address`	In the same building
`NearAddress`	Near the address

Accuracy Value	Description
`Block`	Midway point of the block
`Street`	Midway point of the street
`ExtendedZip`	Center of the extended zip code area
`Zip`	Center of the zip code area
`Neighborhood`	Center of the neighborhood
`City`	Center of the city
`County`	Center of the county
`State`	Center of the state
`Unknown`	No match for the address was found

Geocodes are added only for some standard addresses.

- `Billing Address` on accounts
- `Shipping Address` on accounts
- `Mailing Address` on contacts
- `Address` on leads

Person accounts are not supported.

Note: For `getGeocodeAccuracy()` to work, set up and activate the geocode data integration rules for the related address fields.

`getLatitude()`

Returns the latitude field of this address.

Signature

```
public Double getLatitude()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

`getLongitude()`

Returns the longitude field of this address.

Signature

```
public Double getLongitude()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

`getPostalCode()`

Returns the postal code of this address.

Signature

```
public String getPostalCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getState()`

Returns the text-only state name component of this address.

Signature

```
public String getState()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStateCode()`

Returns the state code of this address if state and country/territory picklists are enabled in your organization. Otherwise, returns `null`.

Signature

```
public String getStateCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getStreet()`

Returns the street field of this address.

Signature

```
public String getStreet()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Answers Class

Represents zone answers.

Namespace

System

Usage

Answers is a feature that enables users to ask questions and have zone members post replies. Members can then vote on the helpfulness of each reply, and the person who asked the question can mark one reply as the best answer.

For more information on answers, see "Answers Overview" in the Salesforce online help.

Example

The following example finds questions in an internal zone that have similar titles as a new question:

```
public class FindSimilarQuestionController {

   public static void test() {
   // Instantiate a new question
   Question question = new Question ();

   // Specify a title for the new question
   question.title = 'How much vacation time do full-time employees get?';

   // Specify the communityID (INTERNAL_COMMUNITY) in which to find similar questions.
   Community community = [ SELECT Id FROM Community WHERE Name = 'INTERNAL_COMMUNITY' ];

   question.communityId = community.id;

   ID[] results = Answers.findSimilar(question);
   }
}
```

The following example marks a reply as the best reply:

```
ID questionId = [SELECT Id FROM Question WHERE Title = 'Testing setBestReplyId' LIMIT
1].Id;
ID replyID = [SELECT Id FROM Reply WHERE QuestionId = :questionId LIMIT 1].Id;
Answers.setBestReply(questionId,replyId);
```

Answers Methods

The following are methods for `Answers`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

findSimilar(yourQuestion)

Returns a list of similar questions based on the title of the specified question.

setBestReply(questionId, replyId)

Sets the specified reply for the specified question as the best reply. Because a question can have multiple replies, setting the best reply helps users quickly identify the reply that contains the most helpful information.

findSimilar(yourQuestion)

Returns a list of similar questions based on the title of the specified question.

Signature

```
public static ID[] findSimilar(Question yourQuestion)
```

Parameters

yourQuestion
Type: Question

Return Value

Type: ID[]

Usage

Each `findSimilar` call counts against the SOSL statements governor limit allowed for the process.

setBestReply(questionId, replyId)

Sets the specified reply for the specified question as the best reply. Because a question can have multiple replies, setting the best reply helps users quickly identify the reply that contains the most helpful information.

Signature

```
public static Void setBestReply(String questionId, String replyId)
```

Parameters

questionId
Type: String

replyId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

ApexPages Class

Use `ApexPages` to add and check for messages associated with the current page, as well as to reference the current page.

Namespace

System

Usage

In addition, `ApexPages` is used as a namespace for the PageReference Class and the Message Class.

ApexPages Methods

The following are methods for `ApexPages`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

addMessage(message)
Add a message to the current page context.

addMessages(exceptionThrown)
Adds a list of messages to the current page context based on a thrown exception.

currentPage()
Returns the current page's PageReference.

getMessages()
Returns a list of the messages associated with the current context.

hasMessages()
Returns `true` if there are messages associated with the current context, `false` otherwise.

hasMessages(severity)
Returns `true` if messages of the specified severity exist, `false` otherwise.

`addMessage(message)`

Add a message to the current page context.

Signature

```
public Void addMessage(ApexPages.Message message)
```

Parameters

message
Type: ApexPages.Message

Return Value

Type: Void

`addMessages(exceptionThrown)`

Adds a list of messages to the current page context based on a thrown exception.

Signature

```
public Void addMessages(Exception exceptionThrown)
```

Parameters

exceptionThrown
Type: Exception

Return Value

Type: Void

currentPage()

Returns the current page's PageReference.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference currentPage()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Example

This code segment returns the id parameter of the current page.

```
public MyController() {
    account = [
        SELECT Id, Name, Site
        FROM Account
        WHERE Id =
            :ApexPages.currentPage().
             getParameters().
             get('id')
    ];
}
```

getMessages()

Returns a list of the messages associated with the current context.

Signature

```
public ApexPages.Message[] getMessages()
```

Return Value

Type: ApexPages.Message[]

`hasMessages()`

Returns `true` if there are messages associated with the current context, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasMessages()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`hasMessages(severity)`

Returns `true` if messages of the specified severity exist, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasMessages(ApexPages.Severity severity)
```

Parameters

sev
Type: ApexPages.Severity

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Approval Class

Contains methods for processing approval requests and setting approval-process locks and unlocks on records.

Namespace

System

Usage

Salesforce admins can edit locked records. Depending on your approval process configuration settings, an assigned approver can also edit locked records. Locks and unlocks that are set programmatically use the same record editability settings as other approval-process locks and unlocks.

Record locks and unlocks are treated as DML. They're blocked before a callout, they count toward your DML limits, and if a failure occurs, they're rolled back along with the rest of your transaction. To change this rollback behavior, use an `allOrNone` parameter.

Approval is also used as a namespace for the `ProcessRequest` and `ProcessResult` classes.

SEE ALSO:

Approval Process Considerations

Approval Methods

The following are methods for `Approval`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

isLocked(id)

Returns `true` if the record with the ID `id` is locked, or `false` if it's not.

isLocked(ids)

Returns a map of record IDs and their lock statuses. If the record is locked the status is `true`. If the record is not locked the status is `false`.

isLocked(sobject)

Returns `true` if the `sobject` record is locked, or `false` if it's not.

isLocked(sobjects)

Returns a map of record IDs to lock statuses. If the record is locked the status is `true`. If the record is not locked the status is `false`.

lock(recordId)

Locks an object, and returns the lock results.

lock(recordIds)

Locks a set of objects, and returns the lock results, including failures.

lock(recordToLock)

Locks an object, and returns the lock results.

lock(recordsToLock)

Locks a set of objects, and returns the lock results, including failures.

lock(recordId, allOrNothing)

Locks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the lock result.

lock(recordIds, allOrNothing)

Locks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the lock results, including failures.

lock(recordToLock, allOrNothing)

Locks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the lock result.

lock(recordsToLock, allOrNothing)

Locks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the lock results, including failures.

process(approvalRequest)

Submits a new approval request and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

process(approvalRequest, allOrNone)

Submits a new approval request and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

process(approvalRequests)

Submits a list of new approval requests, and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

process(approvalRequests, allOrNone)

Submits a list of new approval requests, and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

unlock(recordId)

Unlocks an object, and returns the unlock results.

unlock(recordIds)
Unlocks a set of objects, and returns the unlock results, including failures.

unlock(recordToUnlock)
Unlocks an object, and returns the unlock results.

unlock(recordsToUnlock)
Unlocks a set of objects, and returns the unlock results, including failures.

unlock(recordId, allOrNothing)
Unlocks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the unlock result.

unlock(recordIds, allOrNothing)
Unlocks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the unlock results, including failures.

unlock(recordToUnlock, allOrNothing)
Unlocks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the unlock result.

unlock(recordsToUnlock, allOrNothing)
Unlocks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the unlock results, including failures.

isLocked(id)

Returns `true` if the record with the ID `id` is locked, or `false` if it's not.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isLocked(Id id)
```

Parameters

id
Type: Id

The ID of the record whose lock or unlock status is in question.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isLocked(ids)

Returns a map of record IDs and their lock statuses. If the record is locked the status is `true`. If the record is not locked the status is `false`.

Signature

```
public static Map<Id,Boolean> isLocked(List<Id> ids)
```

Parameters

ids
Type: List<Id>

The IDs of the records whose lock or unlock statuses are in question.

Return Value

Type: Map<Id,Boolean>

`isLocked(sobject)`

Returns `true` if the `sobject` record is locked, or `false` if it's not.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isLocked(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

`sobject`
Type: SObject

The record whose lock or unlock status is in question.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isLocked(sobjects)`

Returns a map of record IDs to lock statuses. If the record is locked the status is `true`. If the record is not locked the status is `false`.

Signature

```
public static Map<Id,Boolean> isLocked(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

`sobjects`
Type: List<SObject>

The records whose lock or unlock statuses are in question.

Return Value

Type: Map<Id,Boolean>

`lock(recordId)`

Locks an object, and returns the lock results.

Signature

```
public static Approval.LockResult lock(Id recordId)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: Id

ID of the object to lock.

Return Value

Type: Approval.LockResult

lock(recordIds)

Locks a set of objects, and returns the lock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.LockResult> lock(List<Id> ids)
```

Parameters

ids
Type: List<Id>

IDs of the objects to lock.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.LockResult>

lock(recordToLock)

Locks an object, and returns the lock results.

Signature

```
public static Approval.LockResult lock(SObject recordToLock)
```

Parameters

recordToLock
Type: SObject

Return Value

Type: Approval.LockResult

lock(recordsToLock)

Locks a set of objects, and returns the lock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.LockResult> lock(List<SObject> recordsToLock)
```

Parameters

recordsToLock
Type: List<SObject>

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.LockResult>

lock(recordId, allOrNothing)

Locks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the lock result.

Signature

```
public static Approval.LockResult lock(Id recordId, Boolean allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: Id

ID of the object to lock.

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: Approval.LockResult

lock(recordIds, allOrNothing)

Locks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the lock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.LockResult> lock(List<Id> recordIds, Boolean allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordIds
Type: List<Id>

IDs of the objects to lock.

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.LockResult>

lock(recordToLock, allOrNothing)

Locks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the lock result.

Signature

```
public static Approval.LockResult lock(SObject recordToLock, Boolean allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordToLock
Type: SObject

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: Approval.LockResult

lock(recordsToLock, allOrNothing)

Locks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the lock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.LockResult> lock(List<SObject> recordsToLock, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordsToLock
Type: List<SObject>

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.LockResult>

process(approvalRequest)

Submits a new approval request and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

Signature

```
public static Approval.ProcessResult process(Approval.ProcessRequest approvalRequest)
```

Parameters

approvalRequest
Type: Approval.ProcessRequest

Return Value

Type: Approval.ProcessResult

Example

```
// Insert an account

Account a = new Account(Name='Test',
                    annualRevenue=100.0);

insert a;

// Create an approval request for the account
Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest req1 =
      new Approval.ProcessSubmitRequest();
req1.setObjectId(a.id);

// Submit the approval request for the account
Approval.ProcessResult result =
                  Approval.process(req1);
```

process(approvalRequest, allOrNone)

Submits a new approval request and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

Signature

```
public static Approval.ProcessResult process(Approval.ProcessRequest approvalRequest,
Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

approvalRequest
Approval.ProcessRequest

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows for partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and an approval fails, the remainder of the approval processes can still succeed.

Return Value

Approval.ProcessResult

process(approvalRequests)

Submits a list of new approval requests, and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

Signature

```
public static Approval.ProcessResult [] process(Approval.ProcessRequest[]
approvalRequests)
```

Parameters

approvalRequests
Approval.ProcessRequest []

Return Value

Approval.ProcessResult []

process(approvalRequests, allOrNone)

Submits a list of new approval requests, and approves or rejects existing approval requests.

Signature

```
public static Approval.ProcessResult [] process(Approval.ProcessRequest[]
approvalRequests, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

approvalRequests
Approval.ProcessRequest []

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows for partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and an approval fails, the remainder of the approval processes can still succeed.

Return Value

Approval.ProcessResult []

unlock(recordId)

Unlocks an object, and returns the unlock results.

Signature

```
public static Approval.UnlockResult unlock(Id recordId)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: Id

ID of the object to unlock.

Return Value

Type: Approval.UnlockResult

unlock(recordIds)

Unlocks a set of objects, and returns the unlock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.UnlockResult> unlock(List<Id> recordIds)
```

Parameters

recordIds
Type: List<Id>

IDs of the objects to unlock.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.UnlockResult>

unlock(recordToUnlock)

Unlocks an object, and returns the unlock results.

Signature

```
public static Approval.UnlockResult unlock(SObject recordToUnlock)
```

Parameters

recordToUnlock
Type: SObject

Return Value

Type: Approval.UnlockResult

unlock(recordsToUnlock)

Unlocks a set of objects, and returns the unlock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.UnlockResult> unlock(List<SObject> recordsToUnlock)
```

Parameters

recordsToUnlock
Type: List<SObject>

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.UnlockResult>

unlock(recordId, allOrNothing)

Unlocks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the unlock result.

Signature

```
public static Approval.UnlockResult unlock(Id recordId, Boolean allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: Id

ID of the object to lock.

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: Approval.UnlockResult

unlock(recordIds, allOrNothing)

Unlocks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the unlock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.UnlockResult> unlock(List<Id> recordIds, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordIds
Type: List<Id>

IDs of the objects to unlock.

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.UnlockResult>

unlock(recordToUnlock, allOrNothing)

Unlocks an object, with the option for partial success, and returns the unlock result.

Signature

```
public static Approval.UnlockResult unlock(SObject recordToUnlock, Boolean allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordToUnlock
Type: SObject

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: Approval.UnlockResult

unlock(recordsToUnlock, allOrNothing)

Unlocks a set of objects, with the option for partial success. It returns the unlock results, including failures.

Signature

```
public static List<Approval.UnlockResult> unlock(List<SObject> recordsToUnlock, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

recordsToUnlock
Type: List<SObject>

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that you can use to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: List<Approval.UnlockResult>

Blob Class

Contains methods for the Blob primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Blobs, see Primitive Data Types.

Blob Methods

The following are methods for `Blob`.

IN THIS SECTION:

size()
Returns the number of characters in the Blob.

toPdf(stringToConvert)
Creates a binary object out of the given string, encoding it as a PDF file.

toString()
Casts the Blob into a String.

valueOf(stringToBlob)
Casts the specified String to a Blob.

`size()`

Returns the number of characters in the Blob.

Signature

```
public Integer size()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String myString = 'StringToBlob';
Blob myBlob = Blob.valueof(myString);
Integer size = myBlob.size();
```

toPdf(stringToConvert)

Creates a binary object out of the given string, encoding it as a PDF file.

Signature

```
public static Blob toPdf(String stringToConvert)
```

Parameters

stringToConvert
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
String pdfContent = 'This is a test string';
Account a = new account(name = 'test');
insert a;
Attachment attachmentPDF = new Attachment();
attachmentPdf.parentId = a.id;
attachmentPdf.name = a.name + '.pdf';
attachmentPdf.body = blob.toPDF(pdfContent);
insert attachmentPDF;
```

toString()

Casts the Blob into a String.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String myString = 'StringToBlob';
Blob myBlob = Blob.valueof(myString);
System.assertEquals('StringToBlob', myBlob.toString());
```

`valueOf(stringToBlob)`

Casts the specified String to a Blob.

Signature

```
public static Blob valueOf(String stringToBlob)
```

Parameters

`stringToBlob`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
String myString = 'StringToBlob';
Blob myBlob = Blob.valueof(myString);
```

Boolean Class

Contains methods for the Boolean primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Boolean Methods

The following are methods for `Boolean`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

valueOf(stringToBoolean)
Converts the specified string to a Boolean value and returns `true` if the specified string value is `true`. Otherwise, returns `false`.

valueOf(fieldValue)
Converts the specified object to a Boolean value. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Boolean value.

valueOf(stringToBoolean)

Converts the specified string to a Boolean value and returns `true` if the specified string value is `true`. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean valueOf(String stringToBoolean)
```

Parameters

stringToBoolean
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the specified argument is null, this method throws an exception.

Example

```
Boolean b = Boolean.valueOf('true');
System.assertEquals(true, b);
```

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Boolean value. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Boolean value.

Signature

```
public static Boolean valueOf(Object fieldValue)
```

Parameters

fieldValue
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Use this method with the `OldValue` or `NewValue` fields of history sObjects, such as `AccountHistory`, when the field type corresponds to a Boolean type, like a checkbox field.

Example

```
List<AccountHistory> ahlist =
  [SELECT Field,OldValue,NewValue
   FROM AccountHistory];
for(AccountHistory ah : ahlist) {
  System.debug('Field: ' + ah.Field);
  if (ah.field == 'IsPlatinum__c') {
    Boolean oldValue =
      Boolean.valueOf(ah.OldValue);
    Boolean newValue =
      Boolean.valueOf(ah.NewValue);
}
```

BusinessHours Class

Use the `BusinessHours` methods to set the business hours at which your customer support team operates.

Namespace

System

BusinessHours Methods

The following are methods for `BusinessHours`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

add(businessHoursId, startDate, intervalMilliseconds)
Adds an interval of time from a start Datetime traversing business hours only. Returns the result Datetime in the local time zone.

addGmt(businessHoursId, startDate, intervalMilliseconds)
Adds an interval of milliseconds from a start Datetime traversing business hours only. Returns the result Datetime in GMT.

diff(businessHoursId, startDate, endDate)
Returns the difference in milliseconds between a start and end Datetime based on a specific set of business hours.

isWithin(businessHoursId, targetDate)
Returns `true` if the specified target date occurs within business hours. Holidays are included in the calculation.

nextStartDate(businessHoursId, targetDate)
Starting from the specified target date, returns the next date when business hours are open. If the specified target date falls within business hours, this target date is returned.

add(businessHoursId, startDate, intervalMilliseconds)

Adds an interval of time from a start Datetime traversing business hours only. Returns the result Datetime in the local time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime add(String businessHoursId, Datetime startDate, Long
intervalMilliseconds)
```

Parameters

businessHoursId
Type: String

startDate
Type: Datetime

intervalMilliseconds
Type: Long

Interval value should be provided in milliseconds, however time precision smaller than one minute is ignored.

Return Value

Type: Datetime

addGmt(businessHoursId, startDate, intervalMilliseconds)

Adds an interval of milliseconds from a start Datetime traversing business hours only. Returns the result Datetime in GMT.

Signature

```
public static Datetime addGmt(String businessHoursId, Datetime startDate, Long
intervalMilliseconds)
```

Parameters

businessHoursId
Type: String

startDate
Type: Datetime

intervalMilliseconds
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Datetime

diff(businessHoursId, startDate, endDate)

Returns the difference in milliseconds between a start and end Datetime based on a specific set of business hours.

Signature

```
public static Long diff(String businessHoursId, Datetime startDate, Datetime endDate)
```

Parameters

businessHoursId
Type: String

startDate
Type: Datetime

endDate
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Long

isWithin(businessHoursId, targetDate)

Returns `true` if the specified target date occurs within business hours. Holidays are included in the calculation.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isWithin(String businessHoursId, Datetime targetDate)
```

Parameters

businessHoursId
Type: String

The business hours ID.

targetDate
Type: Datetime

The date to verify.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

The following example finds whether a given time is within the default business hours.

```
// Get the default business hours
BusinessHours bh = [SELECT Id FROM BusinessHours WHERE IsDefault=true];

// Create Datetime on May 28, 2013 at 1:06:08 AM in the local timezone.
Datetime targetTime = Datetime.newInstance(2013, 5, 28, 1, 6, 8);

// Find whether the time is within the default business hours
Boolean isWithin= BusinessHours.isWithin(bh.id, targetTime);
```

nextStartDate(businessHoursId, targetDate)

Starting from the specified target date, returns the next date when business hours are open. If the specified target date falls within business hours, this target date is returned.

Signature

```
public static Datetime nextStartDate(String businessHoursId, Datetime targetDate)
```

Parameters

businessHoursId
Type: String

The business hours ID.

targetDate
Type: Datetime

The date used as a start date to obtain the next date.

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

The following example finds the next date starting from the target date when business hours reopens. If the target date is within the given business hours, the target date is returned. The returned time is in the local time zone.

```
// Get the default business hours
BusinessHours bh = [SELECT Id FROM BusinessHours WHERE IsDefault=true];

// Create Datetime on May 28, 2013 at 1:06:08 AM in the local timezone.
Datetime targetTime = Datetime.newInstance(2013, 5, 28, 1, 6, 8);
// Starting from the targetTime, find the next date when business hours reopens. Return
the target time.

// if it is within the business hours. The returned time will be in the local time zone
Datetime nextStart = BusinessHours.nextStartDate(bh.id, targetTime);
```

Callable Interface

Enables developers to use a common interface to build loosely coupled integrations between Apex classes or triggers, even for code in separate packages. Agreeing upon a common interface enables developers from different companies or different departments to build upon one another's solutions. Implement this interface to enable the broader community, which might have different solutions than the ones you had in mind, to extend your code's functionality.

Note: This interface is not an analog of the Java Callable interface, which is used for asynchronous invocation. Don't confuse the two.

Namespace

System

Usage

To implement the `Callable` interface, you need to write only one method: `call(String action, Map<String, Object> args)`.

In code that utilizes or tests an implementation of `Callable`, cast an instance of your type to `Callable`.

This interface is not intended to replace defining more specific interfaces. Rather, the `Callable` interface allows integrations in which code from different classes or packages can use common base types.

IN THIS SECTION:

Callable Methods

Callable Example Implementation

Callable Methods

The following are methods for `Callable`.

IN THIS SECTION:

call(action, args)
Provides functionality that other classes or packages can utilize and build upon.

`call(action, args)`

Provides functionality that other classes or packages can utilize and build upon.

Signature

```
public Object call(String action, Map<String,Object> args)
```

Parameters

`action`
Type: String

The behavior for the method to exhibit.

`args`
Type: Map on page 2702<String,Object>

Arguments to be used by the specified action.

Return Value

Type: Object

The result of the method invocation.

Callable Example Implementation

This class is an example implementation of the `System.Callable` interface.

```
public class Extension implements Callable {

   // Actual method
   String concatStrings(String stringValue) {
     return stringValue + stringValue;
   }

   // Actual method
   Decimal multiplyNumbers(Decimal decimalValue) {
     return decimalValue * decimalValue;
   }

   // Dispatch actual methods
   public Object call(String action, Map<String, Object> args) {
     switch on action {
       when 'concatStrings' {
         return this.concatStrings((String)args.get('stringValue'));
       }
       when 'multiplyNumbers' {
         return this.multiplyNumbers((Decimal)args.get('decimalValue'));
       }
       when else {
        throw new ExtensionMalformedCallException('Method not implemented');
       }
     }
   }

   public class ExtensionMalformedCallException extends Exception {}
}
```

The following test code illustrates how calling code utilizes the interface to call a method.

```
@IsTest
private with sharing class ExtensionCaller {

   @IsTest
   private static void givenConfiguredExtensionWhenCalledThenValidResult() {

      // Given
      String extensionClass = 'Extension'; // Typically set via configuration
      Decimal decimalTestValue = 10;

      // When
      Callable extension =
         (Callable) Type.forName(extensionClass).newInstance();
      Decimal result = (Decimal)
         extension.call('multiplyNumbers', new Map<String, Object> {
            'decimalValue' => decimalTestValue
         });

      // Then
```

```
        System.assertEquals(100, result);
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Classes and Casting

Cases Class

Use the `Cases` class to interact with case records.

Namespace

System

Cases Methods

The following are static methods for `Cases`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCaseIdFromEmailHeaders(headers)
Returns the case ID corresponding to the specified email header information.

getCaseIdFromEmailThreadId(emailThreadId)
Returns the case ID corresponding to the specified email thread ID. **(Deprecated. Use getCaseIdFromEmailHeaders() instead.)**

`getCaseIdFromEmailHeaders(headers)`

Returns the case ID corresponding to the specified email header information.

Signature

```
public static Id getCaseIdFromEmailHeaders(List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header> headers)
```

Parameters

`headers`
Type: List<Messaging.InboundEmail.Header>

Return Value

Type: Id

Usage

The *`headers`* argument is used to find the matching Case Id using values for the `in-reply-to` and `references` headers based on RFC 2822.

`getCaseIdFromEmailThreadId(emailThreadId)`

Returns the case ID corresponding to the specified email thread ID. **(Deprecated. Use getCaseIdFromEmailHeaders() instead.)**

Signature

```
public static ID getCaseIdFromEmailThreadId(String emailThreadId)
```

Parameters

`emailThreadId`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

The *`emailThreadId`* argument should have the following format: `_00Dxx1gEW._500xxYktg`. Other formats, such as `ref:_00Dxx1gEW._500xxYktl:ref` and `[ref:_00Dxx1gEW._500xxYktl:ref]`, are invalid.

Comparable Interface

Adds sorting support for Lists that contain non-primitive types, that is, Lists of user-defined types.

Namespace

System

Usage

To add List sorting support for your Apex class, you must implement the `Comparable` interface with its `compareTo` method in your class.

To implement the `Comparable` interface, you must first declare a class with the `implements` keyword as follows:

```
global class Employee implements Comparable {
```

Next, your class must provide an implementation for the following method:

```
global Integer compareTo(Object compareTo) {
    // Your code here
}
```

The implemented method must be declared as `global` or `public`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Comparable Methods

Comparable Example Implementation

SEE ALSO:

List Class

Comparable Methods

The following are methods for `Comparable`.

IN THIS SECTION:

compareTo(objectToCompareTo)
Returns an Integer value that is the result of the comparison.

compareTo(objectToCompareTo)

Returns an Integer value that is the result of the comparison.

Signature

```
public Integer compareTo(Object objectToCompareTo)
```

Parameters

objectToCompareTo
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The implementation of this method returns the following values:

- 0 if this instance and *objectToCompareTo* are equal
- > 0 if this instance is greater than *objectToCompareTo*
- < 0 if this instance is less than *objectToCompareTo*

If this object instance and *objectToCompareTo* are incompatible, a `System.TypeException` is thrown.

Comparable Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `Comparable` interface. The `compareTo` method in this example compares the employee of this class instance with the employee passed in the argument. The method returns an Integer value based on the comparison of the employee IDs.

```
global class Employee implements Comparable {

    public Long id;
```

```
    public String name;
    public String phone;

    // Constructor
    public Employee(Long i, String n, String p) {
        id = i;
        name = n;
        phone = p;
    }

    // Implement the compareTo() method
    global Integer compareTo(Object compareTo) {
        Employee compareToEmp = (Employee)compareTo;
        if (id == compareToEmp.id) return 0;
        if (id > compareToEmp.id) return 1;
        return -1;
    }
}
```

This example tests the sort order of a list of `Employee` objects.

```
@isTest
private class EmployeeSortingTest {
    static testmethod void test1() {
        List<Employee> empList = new List<Employee>();
        empList.add(new Employee(101,'Joe Smith', '4155551212'));
        empList.add(new Employee(101,'J. Smith', '4155551212'));
        empList.add(new Employee(25,'Caragh Smith', '4155551000'));
        empList.add(new Employee(105,'Mario Ruiz', '4155551099'));

        // Sort using the custom compareTo() method
        empList.sort();

        // Write list contents to the debug log
        System.debug(empList);

        // Verify list sort order.
        System.assertEquals('Caragh Smith', empList[0].Name);
        System.assertEquals('Joe Smith', empList[1].Name);
        System.assertEquals('J. Smith', empList[2].Name);
        System.assertEquals('Mario Ruiz', empList[3].Name);
    }
}
```

Continuation Class

Use the `Continuation` class to make callouts asynchronously to a SOAP or REST Web service.

Namespace

System

Example

For a code example, see Make Long-Running Callouts from a Visualforce Page.

IN THIS SECTION:

Continuation Constructors
Continuation Properties
Continuation Methods

Continuation Constructors

The following are constructors for `Continuation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Continuation(timeout)
Creates an instance of the `Continuation` class by using the specified timeout in seconds. The timeout maximum is 120 seconds.

`Continuation(timeout)`

Creates an instance of the `Continuation` class by using the specified timeout in seconds. The timeout maximum is 120 seconds.

Signature

```
public Continuation(Integer timeout)
```

Parameters

`timeout`
Type: Integer

The timeout for this continuation in seconds.

Continuation Properties

The following are properties for `Continuation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

continuationMethod
The name of the callback method that is called after the callout response returns.
timeout
The timeout of the continuation in seconds. Maximum: 120 seconds seconds.
state
Data that is stored in this continuation and that can be retrieved after the callout is finished and the callback method is invoked.

`continuationMethod`

The name of the callback method that is called after the callout response returns.

Signature

```
public String continuationMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Usage

Note: If the `continuationMethod` property is not set for a Continuation, the same action method that made the asynchronous callout is called again when the callout response returns.

`timeout`

The timeout of the continuation in seconds. Maximum: 120 seconds seconds.

Signature

```
public Integer timeout {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

`state`

Data that is stored in this continuation and that can be retrieved after the callout is finished and the callback method is invoked.

Signature

```
public Object state {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Object

Example

This example shows how to save state information for a continuation in a controller.

```
// Declare inner class to hold state info
private class StateInfo {
    String msg { get; set; }
    List<String> urls  { get; set; }
    StateInfo(String msg, List<String> urls) {
        this.msg = msg;
        this.urls = urls;
```

```
    }
}

// Then in the action method, set state for the continuation
continuationInstance.state = new StateInfo('Some state data', urls);
```

Continuation Methods

The following are methods for `Continuation`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addHttpRequest(request)
Adds the HTTP request for the callout that is associated with this continuation.

getRequests()
Returns all labels and requests that are associated with this continuation as key-value pairs.

getResponse(requestLabel)
Returns the response for the request that corresponds to the specified label.

`addHttpRequest(request)`

Adds the HTTP request for the callout that is associated with this continuation.

Signature

```
public String addHttpRequest(System.HttpRequest request)
```

Parameters

`request`
Type: HttpRequest

The HTTP request to be sent to the external service by this continuation.

Return Value

Type: String

A unique label that identifies the HTTP request that is associated with this continuation. This label is used in the map that getRequests() returns to identify individual requests in a continuation.

Usage

You can add up tothree requests to a continuation.

Note: The timeout that is set in each passed-in request is ignored. Only the global timeout maximum of 120 seconds applies for a continuation.

`getRequests()`

Returns all labels and requests that are associated with this continuation as key-value pairs.

Signature

```
public Map<String,System.HttpRequest> getRequests()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,HttpRequest>

A map of all requests that are associated with this continuation. The map key is the request label, and the map value is the corresponding HTTP request.

`getResponse(requestLabel)`

Returns the response for the request that corresponds to the specified label.

Signature

```
public static HttpResponse getResponse(String requestLabel)
```

Parameters

`requestLabel`
Type: String

The request label to get the response for.

Return Value

Type: HttpResponse

Usage

The status code is returned in the HttpResponse object and can be obtained by calling `getStatusCode()` on the response. A status code of `200` indicates that the request was successful. Other status code values indicate the type of problem that was encountered.

Sample of Error Status Codes

When a problem occurs with the response, some possible status code values are:

- `2000`: The timeout was reached, and the server didn't get a chance to respond.
- `2001`: There was a connection failure.
- `2002`: Exceptions occurred.
- `2003`: The response hasn't arrived (which also means that the Apex asynchronous callout framework hasn't resumed).
- `2004`: The response size is too large (greater than 1 MB).

Cookie Class

The `Cookie` class lets you access cookies for your Salesforce site using Apex.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `setCookies` method of the PageReference Class to attach cookies to a page.

Important:

- Cookie names and values set in Apex are URL encoded, that is, characters such as @ are replaced with a percent sign and their hexadecimal representation.
- The `setCookies` method adds the prefix "`apex__`" to the cookie names.
- Setting a cookie's value to `null` sends a cookie with an empty string value instead of setting an expired attribute.
- After you create a cookie, the properties of the cookie can't be changed.
- Be careful when storing sensitive information in cookies. Pages are cached regardless of a cookie value. If you use a cookie value to generate dynamic content, you should disable page caching. For more information, see Configure Site Caching in Salesforce Help.

Consider the following limitations when using the `Cookie` class:

- The `Cookie` class can only be accessed using Apex that is saved using the Salesforce API version 19 and above.
- The maximum number of cookies that can be set per Salesforce Sites domain depends on your browser. Newer browsers have higher limits than older ones.
- Cookies must be less than 4K, including name and attributes.
- The maximum header size of a Visualforce page, including cookies, is 8,192 bytes.

For more information on sites, see "Salesforce Sites" in the Salesforce online help.

Example

The following example creates a class, `CookieController`, which is used with a Visualforce page (see markup below) to update a counter each time a user displays a page. The number of times a user goes to the page is stored in a cookie.

```
// A Visualforce controller class that creates a cookie
// used to keep track of how often a user displays a page
public class CookieController {

    public CookieController() {
        Cookie counter = ApexPages.currentPage().getCookies().get('counter');

        // If this is the first time the user is accessing the page,
        // create a new cookie with name 'counter', an initial value of '1',
        // path 'null', maxAge '-1', and isSecure 'true'.
        if (counter == null) {
            counter = new Cookie('counter','1',null,-1,true);
        } else {
        // If this isn't the first time the user is accessing the page
        // create a new cookie, incrementing the value of the original count by 1
            Integer count = Integer.valueOf(counter.getValue());
            counter = new Cookie('counter', String.valueOf(count+1),null,-1,true);
        }

        // Set the new cookie for the page
        ApexPages.currentPage().setCookies(new Cookie[]{counter});
    }
```

```
    // This method is used by the Visualforce action {!count} to display the current
    // value of the number of times a user had displayed a page.
    // This value is stored in the cookie.
    public String getCount() {
        Cookie counter = ApexPages.currentPage().getCookies().get('counter');
        if(counter == null) {
            return '0';
        }
        return counter.getValue();
    }
}
```

```
// Test class for the Visualforce controller
@isTest
private class CookieControllerTest {
  // Test method for verifying the positive test case
  static testMethod void testCounter() {
    //first page view
    CookieController controller = new CookieController();
    System.assert(controller.getCount() == '1');

    //second page view
    controller = new CookieController();
    System.assert(controller.getCount() == '2');
  }
}
```

The following is the Visualforce page that uses the `CookieController` Apex controller above. The action `{!count}` calls the `getCount` method in the controller above.

```
<apex:page controller="CookieController">
You have seen this page {!count} times
</apex:page>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Cookie Constructors

Cookie Methods

Cookie Constructors

The following are constructors for `Cookie`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Cookie(name, value, path, maxAge, isSecure)

Creates a new instance of the `Cookie` class using the specified name, value, path, age, and the secure setting.

Cookie(name, value, path, maxAge, isSecure, SameSite)

Creates a new instance of the `Cookie` class using the specified name, value, path, and age, and settings for security and cross-domain behavior.

Cookie(name, value, path, maxAge, isSecure)

Creates a new instance of the `Cookie` class using the specified name, value, path, age, and the secure setting.

Signature

```
public Cookie(String name, String value, String path, Integer maxAge, Boolean isSecure)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

The cookie name. It can't be `null`.

value
Type: String

The cookie data, such as session ID.

path
Type: String

The path from where you can retrieve the cookie.

maxAge
Type: Integer

A number representing how long a cookie is valid for in seconds. If set to less than zero, a session cookie is issued. If set to zero, the cookie is deleted.

isSecure
Type: Boolean

A value indicating whether the cookie can only be accessed through HTTPS (`true`) or not (`false`).

Cookie(name, value, path, maxAge, isSecure, SameSite)

Creates a new instance of the `Cookie` class using the specified name, value, path, and age, and settings for security and cross-domain behavior.

Note: Google Chrome 80 introduces a new default cookie attribute setting of `SameSite`, which is set to `Lax`. Previously, the `SameSite` cookie attribute defaulted to the value of `None`. When `SameSite` is set to `None`, cookies must be tagged with the `isSecure` attribute indicating that they require an encrypted HTTPS connection.

Signature

```
public Cookie(String name, String value, String path, Integer maxAge, Boolean isSecure,
String SameSite)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

The cookie name. It can't be `null`.

value
Type: String

The cookie data, such as session ID.

path
Type: String

The path from where you can retrieve the cookie.

maxAge
Type: Integer

A number representing how long a cookie is valid for in seconds. If set to less than zero, a session cookie is issued. If set to zero, the cookie is deleted.

isSecure
Type: Boolean

A value indicating whether the cookie can only be accessed through HTTPS (`true`) or not (`false`).

SameSite
Type: String

The `SameSite` attribute on a cookie controls its cross-domain behavior. The valid values are `None`, `Lax`, and `Strict`. After the Chrome 80 release, a cookie with a `SameSite` value of `None` must also be marked secure by setting a value of `None; Secure`.

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Spring '20 Release Notes: Prepare for Google Chrome's Changes in SameSite Cookie Behavior That Can Break Salesforce Integrations

Chrome Platform Status: Reject insecure SameSite=None cookies

Cookie Methods

The following are methods for `Cookie`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDomain()
Returns the name of the server making the request.

getMaxAge()
Returns a number representing how long the cookie is valid for, in seconds. If set to `< 0`, a session cookie is issued. If set to `0`, the cookie is deleted.

getName()
Returns the name of the cookie. Can't be `null`.

getPath()
Returns the path from which you can retrieve the cookie. If `null` or blank, the location is set to root, or "/".

getSameSite()
Returns the value for the `SameSite` attribute of the cookie.

getValue()
Returns the data captured in the cookie, such as Session ID.

isSecure()

Returns `true` if the cookie can only be accessed through HTTPS, otherwise returns `false`.

`getDomain()`

Returns the name of the server making the request.

Signature

```
public String getDomain()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getMaxAge()`

Returns a number representing how long the cookie is valid for, in seconds. If set to `< 0`, a session cookie is issued. If set to `0`, the cookie is deleted.

Signature

```
public Integer getMaxAge()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getName()`

Returns the name of the cookie. Can't be `null`.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPath()`

Returns the path from which you can retrieve the cookie. If `null` or blank, the location is set to root, or "/".

Signature

```
public String getPath()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSameSite()`

Returns the value for the `SameSite` attribute of the cookie.

Signature

```
public String getSameSite()
```

Return Value

Type: String

SEE ALSO:

web.dev: SameSite Cookies Explained

`getValue()`

Returns the data captured in the cookie, such as Session ID.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`isSecure()`

Returns `true` if the cookie can only be accessed through HTTPS, otherwise returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSecure()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Crypto Class

Provides methods for creating digests, message authentication codes, and signatures, as well as encrypting and decrypting information.

Namespace

System

Usage

The methods in the `Crypto` class can be used for securing content in Lightning Platform, or for integrating with external services such as Google or Amazon WebServices (AWS).

Encrypt and Decrypt Exceptions

The following exceptions can be thrown for these methods:

- `decrypt`
- `encrypt`
- `decryptWithManagedIV`
- `encryptWithManagedIV`

Exception	Message	Description
`InvalidParameterValue`	Unable to parse initialization vector from encrypted data.	Thrown if you're using managed initialization vectors, and the cipher text is less than 16 bytes.
`InvalidParameterValue`	Invalid algorithm *`algoName`*. Must be AES128, AES192, AES256, AES384, or AES512.	Thrown if the algorithm name isn't one of the valid values.
`InvalidParameterValue`	Invalid private key. Must be *`size`* bytes.	Thrown if size of the private key doesn't match the specified algorithm.
`InvalidParameterValue`	Invalid initialization vector. Must be 16 bytes.	Thrown if the initialization vector isn't 16 bytes.
`InvalidParameterValue`	Invalid data. Input data is *`size`* bytes, which exceeds the limit of 1048576 bytes.	Thrown if the data is greater than 1 MB. For decryption, 1048608 bytes are allowed for the initialization vector header, plus any additional padding the encryption added to align to block size.
`NullPointerException`	Argument cannot be null.	Thrown if one of the required method arguments is null.
`SecurityException`	Given final block not properly padded.	Thrown if the data isn't properly block-aligned or similar issues occur during encryption or decryption.
`SecurityException`	*`Message Varies`*	Thrown if something goes wrong during either encryption or decryption.

Crypto Methods

The following are methods for `Crypto`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

decrypt(algorithmName, privateKey, initializationVector, cipherText)

Decrypts the Blob *cipherText* using the specified algorithm, private key, and initialization vector. Use this method to decrypt blobs encrypted using a third party application or the `encrypt` method.

decryptWithManagedIV(algorithmName, privateKey, IVAndCipherText)

Decrypts the Blob *IVAndCipherText* using the specified algorithm and private key. Use this method to decrypt blobs encrypted using a third party application or the `encryptWithManagedIV` method.

encrypt(algorithmName, privateKey, initializationVector, clearText)

Encrypts the Blob *clearText* using the specified algorithm, private key and initialization vector. Use this method when you want to specify your own initialization vector.

encryptWithManagedIV(algorithmName, privateKey, clearText)

Encrypts the Blob *clearText* using the specified algorithm and private key. Use this method when you want Salesforce to generate the initialization vector for you.

generateAesKey(size)

Generates an Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) key.

generateDigest(algorithmName, input)

Computes a secure, one-way hash digest based on the supplied input string and algorithm name.

generateMac(algorithmName, input, privateKey)

Computes a message authentication code (MAC) for the input string, using the private key and the specified algorithm.

getRandomInteger()

Returns a random Integer.

getRandomLong()

Returns a random Long.

sign(algorithmName, input, privateKey)

Computes a unique digital signature for the input string, using the specified algorithm and the supplied private key.

signWithCertificate(algorithmName, input, certDevName)

Computes a unique digital signature for the input string, using the specified algorithm and the supplied certificate and key pair.

signXML(algorithmName, node, idAttributeName, certDevName)

Envelops the signature into an XML document.

signXML(algorithmName, node, idAttributeName, certDevName, refChild)

Inserts the signature envelope before the specified child node.

verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, Blob publicKey)

Verifies the digital signature for the Blob *data* using the specified algorithm and the supplied public key. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, String certDevName)

Verifies the digital signature for the Blob *data* using the specified algorithm and the public key associated with the certDevName. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

verifyHMac(String algorithmName, Blob input, Blob privateKey, Blob macToVerify)

Verifies the HMAC signature for Blob *data* using the specified algorithm, input data, privateKey, and the mac. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

decrypt(algorithmName, privateKey, initializationVector, cipherText)

Decrypts the Blob *cipherText* using the specified algorithm, private key, and initialization vector. Use this method to decrypt blobs encrypted using a third party application or the `encrypt` method.

Signature

```
public static Blob decrypt(String algorithmName, Blob privateKey, Blob
initializationVector, Blob cipherText)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

privateKey
Type: Blob

initializationVector
Type: Blob

cipherText
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

Valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- AES128
- AES192
- AES256

These algorithms are all industry standard Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithms with different size keys. They use cipher block chaining (CBC) and PKCS7 padding.

The length of *privateKey* must match the specified algorithm: 128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits, which is 16 bytes, 24 bytes, or 32 bytes, respectively. You can use a third-party application or the `generateAesKey` method to generate this key for you.

The initialization vector must be 128 bits (16 bytes.)

Example

```
Blob exampleIv = Blob.valueOf('Example of IV123');
Blob key = Crypto.generateAesKey(128);
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('Data to be encrypted');
Blob encrypted = Crypto.encrypt('AES128', key, exampleIv, data);

Blob decrypted = Crypto.decrypt('AES128', key, exampleIv, encrypted);
String decryptedString = decrypted.toString();
System.assertEquals('Data to be encrypted', decryptedString);
```

decryptWithManagedIV(algorithmName, privateKey, IVAndCipherText)

Decrypts the Blob *IVAndCipherText* using the specified algorithm and private key. Use this method to decrypt blobs encrypted using a third party application or the `encryptWithManagedIV` method.

Signature

```
public static Blob decryptWithManagedIV(String algorithmName, Blob privateKey, Blob
IVAndCipherText)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

privateKey
Type: Blob

IVAndCipherText
Type: Blob

The first 128 bits (16 bytes) of *IVAndCipherText* must contain the initialization vector.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

Valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- AES128
- AES192
- AES256

These algorithms are all industry standard Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithms with different size keys. They use cipher block chaining (CBC) and PKCS7 padding.

The length of *privateKey* must match the specified algorithm: 128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits, which is 16 bytes, 24 bytes, or 32 bytes, respectively. You can use a third-party application or the `generateAesKey` method to generate this key for you.

Example

```
Blob key = Crypto.generateAesKey(128);
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('Data to be encrypted');
Blob encrypted = Crypto.encryptWithManagedIV('AES128', key, data);

Blob decrypted = Crypto.decryptWithManagedIV('AES128', key, encrypted);
String decryptedString = decrypted.toString();
System.assertEquals('Data to be encrypted', decryptedString);
```

encrypt(algorithmName, privateKey, initializationVector, clearText)

Encrypts the Blob *clearText* using the specified algorithm, private key and initialization vector. Use this method when you want to specify your own initialization vector.

Signature

```
public static Blob encrypt(String algorithmName, Blob privateKey, Blob
initializationVector, Blob clearText)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

privateKey
Type: Blob

initializationVector
Type: Blob

clearText
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

The initialization vector must be 128 bits (16 bytes.) Use either a third-party application or the `decrypt` method to decrypt blobs encrypted using this method. Use the `encryptWithManagedIV` method if you want Salesforce to generate the initialization vector for you. It is stored as the first 128 bits (16 bytes) of the encrypted Blob.

Valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- AES128
- AES192
- AES256

These algorithms are all industry standard Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithms with different size keys. They use cipher block chaining (CBC) and PKCS7 padding.

The length of *privateKey* must match the specified algorithm: 128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits, which is 16 bytes, 24 bytes, or 32 bytes, respectively. You can use a third-party application or the `generateAesKey` method to generate this key for you.

Example

```
Blob exampleIv = Blob.valueOf('Example of IV123');
Blob key = Crypto.generateAesKey(128);
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('Data to be encrypted');
Blob encrypted = Crypto.encrypt('AES128', key, exampleIv, data);

Blob decrypted = Crypto.decrypt('AES128', key, exampleIv, encrypted);
```

```
String decryptedString = decrypted.toString();
System.assertEquals('Data to be encrypted', decryptedString);
```

encryptWithManagedIV(algorithmName, privateKey, clearText)

Encrypts the Blob *clearText* using the specified algorithm and private key. Use this method when you want Salesforce to generate the initialization vector for you.

Signature

```
public static Blob encryptWithManagedIV(String algorithmName, Blob privateKey, Blob
clearText)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

privateKey
Type: Blob

clearText
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

The initialization vector is stored as the first 128 bits (16 bytes) of the encrypted Blob. Use either third-party applications or the `decryptWithManagedIV` method to decrypt blobs encrypted with this method. Use the `encrypt` method if you want to generate your own initialization vector.

Valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- AES128
- AES192
- AES256

These algorithms are all industry standard Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) algorithms with different size keys. They use cipher block chaining (CBC) and PKCS7 padding.

The length of *privateKey* must match the specified algorithm: 128 bits, 192 bits, or 256 bits, which is 16 bytes, 24 bytes, or 32 bytes, respectively. You can use a third-party application or the `generateAesKey` method to generate this key for you.

Example

```
Blob key = Crypto.generateAesKey(128);
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('Data to be encrypted');
Blob encrypted = Crypto.encryptWithManagedIV('AES128', key, data);

Blob decrypted = Crypto.decryptWithManagedIV('AES128', key, encrypted);
```

```
String decryptedString = decrypted.toString();
System.assertEquals('Data to be encrypted', decryptedString);
```

generateAesKey(size)

Generates an Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) key.

Signature

```
public static Blob generateAesKey(Integer size)
```

Parameters

size
Type: Integer

The key's size in bits. Valid values are:

- 128
- 192
- 256

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
Blob key = Crypto.generateAesKey(128);
```

generateDigest(algorithmName, input)

Computes a secure, one-way hash digest based on the supplied input string and algorithm name.

Signature

```
public static Blob generateDigest(String algorithmName, Blob input)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

Valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- MD5
- SHA1
- SHA3-256
- SHA3-384
- SHA3-512
- SHA-256

- SHA-512

input
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
Blob targetBlob = Blob.valueOf('ExampleMD5String');
Blob hash = Crypto.generateDigest('MD5', targetBlob);
```

generateMac(algorithmName, input, privateKey)

Computes a message authentication code (MAC) for the input string, using the private key and the specified algorithm.

Signature

```
public static Blob generateMac(String algorithmName, Blob input, Blob privateKey)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

The valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- hmacMD5
- hmacSHA1
- hmacSHA256
- hmacSHA512

input
Type: Blob

privateKey
Type: Blob

The value of *privateKey* does not need to be in decoded form. The value cannot exceed 4 KB.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
String salt = String.valueOf(Crypto.getRandomInteger());
String key = 'key';
Blob data = crypto.generateMac('HmacSHA256',
Blob.valueOf(salt), Blob.valueOf(key));
```

getRandomInteger()

Returns a random Integer.

Signature

```
public static Integer getRandomInteger()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Integer randomInt = Crypto.getRandomInteger();
```

getRandomLong()

Returns a random Long.

Signature

```
public static Long getRandomLong()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
Long randomLong = Crypto.getRandomLong();
```

sign(algorithmName, input, privateKey)

Computes a unique digital signature for the input string, using the specified algorithm and the supplied private key.

Signature

```
public static Blob sign(String algorithmName, Blob input, Blob privateKey)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

The algorithm name. The valid values for *algorithmName* are `RSA`, `RSA-SHA1`, `RSA-SHA256`, `RSA-SHA384`, `RSA-SHA512`, `ECDSA-SHA256`, `ECDSA-SHA384`, and `ECDSA-SHA512`.

`RSA-SHA1` is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

`RSA-SHA256` is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`RSA-SHA384` is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`RSA-SHA512` is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`RSA` is the same as `RSA-SHA1`.

`ECDSA-SHA256` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA384` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA512` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`input`
Type: Blob

The data to sign.

`privateKey`
Type: Blob

The value of *`privateKey`* must be decoded using the `EncodingUtilbase64Decode` method, and should be in RSA's PKCS #8 (1.2) Private-Key Information Syntax Standard form. The value cannot exceed 4 KB.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

The following snippet shows how to call the `sign` method.

```
String algorithmName = 'RSA';
String key = '';
Blob privateKey = EncodingUtil.base64Decode(key);
Blob input = Blob.valueOf('12345qwerty');
Crypto.sign(algorithmName, input, privateKey);
```

signWithCertificate(algorithmName, input, certDevName)

Computes a unique digital signature for the input string, using the specified algorithm and the supplied certificate and key pair.

Signature

```
public static Blob signWithCertificate(String algorithmName, Blob input, String
certDevName)
```

Parameters

`algorithmName`
Type: String

The algorithm name. The valid values for *`algorithmName`* are `RSA`, `RSA-SHA1`, `RSA-SHA256`, `RSA-SHA384`, `RSA-SHA512`,`ECDSA-SHA256`, `ECDSA-SHA384`, and `ECDSA-SHA512`.

`RSA-SHA1` is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

`RSA-SHA256` is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`RSA-SHA384` is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`RSA-SHA512` is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`RSA` is the same as `RSA-SHA1`.

`ECDSA-SHA256` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA384` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA512` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`input`
Type: Blob

The data to sign.

`certDevName`
Type: String

The `Unique Name` for a certificate stored in the Salesforce org's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing.

To access the Certificate and Key Management page from Setup, enter *`Certificate and Key Management`* in the `Quick Find` box, then select **Certificate and Key Management**.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

The following snippet is an example of the method for signing the content referenced by `data`.

```
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('12345qwerty');
System.Crypto.signWithCertificate('RSA-SHA512', data, 'signingCert');
```

signXML(algorithmName, node, idAttributeName, certDevName)

Envelops the signature into an XML document.

Signature

```
public Void signXML(String algorithmName, Dom.XmlNode node, String idAttributeName,
String certDevName)
```

Parameters

`algorithmName`
Type: String

The RSA encryption algorithm name. Valid names are `RSA`, `RSA-SHA1`, `RSA-SHA256`, `RSA-SHA384`, `RSA-SHA512`,`ECDSA-SHA256`, `ECDSA-SHA384`, and `ECDSA-SHA512`.

`RSA-SHA1` is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

`RSA-SHA256` is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`RSA-SHA384` is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`RSA-SHA512` is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`RSA` is the same as `RSA-SHA1`.

`ECDSA-SHA256` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA384` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA512` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`node`
Type: Dom.XmlNode

The XML node to sign and insert the signature into.

`idAttributeName`
Type: String

The full name (including the namespace) of the attribute on the node (XmlNode) to use as the reference ID. If `null`, this method uses the `ID` attribute on the node. If there is no `ID` attribute, Salesforce generates a new ID and adds it to the node.

`certDevName`
Type: String

The unique name for a certificate stored in the Salesforce org's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing.

To access the Certificate and Key Management page from Setup, enter *`Certificate and Key Management`* in the `Quick Find` box, then select **Certificate and Key Management**.

Return Value

Type: void

Example

The following is an example declaration and initialization.

```
Dom.Document doc = new dom.Document();
doc.load(...);
System.Crypto.signXml('RSA-SHA512', doc.getRootElement(), null, 'signingCert');
return doc.toXmlString();
```

signXML(algorithmName, node, idAttributeName, certDevName, refChild)

Inserts the signature envelope before the specified child node.

Signature

```
public static void signXml(String algorithmName, Dom.XmlNode node, String
idAttributeName, String certDevName, Dom.XmlNode refChild)
```

Parameters

`algorithmName`
Type: String

The RSA encryption algorithm name. Valid names are `RSA`, `RSA-SHA1`, `RSA-SHA256`, `RSA-SHA384`, `RSA-SHA512`,`ECDSA-SHA256`, `ECDSA-SHA384`, and `ECDSA-SHA512`.

`RSA-SHA1` is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

`RSA-SHA256` is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`RSA-SHA384` is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`RSA-SHA512` is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`RSA` is the same as `RSA-SHA1`.

`ECDSA-SHA256` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA384` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA512` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`node`
Type: Dom.XmlNode

The XML node to sign and insert the signature into.

`idAttributeName`
Type: String

The full name (including the namespace) of the attribute on the node (XmlNode) to use as the reference ID. If `null`, this method uses the `ID` attribute on the node. If there is no `ID` attribute, Salesforce generates a new ID and adds it to the node.

`certDevName`
Type: String

The unique name for a certificate stored in the Salesforce org's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing.

To access the Certificate and Key Management page from Setup, enter *`Certificate and Key Management`* in the `Quick Find` box, then select **Certificate and Key Management**.

`refChild`
Dom.XmlNode

The XML node before which to insert the signature. If *`refChild`* is `null`, the signature is added at the end.

Return Value

Type: Void

verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, Blob publicKey)

Verifies the digital signature for the Blob *`data`* using the specified algorithm and the supplied public key. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

Signature

```
public static Blob verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, Blob
publicKey)
```

Parameters

`algorithmName`
Type: String

The algorithm name. The valid values for *`algorithmName`* are `RSA`, `RSA-SHA1`, `RSA-SHA256`, `RSA-SHA384`, `RSA-SHA512`,`ECDSA-SHA256`, `ECDSA-SHA384`, and `ECDSA-SHA512`.

`RSA-SHA1` is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

`RSA-SHA256` is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`RSA-SHA384` is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`RSA-SHA512` is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`RSA` is the same as `RSA-SHA1`.

`ECDSA-SHA256` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA384` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

`ECDSA-SHA512` is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

`data`
Type: Blob

The data to sign.

`signature`
Type:

Blob

The RSA signature.

`publicKey`
Type: Blob

The value of *`publicKey`* must be decoded using the `EncodingUtilbase64Decode` method, and be in X.509 standard.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
String algorithmName = 'RSA';
String privateKey = '';
String publicKey = '';
Blob privateKey = EncodingUtil.base64Decode(privateKey);
Blob publicKey = EncodingUtil.base64Decode(publicKey);
Blob input = Blob.valueOf('12345qwerty');
Blob signature = Crypto.sign(algorithmName, input, privateKey);
Boolean verified = Crypto.verify(algorithmName, input, signature, publicKey);
```

verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, String certDevName)

Verifies the digital signature for the Blob *`data`* using the specified algorithm and the public key associated with the certDevName. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

Signature

```
public static Blob verify(String algorithmName, Blob data, Blob signature, String
certDevName)
```

Parameters

`algorithmName`
Type: String

The algorithm name. The valid values for *algorithmName* are RSA, RSA-SHA1, RSA-SHA256, RSA-SHA384, RSA-SHA512,ECDSA-SHA256, ECDSA-SHA384, and ECDSA-SHA512.

RSA-SHA1 is an RSA signature (with an asymmetric key pair) of an SHA1 hash.

RSA-SHA256 is an RSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

RSA-SHA384 is an RSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

RSA-SHA512 is an RSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

RSA is the same as RSA-SHA1.

ECDSA-SHA256 is an ECDSA signature of an SHA256 hash.

ECDSA-SHA384 is an ECDSA signature of an SHA384 hash.

ECDSA-SHA512 is an ECDSA signature of an SHA512 hash.

data
Type: Blob

The data to sign.

signature
Type:

Blob

The RSA signature.

certDevName
Type: String

The Unique Name for a certificate stored in the Salesforce organization's Certificate and Key Management page to use for signing.

To access the Certificate and Key Management page from Setup, enter *Certificate and Key Management* in the Quick Find box, then select **Certificate and Key Management**.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Example

```
Blob data = Blob.valueOf('12345qwerty');
Blob signature = Crypto.signWithCertificate('RSA-SHA256', data, 'signingCert');
Boolean verified = Crypto.verify('RSA-SHA512', data, signature, 'signingCert');
```

verifyHMac(String algorithmName, Blob input, Blob privateKey, Blob macToVerify)

Verifies the HMAC signature for Blob *data* using the specified algorithm, input data, privateKey, and the mac. Use this method to verify a Blob signed by a digital signature created using a third-party application or the sign method.

Signature

```
public static Blob verifyHMac(String algorithmName, Blob input, Blob privateKey, Blob
macToVerify)
```

Parameters

algorithmName
Type: String

The valid values for *algorithmName* are:

- hmacMD5
- hmacSHA1
- hmacSHA256
- hmacSHA512

data
Type: Blob

The data to sign.

privateKey
Type: Blob

The value of *privateKey* does not need to be in decoded form. The value cannot exceed 4 KB.

hmacToVerify
Type: Blob

The value of the mac must be verified against the provided privateKey, data, and algorithm.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String salt = String.valueOf(Crypto.getRandomInteger());
String key = 'key';
Blob mac = Crypto.generateMac('HmacSHA256', Blob.valueOf(salt), Blob.valueOf(key));
Boolean verified = Crypto.verifyHMac('HmacSHA256', Blob.valueOf(salt), Blob.valueOf(key),
 mac);
```

Custom Metadata Type Methods

Custom metadata types are customizable, deployable, packageable, and upgradeable application metadata. All custom metadata is exposed in the application cache, which allows access without repeated queries to the database. The metadata is then available for formula fields, validation rules, flows, Apex, and SOAP API. All methods are static.

Usage

Custom metadata types methods are instance type methods and are called by and operate on a specific instance of a custom metadata type.

Custom Metadata Types Example

The following example uses the `getAll()` method. The custom metadata type named Games has a field called *GameType__c*. This example determines if the field value of the first record is equal to the string *PC*.

```
List<Games__mdt> mcs = Games__mdt.getAll().values();
boolean textField = null;
if (mcs[0].GameType__c == 'PC') {
   textField = true;
}
system.assertEquals(textField, true);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

getAll()
Returns a map containing custom metadata records for the specific custom metadata type. The map's keys are the IDs of the records and the map's values are the record sObjects.

getInstance(recordId)
Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a specified record ID.

getInstance(developerName)
Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a specified developerName field of the custom metadata type object.

getInstance(qualifiedApiName)
Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a qualified API name.

getAll()

Returns a map containing custom metadata records for the specific custom metadata type. The map's keys are the IDs of the records and the map's values are the record sObjects.

Signature

```
public Map<String, CustomMetadataType__mdt> getAll()
```

Return Value

Type: `Map<String, CustomMetadataType__mdt>`

Usage

If no records are defined for the type, this method returns an empty map. To iterate over the list of custom metadata type record sObjects, use `getAll().values()`. Only the first 255 characters of any field in a custom metadata type record are returned. Therefore, fields such as long text fields can be truncated. If you want all the field data from a custom metadata type record, use a SOQL query.

Example

This sample returns a map of all the records for a custom metadata type named `Games__mdt`.

```
Map<String, Games__mdt> mcs = Games__mdt.getAll();
```

getInstance(recordId)

Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a specified record ID.

Signature

```
public CustomMetadataType__mdt getInstance(recordId)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: `CustomMetadataType__mdt`

Usage

Use this method to explicitly retrieve custom metadata type information at the user level. Only the first 255 characters of any field in a custom metadata type record are returned. Therefore, fields such as long text fields can be truncated. If you want all the field data from a custom metadata type record, use a SOQL query.

Example

This sample returns a single record sObject for the custom metadata type named `Games_mdt` with *recordID* specified as `m00000000000001`.

```
Games__mdt mc = Games__mdt.getInstance('m00000000000001');
```

getInstance(developerName)

Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a specified developerName field of the custom metadata type object.

Signature

```
public CustomMetadataType__mdt getInstance(String developerName)
```

Parameters

developerName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: `CustomMetadataType__mdt`

Usage

Use this method to return a single custom metadata type record for the specified *developerName*. The *developerName* is the unique name of the custom metadata type object in the API. Only the first 255 characters of any field in a custom metadata type record are returned. Therefore, fields such as long text fields can be truncated. If you want all the field data from a custom metadata type record, use a SOQL query.

Example

Returns a single record sObject for the custom metadata type named `Games_mdt` with *developerName* specified as `FirstRecord`.

```
Games__mdt mc = Games__mdt.getInstance('FirstRecord');
```

getInstance(qualifiedApiName)

Returns a single custom metadata type record sObject for a qualified API name.

Signature

```
public CustomMetadataType__mdt getInstance(String qualifiedApiName)
```

Parameters

qualifiedApiName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: `CustomMetadataType__mdt`

Usage

Use this method to return a single custom metadata type record for the specified *qualifiedApiName*. The *qualifiedApiName* is a concatenation of the namespace prefix and developerName, and has this format: *namespacePrefix__developerName*. The developerName is the unique name of the custom metadata type object in the API. Only the first 255 characters of any field in a custom metadata type record are returned. Therefore, fields such as long text fields can be truncated. If you want all the field data from a custom metadata type record, use a SOQL query.

Example

This sample returns a single record sObject for the custom metadata type named `Games_mdt` with qualified API name specified as `MyNamespace__FirstRecord`.

```
Games__mdt mc = Games__mdt.getInstance('MyNamespace__FirstRecord');
```

Custom Settings Methods

Custom settings are similar to custom objects and enable application developers to create custom sets of data, as well as create and associate custom data for an organization, profile, or specific user. All custom settings data is exposed in the application cache, which enables efficient access without the cost of repeated queries to the database. This data is then available for formula fields, validation rules, flows, Apex, and the SOAP API.

Usage

Custom settings methods are all instance methods, that is, they are called by and operate on a specific instance of a custom setting. There are two types of custom settings: hierarchy and list. There are two types of methods: methods that work with list custom settings, and methods that work with hierarchy custom settings.

Note: All custom settings data is exposed in the application cache, which enables efficient access without the cost of repeated queries to the database. However, querying custom settings data using Standard Object Query Language (SOQL) doesn't use the application cache and is similar to querying a custom object. To benefit from caching, use other methods for accessing custom settings data such as the Apex Custom Settings methods.

For more information on creating custom settings in the Salesforce user interface, see "Create Custom Settings" in the Salesforce online help.

Custom Setting Examples

The following example uses a list custom setting called `Games`. The `Games` setting has a field called `GameType`. This example determines if the value of the first data set is equal to the string `PC`.

```
List<Games__C> mcs = Games__c.getall().values();
boolean textField = null;
if (mcs[0].GameType__c == 'PC') {
  textField = true;
}
system.assertEquals(textField, true);
```

The following example uses a custom setting called `Foundation_Countries`. This example demonstrates that the `getValues` and `getInstance` methods return identical values.

```
Foundation_Countries__c myCS1 = Foundation_Countries__c.getValues('United States');
String myCCVal = myCS1.Country_code__c;
Foundation_Countries__c myCS2 = Foundation_Countries__c.getInstance('United States');
String myCCInst = myCS2.Country_code__c;
system.assertEquals(myCCinst, myCCVal);
```

Hierarchy Custom Setting Examples

In the following example, the hierarchy custom setting GamesSupport has a field called `Corporate_number`. The code returns the value for the profile specified with `pid`.

```
GamesSupport__c mhc = GamesSupport__c.getInstance(pid);
string mPhone = mhc.Corporate_number__c;
```

The example is identical if you choose to use the `getValues` method.

The following example shows how to use hierarchy custom settings methods. For `getInstance`, the example shows how field values that aren't set for a specific user or profile are returned from fields defined at the next lowest level in the hierarchy. The example also shows how to use `getOrgDefaults`.

Finally, the example demonstrates how `getValues` returns fields in the custom setting record only for the specific user or profile, and doesn't merge values from other levels of the hierarchy. Instead, `getValues` returns `null` for any fields that aren't set. This example uses a hierarchy custom setting called Hierarchy. Hierarchy has two fields: `OverrideMe` and `DontOverrideMe`. In addition, a user named Robert has a System Administrator profile. The organization, profile, and user settings for this example are as follows:

Organization settings

`OverrideMe`: Hello

`DontOverrideMe`: World

Profile settings

`OverrideMe`: Goodbye

`DontOverrideMe` is not set.

User settings

`OverrideMe`: Fluffy

`DontOverrideMe` is not set.

The following example demonstrates the result of the `getInstance` method when Robert calls it in his organization:

```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getInstance();
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Fluffy');
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == 'World');
```

If Robert passes his user ID specified by `RobertId` to `getInstance`, the results are the same. The identical results are because the lowest level of data in the custom setting is specified at the user level.

```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getInstance(RobertId);
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Fluffy');
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == 'World');
```

If Robert passes the System Administrator profile ID specified by `SysAdminID` to `getInstance`, the result is different. The data specified for the profile is returned:

```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getInstance(SysAdminID);
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Goodbye');
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == 'World');
```

When Robert tries to return the data set for the organization using `getOrgDefaults`, the result is:

```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getOrgDefaults();
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Hello');
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == 'World');
```

By using the `getValues` method, Robert can get the hierarchy custom setting values specific to his user and profile settings. For example, if Robert passes his user ID `RobertId` to `getValues`, the result is:

```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getValues(RobertId);
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Fluffy');
// Note how this value is null, because you are returning
// data specific for the user
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == null);
```

If Robert passes his System Administrator profile ID `SysAdminID` to `getValues`, the result is:

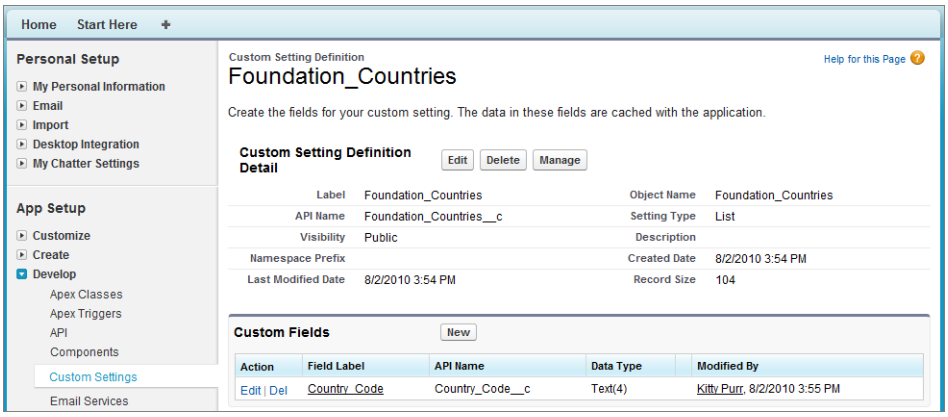
```
Hierarchy__c CS = Hierarchy__c.getValues(SysAdminID);
System.Assert(CS.OverrideMe__c == 'Goodbye');
// Note how this value is null, because you are returning
// data specific for the profile
System.assert(CS.DontOverrideMe__c == null);
```

Country and State Code Custom Settings Example

This example illustrates using two custom setting objects for storing related information, and a Visualforce page to display the data in a set of related picklists.

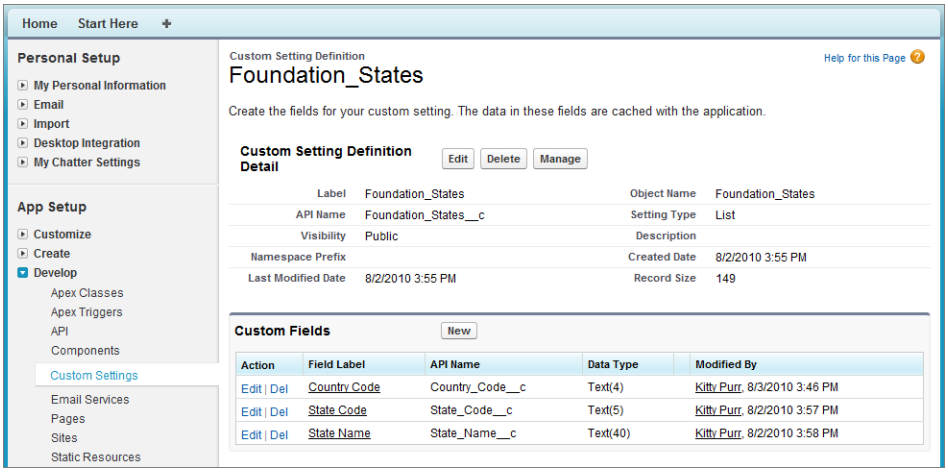
In the following example, country and state codes are stored in two different custom settings: Foundation_Countries and Foundation_States.

The Foundation_Countries custom setting is a list type custom setting and has a single field, `Country_Code`.

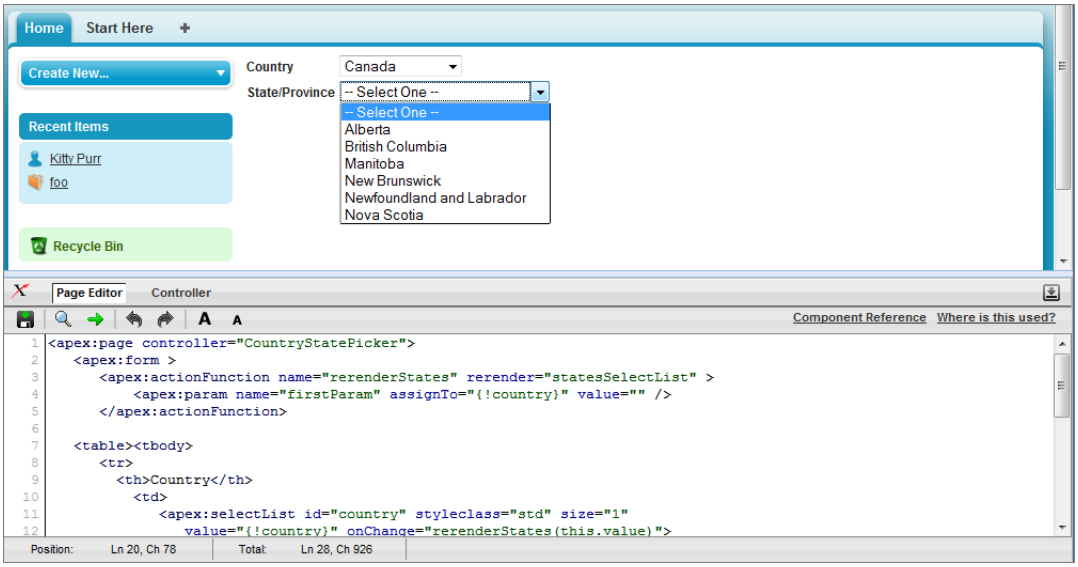


The Foundation_States custom setting is also a List type of custom setting and has the following fields:

- `Country Code`
- `State Code`
- `State Name`



The Visualforce page shows two picklists: one for country and one for state.




```
<apex:page controller="CountryStatePicker">
   <apex:form >
      <apex:actionFunction name="rerenderStates" rerender="statesSelectList" >
          <apex:param name="firstParam" assignTo="{!country}" value="" />
      </apex:actionFunction>

   <table><tbody>
      <tr>
        <th>Country</th>
          <td>
             <apex:selectList id="country" styleclass="std" size="1"
                value="{!country}" onChange="rerenderStates(this.value)">
                    <apex:selectOptions value="{!countriesSelectList}"/>
             </apex:selectList>
          </td>
      </tr>
      <tr id="state_input">
        <th>State/Province</th>
          <td>
            <apex:selectList id="statesSelectList" styleclass="std" size="1"
                 value="{!state}">
                   <apex:selectOptions value="{!statesSelectList}"/>
            </apex:selectList>
          </td>
      </tr>
   </tbody></table>
   </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

The Apex controller `CountryStatePicker` finds the values entered into the custom settings, then returns them to the Visualforce page.

```
public with sharing class CountryStatePicker {

// Variables to store country and state selected by user
    public String state { get; set; }
    public String country {get; set;}

    // Generates country dropdown from country settings
    public List<SelectOption> getCountriesSelectList() {
        List<SelectOption> options = new List<SelectOption>();
        options.add(new SelectOption('', '-- Select One --'));

        // Find all the countries in the custom setting
       Map<String, Foundation_Countries__c> countries = Foundation_Countries__c.getAll();


        // Sort them by name
        List<String> countryNames = new List<String>();
        countryNames.addAll(countries.keySet());
        countryNames.sort();

        // Create the Select Options.
        for (String countryName : countryNames) {
            Foundation_Countries__c country = countries.get(countryName);
            options.add(new SelectOption(country.country_code__c, country.Name));
        }
        return options;
    }

    // To generate the states picklist based on the country selected by user.
    public List<SelectOption> getStatesSelectList() {
        List<SelectOption> options = new List<SelectOption>();
        // Find all the states we have in custom settings.
        Map<String, Foundation_States__c> allstates = Foundation_States__c.getAll();

        // Filter states that belong to the selected country
       Map<String, Foundation_States__c> states = new Map<String, Foundation_States__c>();

        for(Foundation_States__c state : allstates.values()) {
            if (state.country_code__c == this.country) {
                states.put(state.name, state);
            }
        }

        // Sort the states based on their names
        List<String> stateNames = new List<String>();
        stateNames.addAll(states.keySet());
        stateNames.sort();

        // Generate the Select Options based on the final sorted list
        for (String stateName : stateNames) {
            Foundation_States__c state = states.get(stateName);
            options.add(new SelectOption(state.state_code__c, state.state_name__c));
```

```
        }

        // If no states are found, just say not required in the dropdown.
        if (options.size() > 0) {
            options.add(0, new SelectOption('', '-- Select One --'));
        } else {
            options.add(new SelectOption('', 'Not Required'));
        }
        return options;
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

List Custom Setting Methods

Hierarchy Custom Setting Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Custom Settings

List Custom Setting Methods

The following are instance methods for list custom settings.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAll()
Returns a map of the data sets defined for the custom setting.

getInstance(dataSetName)
Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified data set name. This method returns the exact same object as `getValues(dataSetName)`.

getValues(dataSetName)
Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified data set name. This method returns the exact same object as `getInstance(dataSetName)`.

`getAll()`

Returns a map of the data sets defined for the custom setting.

Signature

```
public Map<String, CustomSetting__c> getAll()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, CustomSetting__c>

Usage

If no data set is defined, this method returns an empty map.

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 20.0 or earlier, the data set names, which are the keys in the returned map, are converted to lower case. For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 21.0 and later, the case of the data set names in the returned map keys is not changed and the original case is preserved.

`getInstance(dataSetName)`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified data set name. This method returns the exact same object as `getValues(dataSetName)`.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getInstance(String dataSetName)
```

Parameters

dataSetName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no data is defined for the specified data set, this method returns `null`.

`getValues(dataSetName)`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified data set name. This method returns the exact same object as `getInstance(dataSetName)`.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getValues(String dataSetName)
```

Parameters

dataSetName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no data is defined for the specified data set, this method returns `null`.

Hierarchy Custom Setting Methods

The following are instance methods for hierarchy custom settings.

Note:

- In API version 41.0 and below, each method in an Apex test class, including `testSetup` methods, are able to insert hierarchy custom setting values. This behavior is true even when the methods have the same `SetupOwnerId` value as a hierarchy custom setting record inserted in a different test method.
- In API version 42.0 and later, if a hierarchy custom setting is inserted in a `testSetup` method, inserting a hierarchy custom setting record with the same `SetupOwnerId` in a test method throws a `DUPLICATE_VALUE` exception.

IN THIS SECTION:

getInstance()

Returns a custom setting data set record for the current user. The fields returned in the custom setting record are merged based on the lowest level fields that are defined in the hierarchy.

getInstance(userId)

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified user ID. The lowest level custom setting record and fields are returned. Use this when you want to explicitly retrieve data for the custom setting at the user level.

getInstance(profileId)

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified profile ID. The lowest level custom setting record and fields are returned. Use this when you want to explicitly retrieve data for the custom setting at the profile level.

getOrgDefaults()

Returns the custom setting data set record for the organization.

getValues(userId)

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified user ID.

getValues(profileId)

Returns the custom setting data set for the specified profile ID.

`getInstance()`

Returns a custom setting data set record for the current user. The fields returned in the custom setting record are merged based on the lowest level fields that are defined in the hierarchy.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getInstance()
```

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no custom setting data is defined for the user, this method returns a new custom setting object. The new custom setting object contains an ID set to `null` and merged fields from higher in the hierarchy. You can add this new custom setting record for the user

by using `insert` or `upsert`. If no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, the returned custom setting has empty fields, except for the `SetupOwnerId` field which contains the user ID.

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 21.0 or earlier, this method returns the custom setting data set record with fields merged from field values defined at the lowest hierarchy level, starting with the user. Also, if no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, this method returns `null`.

This method is equivalent to a method call to `getInstance(User_Id)` for the current user.

Example

- Custom setting data set defined for the user: If you have a custom setting data set defined for the user "Uriel Jones," for the profile "System Administrator," and for the organization as a whole, and the user running the code is Uriel Jones, this method returns the custom setting record defined for Uriel Jones.
- Merged fields: If you have a custom setting data set with fields A and B for the user "Uriel Jones" and for the profile "System Administrator," and field A is defined for Uriel Jones, field B is `null` but is defined for the System Adminitrator profile, this method returns the custom setting record for Uriel Jones with field A for Uriel Jones and field B from the System Administrator profile.
- No custom setting data set record defined for the user: If the current user is "Barbara Mahonie," who also shares the "System Administrator" profile, but no data is defined for Barbara as a user, this method returns a new custom setting record with the ID set to `null` and with fields merged based on the fields defined in the lowest level in the hierarchy.

`getInstance(userId)`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified user ID. The lowest level custom setting record and fields are returned. Use this when you want to explicitly retrieve data for the custom setting at the user level.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getInstance(ID userId)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no custom setting data is defined for the user, this method returns a new custom setting object. The new custom setting object contains an ID set to `null` and merged fields from higher in the hierarchy. You can add this new custom setting record for the user by using `insert` or `upsert`. If no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, the returned custom setting has empty fields, except for the `SetupOwnerId` field which contains the user ID.

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 21.0 or earlier, this method returns the custom setting data set record with fields merged from field values defined at the lowest hierarchy level, starting with the user. Also, if no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, this method returns `null`.

`getInstance(profileId)`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified profile ID. The lowest level custom setting record and fields are returned. Use this when you want to explicitly retrieve data for the custom setting at the profile level.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getInstance(ID profileId)
```

Parameters

profileId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no custom setting data is defined for the profile, this method returns a new custom setting record. The new custom setting object contains an ID set to `null` and with merged fields from your organization's default values. You can add this new custom setting for the profile by using `insert` or `upsert`. If no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, the returned custom setting has empty fields, except for the `SetupOwnerId` field which contains the profile ID.

Note: For Apex saved using SalesforceAPI version 21.0 or earlier, this method returns the custom setting data set record with fields merged from field values defined at the lowest hierarchy level, starting with the profile. Also, if no custom setting data is defined in the hierarchy, this method returns `null`.

`getOrgDefaults()`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the organization.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getOrgDefaults()
```

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

If no custom setting data is defined for the organization, this method returns an empty custom setting object.

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 21.0 or earlier, this method returns `null` if no custom setting data is defined for the organization.

`getValues(userId)`

Returns the custom setting data set record for the specified user ID.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getValues(ID userId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

Use this if you only want the subset of custom setting data that has been defined at the user level. For example, suppose you have a custom setting field that has been assigned a value of "alpha" at the organizational level, but has no value assigned at the user or profile level. Using `getValues(UserId)` returns `null` for this custom setting field.

getValues(profileId)

Returns the custom setting data set for the specified profile ID.

Signature

```
public CustomSetting__c getValues(ID profileId)
```

Parameters

profileId
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: CustomSetting__c

Usage

Use this if you only want the subset of custom setting data that has been defined at the profile level. For example, suppose you have a custom setting field that has been assigned a value of "alpha" at the organizational level, but has no value assigned at the user or profile level. Using `getValues(ProfileId)` returns `null` for this custom setting field.

Database Class

Contains methods for creating and manipulating data.

Namespace

System

Usage

Some Database methods also exist as DML statements.

SEE ALSO:

Apex DML Operations

Database Methods

The following are methods for `Database`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

convertLead(leadToConvert, allOrNone)

Converts a lead into an account and contact, as well as (optionally) an opportunity.

convertLead(leadsToConvert, allOrNone)

Converts a list of LeadConvert objects into accounts and contacts, as well as (optionally) opportunities.

countQuery(query)

Returns the number of records that a dynamic SOQL query would return when executed.

delete(recordToDelete, allOrNone)

Deletes an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's data.

delete(recordsToDelete, allOrNone)

Deletes a list of existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

delete(recordID, allOrNone)

Deletes existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

delete(recordIDs, allOrNone)

Deletes a list of existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

deleteAsync(sobjects, callback)

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processDelete` method is called for each record after deletion.

deleteAsync(sobject, callback)

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processDelete` method is called after deletion.

deleteAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

deleteAsync(sobject)

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

deleteImmediate(sobjects)

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

deleteImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

emptyRecycleBin(recordIds)

Permanently deletes the specified records from the Recycle Bin.

emptyRecycleBin(obj)

Permanently deletes the specified sObject from the Recycle Bin.

emptyRecycleBin(listOfSObjects)

Permanently deletes the specified sObjects from the Recycle Bin.

executeBatch(batchClassObject)

Submits a batch Apex job for execution corresponding to the specified class.

executeBatch(batchClassObject, scope)

Submits a batch Apex job for execution using the specified class and scope.

getAsyncDeleteResult(deleteResult)

Retrieves the status of an asynchronous delete operation that's identified by a `Database.DeleteResult` object.

getAsyncDeleteResult(asyncLocator)

Retrieves the result of an asynchronous delete operation based on the result's unique identifier.

getAsyncLocator(result)

Returns the `asyncLocator` associated with the result of a specified asynchronous insert, update, or delete operation.

getAsyncSaveResult(saveResult)

Returns the status of an asynchronous insert or update operation that's identified by a `Database.SaveResult` object.

getAsyncSaveResult(asyncLocator)

Returns the status of an asynchronous insert or update operation based on the unique identifier associated with each modification.

getDeleted(sObjectType, startDate, endDate)

Returns the list of individual records that have been deleted for an sObject type within the specified start and end dates and times and that are still in the Recycle Bin.

getQueryLocator(listofQueries)

Creates a QueryLocator object used in batch Apex or Visualforce.

getQueryLocator(query)

Creates a QueryLocator object used in batch Apex or Visualforce.

getUpdated(sobjectType, startDate, endDate)

Returns the list of individual records that have been updated for an sObject type within the specified start and end dates and times.

insert(recordToInsert, allOrNone)

Adds an sObject, such as an individual account or contact, to your organization's data.

insert(recordsToInsert, allOrNone)

Adds one or more sObjects, such as individual accounts or contacts, to your organization's data.

insert(recordToInsert, dmlOptions)

Adds an sObject, such as an individual account or contact, to your organization's data.

insert(recordsToInsert, dmlOptions)

Adds one or more sObjects, such as individual accounts or contacts, to your organization's data.

insertAsync(sobjects, callback)

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called for each record after the remote operations are completed.

insertAsync(sobject, callback)

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called after the remote operation is completed.

insertAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

insertAsync(sobject)

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

insertImmediate(sobjects)

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

insertImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateId)

Merges the specified duplicate record into the master sObject record of the same type, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records. Merges only accounts, contacts, or leads.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecord)

Merges the specified duplicate sObject record into the master sObject of the same type, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateIds)

Merges up to two records of the same sObject type into the master sObject record, deleting the others, and reparenting any related records.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecords)

Merges up to two records of the same object type into the master sObject record, deleting the others, and reparenting any related records.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateId, allOrNone)

Merges the specified duplicate record into the master sObject record of the same type, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records. Merges only accounts, contacts, or leads.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecord, allOrNone)

Merges the specified duplicate sObject record into the master sObject of the same type, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateIds, allOrNone)

Merges up to two records of the same sObject type into the master sObject record, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicates, and reparenting any related records.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecords, allOrNone)

Merges up to two records of the same object type into the master sObject record, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicates, and reparenting any related records.

query(queryString)

Creates a dynamic SOQL query at runtime.

rollback(databaseSavepoint)

Restores the database to the state specified by the savepoint variable. Any emails submitted since the last savepoint are also rolled back and not sent.

setSavepoint()

Returns a savepoint variable that can be stored as a local variable, then used with the `rollback` method to restore the database to that point.

undelete(recordToUndelete, allOrNone)

Restores an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

undelete(recordsToUndelete, allOrNone)

Restores one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization’s Recycle Bin.

undelete(recordID, allOrNone)

Restores an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

undelete(recordIDs, allOrNone)

Restores one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization’s Recycle Bin.

update(recordToUpdate, allOrNone)

Modifies an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, in your organization's data.

update(recordsToUpdate, allOrNone)

Mmodifies one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, in your organization’s data.

update(recordToUpdate, dmlOptions)

Modifies an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, in your organization's data.

update(recordsToUpdate, dmlOptions)

Mmodifies one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, in your organization’s data.

upsert(recordToUpsert, externalIdField, allOrNone)

Creates a new sObject record or updates an existing sObject record within a single statement, using a specified field to determine the presence of existing objects, or the ID field if no field is specified.

upsert(recordsToUpsert, externalIdField, allOrNone)

Creates new sObject records or updates existing sObject records within a single statement, using a specified field to determine the presence of existing objects, or the ID field if no field is specified.

updateAsync(sobjects, callback)

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called for each record after the remote operations are completed.

updateAsync(sobject, callback)

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called after the remote operation is completed.

updateAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

updateAsync(sobject)

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

updateImmediate(sobjects)

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

updateImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

convertLead(leadToConvert, allOrNone)

Converts a lead into an account and contact, as well as (optionally) an opportunity.

Signature

```
public static Database.LeadConvertResult convertLead(Database.LeadConvert leadToConvert,
Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

leadToConvert
Type: Database.LeadConvert

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.LeadConvertResult

Usage

The `convertLead` method accepts up to 100 `LeadConvert` objects.

Each executed `convertLead` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

convertLead(leadsToConvert, allOrNone)

Converts a list of LeadConvert objects into accounts and contacts, as well as (optionally) opportunities.

Signature

```
public static Database.LeadConvertResult[] convertLead(Database.LeadConvert[]
leadsToConvert, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

leadsToConvert
Type: Database.LeadConvert[]

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.LeadConvertResult[]

Usage

The `convertLead` method accepts up to 100 `LeadConvert` objects.

Each executed `convertLead` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

countQuery(query)

Returns the number of records that a dynamic SOQL query would return when executed.

Signature

```
public static Integer countQuery(String query)
```

Parameters

query
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

For more information, see Dynamic SOQL.

Each executed `countQuery` method counts against the governor limit for SOQL queries.

Example

```
String QueryString =
    'SELECT count() FROM Account';
Integer i =
    Database.countQuery(QueryString);
```

delete(recordToDelete, allOrNone)

Deletes an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult delete(SObject recordToDelete, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordToDelete
Type: sObject

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

Usage

`delete` is analogous to the `delete()` statement in the SOAP API.

Each executed `delete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

delete(recordsToDelete, allOrNone)

Deletes a list of existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult[] delete(SObject[] recordsToDelete, Boolean
allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordsToDelete
Type: sObject[]

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult[]

Usage

`delete` is analogous to the `delete()` statement in the SOAP API.

Each executed `delete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

Example

The following example deletes an account named 'DotCom':

```
Account[] doomedAccts = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'DotCom'];
Database.DeleteResult[] DR_Dels = Database.delete(doomedAccts);
```

delete(recordID, allOrNone)

Deletes existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult delete(ID recordID, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordID
Type: ID

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

Usage

`delete` is analogous to the `delete()` statement in the SOAP API.

Each executed `delete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`delete(recordIDs, allOrNone)`

Deletes a list of existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult[] delete(ID[] recordIDs, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

`recordIDs`
Type: ID[]

`allOrNone`
Type: Boolean

The optional *`allOrNone`* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult[]

Usage

`delete` is analogous to the `delete()` statement in the SOAP API.

Each executed `delete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`deleteAsync(sobjects, callback)`

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processDelete` method is called for each record after deletion.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.DeleteResult> deleteAsync(List<SObject> sobjects,
DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback callback)
```

Parameters

`sobjects`
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to delete.

callback
Type: DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback

The callback that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processDelete` method) that is executed after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback`.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.DeleteResult>

Status results for the delete operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncDeleteResult()`.

deleteAsync(sobject, callback)

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processDelete` method is called after deletion.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult deleteAsync(SObject sobject,
DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback callback)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

The external object record to delete.

callback
Type: DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback

The callback that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processDelete` method) that is executed after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncDeleteCallback`.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

Status result for the delete operation. The result corresponds to the record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncDeleteResult()`.

deleteAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.DeleteResult> deleteAsync(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to delete.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.DeleteResult>

Status results for the delete operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncDeleteResult()`.

`deleteAsync(sobject)`

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult deleteAsync(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

The external object record to delete.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

Status result for the delete operation. The result corresponds to the record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncDeleteResult()`.

`deleteImmediate(sobjects)`

Initiates requests to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object records. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.DeleteResult> deleteImmediate(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to delete.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.DeleteResult>

Status results for the delete operation.

Usage

The batch limit for big objects using `deleteImmediate()` is 50,000 records at once.

deleteImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to delete the external data that corresponds to the specified external object record. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult deleteImmediate(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

The external object record to delete.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

Status result for the delete operation.

emptyRecycleBin(recordIds)

Permanently deletes the specified records from the Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult[] emptyRecycleBin(ID [] recordIds)
```

Parameters

recordIds
Type: ID[]

Return Value

Type: Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult[]

Usage

Note the following:

- After records are deleted using this method, they cannot be undeleted.
- Only 10,000 records can be specified for deletion.
- Logged in users can delete any record that they can query in their Recycle Bin, or the recycle bins of any subordinates. If logged in users have "Modify All Data" permission, they can query and delete records from any Recycle Bin in the organization.
- Cascade delete record IDs should not be included in the list of IDs; otherwise an error occurs. For example, if an account record is deleted, all related contacts, opportunities, contracts, and so on are also deleted. Only include the Id of the top-level account. All related records are automatically removed.
- Deleted items are added to the number of items processed by a DML statement, and the method call is added to the total number of DML statements issued. Each executed `emptyRecycleBin` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`emptyRecycleBin(obj)`

Permanently deletes the specified sObject from the Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult emptyRecycleBin(sObject obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: sObject

Return Value

Type: Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult

Usage

Note the following:

- After an sObject is deleted using this method, it cannot be undeleted.
- Only 10,000 sObjects can be specified for deletion.
- The logged-in user can delete any sObject (that can be queried) in their Recycle Bin, or the recycle bins of any subordinates. If the logged-in user has "Modify All Data" permission, they can query and delete sObjects from any Recycle Bin in the organization.
- Do not include an sObject that was deleted due to a cascade delete; otherwise an error occurs. For example, if an account is deleted, all related contacts, opportunities, contracts, and so on are also deleted. Only include sObjects of the top-level account. All related sObjects are automatically removed.
- Deleted items are added to the number of items processed by a DML statement, and the method call is added to the total number of DML statements issued. Each executed `emptyRecycleBin` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

emptyRecycleBin(listOfSObjects)

Permanently deletes the specified sObjects from the Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult[] emptyRecycleBin(sObject[] listOfSObjects)
```

Parameters

listOfSObjects
Type: sObject[]

Return Value

Type: Database.EmptyRecycleBinResult[]

Usage

Note the following:

- After an sObject is deleted using this method, it cannot be undeleted.
- Only 10,000 sObjects can be specified for deletion.
- The logged-in user can delete any sObject (that can be queried) in their Recycle Bin, or the recycle bins of any subordinates. If the logged-in user has "Modify All Data" permission, they can query and delete sObjects from any Recycle Bin in the organization.
- Do not include an sObject that was deleted due to a cascade delete; otherwise an error occurs. For example, if an account is deleted, all related contacts, opportunities, contracts, and so on are also deleted. Only include sObjects of the top-level account. All related sObjects are automatically removed.
- Deleted items are added to the number of items processed by a DML statement, and the method call is added to the total number of DML statements issued. Each executed `emptyRecycleBin` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

executeBatch(batchClassObject)

Submits a batch Apex job for execution corresponding to the specified class.

Signature

```
public static ID executeBatch(Object batchClassObject)
```

Parameters

batchClassObject
Type: Object

An instance of a class that implements the Database.Batchable interface.

Return Value

Type: ID

The ID of the new batch job (AsyncApexJob).

If the `executeBatch` call fails to acquire an Apex flex queue lock, the call returns an empty ID, "000000000000000", instead of throwing an exception.

Usage

When calling this method, Salesforce chunks the records returned by the `start` method of the batch class into batches of 200, and then passes each batch to the `execute` method. Apex governor limits are reset for each execution of `execute`.

For more information, see Using Batch Apex.

executeBatch(batchClassObject, scope)

Submits a batch Apex job for execution using the specified class and scope.

Signature

```
public static ID executeBatch(Object batchClassObject, Integer scope)
```

Parameters

batchClassObject
Type: Object

An instance of a class that implements the Database.Batchable interface.

scope
Type: Integer

Number of records to be passed into the `execute` method for batch processing.

Return Value

Type: ID

The ID of the new batch job (AsyncApexJob).

If the `executeBatch` call fails to acquire an Apex flex queue lock, the call returns an empty ID, "000000000000000", instead of throwing an exception.

Usage

The value for *scope* must be greater than 0.

If the `start` method of the batch class returns a Database.QueryLocator, the scope parameter of `Database.executeBatch` can have a maximum value of 2,000. If set to a higher value, Salesforce chunks the records returned by the QueryLocator into smaller batches of up to 200 records. If the `start` method of the batch class returns an iterable, the scope parameter value has no upper limit; however, if you use a very high number, you could run into other limits.

Apex governor limits are reset for each execution of `execute`.

For more information, see Using Batch Apex.

getAsyncDeleteResult(deleteResult)

Retrieves the status of an asynchronous delete operation that's identified by a `Database.DeleteResult` object.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult getAsyncDeleteResult(Database.DeleteResult
deleteResult)
```

Parameters

deleteResult
Type: Database.DeleteResult

The result record for the delete operation being retrieved.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

The result of a completed asynchronous delete of a record or records.

getAsyncDeleteResult(asyncLocator)

Retrieves the result of an asynchronous delete operation based on the result's unique identifier.

Signature

```
public static Database.DeleteResult getAsyncDeleteResult(String asyncLocator)
```

Parameters

asyncLocator
Type: String

The unique identifier associated with the result of an asynchronous operation.

Return Value

Type: Database.DeleteResult

The result of a completed asynchronous delete of a record or records.

getAsyncLocator(result)

Returns the `asyncLocator` associated with the result of a specified asynchronous insert, update, or delete operation.

Signature

```
public static String getAsyncLocator(Object result)
```

Parameters

result
Type: Object

The saved result of an asynchronous insert, update, or delete operation. The result object can be of type `Database.SaveResult` or `Database.DeleteResult`.

Return Value

Type: String

The unique identifier associated with the result of the specified operation.

getAsyncSaveResult(saveResult)

Returns the status of an asynchronous insert or update operation that's identified by a `Database.SaveResult` object.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult getAsyncSaveResult(Database.SaveResult saveResult)
```

Parameters

saveResult
Type: Database.SaveResult

The result record for the insert or update operation being retrieved.

Return Value

Database.SaveResult

The result of a completed asynchronous operation on a record or records.

getAsyncSaveResult(asyncLocator)

Returns the status of an asynchronous insert or update operation based on the unique identifier associated with each modification.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult getAsyncSaveResult(String asyncLocator)
```

Parameters

asyncLocator
Type: String

The unique identifier associated with the result of an asynchronous operation.

Return Value

Database.SaveResult

The result of a completed asynchronous operation on a record or records.

getDeleted(sObjectType, startDate, endDate)

Returns the list of individual records that have been deleted for an sObject type within the specified start and end dates and times and that are still in the Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.GetDeletedResult getDeleted(String sObjectType, Datetime
startDate, Datetime endDate)
```

Parameters

sObjectType
Type: String

The *sObjectType* argument is the sObject type name for which to get the deleted records, such as account or merchandise__c.

startDate
Type: Datetime

Start date and time of the deleted records time window.

endDate
Type: Datetime

End date and time of the deleted records time window.

Return Value

Type: Database.GetDeletedResult

Usage

Because the Recycle Bin holds records up to 15 days, results are returned for no more than 15 days previous to the day the call is executed (or earlier if an administrator has purged the Recycle Bin).

Example

```
Database.GetDeletedResult r =
 Database.getDeleted(
  'Merchandise__c',
  Datetime.now().addHours(-1),
  Datetime.now());
```

getQueryLocator(listofQueries)

Creates a QueryLocator object used in batch Apex or Visualforce.

Signature

```
public static Database. QueryLocator getQueryLocator(sObject [] listOfQueries)
```

Parameters

listOfQueries
Type: sObject []

Return Value

Type: Database.QueryLocator

Usage

You can't use `getQueryLocator` with any query that contains an aggregate function.

Each executed `getQueryLocator` method counts against the governor limit of 10,000 total records retrieved and the total number of SOQL queries issued.

For more information, see Understanding Apex Managed Sharing, and IdeaStandardSetController Class.

`getQueryLocator(query)`

Creates a QueryLocator object used in batch Apex or Visualforce.

Signature

```
public static Database.QueryLocator getQueryLocator(String query)
```

Parameters

query
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Database.QueryLocator

Usage

You can't use `getQueryLocator` with any query that contains an aggregate function.

Each executed `getQueryLocator` method counts against the governor limit of 10,000 total records retrieved and the total number of SOQL queries issued.

For more information, see Understanding Apex Managed Sharing, and StandardSetController Class.

`getUpdated(sobjectType, startDate, endDate)`

Returns the list of individual records that have been updated for an sObject type within the specified start and end dates and times.

Signature

```
public static Database.GetUpdatedResult getUpdated(String sobjectType, Datetime
startDate, Datetime endDate)
```

Parameters

sobjectType
Type: String

The *sObjectType* argument is the sObject type name for which to get the updated records, such as account or merchandise__c.

startDate
Type: Datetime

The *startDate* argument is the start date and time of the updated records time window.

endDate
Type: Datetime

The *endDate* argument is the end date and time of the updated records time window.

Return Value

Type: Database.GetUpdatedResult

Usage

The date range for the returned results is no more than 30 days previous to the day the call is executed.

Example

```
Database.GetUpdatedResult r =
 Database.getUpdated(
  'Merchandise__c',
  Datetime.now().addHours(-1),
  Datetime.now());
```

insert(recordToInsert, allOrNone)

Adds an sObject, such as an individual account or contact, to your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insert(sObject recordToInsert, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordToInsert
Type: sObject

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Usage

`insert` is analogous to the INSERT statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `insert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`insert(recordsToInsert, allOrNone)`

Adds one or more sObjects, such as individual accounts or contacts, to your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult[] insert(sObject[] recordsToInsert, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

`recordsToInsert`
Type: sObject []

`allOrNone`
Type: Boolean

The optional *`allOrNone`* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult[]

Usage

`insert` is analogous to the INSERT statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `insert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

Example

Example:

The following example inserts two accounts:

```
Account a = new Account(name = 'Acme1');
Database.SaveResult[] lsr = Database.insert(
    new Account[]{a, new Account(Name = 'Acme2')},
    false);
```

`insert(recordToInsert, dmlOptions)`

Adds an sObject, such as an individual account or contact, to your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insert(sObject recordToInsert, Database.DMLOptions
dmlOptions)
```

Parameters

recordToInsert
Type: sObject

dmlOptions
Type: Database.DMLOptions

The optional *dmlOptions* parameter specifies additional data for the transaction, such as assignment rule information or rollback behavior when errors occur during record insertions.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Usage

`insert` is analogous to the INSERT statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `insert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`insert(recordsToInsert, dmlOptions)`

Adds one or more sObjects, such as individual accounts or contacts, to your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insert(sObject[] recordsToInsert, Database.DMLOptions
dmlOptions)
```

Parameters

recordsToInsert
Type: sObject[]

dmlOptions
Type: Database.DMLOptions

The optional *dmlOptions* parameter specifies additional data for the transaction, such as assignment rule information or rollback behavior when errors occur during record insertions.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult[]

Usage

`insert` is analogous to the INSERT statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `insert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`insertAsync(sobjects, callback)`

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called for each record after the remote operations are completed.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> insertAsync(List<SObject> sobjects,
DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback callback)
```

Parameters

`sobjects`
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to insert.

`callback`
Type: DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback

The callback object that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processSave` method) that executes after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback`.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the insert operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

Usage

`Database.insertAsync()` methods can't be executed in the context of a portal user, even when the portal user is a community member. To add external object records via Apex, use `Database.insertImmediate()` methods.

insertAsync(sobject, callback)

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called after the remote operation is completed.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insertAsync(SObject sobject,
DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback callback)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

The external object record to insert.

callback
Type: DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback

The callback object that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processSave` method) that executes after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback`.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the insert operation. The result corresponds to the record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

Usage

`Database.insertAsync()` methods can't be executed in the context of a portal user, even when the portal user is a community member. To add external object records via Apex, use `Database.insertImmediate()` methods.

insertAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> insertAsync(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to insert.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the insert operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

Usage

`Database.insertAsync()` methods can't be executed in the context of a portal user, even when the portal user is a community member. To add external object records via Apex, use `Database.insertImmediate()` methods.

`insertAsync(sobject)`

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insertAsync(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

`sobject`
Type: SObject

The external object record to insert.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the insert operation. The result corresponds to the record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

Usage

`Database.insertAsync()` methods can't be executed in the context of a portal user, even when the portal user is a community member. To add external object records via Apex, use `Database.insertImmediate()` methods.

`insertImmediate(sobjects)`

Initiates requests to add external object data to the relevant external systems. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> insertImmediate(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to insert.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the insert operation.

insertImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to add external object data to the relevant external system. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult insertImmediate(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

The external object record to insert.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the insert operation.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateId)

Merges the specified duplicate record into the master sObject record of the same type, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records. Merges only accounts, contacts, or leads.

Signature

```
public static Database.MergeResult merge(sObject masterRecord, Id duplicateId)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: sObject

The master sObject record the duplicate record is merged into.

duplicateId
Type: ID

The ID of the record to merge with the master. This record must be of the same sObject type as the master.

Return Value

Type: Database.MergeResult

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecord)

Merges the specified duplicate sObject record into the master sObject of the same type, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static Database.MergeResult merge(sObject masterRecord, sObject duplicateRecord)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: sObject

The master sObject record the duplicate record is merged into.

duplicateRecord
Type: sObject

The sObject record to merge with the master. This sObject must be of the same type as the master.

Return Value

Type: Database.MergeResult

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateIds)

Merges up to two records of the same sObject type into the master sObject record, deleting the others, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.MergeResult> merge(sObject masterRecord, List<Id>
duplicateIds)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: SObject

The master sObject record the other records are merged into.

duplicateIds
Type: List<Id>

A list of IDs of up to two records to merge with the master. These records must be of the same sObject type as the master.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.MergeResult>

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecords)

Merges up to two records of the same object type into the master sObject record, deleting the others, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.MergeResult> merge(sObject masterRecord, List<SObject>
duplicateRecords)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: SObject

The master sObject record the other sObjects are merged into.

duplicateRecords
Type: List<SObject>

A list of up to two sObject records to merge with the master. These sObjects must be of the same type as the master.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.MergeResult>

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

merge(masterRecord, duplicateId, allOrNone)

Merges the specified duplicate record into the master sObject record of the same type, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records. Merges only accounts, contacts, or leads.

Signature

```
public static Database.MergeResult merge(sObject masterRecord, Id duplicateId, Boolean
allOrNone)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: sObject

The master sObject record the duplicate record is merged into.

duplicate
Type: ID

The ID of the record to merge with the master. This record must be of the same sObject type as the master.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

Set to `false` to return any errors encountered in this operation as part of the returned result. If set to `true`, this method throws an exception if the operation fails. The default is `true`.

Return Value

Type: Database.MergeResult

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecord, allOrNone)`

Merges the specified duplicate sObject record into the master sObject of the same type, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicate, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static Database.MergeResult merge(sObject masterRecord, sObject duplicateRecord,
Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: sObject

The master sObject record the duplicate record is merged into.

duplicateRecord
Type: sObject

The sObject record to merge with the master. This sObject must be of the same type as the master.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

Set to `false` to return any errors encountered in this operation as part of the returned result. If set to `true`, this method throws an exception if the operation fails. The default is `true`.

Return Value

Type: Database.MergeResult

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`merge(masterRecord, duplicateIds, allOrNone)`

Merges up to two records of the same sObject type into the master sObject record, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicates, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.MergeResult> merge(sObject masterRecord, List<Id>
duplicateIds, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: SObject

The master sObject record the other records are merged into.

duplicateIds
Type: List<Id>

A list of IDs of up to two records to merge with the master. These records must be of the same sObject type as the master.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

Set to `false` to return any errors encountered in this operation as part of the returned result. If set to `true`, this method throws an exception if the operation fails. The default is `true`.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.MergeResult>

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`merge(masterRecord, duplicateRecords, allOrNone)`

Merges up to two records of the same object type into the master sObject record, optionally returning errors, if any, deleting the duplicates, and reparenting any related records.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.MergeResult> merge(sObject masterRecord, List<SObject>
duplicateRecords, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

masterRecord
Type: sObject

The master sObject record the other sObjects are merged into.

duplicateRecords
Type: List<SObject>

A list of up to two sObject records to merge with the master. These sObjects must be of the same type as the master.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

Set to `false` to return any errors encountered in this operation as part of the returned result. If set to `true`, this method throws an exception if the operation fails. The default is `true`.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.MergeResult>

Usage

Each executed `merge` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

query(queryString)

Creates a dynamic SOQL query at runtime.

Signature

```
public static sObject[] query(String queryString)
```

Parameters

queryString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: sObject[]

Usage

This method can be used wherever a static SOQL query can be used, such as in regular assignment statements and `for` loops. Unlike inline SOQL, fields in bind variables are not supported.

For more information, see Dynamic SOQL.

Each executed `query` method counts against the governor limit for SOQL queries.

rollback(databaseSavepoint)

Restores the database to the state specified by the savepoint variable. Any emails submitted since the last savepoint are also rolled back and not sent.

Signature

```
public static Void rollback(System.Savepoint databaseSavepoint)
```

Parameters

databaseSavepoint
Type: System.Savepoint

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Note the following:

- Static variables are not reverted during a rollback. If you try to run the trigger again, the static variables retain the values from the first run.
- Each rollback counts against the governor limit for DML statements. You will receive a runtime error if you try to rollback the database additional times.
- The ID on an sObject inserted after setting a savepoint is not cleared after a rollback. Create an sObject to insert after a rollback. Attempting to insert the sObject using the variable created before the rollback fails because the sObject variable has an ID. Updating or upserting the sObject using the same variable also fails because the sObject is not in the database and, thus, cannot be updated.

For an example, see Transaction Control.

`setSavepoint()`

Returns a savepoint variable that can be stored as a local variable, then used with the `rollback` method to restore the database to that point.

Signature

```
public static System.Savepoint setSavepoint()
```

Return Value

Type: System.Savepoint

Usage

Note the following:

- If you set more than one savepoint, then roll back to a savepoint that is not the last savepoint you generated, the later savepoint variables become invalid. For example, if you generated savepoint `SP1` first, savepoint `SP2` after that, and then you rolled back to `SP1`, the variable `SP2` would no longer be valid. You will receive a runtime error if you try to use it.
- References to savepoints cannot cross trigger invocations because each trigger invocation is a new trigger context. If you declare a savepoint as a static variable then try to use it across trigger contexts, you will receive a run-time error.
- Each savepoint you set counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

For an example, see Transaction Control.

undelete(recordToUndelete, allOrNone)

Restores an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.UndeleteResult undelete(sObject recordToUndelete, Boolean
allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordToUndelete
Type: sObject

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UndeleteResult

Usage

`undelete` is analogous to the UNDELETE statement in SQL.

Each executed `undelete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

undelete(recordsToUndelete, allOrNone)

Restores one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.UndeleteResult[] undelete(sObject[] recordsToUndelete, Boolean
allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordsToUndelete
Type: sObject []

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UndeleteResult[]

Usage

`undelete` is analogous to the UNDELETE statement in SQL.

Each executed `undelete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

Example

The following example restores all accounts named 'Universal Containers'. The `ALL ROWS` keyword queries all rows for both top-level and aggregate relationships, including deleted records and archived activities.

```
Account[] savedAccts = [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account
                                                    WHERE Name = 'Universal
 Containers' ALL ROWS];
Database.UndeleteResult[] UDR_Dels = Database.undelete(savedAccts);
```

`undelete(recordID, allOrNone)`

Restores an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.UndeleteResult undelete(ID recordID, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordID
Type: ID

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UndeleteResult

Usage

`undelete` is analogous to the UNDELETE statement in SQL.

Each executed `undelete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`undelete(recordIDs, allOrNone)`

Restores one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, from your organization's Recycle Bin.

Signature

```
public static Database.UndeleteResult[] undelete(ID[] recordIDs, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

RecordIDs
Type: ID[]

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UndeleteResult[]

Usage

`undelete` is analogous to the UNDELETE statement in SQL.

Each executed `undelete` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

update(recordToUpdate, allOrNone)

Modifies an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, in your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult update(sObject recordToUpdate, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordToUpdate
Type: sObject

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Usage

`update` is analogous to the UPDATE statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `update` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

Example

The following example updates the `BillingCity` field on a single account.

```
Account a = new Account(Name='SFDC');
insert(a);

Account myAcct =
  [SELECT Id, Name, BillingCity
   FROM Account WHERE Id = :a.Id];
myAcct.BillingCity = 'San Francisco';

Database.SaveResult SR =
  Database.update(myAcct);
```

`update(recordsToUpdate, allOrNone)`

Mmodifies one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, in your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult[] update(sObject[] recordsToUpdate, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

`recordsToUpdate`
Type: sObject []

`allOrNone`
Type: Boolean

The optional *`allOrNone`* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult[]

Usage

`update` is analogous to the UPDATE statement in SQL.

Each executed `update` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

update(recordToUpdate, dmlOptions)

Modifies an existing sObject record, such as an individual account or contact, in your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult update(sObject recordToUpdate, Database.DmlOptions
dmlOptions)
```

Parameters

recordToUpdate
Type: sObject

dmlOptions
Type: Database.DMLOptions

The optional *dmlOptions* parameter specifies additional data for the transaction, such as assignment rule information or rollback behavior when errors occur during record insertions.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Usage

`update` is analogous to the UPDATE statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `update` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

update(recordsToUpdate, dmlOptions)

Mmodifies one or more existing sObject records, such as individual accounts or contacts, in your organization's data.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult[] update(sObject[] recordsToUpdate, Database.DMLOptions
dmlOptions)
```

Parameters

recordsToUpdate
Type: sObject []

dmlOptions
Type: Database.DMLOptions

The optional *dmlOptions* parameter specifies additional data for the transaction, such as assignment rule information or rollback behavior when errors occur during record insertions.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult[]

Usage

`update` is analogous to the UPDATE statement in SQL.

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `update` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

`upsert(recordToUpsert, externalIdField, allOrNone)`

Creates a new sObject record or updates an existing sObject record within a single statement, using a specified field to determine the presence of existing objects, or the ID field if no field is specified.

Signature

```
public static Database.UpsertResult upsert(sObject recordToUpsert, Schema.SObjectField externalIDField, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordToUpsert
Type: sObject

externalIdField
Type: Schema.SObjectField

(Optional) The *externalIdField* is of type `Schema.SObjectField`, that is, a field token. Find the token for the field by using the `fields` special method. For example, `Schema.SObjectField f = Account.Fields.MyExternalId`. The *externalIdField* parameter is the field that `upsert()` uses to match sObjects with existing records. This field can be a custom field marked as external ID, or a standard field with the `idLookup` attribute.

Note: If *externalIdField* isn't specified, then the ID field is used to determine a match with existing records.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UpsertResult

Usage

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `upsert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

For more information on how the upsert operation works, see the upsert() statement.

`upsert(recordsToUpsert, externalIdField, allOrNone)`

Creates new sObject records or updates existing sObject records within a single statement, using a specified field to determine the presence of existing objects, or the ID field if no field is specified.

Signature

```
public static Database.UpsertResult[] upsert(sObject[] recordsToUpsert,
Schema.SObjectField externalIdField, Boolean allOrNone)
```

Parameters

recordsToUpsert
Type: sObject []

externalIdField
Type: Schema.SObjectField

(Optional) The *externalIdField* is of type `Schema.SObjectField`, that is, a field token. Find the token for the field by using the `fields` special method. For example, `Schema.SObjectField f = Account.Fields.MyExternalId`. The *externalIdField* parameter is the field that `upsert()` uses to match sObjects with existing records. This field can be a custom field marked as external ID, or a standard field with the `idLookup` attribute.

Note: If *externalIdField* is not specified, then the ID field is used to determine a match with existing records.

allOrNone
Type: Boolean

The optional *allOrNone* parameter specifies whether the operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this parameter and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why. If the parameter is not set or is set `true`, an exception is thrown if the method is not successful.

Return Value

Type: Database.UpsertResult[]

Usage

Apex classes and triggers saved (compiled) using API version 15.0 and higher produce a runtime error if you assign a String value that is too long for the field.

Each executed `upsert` method counts against the governor limit for DML statements.

For more information on how the upsert operation works, see the upsert() statement.

`updateAsync(sobjects, callback)`

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called for each record after the remote operations are completed.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> updateAsync(List<SObject> sobjects,
DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback callback)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to modify.

callback
Type: DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback

The callback object that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processSave` method) that executes after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback`.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the update operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

`updateAsync(sobject, callback)`

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. Allows referencing a callback class whose `processSave` method is called after the remote operation is completed.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult updateAsync(SObject sobject,
DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback callback)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

External object record to modify.

callback
Type: DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback

The callback object that contains the state in the originating context and an action (the `processSave` method) that executes after the insert operation is completed. Use the action callback to update org data according to the operation's results. The callback object must extend `DataSource.AsyncSaveCallback`.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the insert operation. The result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

updateAsync(sobjects)

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed asynchronously, as background operations, and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> updateAsync(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to modify.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the update operation. Each result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

updateAsync(sobject)

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed asynchronously, as a background operation, and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult updateAsync(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

External object record to modify.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the insert operation. The result corresponds to a record processed by this asynchronous operation and is associated with a unique identifier (`asyncLocator`). The `asyncLocator` value is included in the errors array of the result. You can retrieve this identifier with `Database.getAsyncLocator()`. Retrieve the final result with `Database.getAsyncSaveResult()`.

updateImmediate(sobjects)

Initiates requests to update external object data on the relevant external systems. The requests are executed synchronously and are sent to the external systems that are defined by the external objects' associated external data sources. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operations can't be completed and throw exceptions.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> updateImmediate(List<SObject> sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of external object records to modify.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

Status results for the update operation.

updateImmediate(sobject)

Initiates a request to update external object data on the relevant external system. The request is executed synchronously and is sent to the external system that's defined by the external object's associated external data source. If the Apex transaction contains pending changes, the synchronous operation can't be completed and throws an exception.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult updateImmediate(SObject sobject)
```

Parameters

sobject
Type: SObject

External object record to modify.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

Status result for the update operation.

Date Class

Contains methods for the Date primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Dates, see Date Data Type.

Date Methods

The following are methods for `Date`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addDays(additionalDays)
Adds the specified number of additional days to a Date.

addMonths(additionalMonths)
Adds the specified number of additional months to a Date

addYears(additionalYears)
Adds the specified number of additional years to a Date

day()
Returns the day-of-month component of a Date.

dayOfYear()
Returns the day-of-year component of a Date.

daysBetween(secondDate)
Returns the number of days between the Date that called the method and the specified date.

daysInMonth(year, month)
Returns the number of days in the month for the specified *`year`* and *`month`* (1=Jan).

format()
Returns the Date as a string using the locale of the context user

isLeapYear(year)
Returns `true` if the specified year is a leap year.

isSameDay(dateToCompare)
Returns `true` if the Date that called the method is the same as the specified date.

month()
Returns the month component of a Date (1=Jan).

monthsBetween(secondDate)
Returns the number of months between the Date that called the method and the specified date, ignoring the difference in days.

newInstance(year, month, day)
Constructs a Date from Integer representations of the *`year`*, *`month`* (1=Jan), and *`day`*.

parse(stringDate)
Constructs a Date from a String. The format of the String depends on the local date format.

today()
Returns the current date in the current user's time zone.

toStartOfMonth()
Returns the first of the month for the Date that called the method.

toStartOfWeek()

Returns the start of the week for the Date that called the method, depending on the context user's locale.

valueOf(stringDate)

Returns a Date that contains the value of the specified String.

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Date. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Date value.

year()

Returns the year component of a Date

addDays(additionalDays)

Adds the specified number of additional days to a Date.

Signature

```
public Date addDays(Integer additionalDays)
```

Parameters

additionalDays
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
Date myDate = Date.newInstance(1960, 2, 17);
Date newDate = mydate.addDays(2);
```

addMonths(additionalMonths)

Adds the specified number of additional months to a Date

Signature

```
public Date addMonths(Integer additionalMonths)
```

Parameters

additionalMonths
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1990, 11, 21);
date newDate = myDate.addMonths(3);
date expectedDate = date.newInstance(1991, 2, 21);
system.assertEquals(expectedDate, newDate);
```

addYears(additionalYears)

Adds the specified number of additional years to a Date

Signature

```
public Date addYears(Integer additionalYears)
```

Parameters

additionalYears
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1983, 7, 15);
date newDate = myDate.addYears(2);
date expectedDate = date.newInstance(1985, 7, 15);
system.assertEquals(expectedDate, newDate);
```

day()

Returns the day-of-month component of a Date.

Signature

```
public Integer day()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1989, 4, 21);
Integer day = myDate.day();
system.assertEquals(21, day);
```

dayOfYear()

Returns the day-of-year component of a Date.

Signature

```
public Integer dayOfYear()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1998, 10, 21);
Integer day = myDate.dayOfYear();
system.assertEquals(294, day);
```

daysBetween(secondDate)

Returns the number of days between the Date that called the method and the specified date.

Signature

```
public Integer daysBetween(Date secondDate)
```

Parameters

secondDate
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If the Date that calls the method occurs after the *secondDate*, the return value is negative.

Example

```
Date startDate = Date.newInstance(2008, 1, 1);
Date dueDate = Date.newInstance(2008, 1, 30);
Integer numberDaysDue = startDate.daysBetween(dueDate);
```

daysInMonth(year, month)

Returns the number of days in the month for the specified *year* and *month* (1=Jan).

Signature

```
public static Integer daysInMonth(Integer year, Integer month)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

The following example finds the number of days in the month of February in the year 1960.

```
Integer numberDays = date.daysInMonth(1960, 2);
```

`format()`

Returns the Date as a string using the locale of the context user

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
// In American-English locale
date myDate = date.newInstance(2001, 3, 21);
String dayString = myDate.format();
system.assertEquals('3/21/2001', dayString);
```

`isLeapYear(year)`

Returns `true` if the specified year is a leap year.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isLeapYear(Integer year)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
system.assert(Date.isLeapYear(2004));
```

isSameDay(dateToCompare)

Returns `true` if the Date that called the method is the same as the specified date.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSameDay(Date dateToCompare)
```

Parameters

dateToCompare
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
date myDate = date.today();
date dueDate = date.newInstance(2008, 1, 30);
boolean dueNow = myDate.isSameDay(dueDate);
```

month()

Returns the month component of a Date (1=Jan).

Signature

```
public Integer month()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(2004, 11, 21);
Integer month = myDate.month();
system.assertEquals(11, month);
```

monthsBetween(secondDate)

Returns the number of months between the Date that called the method and the specified date, ignoring the difference in days.

Signature

```
public Integer monthsBetween(Date secondDate)
```

Parameters

secondDate
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Date firstDate = Date.newInstance(2006, 12, 2);
Date secondDate = Date.newInstance(2012, 12, 8);
Integer monthsBetween = firstDate.monthsBetween(secondDate);
System.assertEquals(72, monthsBetween);
```

newInstance(year, month, day)

Constructs a Date from Integer representations of the *year*, *month* (1=Jan), and *day*.

Signature

```
public static Date newInstance(Integer year, Integer month, Integer day)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

day
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

The following example creates the date February 17th, 1960:

```
Date myDate = date.newinstance(1960, 2, 17);
```

parse(stringDate)

Constructs a Date from a String. The format of the String depends on the local date format.

Signature

```
public static Date parse(String stringDate)
```

Parameters

stringDate
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

The following example works in some locales.

```
date mydate = date.parse('12/27/2009');
```

today()

Returns the current date in the current user's time zone.

Signature

```
public static Date today()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

toStartOfMonth()

Returns the first of the month for the Date that called the method.

Signature

```
public Date toStartOfMonth()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1987, 12, 17);
date firstDate = myDate.toStartOfMonth();
date expectedDate = date.newInstance(1987, 12, 1);
system.assertEquals(expectedDate, firstDate);
```

toStartOfWeek()

Returns the start of the week for the Date that called the method, depending on the context user's locale.

Signature

```
public Date toStartOfWeek()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

For example, the start of a week is Sunday in the United States locale, and Monday in European locales. For example:

```
Date myDate = Date.today();
Date weekStart = myDate.toStartofWeek();
```

valueOf(stringDate)

Returns a Date that contains the value of the specified String.

Signature

```
public static Date valueOf(String stringDate)
```

Parameters

stringDate
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Date

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" in the local time zone.

Example

```
string year = '2008';
string month = '10';
```

```
string day = '5';
string hour = '12';
string minute = '20';
string second = '20';
string stringDate = year + '-' + month
 + '-' + day + ' ' + hour + ':' +
minute + ':' + second;

Date myDate = date.valueOf(stringDate);
```

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Date. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Date value.

Signature

```
public static Date valueOf(Object fieldValue)
```

Parameters

fieldValue
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Date

Usage

Use this method with the `OldValue` or `NewValue` fields of history sObjects, such as `AccountHistory`, when the field is a Date field.

Note: In API version 33.0 or earlier, if you call `Date.valueOf` with an object that represents a `Datetime`, the method returns a `Date` value that contains the hours, minutes, and seconds. In version 34.0 and later, `Date.valueOf` converts the object to a valid `Date` without the time information. To convert a variable of type `Datetime` to a `Date`, use the Datetime.date method.

Example

This example converts history tracking fields to `Date` values.

```
List<AccountHistory> ahlist = [SELECT Field,OldValue,NewValue FROM AccountHistory];
for(AccountHistory ah : ahlist) {
  System.debug('Field: ' + ah.Field);
  if (ah.field == 'MyDate__c') {
    Date oldValue = Date.valueOf(ah.OldValue);
    Date newValue = Date.valueOf(ah.NewValue);
  }
}
```

year()

Returns the year component of a Date

Signature

```
public Integer year()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
date myDate = date.newInstance(1988, 12, 17);
system.assertEquals(1988, myDate.year());
```

Datetime Class

Contains methods for the Datetime primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information about the Datetime, see Datetime Data Type.

Datetime Methods

The following are methods for `Datetime`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addDays(additionalDays)
Adds the specified number of days to a Datetime.

addHours(additionalHours)
Adds the specified number of hours to a Datetime.

addMinutes(additionalMinutes)
Adds the specified number of minutes to a Datetime.

addMonths(additionalMonths)
Adds the specified number of months to a Datetime.

addSeconds(additionalSeconds)
Adds the specified number of seconds to a Datetime.

addYears(additionalYears)
Adds the specified number of years to a Datetime.

date()

Returns the Date component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

dateGMT()

Return the Date component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

day()

Returns the day-of-month component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

dayGmt()

Returns the day-of-month component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

dayOfYear()

Returns the day-of-year component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

dayOfYearGmt()

Returns the day-of-year component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

format()

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date as a formatted string using the locale of the context user. If the time zone cannot be determined, GMT is used.

format(dateFormatString)

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date as a string using the supplied Java simple date format. If the time zone cannot be determined, GMT is used.

format(dateFormatString, timezone)

Converts the date to the specified time zone and returns the converted date as a string using the supplied Java simple date format. If the supplied time zone is not in the correct format, GMT is used.

formatGmt(dateFormatString)

Returns a Datetime as a string using the supplied Java simple date format and the GMT time zone.

formatLong()

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date in long date format.

getTime()

Returns the number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 GMT represented by this DateTime object.

hour()

Returns the hour component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

hourGmt()

Returns the hour component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

isSameDay(dateToCompare)

Returns true if the Datetime that called the method is the same as the specified Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

millisecond()

Return the millisecond component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

millisecondGmt()

Return the millisecond component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

minute()

Returns the minute component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

minuteGmt()

Returns the minute component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

month()

Returns the month component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user (1=Jan).

monthGmt()

Returns the month component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone (1=Jan).

newInstance(milliseconds)

Constructs a Datetime and initializes it to represent the specified number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 GMT.

newInstance(date, time)

Constructs a DateTime from the specified date and time in the local time zone.

newInstance(year, month, day)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), and day at midnight in the local time zone.

newInstance(year, month, day, hour, minute, second)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), day, hour, minute, and second in the local time zone.

newInstanceGmt(date, time)

Constructs a DateTime from the specified date and time in the GMT time zone.

newInstanceGmt(year, month, date)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), and day at midnight in the GMT time zone

newInstanceGmt(year, month, date, hour, minute, second)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), day, hour, minute, and second in the GMT time zone

now()

Returns the current Datetime based on a GMT calendar.

parse(datetimeString)

Constructs a Datetime from the given String in the local time zone and in the format of the user locale.

second()

Returns the second component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

secondGmt()

Returns the second component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

time()

Returns the time component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

timeGmt()

Returns the time component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

valueOf(dateTimeString)

Returns a Datetime that contains the value of the specified string.

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Datetime. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Datetime value.

valueOfGmt(dateTimeString)

Returns a Datetime that contains the value of the specified String.

year()

Returns the year component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

yearGmt()
Returns the year component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

addDays(additionalDays)

Adds the specified number of days to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addDays(Integer additionalDays)
```

Parameters

additionalDays
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
Datetime myDateTime = Datetime.newInstance(1960, 2, 17);
Datetime newDateTime = myDateTime.addDays(2);
Datetime expected = Datetime.newInstance(1960, 2, 19);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

addHours(additionalHours)

Adds the specified number of hours to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addHours(Integer additionalHours)
```

Parameters

additionalHours
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1997, 1, 31, 7, 8, 16);
DateTime newDateTime = myDateTime.addHours(3);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(1997, 1, 31, 10, 8, 16);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

addMinutes(additionalMinutes)

Adds the specified number of minutes to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addMinutes(Integer additionalMinutes)
```

Parameters

additionalMinutes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1999, 2, 11, 8, 6, 16);
DateTime newDateTime = myDateTime.addMinutes(7);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(1999, 2, 11, 8, 13, 16);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

addMonths(additionalMonths)

Adds the specified number of months to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addMonths(Integer additionalMonths)
```

Parameters

additionalMonths
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2000, 7, 7, 7, 8, 12);
DateTime newDateTime = myDateTime.addMonths(1);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2000, 8, 7, 7, 8, 12);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

addSeconds(additionalSeconds)

Adds the specified number of seconds to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addSeconds(Integer additionalSeconds)
```

Parameters

additionalSeconds
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2001, 7, 19, 10, 7, 12);
DateTime newDateTime = myDateTime.addSeconds(4);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2001, 7, 19, 10, 7, 16);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

addYears(additionalYears)

Adds the specified number of years to a Datetime.

Signature

```
public Datetime addYears(Integer additionalYears)
```

Parameters

additionalYears
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2009, 12, 17, 13, 6, 6);
DateTime newDateTime = myDateTime.addYears(1);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2010, 12, 17, 13, 6, 6);
System.assertEquals(expected, newDateTime);
```

date()

Returns the Date component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Date date()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2006, 3, 16, 12, 6, 13);
Date myDate = myDateTime.date();
Date expected = Date.newInstance(2006, 3, 16);
System.assertEquals(expected, myDate);
```

dateGMT()

Return the Date component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Date dateGMT()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Example

```
// California local time, PST
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2006, 3, 16, 23, 0, 0);
Date myDate = myDateTime.dateGMT();
Date expected = Date.newInstance(2006, 3, 17);
System.assertEquals(expected, myDate);
```

day()

Returns the day-of-month component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer day()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1986, 2, 21, 23, 0, 0);
System.assertEquals(21, myDateTime.day());
```

dayGmt()

Returns the day-of-month component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer dayGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
// California local time, PST
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1987, 1, 14, 23, 0, 3);
System.assertEquals(15, myDateTime.dayGMT());
```

dayOfYear()

Returns the day-of-year component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer dayOfYear()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

For example, February 5, 2008 08:30:12 would be day 36.

```
Datetime myDate = Datetime.newInstance(2008, 2, 5, 8, 30, 12);
system.assertEquals(myDate.dayOfYear(), 36);
```

dayOfYearGmt()

Returns the day-of-year component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer dayOfYearGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
// This sample assumes we are in the PST timezone
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1999, 2, 5, 23, 0, 3);
// January has 31 days + 5 days in February = 36 days
// dayOfYearGmt() adjusts the time zone from the current time zone to GMT
```

```
// by adding 8 hours to the PST time zone, so it's 37 days and not 36 days
System.assertEquals(37, myDateTime.dayOfYearGmt());
```

format()

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date as a formatted string using the locale of the context user. If the time zone cannot be determined, GMT is used.

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

Note: The sample is executed in an org where the "Enable ICU Locale Formats" crucial update is enabled. See https://releasenotes.docs.salesforce.com/en-us/spring20/release-notes/rn_forcecom_globalization_enable_icu_cruc.htm.

```
DateTime.myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1993, 6, 6, 3, 3, 3);
system.assertEquals('6/6/1993, 3:03 AM', mydatetime.format());
```

format(dateFormatString)

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date as a string using the supplied Java simple date format. If the time zone cannot be determined, GMT is used.

Signature

```
public String format(String dateFormatString)
```

Parameters

dateFormatString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For more information on the Java simple date format, see Java SimpleDateFormat.

Example

```
Datetime myDT = Datetime.now();
String myDate = myDT.format('h:mm a');
```

format(dateFormatString, timezone)

Converts the date to the specified time zone and returns the converted date as a string using the supplied Java simple date format. If the supplied time zone is not in the correct format, GMT is used.

Signature

```
public String format(String dateFormatString, String timezone)
```

Parameters

dateFormatString
Type: String

timezone
Type: String

Valid time zone values for the *timezone* argument are the time zones of the Java TimeZone class that correspond to the time zones returned by the TimeZone.getAvailableIDs method in Java. We recommend you use full time zone names, not the three-letter abbreviations.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For more information on the Java simple date format, see Java SimpleDateFormat.

Example

This example uses `format` to convert a GMT date to the America/New_York time zone and formats the date using the specified date format.

```
Datetime GMTDate =
  Datetime.newInstanceGmt(2011,6,1,12,1,5);
String strConvertedDate =
  GMTDate.format('MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss',
                 'America/New_York');
// Date is converted to
// the new time zone and is adjusted
// for daylight saving time.
System.assertEquals(
  '06/01/2011 08:01:05', strConvertedDate);
```

formatGmt(dateFormatString)

Returns a Datetime as a string using the supplied Java simple date format and the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public String formatGmt(String dateFormatString)
```

Parameters

dateFormatString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For more information on the Java simple date format, see Java SimpleDateFormat.

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1993, 6, 6, 3, 3, 3);
String formatted = myDateTime.formatGMT('EEE, MMM d yyyy HH:mm:ss');
String expected = 'Sun, Jun 6 1993 10:03:03';
System.assertEquals(expected, formatted);
```

formatLong()

Converts the date to the local time zone and returns the converted date in long date format.

Signature

```
public String formatLong()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
// Passing local date based on the PST time zone
Datetime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2012,12,28,10,0,0);
// Writes 12/28/2012 10:00:00 AM PST
System.debug('dt.formatLong()=' + dt.formatLong());
```

getTime()

Returns the number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 GMT represented by this DateTime object.

Signature

```
public Long getTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2007, 6, 23, 3, 3, 3);
Long gettime = dt.getTime();
Long expected = 1182592983000L;
System.assertEquals(expected, gettime);
```

hour()

Returns the hour component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer hour()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(1998, 11, 21, 3, 3, 3);
System.assertEquals(3 , myDateTime.hour());
```

hourGmt()

Returns the hour component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer hourGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
// California local time
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2000, 4, 27, 3, 3, 3);
System.assertEquals(10 , myDateTime.hourGMT());
```

isSameDay(dateToCompare)

Returns true if the Datetime that called the method is the same as the specified Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSameDay(Datetime dateToCompare)
```

Parameters

dateToCompare
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
datetime myDate = datetime.now();
datetime dueDate =
     datetime.newInstance(2008, 1, 30);
boolean dueNow = myDate.isSameDay(dueDate);
```

millisecond()

Return the millisecond component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer millisecond()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.now();
system.debug(myDateTime.millisecond());
```

millisecondGmt()

Return the millisecond component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer millisecondGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.now();
system.debug(myDateTime.millisecondGMT());
```

minute()

Returns the minute component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer minute()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2001, 2, 27, 3, 3, 3);
system.assertEquals(3, myDateTime.minute());
```

minuteGmt()

Returns the minute component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer minuteGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2002, 12, 3, 3, 3, 3);
system.assertEquals(3, myDateTime.minuteGMT());
```

month()

Returns the month component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user (1=Jan).

Signature

```
public Integer month()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2004, 11, 4, 3, 3, 3);
system.assertEquals(11, myDateTime.month());
```

monthGmt()

Returns the month component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone (1=Jan).

Signature

```
public Integer monthGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime myDateTime = DateTime.newInstance(2006, 11, 19, 3, 3, 3);
system.assertEquals(11, myDateTime.monthGMT());
```

newInstance(milliseconds)

Constructs a Datetime and initializes it to represent the specified number of milliseconds since January 1, 1970, 00:00:00 GMT.

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstance(Long milliseconds)
```

Parameters

milliseconds
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Example

```
Long longtime = 1341828183000L;
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(longtime);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2012, 7, 09, 3, 3, 3);
System.assertEquals(expected, dt);
```

newInstance(date, time)

Constructs a DateTime from the specified date and time in the local time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstance(Date date, Time time)
```

Parameters

date
Type: Date

time
Type: Time

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Example

```
Date myDate = Date.newInstance(2011, 11, 18);
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(3, 3, 3, 0);
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(myDate, myTime);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2011, 11, 18, 3, 3, 3);
System.assertEquals(expected, dt);
```

newInstance(year, month, day)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), and day at midnight in the local time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstance(Integer year, Integer month, Integer day)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

day
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Example

```
datetime myDate = datetime.newInstance(2008, 12, 1);
```

newInstance(year, month, day, hour, minute, second)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), day, hour, minute, and second in the local time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstance(Integer year, Integer month, Integer day, Integer hour, Integer minute, Integer second)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

day
Type: Integer

hour
Type: Integer

minute
Type: Integer

second
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Example

```
Datetime myDate = Datetime.newInstance(2008, 12, 1, 12, 30, 2);
```

newInstanceGmt(date, time)

Constructs a DateTime from the specified date and time in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstanceGmt(Date date, Time time)
```

Parameters

date
Type: Date

time
Type: Time

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
Date myDate = Date.newInstance(2013, 11, 12);
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(3, 3, 3, 0);
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(myDate, myTime);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(2013, 11, 12, 3, 3, 3);
System.assertEquals(expected, dt);
```

newInstanceGmt(year, month, date)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), and day at midnight in the GMT time zone

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstanceGmt(Integer year, Integer month, Integer date)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

date
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(1996, 3, 22);
```

newInstanceGmt(year, month, date, hour, minute, second)

Constructs a Datetime from Integer representations of the specified year, month (1=Jan), day, hour, minute, and second in the GMT time zone

Signature

```
public static Datetime newInstanceGmt(Integer year, Integer month, Integer date, Integer
hour, Integer minute, Integer second)
```

Parameters

year
Type: Integer

month
Type: Integer

date
Type: Integer

hour
Type: Integer

minute
Type: Integer

second
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Example

```
//California local time
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(1998, 1, 29, 2, 2, 3);
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(1998, 1, 28, 18, 2, 3);
System.assertEquals(expected, dt);
```

now()

Returns the current Datetime based on a GMT calendar.

Signature

```
public static Datetime now()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The format of the returned datetime is: `'MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM PERIOD'`

Example

```
datetime myDateTime = datetime.now();
```

parse(datetimeString)

Constructs a Datetime from the given String in the local time zone and in the format of the user locale.

Signature

```
public static Datetime parse(String datetimeString)
```

Parameters

datetimeString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Example

This example uses `parse` to create a Datetime from a date passed in as a string and that is formatted for the English (United States) locale. You may need to change the format of the date string if you have a different locale.

Note: This sample is executed in an org where the "Enable ICU Locale Formats" crucial update is enabled. See https://releasenotes.docs.salesforce.com/en-us/spring20/release-notes/rn_forcecom_globalization_enable_icu_cruc.htm.

```
Datetime dt = DateTime.parse('10/14/2011, 11:46 AM');
String myDtString = dt.format();
system.assertEquals(myDtString, '10/14/2011, 11:46 AM');
```

second()

Returns the second component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer second()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(1999, 9, 22, 3, 1, 2);
System.assertEquals(2, dt.second());
```

secondGmt()

Returns the second component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer secondGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2000, 2, 3, 3, 1, 5);
System.assertEquals(5, dt.secondGMT());
```

time()

Returns the time component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Time time()
```

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2002, 11, 21, 0, 2, 2);
Time expected = Time.newInstance(0, 2, 2, 0);
System.assertEquals(expected, dt.time());
```

timeGmt()

Returns the time component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Time timeGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
// This sample is based on the PST time zone
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2004, 1, 27, 4, 1, 2);
Time expected = Time.newInstance(12, 1, 2, 0);
// 8 hours are added to the time to convert it from
// PST to GMT
System.assertEquals(expected, dt.timeGMT());
```

valueOf(dateTimeString)

Returns a Datetime that contains the value of the specified string.

Signature

```
public static Datetime valueOf(String dateTimeString)
```

Parameters

dateTimeString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Datetime

The returned date is in the GMT time zone.

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" in the local time zone.

Example

```
string year = '2008';
string month = '10';
string day = '5';
string hour = '12';
string minute = '20';
string second = '20';
string stringDate = year + '-' + month + '-' + day + ' ' + hour + ':'
    + minute +  ':' + second;

Datetime myDate = Datetime.valueOf(stringDate);
```

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Datetime. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Datetime value.

Signature

```
public static Datetime valueOf(Object fieldValue)
```

Parameters

fieldValue
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Usage

Use this method with the `OldValue` or `NewValue` fields of history sObjects, such as `AccountHistory`, when the field is a Date/Time field.

Example

```
List<AccountHistory> ahlist = [SELECT Field,OldValue,NewValue FROM AccountHistory];
for(AccountHistory ah : ahlist) {
  System.debug('Field: ' + ah.Field);
  if (ah.field == 'MyDatetime__c') {
    Datetime oldValue = Datetime.valueOf(ah.OldValue);
    Datetime newValue = Datetime.valueOf(ah.NewValue);
  }
}
```

valueOfGmt(dateTimeString)

Returns a Datetime that contains the value of the specified String.

Signature

```
public static Datetime valueOfGmt(String dateTimeString)
```

Parameters

dateTimeString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Usage

The specified string should use the standard date format "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" in the GMT time zone.

Example

```
// California locale time
string year = '2009';
string month = '3';
string day = '5';
string hour = '5';
string minute = '2';
string second = '2';
string stringDate = year + '-' + month + '-' + day + ' ' + hour + ':'
    + minute +  ':' + second;

Datetime myDate = Datetime.valueOfGMT(stringDate);
```

```
DateTime expected = DateTime.newInstance(2009, 3, 4, 21, 2, 2);
System.assertEquals(expected, myDate);
```

year()

Returns the year component of a Datetime in the local time zone of the context user.

Signature

```
public Integer year()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2012, 1, 26, 5, 2, 4);
System.assertEquals(2012, dt.year());
```

yearGmt()

Returns the year component of a Datetime in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer yearGmt()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
DateTime dt = DateTime.newInstance(2012, 10, 4, 6, 4, 6);
System.assertEquals(2012, dt.yearGMT());
```

Decimal Class

Contains methods for the Decimal primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Decimal, see Decimal Data Type.

IN THIS SECTION:

Rounding Mode
Rounding mode specifies the rounding behavior for numerical operations capable of discarding precision.
Decimal Methods

Rounding Mode

Rounding mode specifies the rounding behavior for numerical operations capable of discarding precision.

Each rounding mode indicates how the least significant returned digit of a rounded result is to be calculated. The following are the valid values for *roundingMode*.

Name	Description

CEILING	Rounds towards positive infinity. That is, if the result is positive, this mode behaves the same as the UP rounding mode; if the result is negative, it behaves the same as the DOWN rounding mode. Note that this rounding mode never decreases the calculated value. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: CEILING round mode result: 6
	• Input number 1.1: CEILING round mode result: 2
	• Input number -1.1: CEILING round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.7: CEILING round mode result: -2
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{6, 2, -1, -2};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`  System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`  example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.CEILING));`
	`}`

DOWN	Rounds towards zero. This rounding mode always discards any fractions (decimal points) prior to executing. Note that this rounding mode never increases the magnitude of the calculated value. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: DOWN round mode result: 5
	• Input number 1.1: DOWN round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.1: DOWN round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.7: DOWN round mode result: -2
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{5, 1, -1, -2};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`  System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`  example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.DOWN));`
	`}`

FLOOR	Rounds towards negative infinity. That is, if the result is positive, this mode behaves the same as theDOWN rounding mode; if negative, this mode behaves the same as the UP rounding mode. Note that this rounding mode never increases the calculated value. For example: • Input number 5.5: FLOOR round mode result: 5

Name	Description

	• Input number 1.1: `FLOOR` round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.1: `FLOOR` round mode result: -2
	• Input number -2.7: `FLOOR` round mode result: -3
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{5, 1, -2, -3};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.FLOOR));`
	`}`

`HALF_DOWN`	Rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case this mode rounds down. This rounding mode behaves the same as the `UP` rounding mode if the discarded fraction (decimal point) is > 0.5; otherwise, it behaves the same as `DOWN` rounding mode. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: `HALF_DOWN` round mode result: 5
	• Input number 1.1: `HALF_DOWN` round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.1: `HALF_DOWN` round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.7: `HALF_DOWN` round mode result: -3
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{5, 1, -1, -3};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.HALF_DOWN));`
	`}`

`HALF_EVEN`	Rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor. This rounding mode behaves the same as the `HALF_UP` rounding mode if the digit to the left of the discarded fraction (decimal point) is odd. It behaves the same as the `HALF_DOWN` rounding method if it is even. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: `HALF_EVEN` round mode result: 6
	• Input number 1.1: `HALF_EVEN` round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.1: `HALF_EVEN` round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.7: `HALF_EVEN` round mode result: -3
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{6, 1, -1, -3};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.HALF_EVEN));`
	`}`
	Note that this rounding mode statistically minimizes cumulative error when applied repeatedly over a sequence of calculations.

`HALF_UP`	Rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds up. This rounding method behaves the same as the `UP` rounding method if

Name	Description

	the discarded fraction (decimal point) is >= 0.5; otherwise, this rounding method behaves the same as the `DOWN` rounding method. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: `HALF_UP` round mode result: 6
	• Input number 1.1: `HALF_UP` round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.1: `HALF_UP` round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.7: `HALF_UP` round mode result: -3
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{6, 1, -1, -3};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`  System.assertEquals(expected[x],`
	`  example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.HALF_UP));`
	`}`

`UNNECESSARY`	Asserts that the requested operation has an exact result, which means that no rounding is necessary. If this rounding mode is specified on an operation that yields an inexact result, a MathException is thrown. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: `UNNECESSARY` round mode result: MathException
	• Input number 1.1: `UNNECESSARY` round mode result: MathException
	• Input number 1.0: `UNNECESSARY` round mode result: 1
	• Input number -1.0: `UNNECESSARY` round mode result: -1
	• Input number -2.2: `UNNECESSARY` round mode result: MathException
	`Decimal example1 = 5.5;`
	`Decimal example2 = 1.0;`
	`system.assertEquals(1,`
	`  example2.round(System.RoundingMode.UNNECESSARY));`
	`try{`
	`  example1.round(System.RoundingMode.UNNECESSARY);`
	`} catch(Exception E) {`
	`  system.assertEquals('System.MathException', E.getTypeName());`
	`}`

`UP`	Rounds away from zero. This rounding mode always truncates any fractions (decimal points) prior to executing. Note that this rounding mode never decreases the magnitude of the calculated value. For example:
	• Input number 5.5: `UP` round mode result: 6
	• Input number 1.1: `UP` round mode result: 2
	• Input number -1.1: `UP` round mode result: -2
	• Input number -2.7: `UP` round mode result: -3
	`Decimal[] example = new Decimal[]{5.5, 1.1, -1.1, -2.7};`
	`Long[] expected = new Long[]{6, 2, -2, -3};`
	`for(integer x = 0; x < example.size(); x++){`
	`  System.assertEquals(expected[x],`

Name	Description
	example[x].round(System.RoundingMode.UP)); }

Decimal Methods

The following are methods for `Decimal`.

IN THIS SECTION:

abs()

Returns the absolute value of the Decimal.

divide(divisor, scale)

Divides this Decimal by the specified divisor, and sets the scale, that is, the number of decimal places, of the result using the specified scale.

divide(divisor, scale, roundingMode)

Divides this Decimal by the specified divisor, sets the scale, that is, the number of decimal places, of the result using the specified scale, and if necessary, rounds the value using the rounding mode.

doubleValue()

Returns the Double value of this Decimal.

format()

Returns the String value of this Decimal using the locale of the context user.

intValue()

Returns the Integer value of this Decimal.

longValue()

Returns the Long value of this Decimal.

pow(exponent)

Returns the value of this decimal raised to the power of the specified exponent.

precision()

Returns the total number of digits for the Decimal.

round()

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the “nearest neighbor” unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

round(roundingMode)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using the rounding mode specified by the rounding mode.

scale()

Returns the scale of the Decimal, that is, the number of decimal places.

setScale(scale)

Returns the Decimal scaled to the specified number of decimal places, using half-even rounding, if necessary. Half-even rounding mode rounds toward the “nearest neighbor.” If both neighbors are equidistant, the number is rounded toward the even neighbor.

setScale(scale, roundingMode)
Returns the Decimal scaled to the specified number of decimal places, using the specified rounding mode, if necessary.

stripTrailingZeros()
Returns the Decimal with any trailing zeros removed.

toPlainString()
Returns the String value of this Decimal, without using scientific notation.

valueOf(doubleToDecimal)
Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified Double.

valueOf(longToDecimal)
Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified Long.

valueOf(stringToDecimal)
Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the string is interpreted as representing a signed Decimal.

abs()

Returns the absolute value of the Decimal.

Signature

```
public Decimal abs()
```

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = -6.02214129;
System.assertEquals(6.02214129, myDecimal.abs());
```

divide(divisor, scale)

Divides this Decimal by the specified divisor, and sets the scale, that is, the number of decimal places, of the result using the specified scale.

Signature

```
public Decimal divide(Decimal divisor, Integer scale)
```

Parameters

divisor
Type: Decimal

scale
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal decimalNumber = 19;
Decimal result = decimalNumber.divide(100, 3);
System.assertEquals(0.190, result);
```

divide(divisor, scale, roundingMode)

Divides this Decimal by the specified divisor, sets the scale, that is, the number of decimal places, of the result using the specified scale, and if necessary, rounds the value using the rounding mode.

Signature

```
public Decimal divide(Decimal divisor, Integer scale, System.RoundingMode roundingMode)
```

Parameters

divisor
Type: Decimal

scale
Type: Integer

roundingMode
Type: System.RoundingMode

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 12.4567;
Decimal divDec = myDecimal.divide(7, 2, System.RoundingMode.UP);
System.assertEquals(divDec, 1.78);
```

doubleValue()

Returns the Double value of this Decimal.

Signature

```
public Double doubleValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 6.62606957;
Double value = myDecimal.doubleValue();
System.assertEquals(6.62606957, value);
```

format()

Returns the String value of this Decimal using the locale of the context user.

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Scientific notation will be used if an exponent is needed.

Example

```
// U.S. locale
Decimal myDecimal = 12345.6789;
system.assertEquals('12,345.679', myDecimal.format());
```

intValue()

Returns the Integer value of this Decimal.

Signature

```
public Integer intValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 1.602176565;
system.assertEquals(1, myDecimal.intValue());
```

longValue()

Returns the Long value of this Decimal.

Signature

```
public Long longValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 376.730313461;
system.assertEquals(376, myDecimal.longValue());
```

pow(exponent)

Returns the value of this decimal raised to the power of the specified exponent.

Signature

```
public Decimal pow(Integer exponent)
```

Parameters

exponent
Type: Integer

The value of *exponent* must be between 0 and 32,767.

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Usage

If you use `MyDecimal.pow(0)`, 1 is returned.

The `Math.pow` method does accept negative values.

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 4.12;
Decimal powDec = myDecimal.pow(2);
System.assertEquals(powDec, 16.9744);
```

precision()

Returns the total number of digits for the Decimal.

Signature

```
public Integer precision()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

For example, if the Decimal value was 123.45, `precision` returns 5. If the Decimal value is 123.123, `precision` returns 6.

```
Decimal D1 = 123.45;
Integer precision1 = D1.precision();
system.assertEquals(precision1, 5);
Decimal D2 = 123.123;
Integer precision2 = D2.precision();
system.assertEquals(precision2, 6);
```

round()

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

Signature

```
public Long round()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Usage

Note that this rounding mode statistically minimizes cumulative error when applied repeatedly over a sequence of calculations.

Example

```
Decimal D = 4.5;
Long L = D.round();
System.assertEquals(4, L);

Decimal D1 = 5.5;
Long L1 = D1.round();
System.assertEquals(6, L1);

Decimal D2 = 5.2;
Long L2 = D2.round();
System.assertEquals(5, L2);

Decimal D3 = -5.7;
Long L3 = D3.round();
System.assertEquals(-6, L3);
```

round(roundingMode)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using the rounding mode specified by the rounding mode.

Signature

```
public Long round(System.RoundingMode roundingMode)
```

Parameters

roundingMode
Type: System.RoundingMode

Return Value

Type: Long

scale()

Returns the scale of the Decimal, that is, the number of decimal places.

Signature

```
public Integer scale()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 9.27400968;
system.assertEquals(8, myDecimal.scale());
```

setScale(scale)

Returns the Decimal scaled to the specified number of decimal places, using half-even rounding, if necessary. Half-even rounding mode rounds toward the "nearest neighbor." If both neighbors are equidistant, the number is rounded toward the even neighbor.

Signature

```
public Decimal setScale(Integer scale)
```

Parameters

scale
Type: Integer

The value of *scale* must be between –33 and 33. If the value of *scale* is negative, your unscaled value is multiplied by 10 to the power of the negation of *scale*. For example, after this operation, the value of *d* is `4*10^3`.

```
Decimal d = 4000;
d = d.setScale(-3);
```

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Usage

If you do not explicitly set the scale for a Decimal, the item from which the Decimal is created determines the scale.

- If the Decimal is created as part of a query, the scale is based on the scale of the field returned from the query.
- If the Decimal is created from a String, the scale is the number of characters after the decimal point of the String.
- If the Decimal is created from a non-decimal number, the number is first converted to a String. Scale is then set using the number of characters after the decimal point.

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 8.987551787;
Decimal setScaled = myDecimal.setscale(3);
System.assertEquals(8.988, setScaled);
```

setScale(scale, roundingMode)

Returns the Decimal scaled to the specified number of decimal places, using the specified rounding mode, if necessary.

Signature

```
public Decimal setScale(Integer scale, System.RoundingMode roundingMode)
```

Parameters

scale

Type: Integer

The value of *scale* must be between –33 and 33. If the value of *scale* is negative, your unscaled value is multiplied by 10 to the power of the negation of *scale*. For example, after this operation, the value of *d* is `4*10^3`.

```
Decimal d = 4000;
d = d.setScale(-3);
```

roundingMode

Type: System.RoundingMode

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Usage

If you do not explicitly set the scale for a Decimal, the item from which the Decimal is created determines the scale.

- If the Decimal is created as part of a query, the scale is based on the scale of the field returned from the query.
- If the Decimal is created from a String, the scale is the number of characters after the decimal point of the String.
- If the Decimal is created from a non-decimal number, the number is first converted to a String. Scale is then set using the number of characters after the decimal point.

stripTrailingZeros()

Returns the Decimal with any trailing zeros removed.

Signature

```
public Decimal stripTrailingZeros()
```

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 1.10000;
Decimal stripped = myDecimal.stripTrailingZeros();
System.assertEquals(stripped, 1.1);
```

toPlainString()

Returns the String value of this Decimal, without using scientific notation.

Signature

```
public String toPlainString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Decimal myDecimal = 12345.6789;
System.assertEquals('12345.6789', myDecimal.toPlainString());
```

valueOf(doubleToDecimal)

Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Decimal valueOf(Double doubleToDecimal)
```

Parameters

doubleToDecimal
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Double myDouble = 2.718281828459045;
Decimal myDecimal = Decimal.valueOf(myDouble);
System.assertEquals(2.718281828459045, myDecimal);
```

valueOf(longToDecimal)

Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified Long.

Signature

```
public static Decimal valueOf(Long longToDecimal)
```

Parameters

longToDecimal
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Long myLong = 299792458;
Decimal myDecimal = Decimal.valueOf(myLong);
System.assertEquals(299792458, myDecimal);
```

valueOf(stringToDecimal)

Returns a Decimal that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the string is interpreted as representing a signed Decimal.

Signature

```
public static Decimal valueOf(String stringToDecimal)
```

Parameters

stringToDecimal
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
String temp = '12.4567';
Decimal myDecimal = Decimal.valueOf(temp);
```

Double Class

Contains methods for the Double primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Double, see Double Data Type.

Double Methods

The following are methods for `Double`.

IN THIS SECTION:

format()
Returns the String value for this Double using the locale of the context user

intValue()
Returns the Integer value of this Double by casting it to an Integer.

longValue()
Returns the Long value of this Double.

round()
Returns the closest Long to this Double value.

valueOf(stringToDouble)
Returns a Double that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the String is interpreted as representing a signed decimal.

valueOf(fieldValue)
Converts the specified object to a Double value. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Double value.

`format()`

Returns the String value for this Double using the locale of the context user

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Double myDouble = 1261992;
system.assertEquals('1,261,992', myDouble.format());
```

intValue()

Returns the Integer value of this Double by casting it to an Integer.

Signature

```
public Integer intValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Double DD1 = double.valueOf('3.14159');
Integer value = DD1.intValue();
system.assertEquals(value, 3);
```

longValue()

Returns the Long value of this Double.

Signature

```
public Long longValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
Double myDouble = 421994;
Long value = myDouble.longValue();
System.assertEquals(421994, value);
```

round()

Returns the closest Long to this Double value.

Signature

```
public Long round()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
Double D1 = 4.5;
Long L1 = D1.round();
System.assertEquals(5, L1);

Double D2= 4.2;
Long L2= D2.round();
System.assertEquals(4, L2);

Double D3= -4.7;
Long L3= D3.round();
System.assertEquals(-5, L3);
```

valueOf(stringToDouble)

Returns a Double that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the String is interpreted as representing a signed decimal.

Signature

```
public static Double valueOf(String stringToDouble)
```

Parameters

stringToDouble
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Double

Example

```
Double DD1 = double.valueOf('3.14159');
```

valueOf(fieldValue)

Converts the specified object to a Double value. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents a Double value.

Signature

```
public static Double valueOf(Object fieldValue)
```

Parameters

fieldValue
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Double

Usage

Use this method with the `OldValue` or `NewValue` fields of history sObjects, such as `AccountHistory`, when the field type corresponds to a Double type, like a number field.

Example

```
List<AccountHistory> ahlist =
  [SELECT Field,OldValue,NewValue
   FROM AccountHistory];
for(AccountHistory ah : ahlist) {
  System.debug('Field: ' + ah.Field);
  if (ah.field == 'NumberOfEmployees') {
    Double oldValue =
      Double.valueOf(ah.OldValue);
    Double newValue =
      Double.valueOf(ah.NewValue);
}
```

EncodingUtil Class

Use the methods in the `EncodingUtil` class to encode and decode URL strings, and convert strings to hexadecimal format.

Namespace

System

Usage

Note: You cannot use the EncodingUtil methods to move documents with non-ASCII characters to Salesforce. You can, however, download a document from Salesforce. To do so, query the ID of the document using the API `query` call, then request it by ID.

EncodingUtil Methods

The following are methods for `EncodingUtil`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

base64Decode(inputString)
Converts a Base64-encoded String to a Blob representing its normal form.

base64Encode(inputBlob)
Converts a Blob to an unencoded String representing its normal form.

convertFromHex(inputString)
Converts the specified hexadecimal (base 16) string to a Blob value and returns this Blob value.

convertToHex(inputBlob)
Returns a hexadecimal (base 16) representation of the *inputBlob*. This method can be used to compute the client response (for example, HA1 or HA2) for HTTP Digest Authentication (RFC2617).

urlDecode(inputString, encodingScheme)
Decodes a string in `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` format using a specific encoding scheme, for example "UTF-8."

urlEncode(inputString, encodingScheme)
Encodes a string into the `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` format using a specific encoding scheme, for example "UTF-8."

base64Decode(inputString)

Converts a Base64-encoded String to a Blob representing its normal form.

Signature

```
public static Blob base64Decode(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Blob

base64Encode(inputBlob)

Converts a Blob to an unencoded String representing its normal form.

Signature

```
public static String base64Encode(Blob inputBlob)
```

Parameters

inputBlob
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: String

convertFromHex(inputString)

Converts the specified hexadecimal (base 16) string to a Blob value and returns this Blob value.

Signature

```
public static Blob convertFromHex(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

The hexadecimal string to convert. The string can contain only valid hexadecimal characters (0-9, a-f, A-F) and must have an even number of characters.

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

Each byte in the Blob is constructed from two hexadecimal characters in the input string.

The `convertFromHex` method throws the following exceptions.

- `NullPointerException` — the *`inputString`* is `null`.
- `InvalidParameterValueException` — the *`inputString`* contains invalid hexadecimal characters or doesn't contain an even number of characters.

Example

```
Blob blobValue = EncodingUtil.convertFromHex('4A4B4C');
System.assertEquals('JKL', blobValue.toString());
```

convertToHex(inputBlob)

Returns a hexadecimal (base 16) representation of the *`inputBlob`*. This method can be used to compute the client response (for example, HA1 or HA2) for HTTP Digest Authentication (RFC2617).

Signature

```
public static String convertToHex(Blob inputBlob)
```

Parameters

inputBlob
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: String

urlDecode(inputString, encodingScheme)

Decodes a string in `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` format using a specific encoding scheme, for example "UTF-8."

Signature

```
public static String urlDecode(String inputString, String encodingScheme)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

encodingScheme
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method uses the supplied encoding scheme to determine which characters are represented by any consecutive sequence of the form `\"%xy\"`. For more information about the format, see The form-urlencoded Media Type in *Hypertext Markup Language - 2.0*.

urlEncode(inputString, encodingScheme)

Encodes a string into the `application/x-www-form-urlencoded` format using a specific encoding scheme, for example "UTF-8."

Signature

```
public static String urlEncode(String inputString, String encodingScheme)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

encodingScheme
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method uses the supplied encoding scheme to obtain the bytes for unsafe characters. For more information about the format, see The form-urlencoded Media Type in *Hypertext Markup Language - 2.0*.

Example

```
String encoded = EncodingUtil.urlEncode(url, 'UTF-8');
```

Enum Methods

An enum is an abstract data type with values that each take on exactly one of a finite set of identifiers that you specify. Apex provides built-in enums, such as `LoggingLevel`, and you can define your own enum.

All Apex enums, whether user-defined enums or built-in enums, have the following common method that takes no arguments.

`values`
: This method returns the values of the Enum as a list of the same Enum type.

Each Enum value has the following methods that take no arguments.

`name`
: Returns the name of the Enum item as a String.

`ordinal`
: Returns the position of the item, as an Integer, in the list of Enum values starting with zero.

Enum values cannot have user-defined methods added to them.

For more information about Enum, see Enums.

Example

```
Integer i = StatusCode.DELETE_FAILED.ordinal();

String s = StatusCode.DELETE_FAILED.name();

List<StatusCode> values = StatusCode.values();
```

EventBus Class

Contains methods for publishing platform events.

Namespace

System

IN THIS SECTION:

EventBus Methods

SEE ALSO:

Platform Events Developer Guide: Publishing Platform Events

EventBus Methods

The following are methods for `EventBus`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getOperationId(result)
Returns the UUID of the asynchronous event publishing operation based on the passed-in SaveResult. Use this UUID to correlate the asynchronous publishing result sent on the `/event/PublishStatusEvent` channel.

publish(event)
Publishes the given platform event.

publish(events)
Publishes the given list of platform events.

`getOperationId(result)`

Returns the UUID of the asynchronous event publishing operation based on the passed-in SaveResult. Use this UUID to correlate the asynchronous publishing result sent on the `/event/PublishStatusEvent` channel.

Signature

```
public static String getOperationId(Object result)
```

Parameters

`result`
Type: Object

The SaveResult that is returned by the `EventBus.publish` call.

Return Value

Type: String

`publish(event)`

Publishes the given platform event.

Signature

```
public static Database.SaveResult publish(SObject event)
```

Parameters

`event`
Type: SObject

An instance of a platform event. For example, an instance of *`MyEvent__e`*. You must first define your platform event object in your org.

Return Value

Type: Database.SaveResult

The result of publishing the given event. `Database.SaveResult` contains information about whether the operation was successful and the errors encountered. If the `isSuccess()` method returns `true`, the publish request is queued in Salesforce and the event message is published asynchronously. For more information, see High-Volume Platform Event Persistence. If `isSuccess()` returns `false`, the event publish operation resulted in errors, which are returned in the `Database.Error` object. This method doesn't throw an exception due to an unsuccessful publish operation.

`Database.SaveResult` also contains the `Id` system field. The `Id` field value isn't included in the event message delivered to subscribers. It isn't used to identify an event message, and isn't always unique.

Usage

- The platform event message is published either immediately or after a transaction is committed, depending on the publish behavior you set in the platform event definition. For more information, see Platform Event Fields in the *Platform Events Developer Guide*.
- Apex governor limits apply. For events configured with the **Publish After Commit** behavior, each method execution is counted as one DML statement against the Apex DML statement limit. You can check limit usage using the Apex `Limits.getDMLStatements()` on page 2674 method. For events configured with the **Publish Immediately** behavior, each method execution is counted against a separate event publishing limit of 150 `EventBus.publish()` calls. You can check limit usage using the Apex `Limits.getPublishImmediateDML()` on page 2677 method.

`publish(events)`

Publishes the given list of platform events.

Signature

```
public static List<Database.SaveResult> publish(List<SObject> events)
```

Parameters

`events`
Type: List<sObject>

A list of platform event instances. For example, a list of *`MyEvent__e`* objects. You must first define your platform event object in your Salesforce org.

Return Value

Type: List<Database.SaveResult>

A list of results, each corresponding to the result of publishing one event. For each event, `Database.SaveResult` contains information about whether the operation was successful and the errors encountered. If the `isSuccess()` method returns `true`, the publish request is queued in Salesforce and the event message is published asynchronously. For more information, see High-Volume Platform Event Persistence. If `isSuccess()` returns `false`, the event publish operation resulted in errors, which are returned in the `Database.Error` object. `EventBus.publish()` can publish some passed-in events, even when other events can't be published due to errors. The `EventBus.publish()` method doesn't throw exceptions caused by an unsuccessful publish operation. It's similar in behavior to the Apex `Database.insert` method when called with the partial success option.

`Database.SaveResult` also contains the `Id` system field. The `Id` field value isn't included in the event message delivered to subscribers. It isn't used to identify an event message, and isn't always unique.

Usage

- The platform event message is published either immediately or after a transaction is committed, depending on the publish behavior you set in the platform event definition. For more information, see Platform Event Fields in the *Platform Events Developer Guide*.
- Apex governor limits apply. For events configured with the **Publish After Commit** behavior, each method execution is counted as one DML statement against the Apex DML statement limit. You can check limit usage using the Apex `Limits.getDMLStatements()` on page 2674 method. For events configured with the **Publish Immediately** behavior, each method execution is counted against a separate event publishing limit of 150 `EventBus.publish()` calls. You can check limit usage using the Apex `Limits.getPublishImmediateDML()` on page 2677 method.

Exception Class and Built-In Exceptions

An exception denotes an error that disrupts the normal flow of code execution. You can use Apex built-in exceptions or create custom exceptions. All exceptions have common methods.

All exceptions support built-in methods for returning the error message and exception type. In addition to the standard `exception` class, there are several different types of exceptions:

The following are exceptions in the `System` namespace.

Exception	Description
`AssertException`	A System.assert failure that halts code execution. Optionally contains the custom message specified in the last (`msg`) argument to the `assert()` method.
`AuraException`	Legacy Aura-related exception. Use System.AuraHandledException instead.
`AuraHandledException`	Returns a custom error message to a JavaScript controller. See Returning Errors from an Apex Server-Side Controller.
`AsyncException`	Any problem with an asynchronous operation, such as failing to enqueue an asynchronous call.
`BigObjectException`	Any problem with big object records, such as connection timeouts during attempts to access or insert big object records.
`CalloutException`	Any problem with a Web service operation, such as failing to make a callout to an external system.
`DmlException`	Any problem with a DML statement, such as an `insert` statement missing a required field on a record.
`EmailException`	Any problem with email, such as failure to deliver. For more information, see Outbound Email.
`ExternalObjectException`	Any problem with external object records, such as connection timeouts during attempts to access the data that's stored on external systems.
`FinalException`	Any attempt to mutate a read-only collection or record such as an sObject in an after-update trigger, or a final variable. This exception causes execution to halt.
`FlowException`	Any problem with starting flow interviews from Apex. For example, if an active version of the flow can't be found or it cannot be started from Apex.
`HandledException`	A generic handled exception.

Exception	Description
`IllegalArgumentException`	An illegal argument was provided to a method call. For example, a method that requires a non-null argument throws this exception if a null value is passed into the method.
`InvalidParameterValueException`	An invalid parameter was supplied for a method or any problem with a URL used with Visualforce pages. For more information on Visualforce, see the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.
`LimitException`	A governor limit has been exceeded. This exception can't be caught.
`JSONException`	Any problem with JSON serialization and deserialization operations. For more information, see the methods of `System.JSON`, `System.JSONParser`, and `System.JSONGenerator`.
`ListException`	Any problem with a list, such as attempting to access an index that is out of bounds.
`MathException`	Any problem with a mathematical operation, such as dividing by zero.
`NoAccessException`	Any problem with unauthorized access, such as trying to access an sObject that the current user doesn't have access to. This exception is used with Visualforce pages. For more information on Visualforce, see the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.
`NoDataFoundException`	Any problem with data that doesn't exist, such as trying to access an sObject that has been deleted. This exception is used with Visualforce pages. For more information on Visualforce, see the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.
`NoSuchElementException`	This exception is thrown if you try to access items that are outside the bounds of a list. This exception is used by the Iterator `next` method. For example, if `iterator.hasNext() == false` and you call `iterator.next()`, this exception is thrown. This exception is also used by the Apex Flex Queue methods and is thrown if you attempt to access a job at an invalid position in the flex queue.

`NullPointerException`	Any problem with dereferencing null, such as in the following code:
	`String s;`
	`s.toLowerCase(); // Since s is null, this call causes`
	`// a NullPointerException`

`QueryException`	Any problem with SOQL queries, such as assigning a query that returns no records or more than one record to a singleton sObject variable.
`RequiredFeatureMissing`	A Chatter feature is required for code that has been deployed to an organization that doesn't have Chatter enabled.
`SearchException`	Any problem with SOSL queries executed with SOAP API `search()` call, for example, when the `searchString` parameter contains fewer than two characters. For more information, see the *SOAP API Developer Guide*.
`SecurityException`	Any problem with static methods in the Crypto utility class. For more information, see Crypto Class.
`SerializationException`	Any problem with the serialization of data. This exception is used with Visualforce pages. For more information on Visualforce, see the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.

Exception	Description
`SObjectException`	Any problem with sObject records, such as attempting to change a field in an `update` statement that can only be changed during `insert`.
`StringException`	Any problem with Strings, such as a String that is exceeding your heap size.
`TypeException`	Any problem with type conversions, such as attempting to convert the String 'a' to an Integer using the `valueOf` method.
`UnexpectedException`	A non-recoverable internal error within Salesforce has occurred. This exception causes execution to halt. If necessary, contact Salesforce Customer Support for more information.
`VisualforceException`	Any problem with a Visualforce page. For more information on Visualforce, see the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.
`XmlException`	Any problem with the XmlStream classes, such as failing to read or write XML.

The following is an example using the DmlException exception:

```
Account[] accts = new Account[]{new Account(billingcity = 'San Jose')};
try {
    insert accts;
} catch (System.DmlException e) {
    for (Integer i = 0; i < e.getNumDml(); i++) {
        // Process exception here
        System.debug(e.getDmlMessage(i));
    }
}
```

For exceptions in other namespaces, see:

- Cache Exceptions
- Canvas Exceptions
- `ConnectApi` Exceptions
- DataSource Exceptions
- Reports Exceptions
- Site Exceptions

Common Exception Methods

Exception methods are all called by and operate on an instance of an exception. This table describes all instance exception methods. All types of exceptions have these methods in common.

Name	Arguments	Return Type	Description
`getCause`		Exception	Returns the cause of the exception as an exception object.
`getLineNumber`		Integer	Returns the line number from where the exception was thrown.
`getMessage`		String	Returns the error message that displays for the user.

Name	Arguments	Return Type	Description
getStackTraceString		String	Returns the stack trace of a thrown exception as a string.
getTypeName		String	Returns the type of exception, such as DmlException, ListException, MathException, and so on.
initCause	Exception *cause*	Void	Sets the cause for this exception, if one hasn't already been set.
setMessage	String *s*	Void	Sets the error message that displays for the user.

DMLException and EmailException Methods

In addition to the common exception methods, DMLException and EmailException have these methods:

Name	Arguments	Return Type	Description
getDmlFieldNames	Integer *i*	String []	Returns the names of the field or fields that caused the error described by the i^{th} failed row.
getDmlFields	Integer *i*	Schema.sObjectField []	Returns the field token or tokens for the field or fields that caused the error described by the i^{th} failed row. For more information on field tokens, see Dynamic Apex.
getDmlId	Integer *i*	String	Returns the ID of the failed record that caused the error described by the i^{th} failed row.
getDmlIndex	Integer *i*	Integer	Returns the original row position of the i^{th} failed row.
getDmlMessage	Integer *i*	String	Returns the user message for the i^{th} failed row.
getDmlStatusCode	Integer *i*	String	Deprecated. Use getDmlType instead. Returns the Apex failure code for the i^{th} failed row.
getDmlType	Integer *i*	System.StatusCode	Returns the value of the System.StatusCode enum. For example: `try { insert new Account(); } catch (System.DmlException ex) { System.assertEquals( StatusCode.REQUIRED_FIELD_MISSING, ex.getDmlType(0)); }` For more information about System.StatusCode, see Enums.
getNumDml		Integer	Returns the number of failed rows for DML exceptions.

FlexQueue Class

Contains methods that reorder batch jobs in the Apex flex queue.

Namespace

System

Usage

You can place up to 100 batch jobs in a holding status for future execution. When system resources become available, the jobs are taken from the top of the Apex flex queue and moved to the batch job queue. Up to five queued or active jobs can be processed simultaneously for each org. When a job is moved out of the flex queue for processing, its status changes from Holding to Queued. Queued jobs are executed when the system is ready to process new jobs.

Use this class's methods to reorder your `Holding` jobs in the flex queue.

Example

This example moves a job to the front of the flex queue so that it's executed immediately. The job is moved by calling the `System.FlexQueue.moveJobToFront()` method with the high priority job ID as the parameter.

```
ID highPriorityJobId = Database.executeBatch(new HighPriorityBatchClass(), 200);
boolean jobMovedToFrontOfQueue = FlexQueue.moveJobToFront(highPriorityJobId);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

FlexQueue Methods

SEE ALSO:

Monitoring the Apex Flex Queue

Apex Developer Guide: Using Batch Apex

FlexQueue Methods

The following are methods for `FlexQueue`.

IN THIS SECTION:

moveAfterJob(jobToMoveId, jobInQueueId)

Moves the job with the ID *`jobToMoveId`* immediately after the job with the ID *`jobInQueueId`* in the flex queue. You can move *`jobToMoveId`* forward or backward in the queue. If either job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if *`jobToMoveId`* is already immediately after *`jobInQueueId`*, so no change is made.

moveBeforeJob(jobToMoveId, jobInQueueId)

Moves the job with the ID *`jobToMoveId`* immediately before the job with the ID *`jobInQueueId`* in the flex queue. You can move *`jobToMoveId`* forward or backward in the queue. If either job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if *`jobToMoveId`* is already immediately before *`jobInQueueId`*, so no change is made.

moveJobToEnd(jobId)

Moves the specified job the end of the flex queue, to index position `(size - 1)`. All jobs after the job's starting position move one spot forward. If the job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if the job is already at the end of the queue, so no change is made.

moveJobToFront(jobId)

Moves the specified job to the front of the flex queue, to index position `0`. All other jobs move back one spot. If the job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if the job is already at the front of the queue, so no change is made.

moveAfterJob(jobToMoveId, jobInQueueId)

Moves the job with the ID *jobToMoveId* immediately after the job with the ID *jobInQueueId* in the flex queue. You can move *jobToMoveId* forward or backward in the queue. If either job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if *jobToMoveId* is already immediately after *jobInQueueId*, so no change is made.

Signature

```
public static Boolean moveAfterJob(Id jobToMoveId, Id jobInQueueId)
```

Parameters

jobToMoveId

Type: Id

The ID of the job to move.

jobInQueueId

Type: Id

The ID of the job to move after.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

moveBeforeJob(jobToMoveId, jobInQueueId)

Moves the job with the ID *jobToMoveId* immediately before the job with the ID *jobInQueueId* in the flex queue. You can move *jobToMoveId* forward or backward in the queue. If either job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if *jobToMoveId* is already immediately before *jobInQueueId*, so no change is made.

Signature

```
public static Boolean moveBeforeJob(Id jobToMoveId, Id jobInQueueId)
```

Parameters

jobToMoveId

Type: Id

The ID of the job to move.

jobInQueueId
Type: Id

The ID of the job to use as a reference point.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

moveJobToEnd(jobId)

Moves the specified job the end of the flex queue, to index position `(size - 1)`. All jobs after the job's starting position move one spot forward. If the job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if the job is already at the end of the queue, so no change is made.

Signature

```
public static Boolean moveJobToEnd(Id jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Id

The ID of the job to move.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

moveJobToFront(jobId)

Moves the specified job to the front of the flex queue, to index position `0`. All other jobs move back one spot. If the job isn't in the queue, it throws an element-not-found exception. Returns `true` if the job is moved, or `false` if the job is already at the front of the queue, so no change is made.

Signature

```
public static Boolean moveJobToFront(Id jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId
Type: Id

The ID of the job to move.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

FeatureManagement Class

Use the methods in the `System.FeatureManagement` class to check and modify the values of feature parameters, and to show or hide custom objects and custom permissions in your subscribers' orgs.

Namespace

System

Usage

For information about feature parameters, see "Get Started with the Feature Management App" in the *ISVforce Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

FeatureManagement Methods

FeatureManagement Methods

The following are methods for `FeatureManagement`.

IN THIS SECTION:

changeProtection(apiName, typeApiName, protection)

Hides or reveals custom permissions, or reveals custom objects, in your subscriber's org.

checkPackageBooleanValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You set the record's value using `setPackageBooleanValue(apiName, value)`.

checkPackageDateValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can set the record's value using `setPackageDateValue(apiName, value)`.

checkPackageIntegerValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can set the record's value using `setPackageIntegerValue(apiName, value)`.

checkPermission(apiName)

Checks whether a custom permission is enabled.

setPackageBooleanValue(apiName, value)

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageBooleanValue(apiName)`.

setPackageDateValue(apiName, value)

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageDateValue(apiName)`.

setPackageIntegerValue(apiName, value)

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageIntegerValue(apiName)`.

changeProtection(apiName, typeApiName, protection)

Hides or reveals custom permissions, or reveals custom objects, in your subscriber's org.

Signature

```
public static void changeProtection(String apiName, String typeApiName, String
protection)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The API name of the custom object or custom permission to show or hide—for example, `'MyCustomObject__c'` or `'MyCustomPermission'`.

typeApiName
Type: String

The API name of the type that you want to show or hide: `'CustomObject'` or `'CustomPermission'`.

protection
Type: String

To show a custom object or custom permission, `'Unprotected'`.

To hide a custom permission, `'Protected'`.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Warning: For custom permissions, you can toggle the protected value indefinitely. However, after you've released unprotected objects to subscribers, you can't set visibility to `Protected`. Be sure to protect any custom objects that you want to hide before you release the first package version that contains them.

To hide custom permissions in released packages:

```
FeatureManagement.changeProtection('YourCustomPermissionName', 'CustomPermission',
    'Protected');
```

To unhide custom permissions and custom objects in released packages:

```
FeatureManagement.changeProtection('YourCustomPermissionName', 'CustomPermission',
    'Unprotected');
```

```
FeatureManagement.changeProtection('YourCustomObjectName__c', 'CustomObject',
    'Unprotected');
```

checkPackageBooleanValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You set the record's value using `setPackageBooleanValue(apiName, value)`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean checkPackageBooleanValue(String apiName)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to check—for example, `'SpecialAccessAvailable'`.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

The value that's currently assigned to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

checkPackageDateValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can set the record's value using `setPackageDateValue(apiName, value)`.

Signature

```
public static Date checkPackageDateValue(String apiName)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to check—for example, `'TrialExpirationDate'`.

Return Value

Type: Date

The value that's currently assigned to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

checkPackageIntegerValue(apiName)

Checks the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record for a feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can set the record's value using `setPackageIntegerValue(apiName, value)`.

Signature

```
public static Integer checkPackageIntegerValue(String apiName)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to check—for example, `'NumberOfLicenses'`.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The value that's currently assigned to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

checkPermission(apiName)

Checks whether a custom permission is enabled.

Signature

```
public static Boolean checkPermission(String apiName)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The API name of the custom permission to check the value of—for example, `'MyCustomPermission'`.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Shows whether the permission is enabled (`true`) or disabled (`false`).

setPackageBooleanValue(apiName, value)

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageBooleanValue(apiName)`.

Signature

```
public static void setPackageBooleanValue(String apiName, Boolean value)
```

Parameters

apiName
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to set—for example, `'SpecialAccessAvailable'`.

value
Type: Boolean

The value to assign to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterBoolean__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

Return Value

Type: void

`setPackageDateValue(apiName, value)`

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageDateValue(apiName)`.

Signature

```
public static void setPackageDateValue(String apiName, Date value)
```

Parameters

`apiName`
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to set—for example, `'TrialExpirationDate'`.

`value`
Type: Date

The value to assign to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterDate__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

Return Value

Type: void

`setPackageIntegerValue(apiName, value)`

Sets the `value__c` value of the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record for a subscriber-to-LMO feature parameter in your subscriber's org. You can check the record's value using `checkPackageIntegerValue(apiName)`.

Signature

```
public static void setPackageIntegerValue(String apiName, Integer value)
```

Parameters

`apiName`
Type: String

The `fullName__c` value of the feature parameter whose value you want to set—for example, `'NumberOfLicenses'`.

`value`
Type: Integer

The value to assign to the `value__c` field on the `FeatureParameterInteger__c` record that associates the feature parameter with its related license.

Return Value

Type: void

Formula Class

Contains the `recalculateFormulas` method that updates (recalculates) all formula fields on the input SObjects.

Namespace

System

Usage

Recalculate formula fields on new or queried SObjects. If all data is present on the SObjects, SOQL limits are not affected. If the data required to evaluate a formula field is missing, that data is loaded and limits are changed accordingly.

The new formula values are stored in the SObjects themselves and overwrite previous values of formula fields.

Example

```
Account a = new Account();
a.Name = 'Salesforce';
a.BillingCity = 'San Francisco';
List<Account> accounts = new List<Account>{a};

List<FormulaRecalcResult> results = Formula.recalculateFormulas(accounts);
System.assert(results[0].isSuccess());
// Option 1
System.debug('New value: ' + accounts[0].get('My_Formula_Field__c'));
// Option 2
System.debug('New value: ' + results[0].getSObject().get('My_Formula_Field__c'));
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Formula Methods

Formula Methods

The following are methods for `Formula`.

IN THIS SECTION:

recalculateFormulas(sobjects)
Updates (recalculates) all formula fields on the input SObjects.

`recalculateFormulas(sobjects)`

Updates (recalculates) all formula fields on the input SObjects.

Signature

```
public static List<System.FormulaRecalcResult> recalculateFormulas(List<SObject>
sobjects)
```

Parameters

sobjects
Type: List<SObject>

List of sObjects whose formula fields are to be recalculated.

Return Value

Type: List<FormulaRecalcResult Class>

FormulaRecalcFieldError Class

The return type of the `FormulaRecalcResult.getErrors` method.

Namespace

System

IN THIS SECTION:

FormulaRecalcFieldError Methods

FormulaRecalcFieldError Methods

The following are methods for `FormulaRecalcFieldError`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getFieldError()
Returns a message describing the errors encountered during formula recalculation.

getFieldName()
Returns the name of the formula recalculation error field.

`getFieldError()`

Returns a message describing the errors encountered during formula recalculation.

Signature

```
public String getFieldError()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getFieldName()`

Returns the name of the formula recalculation error field.

Signature

```
public String getFieldName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

FormulaRecalcResult Class

The return type of the `Formula.recalculateFormulas` method.

Namespace

System

Usage

Indicates the result and status of recalculating formulas on a single sObject. Holds a reference to the sObject and a list of all the fields that were recalculated.

Example

This example assumes that you have a formula field called `divide__c` with formula `"1 / LEN(Name)`.

```
List<Account> accounts = [SELECT Name FROM Account WHERE Name='Acme'];
accounts[0].Name = '';
List<FormulaRecalcResult> results = Formula.recalculateFormulas(accounts);
FormulaRecalcResult result0 = results[0];
FormulaRecalcFieldError fieldError = result0.getErrors()[0];
System.debug(fieldError.getFieldName()); // 'divide'
System.debug(fieldError.getFieldError()); // 'Division by zero'
```

IN THIS SECTION:

FormulaRecalcResult Methods

FormulaRecalcResult Methods

The following are methods for `FormulaRecalcResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getErrors()

If an error occurs during formula recalculation, an array of one or more database error objects, along with error codes and descriptions, is returned.

getSObject()
Returns the sObject with formulas recalculated.

isSuccess()
Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the formula recalculation process completed successfully; otherwise, it is set to `false`.

`getErrors()`

If an error occurs during formula recalculation, an array of one or more database error objects, along with error codes and descriptions, is returned.

Signature

```
public List<System.FormulaRecalcFieldError> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<FormulaRecalcFieldError Class>

`getSObject()`

Returns the sObject with formulas recalculated.

Signature

```
public SObject getSObject()
```

Return Value

Type: SObject

`isSuccess()`

Returns a Boolean value that is set to `true` if the formula recalculation process completed successfully; otherwise, it is set to `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Http Class

Use the `Http` class to initiate an HTTP request and response.

Namespace

System

Http Methods

The following are methods for `Http`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

send(request)
Sends an HttpRequest and returns the response.

toString()
Returns a string that displays and identifies the object's properties.

`send(request)`

Sends an HttpRequest and returns the response.

Signature

```
public HttpResponse send(HttpRequest request)
```

Parameters

`request`
Type: System.HttpRequest

Return Value

Type: System.HttpResponse

`toString()`

Returns a string that displays and identifies the object's properties.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

HttpCalloutMock Interface

Enables sending fake responses when testing HTTP callouts.

Namespace

System

Usage

For an implementation example, see Testing HTTP Callouts by Implementing the `HttpCalloutMock` Interface.

HttpCalloutMock Methods

The following are methods for `HttpCalloutMock`.

IN THIS SECTION:

respond(request)
Returns an HTTP response for the given request. The implementation of this method is called by the Apex runtime to send a fake response when an HTTP callout is made after `Test.setMock` has been called.

`respond(request)`

Returns an HTTP response for the given request. The implementation of this method is called by the Apex runtime to send a fake response when an HTTP callout is made after `Test.setMock` has been called.

Signature

```
public HttpResponse respond(HttpRequest request)
```

Parameters

`request`
Type: System.HttpRequest

Return Value

Type: System.HttpResponse

HttpRequest Class

Use the `HttpRequest` class to programmatically create HTTP requests like GET, POST, PATCH, PUT, and DELETE.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the XML classes or JSON classes to parse XML or JSON content in the body of a request created by `HttpRequest`.

Example

The following example illustrates how you can use an authorization header with a request and handle the response.

```
public class AuthCallout {
```

```
    public void basicAuthCallout(){
      HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
      req.setEndpoint('http://www.yahoo.com');
      req.setMethod('GET');

      // Specify the required user name and password to access the endpoint
      // As well as the header and header information

      String username = 'myname';
      String password = 'mypwd';

      Blob headerValue = Blob.valueOf(username + ':' + password);
      String authorizationHeader = 'Basic ' +
      EncodingUtil.base64Encode(headerValue);
      req.setHeader('Authorization', authorizationHeader);

      // Create a new http object to send the request object
      // A response object is generated as a result of the request

      Http http = new Http();
      HTTPResponse res = http.send(req);
      System.debug(res.getBody());
    }
}
```

Note: You can set the endpoint as a named credential URL. A named credential URL contains the scheme `callout:`, the name of the named credential, and an optional path. For example: `callout:My_Named_Credential/some_path`. A named credential specifies the URL of a callout endpoint and its required authentication parameters in one definition. Salesforce manages all authentication for Apex callouts that specify a named credential as the callout endpoint so that your code doesn't have to. See Named Credentials as Callout Endpoints.

Compression

To compress the data you send, use `setCompressed`.

```
HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
req.setEndPoint('my_endpoint');
req.setCompressed(true);
req.setBody('some post body');
```

If a response comes back in compressed format, `getBody` recognizes the format, uncompresses it, and returns the uncompressed value.

IN THIS SECTION:

- HttpRequest Constructors
- HttpRequest Methods

SEE ALSO:

- *Apex Developer Guide*: JSON Support
- *Apex Developer Guide*: XML Support

HttpRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `HttpRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

HttpRequest()
Creates a new instance of the `HttpRequest` class.

`HttpRequest()`

Creates a new instance of the `HttpRequest` class.

Signature

```
public HttpRequest()
```

HttpRequest Methods

The following are methods for `HttpRequest`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getBody()
Retrieves the body of this request.

getBodyAsBlob()
Retrieves the body of this request as a Blob.

getBodyDocument()
Retrieves the body of this request as a DOM document.

getCompressed()
If `true`, the request body is compressed, `false` otherwise.

getEndpoint()
Retrieves the URL for the endpoint of the external server for this request.

getHeader(key)
Retrieves the contents of the request header.

getMethod()
Returns the type of method used by `HttpRequest`.

setBody(body)
Sets the contents of the body for this request.

setBodyAsBlob(body)
Sets the contents of the body for this request using a Blob.

setBodyDocument(document)
Sets the contents of the body for this request. The contents represent a DOM document.

setClientCertificate(clientCert, password)
This method is deprecated. Use `setClientCertificateName` instead.

setClientCertificateName(certDevName)

If the external service requires a client certificate for authentication, set the certificate name.

setCompressed(flag)

If `true`, the data in the body is delivered to the endpoint in the gzip compressed format. If `false`, no compression format is used.

setEndpoint(endpoint)

Specifies the endpoint for this request.

setHeader(key, value)

Sets the contents of the request header.

setMethod(method)

Sets the type of method to be used for the HTTP request.

setTimeout(timeout)

Sets a timeout for the request between 1 and 120,000 milliseconds. The timeout is the maximum time to wait for establishing the HTTP connection. The same timeout is used for waiting for the request to start. When the request is executing, such as retrieving or posting data, the connection is kept alive until the request finishes.

toString()

Returns a string containing the URL for the endpoint of the external server for this request and the method used, for example, `Endpoint=http://YourServer, Method=POST`

`getBody()`

Retrieves the body of this request.

Signature

```
public String getBody()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getBodyAsBlob()`

Retrieves the body of this request as a Blob.

Signature

```
public Blob getBodyAsBlob()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

`getBodyDocument()`

Retrieves the body of this request as a DOM document.

Signature

```
public Dom.Document getBodyDocument()
```

Return Value

Type: Dom.Document

Example

Use this method as a shortcut for:

```
String xml = httpRequest.getBody();
Dom.Document domDoc = new Dom.Document(xml);
```

getCompressed()

If `true`, the request body is compressed, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean getCompressed()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

getEndpoint()

Retrieves the URL for the endpoint of the external server for this request.

Signature

```
public String getEndpoint()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getHeader(key)

Retrieves the contents of the request header.

Signature

```
public String getHeader(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

`getMethod()`

Returns the type of method used by `HttpRequest`.

Signature

```
public String getMethod()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Examples of return values:

- DELETE
- GET
- HEAD
- PATCH
- POST
- PUT
- TRACE

`setBody(body)`

Sets the contents of the body for this request.

Signature

```
public Void setBody(String body)
```

Parameters

body
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Limit: 6 MB for synchronous Apex or 12 MB for asynchronous Apex.

The HTTP request and response sizes count towards the total heap size.

setBodyAsBlob(body)

Sets the contents of the body for this request using a Blob.

Signature

```
public Void setBodyAsBlob(Blob body)
```

Parameters

body
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Limit: 6 MB for synchronous Apex or 12 MB for asynchronous Apex.

The HTTP request and response sizes count towards the total heap size.

setBodyDocument(document)

Sets the contents of the body for this request. The contents represent a DOM document.

Signature

```
public Void setBodyDocument(Dom.Document document)
```

Parameters

document
Type: Dom.Document

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Limit: 6 MB for synchronous Apex or 12 MB for asynchronous Apex.

setClientCertificate(clientCert, password)

This method is deprecated. Use `setClientCertificateName` instead.

Signature

```
public Void setClientCertificate(String clientCert, String password)
```

Parameters

clientCert
Type: String

password
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If the server requires a client certificate for authentication, set the client certificate PKCS12 key store and password.

setClientCertificateName(certDevName)

If the external service requires a client certificate for authentication, set the certificate name.

Signature

```
public Void setClientCertificateName(String certDevName)
```

Parameters

certDevName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

See Using Certificates with HTTP Requests.

setCompressed(flag)

If `true`, the data in the body is delivered to the endpoint in the gzip compressed format. If `false`, no compression format is used.

Signature

```
public Void setCompressed(Boolean flag)
```

Parameters

flag
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

`setEndpoint(endpoint)`

Specifies the endpoint for this request.

Signature

```
public Void setEndpoint(String endpoint)
```

Parameters

endpoint
Type: String

Possible values for the endpoint:

- Endpoint URL

  ```
  https://my_endpoint.example.com/some_path
  ```

- Named credential URL, which contains the scheme `callout`, the name of the named credential, and, optionally, an appended path

  ```
  callout:My_Named_Credential/some_path
  ```

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Named Credentials as Callout Endpoints

`setHeader(key, value)`

Sets the contents of the request header.

Signature

```
public Void setHeader(String key, String value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Limit 100 KB.

`setMethod(method)`

Sets the type of method to be used for the HTTP request.

Signature

```
public Void setMethod(String method)
```

Parameters

`method`
Type: String

Possible values for the method type include:

- DELETE
- GET
- HEAD
- PATCH
- POST
- PUT
- TRACE

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can also use this method to set any required options.

`setTimeout(timeout)`

Sets a timeout for the request between 1 and 120,000 milliseconds. The timeout is the maximum time to wait for establishing the HTTP connection. The same timeout is used for waiting for the request to start. When the request is executing, such as retrieving or posting data, the connection is kept alive until the request finishes.

Signature

```
public Void setTimeout(Integer timeout)
```

Parameters

timeout
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

`toString()`

Returns a string containing the URL for the endpoint of the external server for this request and the method used, for example, `Endpoint=http://YourServer, Method=POST`

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

HttpResponse Class

Use the `HttpResponse` class to handle the HTTP response returned by the `Http` class.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the XML classes or JSON Classes to parse XML or JSON content in the body of a response accessed by `HttpResponse`.

Example

In the following `getXmlStreamReader` example, content is retrieved from an external Web server, then the XML is parsed using the `XmlStreamReader` class.

```
public class ReaderFromCalloutSample {

  public void getAndParse() {

    // Get the XML document from the external server
    Http http = new Http();
    HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
    req.setEndpoint('https://docsample.herokuapp.com/xmlSample');
    req.setMethod('GET');
    HttpResponse res = http.send(req);

    // Log the XML content
```

```
    System.debug(res.getBody());

    // Generate the HTTP response as an XML stream
    XmlStreamReader reader = res.getXmlStreamReader();

    // Read through the XML
    while(reader.hasNext()) {
      System.debug('Event Type:' + reader.getEventType());
      if (reader.getEventType() == XmlTag.START_ELEMENT) {
        System.debug(reader.getLocalName());
      }
      reader.next();
    }

  }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: JSON Support

Apex Developer Guide: XML Support

HttpResponse Methods

The following are methods for `HttpResponse`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getBody()
Retrieves the body returned in the response.

getBodyAsBlob()
Retrieves the body returned in the response as a Blob.

getBodyDocument()
Retrieves the body returned in the response as a DOM document.

getHeader(key)
Retrieves the contents of the response header.

getHeaderKeys()
Retrieves an array of header keys returned in the response.

getStatus()
Retrieves the status message returned for the response.

getStatusCode()
Retrieves the value of the status code returned in the response.

getXmlStreamReader()
Returns an `XmlStreamReader` that parses the body of the callout response.

setBody(body)
Specifies the body returned in the response.

setBodyAsBlob(body)
Specifies the body returned in the response using a Blob.

setHeader(key, value)
Specifies the contents of the response header.

setStatus(status)
Specifies the status message returned in the response.

setStatusCode(statusCode)
Specifies the value of the status code returned in the response.

toString()
Returns the status message and status code returned in the response, for example:

getBody()

Retrieves the body returned in the response.

Signature

```
public String getBody()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Limit 6 MB for synchronous Apex or 12 MB for asynchronous Apex. The HTTP request and response sizes count towards the total heap size.

getBodyAsBlob()

Retrieves the body returned in the response as a Blob.

Signature

```
public Blob getBodyAsBlob()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

Limit 6 MB for synchronous Apex or 12 MB for asynchronous Apex. The HTTP request and response sizes count towards the total heap size.

getBodyDocument()

Retrieves the body returned in the response as a DOM document.

Signature

```
public Dom.Document getBodyDocument()
```

Return Value

Type: `Dom.Document`

Example

Use it as a shortcut for:

```
String xml = httpResponse.getBody();
Dom.Document domDoc = new Dom.Document(xml);
```

getHeader(key)

Retrieves the contents of the response header.

Signature

```
public String getHeader(String key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

getHeaderKeys()

Retrieves an array of header keys returned in the response.

Signature

```
public String[] getHeaderKeys()
```

Return Value

Type: String[]

getStatus()

Retrieves the status message returned for the response.

Signature

```
public String getStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getStatusCode()

Retrieves the value of the status code returned in the response.

Signature

```
public Integer getStatusCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getXmlStreamReader()

Returns an `XmlStreamReader` that parses the body of the callout response.

Signature

```
public XmlStreamReader getXmlStreamReader()
```

Return Value

Type: System.XmlStreamReader

Usage

Use it as a shortcut for:

```
String xml = httpResponse.getBody();
XmlStreamReader xsr = new XmlStreamReader(xml);
```

setBody(body)

Specifies the body returned in the response.

Signature

```
public Void setBody(String body)
```

Parameters

body
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setBodyAsBlob(body)

Specifies the body returned in the response using a Blob.

Signature

```
public Void setBodyAsBlob(Blob body)
```

Parameters

body
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Void

setHeader(key, value)

Specifies the contents of the response header.

Signature

```
public Void setHeader(String key, String value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStatus(status)

Specifies the status message returned in the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatus(String status)
```

Parameters

status
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setStatusCode(statusCode)`

Specifies the value of the status code returned in the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatusCode(Integer statusCode)
```

Parameters

statusCode
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

`toString()`

Returns the status message and status code returned in the response, for example:

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Status=OK, StatusCode=200
```

Id Class

Contains methods for the ID primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Example: Getting an sObject Token From an ID

This sample shows how to use the `getSObjectType` method to obtain an sObject token from an ID. The `updateOwner` method in this sample accepts a list of IDs of the sObjects to update the ownerId field of. This list contains IDs of sObjects of the same type. The second parameter is the new owner ID. Note that since it is a future method, it doesn't accept sObject types as parameters; this is why

it accepts IDs of sObjects. This method gets the sObject token from the first ID in the list, then does a describe to obtain the object name and constructs a query dynamicallly. It then queries for all sObjects and updates their owner ID fields to the new owner ID.

```
public class MyDynamicSolution {
    @future
    public static void updateOwner(List<ID> objIds, ID newOwnerId) {
        // Validate input
        System.assert(objIds != null);
        System.assert(objIds.size() > 0);
        System.assert(newOwnerId != null);

        // Get the sObject token from the first ID
        // (the List contains IDs of sObjects of the same type).
        Schema.SObjectType token = objIds[0].getSObjectType();

        // Using the token, do a describe
        // and construct a query dynamically.
        Schema.DescribeSObjectResult dr = token.getDescribe();
        String queryString = 'SELECT ownerId FROM ' + dr.getName() +
            ' WHERE ';
        for(ID objId : objIds) {
            queryString += 'Id=\'' + objId + '\' OR ';
        }
        // Remove the last ' OR'
        queryString = queryString.subString(0, queryString.length() - 4);

        sObject[] objDBList = Database.query(queryString);
        System.assert(objDBList.size() > 0);

        // Update the owner ID on the sObjects
        for(Integer i=0;i<objDBList.size();i++) {
            objDBList[i].put('ownerId', newOwnerId);
        }
        Database.SaveResult[] srList = Database.update(objDBList, false);
        for(Database.SaveResult sr : srList) {
            if (sr.isSuccess()) {
                System.debug('Updated owner ID successfully for ' +
                    dr.getName() + ' ID ' + sr.getId());
            }
            else {
              System.debug('Updating ' + dr.getName() + ' returned the following errors.');

                for(Database.Error e : sr.getErrors()) {
                    System.debug(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Id Methods

The following are methods for `Id`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addError(errorMsg)
Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(errorMsg, escape)
Marks a trigger record with a custom error message, specifies if the error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(exceptionError)
Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(exceptionError, escape)
Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

getSObjectType()
Returns the token for the sObject corresponding to this ID. This method is primarily used with describe information.

to15(Id)
Converts an 18-character Id value to a 15-character case-sensitive string.

valueOf(toID)
Converts the specified String into an ID and returns the ID.

`addError(errorMsg)`

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg)
```

Parameters

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to mark the record with.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is similar to the `addError(errorMsg)` sObject method.

Note: This method escapes any HTML markup in the specified error message. The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].Id.addError('bad');
```

addError(errorMsg, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message, specifies if the error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to mark the record with.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.



Warning: Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *`escape`* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *`escape`* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *`escape`* argument or call `addError(String` ***`errorMsg`***`)` instead.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].Id.addError('Fix & resubmit', false);
```

addError(exceptionError)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(Exception exceptionError)
```

Parameters

exceptionError
Type: System.Exception

An Exception object or a custom exception object that contains the error message to mark the record with.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is similar to the `addError(exceptionError)` sObject method.

Note: This method escapes any HTML markup in the specified error message. The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Example

```
public class MyException extends Exception{}

Trigger.new[0].Id.addError(new myException('Invalid Id'));
```

addError(exceptionError, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(Exception exceptionError, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

exceptionError
Type: System.Exception

An Exception object or a custom exception object that contains the error message to mark the record with.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning: Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *`escape`* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *`escape`* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *`escape`* argument or call `addError(Exception e)` instead.

Example

```
public class MyException extends Exception{}

account a = new account();
a.addError(new MyException('Invalid Id & other issues'), false);
```

`getSObjectType()`

Returns the token for the sObject corresponding to this ID. This method is primarily used with describe information.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSObjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

Usage

For more information about describes, see Understanding Apex Describe Information.

Example

```
account a = new account(name = 'account');
insert a;
Id myId = a.id;
system.assertEquals(Schema.Account.SObjectType, myId.getSobjectType());
```

`to15(Id)`

Converts an 18-character Id value to a 15-character case-sensitive string.

Signature

```
public static string to15()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String Id_15_char = '0D5B000001DVM9t';
String Id_18_char = '0D5B000001DVM9tkAh';
ID testId = Id_18_char;
System.assertEquals(testId.to15(),Id_15_char);
```

`valueOf(toID)`

Converts the specified String into an ID and returns the ID.

Signature

```
public static ID valueOf(String toID)
```

Parameters

`toID`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID

Example

```
Id myId = Id.valueOf('001xa000003DIlo');
```

Ideas Class

Represents zone ideas.

Namespace

System

Usage

Ideas is a zone of users who post, vote for, and comment on ideas. An Ideas zone provides an online, transparent way for you to attract, manage, and showcase innovation.

A set of *recent replies* (returned by methods, see below) includes ideas that a user posted or commented on that already have comments posted by another user. The returned ideas are listed based on the time of the last comment made by another user, with the most recent ideas appearing first.

The *`userID`* argument is a required argument that filters the results so only the ideas that the specified user has posted or commented on are returned.

The *communityID* argument filters the results so only the ideas within the specified zone are returned. If this argument is the empty string, then all recent replies for the specified user are returned regardless of the zone.

For more information on ideas, see "Using Ideas" in the Salesforce online help.

Example

The following example finds ideas in a specific zone that have similar titles as a new idea:

```
public class FindSimilarIdeasController {

   public static void test() {
      // Instantiate a new idea
      Idea idea = new Idea ();

      // Specify a title for the new idea
      idea.Title = 'Increase Vacation Time for Employees';

      // Specify the communityID (INTERNAL_IDEAS) in which to find similar ideas.
      Community community = [ SELECT Id FROM Community WHERE Name = 'INTERNAL_IDEAS' ];

      idea.CommunityId = community.Id;

      ID[] results = Ideas.findSimilar(idea);
   }
}
```

The following example uses a Visualforce page in conjunction with a *custom controller*, that is, a special Apex class. For more information on Visualforce, see the Visualforce Developer's Guide.

This example creates an Apex method in the controller that returns unread recent replies. You can leverage this same example for the `getAllRecentReplies` and `getReadRecentReplies` methods. For this example to work, there must be ideas posted to the zone. In addition, at least one zone member must have posted a comment to another zone member's idea or comment.

```
// Create an Apex method to retrieve the recent replies marked as unread in all communities
public class IdeasController {

   public Idea[] getUnreadRecentReplies() {
       Idea[] recentReplies;
       if (recentReplies == null) {
          Id[] recentRepliesIds = Ideas.getUnreadRecentReplies(UserInfo.getUserId(), '');

           recentReplies = [SELECT Id, Title FROM Idea WHERE Id IN :recentRepliesIds];
       }
       return recentReplies;

  }

}
```

The following is the markup for a Visualforce page that uses the above custom controller to list unread recent replies.

```
<apex:page controller="IdeasController" showHeader="false">
    <apex:dataList value="{!unreadRecentReplies}" var="recentReplyIdea">
           <a href="/apex/viewIdea?id={!recentReplyIdea.Id}">
```

```
                <apex:outputText value="{!recentReplyIdea.Title}" escape="true"/></a>
     </apex:dataList>
</apex:page>
```

The following example uses a Visualforce page in conjunction with a custom controller to list ideas. Then, a second Visualforce page and custom controller is used to display a specific idea and mark it as read. For this example to work, there must be ideas posted to the zone.

```
// Create a controller to use on a VisualForce page to list ideas
public class IdeaListController {

    public final Idea[] ideas {get; private set;}

    public IdeaListController() {
        Integer i = 0;
        ideas = new Idea[10];
        for (Idea tmp : Database.query
('SELECT Id, Title FROM Idea WHERE Id != null AND parentIdeaId = null LIMIT 10')) {
            i++;
            ideas.add(tmp);
        }
    }
}
```

The following is the markup for a Visualforce page that uses the above custom controller to list ideas:

```
<apex:page controller="IdeaListController" tabStyle="Idea" showHeader="false">

        <apex:dataList value="{!ideas}" var="idea" id="ideaList">
            <a href="/apex/viewIdea?id={!idea.id}">
<apex:outputText value="{!idea.title}" escape="true"/></a>
        </apex:dataList>

</apex:page>
```

The following example also uses a Visualforce page and custom controller, this time, to display the idea that is selected on the above idea list page. In this example, the `markRead` method marks the selected idea and associated comments as read by the user that is currently logged in. Note that the `markRead` method is in the constructor so that the idea is marked read immediately when the user goes to a page that uses this controller. For this example to work, there must be ideas posted to the zone. In addition, at least one zone member must have posted a comment to another zone member's idea or comment.

```
// Create an Apex method in the controller that marks all comments as read for the
// selected idea
public class ViewIdeaController {

   private final String id = System.currentPage().getParameters().get('id');

   public ViewIdeaController(ApexPages.StandardController controller) {
               Ideas.markRead(id);
   }

}
```

The following is the markup for a Visualforce page that uses the above custom controller to display the idea as read.

```
<apex:page standardController="Idea" extensions="ViewIdeaController" showHeader="false">

     <h2><apex:outputText value="{!idea.title}" /></h2>
     <apex:outputText value="{!idea.body}" />

</apex:page>
```

Ideas Methods

The following are methods for `Ideas`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

findSimilar(idea)
Returns a list of similar ideas based on the title of the specified idea.

getAllRecentReplies(userID, communityID)
Returns ideas that have recent replies for the specified user or zone. This includes all read and unread replies.

getReadRecentReplies(userID, communityID)
Returns ideas that have recent replies marked as read.

getUnreadRecentReplies(userID, communityID)
Returns ideas that have recent replies marked as unread.

markRead(ideaID)
Marks all comments as read for the user that is currently logged in.

`findSimilar(idea)`

Returns a list of similar ideas based on the title of the specified idea.

Signature

```
public static ID[] findSimilar(Idea idea)
```

Parameters

idea
Type: Idea

Return Value

Type: ID[]

Usage

Each `findSimilar` call counts against the SOSL query limits. See Execution Governors and Limits.

getAllRecentReplies(userID, communityID)

Returns ideas that have recent replies for the specified user or zone. This includes all read and unread replies.

Signature

```
public static ID[] getAllRecentReplies(String userID, String communityID)
```

Parameters

userID
Type: String

communityID
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID[]

Usage

Each `getAllRecentReplies` call counts against the SOQL query limits. See Execution Governors and Limits.

getReadRecentReplies(userID, communityID)

Returns ideas that have recent replies marked as read.

Signature

```
public static ID[] getReadRecentReplies(String userID, String communityID)
```

Parameters

userID
Type: String

communityID
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID[]

Usage

Each `getReadRecentReplies` call counts against the SOQL query limits. See Execution Governors and Limits.

getUnreadRecentReplies(userID, communityID)

Returns ideas that have recent replies marked as unread.

Signature

```
public static ID[] getUnreadRecentReplies(String userID, String communityID)
```

Parameters

userID
Type: String

communityID
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID[]

Usage

Each `getUnreadRecentReplies` call counts against the SOQL query limits. See Execution Governors and Limits.

markRead(ideaID)

Marks all comments as read for the user that is currently logged in.

Signature

```
public static Void markRead(String ideaID)
```

Parameters

ideaID
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

InstallHandler Interface

Enables custom code to run after a managed package installation or upgrade.

Namespace

System

Usage

App developers can implement this interface to specify Apex code that runs automatically after a subscriber installs or upgrades a managed package. This makes it possible to customize the package install or upgrade, based on details of the subscriber's organization. For instance, you can use the script to populate custom settings, create sample data, send an email to the installer, notify an external system, or kick off a batch operation to populate a new field across a large set of data.

The post install script is invoked after tests have been run, and is subject to default governor limits. It runs as a special system user that represents your package, so all operations performed by the script appear to be done by your package. You can access this user by using UserInfo. You will only see this user at runtime, not while running tests.

If the script fails, the install/upgrade is aborted. Any errors in the script are emailed to the user specified in the **Notify on Apex Error** field of the package. If no user is specified, the install/upgrade details will be unavailable.

The post install script has the following additional properties.

- It can initiate batch, scheduled, and future jobs.
- It can't access Session IDs.
- It can only perform callouts using an async operation. The callout occurs after the script is run and the install is complete and committed.
- It can't call another Apex class in the package if that Apex class uses the `with sharing` keyword. This keyword can prevent the package from successfully installing. See the *Apex Developer Guide* to learn more.

The `InstallHandler` interface has a single method called `onInstall`, which specifies the actions to be performed on install/upgrade.

```
global interface InstallHandler {
  void onInstall(InstallContext context)
};
```

The `onInstall` method takes a context object as its argument, which provides the following information.

- The org ID of the organization in which the installation takes place.
- The user ID of the user who initiated the installation.
- The version number of the previously installed package (specified using the `Version` class). This is always a three-part number, such as 1.2.0.
- Whether the installation is an upgrade.
- Whether the installation is a push.

The context argument is an object whose type is the `InstallContext` interface. This interface is automatically implemented by the system. The following definition of the `InstallContext` interface shows the methods you can call on the context argument.

```
global interface InstallContext {
  ID organizationId();
  ID installerId();
  Boolean isUpgrade();
  Boolean isPush();
  Version previousVersion();
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

InstallHandler Methods

InstallHandler Example Implementation

InstallHandler Methods

The following are methods for `InstallHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

onInstall(context)
Specifies the actions to be performed on install/upgrade.

onInstall(context)

Specifies the actions to be performed on install/upgrade.

Signature

```
public Void onInstall(InstallContext context)
```

Parameters

context
Type: System.InstallContext

Return Value

Type: Void

InstallHandler Example Implementation

The following sample post install script performs these actions on package install/upgrade.

- If the previous version is null, that is, the package is being installed for the first time, the script:
  - Creates a new Account called "Newco" and verifies that it was created.
  - Creates a new instance of the custom object Survey, called "Client Satisfaction Survey".
  - Sends an email message to the subscriber confirming installation of the package.
- If the previous version is 1.0, the script creates a new instance of Survey called "Upgrading from Version 1.0".
- If the package is an upgrade, the script creates a new instance of Survey called "Sample Survey during Upgrade".
- If the upgrade is being pushed, the script creates a new instance of Survey called "Sample Survey during Push".

```
global class PostInstallClass implements InstallHandler {
  global void onInstall(InstallContext context) {
    if(context.previousVersion() == null) {
      Account a = new Account(name='Newco');
      insert(a);

      Survey__c obj = new Survey__c(name='Client Satisfaction Survey');
      insert obj;

      User u = [Select Id, Email from User where Id =:context.installerID()];
      String toAddress= u.Email;
      String[] toAddresses = new String[]{toAddress};
      Messaging.SingleEmailMessage mail =
        new Messaging.SingleEmailMessage();
      mail.setToAddresses(toAddresses);
      mail.setReplyTo('support@package.dev');
      mail.setSenderDisplayName('My Package Support');
```

```
      mail.setSubject('Package install successful');
      mail.setPlainTextBody('Thanks for installing the package.');
      Messaging.sendEmail(new Messaging.Email[] { mail });
      }
    else
      if(context.previousVersion().compareTo(new Version(1,0)) == 0) {
      Survey__c obj = new Survey__c(name='Upgrading from Version 1.0');
      insert(obj);
      }
    if(context.isUpgrade()) {
      Survey__c obj = new Survey__c(name='Sample Survey during Upgrade');
      insert obj;
      }
    if(context.isPush()) {
      Survey__c obj = new Survey__c(name='Sample Survey during Push');
      insert obj;
      }
    }
  }
```

You can test a post install script using the new `testInstall` method of the `Test` class. This method takes the following arguments.

- A class that implements the `InstallHandler` interface.
- A `Version` object that specifies the version number of the existing package.
- An optional Boolean value that is `true` if the installation is a push. The default is `false`.

This sample shows how to test a post install script implemented in the `PostInstallClass` Apex class.

```
@isTest
static void testInstallScript() {
  PostInstallClass postinstall = new PostInstallClass();
    Test.testInstall(postinstall, null);
    Test.testInstall(postinstall, new Version(1,0), true);
    List<Account> a = [Select id, name from Account where name ='Newco'];
    System.assertEquals(a.size(), 1, 'Account not found');
  }
```

Integer Class

Contains methods for the Integer primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on integers, see Integer Data Type.

Integer Methods

The following are methods for `Integer`.

IN THIS SECTION:

format()
Returns the integer as a string using the locale of the context user.

valueOf(stringToInteger)
Returns an Integer that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the String is interpreted as representing a signed decimal integer.

valueOf(fieldValue)
Converts the specified object to an Integer. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents an Integer value.

format()

Returns the integer as a string using the locale of the context user.

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
integer myInt = 22;
system.assertEquals('22', myInt.format());
```

valueOf(stringToInteger)

Returns an Integer that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the String is interpreted as representing a signed decimal integer.

Signature

```
public static Integer valueOf(String stringToInteger)
```

Parameters

stringToInteger
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Integer myInt = Integer.valueOf('123');
```

`valueOf(fieldValue)`

Converts the specified object to an Integer. Use this method to convert a history tracking field value or an object that represents an Integer value.

Signature

```
public static Integer valueOf(Object fieldValue)
```

Parameters

`fieldValue`
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Use this method with the `OldValue` or `NewValue` fields of history sObjects, such as `AccountHistory`, when the field type corresponds to an Integer type, like a number field.

Example:

Example

```
List<AccountHistory> ahlist =
  [SELECT Field,OldValue,NewValue
   FROM AccountHistory];
for(AccountHistory ah : ahlist) {
  System.debug('Field: ' + ah.Field);
  if (ah.field == 'NumberOfEmployees') {
    Integer oldValue =
      Integer.valueOf(ah.OldValue);
    Integer newValue =
      Integer.valueOf(ah.NewValue);
}
```

JSON Class

Contains methods for serializing Apex objects into JSON format and deserializing JSON content that was serialized using the `serialize` method in this class.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the methods in the `System.JSON` class to perform round-trip JSON serialization and deserialization of Apex objects.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Roundtrip Serialization and Deserialization

JSON Methods

The following are methods for `JSON`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

createGenerator(prettyPrint)
Returns a new JSON generator.

createParser(jsonString)
Returns a new JSON parser.

deserialize(jsonString, apexType)
Deserializes the specified JSON string into an Apex object of the specified type.

deserializeStrict(jsonString, apexType)
Deserializes the specified JSON string into an Apex object of the specified type.

deserializeUntyped(jsonString)
Deserializes the specified JSON string into collections of primitive data types.

serialize(objectToSerialize)
Serializes Apex objects into JSON content.

serialize(objectToSerialize, suppressApexObjectNulls)
Suppresses `null` values when serializing Apex objects into JSON content.

serializePretty(objectToSerialize)
Serializes Apex objects into JSON content and generates indented content using the pretty-print format.

serializePretty(objectToSerialize, suppressApexObjectNulls)
Suppresses `null` values when serializing Apex objects into JSON content and generates indented content using the pretty-print format.

`createGenerator(prettyPrint)`

Returns a new JSON generator.

Signature

```
public static System.JSONGenerator createGenerator(Boolean prettyPrint)
```

Parameters

`prettyPrint`
Type: Boolean

Determines whether the JSON generator creates JSON content in pretty-print format with the content indented. Set to `true` to create indented content.

Return Value

Type: System.JSONGenerator

createParser(jsonString)

Returns a new JSON parser.

Signature

```
public static System.JSONParser createParser(String jsonString)
```

Parameters

jsonString
Type: String

The JSON content to parse.

Return Value

Type: System.JSONParser

deserialize(jsonString, apexType)

Deserializes the specified JSON string into an Apex object of the specified type.

Signature

```
public static Object deserialize(String jsonString, System.Type apexType)
```

Parameters

jsonString
Type: String

The JSON content to deserialize.

apexType
Type: System.Type

The Apex type of the object that this method creates after deserializing the JSON content.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the JSON content contains attributes not present in the `System.Type` argument, such as a missing field or object, deserialization fails in some circumstances. When deserializing JSON content into a custom object or an sObject using Salesforce API version 34.0 or earlier, this method throws a runtime exception when passed extraneous attributes. When deserializing JSON content into an Apex class in any API version, or into an object in API version 35.0 or later, no exception is thrown. When no exception is thrown, this method ignores extraneous attributes and parses the rest of the JSON content.

Example

The following example deserializes a `Decimal` value.

```
Decimal n = (Decimal)JSON.deserialize(
                '100.1', Decimal.class);
System.assertEquals(n, 100.1);
```

deserializeStrict(jsonString, apexType)

Deserializes the specified JSON string into an Apex object of the specified type.

Signature

```
public static Object deserializeStrict(String jsonString, System.Type apexType)
```

Parameters

jsonString
Type: String

The JSON content to deserialize.

apexType
Type: System.Type

The Apex type of the object that this method creates after deserializing the JSON content.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

All attributes in the JSON string must be present in the specified type. If the JSON content contains attributes not present in the `System.Type` argument, such as a missing field or object, deserialization fails in some circumstances. When deserializing JSON content with extraneous attributes into an Apex class, this method throws an exception in all API versions. However, no exception is thrown when you use this method to deserialize JSON content into a custom object or an sObject.

Example

The following example deserializes a JSON string into an object of a user-defined type represented by the `Car` class, which this example also defines.

```
public class Car {
    public String make;
```

```
    public String year;
}

public void parse() {
    Car c = (Car)JSON.deserializeStrict(
        '{"make":"SFDC","year":"2020"}',
        Car.class);
    System.assertEquals(c.make, 'SFDC');
    System.assertEquals(c.year, '2020');
}
```

deserializeUntyped(jsonString)

Deserializes the specified JSON string into collections of primitive data types.

Signature

```
public static Object deserializeUntyped(String jsonString)
```

Parameters

jsonString
Type: String

The JSON content to deserialize.

Return Value

Type: Object

Example

The following example deserializes a JSON representation of an appliance object into a map that contains primitive data types and further collections of primitive types. It then verifies the deserialized values.

```
String jsonInput = '{\n' +
    ' "description" :"An appliance",\n' +
    ' "accessories" : [ "powerCord", ' +
      '{ "right":"door handle1", ' +
        '"left":"door handle2" } ],\n' +
    ' "dimensions" : ' +
      '{ "height" : 5.5 , ' +
        '"width" : 3.0 , ' +
        '"depth" : 2.2 },\n' +
    ' "type" : null,\n' +
    ' "inventory" : 2000,\n' +
    ' "price" : 1023.45,\n' +
    ' "isShipped" : true,\n' +
    ' "modelNumber" : "123"\n' +
    '}';

Map<String, Object> m =
   (Map<String, Object>)
```

```
      JSON.deserializeUntyped(jsonInput);

System.assertEquals(
   'An appliance', m.get('description'));

List<Object> a =
   (List<Object>)m.get('accessories');
System.assertEquals('powerCord', a[0]);
Map<String, Object> a2 =
   (Map<String, Object>)a[1];
System.assertEquals(
   'door handle1', a2.get('right'));
System.assertEquals(
   'door handle2', a2.get('left'));

Map<String, Object> dim =
   (Map<String, Object>)m.get('dimensions');
System.assertEquals(
   5.5, dim.get('height'));
System.assertEquals(
   3.0, dim.get('width'));
System.assertEquals(
   2.2, dim.get('depth'));

System.assertEquals(null, m.get('type'));
System.assertEquals(
   2000, m.get('inventory'));
System.assertEquals(
   1023.45, m.get('price'));
System.assertEquals(
   true, m.get('isShipped'));
System.assertEquals(
   '123', m.get('modelNumber'));
```

serialize(objectToSerialize)

Serializes Apex objects into JSON content.

Signature

```
public static String serialize(Object objectToSerialize)
```

Parameters

objectToSerialize
Type: Object

The Apex object to serialize.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

The following example serializes a new `Datetime` value.

```
Datetime dt = Datetime.newInstance(
                Date.newInstance(
                   2011, 3, 22),
                Time.newInstance(
                   1, 15, 18, 0));
    String str = JSON.serialize(dt);
    System.assertEquals(
       '"2011-03-22T08:15:18.000Z"',
       str);
```

serialize(objectToSerialize, suppressApexObjectNulls)

Suppresses `null` values when serializing Apex objects into JSON content.

Signature

```
public static String serialize(Object objectToSerialize, Boolean suppressApexObjectNulls)
```

Parameters

objectToSerialize
Type: Object

The Apex object to serialize.

suppressApexObjectNulls
Type: Boolean

If true, remove `null` values before serializing the JSON object.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method allows you to specify whether to suppress `null` values when serializing Apex objects into JSON content.

serializePretty(objectToSerialize)

Serializes Apex objects into JSON content and generates indented content using the pretty-print format.

Signature

```
public static String serializePretty(Object objectToSerialize)
```

Parameters

objectToSerialize
Type: Object

The Apex object to serialize.

Return Value

Type: String

`serializePretty(objectToSerialize, suppressApexObjectNulls)`

Suppresses `null` values when serializing Apex objects into JSON content and generates indented content using the pretty-print format.

Signature

```
public static String serializePretty(Object objectToSerialize, Boolean
suppressApexObjectNulls)
```

Parameters

objectToSerialize
Type: Object

The Apex object to serialize.

suppressApexObjectNulls
Type: Boolean

If true, remove `null` values before serializing the JSON object.

Return Value

Type: String

JSONGenerator Class

Contains methods used to serialize objects into JSON content using the standard JSON encoding.

Namespace

System

Usage

The `System.JSONGenerator` class is provided to enable the generation of standard JSON-encoded content and gives you more control on the structure of the JSON output.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: JSON Generator

JSONGenerator Methods

The following are methods for `JSONGenerator`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

close()
Closes the JSON generator.

getAsString()
Returns the generated JSON content.

isClosed()
Returns `true` if the JSON generator is closed; otherwise, returns `false`.

writeBlob(blobValue)
Writes the specified `Blob` value as a base64-encoded string.

writeBlobField(fieldName, blobValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and BLOB value.

writeBoolean(blobValue)
Writes the specified Boolean value.

writeBooleanField(fieldName, booleanValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and Boolean value.

writeDate(dateValue)
Writes the specified date value in the ISO-8601 format.

writeDateField(fieldName, dateValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and date value. The date value is written in the ISO-8601 format.

writeDateTime(datetimeValue)
Writes the specified date and time value in the ISO-8601 format.

writeDateTimeField(fieldName, datetimeValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and date and time value. The date and time value is written in the ISO-8601 format.

writeEndArray()
Writes the ending marker of a JSON array (']').

writeEndObject()
Writes the ending marker of a JSON object ('}').

writeFieldName(fieldName)
Writes a field name.

writeId(identifier)
Writes the specified ID value.

writeIdField(fieldName, identifier)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and identifier value.

writeNull()
Writes the JSON null literal value.

writeNullField(fieldName)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and the JSON null literal value.

writeNumber(number)
Writes the specified decimal value.

writeNumber(number)
Writes the specified double value.

writeNumber(number)
Writes the specified integer value.

writeNumber(number)
Writes the specified long value.

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and decimal value.

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and double value.

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and integer value.

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and long value.

writeObject(anyObject)
Writes the specified Apex object in JSON format.

writeObjectField(fieldName, value)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and Apex object.

writeStartArray()
Writes the starting marker of a JSON array ('[').

writeStartObject()
Writes the starting marker of a JSON object ('{').

writeString(stringValue)
Writes the specified string value.

writeStringField(fieldName, stringValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and string value.

writeTime(timeValue)
Writes the specified time value in the ISO-8601 format.

writeTimeField(fieldName, timeValue)
Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and time value in the ISO-8601 format.

`close()`

Closes the JSON generator.

Signature

```
public Void close()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

No more content can be written after the JSON generator is closed.

getAsString()

Returns the generated JSON content.

Signature

```
public String getAsString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method closes the JSON generator if it isn't closed already.

isClosed()

Returns `true` if the JSON generator is closed; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isClosed()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

writeBlob(blobValue)

Writes the specified `Blob` value as a base64-encoded string.

Signature

```
public Void writeBlob(Blob blobValue)
```

Parameters

blobValue
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Void

writeBlobField(fieldName, blobValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and BLOB value.

Signature

```
public Void writeBlobField(String fieldName, Blob blobValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

blobValue
Type: Blob

Return Value

Type: Void

writeBoolean(blobValue)

Writes the specified Boolean value.

Signature

```
public Void writeBoolean(Boolean blobValue)
```

Parameters

blobValue
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

writeBooleanField(fieldName, booleanValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and Boolean value.

Signature

```
public Void writeBooleanField(String fieldName, Boolean booleanValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

booleanValue
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

writeDate(dateValue)

Writes the specified date value in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeDate(Date dateValue)
```

Parameters

dateValue
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: Void

writeDateField(fieldName, dateValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and date value. The date value is written in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeDateField(String fieldName, Date dateValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

dateValue
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: Void

writeDateTime(datetimeValue)

Writes the specified date and time value in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeDateTime(Datetime datetimeValue)
```

Parameters

datetimeValue
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Void

writeDateTimeField(fieldName, datetimeValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and date and time value. The date and time value is written in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeDateTimeField(String fieldName, Datetime datetimeValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

datetimeValue
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: Void

writeEndArray()

Writes the ending marker of a JSON array (']').

Signature

```
public Void writeEndArray()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeEndObject()

Writes the ending marker of a JSON object ('}').

Signature

```
public Void writeEndObject()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeFieldName(fieldName)

Writes a field name.

Signature

```
public Void writeFieldName(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeId(identifier)

Writes the specified ID value.

Signature

```
public Void writeId(ID identifier)
```

Parameters

identifier
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

writeIdField(fieldName, identifier)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and identifier value.

Signature

```
public Void writeIdField(String fieldName, Id identifier)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

identifier
Type: ID

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNull()

Writes the JSON null literal value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNull()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNullField(fieldName)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and the JSON null literal value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNullField(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNumber(number)

Writes the specified decimal value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumber(Decimal number)
```

Parameters

number
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Void

`writeNumber(number)`

Writes the specified double value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumber(Double number)
```

Parameters

number
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Void

`writeNumber(number)`

Writes the specified integer value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumber(Integer number)
```

Parameters

number
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

`writeNumber(number)`

Writes the specified long value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumber(Long number)
```

Parameters

number
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and decimal value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumberField(String fieldName, Decimal number)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

number
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and double value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumberField(String fieldName, Double number)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

number
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and integer value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumberField(String fieldName, Integer number)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

number
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNumberField(fieldName, number)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and long value.

Signature

```
public Void writeNumberField(String fieldName, Long number)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

number
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Void

writeObject(anyObject)

Writes the specified Apex object in JSON format.

Signature

```
public Void writeObject(Object anyObject)
```

Parameters

anyObject
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

writeObjectField(fieldName, value)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and Apex object.

Signature

```
public Void writeObjectField(String fieldName, Object value)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

value
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

writeStartArray()

Writes the starting marker of a JSON array ('[').

Signature

```
public Void writeStartArray()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeStartObject()

Writes the starting marker of a JSON object ('{').

Signature

```
public Void writeStartObject()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeString(stringValue)

Writes the specified string value.

Signature

```
public Void writeString(String stringValue)
```

Parameters

stringValue
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeStringField(fieldName, stringValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and string value.

Signature

```
public Void writeStringField(String fieldName, String stringValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

stringValue
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeTime(timeValue)

Writes the specified time value in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeTime(Time timeValue)
```

Parameters

timeValue
Type: Time

Return Value

Type: Void

writeTimeField(fieldName, timeValue)

Writes a field name and value pair using the specified field name and time value in the ISO-8601 format.

Signature

```
public Void writeTimeField(String fieldName, Time timeValue)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

timeValue
Type: Time

Return Value

Type: Void

JSONParser Class

Represents a parser for JSON-encoded content.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `System.JSONParser` methods to parse a response that's returned from a call to an external service that is in JSON format, such as a JSON-encoded response of a Web service callout.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: JSON Parsing

JSONParser Methods

The following are methods for `JSONParser`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

clearCurrentToken()
Removes the current token.

getBlobValue()
Returns the current token as a BLOB value.

getBooleanValue()
Returns the current token as a Boolean value.

getCurrentName()
Returns the name associated with the current token.

getCurrentToken()
Returns the token that the parser currently points to or `null` if there's no current token.

getDatetimeValue()
Returns the current token as a date and time value.

getDateValue()
Returns the current token as a date value.

getDecimalValue()
Returns the current token as a decimal value.

getDoubleValue()
Returns the current token as a double value.

getIdValue()
Returns the current token as an ID value.

getIntegerValue()
Returns the current token as an integer value.

getLastClearedToken()
Returns the last token that was cleared by the `clearCurrentToken` method.

getLongValue()
Returns the current token as a long value.

getText()
Returns the textual representation of the current token or `null` if there's no current token.

getTimeValue()
Returns the current token as a time value.

hasCurrentToken()
Returns `true` if the parser currently points to a token; otherwise, returns `false`.

nextToken()
Returns the next token or `null` if the parser has reached the end of the input stream.

nextValue()
Returns the next token that is a value type or `null` if the parser has reached the end of the input stream.

readValueAs(apexType)
Deserializes JSON content into an object of the specified Apex type and returns the deserialized object.

readValueAsStrict(apexType)
Deserializes JSON content into an object of the specified Apex type and returns the deserialized object. All attributes in the JSON content must be present in the specified type.

skipChildren()
Skips all child tokens of type `JSONToken.START_ARRAY` and `JSONToken.START_OBJECT` that the parser currently points to.

`clearCurrentToken()`

Removes the current token.

Signature

```
public Void clearCurrentToken()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

After this method is called, a call to `hasCurrentToken` returns `false` and a call to `getCurrentToken` returns `null`. You can retrieve the cleared token by calling `getLastClearedToken`.

getBlobValue()

Returns the current token as a BLOB value.

Signature

```
public Blob getBlobValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_STRING` and must be Base64-encoded.

getBooleanValue()

Returns the current token as a Boolean value.

Signature

```
public Boolean getBooleanValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_TRUE` or `JSONToken.VALUE_FALSE`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Boolean value.

```
String JSONContent =
    '{"isActive":true}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the Boolean value.
Boolean isActive = parser.getBooleanValue();
```

getCurrentName()

Returns the name associated with the current token.

Signature

```
public String getCurrentName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If the current token is of type `JSONToken.FIELD_NAME`, this method returns the same value as `getText`. If the current token is a value, this method returns the field name that precedes this token. For other values such as array values or root-level values, this method returns `null`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string. It advances to the field value and retrieves its corresponding field name.

Example

```
String JSONContent = '{"firstName":"John"}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the field name for the current value.
String fieldName = parser.getCurrentName();
// Get the textual representation
// of the value.
String fieldValue = parser.getText();
```

getCurrentToken()

Returns the token that the parser currently points to or `null` if there's no current token.

Signature

```
public System.JSONToken getCurrentToken()
```

Return Value

Type: System.JSONToken

Usage

The following example iterates through all the tokens in a sample JSON string.

```
String JSONContent = '{"firstName":"John"}';
JSONParser parser =
```

```
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the next token.
while (parser.nextToken() != null) {
    System.debug('Current token: ' +
        parser.getCurrentToken());
}
```

getDatetimeValue()

Returns the current token as a date and time value.

Signature

```
public Datetime getDatetimeValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_STRING` and must represent a `Datetime` value in the ISO-8601 format.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Datetime value.

```
String JSONContent =
'{"transactionDate":"2011-03-22T13:01:23"}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the transaction date.
Datetime transactionDate =
   parser.getDatetimeValue();
```

getDateValue()

Returns the current token as a date value.

Signature

```
public Date getDateValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_STRING` and must represent a `Date` value in the ISO-8601 format.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Date value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"dateOfBirth":"2011-03-22"}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the date of birth.
Date dob = parser.getDateValue();
```

getDecimalValue()

Returns the current token as a decimal value.

Signature

```
public Decimal getDecimalValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_NUMBER_FLOAT` or `JSONToken.VALUE_NUMBER_INT` and is a numerical value that can be converted to a value of type `Decimal`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Decimal value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"GPA":3.8}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the GPA score.
Decimal gpa = parser.getDecimalValue();
```

getDoubleValue()

Returns the current token as a double value.

Signature

```
public Double getDoubleValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_NUMBER_FLOAT` and is a numerical value that can be converted to a value of type `Double`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Double value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"GPA":3.8}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the GPA score.
Double gpa = parser.getDoubleValue();
```

getIdValue()

Returns the current token as an ID value.

Signature

```
public ID getIdValue()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_STRING` and must be a valid `ID`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves an ID value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"recordId":"001R0000002nO6H"}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the record ID.
ID recordID = parser.getIdValue();
```

getIntegerValue()

Returns the current token as an integer value.

Signature

```
public Integer getIntegerValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_NUMBER_INT` and must represent an `Integer`.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves an Integer value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"recordCount":10}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the record count.
Integer count = parser.getIntegerValue();
```

getLastClearedToken()

Returns the last token that was cleared by the `clearCurrentToken` method.

Signature

```
public System.JSONToken getLastClearedToken()
```

Return Value

Type: System.JSONToken

getLongValue()

Returns the current token as a long value.

Signature

```
public Long getLongValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_NUMBER_INT` and is a numerical value that can be converted to a value of type `Long` .

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Long value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"recordCount":2097531021}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the record count.
Long count = parser.getLongValue();
```

getText()

Returns the textual representation of the current token or `null` if there's no current token.

Signature

```
public String getText()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

No current token exists, and therefore this method returns `null`, if `nextToken` has not been called yet for the first time or if the parser has reached the end of the input stream.

getTimeValue()

Returns the current token as a time value.

Signature

```
public Time getTimeValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Time

Usage

The current token must be of type `JSONToken.VALUE_STRING` and must represent a `Time` value in the ISO-8601 format.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Datetime value.

```
String JSONContent =
   '{"arrivalTime":"18:05"}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Advance to the start object marker.
```

```
parser.nextToken();
// Advance to the next value.
parser.nextValue();
// Get the arrival time.
Time arrivalTime = parser.getTimeValue();
```

hasCurrentToken()

Returns `true` if the parser currently points to a token; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasCurrentToken()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

nextToken()

Returns the next token or `null` if the parser has reached the end of the input stream.

Signature

```
public System.JSONToken nextToken()
```

Return Value

Type: System.JSONToken

Usage

Advances the stream enough to determine the type of the next token, if any.

nextValue()

Returns the next token that is a value type or `null` if the parser has reached the end of the input stream.

Signature

```
public System.JSONToken nextValue()
```

Return Value

Type: System.JSONToken

Usage

Advances the stream enough to determine the type of the next token that is of a value type, if any, including a JSON array and object start and end markers.

`readValueAs(apexType)`

Deserializes JSON content into an object of the specified Apex type and returns the deserialized object.

Signature

```
public Object readValueAs(System.Type apexType)
```

Parameters

`apexType`
Type: System.Type

The *`apexType`* argument specifies the type of the object that this method returns after deserializing the current value.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the JSON content contains attributes not present in the `System.Type` argument, such as a missing field or object, deserialization fails in some circumstances. When deserializing JSON content into a custom object or an sObject using Salesforce API version 34.0 or earlier, this method throws a runtime exception when passed extraneous attributes. When deserializing JSON content into an Apex class in any API version, or into an object in API version 35.0 or later, no exception is thrown. When no exception is thrown, this method ignores extraneous attributes and parses the rest of the JSON content.

Example

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Datetime value. Before being able to run this sample, you must create a new Apex class as follows:

```
public class Person {
    public String name;
    public String phone;
}
```

Next, insert the following sample in a class method:

```
// JSON string that contains a Person object.
String JSONContent =
    '{"person":{' +
        '"name":"John Smith",' +
        '"phone":"555-1212"}}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Make calls to nextToken()
// to point to the second
// start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
parser.nextToken();
parser.nextToken();
// Retrieve the Person object
// from the JSON string.
```

```
Person obj =
   (Person)parser.readValueAs(
      Person.class);
System.assertEquals(
   obj.name, 'John Smith');
System.assertEquals(
   obj.phone, '555-1212');
```

readValueAsStrict(apexType)

Deserializes JSON content into an object of the specified Apex type and returns the deserialized object. All attributes in the JSON content must be present in the specified type.

Signature

```
public Object readValueAsStrict(System.Type apexType)
```

Parameters

apexType
Type: System.Type

The *apexType* argument specifies the type of the object that this method returns after deserializing the current value.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the JSON content contains attributes not present in the `System.Type` argument, such as a missing field or object, deserialization fails in some circumstances. When deserializing JSON content with extraneous attributes into an Apex class, this method throws an exception in all API versions. However, no exception is thrown when you use this method to deserialize JSON content into a custom object or an sObject.

The following example parses a sample JSON string and retrieves a Datetime value. Before being able to run this sample, you must create a new Apex class as follows:

```
public class Person {
    public String name;
    public String phone;
}
```

Next, insert the following sample in a class method:

```
// JSON string that contains a Person object.
String JSONContent =
    '{"person":{' +
        '"name":"John Smith",' +
        '"phone":"555-1212"}}';
JSONParser parser =
   JSON.createParser(JSONContent);
// Make calls to nextToken()
// to point to the second
```

```
// start object marker.
parser.nextToken();
parser.nextToken();
parser.nextToken();
// Retrieve the Person object
// from the JSON string.
Person obj =
   (Person)parser.readValueAsStrict(
      Person.class);
System.assertEquals(
   obj.name, 'John Smith');
System.assertEquals(
   obj.phone, '555-1212');
```

skipChildren()

Skips all child tokens of type `JSONToken.START_ARRAY` and `JSONToken.START_OBJECT` that the parser currently points to.

Signature

```
public Void skipChildren()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

JSONToken Enum

Contains all token values used for parsing JSON content.

Namespace

System

Enum Value	Description
END_ARRAY	The ending of an array value. This token is returned when ']' is encountered.
END_OBJECT	The ending of an object value. This token is returned when '}' is encountered.
FIELD_NAME	A string token that is a field name.
NOT_AVAILABLE	The requested token isn't available.
START_ARRAY	The start of an array value. This token is returned when '[' is encountered.
START_OBJECT	The start of an object value. This token is returned when '{' is encountered.

Enum Value	Description
VALUE_EMBEDDED_OBJECT	An embedded object that isn't accessible as a typical object structure that includes the start and end object tokens START_OBJECT and END_OBJECT but is represented as a raw object.
VALUE_FALSE	The literal “false” value.
VALUE_NULL	The literal “null” value.
VALUE_NUMBER_FLOAT	A float value.
VALUE_NUMBER_INT	An integer value.
VALUE_STRING	A string value.
VALUE_TRUE	A value that corresponds to the “true” string literal.

Limits Class

Contains methods that return limit information for specific resources.

Namespace

System

Usage

The Limits methods return the specific limit for the particular governor, such as the number of calls of a method or the amount of heap size remaining.

Because Apex runs in a multitenant environment, the Apex runtime engine strictly enforces a number of limits to ensure that runaway Apex doesn’t monopolize shared resources.

None of the Limits methods require an argument. The format of the limits methods is as follows:

```
myDMLLimit = Limits.getDMLStatements();
```

There are two versions of every method: the first returns the amount of the resource that has been used while the second version contains the word limit and returns the total amount of the resource that is available.

See Execution Governors and Limits.

Limits Methods

The following are methods for `Limits`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAggregateQueries()
Returns the number of aggregate queries that have been processed with any SOQL query statement.

getLimitAggregateQueries()
Returns the total number of aggregate queries that can be processed with SOQL query statements.

getAsyncCalls()

Reserved for future use.

getLimitAsyncCalls()

Reserved for future use.

getCallouts()

Returns the number of Web service statements that have been processed.

getChildRelationshipsDescribes()

Deprecated. Returns the number of child relationship objects that have been returned.

getLimitCallouts()

Returns the total number of Web service statements that can be processed.

getCpuTime()

Returns the CPU time (in milliseconds) that has been used in the current transaction.

getLimitCpuTime()

Returns the maximum CPU time (in milliseconds) that can be used in a transaction.

getDMLRows()

Returns the number of records that have been processed with any statement that counts against DML limits, such as DML statements, the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method, and other methods.

getLimitDMLRows()

Returns the total number of records that can be processed with any statement that counts against DML limits, such as DML statements, the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` method, and other methods.

getDMLStatements()

Returns the number of DML statements (such as `insert`, `update` or the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` method) that have been called.

getLimitDMLStatements()

Returns the total number of DML statements or the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` methods that can be called.

getEmailInvocations()

Returns the number of email invocations (such as `sendEmail`) that have been called.

getLimitEmailInvocations()

Returns the total number of email invocation (such as `sendEmail`) that can be called.

getFindSimilarCalls()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getSoslQueries`. The number of `findSimilar` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of SOSL queries issued.

getLimitFindSimilarCalls()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitSoslQueries`. The number of `findSimilar` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of SOSL queries issued.

getFutureCalls()

Returns the number of methods with the `future` annotation that have been executed (not necessarily completed).

getLimitFutureCalls()

Returns the total number of methods with the `future` annotation that can be executed (not necessarily completed).

getHeapSize()

Returns the approximate amount of memory (in bytes) that has been used for the heap.

getLimitHeapSize()

Returns the total amount of memory (in bytes) that can be used for the heap.

getMobilePushApexCalls()

Returns the number of Apex calls that have been used by mobile push notifications during the current metering interval.

getLimitMobilePushApexCalls()

Returns the total number of Apex calls that are allowed per transaction for mobile push notifications.

getPublishImmediateDML()

Returns the number of `EventBus.publish` calls that have been made for platform events configured to publish immediately.

getLimitPublishImmediateDML()

Returns the total number of `EventBus.publish` statements that can be called for platform events configured to publish immediately.

getQueries()

Returns the number of SOQL queries that have been issued.

getLimitQueries()

Returns the total number of SOQL queries that can be issued.

getQueryLocatorRows()

Returns the number of records that have been returned by the `Database.getQueryLocator` method.

getLimitQueryLocatorRows()

Returns the total number of records that can be returned by the `Database.getQueryLocator` method.

getQueryRows()

Returns the number of records that have been returned by issuing SOQL queries.

getLimitQueryRows()

Returns the total number of records that can be returned by issuing SOQL queries.

getQueueableJobs()

Returns the number of queueable jobs that have been added to the queue per transaction. A queueable job corresponds to a class that implements the `Queueable` interface.

getLimitQueueableJobs()

Returns the maximum number of queueable jobs that can be added to the queue per transaction. A queueable job corresponds to a class that implements the `Queueable` interface.

getRunAs()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

getLimitRunAs()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

getSavepointRollbacks()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

getLimitSavepointRollbacks()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

getSavepoints()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

getLimitSavepoints()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

getSoslQueries()
Returns the number of SOSL queries that have been issued.

getLimitSoslQueries()
Returns the total number of SOSL queries that can be issued.

getAggregateQueries()

Returns the number of aggregate queries that have been processed with any SOQL query statement.

Signature

```
public static Integer getAggregateQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitAggregateQueries()

Returns the total number of aggregate queries that can be processed with SOQL query statements.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitAggregateQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getAsyncCalls()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public static Integer getAsyncCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitAsyncCalls()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitAsyncCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getCallouts()`

Returns the number of Web service statements that have been processed.

Signature

```
public static Integer getCallouts()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getChildRelationshipsDescribes()`

Deprecated. Returns the number of child relationship objects that have been returned.

Signature

```
public static Integer getChildRelationshipsDescribes()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Note: Because describe limits are no longer enforced in any API version, this method is no longer available. In API version 30.0 and earlier, this method is available but is deprecated.

`getLimitCallouts()`

Returns the total number of Web service statements that can be processed.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitCallouts()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getCpuTime()`

Returns the CPU time (in milliseconds) that has been used in the current transaction.

Signature

```
public static Integer getCpuTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getLimitCpuTime()`

Returns the maximum CPU time (in milliseconds) that can be used in a transaction.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitCpuTime()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getDMLRows()`

Returns the number of records that have been processed with any statement that counts against DML limits, such as DML statements, the `Database.emptyRecycleBin` method, and other methods.

Signature

```
public static Integer getDMLRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getLimitDMLRows()`

Returns the total number of records that can be processed with any statement that counts against DML limits, such as DML statements, the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` method, and other methods.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitDMLRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getDMLStatements()`

Returns the number of DML statements (such as `insert`, `update` or the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` method) that have been called.

Signature

```
public static Integer getDMLStatements()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitDMLStatements()

Returns the total number of DML statements or the `database.EmptyRecycleBin` methods that can be called.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitDMLStatements()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getEmailInvocations()

Returns the number of email invocations (such as `sendEmail`) that have been called.

Signature

```
public static Integer getEmailInvocations()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitEmailInvocations()

Returns the total number of email invocation (such as `sendEmail`) that can be called.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitEmailInvocations()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getFindSimilarCalls()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getSoslQueries`. The number of `findSimilar` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of SOSL queries issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getFindSimilarCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitFindSimilarCalls()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitSoslQueries`. The number of `findSimilar` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of SOSL queries issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitFindSimilarCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getFutureCalls()

Returns the number of methods with the `future` annotation that have been executed (not necessarily completed).

Signature

```
public static Integer getFutureCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitFutureCalls()

Returns the total number of methods with the `future` annotation that can be executed (not necessarily completed).

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitFutureCalls()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getHeapSize()

Returns the approximate amount of memory (in bytes) that has been used for the heap.

Signature

```
public static Integer getHeapSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitHeapSize()

Returns the total amount of memory (in bytes) that can be used for the heap.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitHeapSize()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getMobilePushApexCalls()

Returns the number of Apex calls that have been used by mobile push notifications during the current metering interval.

Signature

```
public static Integer getMobilePushApexCalls()
```

Return Value

Type:Integer

getLimitMobilePushApexCalls()

Returns the total number of Apex calls that are allowed per transaction for mobile push notifications.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitMobilePushApexCalls()
```

Return Value

Type:Integer

getPublishImmediateDML()

Returns the number of `EventBus.publish` calls that have been made for platform events configured to publish immediately.

Signature

```
public static Integer getPublishImmediateDML()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitPublishImmediateDML()

Returns the total number of `EventBus.publish` statements that can be called for platform events configured to publish immediately.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitPublishImmediateDML()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getQueries()

Returns the number of SOQL queries that have been issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitQueries()

Returns the total number of SOQL queries that can be issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getQueryLocatorRows()

Returns the number of records that have been returned by the `Database.getQueryLocator` method.

Signature

```
public static Integer getQueryLocatorRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitQueryLocatorRows()

Returns the total number of records that can be returned by the `Database.getQueryLocator` method.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitQueryLocatorRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getQueryRows()

Returns the number of records that have been returned by issuing SOQL queries.

Signature

```
public static Integer getQueryRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitQueryRows()

Returns the total number of records that can be returned by issuing SOQL queries.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitQueryRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getQueueableJobs()

Returns the number of queueable jobs that have been added to the queue per transaction. A queueable job corresponds to a class that implements the `Queueable` interface.

Signature

```
public static Integer getQueueableJobs()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getLimitQueueableJobs()

Returns the maximum number of queueable jobs that can be added to the queue per transaction. A queueable job corresponds to a class that implements the `Queueable` interface.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitQueueableJobs()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

getRunAs()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getRunAs()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `RunAs` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

getLimitRunAs()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitRunAs()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `RunAs` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

getSavepointRollbacks()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getSavepointRollbacks()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `Rollback` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

getLimitSavepointRollbacks()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitSavepointRollbacks()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `Rollback` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

getSavepoints()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getSavepoints()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `setSavepoint` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

getLimitSavepoints()

Deprecated. Returns the same value as `getLimitDMLStatements`.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitSavepoints()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The number of `setSavepoint` methods is no longer a separate limit, but is tracked as the number of DML statements issued.

`getSoslQueries()`

Returns the number of SOSL queries that have been issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getSoslQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getLimitSoslQueries()`

Returns the total number of SOSL queries that can be issued.

Signature

```
public static Integer getLimitSoslQueries()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

List Class

Contains methods for the List collection type.

Namespace

System

Usage

The list methods are all instance methods, that is, they operate on a particular instance of a list. For example, the following removes all elements from `myList`:

```
myList.clear();
```

Even though the `clear` method does not include any parameters, the list that calls it is its implicit parameter.

Note:

- When using a custom type for the list elements, provide an `equals` method in your class. Apex uses this method to determine equality and uniqueness for your objects. For more information on providing an `equals` method, see Using Custom Types in Map Keys and Sets.
- If the list contains String elements, the elements are case-sensitive. Two list elements that differ only by case are considered distinct.

For more information on lists, see Lists.

IN THIS SECTION:

List Constructors

List Methods

List Constructors

The following are constructors for `List`.

IN THIS SECTION:

List<T>()

Creates a new instance of the `List` class. A list can hold elements of any data type T.

List<T>(listToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `List` class by copying the elements from the specified list. T is the data type of the elements in both lists and can be any data type.

List<T>(setToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `List` class by copying the elements from the specified set. T is the data type of the elements in the set and list and can be any data type.

`List<T>()`

Creates a new instance of the `List` class. A list can hold elements of any data type T.

Signature

```
public List<T>()
```

Example

```
// Create a list
List<Integer> ls1 = new List<Integer>();
// Add two integers to the list
ls1.add(1);
ls1.add(2);
```

List<T>(listToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `List` class by copying the elements from the specified list. T is the data type of the elements in both lists and can be any data type.

Signature

```
public List<T>(List<T> listToCopy)
```

Parameters

listToCopy
Type: List<T>

The list containing the elements to initialize this list from. T is the data type of the list elements.

Example

```
List<Integer> ls1 = new List<Integer>();
ls1.add(1);
ls1.add(2);
// Create a list based on an existing one
List<Integer> ls2 = new List<Integer>(ls1);
// ls2 elements are copied from ls1
System.debug(ls2);// DEBUG|(1, 2)
```

List<T>(setToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `List` class by copying the elements from the specified set. T is the data type of the elements in the set and list and can be any data type.

Signature

```
public List<T>(Set<T> setToCopy)
```

Parameters

setToCopy
Type: Set<T>

The set containing the elements to initialize this list with. T is the data type of the set elements.

Example

```
Set<Integer> s1 = new Set<Integer>();
s1.add(1);
s1.add(2);
// Create a list based on a set
List<Integer> ls = new List<Integer>(s1);
// ls elements are copied from s1
System.debug(ls);// DEBUG|(1, 2)
```

List Methods

The following are methods for `List`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

add(listElement)

Adds an element to the end of the list.

add(index, listElement)

Inserts an element into the list at the specified index position.

addAll(fromList)

Adds all of the elements in the specified list to the list that calls the method. Both lists must be of the same type.

addAll(fromSet)

Add all of the elements in specified set to the list that calls the method. The set and the list must be of the same type.

clear()

Removes all elements from a list, consequently setting the list's length to zero.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of a list.

contains(listElement)

Returns `true` if the list contains the specified element.

deepClone(preserveId, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)

Makes a duplicate copy of a list of sObject records, including the sObject records themselves.

equals(list2)

Compares this list with the specified list and returns `true` if both lists are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

get(index)

Returns the list element stored at the specified index.

getSObjectType()

Returns the token of the sObject type that makes up a list of sObjects.

hashCode()

Returns the hashcode corresponding to this list and its contents.

indexOf(listElement)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the specified element in this list. If this list does not contain the element, returns -1.

isEmpty()

Returns true if the list has zero elements.

iterator()

Returns an instance of an iterator for this list.

remove(index)

Removes the list element stored at the specified index, returning the element that was removed.

set(index, listElement)

Sets the specified value for the element at the given index.

size()

Returns the number of elements in the list.

sort()
Sorts the items in the list in ascending order.

toString()
Returns the string representation of the list.

add(listElement)

Adds an element to the end of the list.

Signature

```
public Void add(Object listElement)
```

Parameters

listElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
List<Integer> myList = new List<Integer>();
myList.add(47);
Integer myNumber = myList.get(0);
system.assertEquals(47, myNumber);
```

add(index, listElement)

Inserts an element into the list at the specified index position.

Signature

```
public Void add(Integer index, Object listElement)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

listElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

In the following example, a list with six elements is created, and integers are added to the first and second index positions.

```
List<Integer> myList = new Integer[6];
myList.add(0, 47);
myList.add(1, 52);
system.assertEquals(52, myList.get(1));
```

addAll(fromList)

Adds all of the elements in the specified list to the list that calls the method. Both lists must be of the same type.

Signature

```
public Void addAll(List fromList)
```

Parameters

fromList
Type: List

Return Value

Type: Void

addAll(fromSet)

Add all of the elements in specified set to the list that calls the method. The set and the list must be of the same type.

Signature

```
public Void addAll(Set fromSet)
```

Parameters

fromSet
Type: Set

Return Value

Type: Void

clear()

Removes all elements from a list, consequently setting the list's length to zero.

Signature

```
public Void clear()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of a list.

Signature

```
public List<Object> clone()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Object>

Usage

The cloned list is of the same type as the current list.

Note that if this is a list of sObject records, the duplicate list will only be a shallow copy of the list. That is, the duplicate will have references to each object, but the sObject records themselves will not be duplicated. For example:

To also copy the sObject records, you must use the `deepClone` method.

Example

```
Account a = new Account(Name='Acme', BillingCity='New York');

Account b = new Account();
Account[] q1 = new Account[]{a,b};

Account[] q2 = q1.clone();
q1[0].BillingCity = 'San Francisco';

System.assertEquals(
      'San Francisco',
      q1[0].BillingCity);
System.assertEquals(
      'San Francisco',
      q2[0].BillingCity);
```

contains(listElement)

Returns `true` if the list contains the specified element.

Signature

```
public Boolean contains(Object listElement)
```

Parameters

listElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
List<String> myStrings = new List<String>{'a', 'b'};
Boolean result = myStrings.contains('z');
System.assertEquals(false, result);
```

deepClone(preserveId, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)

Makes a duplicate copy of a list of sObject records, including the sObject records themselves.

Signature

```
public List<Object> deepClone(Boolean preserveId, Boolean preserveReadonlyTimestamps,
Boolean preserveAutonumber)
```

Parameters

preserveId
Type: Boolean

The optional *preserveId* argument determines whether the IDs of the original objects are preserved or cleared in the duplicates. If set to `true`, the IDs are copied to the cloned objects. The default is `false`, that is, the IDs are cleared.

preserveReadonlyTimestamps
Type: Boolean

The optional *preserveReadonlyTimestamps* argument determines whether the read-only timestamp and user ID fields are preserved or cleared in the duplicates. If set to `true`, the read-only fields `CreatedById`, `CreatedDate`, `LastModifiedById`, and `LastModifiedDate` are copied to the cloned objects. The default is `false`, that is, the values are cleared.

preserveAutonumber
Type: Boolean

The optional *preserveAutonumber* argument determines whether the autonumber fields of the original objects are preserved or cleared in the duplicates. If set to `true`, auto number fields are copied to the cloned objects. The default is `false`, that is, auto number fields are cleared.

Return Value

Type: List<Object>

Usage

The returned list is of the same type as the current list.

Note:

- `deepClone` only works with lists of sObjects, not with lists of primitives.
- For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 22.0 or earlier, the default value for the *`preserve_id`* argument is `true`, that is, the IDs are preserved.

To make a shallow copy of a list without duplicating the sObject records it contains, use the `clone` method.

Example

This example performs a deep clone for a list with two accounts.

```
Account a = new Account(Name='Acme', BillingCity='New York');

Account b = new Account(Name='Salesforce');

Account[] q1 = new Account[]{a,b};

Account[] q2 = q1.deepClone();
q1[0].BillingCity = 'San Francisco';

System.assertEquals(
     'San Francisco',
     q1[0].BillingCity);

System.assertEquals(
     'New York',
     q2[0].BillingCity);
```

This example is based on the previous example and shows how to clone a list with preserved read-only timestamp and user ID fields.

```
insert q1;

List<Account> accts = [SELECT CreatedById, CreatedDate, LastModifiedById,
                       LastModifiedDate, BillingCity
                       FROM Account
                       WHERE Name='Acme' OR Name='Salesforce'];

// Clone list while preserving timestamp and user ID fields.
Account[] q3 = accts.deepClone(false,true,false);

// Verify timestamp fields are preserved for the first list element.
System.assertEquals(
    accts[0].CreatedById,
    q3[0].CreatedById);
System.assertEquals(
    accts[0].CreatedDate,
    q3[0].CreatedDate);
System.assertEquals(
    accts[0].LastModifiedById,
    q3[0].LastModifiedById);
System.assertEquals(
    accts[0].LastModifiedDate,
    q3[0].LastModifiedDate);
```

equals(list2)

Compares this list with the specified list and returns `true` if both lists are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(List list2)
```

Parameters

list2
Type: List

The list to compare this list with.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Two lists are equal if their elements are equal and are in the same order. The `==` operator is used to compare the elements of the lists.

The `==` operator is equivalent to calling the `equals` method, so you can call `list1.equals(list2);` instead of `list1 == list2;`.

get(index)

Returns the list element stored at the specified index.

Signature

```
public Object get(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

To reference an element of a one-dimensional list of primitives or sObjects, you can also follow the name of the list with the element's index position in square brackets as shown in the example.

Example

```
List<Integer> myList = new List<Integer>();
myList.add(47);
```

```
Integer myNumber = myList.get(0);
system.assertEquals(47, myNumber);
```

```
List<String> colors = new String[3];
colors[0] = 'Red';
colors[1] = 'Blue';
colors[2] = 'Green';
```

getSObjectType()

Returns the token of the sObject type that makes up a list of sObjects.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSObjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

Usage

Use this method with describe information to determine if a list contains sObjects of a particular type.

Note that this method can only be used with lists that are composed of sObjects.

For more information, see Understanding Apex Describe Information.

Example

```
// Create a generic sObject variable.
SObject sObj = Database.query('SELECT Id FROM Account LIMIT 1');

// Verify if that sObject  variable is an Account token.
System.assertEquals(
   Account.sObjectType,
   sObj.getSObjectType());

// Create a list of generic sObjects.
List<sObject> q = new Account[]{};

// Verify if the list of sObjects
// contains Account tokens.
System.assertEquals(
   Account.sObjectType,
   q.getSObjectType());
```

hashCode()

Returns the hashcode corresponding to this list and its contents.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

indexOf(listElement)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the specified element in this list. If this list does not contain the element, returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOf(Object listElement)
```

Parameters

listElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
List<String> myStrings = new List<String>{'a', 'b', 'a'};
Integer result = myStrings.indexOf('a');
System.assertEquals(0, result);
```

isEmpty()

Returns true if the list has zero elements.

Signature

```
public Boolean isEmpty()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

iterator()

Returns an instance of an iterator for this list.

Signature

```
public Iterator iterator()
```

Return Value

Type: Iterator

Usage

From the returned iterator, you can use the iterable methods `hasNext` and `next` to iterate through the list.

Note: You don't have to implement the `iterable` interface to use the `iterable` methods with a list.

See Custom Iterators.

Example

```
public class CustomIterator
   implements Iterator<Account>{

   private List<Account> accs;
   private Integer currentIndex;

   public CustomIterator(List<Account> accs){
       this.accs = accs;
       this.currentIndex = 0;
   }

   public boolean hasNext(){
       return currentIndex < accs.size() - 1;
   }

   public Account next(){
       if(hasNext()) {
           currentIndex++;
           return accs[currentIndex];
       } else {
           throw new NoSuchElementException();
       }
   }
}
```

remove(index)

Removes the list element stored at the specified index, returning the element that was removed.

Signature

```
public Object remove(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Object

Example

```
List<String> colors = new String[3];
colors[0] = 'Red';
colors[1] = 'Blue';
colors[2] = 'Green';
String s1 = colors.remove(2);
system.assertEquals('Green', s1);
```

set(index, listElement)

Sets the specified value for the element at the given index.

Signature

```
public Void set(Integer index, Object listElement)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

The index of the list element to set.

listElement
Type: Object

The value of the list element to set.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

To set an element of a one-dimensional list of primitives or sObjects, you can also follow the name of the list with the element's index position in square brackets.

Example

```
List<Integer> myList = new Integer[6];
myList.set(0, 47);
myList.set(1, 52);
system.assertEquals(52, myList.get(1));
```

```
List<String> colors = new String[3];
colors[0] = 'Red';
colors[1] = 'Blue';
colors[2] = 'Green';
```

size()

Returns the number of elements in the list.

Signature

```
public Integer size()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
List<Integer> myList = new List<Integer>();
Integer size = myList.size();
system.assertEquals(0, size);

List<Integer> myList2 = new Integer[6];
Integer size2 = myList2.size();
system.assertEquals(6, size2);
```

sort()

Sorts the items in the list in ascending order.

Signature

```
public Void sort()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Using this method, you can sort primitive types, SelectOption elements, and sObjects (standard objects and custom objects). For more information on the sort order used for sObjects, see Sorting Lists of sObjects. You can also sort custom types (your Apex classes) if they implement the Comparable Interface interface.

When you use `sort()` methods on `List<Id>`s that contain both 15-character and 18-character IDs, IDs for the same record sort together in API version 35.0 and later.

Example

In the following example, the list has three elements. When the list is sorted, the first element is null because it has no value assigned. The second element and third element have values of 5 and 10.

```
List<Integer> q1 = new Integer[3];
```

```
// Assign values to the first two elements.

q1[0] = 10;

q1[1] = 5;



q1.sort();

// Verify sorted list. Elements are sorted in nulls-first order: null, 5, and 10

system.assertEquals(null, q1.get(0));

system.assertEquals(5, q1.get(1));

system.assertEquals(10, q1.get(2));
```

`toString()`

Returns the string representation of the list.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

When used in cyclic references, the output is truncated to prevent infinite recursion. When used with large collections, the output is truncated to avoid exceeding total heap size and maximum CPU time.

- Up to 10 items per collection are included in the output, followed by an ellipsis (…).
- If the same object is included multiple times in a collection, it's shown in the output only once; subsequent references are shown as `(already output)`.

Location Class

Contains methods for accessing the component fields of geolocation compound fields.

Namespace

system

Usage

Each of these methods is also equivalent to a read-only property. For each getter method you can access the property using dot notation. For example, `myLocation.getLatitude()` is equivalent to `myLocation.latitude`.

You can't use dot notation to access compound fields' subfields directly on the parent field. Instead, assign the parent field to a variable of type `Location`, and then access its components.

```
Location loc = myAccount.MyLocation__c;
Double lat = loc.latitude;
```

Important: "Location" in Salesforce can also refer to the Location standard object. When referencing the Location object in your Apex code, always use `Schema.Location` instead of `Location` to prevent confusion with the standard Location compound field. If referencing both the location object and the Location field in the same snippet, you can differentiate between the two by using `System.Location` for the field and `Schema.Location` for the object.

Example

```
// Select and access the Location field. MyLocation__c is the name of a geolocation field
 on Account.
Account[] records = [SELECT id, MyLocation__c FROM Account LIMIT 10];
for(Account acct : records) {
   Location loc = acct.MyLocation__c;
   Double lat = loc.latitude;
   Double lon = loc.longitude;
}

// Instantiate new Location objects and compute the distance between them in different
ways.
Location loc1 = Location.newInstance(28.635308,77.22496);
Location loc2 = Location.newInstance(37.7749295,-122.4194155);
Double dist = Location.getDistance(loc1, loc2, 'mi');
Double dist2 = loc1.getDistance(loc2, 'mi');
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Location Methods

Location Methods

The following are methods for `Location`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDistance(toLocation, unit)

Calculates the distance between this location and the specified location, using an approximation of the haversine formula and the specified unit.

getDistance(firstLocation, secondLocation, unit)

Calculates the distance between the two specified locations, using an approximation of the haversine formula and the specified unit.

getLatitude()

Returns the latitude field of this location.

getLongitude()

Returns the longitude field of this location.

newInstance(latitude, longitude)

Creates an instance of the `Location` class, with the specified latitude and longitude.

`getDistance(toLocation, unit)`

Calculates the distance between this location and the specified location, using an approximation of the haversine formula and the specified unit.

Signature

```
public Double getDistance(Location toLocation, String unit)
```

Parameters

`toLocation`

Type: Location

The `Location` to which you want to calculate the distance from the current `Location`.

`unit`

Type: String

The distance unit you want to use: `mi` or `km`.

Return Value

Type: Double

`getDistance(firstLocation, secondLocation, unit)`

Calculates the distance between the two specified locations, using an approximation of the haversine formula and the specified unit.

Signature

```
public static Double getDistance(Location firstLocation, Location secondLocation, String
unit)
```

Parameters

`firstLocation`

Type: Location

The first of two locations used to calculate distance.

`secondLocation`

Type: Location

The second of two locations used to calculate distance.

`unit`

Type: String

The distance unit you want to use: `mi` or `km`.

Return Value

Type: Double

`getLatitude()`

Returns the latitude field of this location.

Signature

```
public Double getLatitude()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

`getLongitude()`

Returns the longitude field of this location.

Signature

```
public Double getLongitude()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

`newInstance(latitude, longitude)`

Creates an instance of the `Location` class, with the specified latitude and longitude.

Signature

```
public static Location newInstance(Decimal latitude, Decimal longitude)
```

Parameters

`latitude`
Type: Decimal

`longitude`
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Location

Long Class

Contains methods for the Long primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Long, see Long Data Type.

Long Methods

The following are methods for `Long`.

IN THIS SECTION:

format()
Returns the String format for this Long using the locale of the context user.

intValue()
Returns the Integer value for this Long.

valueOf(stringToLong)
Returns a Long that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the string is interpreted as representing a signed decimal Long.

`format()`

Returns the String format for this Long using the locale of the context user.

Signature

```
public String format()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Long myLong = 4271990;
system.assertEquals('4,271,990', myLong.format());
```

`intValue()`

Returns the Integer value for this Long.

Signature

```
public Integer intValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Long myLong = 7191991;
Integer value = myLong.intValue();
system.assertEquals(7191991, myLong.intValue());
```

`valueOf(stringToLong)`

Returns a Long that contains the value of the specified String. As in Java, the string is interpreted as representing a signed decimal Long.

Signature

```
public static Long valueOf(String stringToLong)
```

Parameters

stringToLong
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Long

Example

```
Long L1 = long.valueOf('123456789');
```

Map Class

Contains methods for the Map collection type.

Namespace

System

Usage

The Map methods are all instance methods, that is, they operate on a particular instance of a map. The following are the instance methods for maps.

Note:

- Map keys and values can be of any data type—primitive types, collections, sObjects, user-defined types, and built-in Apex types.

- Uniqueness of map keys of user-defined types is determined by the `equals` and `hashCode` methods, which you provide in your classes. Uniqueness of keys of all other non-primitive types, such as sObject keys, is determined by comparing the objects' field values.
- Map keys of type String are case-sensitive. Two keys that differ only by the case are considered unique and have corresponding distinct Map entries. Subsequently, the Map methods, including `put`, `get`, `containsKey`, and `remove` treat these keys as distinct.

For more information on maps, see Maps.

IN THIS SECTION:

Map Constructors

Map Methods

Map Constructors

The following are constructors for `Map`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Map<T1,T2>()

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class. T1 is the data type of the keys and T2 is the data type of the values.

Map<T1,T2>(mapToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class and initializes it by copying the entries from the specified map. T1 is the data type of the keys and T2 is the data type of the values.

Map<ID,sObject>(recordList)

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class and populates it with the passed-in list of sObject records. The keys are populated with the sObject IDs and the values are the sObjects.

Map<T1,T2>()

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class. T1 is the data type of the keys and T2 is the data type of the values.

Signature

```
public Map<T1,T2>()
```

Example

```
Map<Integer, String> m1 = new Map<Integer, String>();
m1.put(1, 'First item');
m1.put(2, 'Second item');
```

Map<T1,T2>(mapToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class and initializes it by copying the entries from the specified map. T1 is the data type of the keys and T2 is the data type of the values.

Signature

```
public Map<T1,T2>(Map<T1,T2> mapToCopy)
```

Parameters

mapToCopy
Type: Map<T1, T2>

The map to initialize this map with. T1 is the data type of the keys and T2 is the data type of the values. All map keys and values are copied to this map.

Example

```
Map<Integer, String> m1 = new Map<Integer, String>();
m1.put(1, 'First item');
m1.put(2, 'Second item');
Map<Integer, String> m2 = new Map<Integer, String>(m1);
// The map elements of m2 are copied from m1
System.debug(m2);
```

Map<ID,sObject>(recordList)

Creates a new instance of the `Map` class and populates it with the passed-in list of sObject records. The keys are populated with the sObject IDs and the values are the sObjects.

Signature

```
public Map<ID,sObject>(List<sObject> recordList)
```

Parameters

recordList
Type: List<sObject>

The list of sObjects to populate the map with.

Example

```
List<Account> ls = [select Id,Name from Account];
Map<Id, Account> m = new Map<Id, Account>(ls);
```

Map Methods

The following are methods for `Map`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

clear()
Removes all of the key-value mappings from the map.

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the map.

containsKey(key)
Returns `true` if the map contains a mapping for the specified key.

deepClone()
Makes a duplicate copy of a map, including sObject records if this is a map with sObject record values.

equals(map2)
Compares this map with the specified map and returns `true` if both maps are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

get(key)
Returns the value to which the specified key is mapped, or `null` if the map contains no value for this key.

getSObjectType()
Returns the token of the sObject type that makes up the map values.

hashCode()
Returns the hashcode corresponding to this map.

isEmpty()
Returns true if the map has zero key-value pairs.

keySet()
Returns a set that contains all of the keys in the map.

put(key, value)
Associates the specified value with the specified key in the map.

putAll(fromMap)
Copies all of the mappings from the specified map to the original map.

putAll(sobjectArray)
Adds the list of sObject records to a map declared as Map<ID, sObject> or Map<String, sObject>.

remove(key)
Removes the mapping for the specified key from the map, if present, and returns the corresponding value.

size()
Returns the number of key-value pairs in the map.

toString()
Returns the string representation of the map.

values()
Returns a list that contains all the values in the map.

`clear()`

Removes all of the key-value mappings from the map.

Signature

```
public Void clear()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the map.

Signature

```
public Map<Object, Object> clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Map (of same type)

Usage

If this is a map with sObject record values, the duplicate map will only be a shallow copy of the map. That is, the duplicate will have references to each sObject record, but the records themselves are not duplicated. For example:

To also copy the sObject records, you must use the `deepClone` method.

Example

```
Account a = new Account(
   Name='Acme',
   BillingCity='New York');

Map<Integer, Account> map1 = new Map<Integer, Account> {};
map1.put(1, a);

Map<Integer, Account> map2 = map1.clone();
map1.get(1).BillingCity =
'San Francisco';

System.assertEquals(
   'San Francisco',
   map1.get(1).BillingCity);

System.assertEquals(
   'San Francisco',
   map2.get(1).BillingCity);
```

containsKey(key)

Returns `true` if the map contains a mapping for the specified key.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsKey(Object key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the key is a string, the key value is case-sensitive.

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

Boolean contains = colorCodes.containsKey('Blue');
System.assertEquals(true, contains);
```

deepClone()

Makes a duplicate copy of a map, including sObject records if this is a map with sObject record values.

Signature

```
public Map<Object, Object> deepClone()
```

Return Value

Type: Map (of the same type)

Usage

To make a shallow copy of a map without duplicating the sObject records it contains, use the `clone()` method.

Example

```
Account a = new Account(
   Name='Acme',
   BillingCity='New York');

Map<Integer, Account> map1 = new Map<Integer, Account> {};

map1.put(1, a);

Map<Integer, Account> map2 = map1.deepClone();

// Update the first entry of map1
```

```
map1.get(1).BillingCity = 'San Francisco';
// Verify that the BillingCity is updated in map1 but not in map2
System.assertEquals('San Francisco', map1.get(1).BillingCity);
System.assertEquals('New York', map2.get(1).BillingCity);
```

`equals(map2)`

Compares this map with the specified map and returns `true` if both maps are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Map map2)
```

Parameters

map2
Type: Map

The *map2* argument is the map to compare this map with.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Two maps are equal if their key/value pairs are identical, regardless of the order of those pairs. The `==` operator is used to compare the map keys and values.

The `==` operator is equivalent to calling the `equals` method, so you can call `map1.equals(map2);` instead of `map1 == map2;`.

`get(key)`

Returns the value to which the specified key is mapped, or `null` if the map contains no value for this key.

Signature

```
public Object get(Object key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the key is a string, the key value is case-sensitive.

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

String code = colorCodes.get('Blue');

System.assertEquals('0000A0', code);

// The following is not a color in the map
String code2 = colorCodes.get('Magenta');
System.assertEquals(null, code2);
```

getSObjectType()

Returns the token of the sObject type that makes up the map values.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSObjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

Usage

Use this method with describe information, to determine if a map contains sObjects of a particular type.

Note that this method can only be used with maps that have sObject values.

For more information, see Understanding Apex Describe Information.

Example

```
// Create a generic sObject variable.
SObject sObj = Database.query('SELECT Id FROM Account LIMIT 1');

// Verify if that sObject variable is an Account token.
System.assertEquals(
   Account.sObjectType,
   sObj.getSObjectType());

// Create a map of generic sObjects
Map<Integer, Account> m = new Map<Integer, Account>();

// Verify if the map contains Account tokens.
System.assertEquals(
   Account.sObjectType,
   m.getSObjectType());
```

hashCode()

Returns the hashcode corresponding to this map.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

isEmpty()

Returns true if the map has zero key-value pairs.

Signature

```
public Boolean isEmpty()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();
Boolean empty = colorCodes.isEmpty();
System.assertEquals(true, empty);
```

keySet()

Returns a set that contains all of the keys in the map.

Signature

```
public Set<Object> keySet()
```

Return Value

Type: Set (of key type)

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

Set <String> colorSet = new Set<String>();
colorSet = colorCodes.keySet();
```

put(key, value)

Associates the specified value with the specified key in the map.

Signature

```
public Object put(Object key, Object value)
```

Parameters

key
Type: Object

value
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the map previously contained a mapping for this key, the old value is returned by the method and then replaced.

If the key is a string, the key value is case-sensitive.

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'ff0000');
colorCodes.put('Red', '#FF0000');
// Red is now #FF0000
```

putAll(fromMap)

Copies all of the mappings from the specified map to the original map.

Signature

```
public Void putAll(Map fromMap)
```

Parameters

fromMap
Type: Map

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The new mappings from *fromMap* replace any mappings that the original map had.

Example

```
Map<String, String> map1 = new Map<String, String>();
map1.put('Red','FF0000');
Map<String, String> map2 = new Map<String, String>();
map2.put('Blue','0000FF');
// Add map1 entries to map2
map2.putAll(map1);
System.assertEquals(2, map2.size());
```

putAll(sobjectArray)

Adds the list of sObject records to a map declared as Map<ID, sObject> or Map<String, sObject>.

Signature

```
public Void putAll(sObject[] sobjectArray)
```

Parameters

sobjectArray
Type: sObject[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is similar to calling the Map constructor with the same input.

Example

```
List<Account> accts = new List<Account>();
accts.add(new Account(Name='Account1'));
accts.add(new Account(Name='Account2'));
// Insert accounts so their IDs are populated.
insert accts;
Map<Id, Account> m = new Map<Id, Account>();
// Add all the records to the map.
m.putAll(accts);
System.assertEquals(2, m.size());
```

remove(key)

Removes the mapping for the specified key from the map, if present, and returns the corresponding value.

Signature

```
public Object remove(Key key)
```

Parameters

key
Type: Key

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

If the key is a string, the key value is case-sensitive.

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

String myColor = colorCodes.remove('Blue');
String code2 = colorCodes.get('Blue');

System.assertEquals(null, code2);
```

size()

Returns the number of key-value pairs in the map.

Signature

```
public Integer size()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

Integer mSize = colorCodes.size();
system.assertEquals(2, mSize);
```

`toString()`

Returns the string representation of the map.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

When used in cyclic references, the output is truncated to prevent infinite recursion. When used with large collections, the output is truncated to avoid exceeding total heap size and maximum CPU time.

- Up to 10 items per collection are included in the output, followed by an ellipsis (…).
- If the same object is included multiple times in a collection, it's shown in the output only once; subsequent references are shown as `(already output)`.

`values()`

Returns a list that contains all the values in the map.

Signature

```
public List<Object> values()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Object>

Usage

The order of map elements is deterministic. You can rely on the order being the same in each subsequent execution of the same code. For example, suppose the `values()` method returns a list containing `value1` and index 0 and `value2` and index 1. Subsequent runs of the same code result in those values being returned in the same order.

Example

```
Map<String, String> colorCodes = new Map<String, String>();

colorCodes.put('Red', 'FF0000');
colorCodes.put('Blue', '0000A0');

List<String> colors = new List<String>();
colors = colorCodes.values();
```

Matcher Class

Matchers use Patterns to perform match operations on a character string.

Namespace

System

Matcher Methods

The following are methods for `Matcher`.

IN THIS SECTION:

end()

Returns the position after the last matched character.

end(groupIndex)

Returns the position after the last character of the subsequence captured by the group index during the previous match operation. If the match was successful but the group itself did not match anything, this method returns -1.

find()

Attempts to find the next subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern. This method returns true if a subsequence of the input sequence matches this Matcher object's pattern.

find(group)

Resets the Matcher object and then tries to find the next subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern. This method returns `true` if a subsequence of the input sequence matches this Matcher object's pattern.

group()

Returns the input subsequence returned by the previous match.

group(groupIndex)

Returns the input subsequence captured by the specified group index during the previous match operation. If the match was successful but the specified group failed to match any part of the input sequence, `null` is returned.

groupCount()

Returns the number of capturing groups in this Matching object's pattern. Group zero denotes the entire pattern and is not included in this count.

hasAnchoringBounds()

Returns true if the Matcher object has anchoring bounds, false otherwise. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

hasTransparentBounds()

Returns true if the Matcher object has transparent bounds, false if it uses opaque bounds. By default, a Matcher object uses opaque region boundaries.

hitEnd()

Returns true if the end of input was found by the search engine in the last match operation performed by this Matcher object. When this method returns true, it is possible that more input would have changed the result of the last search.

lookingAt()

Attempts to match the input sequence, starting at the beginning of the region, against the pattern.

matches()

Attempts to match the entire region against the pattern.

pattern()

Returns the Pattern object from which this Matcher object was created.

quoteReplacement(inputString)

Returns a literal replacement string for the specified string *`inputString`*. The characters in the returned string match the sequence of characters in *`inputString`*.

region(start, end)

Sets the limits of this Matcher object's region. The region is the part of the input sequence that is searched to find a match.

regionEnd()

Returns the end index (exclusive) of this Matcher object's region.

regionStart()

Returns the start index (inclusive) of this Matcher object's region.

replaceAll(replacementString)

Replaces every subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern with the replacement string.

replaceFirst(replacementString)

Replaces the first subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern with the replacement string.

requireEnd()

Returns true if more input could change a positive match into a negative one.

reset()

Resets this Matcher object. Resetting a Matcher object discards all of its explicit state information.

reset(inputSequence)

Resets this Matcher object with the new input sequence. Resetting a Matcher object discards all of its explicit state information.

start()

Returns the start index of the first character of the previous match.

start(groupIndex)

Returns the start index of the subsequence captured by the group specified by the group index during the previous match operation. Captured groups are indexed from left to right, starting at one. Group zero denotes the entire pattern, so the expression `m.start(0)` is equivalent to `m.start()`.

useAnchoringBounds(anchoringBounds)

Sets the anchoring bounds of the region for the Matcher object. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

usePattern(pattern)

Changes the Pattern object that the Matcher object uses to find matches. This method causes the Matcher object to lose information about the groups of the last match that occurred. The Matcher object's position in the input is maintained.

useTransparentBounds(transparentBounds)

Sets the transparency bounds for this Matcher object. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

`end()`

Returns the position after the last matched character.

Signature

```
public Integer end()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`end(groupIndex)`

Returns the position after the last character of the subsequence captured by the group index during the previous match operation. If the match was successful but the group itself did not match anything, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer end(Integer groupIndex)
```

Parameters

groupIndex
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Captured groups are indexed from left to right, starting at one. Group zero denotes the entire pattern, so the expression`m.end(0)` is equivalent to `m.end()`.

See Understanding Capturing Groups.

`find()`

Attempts to find the next subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern. This method returns true if a subsequence of the input sequence matches this Matcher object's pattern.

Signature

```
public Boolean find()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method starts at the beginning of this Matcher object's region, or, if a previous invocation of the method was successful and the Matcher object has not since been reset, at the first character not matched by the previous match.

If the match succeeds, more information can be obtained using the `start`, `end`, and `group` methods.

For more information, see Using Regions.

`find(group)`

Resets the Matcher object and then tries to find the next subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern. This method returns `true` if a subsequence of the input sequence matches this Matcher object's pattern.

Signature

```
public Boolean find(Integer group)
```

Parameters

group
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the match succeeds, more information can be obtained using the `start`, `end`, and `group` methods.

`group()`

Returns the input subsequence returned by the previous match.

Signature

```
public String group()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Note that some groups, such as `(a*)`, match the empty string. This method returns the empty string when such a group successfully matches the empty string in the input.

`group(groupIndex)`

Returns the input subsequence captured by the specified group index during the previous match operation. If the match was successful but the specified group failed to match any part of the input sequence, `null` is returned.

Signature

```
public String group(Integer groupIndex)
```

Parameters

groupIndex
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Captured groups are indexed from left to right, starting at one. Group zero denotes the entire pattern, so the expression `m.group(0)` is equivalent to `m.group()`.

Note that some groups, such as `(a*)`, match the empty string. This method returns the empty string when such a group successfully matches the empty string in the input.

See Understanding Capturing Groups.

groupCount()

Returns the number of capturing groups in this Matching object's pattern. Group zero denotes the entire pattern and is not included in this count.

Signature

```
public Integer groupCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

See Understanding Capturing Groups.

hasAnchoringBounds()

Returns true if the Matcher object has anchoring bounds, false otherwise. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasAnchoringBounds()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds, the boundaries of this Matcher object's region match start and end of line anchors such as ^ and $.

For more information, see Using Bounds.

hasTransparentBounds()

Returns true if the Matcher object has transparent bounds, false if it uses opaque bounds. By default, a Matcher object uses opaque region boundaries.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasTransparentBounds()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

For more information, see Using Bounds.

hitEnd()

Returns true if the end of input was found by the search engine in the last match operation performed by this Matcher object. When this method returns true, it is possible that more input would have changed the result of the last search.

Signature

```
public Boolean hitEnd()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

lookingAt()

Attempts to match the input sequence, starting at the beginning of the region, against the pattern.

Signature

```
public Boolean lookingAt()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Like the `matches` method, this method always starts at the beginning of the region; unlike that method, it does not require the entire region be matched.

If the match succeeds, more information can be obtained using the `start`, `end`, and `group` methods.

See Using Regions.

`matches()`

Attempts to match the entire region against the pattern.

Signature

```
public Boolean matches()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If the match succeeds, more information can be obtained using the `start`, `end`, and `group` methods.

See Using Regions.

`pattern()`

Returns the Pattern object from which this Matcher object was created.

Signature

```
public Pattern object pattern()
```

Return Value

Type: System.Pattern

`quoteReplacement(inputString)`

Returns a literal replacement string for the specified string *`inputString`*. The characters in the returned string match the sequence of characters in *`inputString`*.

Signature

```
public static String quoteReplacement(String inputString)
```

Parameters

`inputString`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Metacharacters (such as `$` or `^`) and escape sequences in the input string are treated as literal characters with no special meaning.

region(start, end)

Sets the limits of this Matcher object's region. The region is the part of the input sequence that is searched to find a match.

Signature

```
public Matcher object region(Integer start, Integer end)
```

Parameters

start
Type: Integer

end
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Matcher

Usage

This method first resets the Matcher object, then sets the region to start at the index specified by `start` and end at the index specified by `end`.

Depending on the transparency boundaries being used, certain constructs such as anchors may behave differently at or around the boundaries of the region.

See Using Regions and Using Bounds.

regionEnd()

Returns the end index (exclusive) of this Matcher object's region.

Signature

```
public Integer regionEnd()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

See Using Regions.

regionStart()

Returns the start index (inclusive) of this Matcher object's region.

Signature

```
public Integer regionStart()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

See Using Regions.

replaceAll(replacementString)

Replaces every subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern with the replacement string.

Signature

```
public String replaceAll(String replacementString)
```

Parameters

replacementString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method first resets the Matcher object, then scans the input sequence looking for matches of the pattern. Characters that are not part of any match are appended directly to the result string; each match is replaced in the result by the replacement string. The replacement string may contain references to captured subsequences.

Note that backslashes (\) and dollar signs ($) in the replacement string may cause the results to be different than if the string was treated as a literal replacement string. Dollar signs may be treated as references to captured subsequences, and backslashes are used to escape literal characters in the replacement string.

Invoking this method changes this Matcher object's state. If the Matcher object is to be used in further matching operations it should first be reset.

Given the regular expression `a*b`, the input `"aabxyzaabxyzabxyzb"`, and the replacement string `"-"`, an invocation of this method on a Matcher object for that expression would yield the string `"-xyz-xyz-xyz-"`.

replaceFirst(replacementString)

Replaces the first subsequence of the input sequence that matches the pattern with the replacement string.

Signature

```
public String replaceFirst(String replacementString)
```

Parameters

replacementString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Note that backslashes (\) and dollar signs ($) in the replacement string may cause the results to be different than if the string was treated as a literal replacement string. Dollar signs may be treated as references to captured subsequences, and backslashes are used to escape literal characters in the replacement string.

Invoking this method changes this Matcher object's state. If the Matcher object is to be used in further matching operations it should first be reset.

Given the regular expression `dog`, the input `"zzzdogzzzdogzzz"`, and the replacement string `"cat"`, an invocation of this method on a Matcher object for that expression would return the string `"zzzcatzzzdogzzz"`.

requireEnd()

Returns true if more input could change a positive match into a negative one.

Signature

```
public Boolean requireEnd()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If this method returns true, and a match was found, then more input could cause the match to be lost.

If this method returns false and a match was found, then more input might change the match but the match won't be lost.

If a match was not found, then `requireEnd` has no meaning.

reset()

Resets this Matcher object. Resetting a Matcher object discards all of its explicit state information.

Signature

```
public Matcher object reset()
```

Return Value

Type: Matcher

Usage

This method does not change whether the Matcher object uses anchoring bounds. You must explicitly use the `useAnchoringBounds` method to change the anchoring bounds.

For more information, see Using Bounds.

reset(inputSequence)

Resets this Matcher object with the new input sequence. Resetting a Matcher object discards all of its explicit state information.

Signature

```
public Matcher reset(String inputSequence)
```

Parameters

inputSequence
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Matcher

start()

Returns the start index of the first character of the previous match.

Signature

```
public Integer start()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

start(groupIndex)

Returns the start index of the subsequence captured by the group specified by the group index during the previous match operation. Captured groups are indexed from left to right, starting at one. Group zero denotes the entire pattern, so the expression `m.start(0)` is equivalent to `m.start()`.

Signature

```
public Integer start(Integer groupIndex)
```

Parameters

groupIndex
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

See Understanding Capturing Groups.

`useAnchoringBounds(anchoringBounds)`

Sets the anchoring bounds of the region for the Matcher object. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

Signature

```
public Matcher object useAnchoringBounds(Boolean anchoringBounds)
```

Parameters

`anchoringBounds`
Type: Boolean

If you specify `true`, the Matcher object uses anchoring bounds. If you specify `false`, non-anchoring bounds are used.

Return Value

Type: Matcher

Usage

If a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds, the boundaries of this Matcher object's region match start and end of line anchors such as ^ and $.

For more information, see Using Bounds.

`usePattern(pattern)`

Changes the Pattern object that the Matcher object uses to find matches. This method causes the Matcher object to lose information about the groups of the last match that occurred. The Matcher object's position in the input is maintained.

Signature

```
public Matcher object usePattern(Pattern pattern)
```

Parameters

`pattern`
Type: System.Pattern

Return Value

Type: Matcher

`useTransparentBounds(transparentBounds)`

Sets the transparency bounds for this Matcher object. By default, a Matcher object uses anchoring bounds regions.

Signature

```
public Matcher object useTransparentBounds(Boolean transparentBounds)
```

Parameters

transparentBounds
Type: Boolean

If you specify `true`, the Matcher object uses transparent bounds. If you specify `false`, opaque bounds are used.

Return Value

Type: Matcher

Usage

For more information, see Using Bounds.

Math Class

Contains methods for mathematical operations.

Namespace

System

Math Fields

The following are fields for `Math`.

IN THIS SECTION:

E
Returns the mathematical constant *e*, which is the base of natural logarithms.

PI
Returns the mathematical constant *pi*, which is the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter.

E

Returns the mathematical constant *e*, which is the base of natural logarithms.

Signature

```
public static final Double E
```

Property Value

Type: Double

PI

Returns the mathematical constant *pi*, which is the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter.

Signature

```
public static final Double PI
```

Property Value

Type: Double

Math Methods

The following are methods for `Math`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

abs(decimalValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Decimal.

abs(doubleValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Double.

abs(integerValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Integer.

abs(longValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Long.

acos(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc cosine of an angle, in the range of 0.0 through *pi*.

acos(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc cosine of an angle, in the range of 0.0 through *pi*.

asin(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc sine of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

asin(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc sine of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

atan(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc tangent of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

atan(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc tangent of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

atan2(xCoordinate, yCoordinate)

Converts rectangular coordinates (*`xCoordinate`* and *`yCoordinate`*) to polar (*`r`* and *`theta`*). This method computes the phase *`theta`* by computing an arc tangent of *`xCoordinate`*/*`yCoordinate`* in the range of -*pi* to *pi*.

atan2(xCoordinate, yCoordinate)

Converts rectangular coordinates (*`xCoordinate`* and *`yCoordinate`*) to polar (*`r`* and *`theta`*). This method computes the phase *`theta`* by computing an arc tangent of *`xCoordinate`*/*`yCoordinate`* in the range of -*pi* to *pi*.

cbrt(decimalValue)

Returns the cube root of the specified Decimal. The cube root of a negative value is the negative of the cube root of that value's magnitude.

cbrt(doubleValue)

Returns the cube root of the specified Double. The cube root of a negative value is the negative of the cube root of that value's magnitude.

ceil(decimalValue)

Returns the smallest (closest to negative infinity) Decimal that is not less than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

ceil(doubleValue)

Returns the smallest (closest to negative infinity) Double that is not less than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

cos(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric cosine of the angle specified by `decimalAngle`.

cos(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric cosine of the angle specified by `doubleAngle`.

cosh(decimalAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic cosine of `decimalAngle`. The hyperbolic cosine of `d` is defined to be $(e^x + e^{-x})/2$ where *e* is Euler's number.

cosh(doubleAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic cosine of `doubleAngle`. The hyperbolic cosine of `d` is defined to be $(e^x + e^{-x})/2$ where *e* is Euler's number.

exp(exponentDecimal)

Returns Euler's number *e* raised to the power of the specified Decimal.

exp(exponentDouble)

Returns Euler's number *e* raised to the power of the specified Double.

floor(decimalValue)

Returns the largest (closest to positive infinity) Decimal that is not greater than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

floor(doubleValue)

Returns the largest (closest to positive infinity) Double that is not greater than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

log(decimalValue)

Returns the natural logarithm (base *e*) of the specified Decimal.

log(doubleValue)

Returns the natural logarithm (base *e*) of the specified Double.

log10(decimalValue)

Returns the logarithm (base *10*) of the specified Decimal.

log10(doubleValue)

Returns the logarithm (base *10*) of the specified Double.

max(decimalValue1, decimalValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Decimals.

max(doubleValue1, doubleValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Doubles.

max(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Integers.

max(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Longs.

min(decimalValue1, decimalValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Decimals.

min(doubleValue1, doubleValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Doubles.

min(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Integers.

min(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Longs.

mod(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the remainder of *integerValue1* divided by *integerValue2*.

mod(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the remainder of *longValue1* divided by *longValue2*.

pow(doubleValue, exponent)

Returns the value of the first Double raised to the power of *exponent*.

random()

Returns a positive Double that is greater than or equal to 0.0 and less than 1.0.

rint(decimalValue)

Returns the value that is closest in value to *decimalValue* and is equal to a mathematical integer.

rint(doubleValue)

Returns the value that is closest in value to *doubleValue* and is equal to a mathematical integer.

round(doubleValue)

Do not use. This method is deprecated as of the Winter '08 release. Instead, use `Math.roundToLong`. Returns the closest Integer to the specified Double. If the result is less than -2,147,483,648 or greater than 2,147,483,647, Apex generates an error.

round(decimalValue)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

roundToLong(decimalValue)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

roundToLong(doubleValue)

Returns the closest Long to the specified Double.

signum(decimalValue)

Returns the signum function of the specified Decimal, which is 0 if *decimalValue* is 0, 1.0 if *decimalValue* is greater than 0, -1.0 if *decimalValue* is less than 0.

signum(doubleValue)

Returns the signum function of the specified Double, which is 0 if *doubleValue* is 0, 1.0 if *doubleValue* is greater than 0, -1.0 if *doubleValue* is less than 0.

sin(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric sine of the angle specified by *decimalAngle*.

sin(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric sine of the angle specified by *doubleAngle*.

sinh(decimalAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic sine of `decimalAngle`. The hyperbolic sine of `decimalAngle` is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/2$ where e is Euler's number.

sinh(doubleAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic sine of `doubleAngle`. The hyperbolic sine of `doubleAngle` is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/2$ where e is Euler's number.

sqrt(decimalValue)

Returns the correctly rounded positive square root of `decimalValue`.

sqrt(doubleValue)

Returns the correctly rounded positive square root of `doubleValue`.

tan(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric tangent of the angle specified by `decimalAngle`.

tan(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric tangent of the angle specified by `doubleAngle`.

tanh(decimalAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic tangent of `decimalAngle`. The hyperbolic tangent of `decimalAngle` is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/(e^x + e^{-x})$ where e is Euler's number. In other words, it is equivalent to `sinh(x)/cosinh(x)`. The absolute value of the exact `tanh` is always less than 1.

tanh(doubleAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic tangent of `doubleAngle`. The hyperbolic tangent of `doubleAngle` is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/(e^x + e^{-x})$ where e is Euler's number. In other words, it is equivalent to `sinh(x)/cosinh(x)`. The absolute value of the exact `tanh` is always less than 1.

abs(decimalValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Decimal.

Signature

```
public static Decimal abs(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

abs(doubleValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Double abs(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

abs(integerValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Integer.

Signature

```
public static Integer abs(Integer integerValue)
```

Parameters

integerValue
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Integer i = -42;
Integer i2 = math.abs(i);
system.assertEquals(i2, 42);
```

abs(longValue)

Returns the absolute value of the specified Long.

Signature

```
public static Long abs(Long longValue)
```

Parameters

longValue
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Long

acos(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc cosine of an angle, in the range of 0.0 through *pi*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal acos(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

acos(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc cosine of an angle, in the range of 0.0 through *pi*.

Signature

```
public static Double acos(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

asin(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc sine of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

Signature

```
public static Decimal asin(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

asin(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc sine of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

Signature

```
public static Double asin(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

atan(decimalAngle)

Returns the arc tangent of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

Signature

```
public static Decimal atan(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

atan(doubleAngle)

Returns the arc tangent of an angle, in the range of -*pi*/2 through *pi*/2.

Signature

```
public static Double atan(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

atan2(xCoordinate, yCoordinate)

Converts rectangular coordinates (*xCoordinate* and *yCoordinate*) to polar (*r* and *theta*). This method computes the phase *theta* by computing an arc tangent of *xCoordinate*/*yCoordinate* in the range of -*pi* to *pi*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal atan2(Decimal xCoordinate, Decimal yCoordinate)
```

Parameters

xCoordinate
Type: Decimal

yCoordinate
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

atan2(xCoordinate, yCoordinate)

Converts rectangular coordinates (*xCoordinate* and *yCoordinate*) to polar (*r* and *theta*). This method computes the phase *theta* by computing an arc tangent of *xCoordinate*/*yCoordinate* in the range of -*pi* to *pi*.

Signature

```
public static Double atan2(Double xCoordinate, Double yCoordinate)
```

Parameters

xCoordinate
Type: Double

yCoordinate
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

cbrt(decimalValue)

Returns the cube root of the specified Decimal. The cube root of a negative value is the negative of the cube root of that value's magnitude.

Signature

```
public static Decimal cbrt(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

cbrt(doubleValue)

Returns the cube root of the specified Double. The cube root of a negative value is the negative of the cube root of that value's magnitude.

Signature

```
public static Double cbrt(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

ceil(decimalValue)

Returns the smallest (closest to negative infinity) Decimal that is not less than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Decimal ceil(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

ceil(doubleValue)

Returns the smallest (closest to negative infinity) Double that is not less than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Double ceil(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

cos(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric cosine of the angle specified by *decimalAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal cos(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

cos(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric cosine of the angle specified by *doubleAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Double cos(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

cosh(decimalAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic cosine of *decimalAngle*. The hyperbolic cosine of *d* is defined to be $(e^X + e^{-X})/2$ where *e* is Euler's number.

Signature

```
public static Decimal cosh(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

cosh(doubleAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic cosine of *doubleAngle*. The hyperbolic cosine of *d* is defined to be $(e^X + e^{-X})/2$ where *e* is Euler's number.

Signature

```
public static Double cosh(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

exp(exponentDecimal)

Returns Euler's number *e* raised to the power of the specified Decimal.

Signature

```
public static Decimal exp(Decimal exponentDecimal)
```

Parameters

exponentDecimal
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

exp(exponentDouble)

Returns Euler's number *e* raised to the power of the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Double exp(Double exponentDouble)
```

Parameters

exponentDouble
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

floor(decimalValue)

Returns the largest (closest to positive infinity) Decimal that is not greater than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Decimal floor(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

floor(doubleValue)

Returns the largest (closest to positive infinity) Double that is not greater than the argument and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Double floor(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

log(decimalValue)

Returns the natural logarithm (base *e*) of the specified Decimal.

Signature

```
public static Decimal log(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

log(doubleValue)

Returns the natural logarithm (base *e*) of the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Double log(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

log10(decimalValue)

Returns the logarithm (base *10*) of the specified Decimal.

Signature

```
public static Decimal log10(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

log10(doubleValue)

Returns the logarithm (base *10*) of the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Double log10(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

max(decimalValue1, decimalValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Decimals.

Signature

```
public static Decimal max(Decimal decimalValue1, Decimal decimalValue2)
```

Parameters

decimalValue1
Type: Decimal

decimalValue2
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal larger = math.max(12.3, 156.6);
system.assertEquals(larger, 156.6);
```

max(doubleValue1, doubleValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Doubles.

Signature

```
public static Double max(Double doubleValue1, Double doubleValue2)
```

Parameters

doubleValue1
Type: Double

doubleValue2
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

max(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Integers.

Signature

```
public static Integer max(Integer integerValue1, Integer integerValue2)
```

Parameters

integerValue1
Type: Integer

integerValue2
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

max(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the larger of the two specified Longs.

Signature

```
public static Long max(Long longValue1, Long longValue2)
```

Parameters

longValue1
Type: Long

longValue2
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Long

min(decimalValue1, decimalValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Decimals.

Signature

```
public static Decimal min(Decimal decimalValue1, Decimal decimalValue2)
```

Parameters

decimalValue1
Type: Decimal

decimalValue2
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

Example

```
Decimal smaller = math.min(12.3, 156.6);
system.assertEquals(smaller, 12.3);
```

min(doubleValue1, doubleValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Doubles.

Signature

```
public static Double min(Double doubleValue1, Double doubleValue2)
```

Parameters

doubleValue1
Type: Double

doubleValue2
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

min(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Integers.

Signature

```
public static Integer min(Integer integerValue1, Integer integerValue2)
```

Parameters

integerValue1
Type: Integer

integerValue2
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

min(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the smaller of the two specified Longs.

Signature

```
public static Long min(Long longValue1, Long longValue2)
```

Parameters

longValue1
Type: Long

longValue2
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Long

mod(integerValue1, integerValue2)

Returns the remainder of *integerValue1* divided by *integerValue2*.

Signature

```
public static Integer mod(Integer integerValue1, Integer integerValue2)
```

Parameters

integerValue1
Type: Integer

integerValue2
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Integer remainder = math.mod(12, 2);
system.assertEquals(remainder, 0);

Integer remainder2 = math.mod(8, 3);
system.assertEquals(remainder2, 2);
```

mod(longValue1, longValue2)

Returns the remainder of *longValue1* divided by *longValue2*.

Signature

```
public static Long mod(Long longValue1, Long longValue2)
```

Parameters

longValue1
Type: Long

longValue2
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: Long

pow(doubleValue, exponent)

Returns the value of the first Double raised to the power of *exponent*.

Signature

```
public static Double pow(Double doubleValue, Double exponent)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

exponent
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

random()

Returns a positive Double that is greater than or equal to 0.0 and less than 1.0.

Signature

```
public static Double random()
```

Return Value

Type: Double

rint(decimalValue)

Returns the value that is closest in value to *decimalValue* and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Decimal rint(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

rint(doubleValue)

Returns the value that is closest in value to *doubleValue* and is equal to a mathematical integer.

Signature

```
public static Double rint(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

round(doubleValue)

Do not use. This method is deprecated as of the Winter '08 release. Instead, use `Math.roundToLong`. Returns the closest Integer to the specified Double. If the result is less than -2,147,483,648 or greater than 2,147,483,647, Apex generates an error.

Signature

```
public static Integer round(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Integer

round(decimalValue)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

Signature

```
public static Integer round(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Note that this rounding mode statistically minimizes cumulative error when applied repeatedly over a sequence of calculations.

Example

```
Decimal d1 = 4.5;
Integer i1 = Math.round(d1);
System.assertEquals(4, i1);

Decimal d2 = 5.5;
Integer i2 = Math.round(d2);
System.assertEquals(6, i2);
```

roundToLong(decimalValue)

Returns the rounded approximation of this Decimal. The number is rounded to zero decimal places using half-even rounding mode, that is, it rounds towards the "nearest neighbor" unless both neighbors are equidistant, in which case, this mode rounds towards the even neighbor.

Signature

```
public static Long roundToLong(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Long

Usage

Note that this rounding mode statistically minimizes cumulative error when applied repeatedly over a sequence of calculations.

Example

```
Decimal d1 = 4.5;
Long i1 = Math.roundToLong(d1);
System.assertEquals(4, i1);

Decimal d2 = 5.5;
Long i2 = Math.roundToLong(d2);
System.assertEquals(6, i2);
```

roundToLong(doubleValue)

Returns the closest Long to the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static Long roundToLong(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Long

signum(decimalValue)

Returns the signum function of the specified Decimal, which is 0 if *decimalValue* is 0, 1.0 if *decimalValue* is greater than 0, -1.0 if *decimalValue* is less than 0.

Signature

```
public static Decimal signum(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

signum(doubleValue)

Returns the signum function of the specified Double, which is 0 if *doubleValue* is 0, 1.0 if *doubleValue* is greater than 0, -1.0 if *doubleValue* is less than 0.

Signature

```
public static Double signum(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

sin(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric sine of the angle specified by *decimalAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal sin(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

sin(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric sine of the angle specified by *doubleAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Double sin(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

sinh(decimalAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic sine of *decimalAngle*. The hyperbolic sine of *decimalAngle* is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/2$ where e is Euler's number.

Signature

```
public static Decimal sinh(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

sinh(doubleAngle)

Returns the hyperbolic sine of *doubleAngle*. The hyperbolic sine of *doubleAngle* is defined to be $(e^x - e^{-x})/2$ where e is Euler's number.

Signature

```
public static Double sinh(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

sqrt(decimalValue)

Returns the correctly rounded positive square root of *decimalValue*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal sqrt(Decimal decimalValue)
```

Parameters

decimalValue
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

sqrt(doubleValue)

Returns the correctly rounded positive square root of *doubleValue*.

Signature

```
public static Double sqrt(Double doubleValue)
```

Parameters

doubleValue
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

tan(decimalAngle)

Returns the trigonometric tangent of the angle specified by *decimalAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Decimal tan(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

tan(doubleAngle)

Returns the trigonometric tangent of the angle specified by *doubleAngle*.

Signature

```
public static Double tan(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

`tanh(decimalAngle)`

Returns the hyperbolic tangent of `decimalAngle`. The hyperbolic tangent of `decimalAngle` is defined to be $(e^X - e^{-X})/(e^X + e^{-X})$ where *e* is Euler's number. In other words, it is equivalent to `sinh(x)/cosinh(x)`. The absolute value of the exact `tanh` is always less than 1.

Signature

```
public static Decimal tanh(Decimal decimalAngle)
```

Parameters

decimalAngle
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: Decimal

`tanh(doubleAngle)`

Returns the hyperbolic tangent of `doubleAngle`. The hyperbolic tangent of `doubleAngle` is defined to be $(e^X - e^{-X})/(e^X + e^{-X})$ where *e* is Euler's number. In other words, it is equivalent to `sinh(x)/cosinh(x)`. The absolute value of the exact `tanh` is always less than 1.

Signature

```
public static Double tanh(Double doubleAngle)
```

Parameters

doubleAngle
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: Double

Messaging Class

Contains messaging methods used when sending a single or mass email.

Namespace

System

Messaging Methods

The following are methods for `Messaging`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

extractInboundEmail(source, includeForwardedAttachments)

Use this method in your email service code to control how to parse and process forwarded or attached emails. Returns an instance of `Messaging.InboundEmail` from a stream of data that is in RFC822 format. The data stream can be a forwarded email in an attachment to an existing InboundEmail, or a stream from another source.

reserveMassEmailCapacity(amountReserved)

Reserves email capacity to send mass email to the specified number of email addresses, after the current transaction commits.

reserveSingleEmailCapacity(amountReserved)

Reserves email capacity to send single email to the specified number of email addresses, after the current transaction commits.

sendEmail(emails, allOrNothing)

Sends the list of emails instantiated with either `SingleEmailMessage` or `MassEmailMessage` and returns a list of SendEmailResult objects. When org preferences are set to save EmailMessage objects and a trigger is defined for EmailMessage objects, the trigger is fired for each `SingleEmailMessage` individually. The `sendEmail` method can be called 10 times per Apex transaction and each method invocation can include up to 100 "To", 25 "Cc", and 25 "Bcc" recipients.

sendEmailMessage(emailMessageIds, allOrNothing)

Sends draft email messages as defined by the specified email message IDs and returns a list of SendEmailResult objects.

renderEmailTemplate(whoId, whatId, bodies)

Replaces merge fields in text bodies of email templates with values from Salesforce records. Returns an array of `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` objects, each of which corresponds to an element in the supplied array of text bodies. Each `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` provides a success or failure indication, along with either an error code or the rendered text.

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Includes all attachment content in the returned email message.

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId, attachmentRetrievalOption)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId, attachmentRetrievalOption, updateEmailTemplateUsage)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

`extractInboundEmail(source, includeForwardedAttachments)`

Use this method in your email service code to control how to parse and process forwarded or attached emails. Returns an instance of `Messaging.InboundEmail` from a stream of data that is in RFC822 format. The data stream can be a forwarded email in an attachment to an existing InboundEmail, or a stream from another source.

Signature

```
public static Messaging.InboundEmail extractInboundEmail(Object source, Boolean
includeForwardedAttachments)
```

Parameters

source
Type: Object

An instance of `Messaging.InboundEmail.BinaryAttachment` whose MimeTypeSubtype is `message/rfc822` or a Blob. If *source* is a Blob, then supply a byte array in RFC822 format.

includeForwardedAttachments
Type: Boolean

This parameter controls how attachments to embedded or forwarded emails are handled. Set to `true` to provide all attachments, even attachments in embedded emails in the `binaryAttachments` and `textAttachments` properties of the returned value. Set to `false` to provide only the attachments that are at the top level of the source email.

Return Value

Type: Messaging.InboundEmail

reserveMassEmailCapacity(amountReserved)

Reserves email capacity to send mass email to the specified number of email addresses, after the current transaction commits.

Signature

```
public Void reserveMassEmailCapacity(Integer amountReserved)
```

Parameters

amountReserved
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method can be called when you know in advance how many addresses emails will be sent to as a result of the transaction.If the transaction would cause the organization to exceed its daily email limit, using this method results in the following error: `System.HandledException: The daily limit for the org would be exceeded by this request.` If the organization doesn't have permission to send API or mass email, using this method results in the following error: `System.NoAccessException: The organization is not permitted to send email.`

reserveSingleEmailCapacity(amountReserved)

Reserves email capacity to send single email to the specified number of email addresses, after the current transaction commits.

Signature

```
public Void reserveSingleEmailCapacity(Integer amountReserved)
```

Parameters

amountReserved
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method can be called when you know in advance how many addresses emails will be sent to as a result of the transaction.If the transaction would cause the organization to exceed its daily email limit, using this method results in the following error: `System.HandledException: The daily limit for the org would be exceeded by this request.`If the organization doesn't have permission to send API or mass email, using this method results in the following error: `System.NoAccessException: The organization is not permitted to send email.`

sendEmail(emails, allOrNothing)

Sends the list of emails instantiated with either `SingleEmailMessage` or `MassEmailMessage` and returns a list of SendEmailResult objects. When org preferences are set to save EmailMessage objects and a trigger is defined for EmailMessage objects, the trigger is fired for each `SingleEmailMessage` individually. The `sendEmail` method can be called 10 times per Apex transaction and each method invocation can include up to 100 "To", 25 "Cc", and 25 "Bcc" recipients.

Signature

```
public Messaging.SendEmailResult[] sendEmail(Messaging.Email[] emails, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

emails
Type: Messaging.Email[]

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

The optional *opt_allOrNone* parameter specifies whether `sendEmail` prevents delivery of all other messages when any of the messages fail due to an error (`true`), or whether it allows delivery of the messages that don't have errors (`false`). The default is `true`.

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SendEmailResult[]

sendEmailMessage(emailMessageIds, allOrNothing)

Sends draft email messages as defined by the specified email message IDs and returns a list of SendEmailResult objects.

Signature

```
public Messaging.SendEmailResult[] sendEmailMessage(List<ID> emailMessageIds, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

emailMessageIds
Type: List<ID>

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SendEmailResult[]

Usage

The `sendEmailMessage` method assumes that the optional *opt_allOrNone* parameter is always `false` and ignores the value you set. This optional parameter specifies whether `sendEmailMessage` prevents delivery of all other messages when any of the messages fail due to an error (`true`), or whether it allows delivery of the messages that don't have errors (`false`).

Example

This example shows how to send a draft email message. It creates a case and a new email message associated with the case. Next, the example sends a draft email message and checks the results. Before running this example, make sure to replace the email address with a valid address.

```
Case c = new Case();
insert c;

EmailMessage e = new EmailMessage();
e.parentid = c.id;
// Set to draft status.
// This status is required
// for sendEmailMessage().
e.Status = '5';
e.TextBody =
  'Sample email message.';
e.Subject = 'Apex sample';
e.ToAddress = 'customer@email.com';
insert e;

List<Messaging.SendEmailResult>
  results =
  Messaging.sendEmailMessage(new ID[]
    { e.id });

System.assertEquals(1, results.size());
System.assertEquals(true,
                    results[0].success);
```

renderEmailTemplate(whoId, whatId, bodies)

Replaces merge fields in text bodies of email templates with values from Salesforce records. Returns an array of `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` objects, each of which corresponds to an element in the supplied array of text bodies. Each `RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult` provides a success or failure indication, along with either an error code or the rendered text.

Signature

```
public static List<Messaging.RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult> renderEmailTemplate(String whoId, String whatId, List<String> bodies)
```

Parameters

whoId
Type: String

The identifier of an object in the database, typically a contact, lead, or user. The database record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

whatId
Type: String

Identifies an object in the database like an account or opportunity. The record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

bodies
Type: List<String>

An array of strings that are examined for merge field references. The corresponding data from the object referenced by the `whoId` or `whatId` replaces the merge field reference.

Return Value

Type: List<Messaging.RenderEmailTemplateBodyResult>

Usage

Use this method in situations in which you want to dynamically compose blocks of text that are enriched with data from the database. You can then use the the rendered blocks of text to compose and send an email or update a text value in another database record.

Executing the `renderEmailTemplate` method counts toward the SOQL governor limit. The number of SOQL queries that this method consumes is the number of elements in the list of strings passed in the *bodies* parameter.

SEE ALSO:

Execution Governors and Limits

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Includes all attachment content in the returned email message.

Signature

```
public static Messaging.SingleEmailMessage renderStoredEmailTemplate(String templateId,
String whoId, String whatId)
```

Parameters

templateId
Type: String

An email template that exists in the database, such as text, HTML, custom, and Visualforce templates.

whoId
Type: String

The identifier of an object in the database, typically a contact, lead, or user. The database record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

whatId
Type: String

Identifies an object in the database, like an account or opportunity. The record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SingleEmailMessage

Usage

Executing the `renderStoredEmailTemplate` method counts toward the SOQL governor limit as one query.

SEE ALSO:

Execution Governors and Limits

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId, attachmentRetrievalOption)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

Signature

```
public static Messaging.SingleEmailMessage renderStoredEmailTemplate(String templateId,
String whoId, String whatId, Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption
attachmentRetrievalOption)
```

Parameters

templateId
Type: String

An email template that exists in the database, such as text, HTML, custom, and Visualforce templates.

whoId
Type: String

The identifier of an object in the database, typically a contact, lead, or user. The database record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

whatId
Type: String

Identifies an object in the database, like an account or opportunity. The record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

attachmentRetrievalOption
Type: Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption

Specifies options for including attachments in the `fileAttachments` property of the returned `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Set to one of the Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption values to include attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or to exclude attachments.

Note: When the *`attachmentRetrievalOption`* parameter is *not* set to `NONE`, the `entityAttachments` property of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage` contains the ID of the Salesforce content objects to attach (ContentVersion or Document). The `fileAttachments` property contains the IDs of attachments, in addition to all the IDs in the `entityAttachments` property. As a result, the ID values in `entityAttachments` are duplicates of the IDs in the `fileAttachments` property. If you call `renderStoredEmailTemplate()` by passing the `METADATA_WITH_BODY` option, and send the rendered email message, the email will contain duplicate attachments. Before using the returned email message with sendEmail(emails, allOrNothing), you can remove attachments from `fileAttachments` that are duplicated in `entityAttachments`.

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SingleEmailMessage

Usage

Executing the `renderStoredEmailTemplate` method counts toward the SOQL governor limit as one query.

renderStoredEmailTemplate(templateId, whoId, whatId, attachmentRetrievalOption, updateEmailTemplateUsage)

Renders a text, custom, HTML, or Visualforce email template that exists in the database into an instance of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Provides options for including attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or excluding attachments.

Signature

```
public static Messaging.SingleEmailMessage renderStoredEmailTemplate(String templateId,
String whoId, String whatId, Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption
attachmentRetrievalOption, Boolean updateEmailTemplateUsage)
```

Parameters

templateId
Type: String

An email template that exists in the database, such as text, HTML, custom, and Visualforce templates.

whoId
Type: String

The identifier of an object in the database, typically a contact, lead, or user. The database record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

whatId
Type: String

Identifies an object in the database, like an account or opportunity. The record for that object is read and used in merge field processing.

attachmentRetrievalOption
Type: Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption

Specifies options for including attachments in the `fileAttachments` property of the returned `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage`. Set to one of the Messaging.AttachmentRetrievalOption values to include attachment metadata only, attachment metadata and content, or to exclude attachments.

> **Note:** When the *`attachmentRetrievalOption`* parameter is *not* set to `NONE`, the `entityAttachments` property of `Messaging.SingleEmailMessage` contains the ID of the Salesforce content objects to attach (ContentVersion or Document). The `fileAttachments` property contains the IDs of attachments, in addition to all the IDs in the `entityAttachments` property. As a result, the ID values in `entityAttachments` are duplicates of the IDs in the `fileAttachments` property. If you call `renderStoredEmailTemplate()` by passing the `METADATA_WITH_BODY` option, and send the rendered email message, the email will contain duplicate attachments. Before using the returned email message with sendEmail(emails, allOrNothing), you can remove attachments from `fileAttachments` that are duplicated in `entityAttachments`.

updateEmailTemplateUsage
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the usage field in the EmailTemplate record is updated upon successful rendering.

Return Value

Type: Messaging.SingleEmailMessage

Usage

Executing the `renderStoredEmailTemplate` method counts toward the SOQL governor limit as one query.

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Class

Utility class used to specify a fake response using multiple resources for testing HTTP callouts.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the methods in this class to set the response properties for testing HTTP callouts. You can specify a resource for each endpoint.

IN THIS SECTION:

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Constructors

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Methods

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Constructors

The following are constructors for `MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock`.

IN THIS SECTION:

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock()
Creates a new instance of the `System.MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock` class.

`MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock()`

Creates a new instance of the `System.MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock` class.

Signature

```
public MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock()
```

MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock Methods

The following are methods for `MultiStaticResourceCalloutMock`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

setHeader(headerName, headerValue)
Sets the specified header name and value for the fake response.

setStaticResource(endpoint, resourceName)
Sets the specified static resource corresponding to the endpoint. The static resource contains the response body.

setStatus(httpStatus)
Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

setStatusCode(httpStatusCode)
Sets the specified HTTP status code for the response.

`setHeader(headerName, headerValue)`

Sets the specified header name and value for the fake response.

Signature

```
public Void setHeader(String headerName, String headerValue)
```

Parameters

`headerName`
Type: String

headerValue
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStaticResource(endpoint, resourceName)

Sets the specified static resource corresponding to the endpoint. The static resource contains the response body.

Signature

```
public Void setStaticResource(String endpoint, String resourceName)
```

Parameters

endpoint
Type: String

resourceName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStatus(httpStatus)

Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatus(String httpStatus)
```

Parameters

httpStatus
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStatusCode(httpStatusCode)

Sets the specified HTTP status code for the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatusCode(Integer httpStatusCode)
```

Parameters

httpStatusCode
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

Network Class

Represents an Experience Cloud site.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the method in the `Network` class to determine which Experience Cloud site a user is currently logged into.

IN THIS SECTION:

Network Constructors

Network Methods

Network Constructors

The following are constructors for `Network`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Network()
Creates a new instance of the `System.Network` class.

`Network()`

Creates a new instance of the `System.Network` class.

Signature

```
public Network()
```

Network Methods

The following are methods for `Network`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

communitiesLanding()
Returns a Page Reference to the default landing page for the Experience Cloud site. This is the first tab of the site.

forwardToAuthPage(startURL)
Returns a Page Reference to the default login page. StartURL is included as a query paremeter for where to redirect after a successful login.

getLoginUrl(networkId)
Returns the absolute URL of the login page used by the Experience Cloud site.

getLogoutUrl(networkId)
Returns the absolute URL of the logout page used by the Experience Cloud site.

getNetworkId()
Returns the user's current Experience Cloud site.

getSelfRegUrl(networkId)
Returns the absolute URL of the self-registration page used by the Experience Cloud site.

loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkDashboardSettings()
Maps the dashboards from the Salesforce Communities Management package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured dashboard settings. Returns the number of settings it configures.

loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkPulseSettings()
Maps the Insights reports from the Salesforce Communities Management package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured Insights settings. Returns the number of settings it configures.

communitiesLanding()

Returns a Page Reference to the default landing page for the Experience Cloud site. This is the first tab of the site.

Signature

```
public static String communitiesLanding()
```

Return Value

Type: PageReference

Usage

If digital experiences isn't enabled for the user's org or the user is currently in the internal org, returns `null`.

forwardToAuthPage(startURL)

Returns a Page Reference to the default login page. StartURL is included as a query paremeter for where to redirect after a successful login.

Signature

```
public static PageReference forwardToAuthPage(String startURL)
```

Parameters

startURL
Type: String

Return Value

Type: PageReference

Usage

If digital experiences isn't enabled for the user's org or the user is currently in the internal org, returns `null`.

getLoginUrl(networkId)

Returns the absolute URL of the login page used by the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getLoginUrl(String networkId)
```

Parameters

networkId
Type: String

The ID of the Experience Cloud site you're retrieving this information for.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns the full URL for the Lightning Platform or Experience Builder page used as the login page in the Experience Cloud site.

getLogoutUrl(networkId)

Returns the absolute URL of the logout page used by the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getLogoutUrl(String networkId)
```

Parameters

networkId
Type: String

The ID of the Experience Cloud site you're retrieving this information for.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns the full URL for the Lightning Platform page, Experience Builder page, or Web page used as the logout page in the Experience Cloud site.

`getNetworkId()`

Returns the user's current Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getNetworkId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If digital experiences isn't enabled for the user's org or the user is currently in the internal org, returns `null`.

`getSelfRegUrl(networkId)`

Returns the absolute URL of the self-registration page used by the Experience Cloud site.

Signature

```
public static String getSelfRegUrl(String networkId)
```

Parameters

`networkId`
Type: String

The ID of the Experience Cloud site you're retrieving this information for.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns the full URL for the Lightning Platform or Experience Builder page used as the self-registration page in the Experience Cloud site.

`loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkDashboardSettings()`

Maps the dashboards from the Salesforce Communities Management package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured dashboard settings. Returns the number of settings it configures.

Signature

```
public static Integer loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkDashboardSettings()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If digital experiences is enabled, and the Salesforce Communities Management package is installed, maps the dashboards provided in the package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured dashboard settings. Returns the number of settings it configures. This method is invoked automatically during site creation and package installation, but isn't typically invoked manually.

If digital experiences isn't enabled for the user's org or the user is in the internal org, returns `0`.

`loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkPulseSettings()`

Maps the Insights reports from the Salesforce Communities Management package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured Insights settings. Returns the number of settings it configures.

Signature

```
public static Integer loadAllPackageDefaultNetworkPulseSettings()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If digital experiences is enabled, and the Salesforce Communities Management package is installed, maps the Insights reports provided in the package onto each Experience Cloud site's unconfigured Insights settings. Returns the number of settings it configures. This method is invoked automatically during site creation and package installation, but isn't typically invoked manually.

If digital experiences isn't enabled for the user's org or the user is in the internal org, returns `0`.

OrgLimit Class

Contains methods that provide the name, maximum value, and current value of an org limit.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `System.OrgLimits` `getAll` and `getMap` methods to obtain either a list or a map of all your org limits. To get details on each limit, use instance methods from `System.OrgLimit`.

For comparison, the Limits Class returns Apex governor limits and not Salesforce API limits.

IN THIS SECTION:

OrgLimit Methods

OrgLimit Methods

The following are methods for `OrgLimit`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getLimit()
Returns the maximum allowed limit value.

getName()
Returns the limit's name.

getValue()
Returns the limit usage value.

`getLimit()`

Returns the maximum allowed limit value.

Signature

```
public Integer getLimit()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
List<System.OrgLimit> limits = OrgLimits.getAll();
for (System.OrgLimit aLimit: limits) {
    System.debug('Limit: ' + aLimit.getName());
    System.debug('Max Limit is: ' + aLimit.getLimit());
}
```

`getName()`

Returns the limit's name.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
List<System.OrgLimit> limits = OrgLimits.getAll();
for (System.OrgLimit aLimit: limits) {
    System.debug('Limit: ' + aLimit.getName());
    System.debug('Max Limit is: ' + aLimit.getLimit());
}
```

`getValue()`

Returns the limit usage value.

Signature

```
public Integer getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
List<System.OrgLimit> limits = OrgLimits.getAll();
for (System.OrgLimit aLimit: limits) {
    System.debug('Limit: ' + aLimit.getName());
    System.debug('Usage Value is: ' + aLimit.getValue());
}
```

OrgLimits Class

Contains methods that provide a list or map of all OrgLimit instances for Salesforce your org, such as SOAP API requests, Bulk API requests, and Streaming API limits.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `System.OrgLimits` `getAll` and `getMap` methods to obtain either a list or a map of all your org limits. To get details on each limit, use instance methods from `System.OrgLimit`.

For comparison, the Limits Class returns Apex governor limits and not Salesforce API limits.

IN THIS SECTION:

OrgLimits Methods

OrgLimits Methods

The following are methods for `OrgLimits`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAll()
Returns a list of OrgLimit instances.

getMap()
Returns a map of all OrgLimit instances with the limit name as key.

`getAll()`

Returns a list of OrgLimit instances.

Signature

```
public static List<System.OrgLimit> getAll()
```

Return Value

Type: List<System.OrgLimit>

`getMap()`

Returns a map of all OrgLimit instances with the limit name as key.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,System.OrgLimit> getMap()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,System.OrgLimit>

Example

```
Map<String,System.OrgLimit> limitsMap = OrgLimits.getMap();
System.OrgLimit apiRequestsLimit = limitsMap.get('DailyApiRequests');
System.debug('Limit Name: ' + apiRequestsLimit.getName());
System.debug('Usage Value: ' + apiRequestsLimit.getValue());
System.debug('Maximum Limit: ' + apiRequestsLimit.getLimit());
```

PageReference Class

A PageReference is a reference to an instantiation of a page. Among other attributes, PageReferences consist of a URL and a set of query parameter names and values.

Namespace

System

Use a PageReference object:

- To view or set query string parameters and values for a page
- To navigate the user to a different page as the result of an action method

Instantiation

In a custom controller or controller extension, you can refer to or instantiate a PageReference in one of the following ways:

- ```
  Page.existingPageName
  ```

  Refers to a PageReference for a Visualforce page that has already been saved in your organization. By referring to a page in this way, the platform recognizes that this controller or controller extension is dependent on the existence of the specified page and will prevent the page from being deleted while the controller or extension exists.

- ```
  PageReference pageRef = new PageReference('partialURL');
  ```

  Creates a PageReference to any page that is hosted on the Lightning platform. For example, setting `'partialURL'` to `'/apex/HelloWorld'` refers to the Visualforce page located at `http://mySalesforceInstance/apex/HelloWorld`. Likewise, setting `'partialURL'` to `'/' + 'recordID'` refers to the detail page for the specified record.

  This syntax is less preferable for referencing other Visualforce pages than `Page.existingPageName` because the PageReference is constructed at runtime, rather than referenced at compile time. Runtime references are not available to the referential integrity system. Consequently, the platform doesn't recognize that this controller or controller extension is dependent on the existence of the specified page and won't issue an error message to prevent user deletion of the page.

- ```
  PageReference pageRef = new PageReference('fullURL');
  ```

  Creates a PageReference for an external URL. For example:

  ```
  PageReference pageRef = new PageReference('http://www.google.com');
  ```

You can also instantiate a PageReference object for the current page with the `currentPage` ApexPages method. For example:

```
PageReference pageRef = ApexPages.currentPage();
```

Request Headers

The following table is a non-exhaustive list of headers that are set on requests.
```

Header	Description
Host	The host name requested in the request URL. This header is always set on Lightning Platform Site requests and My Domain requests. This header is optional on other requests when HTTP/1.0 is used instead of HTTP/1.1.
Referer	The URL that is either included or linked to the current request's URL. This header is optional.
User-Agent	The name, version, and extension support of the program that initiated this request, such as a web browser. This header is optional and can be overridden in most browsers to be a different value. Therefore, this header should not be relied upon.
CipherSuite	If this header exists and has a non-blank value, this means that the request is using HTTPS. Otherwise, the request is using HTTP. The contents of a non-blank value are not defined by this API, and can be changed without notice.
X-Salesforce-SIP	The source IP address of the request. This header is always set on HTTP and HTTPS requests that are initiated outside of Salesforce's data centers. Note: If a request passes through a content delivery network (CDN) or proxy server, the source IP address might be altered, and no longer the original client IP address.
X-Salesforce-Forwarded-To	The fully qualified domain name of the Salesforce instance that is handling this request. This header is always set on HTTP and HTTPS requests that are initiated outside of Salesforce's data centers.

Example: Retrieving Query String Parameters

The following example shows how to use a PageReference object to retrieve a query string parameter in the current page URL. In this example, the `getAccount` method references the `id` query string parameter:

```
public class MyController {
   public Account getAccount() {
        return [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account
                WHERE Id = :ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('Id')];
    }
}
```

The following page markup calls the `getAccount` method from the controller above:

```
<apex:page controller="MyController">
    <apex:pageBlock title="Retrieving Query String Parameters">
        You are viewing the {!account.name} account.
    </apex:pageBlock>
</apex:page>
```

Note: For this example to render properly, you must associate the Visualforce page with a valid account record in the URL. For example, if `001D000000IRt53` is the account ID, the resulting URL should be:

```
https://Salesforce_instance/apex/MyFirstPage?id=001D000000IRt53
```

The `getAccount` method uses an embedded SOQL query to return the account specified by the `id` parameter in the URL of the page. To access `id`, the `getAccount` method uses the `ApexPages` namespace:

- First the `currentPage` method returns the `PageReference` instance for the current page. `PageReference` returns a reference to a Visualforce page, including its query string parameters.
- Using the page reference, use the `getParameters` method to return a map of the specified query string parameter names and values.
- Then a call to the `get` method specifying `id` returns the value of the `id` parameter itself.

Example: Navigating to a New Page as the Result of an Action Method

Any action method in a custom controller or controller extension can return a PageReference object as the result of the method. If the `redirect` attribute on the PageReference is set to `true`, the user navigates to the URL specified by the PageReference.

The following example shows how this can be implemented with a `save` method. In this example, the PageReference returned by the `save` method redirects the user to the detail page for the account record that was just saved:

```
public class mySecondController {
    Account account;

    public Account getAccount() {
        if(account == null) account = new Account();
        return account;
    }

    public PageReference save() {
        // Add the account to the database.
        insert account;
        // Send the user to the detail page for the new account.
        PageReference acctPage = new ApexPages.StandardController(account).view();
        acctPage.setRedirect(true);
        return acctPage;
    }
}
```

The following page markup calls the `save` method from the controller above. When a user clicks **Save**, he or she is redirected to the detail page for the account just created:

```
<apex:page controller="mySecondController" tabStyle="Account">
    <apex:sectionHeader title="New Account Edit Page" />
    <apex:form>
        <apex:pageBlock title="Create a New Account">
            <apex:pageBlockButtons location="bottom">
                <apex:commandButton action="{!save}" value="Save"/>
            </apex:pageBlockButtons>
            <apex:pageBlockSection title="Account Information">
                <apex:inputField id="accountName" value="{!account.name}"/>
                <apex:inputField id="accountSite" value="{!account.site}"/>
            </apex:pageBlockSection>
       </apex:pageBlock>
    </apex:form>
</apex:page>
```

Example: Redirect Users to a Replacement Experience Cloud Site

The following example shows how to redirect a user attempting to access a retired feedback site to a self-service help site. If the `redirect` attribute is set to `true` on the PageReference for the feedback site, the user navigates to the URL specified by the PageReference. The `redirectCode` attribute defines the redirection type for search engine optimization in public Experience Cloud sites.

```
public class RedirectController {
    // Redirect users to the self-service help site    public PageReference redirect() {
        final PageReference target = new
        PageReference(Site.getBaseSecureUrl() + '/SiteLogin');
        target.setRedirect(true);
        // This is a permanent redirection
        target.setRedirectCode(301);
        return target;
    }
}
```

The following example shows how to call the RedirectController class from the retired site page.

```
<apex:page controller="RedirectController" action="{!redirect}"/>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

PageReference Constructors

PageReference Methods

PageReference Constructors

The following are constructors for `PageReference`.

IN THIS SECTION:

PageReference(partialURL)

Creates a new instance of the `PageReference` class using the specified URL.

PageReference(record)

Generate a new instance of the `PageReference` class for the specified sObject record.

`PageReference(partialURL)`

Creates a new instance of the `PageReference` class using the specified URL.

Signature

```
public PageReference(String partialURL)
```

Parameters

`partialURL`
Type: String

The partial URL of a page hosted on the Lightning platform or a full external URL. The following are some examples of the *partialURL* parameter values:

- `/apex/HelloWorld`: refers to the Visualforce page located at `http://mySalesforceInstance/apex/HelloWorld`.
- `/recordID`: refers to the detail page of a specified record.
- `http://www.google.com`: refers to an external URL.

`PageReference(record)`

Generate a new instance of the `PageReference` class for the specified sObject record.

Signature

```
public PageReference(SObject record)
```

Parameters

record

Type: SObject

The sObject record that references the `ApexPage`. The reference must be an `ApexPage`.

SEE ALSO:

Visualforce Developer Guide: apex:page

SOAP API Developer Guide: ApexPage

PageReference Methods

The following are methods for `PageReference`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

forResource(resourceName, path)

Create a PageReference for nested content inside a zip static resource, by name and path.

forResource(resourceName)

Create a PageReference for a static resource, by name.

getAnchor()

Returns the name of the anchor referenced in the page's URL. That is, the part of the URL after the hashtag (#).

getContent()

Returns the output of the page, as displayed to a user in a web browser.

getContentAsPDF()

Returns the page in PDF, regardless of the `<apex:page>` component's `renderAs` attribute.

getCookies()

Returns a map of cookie names and cookie objects, where the key is a String of the cookie name and the the value contains the cookie object with that name.

getHeaders()

Returns a map of the request headers, where the key string contains the name of the header, and the value string contains the value of the header.

getParameters()

Returns a map of the query string parameters for the PageReference; both POST and GET parameters are included. The key string contains the name of the parameter, while the value string contains the value of the parameter.

getRedirect()

Returns the current value of the PageReference object's `redirect` attribute.

getRedirectCode()

Returns the HTTP redirect code used when getRedirect() is set to `true` for the PageReference object.

getUrl()

Returns the relative URL associated with the PageReference when it was originally defined, including any query string parameters and anchors.

setAnchor(anchor)

Sets the URL's anchor reference to the specified string.

setCookies(cookies)

Creates a list of cookie objects. Used in conjunction with the `Cookie` class.

setRedirect(redirect)

Sets the value of the PageReference object's `redirect` attribute. If set to `true`, a redirect is performed through a client side redirect.

setRedirectCode(redirectCode)

Sets the HTTP redirect code to use for the PageReference object when setRedirect(redirect) is set to `true`.

`forResource(resourceName, path)`

Create a PageReference for nested content inside a zip static resource, by name and path.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference forResource(String resourceName, String path)
```

Parameters

`resourceName`

Type: String

The resource name

`path`

Type: String

The resource path

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

forResource(resourceName)

Create a PageReference for a static resource, by name.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference forResource(String resourceName)
```

Parameters

resourceName
Type: String

The resource name

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

getAnchor()

Returns the name of the anchor referenced in the page's URL. That is, the part of the URL after the hashtag (#).

Signature

```
public String getAnchor()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Note: Instances of `PageReference` returned by `ApexPages.currentPage()` have a null anchor attribute, because URL fragments are not sent to the Salesforce server during a request.

getContent()

Returns the output of the page, as displayed to a user in a web browser.

Signature

```
public Blob getContent()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

The content of the returned Blob depends on how the page is rendered. If the page is rendered as a PDF file, it returns the PDF document. If the page is not rendered as PDF, it returns HTML. To access the content of the returned HTML as a string, use the `toString` Blob method.

Note: If you use `getContent` in a test method, the test method fails. `getContent` is treated as a callout in API version 34.0 and later.

This method can't be used in:

- Triggers
- Test methods
- Apex email services

If the Visualforce page has an error, an `ExecutionException` is thrown.

`getContentAsPDF()`

Returns the page in PDF, regardless of the `<apex:page>` component's `renderAs` attribute.

Signature

```
public Blob getContentAsPDF()
```

Return Value

Type: Blob

Usage

Note: If you use `getContentAsPDF` in a test method, the test method fails. `getContentAsPDF` is treated as a callout in API version 34.0 and later.

This method can't be used in:

- Triggers
- Test methods
- Apex email services

`getCookies()`

Returns a map of cookie names and cookie objects, where the key is a String of the cookie name and the the value contains the cookie object with that name.

Signature

```
public Map<String, System.Cookie> getCookies()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, System.Cookie>

Usage

Used in conjunction with the `Cookie` class. Only returns cookies with the "`apex__`" prefix set by the `setCookies` method.

getHeaders()

Returns a map of the request headers, where the key string contains the name of the header, and the value string contains the value of the header.

Signature

```
public Map<String, String> getHeaders()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

Usage

This map can be modified and remains in scope for the PageReference object. For instance, you could do:

```
PageReference.getHeaders().put('Date', '9/9/99');
```

For a description of request headers, see Request Headers.

getParameters()

Returns a map of the query string parameters for the PageReference; both POST and GET parameters are included. The key string contains the name of the parameter, while the value string contains the value of the parameter.

Signature

```
public Map<String, String> getParameters()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

Usage

This map can be modified and remains in scope for the PageReference object. For instance, you could do:

```
PageReference.getParameters().put('id', myID);
```

Parameter keys are case-insensitive. For example:

```
System.assert(
    ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('myParamName') ==
    ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('myparamname'));
```

getRedirect()

Returns the current value of the PageReference object's `redirect` attribute.

Signature

```
public Boolean getRedirect()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Note that if the URL of the PageReference object is set to a website outside of the `salesforce.com` domain, the redirect always occurs, regardless of whether the `redirect` attribute is set to `true` or `false`.

getRedirectCode()

Returns the HTTP redirect code used when getRedirect() is set to `true` for the PageReference object.

Signature

```
public Integer getRedirectCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Possible Values:

- 0 — Redirect using the default redirect action for this PageReference. Typically a JavaScript-based redirection or HTTP 302.

  Note: Site URLRewirter Interface implementations pointing to a PageReference with a *`redirectCode`* of 0 are not redirected.

- 301 — Moved Permanently. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Includes instructions to update any references to the requested URL with the target location.
- 302 — Moved Temporarily. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Because the redirection is temporary, it doesn't include update instructions.
- 303 — See Other. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Not commonly used. Useful when the client sends a POST request and you want the client to call the new web page using a GET request instead of a POST request.
- 307 — Temporary Redirect. Send the same HTTP request, regardless of the HTTP method, to the target location. Because the redirection is temporary, it doesn't include update instructions.
- 308 — Permanent Redirect. Send the same HTTP request, regardless of the HTTP method, to the target location. Includes instructions to update any references to the requested URL with the target location.

getUrl()

Returns the relative URL associated with the PageReference when it was originally defined, including any query string parameters and anchors.

Signature

```
public String getUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`setAnchor(anchor)`

Sets the URL's anchor reference to the specified string.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference setAnchor(String anchor)
```

Parameters

anchor
Type: String

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

`setCookies(cookies)`

Creates a list of cookie objects. Used in conjunction with the `Cookie` class.

Signature

```
public Void setCookies(Cookie[] cookies)
```

Parameters

cookies
Type: System.Cookie[]

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Important:

- Cookie names and values set in Apex are URL encoded, that is, characters such as @ are replaced with a percent sign and their hexadecimal representation.
- The `setCookies` method adds the prefix "`apex__`" to the cookie names.
- Setting a cookie's value to `null` sends a cookie with an empty string value instead of setting an expired attribute.
- After you create a cookie, the properties of the cookie can't be changed.
- Be careful when storing sensitive information in cookies. Pages are cached regardless of a cookie value. If you use a cookie value to generate dynamic content, you should disable page caching. For more information, see Configure Site Caching in Salesforce Help.

`setRedirect(redirect)`

Sets the value of the PageReference object's `redirect` attribute. If set to `true`, a redirect is performed through a client side redirect.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference setRedirect(Boolean redirect)
```

Parameters

redirect
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

This type of redirect performs an HTTP GET request, and flushes the view state, which uses POST. If set to `false`, the redirect is a server-side forward that preserves the view state if and only if the target page uses the same controller and contains the proper subset of extensions used by the source page.

Note that if the URL of the PageReference object is set to a website outside of the `salesforce.com` domain, or to a page with a different controller or controller extension, the redirect always occurs, regardless of whether the `redirect` attribute is set to `true` or `false`.

`setRedirectCode(redirectCode)`

Sets the HTTP redirect code to use for the PageReference object when setRedirect(redirect) is set to `true`.

Signature

```
public System.PageReference setRedirectCode(Integer redirectCode)
```

Parameters

redirectCode
Type: Integer

Valid values:

- 0 — Redirect using the default redirect action for this PageReference. Typically a JavaScript-based redirection or HTTP 302.

  Note: Site URLRewirter Interface implementations pointing to a PageReference with a *redirectCode* of 0 are not redirected.

- 301 — Moved Permanently. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Includes instructions to update any references to the requested URL with the target location.
- 302 — Moved Temporarily. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Because the redirection is temporary, it doesn't include update instructions.
- 303 — See Other. Redirect users by sending an HTTP GET request to the target location. Not commonly used. Useful when the client sends a POST request and you want the client to call the new web page using a GET request instead of a POST request.
- 307 — Temporary Redirect. Send the same HTTP request, regardless of the HTTP method, to the target location. Because the redirection is temporary, it doesn't include update instructions.
- 308 — Permanent Redirect. Send the same HTTP request, regardless of the HTTP method, to the target location. Includes instructions to update any references to the requested URL with the target location.

If the redirect code contains an invalid integer, an error message is displayed when `PageReference` is used by Salesforce for redirection.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Packaging Class

Contains a method for obtaining information about managed and unlocked packages.

Namespace

System

Usage

In the context of a package, use the getCurrentPackageId method to retrieve the packageID.

IN THIS SECTION:

Packaging Methods

Packaging Methods

The following are methods for `Packaging`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCurrentPackageId()
Returns the context `packageID` in managed and unlocked packages.

`getCurrentPackageId()`

Returns the context `packageID` in managed and unlocked packages.

Signature

```
public String getCurrentPackageId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For managed packages, this method can be combined with isCurrentUserLicensedForPackage(packageId) to retrieve the `packageId` at runtime. Then, use `packageId` to confirm that the contextual user is licensed to use that managed package.

Pattern Class

Represents a compiled representation of a regular expression.

Namespace

System

Pattern Methods

The following are methods for `Pattern`.

IN THIS SECTION:

compile(regExp)
Compiles the regular expression into a Pattern object.

matcher(stringtoMatch)
Creates a Matcher object that matches the input string *`stringtoMatch`* against this Pattern object.

matches(regExp, stringtoMatch)
Compiles the regular expression *`regExp`* and tries to match it against the specified string. This method returns `true` if the specified string matches the regular expression, `false` otherwise.

pattern()
Returns the regular expression from which this Pattern object was compiled.

quote(yourString)
Returns a string that can be used to create a pattern that matches the string *`yourString`* as if it were a literal pattern.

split(regExp)
Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that matches this pattern.

split(regExp, limit)
Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated either by the regular expression *`regExp`* that matches this pattern, or by the end of the String.

`compile(regExp)`

Compiles the regular expression into a Pattern object.

Signature

```
public static Pattern compile(String regExp)
```

Parameters

`regExp`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: System.Pattern

matcher(stringtoMatch)

Creates a Matcher object that matches the input string *stringtoMatch* against this Pattern object.

Signature

```
public Matcher matcher(String stringtoMatch)
```

Parameters

stringtoMatch
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Matcher

matches(regExp, stringtoMatch)

Compiles the regular expression *regExp* and tries to match it against the specified string. This method returns `true` if the specified string matches the regular expression, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public static Boolean matches(String regExp, String stringtoMatch)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

stringtoMatch
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If a pattern is to be used multiple times, compiling it once and reusing it is more efficient than invoking this method each time.

Example

Note that the following code example:

```
Pattern.matches(regExp, input);
```

produces the same result as this code example:

```
Pattern.compile(regex).
matcher(input).matches();
```

pattern()

Returns the regular expression from which this Pattern object was compiled.

Signature

```
public String pattern()
```

Return Value

Type: String

quote(yourString)

Returns a string that can be used to create a pattern that matches the string *yourString* as if it were a literal pattern.

Signature

```
public static String quote(String yourString)
```

Parameters

yourString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Metacharacters (such as `$` or `^`) and escape sequences in the input string are treated as literal characters with no special meaning.

split(regExp)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that matches this pattern.

Signature

```
public String[] split(String regExp)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String[]

Note: In API version 34.0 and earlier, a zero-width *regExp* value produces an empty list item at the beginning of the method's output.

Usage

The substrings are placed in the list in the order in which they occur in the String. If *regExp* does not match the pattern, the resulting list has just one element containing the original String.

split(regExp, limit)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated either by the regular expression *regExp* that matches this pattern, or by the end of the String.

Signature

```
public String[] split(String regExp, Integer limit)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

limit
Type: Integer

(Optional) Controls the number of times the pattern is applied and therefore affects the length of the list.

- If *limit* is greater than zero:
  - The pattern is applied a maximum of (*limit* – 1) times.
  - The list's length is no greater than *limit*.
  - The list's last entry contains all input beyond the last matched delimiter.
- If *limit* is non-positive, the pattern is applied as many times as possible, and the list can have any length.
- If *limit* is zero, the pattern is applied as many times as possible, the list can have any length, and trailing empty strings are discarded.

Return Value

Type: String[]

Note: In API version 34.0 and earlier, a zero-width *regExp* value produces an empty list item at the beginning of the method's output.

Queueable Interface

Enables the asynchronous execution of Apex jobs that can be monitored.

Namespace

System

Usage

To execute Apex as an asynchronous job, implement the `Queueable` interface and add the processing logic in your implementation of the `execute` method.

To implement the `Queueable` interface, you must first declare a class with the `implements` keyword as follows:

```
public class MyQueueableClass implements Queueable {
```

Next, your class must provide an implementation for the following method:

```
public void execute(QueueableContext context) {
    // Your code here
}
```

Your class and method implementation must be declared as `public` or `global`.

To submit your class for asynchronous execution, call the `System.enqueueJob` by passing it an instance of your class implementation of the `Queueable` interface as follows:

```
ID jobID = System.enqueueJob(new MyQueueableClass());
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Queueable Methods

Queueable Example Implementation

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Queueable Apex

Queueable Methods

The following are methods for `Queueable`.

IN THIS SECTION:

execute(context)
Executes the queueable job.

`execute(context)`

Executes the queueable job.

Signature

```
public void execute(QueueableContext context)
```

Parameters

`context`
Type: QueueableContext

Contains the job ID.

Return Value

Type: Void

Queueable Example Implementation

This example is an implementation of the `Queueable` interface. The `execute` method in this example inserts a new account.

```
public class AsyncExecutionExample implements Queueable {
    public void execute(QueueableContext context) {
        Account a = new Account(Name='Acme',Phone='(415) 555-1212');
        insert a;
    }
}
```

To add this class as a job on the queue, call this method:

```
ID jobID = System.enqueueJob(new AsyncExecutionExample());
```

After you submit your queueable class for execution, the job is added to the queue and will be processed when system resources become available. You can monitor the status of your job programmatically by querying AsyncApexJob or through the user interface in Setup by entering *`Apex Jobs`* in the `Quick Find` box, then selecting **Apex Jobs**.

To query information about your submitted job, perform a SOQL query on AsyncApexJob by filtering on the job ID that the `System.enqueueJob` method returns. This example uses the jobID variable that was obtained in the previous example.

```
AsyncApexJob jobInfo = [SELECT Status,NumberOfErrors FROM AsyncApexJob WHERE Id=:jobID];
```

Similar to future jobs, queueable jobs don't process batches, and so the number of processed batches and the number of total batches are always zero.

Testing Queueable Jobs

This example shows how to test the execution of a queueable job in a test method. A queueable job is an asynchronous process. To ensure that this process runs within the test method, the job is submitted to the queue between the `Test.startTest` and `Test.stopTest` block. The system executes all asynchronous processes started in a test method synchronously after the `Test.stopTest` statement. Next, the test method verifies the results of the queueable job by querying the account that the job created.

```
@isTest
public class AsyncExecutionExampleTest {
    static testmethod void test1() {
        // startTest/stopTest block to force async processes
        //   to run in the test.
        Test.startTest();
        System.enqueueJob(new AsyncExecutionExample());
        Test.stopTest();

        // Validate that the job has run
        // by verifying that the record was created.
        // This query returns only the account created in test context by the
        // Queueable class method.
        Account acct = [SELECT Name,Phone FROM Account WHERE Name='Acme' LIMIT 1];
        System.assertNotEquals(null, acct);
        System.assertEquals('(415) 555-1212', acct.Phone);
```

```
    }
}
```

Note: The ID of a queueable Apex job isn't returned in test context—`System.enqueueJob` returns `null` in a running test.

QueueableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of the `execute()` method in a class that implements the `Queueable` interface and contains the job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

Namespace

System

QueueableContext Methods

The following are methods for `QueueableContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getJobId()
Returns the ID of the submitted job that uses the `Queueable` interface.

`getJobId()`

Returns the ID of the submitted job that uses the `Queueable` interface.

Signature

```
public ID getJobId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

The ID of the submitted job.

QuickAction Class

Use Apex to request and process actions on objects that allow custom fields, on objects that appear in a Chatter feed, or on objects that are available globally.

Namespace

System

Example

In this sample, the trigger determines if the new contacts to be inserted are created by a quick action. If so, it sets the `WhereFrom__c` custom field to a value that depends on whether the quick action is global or local to the contact. Otherwise, if the inserted contacts don't originate from a quick action, the `WhereFrom__c` field is set to `'NoAction'`.

```
trigger accTrig2 on Contact (before insert) {
    for (Contact c : Trigger.new) {
        if (c.getQuickActionName() == QuickAction.CreateContact) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'GlobaActionl';
        } else if (c.getQuickActionName() == Schema.Account.QuickAction.CreateContact) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'AccountAction';
        } else if (c.getQuickActionName() == null) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'NoAction';
        } else {
            System.assert(false);
        }
    }
}
```

This sample performs a global action—`QuickAction.CreateContact`–on the passed-in contact object.

```
public Id globalCreate(Contact c) {
    QuickAction.QuickActionRequest req = new QuickAction.QuickActionRequest();
    req.quickActionName = QuickAction.CreateContact;
    req.record = c;
    QuickAction.QuickActionResult res = QuickAction.performQuickAction(req);
    return c.id;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

QuickActionRequest Class

QuickActionResult Class

QuickAction Methods

The following are methods for `QuickAction`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

describeAvailableQuickActions(parentType)

Returns metadata information for the available quick actions of the provided parent object.

describeAvailableQuickActions(sObjectNames)

Returns the metadata information for the provided quick actions.

performQuickAction(quickActionRequest)

Performs the quick action specified in the quick action request and returns the action result.

performQuickAction(quickActionRequest, allOrNothing)

Performs the quick action specified in the quick action request with the option for partial success, and returns the result.

performQuickActions(quickActionRequests)

Performs the quick actions specified in the quick action request list and returns action results.

performQuickActions(quickActionRequests, allOrNothing)

Performs the quick actions specified in the quick action request list with the option for partial success, and returns action results.

describeAvailableQuickActions(parentType)

Returns metadata information for the available quick actions of the provided parent object.

Signature

```
public static List<QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult>
describeAvailableQuickActions(String parentType)
```

Parameters

parentType

Type: String

The parent object type. This can be an object type name ('Account') or 'Global' (meaning that this method is called at a global level and not an entity level).

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult>

The metadata information for the available quick actions of the parent object.

Example

```
// Called for Account entity.
List<QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult> result1 =
    QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActions('Account');

// Called at global level, not entity level.
List<QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActionResult> result2 =
    QuickAction.DescribeAvailableQuickActions('Global');
```

describeAvailableQuickActions(sObjectNames)

Returns the metadata information for the provided quick actions.

Signature

```
public static List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionResult>
describeAvailableQuickActions(List<String> sObjectNames)
```

Parameters

sObjectNames

Type: List<String>

The names of the quick actions. The quick action name can contain the entity name if it is at the entity level ('Account.QuickCreateContact'), or 'Global' if used for the action at the global level ('Global.CreateNewContact').

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionResult>

The metadata information for the provided quick actions.

Example

```
// First 3 parameter values are for actions at the entity level.
// Last parameter is for an action at the global level.
List<QuickAction.DescribeQuickActionResult> result =
    QuickAction.DescribeQuickActions(new List<String> {
        'Account.QuickCreateContact', 'Opportunity.Update1',
        'Contact.Create1', 'Global.CreateNewContact' });
```

performQuickAction(quickActionRequest)

Performs the quick action specified in the quick action request and returns the action result.

Signature

```
public static QuickAction.QuickActionResult
performQuickAction(QuickAction.QuickActionRequest quickActionRequest)
```

Parameters

quickActionRequest
Type: QuickAction.QuickActionRequest

Return Value

Type: QuickAction.QuickActionResult

performQuickAction(quickActionRequest, allOrNothing)

Performs the quick action specified in the quick action request with the option for partial success, and returns the result.

Signature

```
public static QuickAction.QuickActionResult
performQuickAction(QuickAction.QuickActionRequest quickActionRequest, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

quickActionRequest
Type: QuickAction.QuickActionRequest

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this argument and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: QuickAction.QuickActionResult

performQuickActions(quickActionRequests)

Performs the quick actions specified in the quick action request list and returns action results.

Signature

```
public static List<QuickAction.QuickActionResult>
performQuickActions(List<QuickAction.QuickActionRequest> quickActionRequests)
```

Parameters

quickActionRequests
Type: List<QuickAction.QuickActionRequest>

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.QuickActionResult>

performQuickActions(quickActionRequests, allOrNothing)

Performs the quick actions specified in the quick action request list with the option for partial success, and returns action results.

Signature

```
public static List<QuickAction.QuickActionResult>
performQuickActions(List<QuickAction.QuickActionRequest> quickActionRequests, Boolean
allOrNothing)
```

Parameters

quickActionRequests
Type: List<QuickAction.QuickActionRequest>

allOrNothing
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether this operation allows partial success. If you specify `false` for this argument and a record fails, the remainder of the DML operation can still succeed. This method returns a result object that can be used to verify which records succeeded, which failed, and why.

Return Value

Type: List<QuickAction.QuickActionResult>

Quiddity Enum

Specifies a Quiddity value used by the methods in the System.Request class

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `System.Quiddity` enum.

Value	Description
`ANONYMOUS`	Execution event is an anonymous Apex block.
`AURA`	Execution event is an Aura component.
`BATCH_ACS`	Execution event is an API Query Cursor driven batch Apex.
`BATCH_APEX`	Execution event is a batch Apex job.
`BATCH_CHUNK_PARALLEL`	Execution event is chunks of a batch Apex job running in parallel.
`BATCH_CHUNK_SERIAL`	Execution event is chunks of a batch Apex job running in serial.
`BULK_API`	Execution event is a bulk API request.
`COMMERCE_INTEGRATION`	Execution event is an Apex integration for B2B Commerce.
`DISCOVERABLE_LOGIN`	Execution event is Login Discoverable login page used by external users to log in to an Experience Cloud site.
`FUNCTION_CALLBACK`	Execution event is a callback function.
`FUTURE`	Execution event is a future method.
`INBOUND_EMAIL_SERVICE`	Execution event is an Apex inbound email service.
`INVOCABLE_ACTION`	Execution event is an invocable action.
`IOT`	Execution event is a Salesforce IOT Apex integration service.
`QUEUEABLE`	Execution event is a queueable Apex operation.
`QUICK_ACTION`	Execution event is a quick action.
`REMOTE_ACTION`	Execution event is a remote action.
`REST`	Execution event is an Apex RESTful Web service.
`RUNTEST_ASYNC`	Execution event is Apex tests running asynchronously.
`RUNTEST_DEPLOY`	Execution event is Apex tests run during deployment.
`RUNTEST_SYNC`	Execution event is Apex tests running synchronously.
`SCHEDULED`	Execution event is a scheduled Apex job.
`SOAP`	Execution event is an Apex SOAP Web service.
`SYNCHRONOUS`	Execution event is a synchronous Apex operation.
`TRANSACTION_FINALIZER_QUEUEABLE`	Execution event is a queueable job with transaction finalizers attached.

Value	Description
VF	Execution event is triggered by a Visualforce page.

RemoteObjectController

Use `RemoteObjectController` to access the standard Visualforce Remote Objects operations in your Remote Objects override methods.

Namespace

System

Usage

`RemoteObjectController` is supported only for use within Remote Objects methods. See "Overriding Default Remote Objects Operations" in the *Visualforce Developer's Guide* for examples of how to use `RemoteObjectController` with your Visualforce pages.

RemoteObjectController Methods

The following are methods for `RemoteObjectController`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

create(type, fields)
Create a record in the database.

del(type, recordIds)
Delete records from the database.

retrieve(type, fields, criteria)
Retrieve records from the database.

updat(type, recordIds, fields)
Update records in the database.

`create(type, fields)`

Create a record in the database.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> create(String type, Map<String,Object> fields)
```

Parameters

`type`
Type: String

The sObject type on which create is being called.

fields
Type: Map<String,Object>

The fields and values to set on the new record.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Object>

The return value is a map that represents the result of the Remote Objects operation. What is returned depends on the results of the call.

Success
A map that contains a single element with the ID of the record created. For example, `{ id: 'recordId' }`.

Failure
A map that contains a single element with the error message for the overall operation. For example, `{ error: 'errorMessage' }`.

del(type, recordIds)

Delete records from the database.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> del(String type, List<String> recordIds)
```

Parameters

type
Type: String

The sObject type on which delete is being called.

recordIds
Type: List<String>

The IDs of the records to be deleted.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Object>

The return value is a map that represents the result of the Remote Objects operation. What is returned depends on how the method was called and the results of the call.

Single Delete—Success
A map that contains a single element with the ID of the record that was deleted. For example, `{ id: 'recordId' }`.

Batch Delete—Success
A map that contains a single element, an array of Map<String,Object> elements. Each element contains the ID of a record that was deleted and an array of errors, if there were any, for that record's individual delete. For example, `{ results: [ { id: 'recordId', errors: ['errorMessage', ...]}, ...] }`.

Single and Batch Delete—Failure
A map that contains a single element with the error message for the overall operation. For example, `{ error: 'errorMessage' }`.

retrieve(type, fields, criteria)

Retrieve records from the database.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> retrieve(String type, List<String> fields,
Map<String,Object> criteria)
```

Parameters

type
Type: String

The sObject type on which retrieve is being called.

fields
Type: List<String>

The fields to retrieve for each record.

criteria
Type: Map<String,Object>

The criteria to use when performing the query.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Object>

The return value is a map that represents the result of the Remote Objects operation. What is returned depends on the results of the call.

Success
A map that contains the following elements.

- `records`: An array of records that match the query conditions.
- `type`: A string that indicates the type of the sObject that was retrieved.
- `size`: The number of records in the response.

Failure
A map that contains a single element with the error message for the overall operation. For example, `{ error: 'errorMessage' }`.

updat(type, recordIds, fields)

Update records in the database.

Signature

```
public static Map<String,Object> updat(String type, List<String> recordIds,
Map<String,Object> fields)
```

Parameters

type
Type: String

The sObject type on which update is being called.

recordIds
Type: List<String>

The IDs of the records to be updated.

fields
Type: Map<String,Object>

The fields to update, and the value to update each field with.

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Object>

The return value is a map that represents the result of the Remote Objects operation. What is returned depends on how the method was called and the results of the call.

Single Update—Success
A map that contains a single element with the ID of the record that was updated. For example, `{ id: 'recordId' }`.

Batch Update—Success
A map that contains a single element, an array of Map<String,Object> elements. Each element contains the ID of the record updated and an array of errors, if there were any, for that record's individual update. For example, `{ results: [ { id: 'recordId', errors: ['errorMessage', ...]}, ...] }`.

Single and Batch Update—Failure
A map that contains a single element with the error message for the overall operation. For example, `{ error: 'errorMessage' }`.

Request Class

Contains methods to obtain the request ID and Quiddity value of the current Salesforce request.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the Request class to detect the current Apex context at runtime. The methods in the Request class obtain a unique request ID and the Quiddity value that represent the current Apex execution type. These values can also be used to correlate with debug and event logs:

- The request ID is universally unique and present in the debug logs that are triggered by the request.
- The request ID and Quiddity values are the same as in the event log files of the Apex Execution event type used in Event Monitoring.

Example

This example code shows how to obtain current Apex code context by retrieving the request ID and Quiddity value of the current request.

```
//Get info about the current request
Request reqInfo = Request.getCurrent();

//Get the identifier for this request, which is universally unique
//Same as requestId in splunk or REQUEST_ID in event monitoring
String currentRequestId = reqInfo.getRequestId();

//Enum representing how Apex is running. e.g. BULK_API vs LIGHTNING
Quiddity currentType = reqInfo.getQuiddity();
//Use this with a switch statement,
//instead of checking System.isFuture() || System.isQueueable() || ...
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Request Methods

Request Methods

The following are methods for `Request`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getCurrent()
Returns the current Request object that contains the request ID and Quiddity value.

getQuiddity()
Returns the Quiddity value of the current Request object.

getRequestId()
Returns the request ID of the current Request object.

`getCurrent()`

Returns the current Request object that contains the request ID and Quiddity value.

Signature

```
public static System.Request getCurrent()
```

Return Value

Type: System.Request

`getQuiddity()`

Returns the Quiddity value of the current Request object.

Signature

```
public System.Quiddity getQuiddity()
```

Return Value

Type: System.Quiddity

Uses the values from the Quiddity enum. This value identifies the type of execution event associated with the current request.

`getRequestId()`

Returns the request ID of the current Request object.

Signature

```
public String getRequestId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

ResetPasswordResult Class

Represents the result of a password reset.

Namespace

System

ResetPasswordResult Methods

The following are instance methods for `ResetPasswordResult`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getPassword()
Returns the password generated by the `System.resetPassword` method call.

`getPassword()`

Returns the password generated by the `System.resetPassword` method call.

Signature

```
public String getPassword()
```

Return Value

Type: String

RestContext Class

Contains the `RestRequest` and `RestResponse` objects.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `System.RestContext` class to access the `RestRequest` and `RestResponse` objects in your Apex REST methods.

Sample

The following example shows how to use `RestContext` to access the `RestRequest` and `RestResponse` objects in an Apex REST method.

```
@RestResource(urlMapping='/MyRestContextExample/*')
global with sharing class MyRestContextExample {

    @HttpGet
    global static Account doGet() {
        RestRequest req = RestContext.request;
        RestResponse res = RestContext.response;
        String accountId = req.requestURI.substring(req.requestURI.lastIndexOf('/')+1);
        Account result = [SELECT Id, Name, Phone, Website FROM Account WHERE Id =
:accountId];
        return result;
    }

}
```

RestContext Properties

The following are properties for `RestContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

request

Returns the `RestRequest` for your Apex REST method.

response

Returns the `RestResponse` for your Apex REST method.

request

Returns the `RestRequest` for your Apex REST method.

Signature

```
public RestRequest request {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: System.RestRequest

`response`

Returns the `RestResponse` for your Apex REST method.

Signature

```
public RestResponse response {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: System.RestResponse

RestRequest Class

Use the `System.RestRequest` class to access and pass request data in a RESTful Apex method.

Namespace

System

Usage

An Apex RESTful Web service method is defined using one of the REST annotations. For more information about Apex RESTful Web service, see Exposing Apex Classes as REST Web Services.

Example: An Apex Class with REST Annotated Methods

The following example shows you how to implement the Apex REST API in Apex. This class exposes three methods that each handle a different HTTP request: GET, DELETE, and POST. You can call these annotated methods from a client by issuing HTTP requests.

```
@RestResource(urlMapping='/Account/*')
global with sharing class MyRestResource {

    @HttpDelete
    global static void doDelete() {
        RestRequest req = RestContext.request;
        RestResponse res = RestContext.response;
        String accountId = req.requestURI.substring(req.requestURI.lastIndexOf('/')+1);
        Account account = [SELECT Id FROM Account WHERE Id = :accountId];
        delete account;
    }

    @HttpGet
    global static Account doGet() {
        RestRequest req = RestContext.request;
        RestResponse res = RestContext.response;
        String accountId = req.requestURI.substring(req.requestURI.lastIndexOf('/')+1);
```

```
        Account result = [SELECT Id, Name, Phone, Website FROM Account WHERE Id =
:accountId];
        return result;
    }

  @HttpPost
    global static String doPost(String name,
        String phone, String website) {
        Account account = new Account();
        account.Name = name;
        account.phone = phone;
        account.website = website;
        insert account;
        return account.Id;
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

RestRequest Constructors

RestRequest Properties

RestRequest Methods

RestRequest Constructors

The following are constructors for `RestRequest`.

IN THIS SECTION:

RestRequest()

Creates a new instance of the `System.RestRequest` class.

`RestRequest()`

Creates a new instance of the `System.RestRequest` class.

Signature

```
public RestRequest()
```

RestRequest Properties

The following are properties for `RestRequest`.

Note: While the `RestRequest` List and Map properties are read-only, their contents are read-write. You can modify them by calling the collection methods directly or you can use of the associated `RestRequest` methods shown in the previous table.

IN THIS SECTION:

headers
Returns the headers that are received by the request.

httpMethod
Returns one of the supported HTTP request methods.

params
Returns the parameters that are received by the request.

remoteAddress
Returns the IP address of the client making the request.

requestBody
Returns or sets the body of the request.

requestURI
Returns or sets everything after the host in the HTTP request string.

resourcePath
Returns the REST resource path for the request.

headers

Returns the headers that are received by the request.

Signature

```
public Map<String, String> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, String>

httpMethod

Returns one of the supported HTTP request methods.

Signature

```
public String httpMethod {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Possible values returned:

- DELETE
- GET
- HEAD
- PATCH
- POST

- PUT

params

Returns the parameters that are received by the request.

Signature

```
public Map <String, String> params {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, String>

remoteAddress

Returns the IP address of the client making the request.

Signature

```
public String remoteAddress {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

requestBody

Returns or sets the body of the request.

Signature

```
public Blob requestBody {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Blob

Usage

If the Apex method has no parameters, then Apex REST copies the HTTP request body into the `RestRequest.requestBody` property. If there are parameters, then Apex REST attempts to deserialize the data into those parameters and the data won't be deserialized into the `RestRequest.requestBody` property.

requestURI

Returns or sets everything after the host in the HTTP request string.

Signature

```
public String requestURI {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Example

For example, if the request string is *https://instance.salesforce.com/services/apexrest/Account/* then the `requestURI` is */Account/*.

`resourcePath`

Returns the REST resource path for the request.

Signature

```
public String resourcePath {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

Example

For example, if the Apex REST class defines a `urlMapping` of `/MyResource/*`, the `resourcePath` property returns `/services/apexrest/MyResource/*`.

RestRequest Methods

The following are methods for `RestRequest`. All are instance methods.

Note: At runtime, you typically don't need to add a header or parameter to the `RestRequest` object because they are automatically deserialized into the corresponding properties. The following methods are intended for unit testing Apex REST classes. You can use them to add header or parameter values to the `RestRequest` object without having to recreate the REST method call.

IN THIS SECTION:

addHeader(name, value)
Adds a header to the request header map in an Apex test.

addParameter(name, value)
Adds a parameter to the request params map in an Apex test.

`addHeader(name, value)`

Adds a header to the request header map in an Apex test.

Signature

```
public Void addHeader(String name, String value)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is intended for unit testing of Apex REST classes.

The following headers aren't allowed:

- cookie
- set-cookie
- set-cookie2
- content-length
- authorization

If any of these headers are used, an Apex exception is thrown.

`addParameter(name, value)`

Adds a parameter to the request params map in an Apex test.

Signature

```
public Void addParameter(String name, String value)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method is intended for unit testing of Apex REST classes.

RestResponse Class

Represents an object used to pass data from an Apex RESTful Web service method to an HTTP response.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `System.RestResponse` class to pass response data from an Apex RESTful web service method that is defined using one of the REST annotations.

IN THIS SECTION:

RestResponse Constructors

RestResponse Properties

RestResponse Methods

RestResponse Constructors

The following are constructors for `RestResponse`.

IN THIS SECTION:

RestResponse()
Creates a new instance of the `System.RestResponse` class.

`RestResponse()`

Creates a new instance of the `System.RestResponse` class.

Signature

```
public RestResponse()
```

RestResponse Properties

The following are properties for `RestResponse`.

Note: While the `RestResponse` List and Map properties are read-only, their contents are read-write. You can modify them by calling the collection methods directly or you can use of the associated `RestResponse` methods shown in the previous table.

IN THIS SECTION:

responseBody
Returns or sets the body of the response.

headers
Returns the headers to be sent to the response.

statusCode
Returns or sets the response status code.

responseBody

Returns or sets the body of the response.

Signature

```
public Blob responseBody {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Blob

Usage

The response is either the serialized form of the method return value or it's the value of the `responseBody` property based on the following rules:

- If the method returns void, then Apex REST returns the response in the `responseBody` property.
- If the method returns a value, then Apex REST serializes the return value as the response.

headers

Returns the headers to be sent to the response.

Signature

```
public Map<String, String> headers {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, String>

statusCode

Returns or sets the response status code.

Signature

```
public Integer statuscode {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Integer

Status Codes

The following are valid response status codes. The status code is returned by the `RestResponse.statusCode` property.

Note: If you set the `RestResponse.statusCode` property to a value that's not listed in the table, then an HTTP status of 500 is returned with the error message "Invalid status code for HTTP response: nnn" where nnn is the invalid status code value.

Status Code	Description
200	OK
201	CREATED
202	ACCEPTED
204	NO_CONTENT
206	PARTIAL_CONTENT
300	MULTIPLE_CHOICES
301	MOVED_PERMANENTLY
302	FOUND
304	NOT_MODIFIED
400	BAD_REQUEST
401	UNAUTHORIZED
403	FORBIDDEN
404	NOT_FOUND
405	METHOD_NOT_ALLOWED
406	NOT_ACCEPTABLE
409	CONFLICT
410	GONE
412	PRECONDITION_FAILED
413	REQUEST_ENTITY_TOO_LARGE
414	REQUEST_URI_TOO_LARGE
415	UNSUPPORTED_MEDIA_TYPE
417	EXPECTATION_FAILED
500	INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR
503	SERVER_UNAVAILABLE

RestResponse Methods

The following are instance methods for `RestResponse`.

Note: At runtime, you typically don't need to add a header to the `RestResponse` object because it's automatically deserialized into the corresponding properties. The following methods are intended for unit testing Apex REST classes. You can use them to add header or parameter values to the `RestRequest` object without having to recreate the REST method call.

IN THIS SECTION:

addHeader(name, value)
Adds a header to the response header map.

addHeader(name, value)

Adds a header to the response header map.

Signature

```
public Void addHeader(String name, String value)
```

Parameters

name
Type: String

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The following headers aren't allowed:

- cookie
- set-cookie
- set-cookie2
- content-length
- authorization

If any of these headers are used, an Apex exception is thrown.

SandboxPostCopy Interface

To make your sandbox environment business ready, automate data manipulation or business logic tasks. Extend this interface and add methods to perform post-copy tasks, then specify the class during sandbox creation.

Namespace

System

Usage

Create an Apex class that implements this interface. Specify your class during sandbox creation. After your sandbox is created, the `runApexClass(context)` method in your class runs using the automated process user's permissions.

Important: The SandboxPostCopy Apex class is executed at the end of the sandbox copy using a special Automated Process user that isn't visible within the org. This user doesn't have access to all object and features; therefore, the Apex script cannot access all objects and features. If the script fails, run the script after sandbox activation as a user with appropriate permissions.

IN THIS SECTION:

SandboxPostCopy Methods

SandboxPostCopy Example Implementation
These examples show a simple implementation of the SandboxPostCopy interface and a test for that implementation. To test your SandboxPostCopy implementation, use the `System.Test.testSandboxPostCopyScript()` method.

SEE ALSO:

Tooling API: SandboxInfo

Tooling API: SandboxInfo

SandboxPostCopy Methods

The following method is for `SandboxPostCopy`.

IN THIS SECTION:

runApexClass(context)
Executes actions in a new sandbox to prepare it for use. For example, add logic to this method to create users, run sanitizing code on records, and perform other setup tasks.

`runApexClass(context)`

Executes actions in a new sandbox to prepare it for use. For example, add logic to this method to create users, run sanitizing code on records, and perform other setup tasks.

Signature

```
public void runApexClass(System.SandboxContext context)
```

Parameters

context
Type: System.SandboxContext

The org ID, sandbox ID, and sandbox name for your sandbox. To work with these values, reference `context.organizationId()`, `context.sandboxId()`, and `context.sandboxName()` in your code.

Return Value

Type: void

SandboxPostCopy Example Implementation

These examples show a simple implementation of the SandboxPostCopy interface and a test for that implementation. To test your SandboxPostCopy implementation, use the `System.Test.testSandboxPostCopyScript()` method.

Important: The SandboxPostCopy Apex class is executed at the end of the sandbox copy using a special Automated Process user that isn't visible within the org. This user doesn't have access to all object and features; therefore, the Apex script cannot access all objects and features. If the script fails, run the script after sandbox activation as a user with appropriate permissions.

This is an example implementation of the `System.SandboxPostCopy` interface.

```
global class PrepareMySandbox implements SandboxPostCopy {
    global void runApexClass(SandboxContext context) {
        System.debug('Org ID: ' + context.organizationId());
        System.debug('Sandbox ID: ' + context.sandboxId());
        System.debug('Sandbox Name: ' + context.sandboxName());

        // Insert logic here to prepare the sandbox for use.
    }
}
```

The following example tests the implementation using the `System.Test.testSandboxPostCopyScript()` method. This method takes four parameters: a reference to a class that implements the SandboxPostCopy interface, and the three fields on the context object that you pass to the `runApexClass(context)` method.

```
@isTest
class PrepareMySandboxTest {

    @isTest
    static void testMySandboxPrep() {
       // Insert logic here to create records of the objects that the class you're testing

        // manipulates.

        Test.startTest();

        Test.testSandboxPostCopyScript(
            new PrepareMySandbox(), UserInfo.getOrganizationId(),
                UserInfo.getOrganizationId(), UserInfo.getOrganizationName());

        Test.stopTest();

        // Insert assert statements here to check that the records you created above have

        // the values you expect.
    }
}
```

For more information on testing, see Testing Apex.

Schedulable Interface

The class that implements this interface can be scheduled to run at different intervals.

Namespace

System

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Scheduler

Schedulable Methods

The following are methods for `Schedulable`.

IN THIS SECTION:

execute(context)
Executes the scheduled Apex job.

`execute(context)`

Executes the scheduled Apex job.

Signature

```
public Void execute(SchedulableContext context)
```

Parameters

`context`
Type: System.SchedulableContext

Contains the job ID.

Return Value

Type: Void

SchedulableContext Interface

Represents the parameter type of a method in a class that implements the `Schedulable` interface and contains the scheduled job ID. This interface is implemented internally by Apex.

Namespace

System

SEE ALSO:

Schedulable Interface

SchedulableContext Methods

The following are methods for `SchedulableContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getTriggerId()
Returns the ID of the CronTrigger scheduled job.

`getTriggerId()`

Returns the ID of the CronTrigger scheduled job.

Signature

```
public Id getTriggerId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

Schema Class

Contains methods for obtaining schema describe information.

Namespace

System

Schema Methods

The following are methods for `Schema`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getGlobalDescribe()
Returns a map of all sObject names (keys) to sObject tokens (values) for the standard and custom objects defined in your organization.

describeDataCategoryGroups(sObjectNames)
Returns a list of the category groups associated with the specified objects.

describeSObjects(sObjectTypes)
Describes metadata (field list and object properties) for the specified sObject or array of sObjects.

describeSObjects(SObjectTypes, SObjectDescribeOptions)
Describes metadata such as field list and object properties for the specified list of SObjects. The default describe option for this method is SObjectDescribeOptions.DEFERRED, which indicates lazy initialization of describe attributes on first use.

describeTabs()
Returns information about the standard and custom apps available to the running user.

GroupStructures(pairs)
Returns available category groups along with their data category structure for objects specified in the request.

getGlobalDescribe()

Returns a map of all sObject names (keys) to sObject tokens (values) for the standard and custom objects defined in your organization.

Signature

```
public static Map<String, Schema.SObjectType> getGlobalDescribe()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, Schema.SObjectType>

Usage

For more information on accessing SObjects, see Accessing All sObjects.

Example

```
Map<String, Schema.SObjectType> gd =
Schema.getGlobalDescribe();
```

describeDataCategoryGroups(sObjectNames)

Returns a list of the category groups associated with the specified objects.

Signature

```
public static List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult>
describeDataCategoryGroups(List<String> sObjectNames)
```

Parameters

sObjectNames
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupResult>

Usage

You can specify one of the following sObject names:

- KnowledgeArticleVersion—to retrieve category groups associated with article types.
- Question—to retrieve category groups associated with questions.

For more information and code examples using describeDataCategoryGroups, see Accessing All Data Categories Associated with an sObject.

For additional information about articles and questions, see "Work with Articles and Translations" in the Salesforce online help.

describeSObjects(sObjectTypes)

Describes metadata (field list and object properties) for the specified sObject or array of sObjects.

Signature

```
public static List<Schema.DescribeSObjectResult> describeSObjects(List<String>
sObjectTypes)
```

Parameters

sObjectTypes
Type: List<String>

The *sObjectTypes* argument is a list of sObject type names you want to describe.

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeSObjectResult>

Usage

This method is similar to the `getDescribe` method on the `Schema.sObjectType` token. Unlike the `getDescribe` method, this method allows you to specify the sObject type dynamically and describe more than one sObject at a time.

You can first call `getGlobalDescribe` to retrieve a list of all objects for your organization, then iterate through the list and use `describeSObjects` to obtain metadata about individual objects.

Example

```
Schema.DescribeSObjectResult[] descResult = Schema.describeSObjects(
                                                                    new
String[]{'Account','Contact'});
```

describeSObjects(SObjectTypes, SObjectDescribeOptions)

Describes metadata such as field list and object properties for the specified list of SObjects. The default describe option for this method is SObjectDescribeOptions.DEFERRED, which indicates lazy initialization of describe attributes on first use.

Signature

```
public static List<Schema.DescribeSObjectResult> describeSObjects(List<String>
SObjectTypes, Object SObjectDescribeOptions)
```

Parameters

SObjectTypes
Type: List<String>

The list of SObject types to describe.

SObjectDescribeOptions
Type: Object

The effective describe option used for the SObject.

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeSObjectResult>

describeTabs()

Returns information about the standard and custom apps available to the running user.

Signature

```
public static List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult> describeTabs()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult>

Usage

An app is a group of tabs that works as a unit to provide application functionality. For example, two of the standard Salesforce apps are "Sales" and "Service."

The `describeTabs` method returns the minimum required metadata that can be used to render apps in another user interface. Typically, this call is used by partner applications to render Salesforce data in another user interface, such as in a mobile or connected app.

In the Salesforce user interface, users have access to standard apps (and might also have access to custom apps) as listed in the Salesforce app menu at the top of the page. Selecting an app name in the menu allows the user to switch between the listed apps at any time.

Note: The "All Tabs" tab isn't included in the list of described tabs.

Example

This example shows how to call the `describeTabs` method.

```
Schema.DescribeTabSetResult[] tabSetDesc = Schema.describeTabs();
```

This is a longer example that shows how to obtain describe metadata information for the Sales app. For each tab, the example gets describe information, such as the icon URL, whether the tab is custom or not, and colors. The describe information is written to the debug output.

```
// Get tab set describes for each app
List<Schema.DescribeTabSetResult> tabSetDesc = Schema.describeTabs();

// Iterate through each tab set describe for each app and display the info
for(DescribeTabSetResult tsr : tabSetDesc) {
    String appLabel = tsr.getLabel();
    System.debug('Label: ' + appLabel);
    System.debug('Logo URL: ' + tsr.getLogoUrl());
    System.debug('isSelected: ' + tsr.isSelected());
```

```
    String ns = tsr.getNamespace();
    if (ns == '') {
        System.debug('The ' + appLabel + ' app has no namespace defined.');
    }
    else {
        System.debug('Namespace: ' + ns);
    }

    // Display tab info for the Sales app
    if (appLabel == 'Sales') {
        List<Schema.DescribeTabResult> tabDesc = tsr.getTabs();
        System.debug('-- Tab information for the Sales app --');
        for(Schema.DescribeTabResult tr : tabDesc) {
            System.debug('getLabel: ' + tr.getLabel());
            System.debug('getColors: ' + tr.getColors());
            System.debug('getIconUrl: ' + tr.getIconUrl());
            System.debug('getIcons: ' + tr.getIcons());
            System.debug('getMiniIconUrl: ' + tr.getMiniIconUrl());
            System.debug('getSobjectName: ' + tr.getSobjectName());
            System.debug('getUrl: ' + tr.getUrl());
            System.debug('isCustom: ' + tr.isCustom());
        }
    }
}

// Example debug statement output
// DEBUG|Label: Sales
// DEBUG|Logo URL: https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/seasonLogos/2014_winter_aloha.png
// DEBUG|isSelected: true
// DEBUG|The Sales app has no namespace defined.// DEBUG|-- Tab information for the Sales
 app --
// (This is an example debug output for the Accounts tab.)
// DEBUG|getLabel: Accounts
// DEBUG|getColors:
(Schema.DescribeColorResult[getColor=236FBD;getContext=primary;getTheme=theme4;],
//       Schema.DescribeColorResult[getColor=236FBD;getContext=primary;getTheme=theme3;],

//       Schema.DescribeColorResult[getColor=236FBD;getContext=primary;getTheme=theme2;])
// DEBUG|getIconUrl: https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/icon/accounts32.png
// DEBUG|getIcons:
(Schema.DescribeIconResult[getContentType=image/png;getHeight=32;getTheme=theme3;
//      getUrl=https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/icon/accounts32.png;getWidth=32;],

//       Schema.DescribeIconResult[getContentType=image/png;getHeight=16;getTheme=theme3;
//      getUrl=https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/icon/accounts16.png;getWidth=16;])
// DEBUG|getMiniIconUrl: https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/img/icon/accounts16.png
// DEBUG|getSobjectName: Account
// DEBUG|getUrl: https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/001/o
// DEBUG|isCustom: false
```

GroupStructures(pairs)

Returns available category groups along with their data category structure for objects specified in the request.

Signature

```
public static List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult> describeDataCategory
GroupStructures(List<Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair> pairs)
```

Parameters

pairs

Type: List<Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePair>

The *pairs* argument is one or more category groups and objects to query Schema.DataCategoryGroupSobjectTypePairs. Visible data categories are retrieved for the specified object. For more information on data category group visibility, see "Data Category Visibility" in the Salesforce online help.

Return Value

Type: List<Schema.DescribeDataCategoryGroupStructureResult>

Search Class

Use the methods of the Search class to perform dynamic SOSL queries.

Namespace

System

Search Methods

The following are static methods for `Search`.

IN THIS SECTION:

find(searchQuery)

Performs a dynamic SOSL query that can include the SOSL `WITH SNIPPET` clause. Snippets provide more context for users in Salesforce Knowledge article search results.

query(query)

Performs a dynamic SOSL query.

suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, suggestions)

Returns a list of records or Salesforce Knowledge articles whose names or titles match the user's search query string. Use this method to provide users with shortcuts to navigate to relevant records or articles before they perform a search.

`find(searchQuery)`

Performs a dynamic SOSL query that can include the SOSL `WITH SNIPPET` clause. Snippets provide more context for users in Salesforce Knowledge article search results.

Signature

```
public static Search.SearchResults find(String searchQuery)
```

Parameters

searchQuery
Type: String

A SOSL query string.

Return Value

Type: Search.SearchResults

Usage

Use this method wherever a static SOSL query can be used, such as in regular assignment statements and `for` loops.

See Use Dynamic SOSL to Return Snippets.

SEE ALSO:

get(sObjectType)

Apex Developer Guide: Dynamic SOSL

query(query)

Performs a dynamic SOSL query.

Signature

```
public static sObject[sObject[]] query(String query)
```

Parameters

query
Type: String

A SOSL query string.

To create a SOSL query that includes the `WITH SNIPPET` clause, use the Search.find(String searchQuery) method instead.

Return Value

Type: sObject[sObject[]]

Usage

This method can be used wherever a static SOSL query can be used, such as in regular assignment statements and `for` loops.

For more information, see Dynamic SOSL.

suggest(searchQuery, sObjectType, suggestions)

Returns a list of records or Salesforce Knowledge articles whose names or titles match the user's search query string. Use this method to provide users with shortcuts to navigate to relevant records or articles before they perform a search.

Signature

```
public static Search.SuggestionResults suggest(String searchQuery, String sObjectType,
Search.SuggestionOption suggestions)
```

Parameters

searchQuery
Type: String

A SOSL query string.

sObjectType
Type: String

An sObject type.

options
Type: Search.SuggestionOption

This object contains options that change the suggestion results.

If the *searchQuery* returns KnowledgeArticleVersion objects, pass an *options* parameter with a Search.SuggestionOption object that contains a language KnowledgeSuggestionFilter and a publish status KnowledgeSuggestionFilter.

For suggestions for all other record types, the only supported option is a limit, which sets the maximum number of suggestions returned.

Return Value

Type: SuggestionResults

Usage

Use this method to return:

Suggestions for Salesforce Knowledge articles (KnowledgeArticleVersion)
Salesforce Knowledge must be enabled in your organization. The user must have the "View Articles" permission enabled.

The articles suggested include only the articles the user can access, based on the data categories and article types the user has permissions to view.

Suggestions for other record types
The records suggested include only the records the user can access.

This method returns a record if its name field starts with the text in the search string. This method automatically appends an asterisk wildcard (*) at the end of the search string. Records that contain the search string within a word aren't considered a match.

Records are suggested if the entire search string is found in the record name, in the same order as specified in the search string. For example, the text string *national u* is treated as *national u** and returns "National Utility" and "National Urban Company" but not "National Company Utility" or "Urban National Company".

Note: If the user's search query contains quotation marks or wildcards, those symbols are automatically removed from the query string in the URI.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Suggest Salesforce Knowledge Articles

Security Class

Contains methods to securely implement Apex applications.

Namespace

System

Usage

In the context of the current user's create, read, update, or upsert access permission, use the Security class methods to:

- Strip fields that aren't visible from query and subquery results
- Remove inaccessible fields before a DML operation without causing an exception
- Sanitize SObjects that have been deserialized from an untrusted source

IN THIS SECTION:

Security Methods

Security Methods

The following are methods for `Security`.

IN THIS SECTION:

stripInaccessible(accessCheckType, sourceRecords, enforceRootObjectCRUD)
Creates a list of sObjects from the source records, which are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security checks for the current user. The method also provides an option to enforce an object-level access check.

stripInaccessible(accessCheckType, sourceRecords)
Creates a list of sObjects from the source records, which are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security checks for the current user.

`stripInaccessible(accessCheckType, sourceRecords, enforceRootObjectCRUD)`

Creates a list of sObjects from the source records, which are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security checks for the current user. The method also provides an option to enforce an object-level access check.

Signature

```
public static System.SObjectAccessDecision stripInaccessible(System.AccessType
accessCheckType, List<SObject> sourceRecords, Boolean enforceRootObjectCRUD)
```

Parameters

`accessCheckType`
Type: System.AccessType

Uses values from the AccessType enum. This parameter determines the type of field-level access check to be performed. To check the current user's field-level access, use the Schema.DescribeFieldResult methods —`isCreatable()`, `isAccessible()`, or `isUpdatable()`.

`sourceRecords`
Type: List<SObject>

A list of sObjects to be checked for fields that aren't accessible in the context of the current user's operation.

`enforceRootObjectCRUD`
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether an object-level access check is performed. If this parameter is set to `true` and the access check fails, the method throws an exception. The default value of this optional parameter is `true`.

Return Value

Type: System.SObjectAccessDecision

Example

In this example, the user doesn't have permission to create the `Probability` field of an Opportunity.

```
List<Opportunity> opportunities = new List<Opportunity>{
    new Opportunity(Name='Opportunity1'),
    new Opportunity(Name='Opportunity2', Probability=95)
};

// Strip fields that are not creatable
SObjectAccessDecision decision = Security.stripInaccessible(
    AccessType.CREATABLE,
    opportunities);

// Print stripped records
for (SObject strippedOpportunity : decision.getRecords()) {
    System.debug(strippedOpportunity);
}

// Print modified indexes
System.debug(decision.getModifiedIndexes());

// Print removed fields
System.debug(decision.getRemovedFields());

//Lines from output log
//|DEBUG|Opportunity:{Name=Opportunity1}
//|DEBUG|Opportunity:{Name=Opportunity2}
//|DEBUG|{1}
//|DEBUG|{Opportunity={Probability}}
```

`stripInaccessible(accessCheckType, sourceRecords)`

Creates a list of sObjects from the source records, which are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security checks for the current user.

Signature

```
public static System.SObjectAccessDecision stripInaccessible(System.AccessType
accessCheckType, List<SObject> sourceRecords)
```

Parameters

accessCheckType
Type: System.AccessType

Uses values from the AccessType enum. This parameter determines the type of field-level access check to be performed. To check the current user's field-level access, use the Schema.DescribeFieldResult methods —`isCreatable()`, `isAccessible()`, or `isUpdatable()`.

sourceRecords
Type: List<SObject>

A list of sObjects to be checked for fields that aren't accessible in the context of the current user's operation.

Return Value

Type: System.SObjectAccessDecision

Example

In this example, the user doesn't have permission to read the `ActualCost` field of a Campaign.

```
List<Campaign> campaigns = new List<Campaign>{
    new Campaign(Name='Campaign1', BudgetedCost=1000, ActualCost=2000),
    new Campaign(Name='Campaign2', BudgetedCost=4000, ActualCost=1500)
};
insert campaigns;

// Strip fields that are not readable
SObjectAccessDecision decision = Security.stripInaccessible(
    AccessType.READABLE,
    [SELECT Name, BudgetedCost, ActualCost from Campaign]);

// Print stripped records
for (SObject strippedCampaign : decision.getRecords()) {
    System.debug(strippedCampaign); // Does not display ActualCost
}

// Print modified indexes
System.debug(decision.getModifiedIndexes());

// Print removed fields
System.debug(decision.getRemovedFields());

//Lines from output log
//|DEBUG|Campaign:{Name=Campaign1, BudgetedCost=1000, Id=701xx00000011nhAAA}
//|DEBUG|Campaign:{Name=Campaign2, BudgetedCost=4000, Id=701xx00000011niAAA}
//|DEBUG|{0, 1}
//|DEBUG|{Campaign={ActualCost}}
```

SelectOption Class

A `SelectOption` object specifies one of the possible values for a Visualforce `selectCheckboxes`, `selectList`, or `selectRadio` component.

Namespace

System

`SelectOption` consists of a label that is displayed to the end user, and a value that is returned to the controller if the option is selected. A `SelectOption` can also be displayed in a disabled state, so that a user cannot select it as an option, but can still view it.

Instantiation

In a custom controller or controller extension, you can instantiate a SelectOption in one of the following ways:

- ```
  SelectOption option = new SelectOption(value, label, isDisabled);
  ```

  where *`value`* is the String that is returned to the controller if the option is selected by a user, *`label`* is the String that is displayed to the user as the option choice, and *`isDisabled`* is a Boolean that, if true, specifies that the user cannot select the option, but can still view it.

- ```
  SelectOption option = new SelectOption(value, label);
  ```

  where *`value`* is the String that is returned to the controller if the option is selected by a user, and *`label`* is the String that is displayed to the user as the option choice. Because a value for *`isDisabled`* is not specified, the user can both view and select the option.

Example

The following example shows how a list of SelectOptions objects can be used to provide possible values for a `selectCheckboxes` component on a Visualforce page. In the following custom controller, the `getItems` method defines and returns the list of possible SelectOption objects:

```
public class sampleCon {

  String[] countries = new String[]{};

  public PageReference test() {
    return null;
  }

  public List<SelectOption> getItems() {
    List<SelectOption> options = new List<SelectOption>();
    options.add(new SelectOption('US','US'));
    options.add(new SelectOption('CANADA','Canada'));
    options.add(new SelectOption('MEXICO','Mexico'));
    return options;
   }

  public String[] getCountries() {
     return countries;
  }
```

```
  public void setCountries(String[] countries) {
    this.countries = countries;
  }

}
```

In the following page markup, the `<apex:selectOptions>` tag uses the `getItems` method from the controller above to retrieve the list of possible values. Because `<apex:selectOptions>` is a child of the `<apex:selectCheckboxes>` tag, the options are displayed as checkboxes:

```
 <apex:page controller="sampleCon">
  <apex:form>
    <apex:selectCheckboxes value="{!countries}">
      <apex:selectOptions value="{!items}"/>
    </apex:selectCheckboxes><br/>
    <apex:commandButton value="Test" action="{!test}" rerender="out" status="status"/>
  </apex:form>
  <apex:outputPanel id="out">
    <apex:actionstatus id="status" startText="testing...">
      <apex:facet name="stop">
        <apex:outputPanel>
          <p>You have selected:</p>
          <apex:dataList value="{!countries}" var="c">{!c}</apex:dataList>
        </apex:outputPanel>
      </apex:facet>
    </apex:actionstatus>
  </apex:outputPanel>
</apex:page>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

SelectOption Constructors

SelectOption Methods

SelectOption Constructors

The following are constructors for `SelectOption`.

IN THIS SECTION:

SelectOption(value, label)

Creates a new instance of the `SelectOption` class using the specified value and label.

SelectOption(value, label, isDisabled)

Creates a new instance of the `SelectOption` class using the specified value, label, and disabled setting.

`SelectOption(value, label)`

Creates a new instance of the `SelectOption` class using the specified value and label.

Signature

```
public SelectOption(String value, String label)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

The string that is returned to the Visualforce controller if the option is selected by a user.

label
Type: String

The string that is displayed to the user as the option choice.

`SelectOption(value, label, isDisabled)`

Creates a new instance of the `SelectOption` class using the specified value, label, and disabled setting.

Signature

```
public SelectOption(String value, String label, Boolean isDisabled)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

The string that is returned to the Visualforce controller if the option is selected by a user.

label
Type: String

The string that is displayed to the user as the option choice.

isDisabled
Type: Boolean

If set to true, the option can't be selected by the user but can still be viewed.

SelectOption Methods

The following are methods for `SelectOption`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDisabled()
Returns the current value of the SelectOption object's `isDisabled` attribute.

getEscapeItem()
Returns the current value of the SelectOption object's `itemEscaped` attribute.

getLabel()
Returns the option label that is displayed to the user.

getValue()
Returns the option value that is returned to the controller if a user selects the option.

setDisabled(isDisabled)
Sets the value of the SelectOption object's `isDisabled` attribute.

setEscapeItem(itemsEscaped)
Sets the value of the SelectOption object's `itemEscaped` attribute.

setLabel(label)
Sets the value of the option label that is displayed to the user.

setValue(value)
Sets the value of the option value that is returned to the controller if a user selects the option.

`getDisabled()`

Returns the current value of the SelectOption object's `isDisabled` attribute.

Signature

```
public Boolean getDisabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If `isDisabled` is set to `true`, the user can view the option, but cannot select it. If `isDisabled` is set to `false`, the user can both view and select the option.

`getEscapeItem()`

Returns the current value of the SelectOption object's `itemEscaped` attribute.

Signature

```
public Boolean getEscapeItem()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If `itemEscaped` is set to `true`, sensitive HTML and XML characters are escaped in the HTML output generated by this component. If `itemEscaped` is set to `false`, items are rendered as written.

`getLabel()`

Returns the option label that is displayed to the user.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getValue()

Returns the option value that is returned to the controller if a user selects the option.

Signature

```
public String getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setDisabled(isDisabled)

Sets the value of the SelectOption object's `isDisabled` attribute.

Signature

```
public Void setDisabled(Boolean isDisabled)
```

Parameters

`isDisabled`
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If `isDisabled` is set to `true`, the user can view the option, but cannot select it. If `isDisabled` is set to `false`, the user can both view and select the option.

setEscapeItem(itemsEscaped)

Sets the value of the SelectOption object's `itemEscaped` attribute.

Signature

```
public Void setEscapeItem(Boolean itemsEscaped)
```

Parameters

itemsEscaped
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If `itemEscaped` is set to `true`, sensitive HTML and XML characters are escaped in the HTML output generated by this component. If `itemEscaped` is set to `false`, items are rendered as written.

`setLabel(label)`

Sets the value of the option label that is displayed to the user.

Signature

```
public Void setLabel(String label)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setValue(value)`

Sets the value of the option value that is returned to the controller if a user selects the option.

Signature

```
public Void setValue(String value)
```

Parameters

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Set Class

Represents a collection of unique elements with no duplicate values.

Namespace

System

Usage

The Set methods work on a set, that is, an unordered collection of elements that was initialized using the `set` keyword. Set elements can be of any data type—primitive types, collections, sObjects, user-defined types, and built-in Apex types. Set methods are all instance methods, that is, they all operate on a particular instance of a Set. The following are the instance methods for sets.

Note:

- Uniqueness of set elements of user-defined types is determined by the `equals` and `hashCode` methods, which you provide in your classes. Uniqueness of all other non-primitive types is determined by comparing the objects' fields.
- If the set contains String elements, the elements are case-sensitive. Two set elements that differ only by case are considered distinct.

For more information on sets, see Sets.

IN THIS SECTION:

Set Constructors

Set Methods

Set Constructors

The following are constructors for `Set`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Set<T>()

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class. A set can hold elements of any data type T.

Set<T>(setToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class by copying the elements of the specified set. T is the data type of the elements in both sets and can be any data type.

Set<T>(listToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class by coping the list elements. T is the data type of the elements in the set and list and can be any data type.

`Set<T>()`

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class. A set can hold elements of any data type T.

Signature

```
public Set<T>()
```

Example

```
// Create a set of strings
Set<String> s1 = new Set<String>();
// Add two strings to it
s1.add('item1');
s1.add('item2');
```

Set<T>(setToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class by copying the elements of the specified set. T is the data type of the elements in both sets and can be any data type.

Signature

```
public Set<T>(Set<T> setToCopy)
```

Parameters

setToCopy
Type: Set<T>

The set to initialize this set with.

Example

```
Set<String> s1 = new Set<String>();
s1.add('item1');
s1.add('item2');
Set<String> s2 = new Set<String>(s1);
// The set elements in s2 are copied from s1
System.debug(s2);
```

Set<T>(listToCopy)

Creates a new instance of the `Set` class by coping the list elements. T is the data type of the elements in the set and list and can be any data type.

Signature

```
public Set<T>(List<T> listToCopy)
```

Parameters

listToCopy
Type: Integer

The list to copy the elements of into this set.

Example

```
List<Integer> ls = new List<Integer>();
ls.add(1);
ls.add(2);
// Create a set based on a list
Set<Integer> s1 = new Set<Integer>(ls);
// Elements are copied from the list to this set
System.debug(s1);// DEBUG|{1, 2}
```

Set Methods

The following are methods for `Set`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

add(setElement)

Adds an element to the set if it is not already present.

addAll(fromList)

Adds all of the elements in the specified list to the set if they are not already present.

addAll(fromSet)

Adds all of the elements in the specified set to the set that calls the method if they are not already present.

clear()

Removes all of the elements from the set.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the set.

contains(setElement)

Returns `true` if the set contains the specified element.

containsAll(listToCompare)

Returns `true` if the set contains all of the elements in the specified list. The list must be of the same type as the set that calls the method.

containsAll(setToCompare)

Returns `true` if the set contains all of the elements in the specified set. The specified set must be of the same type as the original set that calls the method.

equals(set2)

Compares this set with the specified set and returns `true` if both sets are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

hashCode()

Returns the hashcode corresponding to this set and its contents.

isEmpty()

Returns `true` if the set has zero elements.

remove(setElement)

Removes the specified element from the set if it is present.

removeAll(listOfElementsToRemove)

Removes the elements in the specified list from the set if they are present.

removeAll(setOfElementsToRemove)
Removes the elements in the specified set from the original set if they are present.

retainAll(listOfElementsToRetain)
Retains only the elements in this set that are contained in the specified list.

retainAll(setOfElementsToRetain)
Retains only the elements in the original set that are contained in the specified set.

size()
Returns the number of elements in the set (its cardinality).

toString()
Returns the string representation of the set.

add(setElement)

Adds an element to the set if it is not already present.

Signature

```
public Boolean add(Object setElement)
```

Parameters

setElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method returns true if the original set changed as a result of the call. For example:

```
Set<String> myString = new Set<String>{'a', 'b', 'c'};
Boolean result = myString.add('d');
System.assertEquals(true, result);
```

addAll(fromList)

Adds all of the elements in the specified list to the set if they are not already present.

Signature

```
public Boolean addAll(List<Object> fromList)
```

Parameters

fromList
Type: List

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *union* of the list and the set. The list must be of the same type as the set that calls the method.

addAll(fromSet)

Adds all of the elements in the specified set to the set that calls the method if they are not already present.

Signature

```
public Boolean addAll(Set<Object> fromSet)
```

Parameters

fromSet
Type: Set<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

This method returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *union* of the two sets. The specified set must be of the same type as the original set that calls the method.

Example

```
Set<String> myString = new Set<String>{'a', 'b'};
Set<String> sString = new Set<String>{'c'};

Boolean result1 = myString.addAll(sString);
System.assertEquals(true, result1);
```

clear()

Removes all of the elements from the set.

Signature

```
public Void clear()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the set.

Signature

```
public Set<Object> clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Set (of same type)

contains(setElement)

Returns `true` if the set contains the specified element.

Signature

```
public Boolean contains(Object setElement)
```

Parameters

setElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Set<String> myString = new Set<String>{'a', 'b'};
Boolean result = myString.contains('z');
System.assertEquals(false, result);
```

containsAll(listToCompare)

Returns `true` if the set contains all of the elements in the specified list. The list must be of the same type as the set that calls the method.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsAll(List<Object> listToCompare)
```

Parameters

listToCompare
Type: List<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

containsAll(setToCompare)

Returns `true` if the set contains all of the elements in the specified set. The specified set must be of the same type as the original set that calls the method.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsAll(Set<Object> setToCompare)
```

Parameters

setToCompare
Type: Set<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Set<String> myString = new Set<String>{'a', 'b'};
Set<String> sString = new Set<String>{'c'};
Set<String> rString = new Set<String>{'a', 'b', 'c'};

Boolean result1, result2;
result1 = myString.addAll(sString);
system.assertEquals(true, result1);

result2 = myString.containsAll(rString);
System.assertEquals(true, result2);
```

equals(set2)

Compares this set with the specified set and returns `true` if both sets are equal; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Set<Object> set2)
```

Parameters

set2
Type: Set<Object>

The *set2* argument is the set to compare this set with.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Two sets are equal if their elements are equal, regardless of their order. The `==` operator is used to compare the elements of the sets.

The `==` operator is equivalent to calling the `equals` method, so you can call `set1.equals(set2);` instead of `set1 == set2;`.

hashCode()

Returns the hashcode corresponding to this set and its contents.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

isEmpty()

Returns `true` if the set has zero elements.

Signature

```
public Boolean isEmpty()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Set<Integer> mySet = new Set<Integer>();
Boolean result = mySet.isEmpty();
System.assertEquals(true, result);
```

remove(setElement)

Removes the specified element from the set if it is present.

Signature

```
public Boolean remove(Object setElement)
```

Parameters

setElement
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

removeAll(listOfElementsToRemove)

Removes the elements in the specified list from the set if they are present.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeAll(List<Object> listOfElementsToRemove)
```

Parameters

listOfElementsToRemove
Type: List<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *relative complement* of the two sets. The list must be of the same type as the set that calls the method.

Example

```
Set<integer> mySet = new Set<integer>{1, 2, 3};
List<integer> myList = new List<integer>{1, 3};
Boolean result = mySet.removeAll(myList);
System.assertEquals(true, result);
Integer result2 = mySet.size();
System.assertEquals(1, result2);
```

removeAll(setOfElementsToRemove)

Removes the elements in the specified set from the original set if they are present.

Signature

```
public Boolean removeAll(Set<Object> setOfElementsToRemove)
```

Parameters

setOfElementsToRemove
Type: Set<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

This method returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *relative complement* of the two sets. The specified set must be of the same type as the original set that calls the method.

retainAll(listOfElementsToRetain)

Retains only the elements in this set that are contained in the specified list.

Signature

```
public Boolean retainAll(List<Object> listOfElementsToRetain)
```

Parameters

listOfElementsToRetain
Type: List<Object>

Return Value

Type: Boolean

This method returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *intersection* of the list and the set. The list must be of the same type as the set that calls the method.

Example

```
Set<integer> mySet = new Set<integer>{1, 2, 3};
List<integer> myList = new List<integer>{1, 3};
Boolean result = mySet.retainAll(myList);
System.assertEquals(true, result);
```

retainAll(setOfElementsToRetain)

Retains only the elements in the original set that are contained in the specified set.

Signature

```
public Boolean retainAll(Set setOfElementsToRetain)
```

Parameters

setOfElementsToRetain
Type: Set

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if the original set changed as a result of the call.

Usage

This method results in the *intersection* of the two sets. The specified set must be of the same type as the original set that calls the method.

size()

Returns the number of elements in the set (its cardinality).

Signature

```
public Integer size()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Set<Integer> mySet = new Set<Integer>{1, 2, 3};
List<Integer> myList = new List<Integer>{1, 3};
Boolean result = mySet.retainAll(myList);

System.assertEquals(true, result);

Integer result2 = mySet.size();
System.assertEquals(2, result2);
```

toString()

Returns the string representation of the set.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

When used in cyclic references, the output is truncated to prevent infinite recursion. When used with large collections, the output is truncated to avoid exceeding total heap size and maximum CPU time.

- Up to 10 items per collection are included in the output, followed by an ellipsis (…).
- If the same object is included multiple times in a collection, it's shown in the output only once; subsequent references are shown as `(already output)`.

Site Class

Use the `Site` Class to manage your Salesforce Sites.

Namespace

System

Site Methods

The following are methods for `Site`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

changePassword(newPassword, verifyNewPassword, oldPassword)

Changes the password of the current user.

createExternalUser(user, accountId)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user for the given account and associates it with the site.

createExternalUser(user, accountId, password)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user for the given account and associates it with the site. This method sends an email with the specified password to the user.

createExternalUser(user, accountId, password, sendEmailConfirmation)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user and associates it with the given account. This method sends the user an email with the specified password and a new user confirmation email.

createPersonAccountPortalUser(user, ownerId, password)

Creates a person account using the default record type defined on the guest user's profile, then enables it for the site's portal.

createPersonAccountPortalUser(user, ownerId, recordTypeId, password)

Creates a person account using the specified *`recordTypeID`*, then enables it for the site's portal.

createPortalUser(user, accountId, password, sendEmailConfirmation)

Creates a portal user for the given account and associates it with the site's portal.

forgotPassword(username, emailTemplateName)

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with the user's new password. You can specify a custom email template or use the default email template. Returns a value indicating whether the password reset was successful.

forgotPassword(username)

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with the user's new password. Returns a value indicating whether the password reset was successful.

getAdminEmail()

Returns the email address of the site administrator.

getAdminId()

Returns the user ID of the site administrator.

getAnalyticsTrackingCode()

The tracking code associated with your site. Services such as Google Analytics can use this code to track page request data for your site.

getCurrentSiteUrl()

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getBaseUrl()` in API version 30.0. Returns the base URL of the current site that references and links should use.

getBaseCustomUrl()

Returns a base URL for the current site that doesn't use a force.com subdomain. The returned URL uses the same protocol (HTTP or HTTPS) as the current request if at least one non-Force.com custom URL that supports HTTPS exists on the site. The returned value never ends with a `/` character. If all the custom URLs in this site end in Force.com or this site has no custom URLs, then this returns an empty string. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string. This method replaced getCustomWebAddress and includes the custom URL's path prefix..

getBaseInsecureUrl()

Deprecated. Returns a base URL for the current site that uses HTTP instead of HTTPS. The current request's domain is used. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

getBaseRequestUrl()

Returns the base URL of the current site for the requested URL. This isn't influenced by the referring page's URL. The returned URL uses the same protocol (HTTP or HTTPS) as the current request. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

getBaseSecureUrl()

Returns a base URL for the current site that uses HTTPS instead of HTTP. The current request's domain is preferred if it supports HTTPS. Domains that are not Force.com subdomains are preferred over Force.com subdomains. A Force.com subdomain, if associated with the site, is used if no other HTTPS domains exist in the current site. If no HTTPS custom URLs exist in the site, then this method returns an empty string. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

getBaseUrl()

Returns the base URL of the current site that references and links should use. Note that this field may return the referring page's URL instead of the current request's URL. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns an empty string. This field replaces getCurrentSiteUrl.

getCustomWebAddress()

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getBaseCustomUrl()` in API version 30.0.

getDomain()

Returns your Salesforce Sites based URL.

getErrorDescription()

Returns the error description for the current page if it's a designated error page for the site and an error exists; otherwise, returns an empty string.

getErrorMessage()

Returns an error message for the current page if it's a designated error page for the site and an error exists; otherwise, returns an empty string.

getExperienceId()

Returns the value of the experience ID (expid). This expid value comes from a cookie in the user's web browser.

getMasterLabel()

Returns the value of the Master Label field for the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns `null`.

getName()

Returns the API name of the current site.

getOriginalUrl()

Returns the original URL for this page if it's a designated error page for the site; otherwise, returns `null`.

getPasswordPolicyStatement()

Returns the password requirements for a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site created with the Customer Service template.

getPathPrefix()

Returns the URL path prefix of the current site or an empty string if none. For example, if the requested site URL is `https://myco.my.salesforce-sites.com/partners`, then `/partners` is the path prefix. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string. This method replaced getPrefix in API version 30.0.

getPrefix()

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getPathPrefix()` in API version 30.0.

getSiteId()

Returns the ID of the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns `null`.

getTemplate()

Returns the template name associated with the current site; returns the default template if no template has been designated.

getSiteType()

Returns the API value of the site type field for the current site. This can be Visualforce for a Salesforce site, Siteforce for a Site.com site, ChatterNetwork for an Experience Cloud site, or ChatterNetworkPicasso for an Experience Cloud site. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`.

getSiteTypeLabel()

Returns the value of the Site Type field's label for the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`.

isLoginEnabled()

Returns `true` if the current site is associated with an active login-enabled portal; otherwise returns `false`.

isPasswordExpired()

For authenticated users, returns `true` if the currently logged-in user's password is expired. For non-authenticated users, returns `false`.

isRegistrationEnabled()

Returns `true` if the current site is associated with an active self-registration-enabled Customer Portal; otherwise returns `false`.

isValidUsername(username)

Returns `true` if the given username is valid; otherwise, returns `false`.

login(username, password, startUrl)

Allows users to log in to the current site with the given username and password, then takes them to the `startUrl`. If `startUrl` is not a relative path, it defaults to the site's designated index page.

passwordlessLogin(userId, methods, startUrl)

Logs in a user to a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site using an identity verification method, such as email or text, instead of a password. Passwordless login is a convenient, mobile-centric way to welcome users into your site. Let your users log in with something other than their password, like their email address or phone number.

setExperienceId(expIdValue)

Sets the experience ID for the current user. Use this method to populate the value of the experience ID (expid) cookie in the user's web browser.

setPortalUserAsAuthProvider(user, contactId)

Sets the specified user information within the site's portal via an authentication provider.

validatePassword(user, password, confirmPassword)

Indicates whether a given password meets the requirements specified by org-wide or profile-based password policies in the current user's org.

changePassword(newPassword, verifyNewPassword, oldPassword)

Changes the password of the current user.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference changePassword(String newPassword, String
verifyNewPassword, String oldPassword)
```

Parameters

newPassword
Type: String

verifyNewPassword
Type: String

oldPassword
Type: String

Optional only if the current user's password has expired; otherwise, required.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

createExternalUser(user, accountId)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user for the given account and associates it with the site.

Signature

```
public static Id createExternalUser(SObject user, String accountId)
```

Parameters

user
Type: SObject

Information required to create a user.

The email address of the user is used to look for matching contacts associated with the specified *accountId*. If a matching contact is found and is already used by an external user, self-registration isn't successful. If a matching contact is found but isn't used by an external user, it is used for the new external user. If there is no matching contact, a new contact is created for the new external user.

accountId
Type: String

The ID of the account you want to associate the user with.

Return Value

Type: Id

The ID of the user that this method creates.

Usage

This method throws `Site.ExternalUserCreateException` when user creation fails.

The `nickname` field is required for the `User` sObject when using the `createExternalUser` method.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal.

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

createExternalUser(user, accountId, password)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user for the given account and associates it with the site. This method sends an email with the specified password to the user.

Signature

```
public static Id createExternalUser(SObject user, String accountId, String password)
```

Parameters

user
Type: SObject

Information required to create a user.

The email address of the user is used to look for matching contacts associated with the specified *accountId*. If a matching contact is found and is already used by an external user, self-registration isn't successful. If a matching contact is found but isn't used by an external user, it is used for the new external user. If there is no matching contact, a new contact is created for the new external user.

accountId
Type: String

The ID of the account you want to associate the user with.

password
Type: String

The password of the Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user. If not specified, or if set to `null` or an empty string, this method sends a new password email to the portal user.

Return Value

Type: Id

The ID of the user that this method creates.

Usage

This method throws `Site.ExternalUserCreateException` when user creation fails.

The `nickname` field is required for the `User` sObject when using the `createExternalUser` method.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal.

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

createExternalUser(user, accountId, password, sendEmailConfirmation)

Creates a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user and associates it with the given account. This method sends the user an email with the specified password and a new user confirmation email.

Signature

```
public static Id createExternalUser(SObject user, String accountId, String password,
Boolean sendEmailConfirmation)
```

Parameters

user
Type: SObject

Information required to create a user.

The email address of the user is used to look for matching contacts associated with the specified *accountId*. If a matching contact is found and is already used by an external user, self-registration isn't successful. If a matching contact is found but isn't used by an external user, it is used for the new external user. If there is no matching contact, a new contact is created for the new external user.

accountId
Type: String

The ID of the account you want to associate the user with.

password
Type: String

The password of the Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site user. If not specified, or if set to `null` or an empty string, this method sends a new password email to the portal user.

sendEmailConfirmation
Type: Boolean

Determines whether a new user email is sent to the portal user. Set it to `true` to send a new user email to the portal user. The default is `false`, that is, the new user email isn't sent.

Return Value

Type: Id

The ID of the user that this method creates.

Usage

This method throws `Site.ExternalUserCreateException` when user creation fails.

The `nickname` field is required for the `User` sObject when using the `createExternalUser` method.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal.

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

`createPersonAccountPortalUser(user, ownerId, password)`

Creates a person account using the default record type defined on the guest user's profile, then enables it for the site's portal.

Signature

```
public static ID createPersonAccountPortalUser(sObject user, String ownerId, String password)
```

Parameters

user
Type: sObject

ownerId
Type: String

password
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal, and when the user license for the default new user profile is a high-volume portal user.

createPersonAccountPortalUser(user, ownerId, recordTypeId, password)

Creates a person account using the specified *recordTypeID*, then enables it for the site's portal.

Signature

```
public static ID createPersonAccountPortalUser(sObject user, String ownerId, String
recordTypeId, String password)
```

Parameters

user
Type: sObject

ownerId
Type: String

recordTypeId
Type: String

password
Type: String

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal, and when the user license for the default new user profile is a high-volume portal user.

createPortalUser(user, accountId, password, sendEmailConfirmation)

Creates a portal user for the given account and associates it with the site's portal.

Signature

```
public static ID createPortalUser(sObject user, String accountId, String password,
Boolean sendEmailConfirmation)
```

Parameters

user
Type: sObject

accountId
Type: String

password
Type: String

(Optional) The password of the portal user. If not specified, or if set to `null` or an empty string, this method sends a new password email to the portal user.

`sendEmailConfirmation`
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Determines whether a new user email is sent to the portal user. Set it to `true` to send a new user email to the portal user. The default is `false`, that is, the new user email isn't sent.

Return Value

Type: ID

Usage

If you're using API version 34.0 or later, we recommend using the `createExternalUser()` methods because they offer better error handling than this method.

The `nickname` field is required for the user sObject when using the `createPortalUser` method.

Note: This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal.

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

`forgotPassword(username, emailTemplateName)`

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with the user's new password. You can specify a custom email template or use the default email template. Returns a value indicating whether the password reset was successful.

Signature

```
public static Boolean forgotPassword(String username,String emailTemplateName)
```

Parameters

`username`
Type: String

`emailTemplateName`
Type: String

If provided, the method applies the template to the email. Otherwise, the method applies the default system template. If an email template that doesn't exist is provided, the system logs an exception.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Note: The return value is always true unless it's called outside of a Visualforce page.

Usage

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

Note: `Site.forgotPassword` cannot be used with the `@future` method, which enables asynchronous execution.

`forgotPassword(username)`

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with the user's new password. Returns a value indicating whether the password reset was successful.

Signature

```
public static Boolean forgotPassword(String username)
```

Parameters

`username`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Note: The return value is always true unless it's called outside of a Visualforce page.

Usage

Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.

Note: `Site.forgotPassword` cannot be used with the `@future` method, which enables asynchronous execution.

`getAdminEmail()`

Returns the email address of the site administrator.

Signature

```
public static String getAdminEmail()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getAdminId()`

Returns the user ID of the site administrator.

Signature

```
public static ID getAdminId()
```

Return Value

Type: ID

`getAnalyticsTrackingCode()`

The tracking code associated with your site. Services such as Google Analytics can use this code to track page request data for your site.

Signature

```
public static String getAnalyticsTrackingCode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getCurrentSiteUrl()`

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getBaseUrl()` in API version 30.0. Returns the base URL of the current site that references and links should use.

Note that this may return the referring page's URL instead of the current request's URL. The returned value includes the path prefix and always ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`. This method was replaced by getBaseUrl in API version 30.0.

Signature

```
public static String getCurrentSiteUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use `getBaseUrl()` instead.

`getBaseCustomUrl()`

Returns a base URL for the current site that doesn't use a force.com subdomain. The returned URL uses the same protocol (HTTP or HTTPS) as the current request if at least one non-Force.com custom URL that supports HTTPS exists on the site. The returned value never ends with a `/` character. If all the custom URLs in this site end in Force.com or this site has no custom URLs, then this returns an empty string. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string. This method replaced getCustomWebAddress and includes the custom URL's path prefix..

Signature

```
public static String getBaseCustomUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method replaces `getCustomWebAddress()` and includes the custom URL's path prefix.

getBaseInsecureUrl()

Deprecated. Returns a base URL for the current site that uses HTTP instead of HTTPS. The current request's domain is used. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

Signature

```
public static String getBaseInsecureUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getBaseRequestUrl()

Returns the base URL of the current site for the requested URL. This isn't influenced by the referring page's URL. The returned URL uses the same protocol (HTTP or HTTPS) as the current request. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

Signature

```
public static String getBaseRequestUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getBaseSecureUrl()

Returns a base URL for the current site that uses HTTPS instead of HTTP. The current request's domain is preferred if it supports HTTPS. Domains that are not Force.com subdomains are preferred over Force.com subdomains. A Force.com subdomain, if associated with the site, is used if no other HTTPS domains exist in the current site. If no HTTPS custom URLs exist in the site, then this method returns an empty string. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string.

Signature

```
public static String getBaseSecureUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getBaseUrl()`

Returns the base URL of the current site that references and links should use. Note that this field may return the referring page's URL instead of the current request's URL. The returned value includes the path prefix and never ends with a `/` character. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns an empty string. This field replaces getCurrentSiteUrl.

Signature

```
public static String getBaseUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method replaces `getCurrentSiteUrl()`.

`getCustomWebAddress()`

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getBaseCustomUrl()` in API version 30.0.

Returns the request's custom URL if it doesn't end in Lightning Platform or returns the site's primary custom URL. If neither exist, then this returns null. Note that the URL's path is always the root, even if the request's custom URL has a path prefix. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns null. The returned value always ends with a `/` character.

Signature

```
public static String getCustomWebAddress()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use `getBaseCustomUrl()` instead.

`getDomain()`

Returns your Salesforce Sites based URL.

Signature

```
public static String getDomain()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getErrorDescription()

Returns the error description for the current page if it's a designated error page for the site and an error exists; otherwise, returns an empty string.

Signature

```
public static String getErrorDescription()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getErrorMessage()

Returns an error message for the current page if it's a designated error page for the site and an error exists; otherwise, returns an empty string.

Signature

```
public static String getErrorMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getExperienceId()

Returns the value of the experience ID (expid). This expid value comes from a cookie in the user's web browser.

Signature

```
public static String getExperienceId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Use the `getExperienceId` and `setExperienceId` methods to implement dynamic login experiences. You can set the experience ID with `setExperienceId` or by extending the following endpoints with `expid_`***`value`***.

- ***community-url***`/services/oauth2/authorize/expid_`***value***
- ***community-url***`/idp/endpoint/HttpPost/expid_`***value***
- ***community-url***`/idp/endpoint/HttpRedirect/expid_`***value***
- ***community-url_login_page***`/expid=`***{value}***
- ***community-url***`/CommunitiesSelfReg?expid=`***{value}***
- ***secur***`/forgotpassword.jsp?expid=`***{value}***

The cookie is set when the browser loads the URLs with the expid values.

getMasterLabel()

Returns the value of the Master Label field for the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getMasterLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getName()

Returns the API name of the current site.

Signature

```
public static String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOriginalUrl()

Returns the original URL for this page if it's a designated error page for the site; otherwise, returns `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getOriginalUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getPasswordPolicyStatement()

Returns the password requirements for a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site created with the Customer Service template.

Signature

```
public static String getPasswordPolicyStatement()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPathPrefix()`

Returns the URL path prefix of the current site or an empty string if none. For example, if the requested site URL is `https://myco.my.salesforce-sites.com/partners`, then `/partners` is the path prefix. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns an empty string. This method replaced getPrefix in API version 30.0.

Signature

```
public static String getPathPrefix()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPrefix()`

Deprecated. This method was replaced by `getPathPrefix()` in API version 30.0.

Returns the URL path prefix of the current site. For example, if your site URL is *MyDomainName*`.my.salesforce-sites.com/partners`, `/partners` is the path prefix. Returns `null` if the prefix isn't defined. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns a `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getPrefix()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSiteId()`

Returns the ID of the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this field returns `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getSiteId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

`getTemplate()`

Returns the template name associated with the current site; returns the default template if no template has been designated.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference getTemplate()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

`getSiteType()`

Returns the API value of the site type field for the current site. This can be Visualforce for a Salesforce site, Siteforce for a Site.com site, ChatterNetwork for an Experience Cloud site, or ChatterNetworkPicasso for an Experience Cloud site. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getSiteType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getSiteTypeLabel()`

Returns the value of the Site Type field's label for the current site. If the current request is not a site request, then this method returns `null`.

Signature

```
public static String getSiteTypeLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`isLoginEnabled()`

Returns `true` if the current site is associated with an active login-enabled portal; otherwise returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isLoginEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

`isPasswordExpired()`

For authenticated users, returns `true` if the currently logged-in user's password is expired. For non-authenticated users, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isPasswordExpired()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isRegistrationEnabled()

Returns `true` if the current site is associated with an active self-registration-enabled Customer Portal; otherwise returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isRegistrationEnabled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isValidUsername(username)

Returns `true` if the given username is valid; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isValidUsername(String username)
```

Parameters

username
Type: String

The username to test for validity.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

login(username, password, startUrl)

Allows users to log in to the current site with the given username and password, then takes them to the `startUrl`. If `startUrl` is not a relative path, it defaults to the site's designated index page.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference login(String username, String password, String
startUrl)
```

Parameters

username
Type: String

password
Type: String

startUrl
Type: String

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

All DML statements before the call to `Site.login` get committed. It's not possible to roll back to a save point that was created before a call to `Site.login`.

Note: Do not include `http://` or `https://` in the `startURL`.

passwordlessLogin(userId, methods, startUrl)

Logs in a user to a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site using an identity verification method, such as email or text, instead of a password. Passwordless login is a convenient, mobile-centric way to welcome users into your site. Let your users log in with something other than their password, like their email address or phone number.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference passwordlessLogin(Id userId,
List<Auth.VerificationMethod> methods, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

ID of the user to log in.

methods
Type: List<Auth.VerificationMethod>

List of identity verification methods available to the user for passwordless login.

startUrl
Type: String

Path to the page that users see after they log in.

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

Include this method in the Apex controller of a custom login page implementation.

PasswordlessLogin Example

This simple code example of an Apex controller contains the `passwordlessLogin` method. The `PageReference` returned by `passwordlessLogin` redirects the user to the Salesforce Verify page. When the user enters the correct code, the user is redirected to the site page specified by the start URL.

```
global with sharing class MFILoginController
{
   //Input variables
   global String input {get; set;}
   public String startURL  {get; set;}
   public List<Auth.VerificationMethod> methods;
   public String error;

   global MFILoginController()
   {
       // Add verification methods in priority order
       methods = new List<Auth.VerificationMethod>();
       methods.add(Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS);
       methods.add(Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL);
       methods.add(Auth.VerificationMethod.U2F);
       methods.add(Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR);
       methods.add(Auth.VerificationMethod.TOTP);
   }

   global PageReference login() {
        List<User> users = null;

        // Empty input
        if(input == null || input == '')
        {
            error = 'Enter Username';
            return null;
        }

        users = [select name, id, email from User where username=:input];
        if(users == null || users.isEmpty())
        {
            error = 'Can\'t find a user';
            return null;
        }

        if (startURL == null) startURL = '/';
        return Site.passwordlessLogin(users[0].id, methods, startURL);
    }
}
```

`setExperienceId(expIdValue)`

Sets the experience ID for the current user. Use this method to populate the value of the experience ID (expid) cookie in the user's web browser.

Signature

```
public static void setExperienceId(String expIdValue)
```

Parameters

expIdValue
Type: String

A value that indicates the user's login experience.

The value must contain alphanumeric characters only, up to 30 characters.

Usage

Use `setExperienceId` when you're implementing dynamic login experiences. A login experience refers to a login page plus any secondary pages associated with the login page (such as multi-factor authentication (MFA) or a login flow). You define different login experiences depending on who users are or where they're logging in from. For example, you can require a different registration process based on the user's location. In this case, `expIdValue` includes a state or country code. When the user logs in, the URL contains the experience ID parameter, `{expid}`. The `{expid}` parameter is replaced by the value stored in `expIdValue`, such as `.jp`. Then the user is redirected to the Japanese login experience.

Example

```
String expid = ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('expid');
  if (expId != null) {
  Site.setExperienceId(expId);
  }
```

setPortalUserAsAuthProvider(user, contactId)

Sets the specified user information within the site's portal via an authentication provider.

Signature

```
public static Void setPortalUserAsAuthProvider(sObject user, String contactId)
```

Parameters

user
Type: sObject

contactId
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

- This method is only valid when a site is associated with a Customer Portal.

- Calls to this method in API version 30.0 and later can't commit the transaction automatically. Calls to this method before API version 30.0 commit the transaction, making it impossible to roll back to a save point before the call.
- For more information on an authentication provider, see RegistrationHandler on page 136.

`validatePassword(user, password, confirmPassword)`

Indicates whether a given password meets the requirements specified by org-wide or profile-based password policies in the current user's org.

Signature

```
public static void validatePassword(SObject user, String password, String
confirmPassword)
```

Parameters

user
Type: SObject

The user attempting to create a password during self-registration for a Salesforce Site or Experience Cloud site.

password
Type: String

The password entered by the user.

confirmPassword
Type: String

The password reentered by the user to confirm the password.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

If validation fails when the method is run in a Lightning controller, this method throws an Apex exception describing the failed validation. If validation fails when the method is run in a Visualforce controller, the method provides Visualforce error messages.

SObject Class

Contains methods for the sObject data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

SObject methods are all instance methods: they are called by and operate on an sObject instance such as an account or contact. The following are the instance methods for sObjects.

For more information on sObjects, see Working with sObjects.

SObject Methods

The following are methods for `SObject`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

addError(errorMsg)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(errorMsg, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message, specifies if the error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(exceptionError)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(exceptionError, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom exception error message, specifies whether or not the exception error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(errorMsg)

Places the specified error message on a trigger record field in the Salesforce user interface and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(errorMsg, escape)

Places the specified error message, which can be escaped or unescaped, on a trigger record field in the Salesforce user interface, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

addError(fieldName, errorMsg)

Dynamically add errors to fields of an SObject associated with the specified field name.

addError(fieldToken, errorMsg)

Dynamically add errors to an SObject instance associated with the specified field.

addError(fieldName, errorMsg, escape)

Dynamically add errors to fields of an SObject associated with the specified field name.

addError(fieldToken, errorMsg, escape)

Dynamically add errors to an SObject instance associated with the specified field.

clear()

Clears all field values

clone(preserveId, isDeepClone, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)

Creates a copy of the SObject record.

get(fieldName)

Returns the value for the field specified by *`fieldName`*, such as `AccountNumber`.

get(field)

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.`***`sObjectField`***, such as, `Schema.Account.AccountNumber`.

getCloneSourceId()

Returns the ID of the entity from which an object was cloned. You can use it for objects cloned through the Salesforce user interface. If you don't use a *preserveId* parameter, of if you use a *preserveId* value of `false`, you can also used it for objects created using the `System.SObject.clone(preserveId, isDeepClone, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)` method.

getErrors()

Returns a list of `Database.Error` objects for an SObject instance. If the SObject has no errors, an empty list is returned.

getOptions()

Returns the database.DMLOptions object for the SObject.

getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()

Returns a map of populated field names and their corresponding values. The map contains only the fields that have been populated in memory for the SObject instance.

getSObject(fieldName)

Returns the value for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for external IDs.

getSObject(field)

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.`***`sObjectField`***, such as, `Schema.MyObj.MyExternalId`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for external IDs.

getSObjects(fieldName)

Returns the values for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for associated objects, such as child relationships.

getSObjects(fieldName)

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.`***`fieldName`***, such as, `Schema.Account.Contact`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for associated objects, such as child relationships.

getSObjectType()

Returns the token for this SObject. This method is primarily used with describe information.

getQuickActionName()

Retrieves the name of a quick action associated with this SObject. Typically used in triggers.

hasErrors()

Returns true if an SObject instance has associated errors. The error message can be associated to the SObject instance by using `SObject.addError()`, validation rules, or by other means.

isClone()

Returns `true` if an entity is cloned from something, even if the entity hasn't been saved.

isSet(fieldName)

Returns information about the queried sObject field. Returns `true` if the sObject field is populated, either by direct assignment or by inclusion in a SOQL query. Returns `false` if the sObject field is not set. If an invalid field is specified, an SObjectException is thrown.

isSet(field)

Returns information about the queried sObject field. Returns `true` if the sObject field is populated, either by direct assignment or by inclusion in a SOQL query. Returns `false` if the sObject field is not set. If an invalid field is specified, an SObjectException is thrown.

put(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the specified field and returns the previous value for the field.

put(field, value)

Sets the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.sObjectField`, such as, `Schema.Account.AccountNumber` and returns the previous value for the field.

putSObject(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML for setting external IDs. The method returns the previous value of the field.

putSObject(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the field specified by the token `Schema.SObjectType`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML for setting external IDs. The method returns the previous value of the field.

recalculateFormulas()

Recalculates all formula fields on an SObject, and sets updated field values. Rather than inserting or updating objects each time you want to test changes to your formula logic, call this method and inspect your new field values. Then make further logic changes as needed.

setOptions(DMLOptions)

Sets the DMLOptions object for the SObject.

addError(errorMsg)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg)
```

Parameters

errorMsg

Type: String

The error message to mark the record with.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

When used on `Trigger.new` in `before insert` and `before update` triggers, and on `Trigger.old` in `before delete` triggers, the error message is displayed in the application interface.

See Triggers and Trigger Exceptions.

Note: This method escapes any HTML markup in the specified error message. The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

When used in Visualforce controllers, the generated message is added to the collection of errors for the page. For more information, see Validation Rules and Standard Controllers in the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].addError('bad');
```

addError(errorMsg, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message, specifies if the error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to mark the record with.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning: Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *`escape`* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *`escape`* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *`escape`* argument or call `addError(String` ***`errorMsg`***`)` instead.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].addError('Fix & resubmit', false);
```

addError(exceptionError)

Marks a trigger record with a custom error message and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(Exception exceptionError)
```

Parameters

exceptionError
Type: System.Exception

An Exception object or a custom exception object that contains the error message to mark the record with.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

When used on `Trigger.new` in `before insert` and `before update` triggers, and on `Trigger.old` in `before delete` triggers, the error message is displayed in the application interface.

See Triggers and Trigger Exceptions.

Note: This method escapes any HTML markup in the specified error message. The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

When used in Visualforce controllers, the generated message is added to the collection of errors for the page. For more information, see Validation Rules and Standard Controllers in the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.

Example

```
public class MyException extends Exception {}
Trigger.new[0].addError(new myException('Invalid Id'));
```

addError(exceptionError, escape)

Marks a trigger record with a custom exception error message, specifies whether or not the exception error message should be escaped, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(Exception exceptionError, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

exceptionError
Type: System.Exception

An Exception object or a custom exception object that contains the error message to mark the record with.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning: Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *`escape`* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *`escape`* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *`escape`* argument or call `addError(Exception e)` instead.

Example

```
public class MyException extends Exception {}
Trigger.new[0].addError(new myException('Invalid Id & other issues', false));
```

`addError(errorMsg)`

Places the specified error message on a trigger record field in the Salesforce user interface and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg)
```

Parameters

`errorMsg`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Note:

- When used on `Trigger.new` in `before insert` and `before update` triggers, and on `Trigger.old` in `before delete` triggers, the error appears in the application interface.
- When used in Visualforce controllers, if there is an `inputField` component bound to field, the message is attached to the component. For more information, see Validation Rules and Standard Controllers in the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.
- This method is highly specialized because the field identifier is not actually the invoking object—the sObject record is the invoker. The field is simply used to identify the field that should be used to display the error.

See Triggers and Trigger Exceptions.

Note: This method escapes any HTML markup in the specified error message. The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].myField__c.addError('bad');
```

addError(errorMsg, escape)

Places the specified error message, which can be escaped or unescaped, on a trigger record field in the Salesforce user interface, and prevents any DML operation from occurring.

Signature

```
public Void addError(String errorMsg, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to mark the record with.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type:

Usage

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning: Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *escape* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *escape* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *escape* argument or call *field*`.addError(String` ***errorMsg***`)` instead.

Example

```
Trigger.new[0].myField__c.addError('Fix & resubmit', false);
```

addError(fieldName, errorMsg)

Dynamically add errors to fields of an SObject associated with the specified field name.

Signature

```
public void addError(String fieldName, String errorMsg)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

The field name of the SObject .

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to be added. HTML special characters in the error message string are always escaped.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

If the field name is an empty string or null, the error is associated with the SObject and not with a specific field.

Example

```
// Add an error to an SObject field using the addError() method.
Account acct = new Account(name = 'TestAccount');
acct.addError('name', 'error in name field');
// Use the hasErrors() method to verify that the error is added, and then the getErrors()
 method to validate the error.
System.Assert(acct.hasErrors());
List<Database.Error> errors = acct.getErrors();
System.AssertEquals(1, errors.size());
```

addError(fieldToken, errorMsg)

Dynamically add errors to an SObject instance associated with the specified field.

Signature

```
public void addError(Schema.SObjectField fieldToken, String errorMsg
```

Parameters

fieldToken
Type: Schema.SObjectField

The field of the SObject instance.

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to be added. HTML special characters in the error message string are always escaped.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Use this method to add errors to the specified field token of a standard or custom object. If `fieldToken`is null, the error is associated with the SObject and not with a specific field.

Example

```
// Add an error to a field of an SObject instance using the addError() method.
Account acct = new Account(name = 'TestAccount');
Schema.DescribeFieldResult nameDesc = Account.name.getDescribe();
Schema.sObjectField nameField = nameDesc.getSObjectField();
acct.addError(nameField, 'error is name field');
// Use the hasErrors() method to verify that the error is added, and then the getErrors()
 method to validate the error.
System.Assert(acct.hasErrors());
List<Database.Error> errors = acct.getErrors();
System.AssertEquals(1, errors.size());
```

addError(fieldName, errorMsg, escape)

Dynamically add errors to fields of an SObject associated with the specified field name.

Signature

```
public void addError(String fieldName, String errorMsg, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

The field name of the SObject .

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to be added.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

If the field name is an empty string or null, the error is associated with the SObject and not with a specific field.

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning:

- The *escape* parameter cannot be disabled in Lightning Experience and in the Salesforce mobile app, and will be ignored.
- Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *escape* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *escape* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *escape* argument or call `addError(String fieldName, String errorMsg)` instead.

Example

```
// Add an error to an SObject field using the addError() method.
Account acct = new Account(name = 'TestAccount');
acct.addError('name', 'error in name field', false);
// Use the hasErrors() method to verify that the error is added, and then the getErrors()
 method to validate the error.
System.Assert(acct.hasErrors());
List<Database.Error> errors = acct.getErrors();
System.AssertEquals(1, errors.size());
```

addError(fieldToken, errorMsg, escape)

Dynamically add errors to an SObject instance associated with the specified field.

Signature

```
public void addError(Schema.SObjectField fieldToken, String errorMsg, Boolean escape)
```

Parameters

fieldToken
Type: Schema.SObjectField

The field of the SObject instance.

errorMsg
Type: String

The error message to be added.

escape
Type: Boolean

Indicates whether any HTML markup in the custom error message should be escaped (`true`) or not (`false`). This parameter is ignored in both Lightning Experience and the Salesforce mobile app, and the HTML is always escaped. The escape parameter only applies in Salesforce Classic.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Use this method to add errors to the specified field token of a standard or custom object. If `fieldToken`is null, the error is associated with the SObject and not with a specific field.

The escaped characters are: `\n`, `<`, `>`, `&`, `"`, `\`, `\u2028`, `\u2029`, and `\u00a9`. As a result, HTML markup is not rendered; instead, it is displayed as text in the Salesforce user interface.

Warning:

- The *escape* parameter cannot be disabled in Lightning Experience and in the Salesforce mobile app, and will be ignored.
- Be cautious if you specify `false` for the *escape* argument. Unescaped strings displayed in the Salesforce user interface can represent a vulnerability in the system because these strings might contain harmful code. If you want to include HTML markup in the error message, call this method with a `false` *escape* argument. Make sure that you escape any dynamic content, such as input field values. Otherwise, specify `true` for the *escape* argument or call `addError(Schema.SObjectField fieldToken, String errorMsg)` instead.

Example

```
// Add an error to a field of an SObject instance using the addError() method.
Account acct = new Account(name = 'TestAccount');
Schema.DescribeFieldResult nameDesc = Account.name.getDescribe();
Schema.sObjectField nameField = nameDesc.getSObjectField();
acct.addError(nameField, 'error is name field', false);
// Use the hasErrors() method to verify that the error is added, and then the getErrors()
 method to validate the error.
System.Assert(acct.hasErrors());
List<Database.Error> errors = acct.getErrors();
System.AssertEquals(1, errors.size());
```

clear()

Clears all field values

Signature

```
public Void clear()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
Account acc = new account(Name = 'Acme');
acc.clear();
Account expected = new Account();
system.assertEquals(expected, acc);
```

clone(preserveId, isDeepClone, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)

Creates a copy of the SObject record.

Signature

```
public SObject clone(Boolean preserveId, Boolean isDeepClone, Boolean
preserveReadonlyTimestamps, Boolean preserveAutonumber)
```

Parameters

preserveId
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Determines whether the ID of the original object is preserved or cleared in the duplicate. If set to `true`, the ID is copied to the duplicate. The default is `false`, that is, the ID is cleared.

isDeepClone
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Determines whether the method creates a full copy of the SObject field or just a reference:

- If set to `true`, the method creates a full copy of the SObject. All fields on the SObject are duplicated in memory, including relationship fields. Consequently, if you make changes to a field on the cloned SObject, the original SObject is not affected.
- If set to `false`, the method performs a shallow copy of the SObject fields. All copied relationship fields reference the original SObjects. Consequently, if you make changes to a relationship field on the cloned SObject, the corresponding field on the original SObject is also affected, and vice versa. The default is `false`.

preserveReadonlyTimestamps
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Determines whether the read-only timestamp fields are preserved or cleared in the duplicate. If set to `true`, the read-only fields `CreatedById`, `CreatedDate`, `LastModifiedById`, and `LastModifiedDate` are copied to the duplicate. The default is `false`, that is, the values are cleared.

preserveAutonumber
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Determines whether auto number fields of the original object are preserved or cleared in the duplicate. If set to `true`, auto number fields are copied to the cloned object. The default is `false`, that is, auto number fields are cleared.

Return Value

Type: SObject (of same type)

Usage

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 22.0 or earlier, the default value for the *preserveId* argument is `true`, that is, the ID is preserved.

Example

```
Account acc = new account(Name = 'Acme', Description = 'Acme Account');
Account clonedAcc = acc.clone(false, false, false, false);
System.assertEquals(acc, clonedAcc);
```

get(fieldName)

Returns the value for the field specified by *fieldName*, such as `AccountNumber`.

Signature

```
public Object get(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

For more information, see Dynamic SOQL.

Example

```
Account acc = new account(Name = 'Acme', Description = 'Acme Account');
String description = (String)acc.get('Description');
System.assertEquals('Acme Account', description);
```

get(field)

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.`***`sObjectField`***, such as, `Schema.Account.AccountNumber`.

Signature

```
public Object get(Schema.sObjectField field)
```

Parameters

field
Type: Schema.SObjectField

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

For more information, see Dynamic SOQL.

Note: Field tokens aren't available for person accounts. If you access `Schema.Account.fieldname`, you get an exception error. Instead, specify the field name as a string.

Example

```
Account acc = new account(Name = 'Acme', Description = 'Acme Account');
String description = (String)acc.get(Schema.Account.Description);
System.assertEquals('Acme Account', description);
```

getCloneSourceId()

Returns the ID of the entity from which an object was cloned. You can use it for objects cloned through the Salesforce user interface. If you don't use a *preserveId* parameter, of if you use a *preserveId* value of `false`, you can also used it for objects created using the `System.SObject.clone(preserveId, isDeepClone, preserveReadonlyTimestamps, preserveAutonumber)` method.

Signature

```
public Id getCloneSourceId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

Usage

If A is cloned to B, B is cloned to C, and C is cloned to D, then B, C, and D all point back to A as their clone source.

Example

```
Account acc0 = new Account(Name = 'Acme');
insert acc0;
Account acc1 = acc0.clone();
Account acc2 = acc1.clone();
Account acc3 = acc2.clone();
Account acc4 = acc3.clone();
System.assert(acc0.Id != null);
System.assertEquals(acc0.Id, acc1.getCloneSourceId());
System.assertEquals(acc0.Id, acc2.getCloneSourceId());
System.assertEquals(acc0.Id, acc3.getCloneSourceId());
System.assertEquals(acc0.Id, acc4.getCloneSourceId());
System.assertEquals(null, acc0.getCloneSourceId());
```

getErrors()

Returns a list of `Database.Error` objects for an SObject instance. If the SObject has no errors, an empty list is returned.

Signature

```
public List<Database.Error> getErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Database.Error>

getOptions()

Returns the database.DMLOptions object for the SObject.

Signature

```
public Database.DMLOptions getOptions()
```

Return Value

Type: Database.DMLOptions

Example

```
Database.DMLOptions dmo = new Database.dmlOptions();
dmo.assignmentRuleHeader.useDefaultRule = true;

Account acc = new Account(Name = 'Acme');
acc.setOptions(dmo);
Database.DMLOptions accDmo = acc.getOptions();
```

getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()

Returns a map of populated field names and their corresponding values. The map contains only the fields that have been populated in memory for the SObject instance.

Signature

```
public Map<String,Object> getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Object>

A map of field names and their corresponding values.

Usage

The returned map contains only the fields that have been populated in memory for the SObject instance, which makes it easy to iterate over those fields. A field is populated in memory in the following cases.

- The field has been queried by a SOQL statement.
- The field has been explicitly set before the call to the `getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()` method.

Fields on related objects that are queried or set are also returned in the map.

The following example iterates over the map returned by the `getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()` method after a SOQL query.

```
Account a = new Account();
a.name = 'TestMapAccount1';
insert a;
a = [select Id,Name from Account where id=:a.Id];
Map<String, Object> fieldsToValue = a.getPopulatedFieldsAsMap();

for (String fieldName : fieldsToValue.keySet()){
    System.debug('field name is ' + fieldName + ', value is ' +
        fieldsToValue.get(fieldName));
}

// Example debug statement output:
// DEBUG|field name is Id, value is 001R0000003EPPkIAO
// DEBUG|field name is Name, value is TestMapAccount1
```

This example iterates over the map returned by the `getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()` method after fields on the SObject are explicitly set.

```
Account a = new Account();
a.name = 'TestMapAccount2';
a.phone = '123-4567';
insert a;
Map<String, Object> fieldsToValue = a.getPopulatedFieldsAsMap();

for (String fieldName : fieldsToValue.keySet()) {
    System.debug('field name is ' + fieldName + ', value is ' +
        fieldsToValue.get(fieldName));
}

// Example debug statement output:
// DEBUG|field name is Name, value is TestMapAccount2
// DEBUG|field name is Phone, value is 123-4567
// DEBUG|field name is Id, value is 001R0000003EPPpIAO
```

The following example shows how to use the `getPopulatedFieldsAsMap()` method with related objects.

```
Account a = new Account();
a.name='TestMapAccount3';
insert a;
Contact c = new Contact();
c.firstname='TestContactFirstName';
c.lastName ='TestContactLastName';
c.accountid = a.id;
insert c;

c = [SELECT id, Contact.Firstname, Contact.Account.Name FROM Contact
        where id=:c.id limit 1];
Map<String, Object> fieldsToValue = c.getPopulatedFieldsAsMap();
```

```
// To get the fields on Account, get the Account object
// and call getMapPopulatedFieldsAsMap() on that object.

a = (Account)fieldsToValue.get('Account');
fieldsToValue = a.getPopulatedFieldsAsMap();

for (String fieldName : fieldsToValue.keySet()) {
    System.debug('field name is ' + fieldName + ', value is ' +
        fieldsToValue.get(fieldName));
}

// Example debug statement output:
// DEBUG|field name is Id, value is 001R0000003EPPuIAO
// DEBUG|field name is Name, value is TestMapAccount3
```

Versioned Behavior Changes

In API version 39.0 and later, getPopulatedFieldsAsMap returns all values set on the SObject, even if values were set after the record was queried. This behavior is dependent on the version of the apex class calling this method and not on the version of the class that generated the SObject. If you query an SObject at API version 20.0, and then call this method in a class with API version 40.0, you will get the full set of fields.

`getSObject(fieldName)`

Returns the value for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for external IDs.

Signature

```
public SObject getSObject(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: SObject

Example

```
Account acc = new account(Name = 'Acme', Description = 'Acme Account');
insert acc;
Contact con = new Contact(Lastname = 'AcmeCon', AccountId = acc.id);
insert con;

SObject contactDB =
    [SELECT Id, AccountId, Account.Name FROM Contact WHERE id = :con.id LIMIT 1];
Account a = (Account)contactDB.getSObject('Account');
System.assertEquals('Acme', a.name);
```

getSObject(field)

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.sObjectField`, such as, `Schema.MyObj.MyExternalId`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for external IDs.

Signature

```
public SObject getSObject(Schema.SObjectField field)
```

Parameters

field
Type: Schema.SObjectField

Return Value

Type: SObject

Example

```
Account acc = new account(name = 'Acme', description = 'Acme Account');
insert acc;
Contact con = new contact(lastname = 'AcmeCon', accountid = acc.id);
insert con;

Schema.DescribeFieldResult fieldResult = Contact.AccountId.getDescribe();
Schema.SObjectField field = fieldResult.getSObjectField();

SObject contactDB =
    [SELECT Id, AccountId, Account.Name FROM Contact WHERE id = :con.id LIMIT 1];
Account a = (Account)contactDB.getSObject(field);
System.assertEquals('Acme', a.name);
```

getSObjects(fieldName)

Returns the values for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for associated objects, such as child relationships.

Signature

```
public SObject[] getSObjects(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: SObject[]

Usage

For more information, see Dynamic DML.

Example

```
Account acc = new account(name = 'Acme', description = 'Acme Account');
insert acc;
Contact con = new contact(lastname = 'AcmeCon', accountid = acc.id);
insert con;

SObject[] a = [SELECT id, (SELECT Name FROM Contacts LIMIT 1) FROM Account WHERE id =
:acc.id];
SObject[] contactsDB = a.get(0).getSObjects('Contacts');
String fieldValue = (String)contactsDB.get(0).get('Name');
System.assertEquals('AcmeCon', fieldValue);
```

`getSObjects(fieldName)`

Returns the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.`***`fieldName`***, such as, `Schema.Account.Contact`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML to access values for associated objects, such as child relationships.

Signature

```
public SObject[] getSObjects(Schema.SObjectType fieldName)
```

Parameters

`fieldName`
Type: Schema.SObjectType

Return Value

Type: SObject[]

`getSObjectType()`

Returns the token for this SObject. This method is primarily used with describe information.

Signature

```
public Schema.SObjectType getSObjectType()
```

Return Value

Type: Schema.SObjectType

Usage

For more information, see apex_dynamic_describe_objects_understanding.

Example

```
Account acc = new Account(name = 'Acme', description = 'Acme Account');
Schema.SObjectType expected = Schema.Account.getSObjectType();
System.assertEquals(expected, acc.getSObjectType());
```

getQuickActionName()

Retrieves the name of a quick action associated with this SObject. Typically used in triggers.

Signature

```
public String getQuickActionName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
trigger accTrig2 on Contact (before insert) {
    for (Contact c : Trigger.new) {
        if (c.getQuickActionName() == QuickAction.CreateContact) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'GlobaActionl';
        } else if (c.getQuickActionName() == Schema.Account.QuickAction.CreateContact) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'AccountAction';
        } else if (c.getQuickActionName() == null) {
            c.WhereFrom__c = 'NoAction';
        } else {
            System.assert(false);
        }
    }
}
```

hasErrors()

Returns true if an SObject instance has associated errors. The error message can be associated to the SObject instance by using `SObject.addError()`, validation rules, or by other means.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasErrors()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isClone()

Returns `true` if an entity is cloned from something, even if the entity hasn't been saved.

Signature

```
public Boolean isClone()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Account acc = new Account(Name = 'Acme');
insert acc;
Account acc2 = acc.clone();
// Test before saving
System.assertEquals(true, acc2.isClone());
insert acc2;
// Test after saving
System.assertEquals(true, acc2.isClone());
```

isSet(fieldName)

Returns information about the queried sObject field. Returns `true` if the sObject field is populated, either by direct assignment or by inclusion in a SOQL query. Returns `false` if the sObject field is not set. If an invalid field is specified, an SObjectException is thrown.

Signature

```
public Void isSet(String fieldName)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

The `isSet` method doesn't check if a field is accessible to a specific user via org permissions or other specialized access permissions.

Example

```
Contact  c = new Contact(LastName = 'Joyce');
System.assertEquals(true, c.isSet('LastName'));
System.assertEquals(false, c.isSet('FirstName')); // FirstName field is not written to
c.firstName = null;
System.assertEquals(true, c.isSet('FirstName')); //FirstName field is written to
```

isSet(field)

Returns information about the queried sObject field. Returns `true` if the sObject field is populated, either by direct assignment or by inclusion in a SOQL query. Returns `false` if the sObject field is not set. If an invalid field is specified, an SObjectException is thrown.

Signature

```
public Void isSet(Schema.SObjectField field)
```

Parameters

field
Type:SObjectField Class

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

The `isSet` method doesn't check if a field is accessible to a specific user via org permissions or other specialized access permissions.

Example

```
Contact  newContact = new Contact(LastName = 'Joyce');
insert(newContact); //Insert a new contact with last name Joyce
Contact c = [SELECT FirstName FROM Contact WHERE Id = :newContact.Id];
System.assertEquals(true, c.isSet(Contact.FirstName)); //FirstName field in query
System.assertEquals(false, c.isSet(Contact.LastName)); //LastName field not in query
```

put(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the specified field and returns the previous value for the field.

Signature

```
public Object put(String fieldName, Object value)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

value
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Object

Example

```
Account acc = new Account(name = 'test', description = 'old desc');
String oldDesc = (String)acc.put('description', 'new desc');
System.assertEquals('old desc', oldDesc);
System.assertEquals('new desc', acc.description);
```

put(field, value)

Sets the value for the field specified by the field token `Schema.sObjectField`, such as, `Schema.Account.AccountNumber` and returns the previous value for the field.

Signature

```
public Object put(Schema.SObjectField field, Object value)
```

Parameters

field
Type: Schema.SObjectField

value
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Object

Example

```
Account acc = new Account(name = 'test', description = 'old desc');
String oldDesc = (String)acc.put(Schema.Account.Description, 'new desc');
System.assertEquals('old desc', oldDesc);
System.assertEquals('new desc', acc.description);
```

Note: Field tokens aren't available for person accounts. If you access `Schema.Account.fieldname`, you get an exception error. Instead, specify the field name as a string.

putSObject(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the specified field. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML for setting external IDs. The method returns the previous value of the field.

Signature

```
public SObject putSObject(String fieldName, SObject value)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: String

value
Type: SObject

Return Value

Type: SObject

Example

```
Account acc = new Account(name = 'Acme', description = 'Acme Account');
insert acc;
Contact con = new contact(lastname = 'AcmeCon', accountid = acc.id);
insert con;
Account acc2 = new account(name = 'Not Acme');

Contact contactDB =
    (Contact)[SELECT Id, AccountId, Account.Name FROM Contact WHERE id = :con.id LIMIT 1];
Account a = (Account)contactDB.putSObject('Account', acc2);
System.assertEquals('Acme', a.name);
System.assertEquals('Not Acme', contactDB.Account.name);
```

putSObject(fieldName, value)

Sets the value for the field specified by the token `Schema.SObjectType`. This method is primarily used with dynamic DML for setting external IDs. The method returns the previous value of the field.

Signature

```
public SObject putSObject(Schema.SObjectType fieldName, SObject value)
```

Parameters

fieldName
Type: Schema.SObjectType

value
Type: SObject

Return Value

Type: SObject

recalculateFormulas()

Recalculates all formula fields on an SObject, and sets updated field values. Rather than inserting or updating objects each time you want to test changes to your formula logic, call this method and inspect your new field values. Then make further logic changes as needed.

Signature

```
public Void recalculateFormulas()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method doesn't recalculate cross-object formulas. If you call this method on objects that have both cross-object and non-cross-object formula fields, only the non-cross-object formula fields are recalculated.

Each `recalculateFormulas` call counts against the SOQL query limits. See Execution Governors and Limits.

SEE ALSO:

What Is a Cross-Object Formula?

`setOptions(DMLOptions)`

Sets the DMLOptions object for the SObject.

Signature

```
public Void setOptions(database.DMLOptions DMLOptions)
```

Parameters

`DMLOptions`
Type: Database.DMLOptions

Return Value

Type: Void

Example

```
Database.DMLOptions dmo = new Database.dmlOptions();
dmo.assignmentRuleHeader.useDefaultRule = true;

Account acc = new Account(Name = 'Acme');
acc.setOptions(dmo);
```

SObjectAccessDecision Class

Contains the results of a call to the Security.stripInaccessible method and methods to retrieve those results.

Namespace

System

IN THIS SECTION:

SObjectAccessDecision Methods

SObjectAccessDecision Methods

The following are methods for `SObjectAccessDecision`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getModifiedIndexes()
Returns the indexes of sObjects that are modified by the stripInaccessible method.

getRecords()
Returns a list of new sObjects that are identical to the source records, except that they are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security check for the current user.

getRemovedFields()
Returns a map of sObject types to their corresponding inaccessible fields. The map key is a string representation of the sObject type. The map value is a set of strings, which denote the fields names that are inaccessible.

`getModifiedIndexes()`

Returns the indexes of sObjects that are modified by the stripInaccessible method.

Signature

```
public Set<Integer> getModifiedIndexes()
```

Return Value

Type: Set<Integer>

A set of unsigned integers that represent the row indexes of the modified sObjects.

Example

In this example, the user doesn't have permission to update the `AnnualRevenue` field of an Account.

```
List<Account> accounts = new List<Account>{
    new Account(Name='Account1', AnnualRevenue=1000),
    new Account(Name='Account2')
};

// Strip fields that are not updatable
SObjectAccessDecision decision = Security.stripInaccessible(
    AccessType.UPDATABLE,
    accounts);

// Print stripped records
for (SObject strippedAccount : decision.getRecords()) {
    System.debug(strippedAccount);
}

// Print modified indexes
System.debug(decision.getModifiedIndexes());
```

getRecords()

Returns a list of new sObjects that are identical to the source records, except that they are stripped of fields that fail the field-level security check for the current user.

Usage

The stripInaccessible method performs field-level access check for the source records in the context of the current user's operation. The `getRecords()` method returns the new records that contain only the fields that the current user has access to.

Signature

```
public List<SObject> getRecords()
```

Return Value

Type: List<SObject>

Even if the result list contains only one sObject, the return type is still a list (of size one).

Example

In this example, the user doesn't have permission to update the `AnnualRevenue` field of an Account.

```
List<Account> accounts = new List<Account>{
    new Account(Name='Account1', AnnualRevenue=1000),
    new Account(Name='Account2')
};

// Strip fields that are not updatable
SObjectAccessDecision decision = Security.stripInaccessible(
    AccessType.UPDATABLE,
    accounts);

// Print stripped records
for (SObject strippedAccount : decision.getRecords()) {
    System.debug(strippedAccount);
}
```

getRemovedFields()

Returns a map of sObject types to their corresponding inaccessible fields. The map key is a string representation of the sObject type. The map value is a set of strings, which denote the fields names that are inaccessible.

Signature

```
public Map<String,Set<String>> getRemovedFields()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String,Set<String>>

Example

In this example, the user doesn't have permission to update the `AnnualRevenue` field of an Account.

```
List<Account> accounts = new List<Account>{
    new Account(Name='Account1', AnnualRevenue=1000),
    new Account(Name='Account2')
};

// Strip fields that are not updatable
SObjectAccessDecision decision = Security.stripInaccessible(
    AccessType.UPDATABLE,
    accounts);

// Print stripped records
for (SObject strippedAccount : decision.getRecords()) {
    System.debug(strippedAccount);
}
// Print removed fields
System.debug(decision.getRemovedFields());
```

StaticResourceCalloutMock Class

Utility class used to specify a fake response for testing HTTP callouts.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the methods in this class to set the response properties for testing HTTP callouts.

IN THIS SECTION:

StaticResourceCalloutMock Constructors

StaticResourceCalloutMock Methods

StaticResourceCalloutMock Constructors

The following are constructors for `StaticResourceCalloutMock`.

IN THIS SECTION:

StaticResourceCalloutMock()

Creates a new instance of the `StaticResourceCalloutMock` class.

`StaticResourceCalloutMock()`

Creates a new instance of the `StaticResourceCalloutMock` class.

Signature

```
public StaticResourceCalloutMock()
```

StaticResourceCalloutMock Methods

The following are methods for `StaticResourceCalloutMock`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

setHeader(headerName, headerValue)
Sets the specified header name and value for the fake response.

setStaticResource(resourceName)
Sets the specified static resource, which contains the response body.

setStatus(httpStatus)
Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

setStatusCode(httpStatusCode)
Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

`setHeader(headerName, headerValue)`

Sets the specified header name and value for the fake response.

Signature

```
public Void setHeader(String headerName, String headerValue)
```

Parameters

`headerName`
Type: String

`headerValue`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

`setStaticResource(resourceName)`

Sets the specified static resource, which contains the response body.

Signature

```
public Void setStaticResource(String resourceName)
```

Parameters

resourceName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStatus(httpStatus)

Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatus(String httpStatus)
```

Parameters

httpStatus
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

setStatusCode(httpStatusCode)

Sets the specified HTTP status for the response.

Signature

```
public Void setStatusCode(Integer httpStatusCode)
```

Parameters

httpStatusCode
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Void

String Class

Contains methods for the String primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on Strings, see String Data Type.

String Methods

The following are methods for `String`.

IN THIS SECTION:

abbreviate(maxWidth)

Returns an abbreviated version of the String, of the specified length and with ellipses appended if the current String is longer than the specified length; otherwise, returns the original String without ellipses.

abbreviate(maxWidth, offset)

Returns an abbreviated version of the String, starting at the specified character offset and of the specified length. The returned String has ellipses appended at the start and the end if characters have been removed at these locations.

capitalize()

Returns the current String with the first letter changed to title case.

center(size)

Returns a version of the current String of the specified size padded with spaces on the left and right, so that it appears in the center. If the specified size is smaller than the current String size, the entire String is returned without added spaces.

center(size, paddingString)

Returns a version of the current String of the specified size padded with the specified String on the left and right, so that it appears in the center. If the specified size is smaller than the current String size, the entire String is returned without padding.

charAt(index)

Returns the value of the character at the specified index.

codePointAt(index)

Returns the Unicode code point value at the specified index.

codePointBefore(index)

Returns the Unicode code point value that occurs before the specified index.

codePointCount(beginIndex, endIndex)

Returns the number of Unicode code points within the specified text range.

compareTo(secondString)

Compares two strings lexicographically, based on the Unicode value of each character in the Strings.

contains(substring)

Returns `true` if and only if the String that called the method contains the specified sequence of characters in *`substring`*.

containsAny(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String contains any of the characters in the specified String; otherwise, returns `false`.

containsIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns `true` if the current String contains the specified sequence of characters without regard to case; otherwise, returns `false`.

containsNone(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String doesn't contain any of the characters in the specified String; otherwise, returns `false`.

containsOnly(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String contains characters only from the specified sequence of characters and not any other characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

containsWhitespace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains any white space characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

countMatches(substring)

Returns the number of times the specified substring occurs in the current String.

deleteWhitespace()

Returns a version of the current String with all white space characters removed.

difference(secondString)

Returns the difference between the current String and the specified String.

endsWith(suffix)

Returns `true` if the String that called the method ends with the specified *`suffix`*.

endsWithIgnoreCase(suffix)

Returns `true` if the current String ends with the specified suffix; otherwise, returns `false`.

equals(secondString)

Deprecated. This method is replaced by `equals(stringOrId)`. Returns `true` if the passed-in string is not null and represents the same binary sequence of characters as the current string. Use this method to perform case-sensitive comparisons.

equals(stringOrId)

Returns `true` if the passed-in object is not null and represents the same binary sequence of characters as the current string. Use this method to compare a string to an object that represents a string or an ID.

equalsIgnoreCase(secondString)

Returns `true` if the *`secondString`* is not null and represents the same sequence of characters as the String that called the method, ignoring case.

escapeCsv()

Returns a String for a CSV column enclosed in double quotes, if required.

escapeEcmaScript()

Escapes the characters in the String using EcmaScript String rules.

escapeHtml3()

Escapes the characters in a String using HTML 3.0 entities.

escapeHtml4()

Escapes the characters in a String using HTML 4.0 entities.

escapeJava()

Returns a String whose characters are escaped using Java String rules. Characters escaped include quotes and control characters, such as tab, backslash, and carriage return characters.

escapeSingleQuotes(stringToEscape)

Returns a String with the escape character (\) added before any single quotation marks in the String *`s`*.

escapeUnicode()

Returns a String whose Unicode characters are escaped to a Unicode escape sequence.

escapeXml()

Escapes the characters in a String using XML entities.

format(stringToFormat, formattingArguments)

Treat the first argument as a pattern and return a string using the second argument for substitution and formatting. The substitution and formatting are the same as `apex:outputText` and the Java `MessageFormat` class. Non-string types in the second argument's List are implicitly converted to strings, respecting the toString() method overrides that exist on the type.

fromCharArray(charArray)

Returns a String from the values of the list of integers.

getChars()

Returns an array of character values that represent the characters in this string.

getCommonPrefix(strings)

Returns the initial sequence of characters as a String that is common to all the specified Strings.

getLevenshteinDistance(stringToCompare)

Returns the Levenshtein distance between the current String and the specified String.

getLevenshteinDistance(stringToCompare, threshold)

Returns the Levenshtein distance between the current String and the specified String if it is less than or equal than the given threshold; otherwise, returns -1.

hashCode()

Returns a hash code value for this string.

indexOf(substring)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the specified substring. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

indexOf(substring, index)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring from the point of the given index. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

indexOfAny(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of any character specified in the substring. If none of the characters occur, returns -1.

indexOfAnyBut(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of a character that is not in the specified substring. Otherwise, returns -1.

indexOfChar(character)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value.

indexOfChar(character, startIndex)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value, starting from the specified index.

indexOfDifference(stringToCompare)

Returns the zero-based index of the character where the current String begins to differ from the specified String.

indexOfIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring without regard to case. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

indexOfIgnoreCase(substring, startPosition)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring from the point of index *i*, without regard to case. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

isAllLowerCase()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are lowercase; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAllUpperCase()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are uppercase; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAlpha()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters only; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAlphaSpace()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters or spaces only; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAlphanumeric()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters or numbers only; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAlphanumericSpace()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters, numbers, or spaces only; otherwise, returns `false`.

isAsciiPrintable()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only ASCII printable characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

isBlank(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is white space, empty (''), or null; otherwise, returns `false`.

isEmpty(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is empty ('') or null; otherwise, returns `false`.

isNotBlank(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is not whitespace, not empty (''), and not null; otherwise, returns `false`.

isNotEmpty(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is not empty ('') and not null; otherwise, returns `false`.

isNumeric()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only Unicode digits; otherwise, returns `false`.

isNumericSpace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only Unicode digits or spaces; otherwise, returns `false`.

isWhitespace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only white space characters or is empty; otherwise, returns `false`.

join(iterableObj, separator)

Joins the elements of the specified iterable object, such as a List, into a single String separated by the specified separator.

lastIndexOf(substring)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

lastIndexOf(substring, endPosition)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring, starting from the character at index 0 and ending at the specified index.

lastIndexOfChar(character)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value.

lastIndexOfChar(character, endIndex)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value, starting from the specified index.

lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring regardless of case.

lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(substring, endPosition)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring regardless of case, starting from the character at index 0 and ending at the specified index.

left(length)

Returns the leftmost characters of the current String of the specified length.

leftPad(length)

Returns the current String padded with spaces on the left and of the specified length.

leftPad(length, padStr)

Returns the current String padded with String `padStr` on the left and of the specified length.

length()

Returns the number of 16-bit Unicode characters contained in the String.

mid(startIndex, length)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *`startIndex`* with the number of characters specified by *`length`*.

normalizeSpace()

Returns the current String with leading, trailing, and repeating white space characters removed.

offsetByCodePoints(index, codePointOffset)

Returns the index of the Unicode code point that is offset by the specified number of code points, starting from the given index.

remove(substring)

Removes all occurrences of the specified substring and returns the String result.

removeEnd(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the end of the String.

removeEndIgnoreCase(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the end of the String using a case-insensitive match.

removeStart(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the beginning of the String.

removeStartIgnoreCase(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the beginning of the String using a case-insensitive match.

repeat(numberOfTimes)

Returns the current String repeated the specified number of times.

repeat(separator, numberOfTimes)

Returns the current String repeated the specified number of times using the specified separator to separate the repeated Strings.

replace(target, replacement)

Replaces each substring of a string that matches the literal target sequence *`target`* with the specified literal replacement sequence *`replacement`*.

replaceAll(regExp, replacement)

Replaces each substring of a string that matches the regular expression *`regExp`* with the replacement sequence *`replacement`*.

replaceFirst(regExp, replacement)

Replaces the first substring of a string that matches the regular expression *`regExp`* with the replacement sequence *`replacement`*.

reverse()

Returns a String with all the characters reversed.

right(length)

Returns the rightmost characters of the current String of the specified length.

rightPad(length)

Returns the current String padded with spaces on the right and of the specified length.

rightPad(length, padStr)

Returns the current String padded with String `padStr` on the right and of the specified length.

split(regExp)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated by either the regular expression *`regExp`* or the end of the String.

split(regExp, limit)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated by either the regular expression *`regExp`* or the end of the String.

splitByCharacterType()

Splits the current String by character type and returns a list of contiguous character groups of the same type as complete tokens.

splitByCharacterTypeCamelCase()

Splits the current String by character type and returns a list of contiguous character groups of the same type as complete tokens, with the following exception: the uppercase character, if any, immediately preceding a lowercase character token belongs to the following character token rather than to the preceding.

startsWith(prefix)

Returns `true` if the String that called the method begins with the specified *`prefix`*.

startsWithIgnoreCase(prefix)

Returns `true` if the current String begins with the specified prefix regardless of the prefix case.

stripHtmlTags()

Removes HTML markup and returns plain text.

substring(startIndex)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *`startIndex`* and extends to the end of the String.

substring(startIndex, endIndex)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *`startIndex`* and extends to the character at *`endIndex`* - 1.

substringAfter(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs after the first occurrence of the specified separator.

substringAfterLast(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs after the last occurrence of the specified separator.

substringBefore(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs before the first occurrence of the specified separator.

substringBeforeLast(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs before the last occurrence of the specified separator.

substringBetween(tag)

Returns the substring that occurs between two instances of the specified *`tag`* String.

substringBetween(open, close)

Returns the substring that occurs between the two specified Strings.

swapCase()

Swaps the case of all characters and returns the resulting String by using the default (English US) locale.

toLowerCase()

Converts all of the characters in the String to lowercase using the rules of the default (English US) locale.

toLowerCase(locale)

Converts all of the characters in the String to lowercase using the rules of the specified locale.

toUpperCase()

Converts all of the characters in the String to uppercase using the rules of the default (English US) locale.

toUpperCase(locale)

Converts all of the characters in the String to the uppercase using the rules of the specified locale.

trim()

Returns a copy of the string that no longer contains any leading or trailing white space characters.

uncapitalize()

Returns the current String with the first letter in lowercase.

unescapeCsv()

Returns a String representing an unescaped CSV column.

unescapeEcmaScript()

Unescapes any EcmaScript literals found in the String.

unescapeHtml3()

Unescapes the characters in a String using HTML 3.0 entities.

unescapeHtml4()

Unescapes the characters in a String using HTML 4.0 entities.

unescapeJava()

Returns a String whose Java literals are unescaped. Literals unescaped include escape sequences for quotes (\\") and control characters, such as tab (\\t), and carriage return (\\n).

unescapeUnicode()

Returns a String whose escaped Unicode characters are unescaped.

unescapeXml()

Unescapes the characters in a String using XML entities.

valueOf(dateToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Date in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd" format.

valueOf(datetimeToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Datetime in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" format for the local time zone.

valueOf(decimalToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Decimal.

valueOf(doubleToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Double.

valueOf(integerToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Integer.

valueOf(longToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Long.

valueOf(toConvert)

Returns a string representation of the specified object argument.

valueOfGmt(datetimeToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Datetime in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" format for the GMT time zone.

abbreviate(maxWidth)

Returns an abbreviated version of the String, of the specified length and with ellipses appended if the current String is longer than the specified length; otherwise, returns the original String without ellipses.

Signature

```
public String abbreviate(Integer maxWidth)
```

Parameters

maxWidth

Type: Integer

If *maxWidth* is less than four, this method throws a run-time exception.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Maximillian';
String s2 = s.abbreviate(8);
System.assertEquals('Hello...', s2);
System.assertEquals(8, s2.length());
```

abbreviate(maxWidth, offset)

Returns an abbreviated version of the String, starting at the specified character offset and of the specified length. The returned String has ellipses appended at the start and the end if characters have been removed at these locations.

Signature

```
public String abbreviate(Integer maxWidth, Integer offset)
```

Parameters

maxWidth

Type: Integer

Note that the offset is not necessarily the leftmost character in the returned String or the first character following the ellipses, but it appears somewhere in the result. Regardless, `abbreviate` won't return a String of length greater than *maxWidth*.If *maxWidth* is too small, this method throws a run-time exception.

offset

Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Maximillian';
// Start at M
String s2 = s.abbreviate(9,6);
System.assertEquals('...Max...', s2);
System.assertEquals(9, s2.length());
```

capitalize()

Returns the current String with the first letter changed to title case.

Signature

```
public String capitalize()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method is based on the `Character.toTitleCase(char)` Java method.

Example

```
String s = 'hello maximillian';
String s2 = s.capitalize();
System.assertEquals('Hello maximillian', s2);
```

center(size)

Returns a version of the current String of the specified size padded with spaces on the left and right, so that it appears in the center. If the specified size is smaller than the current String size, the entire String is returned without added spaces.

Signature

```
public String center(Integer size)
```

Parameters

size
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s = 'hello';
String s2 = s.center(9);
System.assertEquals(
   '  hello  ',
   s2);
```

center(size, paddingString)

Returns a version of the current String of the specified size padded with the specified String on the left and right, so that it appears in the center. If the specified size is smaller than the current String size, the entire String is returned without padding.

Signature

```
public String center(Integer size, String paddingString)
```

Parameters

size
Type: Integer

paddingString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s = 'hello';
String s2 = s.center(9, '-');
System.assertEquals('--hello--', s2);
```

charAt(index)

Returns the value of the character at the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer charAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

The index of the character to get the value of.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The integer value of the character.

Usage

The `charAt` method returns the value of the character pointed to by the specified index. If the index points to the beginning of a surrogate pair (the high-surrogate code point), this method returns only the high-surrogate code point. To return the supplementary code point corresponding to a surrogate pair, call `codePointAt` instead.

Example

This example gets the value of the first character at index 0.

```
String str = 'Ω is Omega.';
System.assertEquals(937, str.charAt(0));
```

This example shows the difference between `charAt` and `codePointAt`. The example calls these methods on escaped supplementary Unicode characters. `charAt(0)` returns the high surrogate value, which corresponds to `\uD835`. `codePointAt(0)` returns the value for the entire surrogate pair.

```
String str = '\uD835\uDD0A';
System.assertEquals(55349, str.charAt(0),
    'charAt(0) didn\'t return the high surrogate.');
System.assertEquals(120074, str.codePointAt(0),
    'codePointAt(0) didn\'t return the entire two-character supplementary value.');
```

codePointAt(index)

Returns the Unicode code point value at the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer codePointAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index

Type: Integer

The index of the characters (Unicode code units) in the string. The index range is from zero to the string length minus one.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The Unicode code point value at the specified index.

Usage

If the *index* points to the beginning of a surrogate pair (the high-surrogate code point), and the character value at the following index points to the low-surrogate code point, this method returns the supplementary code point corresponding to this surrogate pair. Otherwise, this method returns the character value at the given index.

For more information on Unicode and surrogate pairs, see The Unicode Consortium.

Example

This example gets the code point value of the first character at index 0, which is the escaped Omega character. Also, the example gets the code point at index 20, which corresponds to the escaped supplementary Unicode characters (a pair of characters). Finally, it verifies that the escaped and unescaped forms of Omega have the same code point values.

The supplementary characters in this example (`\\uD835\\uDD0A`) correspond to mathematical fraktur capital G: 𝔊

```
String str = '\u03A9 is Ω (Omega), and \uD835\uDD0A ' +
    ' is Fraktur Capital G.';
System.assertEquals(937, str.codePointAt(0));
System.assertEquals(120074, str.codePointAt(20));
// Escaped or unescaped forms of the same character have the same code point
System.assertEquals(str.codePointAt(0), str.codePointAt(5));
```

codePointBefore(index)

Returns the Unicode code point value that occurs before the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer codePointBefore(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

The index before the Unicode code point that is to be returned. The index range is from one to the string length.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The character or Unicode code point value that occurs before the specified index.

Usage

If the character value at ***index***`-1` is the low-surrogate code point, and ***index***`-2` is not negative and the character at this index location is the high-surrogate code point, this method returns the supplementary code point corresponding to this surrogate pair. If the character value at ***index***`-1` is an unpaired low-surrogate or high-surrogate code point, the surrogate value is returned.

For more information on Unicode and surrogate pairs, see The Unicode Consortium.

Example

This example gets the code point value of the first character (before index 1), which is the escaped Omega character. Also, the example gets the code point at index 20, which corresponds to the escaped supplementary characters (the two characters before index 22).

```
String str = '\u03A9 is Ω (Omega), and \uD835\uDD0A ' +
    ' is Fraktur Capital G.';
System.assertEquals(937, str.codePointBefore(1));
System.assertEquals(120074, str.codePointBefore(22));
```

codePointCount(beginIndex, endIndex)

Returns the number of Unicode code points within the specified text range.

Signature

```
public Integer codePointCount(Integer beginIndex, Integer endIndex)
```

Parameters

beginIndex
Type: Integer

The index of the first character in the range.

endIndex
Type: Integer

The index after the last character in the range.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The number of Unicode code points within the specified range.

Usage

The specified range begins at *beginIndex* and ends at ***endIndex***—1. Unpaired surrogates within the text range count as one code point each.

Example

This example writes the count of code points in a substring that contains an escaped Unicode character and another substring that contains Unicode supplementary characters, which count as one code point.

```
String str = '\u03A9 and \uD835\uDD0A characters.';
System.debug('Count of code points for ' + str.substring(0,1)
             + ': ' + str.codePointCount(0,1));
System.debug('Count of code points for ' + str.substring(6,8)
             + ': ' + str.codePointCount(6,8));

// Output:
// Count of code points for Ω: 1
// Count of code points for □□: 1
```

compareTo(secondString)

Compares two strings lexicographically, based on the Unicode value of each character in the Strings.

Signature

```
public Integer compareTo(String secondString)
```

Parameters

secondString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The result is:

- A negative Integer if the String that called the method lexicographically precedes *secondString*
- A positive Integer if the String that called the method lexicographically follows *compsecondStringString*
- Zero if the Strings are equal

If there is no index position at which the Strings differ, then the shorter String lexicographically precedes the longer String.

Note that this method returns 0 whenever the `equals` method returns true.

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcde';
String myString2 = 'abcd';
Integer result =
   myString1.compareTo(myString2);
System.assertEquals(result, 1);
```

contains(substring)

Returns `true` if and only if the String that called the method contains the specified sequence of characters in *substring*.

Signature

```
public Boolean contains(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcde';
String myString2 = 'abcd';
Boolean result =
   myString1.contains(myString2);
System.assertEquals(result, true);
```

containsAny(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String contains any of the characters in the specified String; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsAny(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s = 'hello';
Boolean b1 = s.containsAny('hx');
Boolean b2 = s.containsAny('x');
System.assertEquals(true, b1);
System.assertEquals(false, b2);
```

containsIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns `true` if the current String contains the specified sequence of characters without regard to case; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsIgnoreCase(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s = 'hello';
Boolean b = s.containsIgnoreCase('HE');
System.assertEquals(
   true,
   b);
```

containsNone(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String doesn't contain any of the characters in the specified String; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsNone(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

If *inputString* is an empty string or the current String is empty, this method returns `true`. If *inputString* is null, this method returns a run-time exception.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcde';
System.assert(s1.containsNone('fg'));
```

containsOnly(inputString)

Returns `true` if the current String contains characters only from the specified sequence of characters and not any other characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsOnly(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s1 = 'abba';
String s2 = 'abba xyz';
Boolean b1 =
   s1.containsOnly('abcd');
System.assertEquals(
   true,
   b1);
Boolean b2 =
   s2.containsOnly('abcd');
System.assertEquals(
   false,
   b2);
```

containsWhitespace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains any white space characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean containsWhitespace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jane';
System.assert(s.containsWhitespace()); //true
s = 'HelloJane ';
System.assert(s.containsWhitespace()); //true
s = ' HelloJane';
System.assert(s.containsWhitespace()); //true
s = 'HelloJane';
System.assert(!s.containsWhitespace()); //false
```

countMatches(substring)

Returns the number of times the specified substring occurs in the current String.

Signature

```
public Integer countMatches(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jane';
System.assertEquals(1, s.countMatches('Hello'));
s = 'Hello Hello';
System.assertEquals(2, s.countMatches('Hello'));
s = 'Hello hello';
System.assertEquals(1, s.countMatches('Hello'));
```

deleteWhitespace()

Returns a version of the current String with all white space characters removed.

Signature

```
public String deleteWhitespace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = ' Hello Jane ';
String s2 = 'HelloJane';
System.assertEquals(s2, s1.deleteWhitespace());
```

difference(secondString)

Returns the difference between the current String and the specified String.

Signature

```
public String difference(String secondString)
```

Parameters

secondString

Type: String

If *secondString* is an empty string, this method returns an empty string.If *secondString* is null, this method throws a run-time exception.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jane';
String d1 =
   s.difference('Hello Max');
System.assertEquals(
   'Max',
   d1);
String d2 =
   s.difference('Goodbye');
System.assertEquals(
   'Goodbye',
   d2);
```

endsWith(suffix)

Returns `true` if the String that called the method ends with the specified *`suffix`*.

Signature

```
public Boolean endsWith(String suffix)
```

Parameters

`suffix`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jason';
System.assert(s.endsWith('Jason'));
```

endsWithIgnoreCase(suffix)

Returns `true` if the current String ends with the specified suffix; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean endsWithIgnoreCase(String suffix)
```

Parameters

`suffix`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jason';
System.assert(s.endsWithIgnoreCase('jason'));
```

equals(secondString)

Deprecated. This method is replaced by `equals(stringOrId)`. Returns `true` if the passed-in string is not null and represents the same binary sequence of characters as the current string. Use this method to perform case-sensitive comparisons.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(String secondString)
```

Parameters

secondString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method returns `true` when the `compareTo` method returns 0.

Use this method to perform case-sensitive comparisons. In contrast, the `==` operator performs case-insensitive string comparisons to match Apex semantics.

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcde';
String myString2 = 'abcd';
Boolean result = myString1.equals(myString2);
System.assertEquals(result, false);
```

equals(stringOrId)

Returns `true` if the passed-in object is not null and represents the same binary sequence of characters as the current string. Use this method to compare a string to an object that represents a string or an ID.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Object stringOrId)
```

Parameters

stringOrId
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

If you compare ID values, the lengths of IDs don't need to be equal. For example, if you compare a 15-character ID string to an object that represents the equivalent 18-character ID value, this method returns `true`. For more information about 15-character and 18-character IDs, see the ID Data Type.

Use this method to perform case-sensitive comparisons. In contrast, the `==` operator performs case-insensitive string comparisons to match Apex semantics.

Example

These examples show comparisons between different types of variables with both equal and unequal values. The examples also show how Apex automatically converts certain values before comparing them.

```
// Compare a string to an object containing a string
Object obj1 = 'abc';
String str = 'abc';
Boolean result1 = str.equals(obj1);
System.assertEquals(true, result1);

// Compare a string to an object containing a number
Integer obj2 = 100;
Boolean result2 = str.equals(obj2);
System.assertEquals(false, result2);

// Compare a string to an ID of the same length.
// 15-character ID
Id idValue15 = '001D000000Ju1zH';
// 15-character ID string value
String stringValue15 = '001D000000Ju1zH';
Boolean result3 = stringValue15.equals(IdValue15);
System.assertEquals(true, result3);

// Compare two equal ID values of different lengths:
//  15-character ID and 18-character ID
Id idValue18 = '001D000000Ju1zHIAR';
Boolean result4 = stringValue15.equals(IdValue18);
System.assertEquals(true, result4);
```

equalsIgnoreCase(secondString)

Returns `true` if the *secondString* is not null and represents the same sequence of characters as the String that called the method, ignoring case.

Signature

```
public Boolean equalsIgnoreCase(String secondString)
```

Parameters

secondString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcd';
String myString2 = 'ABCD';
Boolean result =
myString1.equalsIgnoreCase(myString2);
System.assertEquals(result, true);
```

escapeCsv()

Returns a String for a CSV column enclosed in double quotes, if required.

Signature

```
public String escapeCsv()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If the String contains a comma, newline or double quote, the returned String is enclosed in double quotes. Also, any double quote characters in the String are escaped with another double quote.

If the String doesn't contain a comma, newline or double quote, it is returned unchanged.

Example

```
String s1 = 'Max1, "Max2"';
String s2 = s1.escapeCsv();
System.assertEquals('"Max1, ""Max2"""', s2);
```

escapeEcmaScript()

Escapes the characters in the String using EcmaScript String rules.

Signature

```
public String escapeEcmaScript()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The only difference between Apex strings and EcmaScript strings is that in EcmaScript, a single quote and forward-slash (/) are escaped.

Example

```
String s1 = '"grade": 3.9/4.0';
String s2 = s1.escapeEcmaScript();
System.debug(s2);
// Output is:
// \"grade\": 3.9\/4.0
System.assertEquals(
   '\\"grade\\": 3.9\\/4.0',
    s2);
```

escapeHtml3()

Escapes the characters in a String using HTML 3.0 entities.

Signature

```
public String escapeHtml3()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 =
   '"<Black&White>"';
String s2 =
   s1.escapeHtml3();
System.debug(s2);
// Output:
// &quot;&lt;Black&amp;
// White&gt;&quot;
```

escapeHtml4()

Escapes the characters in a String using HTML 4.0 entities.

Signature

```
public String escapeHtml4()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 =
   '"<Black&White>"';
String s2 =
   s1.escapeHtml4();
System.debug(s2);
// Output:
// &quot;&lt;Black&amp;
// White&gt;&quot;
```

escapeJava()

Returns a String whose characters are escaped using Java String rules. Characters escaped include quotes and control characters, such as tab, backslash, and carriage return characters.

Signature

```
public String escapeJava()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The escaped string.

Example

```
// Input string contains quotation marks
String s = 'Company: "Salesforce.com"';
String escapedStr = s.escapeJava();
// Output string has the quotes escpaded
System.assertEquals('Company: \\"Salesforce.com\\"', escapedStr);
```

escapeSingleQuotes(stringToEscape)

Returns a String with the escape character (\) added before any single quotation marks in the String *s*.

Signature

```
public static String escapeSingleQuotes(String stringToEscape)
```

Parameters

stringToEscape
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method is useful when creating a dynamic SOQL statement, to help prevent SOQL injection. For more information on dynamic SOQL, see Dynamic SOQL.

Example

```
String s = '\'Hello Jason\'';
system.debug(s); // Outputs 'Hello Jason'
String escapedStr = String.escapeSingleQuotes(s);
// Outputs \'Hello Jason\'
system.debug(escapedStr);
// Escapes the string \\\' to string \'
system.assertEquals('\\\'Hello Jason\\\'', escapedStr);
```

escapeUnicode()

Returns a String whose Unicode characters are escaped to a Unicode escape sequence.

Signature

```
public String escapeUnicode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The escaped string.

Example

```
String s = 'De onde você é?';
String escapedStr = s.escapeUnicode();
System.assertEquals('De onde voc\\u00EA \\u00E9?', escapedStr);
```

escapeXml()

Escapes the characters in a String using XML entities.

Signature

```
public String escapeXml()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Supports only the five basic XML entities (gt, lt, quot, amp, apos). Does not support DTDs or external entities. Unicode characters greater than 0x7f are not escaped.

Example

```
String s1 =
    '"<Black&White>"';
String s2 =
    s1.escapeXml();
System.debug(s2);
// Output:
// &quot;&lt;Black&amp;
// White&gt;&quot;
```

format(stringToFormat, formattingArguments)

Treat the first argument as a pattern and return a string using the second argument for substitution and formatting. The substitution and formatting are the same as `apex:outputText` and the Java `MessageFormat` class. Non-string types in the second argument's List are implicitly converted to strings, respecting the toString() method overrides that exist on the type.

Signature

```
public static String format(String stringToFormat, List<Object> formattingArguments)
```

Parameters

stringToFormat
Type: String

formattingArguments
Type: List<Object>

Return Value

Type: String

Versioned Behavior Changes

From version 51.0 and later, the `format()` method supports single quotes in the `stringToFormat` parameter and returns a formatted string using the `formattingArguments` parameter. In version 50.0 and earlier, single quotes weren't supported.

Example

```
String template = '{0} was last updated {1}';
List<Object> parameters = new List<Object> {'Universal Containers',
DateTime.newInstance(2018, 11, 15) };
```

```
String formatted = String.format(template, parameters);
System.debug ('Newly formatted string is:' + formatted);
```

fromCharArray(charArray)

Returns a String from the values of the list of integers.

Signature

```
public static String fromCharArray(List<Integer> charArray)
```

Parameters

charArray
Type: List<Integer>

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
List<Integer> charArr= new Integer[]{74};
String convertedChar = String.fromCharArray(charArr);
System.assertEquals('J', convertedChar);
```

getChars()

Returns an array of character values that represent the characters in this string.

Signature

```
public List<Integer> getChars()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Integer>

A list of integers, each corresponding to a character value in the string.

Example

This sample converts a string to a character array and then gets the first array element, which corresponds to the value of 'J'.

```
String str = 'Jane goes fishing.';
Integer[] chars = str.getChars();
// Get the value of 'J'
System.assertEquals(74, chars[0]);
```

getCommonPrefix(strings)

Returns the initial sequence of characters as a String that is common to all the specified Strings.

Signature

```
public static String getCommonPrefix(List<String> strings)
```

Parameters

strings
Type: List<String>

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
List<String> ls = new List<String>{'SFDCApex', 'SFDCVisualforce'};
String prefix = String.getCommonPrefix(ls);
System.assertEquals('SFDC', prefix);
```

getLevenshteinDistance(stringToCompare)

Returns the Levenshtein distance between the current String and the specified String.

Signature

```
public Integer getLevenshteinDistance(String stringToCompare)
```

Parameters

stringToCompare
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The Levenshtein distance is the number of changes needed to change one String into another. Each change is a single character modification (deletion, insertion or substitution).

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Joe';
Integer i = s.getLevenshteinDistance('Hello Max');
System.assertEquals(3, i);
```

getLevenshteinDistance(stringToCompare, threshold)

Returns the Levenshtein distance between the current String and the specified String if it is less than or equal than the given threshold; otherwise, returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer getLevenshteinDistance(String stringToCompare, Integer threshold)
```

Parameters

stringToCompare
Type: String

threshold
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The Levenshtein distance is the number of changes needed to change one String into another. Each change is a single character modification (deletion, insertion or substitution).

Example:

In this example, the Levenshtein distance is 3, but the threshold argument is 2, which is less than the distance, so this method returns -1.

Example

```
String s = 'Hello Jane';
Integer i = s.getLevenshteinDistance('Hello Max', 2);
System.assertEquals(-1, i);
```

hashCode()

Returns a hash code value for this string.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

This value is based on the hash code computed by the Java `String.hashCode` counterpart method.

You can use this method to simplify the computation of a hash code for a custom type that contains String member variables. You can compute your type's hash code value based on the hash code of each String variable. For example:

For more details about the use of hash code methods with custom types, see Using Custom Types in Map Keys and Sets.

Example

```
public class MyCustomClass {
   String x,y;
   // Provide a custom hash code
   public Integer hashCode() {
    return
    (31*x.hashCode())^(y.hashCode());
   }
}
```

indexOf(substring)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the specified substring. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOf(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcde';
String myString2 = 'cd';
Integer result = myString1.indexOf(mystring2);
System.assertEquals(2, result);
```

indexOf(substring, index)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring from the point of the given index. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOf(String substring, Integer index)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcdabcd';
String myString2 = 'ab';
Integer result = myString1.indexOf(mystring2, 1);
System.assertEquals(4, result);
```

indexOfAny(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of any character specified in the substring. If none of the characters occur, returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfAny(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcd';
String s2 = 'xc';
Integer result = s1.indexOfAny(s2);
System.assertEquals(2, result);
```

indexOfAnyBut(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of a character that is not in the specified substring. Otherwise, returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfAnyBut(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcd';
String s2 = 'xc';
Integer result = s1.indexOfAnyBut(s2);
System.assertEquals(0, result);
```

indexOfChar(character)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfChar(Integer character)
```

Parameters

character
Type: Integer

The integer value of the character in the string.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The index of the first occurrence of the specified character, -1 if the character is not found.

Usage

The index that this method returns is in Unicode code units.

Example

```
String str = '\\u03A9 is Ω (Omega)';
// Returns 0, which is the first character.
System.debug('indexOfChar(937)=' + str.indexOfChar(937));

// Output:
// indexOfChar(937)=0
```

indexOfChar(character, startIndex)

Returns the index of the first occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value, starting from the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfChar(Integer character, Integer startIndex)
```

Parameters

character
Type: Integer

The integer value of the character to look for.

startIndex
Type: Integer

The index to start the search from.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The index, starting from the specified start index, of the first occurrence of the specified character, -1 if the character is not found.

Usage

The index that this method returns is in Unicode code units.

Example

This example shows different ways of searching for the index of the Omega character. The first call to `indexOfChar` doesn't specify a start index and therefore the returned index is 0, which is the first occurrence of Omega in the entire string. The subsequent calls specify a start index to find the occurrence of Omega in substrings that start at the specified index.

```
String str = 'Ω and \\u03A9 and Ω';
System.debug('indexOfChar(937)=' + str.indexOfChar(937));
System.debug('indexOfChar(937,1)=' + str.indexOfChar(937,1));
System.debug('indexOfChar(937,10)=' + str.indexOfChar(937,10));

// Output:
// indexOfChar(937)=0
// indexOfChar(937,1)=6, (corresponds to the escaped form \\u03A9)
// indexOfChar(937,10)=12
```

indexOfDifference(stringToCompare)

Returns the zero-based index of the character where the current String begins to differ from the specified String.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfDifference(String stringToCompare)
```

Parameters

stringToCompare
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcd';
String s2 = 'abxc';
Integer result = s1.indexOfDifference(s2);
System.assertEquals(2, result);
```

indexOfIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring without regard to case. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfIgnoreCase(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcd';
String s2 = 'BC';
Integer result = s1.indexOfIgnoreCase(s2, 0);
System.assertEquals(1, result);
```

indexOfIgnoreCase(substring, startPosition)

Returns the zero-based index of the first occurrence of the specified substring from the point of index `i`, without regard to case. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer indexOfIgnoreCase(String substring, Integer startPosition)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

startPosition
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

isAllLowerCase()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are lowercase; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAllLowerCase()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String allLower = 'abcde';
System.assert(allLower.isAllLowerCase());
```

isAllUpperCase()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are uppercase; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAllUpperCase()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String allUpper = 'ABCDE';
System.assert(allUpper.isAllUpperCase());
```

isAlpha()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters only; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAlpha()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
// Letters only
String s1 = 'abc';
// Returns true
Boolean b1 =
   s1.isAlpha();
System.assertEquals(
   true, b1);

// Letters and numbers
String s2 = 'abc 21';
// Returns false
Boolean b2 =
   s2.isAlpha();
System.assertEquals(
   false, b2);
```

isAlphaSpace()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters or spaces only; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAlphaSpace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String alphaSpace = 'aA Bb';
System.assert(alphaSpace.isAlphaSpace());
String notAlphaSpace = 'ab 12';
System.assert(!notAlphaSpace.isAlphaSpace());
notAlphaSpace = 'aA$Bb';
System.assert(!notAlphaSpace.isAlphaSpace());
```

isAlphanumeric()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters or numbers only; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAlphanumeric()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
// Letters only
String s1 = 'abc';
// Returns true
Boolean b1 =
   s1.isAlphanumeric();
System.assertEquals(
   true, b1);

// Letters and numbers
String s2 = 'abc021';
// Returns true
Boolean b2 =
   s2.isAlphanumeric();
System.assertEquals(
   true, b2);
```

isAlphanumericSpace()

Returns `true` if all characters in the current String are Unicode letters, numbers, or spaces only; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAlphanumericSpace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String alphanumSpace = 'AE 86';
System.assert(alphanumSpace.isAlphanumericSpace());
String notAlphanumSpace = 'aA$12';
System.assert(!notAlphanumSpace.isAlphaSpace());
```

isAsciiPrintable()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only ASCII printable characters; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAsciiPrintable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String ascii = 'abcd1234!@#$%^&*()`~-_+={[}]|:<,>.?';
System.assert(ascii.isAsciiPrintable());
String notAscii = '√';
System.assert(!notAscii.isAsciiPrintable());
```

isBlank(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is white space, empty (''), or null; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isBlank(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String blank = '';
String nullString = null;
String whitespace = '  ';
System.assert(String.isBlank(blank));
System.assert(String.isBlank(nullString));
System.assert(String.isBlank(whitespace));
String alpha = 'Hello';
System.assert(!String.isBlank(alpha));
```

isEmpty(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is empty ('') or null; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isEmpty(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String empty = '';
String nullString = null;
System.assert(String.isEmpty(empty));
System.assert(String.isEmpty(nullString));
String whitespace = '  ';
String alpha = 'Hello';
System.assert(!String.isEmpty(whitespace));
System.assert(!String.isEmpty(alpha));
```

isNotBlank(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is not whitespace, not empty (''), and not null; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isNotBlank(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String alpha = 'Hello world!';
System.assert(String.isNotBlank(alpha));
String blank = '';
String nullString = null;
String whitespace = '  ';
System.assert(!String.isNotBlank(blank));
System.assert(!String.isNotBlank(nullString));
System.assert(!String.isNotBlank(whitespace));
```

isNotEmpty(inputString)

Returns `true` if the specified String is not empty ('') and not null; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isNotEmpty(String inputString)
```

Parameters

inputString
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String whitespace = '  ';
String alpha = 'Hello world!';
System.assert(String.isNotEmpty(whitespace));
System.assert(String.isNotEmpty(alpha));
String empty = '';
String nullString = null;
System.assert(!String.isNotEmpty(empty));
System.assert(!String.isNotEmpty(nullString));
```

isNumeric()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only Unicode digits; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isNumeric()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

A decimal point (1.2) is not a Unicode digit.

Example

```
String numeric = '1234567890';
System.assert(numeric.isNumeric());
String alphanumeric = 'R32';
String decimalPoint = '1.2';
System.assert(!alphanumeric.isNumeric());
System.assert(!decimalpoint.isNumeric());
```

isNumericSpace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only Unicode digits or spaces; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isNumericSpace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

A decimal point (1.2) is not a Unicode digit.

Example

```
String numericSpace = '1 2 3';
System.assert(numericSpace.isNumericspace());
String notNumericspace = 'FD3S FC3S';
System.assert(!notNumericspace.isNumericspace());
```

isWhitespace()

Returns `true` if the current String contains only white space characters or is empty; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isWhitespace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String whitespace = ' ';
String blank = '';
System.assert(whitespace.isWhitespace());
System.assert(blank.isWhitespace());
String alphanum = 'SIL80';
System.assert(!alphanum.isWhitespace());
```

join(iterableObj, separator)

Joins the elements of the specified iterable object, such as a List, into a single String separated by the specified separator.

Signature

```
public static String join(Object iterableObj, String separator)
```

Parameters

iterableObj
Type: Object

separator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

```
List<Integer> li = new
   List<Integer>
   {10, 20, 30};
String s = String.join(
   li, '/');
System.assertEquals(
   '10/20/30', s);
```

lastIndexOf(substring)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring. If the substring does not occur, this method returns -1.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOf(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdefgc';
Integer i1 = s1.lastIndexOf('c');
System.assertEquals(7, i1);
```

lastIndexOf(substring, endPosition)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring, starting from the character at index 0 and ending at the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOf(String substring, Integer endPosition)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

endPosition
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If the substring doesn't occur or *endPosition* is negative, this method returns -1. If *endPosition* is larger than the last index in the current String, the entire String is searched.

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdaacd';
Integer i1 = s1.lastIndexOf('c', 7);
System.assertEquals(6, i1);
Integer i2 = s1.lastIndexOf('c', 3);
System.assertEquals(2, i2);
```

lastIndexOfChar(character)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOfChar(Integer character)
```

Parameters

character
Type: Integer

The integer value of the character in the string.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The index of the last occurrence of the specified character, -1 if the character is not found.

Usage

The index that this method returns is in Unicode code units.

Example

```
String str = '\u03A9 is Ω (Omega)';
// Get the last occurrence of Omega.
System.assertEquals(5, str.lastIndexOfChar(937));
```

lastIndexOfChar(character, endIndex)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the character that corresponds to the specified character value, starting from the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOfChar(Integer character, Integer endIndex)
```

Parameters

character
Type: Integer

The integer value of the character to look for.

endIndex
Type: Integer

The index to end the search at.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The index, starting from the specified start index, of the last occurrence of the specified character. -1 if the character is not found.

Usage

The index that this method returns is in Unicode code units.

Example

This example shows different ways of searching for the index of the last occurrence of the Omega character. The first call to `lastIndexOfChar` doesn't specify an end index and therefore the returned index is 12, which is the last occurrence of Omega in the entire string. The subsequent calls specify an end index to find the last occurrence of Omega in substrings.

```
String str = 'Ω and \u03A9 and Ω';
System.assertEquals(12, str.lastIndexOfChar(937));
System.assertEquals(6, str.lastIndexOfChar(937,11));
System.assertEquals(0, str.lastIndexOfChar(937,5));
```

lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(substring)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring regardless of case.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If the substring doesn't occur, this method returns -1.

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdaacd';
Integer i1 = s1.lastIndexOfIgnoreCase('DAAC');
System.assertEquals(3, i1);
```

lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(substring, endPosition)

Returns the index of the last occurrence of the specified substring regardless of case, starting from the character at index 0 and ending at the specified index.

Signature

```
public Integer lastIndexOfIgnoreCase(String substring, Integer endPosition)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

endPosition
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

If the substring doesn't occur or *endPosition* is negative, this method returns -1. If *endPosition* is larger than the last index in the current String, the entire String is searched.

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdaacd';
Integer i1 = s1.lastIndexOfIgnoreCase('C', 7);
System.assertEquals(6, i1);
```

left(length)

Returns the leftmost characters of the current String of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String left(Integer length)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If *length* is greater than the String size, the entire String is returned.

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdaacd';
String s2 = s1.left(3);
System.assertEquals('abc', s2);
```

leftPad(length)

Returns the current String padded with spaces on the left and of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String leftPad(Integer length)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

Usage

If *length* is less than or equal to the current String size, the entire String is returned without space padding.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'abc';
String s2 = s1.leftPad(5);
System.assertEquals('  abc', s2);
```

leftPad(length, padStr)

Returns the current String padded with String `padStr` on the left and of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String leftPad(Integer length, String padStr)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

padStr
Type: String

String to pad with; if null or empty treated as single blank.

Usage

If *length* is less than or equal to the current String size, the entire String is returned without space padding.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'abc';
String s2 = 'xy';
String s3 = s1.leftPad(7,s2);
System.assertEquals('xyxyabc', s3);
```

length()

Returns the number of 16-bit Unicode characters contained in the String.

Signature

```
public Integer length()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
String myString = 'abcd';
Integer result = myString.length();
System.assertEquals(result, 4);
```

mid(startIndex, length)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *startIndex* with the number of characters specified by *length*.

Signature

```
public String mid(Integer startIndex, Integer length)
```

Parameters

startIndex
Type: Integer

If *startIndex* is negative, it is considered to be zero.

length
Type: Integer

If *length* is negative or zero, an empty String is returned. If *length* is greater than the remaining characters, the remainder of the String is returned.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method is similar to the `substring(startIndex)` and `substring(startIndex, endIndex)` methods, except that the second argument is the number of characters to return.

Example

```
String s = 'abcde';
String s2 = s.mid(2, 3);
System.assertEquals(
   'cde', s2);
```

normalizeSpace()

Returns the current String with leading, trailing, and repeating white space characters removed.

Signature

```
public String normalizeSpace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method normalizes the following white space characters: space, tab (\t), new line (\n), carriage return (\r), and form feed (\f).

Example

```
String s1 =
   'Salesforce \t     force.com';
String s2 =
   s1.normalizeSpace();
System.assertEquals(
   'Salesforce force.com', s2);
```

offsetByCodePoints(index, codePointOffset)

Returns the index of the Unicode code point that is offset by the specified number of code points, starting from the given index.

Signature

```
public Integer offsetByCodePoints(Integer index, Integer codePointOffset)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

The start index in the string.

codePointOffset
Type: Integer

The number of code points to be offset.

Return Value

Type: Integer

The index that corresponds to the start index that is added to the offset.

Usage

Unpaired surrogates within the text range that is specified by *index* and *codePointOffset* count as one code point each.

Example

This example calls `offsetByCodePoints` on a string with a start index of 0 (to start from the first character) and an offset of three code points. The string contains one sequence of supplementary characters in escaped form (a pair of characters). After an offset of three code points when counting from the beginning of the string, the returned code point index is four.

```
String str = 'A \uD835\uDD0A BC';
System.assertEquals(4, str.offsetByCodePoints(0,3));
```

remove(substring)

Removes all occurrences of the specified substring and returns the String result.

Signature

```
public String remove(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce and force.com';
String s2 =
   s1.remove('force');
System.assertEquals(
   'Sales and .com', s2);
```

removeEnd(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the end of the String.

Signature

```
public String removeEnd(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce and force.com';
String s2 =
   s1.removeEnd('.com');
System.assertEquals(
   'Salesforce and force', s2);
```

removeEndIgnoreCase(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the end of the String using a case-insensitive match.

Signature

```
public String removeEndIgnoreCase(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce and force.com';
String s2 = s1.removeEndIgnoreCase('.COM');
System.assertEquals('Salesforce and force', s2);
```

removeStart(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the beginning of the String.

Signature

```
public String removeStart(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce and force.com';
String s2 =
   s1.removeStart('Sales');
System.assertEquals(
   'force and force.com', s2);
```

removeStartIgnoreCase(substring)

Removes the specified substring only if it occurs at the beginning of the String using a case-insensitive match.

Signature

```
public String removeStartIgnoreCase(String substring)
```

Parameters

substring
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce and force.com';
String s2 =
   s1.removeStartIgnoreCase('SALES');
System.assertEquals(
   'force and force.com', s2);
```

repeat(numberOfTimes)

Returns the current String repeated the specified number of times.

Signature

```
public String repeat(Integer numberOfTimes)
```

Parameters

numberOfTimes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'SFDC';
String s2 = s1.repeat(2);
System.assertEquals('SFDCSFDC', s2);
```

repeat(separator, numberOfTimes)

Returns the current String repeated the specified number of times using the specified separator to separate the repeated Strings.

Signature

```
public String repeat(String separator, Integer numberOfTimes)
```

Parameters

separator
Type: String

numberOfTimes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'SFDC';
String s2 =
   s1.repeat('-', 2);
System.assertEquals(
   'SFDC-SFDC', s2);
```

replace(target, replacement)

Replaces each substring of a string that matches the literal target sequence *target* with the specified literal replacement sequence *replacement*.

Signature

```
public String replace(String target, String replacement)
```

Parameters

target
Type: String

replacement
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'abcdbca';
String target = 'bc';
String replacement = 'xy';
String s2 = s1.replace(target, replacement);
System.assertEquals('axydxya', s2);
```

replaceAll(regExp, replacement)

Replaces each substring of a string that matches the regular expression *regExp* with the replacement sequence *replacement*.

Signature

```
public String replaceAll(String regExp, String replacement)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

replacement
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

See the Java `Pattern` class for information on regular expressions.

Example

```
String s1 = 'a b c 5 xyz';
String regExp = '[a-zA-Z]';
String replacement = '1';
String s2 = s1.replaceAll(regExp, replacement);
System.assertEquals('1 1 1 5 111', s2);
```

replaceFirst(regExp, replacement)

Replaces the first substring of a string that matches the regular expression *regExp* with the replacement sequence *replacement*.

Signature

```
public String replaceFirst(String regExp, String replacement)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

replacement
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

See the Java `Pattern` class for information on regular expressions.

Example

```
String s1 = 'a b c 11 xyz';
String regExp = '[a-zA-Z]{2}';
String replacement = '2';
String s2 = s1.replaceFirst(regExp, replacement);
System.assertEquals('a b c 11 2z', s2);
```

reverse()

Returns a String with all the characters reversed.

Signature

```
public String reverse()
```

Return Value

Type: String

right(length)

Returns the rightmost characters of the current String of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String right(Integer length)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

If *length* is greater than the String size, the entire String is returned.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Hello Max';
String s2 =
   s1.right(3);
System.assertEquals(
   'Max', s2);
```

rightPad(length)

Returns the current String padded with spaces on the right and of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String rightPad(Integer length)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

If *length* is less than or equal to the current String size, the entire String is returned without space padding.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'abc';
String s2 =
   s1.rightPad(5);
System.assertEquals(
   'abc  ', s2);
```

rightPad(length, padStr)

Returns the current String padded with String `padStr` on the right and of the specified length.

Signature

```
public String rightPad(Integer length, String padStr)
```

Parameters

length
Type: Integer

padStr
Type: String

String to pad with; if null or empty treated as single blank.

Usage

If *length* is less than or equal to the current String size, the entire String is returned without space padding.

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'abc';
String s2 = 'xy';
String s3 = s1.rightPad(7, s2);
System.assertEquals('abcxyxy', s3);
```

split(regExp)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated by either the regular expression *regExp* or the end of the String.

Signature

```
public String[] split(String regExp)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String[]

Note: In API version 34.0 and earlier, a zero-width *regExp* value produces an empty list item at the beginning of the method's output.

Usage

See the Java `Pattern` class for information on regular expressions.

The substrings are placed in the list in the order in which they occur in the String. If *regExp* does not match any part of the String, the resulting list has just one element containing the original String.

Example

In the following example, a string is split using a backslash as a delimiter.

```
public String splitPath(String filename) {
    if (filename == null)
        return null;
    List<String> parts = filename.split('\\\\');
    filename = parts[parts.size()-1];
    return filename;
}

// For example, if the file path is e:\\processed\\PPDSF100111.csv
// This method splits the path and returns the last part.
// Returned filename is PPDSF100111.csv
```

split(regExp, limit)

Returns a list that contains each substring of the String that is terminated by either the regular expression *regExp* or the end of the String.

Signature

```
public String[] split(String regExp, Integer limit)
```

Parameters

regExp
Type: String

A regular expression.

limit
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String[]

Note: In API version 34.0 and earlier, a zero-width *regExp* value produces an empty list item at the beginning of the method's output.

Usage

The optional *limit* parameter controls the number of times the pattern is applied and therefore affects the length of the list.

- If *limit* is greater than zero:
  - The pattern is applied a maximum of (*limit* – 1) times.
  - The list's length is no greater than *limit*.
  - The list's last entry contains all input beyond the last matched delimiter.
- If *limit* is non-positive, the pattern is applied as many times as possible, and the list can have any length.

- If *limit* is zero, the pattern is applied as many times as possible, the list can have any length, and trailing empty strings are discarded.

Example

For example, for `String s = 'boo:and:moo'`:

- `s.split(':', 2)` results in `{'boo', 'and:moo'}`
- `s.split(':', 5)` results in `{'boo', 'and', 'moo'}`
- `s.split(':', -2)` results in `{'boo', 'and', 'moo'}`
- `s.split('o', 5)` results in `{'b', '', ':and:m', '', ''}`
- `s.split('o', -2)` results in `{'b', '', ':and:m', '', ''}`
- `s.split('o', 0)` results in `{'b', '', ':and:m'}`

splitByCharacterType()

Splits the current String by character type and returns a list of contiguous character groups of the same type as complete tokens.

Signature

```
public List<String> splitByCharacterType()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

Usage

For more information about the character types used, see java.lang.Character.getType(char).

Example

```
String s1 = 'Lightning.platform';
List<String> ls =
   s1.splitByCharacterType();
System.debug(ls);
// Writes this output:
// (L, ightning, ., platform)
```

splitByCharacterTypeCamelCase()

Splits the current String by character type and returns a list of contiguous character groups of the same type as complete tokens, with the following exception: the uppercase character, if any, immediately preceding a lowercase character token belongs to the following character token rather than to the preceding.

Signature

```
public List<String> splitByCharacterTypeCamelCase()
```

Return Value

Type: List<String>

Usage

For more information about the character types used, see java.lang.Character.getType(char).

Example

```
String s1 = 'Lightning.platform';
List<String> ls =
   s1.splitByCharacterTypeCamelCase();
System.debug(ls);
// Writes this output:
// (Lightning, ., platform)
```

startsWith(prefix)

Returns `true` if the String that called the method begins with the specified *`prefix`*.

Signature

```
public Boolean startsWith(String prefix)
```

Parameters

`prefix`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s1 = 'AE86 vs EK9';
System.assert(s1.startsWith('AE86'));
```

startsWithIgnoreCase(prefix)

Returns `true` if the current String begins with the specified prefix regardless of the prefix case.

Signature

```
public Boolean startsWithIgnoreCase(String prefix)
```

Parameters

`prefix`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
String s1 = 'AE86 vs EK9';
System.assert(s1.startsWithIgnoreCase('ae86'));
```

stripHtmlTags()

Removes HTML markup and returns plain text.

Signature

```
public String stripHtmlTags(String htmlInput)
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Warning: The stripHtmlTags function does not recursively strip tags; therefore, tags may still exist in the returned string. Do not use the stripHtmlTags function to sanitize input for inclusion as a raw HTML page. The unescaped output is not considered safe to include in an HTML document. The function will be deprecated in a future release.

Example

```
String s1 = '<b>hello world</b>';
String s2 = s1.stripHtmlTags();
System.assertEquals(
   'hello world', s2);
```

substring(startIndex)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *startIndex* and extends to the end of the String.

Signature

```
public String substring(Integer startIndex)
```

Parameters

startIndex
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'hamburger';
System.assertEquals('burger', s1.substring(3));
```

substring(startIndex, endIndex)

Returns a new String that begins with the character at the specified zero-based *startIndex* and extends to the character at *endIndex* - 1.

Signature

```
public String substring(Integer startIndex, Integer endIndex)
```

Parameters

startIndex
Type: Integer

endIndex
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
'hamburger'.substring(4, 8);
// Returns "urge"

'smiles'.substring(1, 5);
// Returns "mile"
```

substringAfter(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs after the first occurrence of the specified separator.

Signature

```
public String substringAfter(String separator)
```

Parameters

separator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce.Lightning.platform';
String s2 =
   s1.substringAfter('.');
System.assertEquals(
   'Lightning.platform', s2);
```

substringAfterLast(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs after the last occurrence of the specified separator.

Signature

```
public String substringAfterLast(String separator)
```

Parameters

separator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce.Lightning.platform';
String s2 =
   s1.substringAfterLast('.');
System.assertEquals(
   'platform', s2);
```

substringBefore(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs before the first occurrence of the specified separator.

Signature

```
public String substringBefore(String separator)
```

Parameters

separator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce.Lightning.platform';
String s2 =
   s1.substringBefore('.');
System.assertEquals(
   'Salesforce', s2);
```

substringBeforeLast(separator)

Returns the substring that occurs before the last occurrence of the specified separator.

Signature

```
public String substringBeforeLast(String separator)
```

Parameters

separator
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'Salesforce.Lightning.platform';
String s2 =
   s1.substringBeforeLast('.');
System.assertEquals(
   'Salesforce.Lightning', s2);
```

substringBetween(tag)

Returns the substring that occurs between two instances of the specified *tag* String.

Signature

```
public String substringBetween(String tag)
```

Parameters

tag
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'tagYellowtag';
String s2 = s1.substringBetween('tag');
System.assertEquals('Yellow', s2);
```

substringBetween(open, close)

Returns the substring that occurs between the two specified Strings.

Signature

```
public String substringBetween(String open, String close)
```

Parameters

open
Type: String

close
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'xYellowy';
String s2 =
   s1.substringBetween('x','y');
System.assertEquals(
   'Yellow', s2);
```

swapCase()

Swaps the case of all characters and returns the resulting String by using the default (English US) locale.

Signature

```
public String swapCase()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Upper case and title case converts to lower case, and lower case converts to upper case.

Example

```
String s1 = 'Force.com';
String s2 = s1.swapCase();
System.assertEquals('fORCE.COM', s2);
```

toLowerCase()

Converts all of the characters in the String to lowercase using the rules of the default (English US) locale.

Signature

```
public String toLowerCase()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 = 'ThIs iS hArD tO rEaD';
System.assertEquals('this is hard to read',
   s1.toLowerCase());
```

toLowerCase(locale)

Converts all of the characters in the String to lowercase using the rules of the specified locale.

Signature

```
public String toLowerCase(String locale)
```

Parameters

locale
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
// Example in Turkish
// An uppercase dotted "i", \u0304, which is İ
// Note this contains both a İ as well as a I
String s1 = 'KIYMETLİ';
String s1Lower = s1.toLowerCase('tr');
// Dotless lowercase "i", \u0131, which is ı
// Note this has both a i and ı
String expected = 'kıymetli';
```

```
System.assertEquals(expected, s1Lower);
// Note if this was done in toLowerCase('en'), it would output 'kiymetli'
```

toUpperCase()

Converts all of the characters in the String to uppercase using the rules of the default (English US) locale.

Signature

```
public String toUpperCase()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String myString1 = 'abcd';
String myString2 = 'ABCD';
myString1 =
   myString1.toUpperCase();
Boolean result =
   myString1.equals(myString2);
System.assertEquals(result, true);
```

toUpperCase(locale)

Converts all of the characters in the String to the uppercase using the rules of the specified locale.

Signature

```
public String toUpperCase(String locale)
```

Parameters

locale
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
// Example in Turkish
// Dotless lowercase "i", \u0131, which is ı
// Note this has both a i and ı
String s1 = 'imkansız';
String s1Upper = s1.toUpperCase('tr');
// An uppercase dotted "i", \u0304, which is İ
// Note this contains both a İ as well as a I
```

```
String expected = 'İMKANSIZ';
System.assertEquals(expected, s1Upper);
```

trim()

Returns a copy of the string that no longer contains any leading or trailing white space characters.

Signature

```
public String trim()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Leading and trailing ASCII control characters such as tabs and newline characters are also removed. White space and control characters that aren't at the beginning or end of the sentence aren't removed.

Example

```
String s1 = '   Hello!   ';
String trimmed = s1.trim();
system.assertEquals('Hello!', trimmed);
```

uncapitalize()

Returns the current String with the first letter in lowercase.

Signature

```
public String uncapitalize()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 =
   'Hello max';
String s2 =
   s1.uncapitalize();
System.assertEquals(
   'hello max',
    s2);
```

unescapeCsv()

Returns a String representing an unescaped CSV column.

Signature

```
public String unescapeCsv()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If the String is enclosed in double quotes and contains a comma, newline or double quote, quotes are removed. Also, any double quote escaped characters (a pair of double quotes) are unescaped to just one double quote.

If the String is not enclosed in double quotes, or is and does not contain a comma, newline or double quote, it is returned unchanged.

Example

```
String s1 =
   '"Max1, ""Max2"""';
String s2 =
   s1.unescapeCsv();
System.assertEquals(
   'Max1, "Max2"',
    s2);
```

unescapeEcmaScript()

Unescapes any EcmaScript literals found in the String.

Signature

```
public String unescapeEcmaScript()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 =
   '\"3.8\",\"3.9\"';
String s2 =
   s1.unescapeEcmaScript();
System.assertEquals(
   '"3.8","3.9"',
   s2);
```

unescapeHtml3()

Unescapes the characters in a String using HTML 3.0 entities.

Signature

```
public String unescapeHtml3()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String s1 =
   '&quot;&lt;Black&amp;White&gt;&quot;';
String s2 =
   s1.unescapeHtml3();
System.assertEquals(
   '"<Black&White>"',
   s2);
```

unescapeHtml4()

Unescapes the characters in a String using HTML 4.0 entities.

Signature

```
public String unescapeHtml4()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If an entity isn't recognized, it is kept as is in the returned string.

Example

```
String s1 =
   '&quot;&lt;Black&amp;White&gt;&quot;';
String s2 =
   s1.unescapeHtml4();
System.assertEquals(
   '"<Black&White>"',
   s2);
```

unescapeJava()

Returns a String whose Java literals are unescaped. Literals unescaped include escape sequences for quotes (\\") and control characters, such as tab (\\t), and carriage return (\\n).

Signature

```
public String unescapeJava()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The unescaped string.

Example

```
String s = 'Company: \\"Salesforce.com\\"';
String unescapedStr = s.unescapeJava();
System.assertEquals('Company: "Salesforce.com"', unescapedStr);
```

unescapeUnicode()

Returns a String whose escaped Unicode characters are unescaped.

Signature

```
public String unescapeUnicode()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The unescaped string.

Example

```
String s = 'De onde voc\u00EA \u00E9?';
String unescapedStr = s.unescapeUnicode();
System.assertEquals('De onde você é?', unescapedStr);
```

unescapeXml()

Unescapes the characters in a String using XML entities.

Signature

```
public String unescapeXml()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Supports only the five basic XML entities (gt, lt, quot, amp, apos). Does not support DTDs or external entities.

Example

```
String s1 =
   '&quot;&lt;Black&amp;White&gt;&quot;';
String s2 =
   s1.unescapeXml();
System.assertEquals(
   '"<Black&White>"',
   s2);
```

valueOf(dateToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Date in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd" format.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Date dateToConvert)
```

Parameters

dateToConvert
Type: Date

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Date myDate = Date.Today();
String sDate = String.valueOf(myDate);
```

valueOf(datetimeToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Datetime in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" format for the local time zone.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Datetime datetimeToConvert)
```

Parameters

datetimeToConvert
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
DateTime dt = datetime.newInstance(1996, 6, 23);
String sDateTime = String.valueOf(dt);
System.assertEquals('1996-06-23 00:00:00', sDateTime);
```

valueOf(decimalToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Decimal.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Decimal decimalToConvert)
```

Parameters

decimalToConvert
Type: Decimal

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Decimal dec = 3.14159265;
String sDecimal = String.valueOf(dec);
System.assertEquals('3.14159265', sDecimal);
```

valueOf(doubleToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Double.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Double doubleToConvert)
```

Parameters

doubleToConvert
Type: Double

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Double myDouble = 12.34;
String myString =
    String.valueOf(myDouble);
System.assertEquals(
  '12.34', myString);
```

valueOf(integerToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Integer.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Integer integerToConvert)
```

Parameters

integerToConvert
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Integer myInteger = 22;
String sInteger = String.valueOf(myInteger);
System.assertEquals('22', sInteger);
```

valueOf(longToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Long.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Long longToConvert)
```

Parameters

longToConvert
Type: Long

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
Long myLong = 123456789;
String sLong = String.valueOf(myLong);
System.assertEquals('123456789', sLong);
```

valueOf(toConvert)

Returns a string representation of the specified object argument.

Signature

```
public static String valueOf(Object toConvert)
```

Parameters

toConvert
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If the argument is not a String, the `valueOf` method converts it into a String by calling the `toString` method on the argument, if available, or any overridden `toString` method if the argument is a user-defined type. Otherwise, if no `toString` method is available, it returns a String representation of the argument.

Example

```
List<Integer> ls =
  new List<Integer>();
ls.add(10);
ls.add(20);
String strList =
   String.valueOf(ls);
System.assertEquals(
  '(10, 20)', strList);
```

valueOfGmt(datetimeToConvert)

Returns a String that represents the specified Datetime in the standard "yyyy-MM-dd HH:mm:ss" format for the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public static String valueOfGmt(Datetime datetimeToConvert)
```

Parameters

datetimeToConvert
Type: Datetime

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
// For a PST timezone:
DateTime dt = datetime.newInstance(2001, 9, 14);
String sDateTime = String.valueOfGmt(dt);
System.assertEquals('2001-09-14 07:00:00', sDateTime);
```

StubProvider Interface

`StubProvider` is a callback interface that you can use as part of the Apex stub API to implement a mocking framework. Use this interface with the `Test.createStub()` method to create stubbed Apex objects for testing.

Namespace

System

Usage

The `StubProvider` interface allows you to define the behavior of a stubbed Apex class. The interface specifies a single method that requires implementing: `handleMethodCall()`. You specify the behavior of each method of the stubbed class in the `handleMethodCall()` method.

In your Apex test, you create a stubbed object using the `Test.createStub()` method. When you invoke methods on the stubbed object, `StubProvider.handleMethodCall()` is called, which performs the behavior that you've specified for each method.

IN THIS SECTION:

StubProvider Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Build a Mocking Framework with the Stub API

createStub(parentType, stubProvider)

StubProvider Methods

The following are methods for `StubProvider`.

IN THIS SECTION:

handleMethodCall(stubbedObject, stubbedMethodName, returnType, listOfParamTypes, listOfParamNames, listOfArgs)
Use this method to define the behavior of each method of a stubbed class.

handleMethodCall(stubbedObject, stubbedMethodName, returnType, listOfParamTypes, listOfParamNames, listOfArgs)

Use this method to define the behavior of each method of a stubbed class.

Signature

```
public Object handleMethodCall(Object stubbedObject, String stubbedMethodName,
System.Type returnType, List<System.Type> listOfParamTypes, List<String>
listOfParamNames, List<Object> listOfArgs)
```

Parameters

stubbedObject
Type: Object

The stubbed object.

stubbedMethodName
Type: String

The name of the invoked method.

returnType
Type: System.Type

The return type of the invoked method.

listOfParamTypes
Type: List<System.Type>

A list of the parameter types of the invoked method.

listOfParamNames
Type: List<String>

A list of the parameter names of the invoked method.

listOfArgs
Type: List<Object>

The actual argument values passed into this method at runtime.

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

You can use the parameters passed into this method to identify which method on the stubbed object was invoked. Then you can define the behavior for each identified method.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Build a Mocking Framework with the Stub API

System Class

Contains methods for system operations, such as writing debug messages and scheduling jobs.

Namespace

System

System Methods

The following are methods for `System`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

abortJob(jobId)
Stops the specified job. The stopped job is still visible in the job queue in the Salesforce user interface.

assert(condition, msg)
Asserts that the specified condition is true. If it is not, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

assertEquals(expected, actual, msg)
Asserts that the first two arguments are the same. If they are not, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

assertNotEquals(expected, actual, msg)
Asserts that the first two arguments are different. If they are the same, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

currentPageReference()
Returns a reference to the current page. This is used with Visualforce pages.

currentTimeMillis()
Returns the current time in milliseconds, which is expressed as the difference between the current time and midnight, January 1, 1970 UTC.

debug(msg)
Writes the specified message, in string format, to the execution debug log. The `DEBUG` log level is used.

debug(logLevel, msg)
Writes the specified message, in string format, to the execution debug log with the specified log level.

enqueueJob(queueableObj)
Adds a job to the Apex job queue that corresponds to the specified queueable class and returns the job ID.

equals(obj1, obj2)
Returns `true` if both arguments are equal. Otherwise, returns `false`.

getApplicationReadWriteMode()

Returns the read write mode set for an organization during Salesforce.com upgrades and downtimes.

getQuiddityShortCode(QuidditValue)

Returns the short code for the Quiddity value of the current Request object.

hashCode(obj)

Returns the hash code of the specified object.

isBatch()

Returns `true` if a batch Apex job invoked the executing code, or `false` if not. In API version 35.0 and earlier, also returns `true` if a queueable Apex job invoked the code.

isFunctionCallback()

Returns `true` if an asynchronous Salesforce Function callback invoked the executing code, or `false` if not. Available in API version 51.0 and later.

isFuture()

Returns `true` if the currently executing code is invoked by code contained in a method annotated with `future`; `false` otherwise.

isQueueable()

Returns `true` if a queueable Apex job invoked the executing code. Returns `false` if not, including if a batch Apex job or a future method invoked the code.

isRunningElasticCompute()

Reserved for future use.

isScheduled()

Returns `true` if the currently executing code is invoked by a scheduled Apex job; `false` otherwise.

movePassword(targetUserId,sourceUserId)

Moves the specified user's password to a different user.

now()

Returns the current date and time in the GMT time zone.

process(workItemIds, action, comments, nextApprover)

Processes the list of work item IDs.

purgeOldAsyncJobs(dt)

Deletes asynchronous Apex job records for jobs that have finished execution before the specified date with a Completed, Aborted, or Failed status, and returns the number of records deleted.

requestVersion()

Returns a two-part version that contains the major and minor version numbers of a package.

resetPassword(userId, sendUserEmail)

Resets the password for the specified user.

resetPasswordWithEmailTemplate(userId, sendUserEmail, emailTemplateName)

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with their new password. You specify the email template that is sent to the specified user. Use this method for external users of Experience Cloud sites.

runAs(version)

Changes the current package version to the package version specified in the argument.

runAs(userSObject)

Changes the current user to the specified user.

schedule(jobName, cronExpression, schedulableClass)

Use `schedule` with an Apex class that implements the `Schedulable` interface to schedule the class to run at the time specified by a Cron expression.

scheduleBatch(batchable, jobName, minutesFromNow)

Schedules a batch job to run once in the future after the specified time interval and with the specified job name.

scheduleBatch(batchable, jobName, minutesFromNow, scopeSize)

Schedules a batch job to run once in the future after the specified the time interval, with the specified job name and scope size. Returns the scheduled job ID (CronTrigger ID).

setPassword(userId, password)

Sets the password for the specified user.

submit(workItemIds, comments, nextApprover)

Submits the processed approvals. The current user is the submitter and the entry criteria is evaluated for all processes applicable to the current user.

today()

Returns the current date in the current user's time zone.

abortJob(jobId)

Stops the specified job. The stopped job is still visible in the job queue in the Salesforce user interface.

Signature

```
public static Void abortJob(String jobId)
```

Parameters

jobId

Type: String

The *jobId* is the ID associated with either AsyncApexJob or CronTrigger.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

The following methods return the job ID that can be passed to `abortJob`.

- `System.schedule` method—returns the CronTrigger object ID associated with the scheduled job as a string.
- `SchedulableContext.getTriggerId` method—returns the CronTrigger object ID associated with the scheduled job as a string.
- `getJobId` method—returns the AsyncApexJob object ID associated with the batch job as a string.
- Using Batch `ApexDatabase.executeBatch` method—returns the AsyncApexJob object ID associated with the batch job as a string.

assert(condition, msg)

Asserts that the specified condition is true. If it is not, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

Signature

```
public static Void assert(Boolean condition, Object msg)
```

Parameters

condition
Type: Boolean

msg
Type: Object

(Optional) Custom message returned as part of the error message.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can't catch an assertion failure using a try/catch block even though it is logged as an exception.

assertEquals(expected, actual, msg)

Asserts that the first two arguments are the same. If they are not, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

Signature

```
public static Void assertEquals(Object expected, Object actual, Object msg)
```

Parameters

expected
Type: Object

Specifies the expected value.

actual
Type: Object

Specifies the actual value.

msg
Type: Object

(Optional) Custom message returned as part of the error message.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can't catch an assertion failure using a try/catch block even though it is logged as an exception.

assertNotEquals(expected, actual, msg)

Asserts that the first two arguments are different. If they are the same, a fatal error is returned that causes code execution to halt.

Signature

```
public static Void assertNotEquals(Object expected, Object actual, Object msg)
```

Parameters

expected
Type: Object

Specifies the expected value.

actual
Type: Object

Specifies the actual value.

msg
Type: Object

(Optional) Custom message returned as part of the error message.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can't catch an assertion failure using a try/catch block even though it is logged as an exception.

currentPageReference()

Returns a reference to the current page. This is used with Visualforce pages.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference currentPageReference()
```

Return Value

Type: System.PageReference

Usage

For more information, see PageReference Class.

currentTimeMillis()

Returns the current time in milliseconds, which is expressed as the difference between the current time and midnight, January 1, 1970 UTC.

Signature

```
public static Long currentTimeMillis()
```

Return Value

Type: Long

debug(msg)

Writes the specified message, in string format, to the execution debug log. The `DEBUG` log level is used.

Signature

```
public static Void debug(Object msg)
```

Parameters

msg
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If the *msg* argument is not a string, the `debug` method calls `String.valueOf` to convert it into a string. The `String.valueOf` method calls the `toString` method on the argument, if available, or any overridden `toString` method if the argument is a user-defined type. Otherwise, if no `toString` method is available, it returns a string representation of the argument.

If the log level for Apex Code is set to `DEBUG` or higher, the message of this debug statement will be written to the debug log.

Note that when a map or set is printed, the output is sorted in key order and is surrounded with square brackets (`[]`). When an array or list is printed, the output is enclosed in parentheses (`()`).

Note: Calls to System.debug are not counted as part of Apex code coverage.Calls to `System.debug` are not counted as part of Apex code coverage.

For more information on log levels, see "Debug Log Levels" in the Salesforce online help.

debug(logLevel, msg)

Writes the specified message, in string format, to the execution debug log with the specified log level.

Signature

```
public static Void debug(LoggingLevel logLevel, Object msg)
```

Parameters

logLevel
Type: System.LoggingLevel

The logging level to set for this method.

msg
Type: Object

The message or object to write in string format to the execution debug log.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If the *msg* argument is not a string, the `debug` method calls `String.valueOf` to convert it into a string. The `String.valueOf` method calls the `toString` method on the argument, if available, or any overridden `toString` method if the argument is a user-defined type. Otherwise, if no `toString` method is available, it returns a string representation of the argument.

Note: Calls to `System.debug` are not counted as part of Apex code coverage.

System Logging Levels

Use the `loggingLevel` enum to specify the logging level for the `debug` method.

Valid log levels are (listed from lowest to highest):

- `NONE`
- `ERROR`
- `WARN`
- `INFO`
- `DEBUG`
- `FINE`
- `FINER`
- `FINEST`

Log levels are cumulative. For example, if the lowest level, `ERROR`, is specified for Apex Code, only debug methods with the log level of `ERROR` are logged. If the next log level, `WARN`, is specified, the debug log contains debug methods specified as either `ERROR` or `WARN`.

In the following example, the string `MsgTxt` is not written to the debug log because the log level is `ERROR` and the `debug` method has a level of `INFO`:

```
System.LoggingLevel level = LoggingLevel.ERROR;

System.debug(logginglevel.INFO, 'MsgTxt');
```

For more information on log levels, see "Debug Log Levels" in the Salesforce online help.

enqueueJob(queueableObj)

Adds a job to the Apex job queue that corresponds to the specified queueable class and returns the job ID.

Signature

```
public static ID enqueueJob(Object queueableObj)
```

Parameters

queueableObj
Type: Object

An instance of the class that implements the Queueable Interface.

Return Value

Type: ID

The job ID, which corresponds to the ID of an AsyncApexJob record.

Usage

To add a job for asynchronous execution, call `System.enqueueJob` by passing in an instance of your class implementation of the `Queueable` interface for execution as follows:

```
ID jobID = System.enqueueJob(new MyQueueableClass());
```

For more information about Queueable Apex, including information about limits, see Queueable Apex.

equals(obj1, obj2)

Returns `true` if both arguments are equal. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean equals(Object obj1, Object obj2)
```

Parameters

obj1
Type: Object

Object being compared.

obj2
Type: Object

Object to compare with the first argument.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

obj1 and *obj2* can be of any type. They can be values, or object references, such as sObjects and user-defined types.

The comparison rules for `System.equals` are identical to the ones for the `==` operator. For example, string comparison is case insensitive. For information about the comparison rules, see the == operator.

getApplicationReadWriteMode()

Returns the read write mode set for an organization during Salesforce.com upgrades and downtimes.

Signature

```
public static System.ApplicationReadWriteMode getApplicationReadWriteMode()
```

Return Value

Type: System.ApplicationReadWriteMode

Valid values are:

- `DEFAULT`
- `READ_ONLY`

Using the `System.ApplicationReadWriteMode` Enum

Use the `System.ApplicationReadWriteMode` enum returned by the `getApplicationReadWriteMode` to programmatically determine if the application is in read-only mode during Salesforce upgrades and downtimes.

Valid values for the enum are:

- `DEFAULT`
- `READ_ONLY`

Example:

```
public class myClass {
  public static void execute() {
    ApplicationReadWriteMode mode = System.getApplicationReadWriteMode();

    if (mode == ApplicationReadWriteMode.READ_ONLY) {
      // Do nothing. If DML operaton is attempted in readonly mode,
      // InvalidReadOnlyUserDmlException will be thrown.
    } else if (mode == ApplicationReadWriteMode.DEFAULT) {
      Account account = new Account(name = 'my account');
      insert account;
    }
  }
}
```

getQuidditityShortCode(QuidditityValue)

Returns the short code for the Quiddity value of the current Request object.

Signature

```
public String getQuiddityShortCode(System.Quiddity QuiddityValue)
```

Parameters

QuiddityValue
Type: System.Quiddity

The Quiddity enum value that has an associated short code. This short code is used in Event Monitoring logs. For more information, see Apex Execution Event Type.

Return Value

Type: String

hashCode(obj)

Returns the hash code of the specified object.

Signature

```
public static Integer hashCode(Object obj)
```

Parameters

obj
Type: Object

The object to get the hash code for. This parameter can be of any type, including values or object references, such as sObjects or user-defined types.

Return Value

Type: Integer

Versioned Behavior Changes

In API version 51.0 and later, the `hashCode()` method returns the same hashCode for identical Id values. In API version 50.0 and earlier, identical Id values didn't always generate the same hashCode value.

isBatch()

Returns `true` if a batch Apex job invoked the executing code, or `false` if not. In API version 35.0 and earlier, also returns `true` if a queueable Apex job invoked the code.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isBatch()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

A batch Apex job can't invoke a future method. Before invoking a future method, use `isBatch()` to check whether the executing code is a batch Apex job.

`isFunctionCallback()`

Returns `true` if an asynchronous Salesforce Function callback invoked the executing code, or `false` if not. Available in API version 51.0 and later.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isFunctionCallback()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Use this method to determine if the Apex code is being invoked as part of a callback from an asynchronous Salesforce Functions invocation. For more details on invoking Salesforce Functions from Apex, see Functions Namespace (Beta)

`isFuture()`

Returns `true` if the currently executing code is invoked by code contained in a method annotated with `future`; `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isFuture()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Since a future method can't be invoked from another future method, use this method to check if the current code is executing within the context of a future method before you invoke a future method.

`isQueueable()`

Returns `true` if a queueable Apex job invoked the executing code. Returns `false` if not, including if a batch Apex job or a future method invoked the code.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isQueueable()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

```
public class SimpleQueueable implements Queueable {

    String name;

    public SimpleQueueable(String name) {
        this.name = name;
        System.assert(!System.isQueueable());    //Should return false
    }

    public void execute(QueueableContext ctx) {
        Account testAccount  = new Account();
        testAccount.name = 'testAcc';
        insert(testAccount);
        System.assert(System.isQueueable());    //Should return true
    }
}
```

```
global class ComplexBatch implements Database.Batchable<SObject> {

    global Database.QueryLocator start(Database.BatchableContext info) {
        System.assert(!System.isQueueable());    //Should return false
        return Database.getQueryLocator([SELECT Id, Name FROM Account LIMIT 1]);
    }

    global void execute(Database.BatchableContext info, SObject[] scope) {
        System.assert(!System.isQueueable());    //Should return false
        System.enqueueJob(new SimpleQueueable('CallingFromComplexBatch'));
        System.assert(!System.isQueueable());    //Should return false
    }

    global void finish(Database.BatchableContext info) {
        System.assert(!System.isQueueable());    //Should return false
    }
}
```

isRunningElasticCompute()

Reserved for future use.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isRunningElasticCompute()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isScheduled()

Returns `true` if the currently executing code is invoked by a scheduled Apex job; `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isScheduled()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

movePassword(targetUserId,sourceUserId)

Moves the specified user's password to a different user.

Signature

```
public static Void movePassword(ID targetUserId, ID sourceUserId)
```

Parameters

targetUserId
Type: ID

The user that the password is moved to.

sourceUserId
Type: ID

The user that the password is moved from.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Moving a password simplifies converting a user to another type of user, such as when converting an external user to a user with less restrictive access. If you require access to the `movePassword` method, contact Salesforce.

Keep in mind these requirements.

- The *targetUserId*, *sourceUserId*, and user performing the move operation must all belong to the same Salesforce org.
- The *targetUserId* and the *sourceUserId* cannot be the same as the user performing the move operation.
- A user without a password can't be specified as the *sourceUserId*. For example, a source user who has already had their password moved is left without a password. That user can't be a source user again.

After the password is moved:

- The target user can log in with the password.
- The source user no longer has a password. To enable logins for this user, a password reset is required.

now()

Returns the current date and time in the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public static Datetime now()
```

Return Value

Type: Datetime

process(workItemIds, action, comments, nextApprover)

Processes the list of work item IDs.

Signature

```
public static List<Id> process(List<Id> workItemIds, String action, String comments,
String nextApprover)
```

Parameters

workItemIds
Type: List<Id>

action
Type: String

comments
Type: String

nextApprover
Type: String

Return Value

Type: List<Id>

purgeOldAsyncJobs(dt)

Deletes asynchronous Apex job records for jobs that have finished execution before the specified date with a Completed, Aborted, or Failed status, and returns the number of records deleted.

Signature

```
public static Integer purgeOldAsyncJobs(Date dt)
```

Parameters

dt
Type: Date

Specifies the date up to which old records are deleted. The date comparison is based on the `CompletedDate` field of AsyncApexJob, which is in the GMT time zone.

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Asynchronous Apex job records are records in AsyncApexJob.

The system cleans up asynchronous job records for jobs that have finished execution and are older than seven days. You can use this method to further reduce the size of AsyncApexJob by cleaning up more records.

Each execution of this method counts as a single row against the governor limit for DML statements.

Example

This example shows how to delete all job records for jobs that have finished before today's date.

```
Integer count = System.purgeOldAsyncJobs
   (Date.today());
System.debug('Deleted ' +
   count + ' old jobs.');
```

requestVersion()

Returns a two-part version that contains the major and minor version numbers of a package.

Signature

```
public static System.Version requestVersion()
```

Return Value

Type: System.Version

Usage

Using this method, you can determine the version of an installed instance of your package from which the calling code is referencing your package. Based on the version that the calling code has, you can customize the behavior of your package code.

The `requestVersion` method isn't supported for unmanaged packages. If you call it from an unmanaged package, an exception will be thrown.

resetPassword(userId, sendUserEmail)

Resets the password for the specified user.

Signature

```
public static System.ResetPasswordResult resetPassword(ID userId, Boolean sendUserEmail)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: ID

sendUserEmail
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: System.ResetPasswordResult

Usage

When the user logs in with the new password, they are prompted to enter a new password, and to select a security question and answer if they haven't already. If you specify `true` for *sendUserEmail*, the user is sent an email notifying them that their password was reset. A link to sign onto Salesforce using the new password is included in the email. Use `setPassword(userId, password)` if you don't want the user to be prompted to enter a new password when they log in.

Warning: Be careful with this method, and do not expose this functionality to end-users.

resetPasswordWithEmailTemplate(userId, sendUserEmail, emailTemplateName)

Resets the user's password and sends an email to the user with their new password. You specify the email template that is sent to the specified user. Use this method for external users of Experience Cloud sites.

Signature

```
public static System.ResetPasswordResult resetPasswordWithEmailTemplate(Id userId,
Boolean sendUserEmail, String emailTemplateName)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

The ID of the user whose password was reset.

sendUserEmail
Type: Boolean

emailTemplateName
Type: String

Name of the email template.

Return Value

Type: System.ResetPasswordResult

Usage

If you specify `true` for *sendUserEmail*, specify the email template that is sent to the user notifying them that their password was reset. When the user logs in with the new password in the email, they are prompted to enter a new password. A link to sign onto

Salesforce using the new password is included in the email. Use `setPassword(userId, password)` if you don't want the user to be prompted to enter a new password when they log in.

Warning: Be careful with this method, and do not expose this functionality to end-users.

runAs(version)

Changes the current package version to the package version specified in the argument.

Signature

```
public static Void runAs(System.Version version)
```

Parameters

version
Type: System.Version

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

A package developer can use Version methods to continue to support existing behavior in classes and triggers in previous package versions while continuing to evolve the code. Apex classes and triggers are saved with the version settings for each installed managed package that the class or trigger references.

This method is used for testing your component behavior in different package versions that you upload to the AppExchange. This method effectively sets a two-part version consisting of major and minor numbers in a test method so that you can test the behavior for different package versions.

You can only use `runAs` in a test method. There is no limitation to the number of calls to this method in a transaction. For sample usage of this method, see Testing Behavior in Package Versions.

runAs(userSObject)

Changes the current user to the specified user.

Signature

```
public static Void runAs(User userSObject)
```

Parameters

userSObject
Type: User

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

All of the specified user's record sharing is enforced during the execution of `runAs`. You can only use `runAs` in a test method. For more information, see Using the runAs() Method.

Note: The `runAs` method ignores user license limits. You can create new users with `runAs` even if your organization has no additional user licenses.

The `runAs` method implicitly inserts the user that is passed in as parameter if the user has been instantiated, but not inserted yet.

You can also use `runAs` to perform mixed DML operations in your test by enclosing the DML operations within the `runAs` block. In this way, you bypass the mixed DML error that is otherwise returned when inserting or updating setup objects together with other sObjects. See sObjects That Cannot Be Used Together in DML Operations.

Note: Every call to `runAs` counts against the total number of DML statements issued in the process.

`schedule(jobName, cronExpression, schedulableClass)`

Use `schedule` with an Apex class that implements the `Schedulable` interface to schedule the class to run at the time specified by a Cron expression.

Signature

```
public static String schedule(String jobName, String cronExpression, Object
schedulableClass)
```

Parameters

`jobName`
Type: String

`cronExpression`
Type: String

`schedulableClass`
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: String

Returns the scheduled job ID (CronTrigger ID).

Usage

Use extreme care if you're planning to schedule a class from a trigger. You must be able to guarantee that the trigger won't add more scheduled classes than the limit. In particular, consider API bulk updates, import wizards, mass record changes through the user interface, and all cases where more than one record can be updated at a time. Use the `abortJob` method to stop the job after it has been scheduled.

Note: Salesforce schedules the class for execution at the specified time. Actual execution may be delayed based on service availability.

Using the `System.Schedule` Method

After you implement a class with the `Schedulable` interface, use the `System.Schedule` method to execute it. The scheduler runs as system—all classes are executed, whether or not the user has permission to execute the class.

Note: Use extreme care if you're planning to schedule a class from a trigger. You must be able to guarantee that the trigger won't add more scheduled classes than the limit. In particular, consider API bulk updates, import wizards, mass record changes through the user interface, and all cases where more than one record can be updated at a time.

The `System.Schedule` method takes three arguments: a name for the job, an expression used to represent the time and date the job is scheduled to run, and the name of the class. This expression has the following syntax:

```
Seconds Minutes Hours Day_of_month Month Day_of_week Optional_year
```

Note: Salesforce schedules the class for execution at the specified time. Actual execution may be delayed based on service availability.

The `System.Schedule` method uses the user's timezone for the basis of all schedules.

The following are the values for the expression:

Name	Values	Special Characters
Seconds	0–59	None
Minutes	0–59	None
Hours	0–23	`, - * /`
Day_of_month	1–31	`, - * ? / L W`
Month	1–12 or the following: • JAN • FEB • MAR • APR • MAY • JUN • JUL • AUG • SEP • OCT • NOV • DEC	`, - * /`
Day_of_week	1–7 or the following: • SUN • MON • TUE • WED	`, - * ? / L #`

Name	Values	Special Characters
	• THU • FRI • SAT	
optional_year	null or 1970–2099	, - * /

The special characters are defined as follows:

Special Character	Description
,	Delimits values. For example, use JAN, MAR, APR to specify more than one month.
-	Specifies a range. For example, use JAN-MAR to specify more than one month.
*	Specifies all values. For example, if *Month* is specified as *, the job is scheduled for every month.
?	Specifies no specific value. This is only available for *Day_of_month* and *Day_of_week*, and is generally used when specifying a value for one and not the other.
/	Specifies increments. The number before the slash specifies when the intervals will begin, and the number after the slash is the interval amount. For example, if you specify 1/5 for *Day_of_month*, the Apex class runs every fifth day of the month, starting on the first of the month.
L	Specifies the end of a range (last). This is only available for *Day_of_month* and *Day_of_week*. When used with *Day of month*, L always means the last day of the month, such as January 31, February 29 for leap years, and so on. When used with *Day_of_week* by itself, it always means 7 or SAT. When used with a *Day_of_week* value, it means the last of that type of day in the month. For example, if you specify 2L, you are specifying the last Monday of the month. Do not use a range of values with L as the results might be unexpected.
W	Specifies the nearest weekday (Monday-Friday) of the given day. This is only available for *Day_of_month*. For example, if you specify 20W, and the 20th is a Saturday, the class runs on the 19th. If you specify 1W, and the first is a Saturday, the class does not run in the previous month, but on the third, which is the following Monday. Tip: Use the L and W together to specify the last weekday of the month.
#	Specifies the *nth* day of the month, in the format ***weekday*#*day_of_month***. This is only available for *Day_of_week*. The number before the # specifies weekday (SUN-SAT). The number after the # specifies the day of the month. For example, specifying 2#1 means the class runs on the first Monday of every month.

The following are some examples of how to use the expression.

Expression	Description
`0 0 13 * * ?`	Class runs every day at 1 PM.
`0 0 22 ? * 6L`	Class runs the last Friday of every month at 10 PM.
`0 0 10 ? * MON-FRI`	Class runs Monday through Friday at 10 AM.
`0 0 20 * * ? 2010`	Class runs every day at 8 PM during the year 2010.

In the following example, the class `proschedule` implements the `Schedulable` interface. The class is scheduled to run at 8 AM, on the 13 February.

```
proschedule p = new proschedule();
        String sch = '0 0 8 13 2 ?';
        system.schedule('One Time Pro', sch, p);
```

`scheduleBatch(batchable, jobName, minutesFromNow)`

Schedules a batch job to run once in the future after the specified time interval and with the specified job name.

Signature

```
public static String scheduleBatch(Database.Batchable batchable, String jobName, Integer minutesFromNow)
```

Parameters

`batchable`
Type: Database.Batchable

An instance of a class that implements the `Database.Batchable` interface.

`jobName`
Type: String

The name if the job that this method will start.

`minutesFromNow`
Type: Integer

The time interval in minutes after which the job should start executing. This argument must be greater than zero.

Return Value

Type: String

The scheduled job ID (CronTrigger ID).

Usage

Note: Some things to note about `System.scheduleBatch`:

- When you call `System.scheduleBatch`, Salesforce schedules the job for execution at the specified time. Actual execution occurs at or after that time, depending on service availability.

- The scheduler runs as system—all classes are executed, whether or not the user has permission to execute the class.
- When the job's schedule is triggered, the system queues the batch job for processing. If Apex flex queue is enabled in your org, the batch job is added at the end of the flex queue. For more information, see Holding Batch Jobs in the Apex Flex Queue.
- All scheduled Apex limits apply for batch jobs scheduled using `System.scheduleBatch`. After the batch job is queued (with a status of `Holding` or `Queued`), all batch job limits apply and the job no longer counts toward scheduled Apex limits.
- After calling this method and before the batch job starts, you can use the returned scheduled job ID to abort the scheduled job using the `System.abortJob` method.

For an example, see Using Batch Apex.

`scheduleBatch(batchable, jobName, minutesFromNow, scopeSize)`

Schedules a batch job to run once in the future after the specified the time interval, with the specified job name and scope size. Returns the scheduled job ID (CronTrigger ID).

Signature

```
public static String scheduleBatch(Database.Batchable batchable, String jobName, Integer minutesFromNow, Integer scopeSize)
```

Parameters

batchable
Type: Database.Batchable

The batch class that implements the `Database.Batchable` interface.

jobName
Type: String

The name of the job that this method will start.

minutesFromNow
Type: Integer

The time interval in minutes after which the job should start executing.

scopeSize
Type: Integer

The number of records that should be passed to the batch `execute` method.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Note: Some things to note about `System.scheduleBatch`:

- When you call `System.scheduleBatch`, Salesforce schedules the job for execution at the specified time. Actual execution occurs at or after that time, depending on service availability.
- The scheduler runs as system—all classes are executed, whether or not the user has permission to execute the class.

- When the job's schedule is triggered, the system queues the batch job for processing. If Apex flex queue is enabled in your org, the batch job is added at the end of the flex queue. For more information, see Holding Batch Jobs in the Apex Flex Queue.
- All scheduled Apex limits apply for batch jobs scheduled using `System.scheduleBatch`. After the batch job is queued (with a status of `Holding` or `Queued`), all batch job limits apply and the job no longer counts toward scheduled Apex limits.
- After calling this method and before the batch job starts, you can use the returned scheduled job ID to abort the scheduled job using the `System.abortJob` method.

For an example, see Using the `System.scheduleBatch` Method.

`setPassword(userId, password)`

Sets the password for the specified user.

Signature

```
public static Void setPassword(ID userId, String password)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: ID

`password`
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

- If a security question hasn't been previously configured, a user who logs in with a new password that was set using `setPassword()` is redirected to the "Change Your Password" page.
- Use `resetPassword(userId, sendUserEmail)` if you want the user to go through the reset process and create their own password.

Warning: Be careful with this method, and don't expose this functionality to end users.

`submit(workItemIds, comments, nextApprover)`

Submits the processed approvals. The current user is the submitter and the entry criteria is evaluated for all processes applicable to the current user.

Signature

```
public static List<ID> submit(List<ID> workItemIds, String comments, String nextApprover)
```

Parameters

workItemIds
Type: List<ID>

comments
Type: String

nextApprover
Type: String

Return Value

Type: List<ID>

Usage

For enhanced submit and evaluation features, see the ProcessSubmitRequest class.

today()

Returns the current date in the current user's time zone.

Signature

```
public static Date today()
```

Return Value

Type: Date

Test Class

Contains methods related to Apex tests.

Namespace

System

Test Methods

The following are methods for `Test`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

clearApexPageMessages()
Clear the messages on a Visualforce page while executing Apex test methods.

createStub(parentType, stubProvider)
Creates a stubbed version of an Apex class that you can use for testing. This method is part of the Apex stub API. You can use it with the `System.StubProvider` interface to create a mocking framework.

enableChangeDataCapture()

Use this method in an Apex test so that change event notifications are generated for all supported Change Data Capture entities. Call this method at the beginning of your test before performing DML operations and calling `Test.getEventBus().deliver();`.

enqueueBatchJobs(numberOfJobs)

Adds the specified number of jobs with no-operation contents to the test-context queue. It first fills the test batch queue, up to the maximum 5 jobs, and then places jobs in the test flex queue. It throws a limit exception when the number of jobs in the test flex queue exceeds the allowed limit of 100 jobs.

getEventBus()

Returns an instance of the test event bus broker, which lets you operate on platform event or change event messages in an Apex test. For example, you can call `Test.getEventBus().deliver()` to deliver event messages.

getFlexQueueOrder()

Returns an ordered list of job IDs for jobs in the test-context flex queue. The job at index `0` is the next job slated to run. This method returns only test-context results, even if it's annotated with `@IsTest(SeeAllData=true)`.

getStandardPricebookId()

Returns the ID of the standard price book in the organization.

invokeContinuationMethod(controller, request)

Invokes the callback method for the specified controller and continuation in a test method.

isRunningTest()

Returns `true` if the currently executing code was called by code contained in a test method, `false` otherwise. Use this method if you need to run different code depending on whether it was being called from a test.

loadData(sObjectToken, resourceName)

Inserts test records from the specified static resource .csv file and for the specified sObject type, and returns a list of the inserted sObjects.

newSendEmailQuickActionDefaults(contextId, replyToId)

Creates a new QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults instance for testing a class implementing the QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler interface.

setContinuationResponse(requestLabel, mockResponse)

Sets a mock response for a continuation HTTP request in a test method.

setCreatedDate(recordId, createdDatetime)

Sets `CreatedDate` for a test-context sObject.

setCurrentPage(page)

A Visualforce test method that sets the current PageReference for the controller.

setCurrentPageReference(page)

A Visualforce test method that sets the current PageReference for the controller.

setFixedSearchResults(fixedSearchResults)

Defines a list of fixed search results to be returned by all subsequent SOSL statements in a test method.

setMock(interfaceType, instance)

Sets the response mock mode and instructs the Apex runtime to send a mock response whenever a callout is made through the HTTP classes or the auto-generated code from WSDLs.

setReadOnlyApplicationMode(applicationMode)

Sets the application mode for an organization to read-only in an Apex test to simulate read-only mode during Salesforce upgrades and downtimes. The application mode is reset to the default mode at the end of each Apex test run.

startTest()

Marks the point in your test code when your test actually begins. Use this method when you are testing governor limits.

stopTest()

Marks the point in your test code when your test ends. Use this method in conjunction with the `startTest` method.

testInstall(installImplementation, version, isPush)

Tests the implementation of the InstallHandler interface, which is used for specifying a post install script in packages. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

testSandboxPostCopyScript(script, organizationId, sandboxId, sandboxName)

Tests the implementation of the SandboxPostCopy Interface on page 2812, which is used for specifying a script to run at the completion of a Sandbox copy. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

testUninstall(uninstallImplementation)

Tests the implementation of the UninstallHandler interface, which is used for specifying an uninstall script in packages. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

`clearApexPageMessages()`

Clear the messages on a Visualforce page while executing Apex test methods.

Signature

```
public static void clearApexPageMessages()
```

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

This method may only be used in tests.

Example:

```
@isTest
static void clearMessagesTest() {
    Test.setCurrentPage(new PageReference('/'));
    ApexPages.addMessage(
        new ApexPages.Message(ApexPages.Severity.WARNING, 'Sample Warning')
    );
    System.assertEquals(1, ApexPages.getMessages().size());
    Test.clearApexPageMessages();
    System.assertEquals(0, ApexPages.getMessages().size());
}
```

createStub(parentType, stubProvider)

Creates a stubbed version of an Apex class that you can use for testing. This method is part of the Apex stub API. You can use it with the `System.StubProvider` interface to create a mocking framework.

Signature

```
public static Object createStub(System.Type parentType, System.StubProvider stubProvider)
```

Parameters

parentType
Type: System.Type

The type of the Apex class to be stubbed.

stubProvider
System.StubProvider

An implementation of the `StubProvider` interface.

Return Value

Type: Object

Returns the stubbed object to use in testing.

Usage

The `createStub()` method works together with the `System.StubProvider` interface. You define the behavior of the stubbed object by implementing the `StubProvider` interface. Then you create a stubbed object using the `createStub()` method. When you invoke methods on the stubbed object, the `handleMethodCall()` method of the `StubProvider` interface is called to perform the behavior of the stubbed method.

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Build a Mocking Framework with the Stub API

enableChangeDataCapture()

Use this method in an Apex test so that change event notifications are generated for all supported Change Data Capture entities. Call this method at the beginning of your test before performing DML operations and calling `Test.getEventBus().deliver();`.

Signature

```
public static void enableChangeDataCapture()
```

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

The `enableChangeDataCapture()` method ensures that Apex tests can fire change event triggers regardless of the entities selected in Setup in the Change Data Capture page. The `enableChangeDataCapture()` method doesn't affect the entities selected in Setup.

SEE ALSO:

Change Data Capture Developer Guide

`enqueueBatchJobs(numberOfJobs)`

Adds the specified number of jobs with no-operation contents to the test-context queue. It first fills the test batch queue, up to the maximum 5 jobs, and then places jobs in the test flex queue. It throws a limit exception when the number of jobs in the test flex queue exceeds the allowed limit of 100 jobs.

Signature

```
public static List<Id> enqueueBatchJobs(Integer numberOfJobs)
```

Parameters

numberOfJobs
Type: Integer

Number of test jobs to enqueue.

Return Value

Type: List<Id>

A list of IDs of enqueued test jobs.

Usage

Use this method to reduce testing time. Instead of using your org's real batch jobs for testing, you can use this method to simulate batch-job enqueueing. Using `enqueueBatchJobs(numberOfJobs)` is faster than enqueuing real batch jobs.

`getEventBus()`

Returns an instance of the test event bus broker, which lets you operate on platform event or change event messages in an Apex test. For example, you can call `Test.getEventBus().deliver()` to deliver event messages.

Signature

```
public static EventBus.TestBroker getEventBus()
```

Return Value

Type: EventBus.TestBroker

A broker for the test event bus.

Usage

Enclose `Test.getEventBus().deliver()` within the `Test.startTest()` and `Test.stopTest()` statement block.

```
Test.startTest();
// Create test events
// ...
// Publish test events with EventBus.publish()
// ...
// Deliver test events
Test.getEventBus().deliver();
// Perform validation
// ...
Test.stopTest();
```

SEE ALSO:

Platform Events Developer Guide

`getFlexQueueOrder()`

Returns an ordered list of job IDs for jobs in the test-context flex queue. The job at index `0` is the next job slated to run. This method returns only test-context results, even if it's annotated with `@IsTest(SeeAllData=true)`.

Signature

```
public static List<Id> getFlexQueueOrder()
```

Return Value

Type: List<Id>

An ordered list of IDs of the jobs in the test's flex queue.

`getStandardPricebookId()`

Returns the ID of the standard price book in the organization.

Signature

```
public static Id getStandardPricebookId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

The ID of the standard price book.

Usage

This method returns the ID of the standard price book in your organization regardless of whether the test can query organization data. By default, tests can't query organization data unless they're annotated with `@isTest(SeeAllData=true)`.

Creating price book entries with a standard price requires the ID of the standard price book. Use this method to get the standard price book ID so that you can create price book entries in your tests.

Example

This example creates some test data for price book entries. The test method in this example gets the standard price book ID and uses this ID to create a price book entry for a product with a standard price. Next, the test creates a custom price book and uses the ID of this custom price book to add a price book entry with a custom price.

```
@isTest
public class PriceBookTest {
    // Utility method that can be called by Apex tests to create price book entries.
    static testmethod void addPricebookEntries() {
        // First, set up test price book entries.
        // Insert a test product.
        Product2 prod = new Product2(Name = 'Laptop X200',
            Family = 'Hardware');
        insert prod;

        // Get standard price book ID.
        // This is available irrespective of the state of SeeAllData.
        Id pricebookId = Test.getStandardPricebookId();

        // 1. Insert a price book entry for the standard price book.
        // Standard price book entries require the standard price book ID we got earlier.

        PricebookEntry standardPrice = new PricebookEntry(
            Pricebook2Id = pricebookId, Product2Id = prod.Id,
            UnitPrice = 10000, IsActive = true);
        insert standardPrice;

        // Create a custom price book
        Pricebook2 customPB = new Pricebook2(Name='Custom Pricebook', isActive=true);
        insert customPB;

        // 2. Insert a price book entry with a custom price.
        PricebookEntry customPrice = new PricebookEntry(
            Pricebook2Id = customPB.Id, Product2Id = prod.Id,
            UnitPrice = 12000, IsActive = true);
        insert customPrice;

        // Next, perform some tests with your test price book entries.
    }
}
```

`invokeContinuationMethod(controller, request)`

Invokes the callback method for the specified controller and continuation in a test method.

Signature

```
public static Object invokeContinuationMethod(Object controller, Continuation request)
```

Parameters

controller
Type: Object

An instance of the controller class that invokes the continuation request.

request
Type: Continuation

The continuation that is returned by an action method in the controller class.

Return Value

Type: Object

The response of the continuation callback method.

Usage

Use the `Test.setContinuationResponse` and `Test.invokeContinuationMethod` methods to test continuations. In test context, callouts of continuations aren't sent to the external service. By using these methods, you can set a mock response and cause the runtime to call the continuation callback method to process the mock response.

Call `Test.setContinuationResponse` before you call `Test.invokeContinuationMethod`. When you call `Test.invokeContinuationMethod`, the runtime executes the callback method that is associated with the continuation. The callback method processes the mock response that is set by `Test.setContinuationResponse`.

isRunningTest()

Returns `true` if the currently executing code was called by code contained in a test method, `false` otherwise. Use this method if you need to run different code depending on whether it was being called from a test.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isRunningTest()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

loadData(sObjectToken, resourceName)

Inserts test records from the specified static resource .csv file and for the specified sObject type, and returns a list of the inserted sObjects.

Signature

```
public static List<sObject> loadData(Schema.SObjectType sObjectToken, String
resourceName)
```

Parameters

sObjectToken
Type: Schema.SObjectType

The sObject type for which to insert test records.

resourceName
Type: String

The static resource that corresponds to the .csv file containing the test records to load. The name is case insensitive.

Return Value

Type: List<sObject>

Usage

You must create the static resource prior to calling this method. The static resource is a comma-delimited file ending with a .csv extension. The file contains field names and values for the test records. The first line of the file must contain the field names and subsequent lines are the field values. To learn more about static resources, see "Defining Static Resources" in the Salesforce online help.

Once you create a static resource for your .csv file, the static resource will be assigned a MIME type. Supported MIME types are:

- text/csv
- application/vnd.ms-excel
- application/octet-stream
- text/plain

newSendEmailQuickActionDefaults(contextId, replyToId)

Creates a new QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults instance for testing a class implementing the QuickAction.QuickActionDefaultsHandler interface.

Signature

```
public static QuickAction.SendEmailQuickActionDefaults newSendEmailQuickActionDefaults(ID contextId, ID replyToId)
```

Parameters

contextId
Type: Id

Parent record of the email message.

replyToId
Type: Id

Previous email message ID if this email message is a reply.

Return Value

Type: SendEmailQuickActionDefaults Class

The default values used for an email message quick action.

setContinuationResponse(requestLabel, mockResponse)

Sets a mock response for a continuation HTTP request in a test method.

Signature

```
public static void setContinuationResponse(String requestLabel, System.HttpResponse
mockResponse)
```

Parameters

requestLabel
Type: String

The unique label that corresponds to the continuation HTTP request. This label is returned by `Continuation.addHttpRequest`.

mockResponse
Type: HttpResponse

The fake response to be returned by `Test.invokeContinuationMethod`.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Use the `Test.setContinuationResponse` and `Test.invokeContinuationMethod` methods to test continuations. In test context, callouts of continuations aren't sent to the external service. By using these methods, you can set a mock response and cause the runtime to call the continuation callback method to process the mock response.

Call `Test.setContinuationResponse` before you call `Test.invokeContinuationMethod`. When you call `Test.invokeContinuationMethod`, the runtime executes the callback method that is associated with the continuation. The callback method processes the mock response that is set by `Test.setContinuationResponse`.

`setCreatedDate(recordId, createdDatetime)`

Sets `CreatedDate` for a test-context sObject.

Signature

```
public static void setCreatedDate(Id recordId, Datetime createdDatetime)
```

Parameters

recordId
Type: Id

The ID of an sObject.

createdDatetime
Type: Datetime

The value to assign to the sObject's `CreatedDate` field.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

All database changes are rolled back at the end of a test. You can't use this method on records that existed before your test executed. You also can't use `setCreatedDate` in methods annotated with `@isTest(SeeAllData=true)`, because those methods have access to all data in your org. If you set `CreatedDate` to a future value, it can cause unexpected results. This method takes two parameters—an sObject ID and a Datetime value—neither of which can be null.

Insert your test record before you set its `CreatedDate`, as shown in this example.

```
@isTest
private class SetCreatedDateTest {
    static testMethod void testSetCreatedDate() {
        Account a = new Account(name='myAccount');
        insert a;
        Test.setCreatedDate(a.Id, DateTime.newInstance(2012,12,12));
        Test.startTest();
        Account myAccount = [SELECT Id, Name, CreatedDate FROM Account
                             WHERE Name ='myAccount' limit 1];
        System.assertEquals(myAccount.CreatedDate, DateTime.newInstance(2012,12,12));
        Test.stopTest();
    }
}
```

`setCurrentPage(page)`

A Visualforce test method that sets the current PageReference for the controller.

Signature

```
public static Void setCurrentPage(PageReference page)
```

Parameters

page
Type: System.PageReference

Return Value

Type: Void

`setCurrentPageReference(page)`

A Visualforce test method that sets the current PageReference for the controller.

Signature

```
public static Void setCurrentPageReference(PageReference page)
```

Parameters

page
Type: System.PageReference

Return Value

Type: Void

`setFixedSearchResults(fixedSearchResults)`

Defines a list of fixed search results to be returned by all subsequent SOSL statements in a test method.

Signature

```
public static Void setFixedSearchResults(ID[] fixedSearchResults)
```

Parameters

`fixedSearchResults`
Type: ID[]

The list of record IDs specified by *`opt_set_search_results`* replaces the results that would normally be returned by the SOSL queries if they were not subject to any `WHERE` or `LIMIT` clauses. If these clauses exist in the SOSL queries, they are applied to the list of fixed search results.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

If *`opt_set_search_results`* is not specified, all subsequent SOSL queries return no results.

For more information, see Dynamic SOSL.

`setMock(interfaceType, instance)`

Sets the response mock mode and instructs the Apex runtime to send a mock response whenever a callout is made through the HTTP classes or the auto-generated code from WSDLs.

Signature

```
public static Void setMock(Type interfaceType, Object instance)
```

Parameters

`interfaceType`
Type: System.Type

`instance`
Type: Object

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Note: To mock a callout if the code that performs the callout is in a managed package, call `Test.setMock` from a test method in the same package with the same namespace.

setReadOnlyApplicationMode(applicationMode)

Sets the application mode for an organization to read-only in an Apex test to simulate read-only mode during Salesforce upgrades and downtimes. The application mode is reset to the default mode at the end of each Apex test run.

Signature

```
public static Void setReadOnlyApplicationMode(Boolean applicationMode)
```

Parameters

applicationMode
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Also see the `getApplicationReadWriteMode()` System method.

Do not use `setReadOnlyApplicationMode` for purposes unrelated to Read-Only Mode testing, such as simulating DML exceptions.

Example

The following example sets the application mode to read-only and attempts to insert a new account record, which results in the exception. It then resets the application mode and performs a successful insert.

```
@isTest
private class ApplicationReadOnlyModeTestClass {
  public static testmethod void test() {
    // Create a test account that is used for querying later.
    Account testAccount = new Account(Name = 'TestAccount');
    insert testAccount;

    // Set the application read only mode.
    Test.setReadOnlyApplicationMode(true);

    // Verify that the application is in read-only mode.
    System.assertEquals(
               ApplicationReadWriteMode.READ_ONLY,
               System.getApplicationReadWriteMode());

    // Create a new account object.
    Account testAccount2 = new Account(Name = 'TestAccount2');
```

```
    try {
      // Get the test account created earlier. Should be successful.
      Account testAccountFromDb =
        [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'TestAccount'];
      System.assertEquals(testAccount.Id, testAccountFromDb.Id);

      // Inserts should result in the InvalidReadOnlyUserDmlException
      // being thrown.
      insert testAccount2;
      System.assertEquals(false, true);
    } catch (System.InvalidReadOnlyUserDmlException e) {
      // Expected
    }
    // Insertion should work after read only application mode gets disabled.
    Test.setReadOnlyApplicationMode(false);

    insert testAccount2;
    Account testAccount2FromDb =
       [SELECT Id, Name FROM Account WHERE Name = 'TestAccount2'];
    System.assertEquals(testAccount2.Id, testAccount2FromDb.Id);
  }
}
```

`startTest()`

Marks the point in your test code when your test actually begins. Use this method when you are testing governor limits.

Signature

```
public static Void startTest()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

You can also use this method with `stopTest` to ensure that all asynchronous calls that come after the `startTest` method are run before doing any assertions or testing. Each test method is allowed to call this method only once. All of the code before this method should be used to initialize variables, populate data structures, and so on, allowing you to set up everything you need to run your test. Any code that executes after the call to `startTest` and before `stopTest` is assigned a new set of governor limits.

`stopTest()`

Marks the point in your test code when your test ends. Use this method in conjunction with the `startTest` method.

Signature

```
public static Void stopTest()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

Each test method is allowed to call this method only once. Any code that executes after the `stopTest` method is assigned the original limits that were in effect before `startTest` was called. All asynchronous calls made after the `startTest` method are collected by the system. When `stopTest` is executed, all asynchronous processes are run synchronously.

Note: Asynchronous calls, such as `@future` or `executeBatch`, called in a `startTest`, `stopTest` block, do not count against your limits for the number of queued jobs.

`testInstall(installImplementation, version, isPush)`

Tests the implementation of the InstallHandler interface, which is used for specifying a post install script in packages. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

Signature

```
public static Void testInstall(InstallHandler installImplementation, Version version,
Boolean isPush)
```

Parameters

installImplementation
Type: System.InstallHandler

A class that implements the `InstallHandler` interface.

version
Type: System.Version

The version number of the existing package installed in the subscriber organization.

isPush
Type: Boolean

(Optional) Specifies whether the upgrade is a push. The default value is `false`.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method throws a run-time exception if the test install fails.

Example

```
@isTest static void test() {
  PostInstallClass postinstall =
    new PostInstallClass();
    Test.testInstall(postinstall,
```

```
        new Version(1,0));
    }
```

testSandboxPostCopyScript(script, organizationId, sandboxId, sandboxName)

Tests the implementation of the SandboxPostCopy Interface on page 2812, which is used for specifying a script to run at the completion of a Sandbox copy. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

Signature

```
public static void testSandboxPostCopyScript(System.SandboxPostCopy script, Id
organizationId, Id sandboxId, String sandboxName)
```

Parameters

script
Type: System.SandboxPostCopy

A class that implements the `SandboxPostCopy` interface.

organizationId
Type: Id

The sandbox organization ID

sandboxId
Type: Id

The sandbox ID to be provided to the SandboxPostCopy script.

sandboxName
Type: String

The sandbox name to be provided to the SandboxPostCopy script.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

This method throws a run-time exception if the test install fails.

Example

See SandboxPostCopy Example Implementation on page 2814

testUninstall(uninstallImplementation)

Tests the implementation of the UninstallHandler interface, which is used for specifying an uninstall script in packages. Tests run as the test initiator in the development environment.

Signature

```
public static Void testUninstall(UninstallHandler uninstallImplementation)
```

Parameters

uninstallImplementation
Type: System.UninstallHandler

A class that implements the `UninstallHandler` interface.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

This method throws a run-time exception if the test uninstall fails.

Example

```
@isTest static void test() {
  UninstallClass uninstall =
    new UninstallClass();
    Test.testUninstall(uninstall);
  }
```

Time Class

Contains methods for the Time primitive data type.

Namespace

System

Usage

For more information on time, see Time Data Type.

Time Methods

The following are methods for `Time`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addHours(additionalHours)
Adds the specified number of hours to a Time.

addMilliseconds(additionalMilliseconds)
Adds the specified number of milliseconds to a Time.

addMinutes(additionalMinutes)
Adds the specified number of minutes to a Time.

addSeconds(additionalSeconds)
Adds the specified number of seconds to a Time.

hour()
Returns the hour component of a Time.

millisecond()
Returns the millisecond component of a Time.

minute()
Returns the minute component of a Time.

newInstance(hour, minutes, seconds, milliseconds)
Constructs a Time from Integer representations of the specified hour, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds. (UTC is assumed.)

second()
Returns the second component of a Time.

addHours(additionalHours)

Adds the specified number of hours to a Time.

Signature

```
public Time addHours(Integer additionalHours)
```

Parameters

additionalHours
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(1, 2, 3, 4);
Time expected = Time.newInstance(4, 2, 3, 4);
System.assertEquals(expected, myTime.addHours(3));
```

addMilliseconds(additionalMilliseconds)

Adds the specified number of milliseconds to a Time.

Signature

```
public Time addMilliseconds(Integer additionalMilliseconds)
```

Parameters

additionalMilliseconds
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(1, 2, 3, 0);
Time expected = Time.newInstance(1, 2, 4, 400);
System.assertEquals(expected, myTime.addMilliseconds(1400));
```

addMinutes(additionalMinutes)

Adds the specified number of minutes to a Time.

Signature

```
public Time addMinutes(Integer additionalMinutes)
```

Parameters

additionalMinutes
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(18, 30, 2, 20);
Integer myMinutes = myTime.minute();
myMinutes = myMinutes + 5;
System.assertEquals(myMinutes, 35);
```

addSeconds(additionalSeconds)

Adds the specified number of seconds to a Time.

Signature

```
public Time addSeconds(Integer additionalSeconds)
```

Parameters

additionalSeconds
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(1, 2, 55, 0);
Time expected = Time.newInstance(1, 3, 5, 0);
System.assertEquals(expected, myTime.addSeconds(10));
```

hour()

Returns the hour component of a Time.

Signature

```
public Integer hour()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(18, 30, 2, 20);
myTime = myTime.addHours(2);
Integer myHour = myTime.hour();
System.assertEquals(myHour, 20);
```

millisecond()

Returns the millisecond component of a Time.

Signature

```
public Integer millisecond()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(3, 14, 15, 926);
System.assertEquals(926, myTime.millisecond());
```

minute()

Returns the minute component of a Time.

Signature

```
public Integer minute()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(3, 14, 15, 926);
System.assertEquals(14, myTime.minute());
```

newInstance(hour, minutes, seconds, milliseconds)

Constructs a Time from Integer representations of the specified hour, minutes, seconds, and milliseconds. (UTC is assumed.)

Signature

```
public static Time newInstance(Integer hour, Integer minutes, Integer seconds, Integer
milliseconds)
```

Parameters

hour
Type: Integer

minutes
Type: Integer

seconds
Type: Integer

milliseconds
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: Time

Example

The following example creates a time of 18:30:2:20 (UTC).

```
Time myTime =
Time.newInstance(18, 30, 2, 20);
```

second()

Returns the second component of a Time.

Signature

```
public Integer second()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Example

```
Time myTime = Time.newInstance(3, 14, 15, 926);
System.assertEquals(15, myTime.second());
```

TimeZone Class

Represents a time zone. Contains methods for creating a new time zone and obtaining time zone properties, such as the time zone ID, offset, and display name.

Namespace

System

Usage

You can use the methods in this class to get properties of a time zone, such as the properties of the time zone returned by `UserInfo.getTimeZone`, or the time zone returned by `getTimeZone` of this class.

Example

This example shows how to get properties of the current user's time zone and displays them to the debug log.

```
TimeZone tz = UserInfo.getTimeZone();
System.debug('Display name: ' + tz.getDisplayName());
System.debug('ID: ' + tz.getID());
// During daylight saving time for the America/Los_Angeles time zone
System.debug('Offset: ' + tz.getOffset(DateTime.newInstance(2012,10,23,12,0,0)));
// Not during daylight saving time for the America/Los_Angeles time zone
System.debug('Offset: ' + tz.getOffset(DateTime.newInstance(2012,11,23,12,0,0)));
System.debug('String format: ' + tz.toString());
```

The output of this sample varies based on the user's time zone. This is an example output if the user's time zone is America/Los_Angeles. For this time zone, daylight saving time is -7 hours from GMT (-25200000 milliseconds) and standard time is -8 hours from GMT (-28800000 milliseconds).

```
Display name: Pacific Standard Time
ID: America/Los_Angeles
Offset: -25200000
Offset: -28800000
String format: America/Los_Angeles
```

This second example shows how to create a time zone for the New York time zone and get the offset of this time zone to the GMT time zone. The example uses two dates to get the offset from. One date is before DST, and one is after DST. In 2000, DST ended on Sunday,

October 29 for the New York time zone. Because the date occurs after DST ends, the offset on the first date is –5 hours to GMT. In 2012, DST ended on Sunday, November 4. Because the date is within DST, the offset on the second date is –4 hours.

```
// Get the New York time zone
Timezone tz = Timezone.getTimeZone('America/New_York');

// Create a date before the 2007 shift of DST into November
DateTime dtpre = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(2000, 11, 1, 0, 0, 0);
system.debug(tz.getOffset(dtpre));   //-18000000 (= -5 hours = EST)

// Create a date after the 2007 shift of DST into November
DateTime dtpost = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(2012, 11, 1, 0, 0, 0);
system.debug(tz.getOffset(dtpost));   //-14400000 (= -4 hours = EDT)
```

This next example is similar to the previous one except that it gets the offset around the boundary of DST. In 2014, DST ended on Sunday, November 2 at 2:00 AM local time for the New York time zone. The first offset is obtained right before DST ends, and the second offset is obtained right after DST ends. The dates are created by using the `DateTime.newInstanceGMT` method. This method expects the passed-in date values to be based on the GMT time zone.

```
// Get the New York time zone
Timezone tz = Timezone.getTimeZone('America/New_York');

// Before DST ends
DateTime dtpre = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(2014, 11, 2, 5, 59, 59);  //1:59:59AM local
system.debug(tz.getOffset(dtpre));   //-14400000 (= -4 hours = still on DST)

// After DST ends
DateTime dtpost = DateTime.newInstanceGMT(2014, 11, 2, 6, 0, 0); //1:00:00AM local
system.debug(tz.getOffset(dtpost));  //-18000000 (= -5 hours = back one hour)
```

TimeZone Methods

The following are methods for `TimeZone`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDisplayName()
Returns this time zone's display name.

getID()
Returns this time zone's ID.

getOffset(date)
Returns the time zone offset, in milliseconds, of the specified date to the GMT time zone.

getTimeZone(timeZoneIdString)
Returns the time zone corresponding to the specified time zone ID.

toString()
Returns the string representation of this time zone.

`getDisplayName()`

Returns this time zone's display name.

Signature

```
public String getDisplayName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Versioned Behavior Changes

In API version 45.0 and later, getDisplayName displays Daylight Savings Time appropriately when daylight savings are in effect. For example, British Summer Time is displayed for Europe/London and Pacific Daylight Time for America/Los_Angeles.

getID()

Returns this time zone's ID.

Signature

```
public String getID()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOffset(date)

Returns the time zone offset, in milliseconds, of the specified date to the GMT time zone.

Signature

```
public Integer getOffset(Datetime date)
```

Parameters

date

Type: Datetime

The *date* argument is the date and time to evaluate.

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Note: The returned offset is adjusted for daylight saving time if the *date* argument falls within daylight saving time for this time zone.

getTimeZone(timeZoneIdString)

Returns the time zone corresponding to the specified time zone ID.

Signature

```
public static TimeZone getTimeZone(String timeZoneIdString)
```

Parameters

timeZoneIdString
Type: String

The time zone values you can use for the *Id* argument are any valid time zone values that the Java TimeZone class supports.

Return Value

Type: TimeZone

Example

```
TimeZone tz = TimeZone.getTimeZone('America/Los_Angeles');
String tzName = tz.getDisplayName();
System.assert(tzName.equals('(GMT-08:00) Pacific Standard Time (America/Los_Angeles)') ||

              tzName.equals('(GMT-07:00) Pacific Daylight Time (America/Los_Angeles)'));
```

`toString()`

Returns the string representation of this time zone.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Trigger Class

Use the `Trigger` class to access run-time context information in a trigger, such as the type of trigger or the list of sObject records that the trigger operates on.

Namespace

System

Trigger Context Variables

The `Trigger` class provides the following context variables.

Variable	Usage
`isExecuting`	Returns true if the current context for the Apex code is a trigger, not a Visualforce page, a Web service, or an `executeanonymous()` API call.
`isInsert`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired due to an insert operation, from the Salesforce user interface, Apex, or the API.
`isUpdate`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired due to an update operation, from the Salesforce user interface, Apex, or the API.
`isDelete`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired due to a delete operation, from the Salesforce user interface, Apex, or the API.
`isBefore`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired before any record was saved.
`isAfter`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired after all records were saved.
`isUndelete`	Returns `true` if this trigger was fired after a record is recovered from the Recycle Bin. This recovery can occur after an undelete operation from the Salesforce user interface, Apex, or the API.
`new`	Returns a list of the new versions of the sObject records. This sObject list is only available in `insert`, `update`, and `undelete` triggers, and the records can only be modified in `before` triggers.
`newMap`	A map of IDs to the new versions of the sObject records. This map is only available in `before update`, `after insert`, `after update`, and `after undelete` triggers.
`old`	Returns a list of the old versions of the sObject records. This sObject list is only available in `update` and `delete` triggers.
`oldMap`	A map of IDs to the old versions of the sObject records. This map is only available in `update` and `delete` triggers.
`operationType`	Returns an enum of type System.TriggerOperation corresponding to the current operation. Possible values of the System.TriggerOperation enum are: `BEFORE_INSERT`, `BEFORE_UPDATE`, `BEFORE_DELETE`,`AFTER_INSERT`, `AFTER_UPDATE`, `AFTER_DELETE`, and `AFTER_UNDELETE`. If you vary your programming logic based on different trigger types, consider using the `switch` statement with different permutations of unique trigger execution enum states.
`size`	The total number of records in a trigger invocation, both old and new.

Note: The record firing a trigger can include an invalid field value, such as a formula that divides by zero. In this case, the field value is set to `null` in these variables:

- `new`
- `newMap`
- `old`
- `oldMap`

Example

For example, in this simple trigger, `Trigger.new` is a list of sObjects and can be iterated over in a `for` loop. It can also be used as a bind variable in the `IN` clause of a SOQL query.

```
Trigger simpleTrigger on Account (after insert) {
    for (Account a : Trigger.new) {
        // Iterate over each sObject
    }

    // This single query finds every contact that is associated with any of the
    // triggering accounts. Note that although Trigger.new is a collection of
    // records, when used as a bind variable in a SOQL query, Apex automatically
    // transforms the list of records into a list of corresponding Ids.
    Contact[] cons = [SELECT LastName FROM Contact
                      WHERE AccountId IN :Trigger.new];
}
```

This trigger uses Boolean context variables like `Trigger.isBefore` and `Trigger.isDelete` to define code that only executes for specific trigger conditions:

```
trigger myAccountTrigger on Account(before delete, before insert, before update,
                                    after delete, after insert, after update) {
if (Trigger.isBefore) {
    if (Trigger.isDelete) {

        // In a before delete trigger, the trigger accesses the records that will be
        // deleted with the Trigger.old list.
        for (Account a : Trigger.old) {
            if (a.name != 'okToDelete') {
                a.addError('You can\'t delete this record!');
            }
        }
    } else {

    // In before insert or before update triggers, the trigger accesses the new records
    // with the Trigger.new list.
        for (Account a : Trigger.new) {
            if (a.name == 'bad') {
                a.name.addError('Bad name');
            }
    }
    if (Trigger.isInsert) {
        for (Account a : Trigger.new) {
            System.assertEquals('xxx', a.accountNumber);
            System.assertEquals('industry', a.industry);
            System.assertEquals(100, a.numberofemployees);
            System.assertEquals(100.0, a.annualrevenue);
            a.accountNumber = 'yyy';
        }

// If the trigger is not a before trigger, it must be an after trigger.
} else {
    if (Trigger.isInsert) {
        List<Contact> contacts = new List<Contact>();
```

```
        for (Account a : Trigger.new) {
            if(a.Name == 'makeContact') {
                contacts.add(new Contact (LastName = a.Name,
                                          AccountId = a.Id));
            }
        }
      insert contacts;
    }
  }
}}}
```

TriggerOperation Enum

System.TriggerOperation enum values are associated with trigger events.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the `System.TriggerOperation` enum:

- AFTER_DELETE
- AFTER_INSERT
- AFTER_UNDELETE
- AFTER_UPDATE
- BEFORE_DELETE
- BEFORE_INSERT
- BEFORE_UPDATE

Type Class

Contains methods for getting the Apex type that corresponds to an Apex class and for instantiating new types.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the `forName` methods to retrieve the type of an Apex class, which can be a built-in or a user-defined class. You can use these methods to retrieve the type of public and global classes, and not private classes even if the context user has access. Also, use the `newInstance` method if you want to instantiate a Type that implements an interface and call its methods while letting someone else, such as a subscriber of your package, provide the methods' implementations.

Example: Instantiating a Type Based on Its Name

The following sample shows how to use the Type methods to instantiate a Type based on its name. A typical application of this scenario is when a package subscriber provides a custom implementation of an interface that is part of an installed package. The package can get the name of the class that implements the interface through a custom setting in the subscriber's org. The package can then instantiate the type that corresponds to this class name and invoke the methods that the subscriber implemented.

In this sample, `Vehicle` represents the interface that the `VehicleImpl` class implements. The last class contains the code sample that invokes the methods implemented in `VehicleImpl`.

This is the `Vehicle` interface.

```
global interface Vehicle {
    Long getMaxSpeed();
    String getType();
}
```

This is the implementation of the `Vehicle` interface.

```
global class VehicleImpl implements Vehicle {
    global Long getMaxSpeed() { return 100; }
    global String getType() { return 'Sedan'; }
}
```

The method in this class gets the name of the class that implements the `Vehicle` interface through a custom setting value. It then instantiates this class by getting the corresponding type and calling the `newInstance` method. Next, it invokes the methods implemented in `VehicleImpl`. This sample requires that you create a public list custom setting named *`CustomImplementation`* with a text field named *`className`*. Create one record for this custom setting with a data set name of *`Vehicle`* and a class name value of *`VehicleImpl`*.

```
public class CustomerImplInvocationClass {

    public static void invokeCustomImpl() {
        // Get the class name from a custom setting.
        // This class implements the Vehicle interface.
        CustomImplementation__c cs = CustomImplementation__c.getInstance('Vehicle');

        // Get the Type corresponding to the class name
        Type t = Type.forName(cs.className__c);

        // Instantiate the type.
        // The type of the instantiated object
        //   is the interface.
        Vehicle v = (Vehicle)t.newInstance();

        // Call the methods that have a custom implementation
        System.debug('Max speed: ' + v.getMaxSpeed());
        System.debug('Vehicle type: ' + v.getType());
    }
}
```

Class Property

The `class` property returns the `System.Type` of the type it is called on. It is exposed on all Apex built-in types including primitive data types and collections, sObject types, and user-defined classes. This property can be used instead of `forName` methods.

Call this property on the type name. For example:

```
System.Type t = Integer.class;
```

You can use this property for the second argument of `JSON.deserialize`, `deserializeStrict`, `JSONParser.readValueAs`, and `readValueAsStrict` methods to get the type of the object to deserialize. For example:

```
Decimal n = (Decimal)JSON.deserialize('100.1', Decimal.class);
```

Type Methods

The following are methods for `Type`.

IN THIS SECTION:

equals(typeToCompare)

Returns `true` if the specified type is equal to the current type; otherwise, returns `false`.

forName(fullyQualifiedName)

Returns the type that corresponds to the specified fully qualified class name.

forName(namespace, name)

Returns the type that corresponds to the specified namespace and class name.

getName()

Returns the name of the current type.

hashCode()

Returns a hash code value for the current type.

isAssignableFrom(sourceType)

Returns `true` if an object reference of the specified type can be assigned from the child type; otherwise, returns `false`.

newInstance()

Creates an instance of the current type and returns this new instance.

toString()

Returns a string representation of the current type, which is the type name.

`equals(typeToCompare)`

Returns `true` if the specified type is equal to the current type; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean equals(Object typeToCompare)
```

Parameters

`typeToCompare`
Type: Object

The type to compare with the current type.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Example

```
Type t1 = Account.class;
Type t2 = Type.forName('Account');
System.assert(t1.equals(t2));
```

forName(fullyQualifiedName)

Returns the type that corresponds to the specified fully qualified class name.

Signature

```
public static System.Type forName(String fullyQualifiedName)
```

Parameters

fullyQualifiedName
Type: String

The fully qualified name of the class to get the type of. The fully qualified class name contains the namespace name, for example, `MyNamespace.ClassName`.

Return Value

Type: `System.Type`

Usage

Note:

- This method returns `null` if called outside a managed package to get the type of a non-global class in a managed package. This is because the non-global class is not visible outside the managed package. For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 27.0 and earlier, this method does return the corresponding class type for the non-global managed package class.
- When called from an installed managed package to get the name of a local type in an organization with no defined namespace, the `forName(fullyQualifiedName)` method returns `null`. Instead, use the `forName(namespace, name)` method and specify an empty string or `null` for the namespace argument.

forName(namespace, name)

Returns the type that corresponds to the specified namespace and class name.

Signature

```
public static System.Type forName(String namespace, String name)
```

Parameters

namespace
Type: String

The namespace of the class. If the class doesn't have a namespace, set the *namespace* argument to `null` or an empty string.

name
Type: String

The name of the class.

Return Value

Type: `System.Type`

Usage

Note:

- This method returns `null` if called outside a managed package to get the type of a non-global class in a managed package. This is because the non-global class is not visible outside the managed package. For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 27.0 and earlier, this method does return the corresponding class type for the non-global managed package class.
- Use this method instead of `forName(fullyQualifiedName)` if it will be called from a managed package installed in an organization with no defined namespace. To get the name of a local type, set the namespace argument to an empty string or `null`. For example, `Type t = Type.forName('', 'ClassName');`.

Example

This example shows how to get the type that corresponds to the `ClassName` class and the `MyNamespace` namespace.

```
Type myType =
   Type.forName('MyNamespace', 'ClassName');
```

getName()

Returns the name of the current type.

Signature

```
public String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

This example shows how to get a Type's name. It first obtains a Type by calling `forName`, then calls `getName` on the Type object.

```
Type t =
   Type.forName('MyClassName');

String typeName =
   t.getName();
System.assertEquals('MyClassName',
   typeName);
```

`hashCode()`

Returns a hash code value for the current type.

Signature

```
public Integer hashCode()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

The returned hash code value corresponds to the type name hash code that `String.hashCode` returns.

`isAssignableFrom(sourceType)`

Returns `true` if an object reference of the specified type can be assigned from the child type; otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isAssignableFrom(Type sourceType)
```

Parameters

`sourceType`
The type of the object with which you are checking compatibility.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

The method returns `true` when the method is invoked as parentType.isAssignableFrom(childType). When invoked in any of the following ways, the method returns `false`:

- childType.isAssignableFrom(parentType)
- typeA.isAssignableFrom(TypeB) where TypeB is a sibling of TypeA
- typeA.isAssignableFrom(TypeB) where TypeB and TypeA are unrelated

Note: A childType is the child of a parentType when it implements an interface, extends a virtual or abstract class, or is the same `System.Type` as the parentType.

Usage

Unlike the `instanceof` operator, this method allows you to check type compatibility without having to create a class instance. This method eliminates static compile-time dependencies that `instanceof` requires.

The following code demonstrates how a typical ISV customer can use `isAssignableFrom()` to check compatibility between a customer-defined type (customerProvidedPluginType) and a valid plugin type.

```
//Scenario: Managed package code loading a "plugin" class that implements a managed
interface; the implementation done outside of the package
```

```
String pluginNameStr = Config__c.getInstance().PluginApexType__c;
Type customerProvidedPluginType = Type.forName(pluginNameStr);
Type pluginInterface = ManagedPluginInterface.class;

// Constructors may have side-effects, including potentially unsafe DML/callouts.
// We want to make sure the class is really designed to be a valid plugin before we
instantiate it
Boolean validPlugin = pluginInterface.isAssignableFrom(customerProvidedPluginType); //
validate that it implements the right interface

if(!validPlugin){
    throw new SecurityException('Cannot create instance of '+customerProvidedPluginType+'.
 Does not implement ManagedPluginInterface');
}else{
    return Type.newInstance(validPlugin);
}
```

Example

The following code snippet first defines sibling classes A and B that both implement the Callable interface and an unrelated class C. Then, it explores several type comparisons using `isAssignableFrom()`.

```
//Define classes A, B, and C

global class A implements Database.Batchable<String>, Callable {
    global Iterable<String> start(Database.BatchableContext context) { return null; }
    global void execute(Database.BatchableContext context, String[] scope) { }
    global void finish(Database.BatchableContext context) { }
    global Object call(String action, Map<String, Object> args) { return null; }
}
```

```
global class B implements Callable {
    global Object call(String action, Map<String, Object> args) { return null; }
}
```

```
global class C { }
```

```
Type listOfStrings = Type.forName('List<String>');
Type listOfIntegers = Type.forName('List<Integer>');
boolean flagListTypes = listOfIntegers.isAssignableFrom(listOfStrings); // false
```

```
//Examples with stringType and idType
Type stringType = Type.forName('String');
Type idType = Type.forName('Id');
boolean isId_assignableFromString = idType.isAssignableFrom(stringType); // true
//isAssignableFrom respects that String can be assigned to Id without an explicit cast
```

```
//Examples with typeA, typeB, and typeC
Type typeA = Type.forName('A');
Type typeB = Type.forName('B');
Type typeC = Type.forName('C');
boolean isTypeB_ofTypeA = typeB.isAssignableFrom( typeA ); // false - siblings
```

```
boolean isTypeA_ofTypeC = typeA.isAssignableFrom( typeC ); // false - unrelated types
boolean isTypeA_ofTypeA = typeA.isAssignableFrom(typeA); // true - identity
```

```
//Examples with callableType and batchableType
Type callableType = Type.forName('Callable');
Type batchableType = Type.forName('Database.Batchable');
boolean isTypeA_Callable = callableType.isAssignableFrom( typeA ); // true - type A is a
child of Callable type
boolean isTypeA_Batchable = batchableType.isAssignableFrom( typeA ); // true - type A is
a child of Batchable type
boolean isCallableOfTypeA = typeA.isAssignableFrom( callableType ); // false - Callable
type is not a child of type A
boolean isBatchableOfTypeA = typeA.isAssignableFrom( batchableType ); // false - Batchable
 type is not a child of type A
```

`newInstance()`

Creates an instance of the current type and returns this new instance.

Signature

```
public Object newInstance()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

Usage

Because `newInstance` returns the generic object type, you should cast the return value to the type of the variable that will hold this value.

This method enables you to instantiate a Type that implements an interface and call its methods while letting someone else provide the methods' implementation. For example, a package developer can provide an interface that a subscriber who installs the package can implement. The code in the package calls the subscriber's implementation of the interface methods by instantiating the subscriber's Type.

Example

This example shows how to create an instance of a Type. It first gets a Type by calling `forName` with the name of a class (`ShapeImpl`), then calls `newInstance` on this Type object. The `newObj` instance is declared with the interface type (`Shape`) that the `ShapeImpl` class implements. The return value of the `newInstance` method is cast to the `Shape` type.

```
Type t =
   Type.forName('ShapeImpl');

Shape newObj =
   (Shape)t.newInstance();
```

`toString()`

Returns a string representation of the current type, which is the type name.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method returns the same value as `getName`. `String.valueOf` and `System.debug` use this method to convert their Type argument into a String.

Example

This example calls `toString` on the Type corresponding to a list of Integers.

```
Type t = List<Integer>.class;
String s = t.toString();
System.assertEquals('List<Integer>', s);
```

UninstallHandler Interface

Enables custom code to run after a managed package is uninstalled.

Namespace

System

Usage

App developers can implement this interface to specify Apex code that runs automatically after a subscriber uninstalls a managed package. This makes it possible to perform cleanup and notification tasks based on details of the subscriber's organization.

The uninstall script is subject to default governor limits. It runs as a special system user that represents your package, so all operations performed by the script will appear to be done by your package. You can access this user by using UserInfo. You will only see this user at runtime, not while running tests.

If the script fails, the uninstall continues but none of the changes performed by the script are committed. Any errors in the script are emailed to the user specified in the **Notify on Apex Error** field of the package. If no user is specified, the uninstall details will be unavailable.

The uninstall script has the following restrictions. You can't use it to initiate batch, scheduled, and future jobs, to access Session IDs, or to perform callouts.

The `UninstallHandler` interface has a single method called `onUninstall`, which specifies the actions to be performed on uninstall.

```
global interface UninstallHandler {
  void onUninstall(UninstallContext context)};
```

The `onUninstall` method takes a context object as its argument, which provides the following information.

- The org ID of the organization in which the uninstall takes place.

- The user ID of the user who initiated the uninstall.

The context argument is an object whose type is the `UninstallContext` interface. This interface is automatically implemented by the system. The following definition of the `UninstallContext` interface shows the methods you can call on the context argument.

```
global interface UninstallContext {
  ID organizationId();
  ID uninstallerId();
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

UninstallHandler Methods

UninstallHandler Example Implementation

UninstallHandler Methods

The following are methods for `UninstallHandler`.

IN THIS SECTION:

onUninstall(context)
Specifies the actions to be performed on uninstall.

`onUninstall(context)`

Specifies the actions to be performed on uninstall.

Signature

```
public Void onUninstall(UninstallContext context)
```

Parameters

`context`
Type: UninstallContext

Return Value

Type: Void

UninstallHandler Example Implementation

Example of an Uninstall Script

The sample uninstall script below performs the following actions on package uninstall.

- Inserts an entry in the feed describing which user did the uninstall and in which organization

- Creates and sends an email message confirming the uninstall to that user

```
global class UninstallClass implements UninstallHandler {
  global void onUninstall(UninstallContext ctx) {
    FeedItem feedPost = new FeedItem();
    feedPost.parentId = ctx.uninstallerID();
    feedPost.body = 'Thank you for using our application!';
    insert feedPost;

    User u = [Select Id, Email from User where Id =:ctx.uninstallerID()];
    String toAddress= u.Email;
    String[] toAddresses = new String[] {toAddress};
    Messaging.SingleEmailMessage mail = new Messaging.SingleEmailMessage();
    mail.setToAddresses(toAddresses);
    mail.setReplyTo('support@package.dev');
    mail.setSenderDisplayName('My Package Support');
    mail.setSubject('Package uninstall successful');
    mail.setPlainTextBody('Thanks for uninstalling the package.');
    Messaging.sendEmail(new Messaging.Email[] { mail });
  }
}
```

You can test an uninstall script using the `testUninstall` method of the `Test` class. This method takes as its argument a class that implements the `UninstallHandler` interface.

This sample shows how to test an uninstall script implemented in the `UninstallClass` Apex class.

```
@isTest
static void testUninstallScript() {
  Id UninstallerId = UserInfo.getUserId();
  List<FeedItem> feedPostsBefore =
    [SELECT Id FROM FeedItem WHERE parentId=:UninstallerId AND CreatedDate=TODAY];
  Test.testUninstall(new UninstallClass());
  List<FeedItem> feedPostsAfter =
    [SELECT Id FROM FeedItem WHERE parentId=:UninstallerId AND CreatedDate=TODAY];
  System.assertEquals(feedPostsBefore.size() + 1, feedPostsAfter.size(),
    'Post to uninstaller failed.');
}
```

URL Class

Represents a uniform resource locator (URL) and provides access to parts of the URL. Enables access to the Salesforce instance URL.

Namespace

System

Usage

Use the methods of the `System.URL` class to create links to objects in your organization. Such objects can be files, images, logos, or records that you want to include in external emails, in activities, or in Chatter posts. For example, you can create a link to a file uploaded as an attachment to a Chatter post by concatenating the Salesforce base URL with the file ID:

```
// Get a file uploaded through Chatter.
ContentDocument doc = [SELECT Id FROM ContentDocument
          WHERE Title = 'myfile'];
// Create a link to the file.
String fullFileURL = URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().toExternalForm() +
   '/' + doc.id;
system.debug(fullFileURL);
```

The following example creates a link to a Salesforce record. The full URL is created by concatenating the Salesforce base URL with the record ID.

```
Account acct = [SELECT Id FROM Account WHERE Name = 'Acme' LIMIT 1];
String fullRecordURL = URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().toExternalForm() + '/' + acct.Id;
```

Example

In this example, the base URL and the full request URL of the current Salesforce server instance are retrieved. Next, a URL pointing to a specific account object is created. Finally, components of the base and full URL are obtained. This example prints out all the results to the debug log output.

```
// Create a new account called Acme that we will create a link for later.
Account myAccount = new Account(Name='Acme');
insert myAccount;

// Get the base URL.
String sfdcBaseURL = URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().toExternalForm();
System.debug('Base URL: ' + sfdcBaseURL );

// Get the URL for the current request.
String currentRequestURL = URL.getCurrentRequestUrl().toExternalForm();
System.debug('Current request URL: ' + currentRequestURL);

// Create the account URL from the base URL.
String accountURL = URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().toExternalForm() +
                    '/' + myAccount.Id;
System.debug('URL of a particular account: ' + accountURL);

// Get some parts of the base URL.
System.debug('Host: ' + URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().getHost());
System.debug('Protocol: ' + URL.getSalesforceBaseUrl().getProtocol());

// Get the query string of the current request.
System.debug('Query: ' + URL.getCurrentRequestUrl().getQuery());
```

Versioned Behavior Changes

In API version 41.0 and later, Apex URL objects are represented by the `java.net.URI` type, not the `java.net.URL` type. The API version in which the URL object was instantiated determines the behavior of subsequent method calls to the specific instance.

Salesforce strongly encourages you to use API 41.0 and later versions for fully RFC-compliant URL parsing that includes proper handling of edge cases of complex URL structures. API 41.0 and later versions also enforce that inputs are valid, RFC-compliant URL or URI strings.

IN THIS SECTION:

URL Constructors

URL Methods

URL Constructors

The following are constructors for `URL`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Url(spec)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified string representation of the URL.

Url(context, spec)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class by parsing the specified spec within the specified context.

Url(protocol, host, file)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified protocol, host, and file on the host. The default port for the specified protocol is used.

Url(protocol, host, port, file)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified protocol, host, port, and file on the host.

`Url(spec)`

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified string representation of the URL.

Signature

```
public Url(String spec)
```

Parameters

spec

Type: String

The string to parse as a URL.

`Url(context, spec)`

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class by parsing the specified spec within the specified context.

Signature

```
public Url(Url context, String spec)
```

Parameters

context
Type: URL on page 3033

The context in which to parse the specification.

spec
Type: String

The string to parse as a URL.

Usage

The new URL is created from the given context URL and the spec argument as described in RFC2396 "Uniform Resource Identifiers : Generic * Syntax" :

```
<scheme>://<authority><path>?<query>#<fragment>
```

For more information about the arguments of this constructor, see the corresponding URL(java.net.URL, java.lang.String) constructor for Java.

Url(protocol, host, file)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified protocol, host, and file on the host. The default port for the specified protocol is used.

Signature

```
public Url(String protocol, String host, String file)
```

Parameters

protocol
Type: String

The protocol name for this URL.

host
Type: String

The host name for this URL.

file
Type: String

The file name for this URL.

Url(protocol, host, port, file)

Creates a new instance of the `URL` class using the specified protocol, host, port, and file on the host.

Signature

```
public Url(String protocol, String host, Integer port, String file)
```

Parameters

protocol
Type: String

The protocol name for this URL.

host
Type: String

The host name for this URL.

port
Type: Integer

The port number for this URL.

file
Type: String

The file name for this URL.

URL Methods

The following are methods for `URL`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAuthority()
Returns the authority portion of the current URL.

getCurrentRequestUrl()
Returns the URL of an entire request on a Salesforce instance.

getDefaultPort()
Returns the default port number of the protocol associated with the current URL.

getFile()
Returns the file name of the current URL.

getFileFieldURL(entityId, fieldName)
Returns the download URL for a file attachment.

getHost()
Returns the host name of the current URL.

getOrgDomainUrl()
Returns the canonical URL for your org. For example, `https://yourDomain.my.salesforce.com` or, for orgs without My Domain enabled, `https://yourInstance.salesforce.com`.

getPath()
Returns the path portion of the current URL.

getPort()
Returns the port of the current URL.

getProtocol()
Returns the protocol name of the current URL, such as, `https`.

getQuery()
Returns the query portion of the current URL.

getRef()
Returns the anchor of the current URL.

getSalesforceBaseUrl()
Returns the URL of the Salesforce instance.

getUserInfo()
Gets the UserInfo portion of the current URL.

sameFile(URLToCompare)
Compares the current URL with the specified URL object, excluding the fragment component.

toExternalForm()
Returns a string representation of the current URL.

getAuthority()

Returns the authority portion of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getAuthority()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getCurrentRequestUrl()

Returns the URL of an entire request on a Salesforce instance.

Signature

```
public static System.URL getCurrentRequestUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: `System.URL`

Usage

An example of a URL for an entire request is `https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/apex/myVfPage.apexp`.

getDefaultPort()

Returns the default port number of the protocol associated with the current URL.

Signature

```
public Integer getDefaultPort()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

Returns -1 if the URL scheme or the stream protocol handler for the URL doesn't define a default port number.

getFile()

Returns the file name of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getFile()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getFileFieldURL(entityId, fieldName)

Returns the download URL for a file attachment.

Signature

```
public static String getFileFieldURL(String entityId, String fieldName)
```

Parameters

entityId
Type: String

Specifies the ID of the entity that holds the file data.

fieldName
Type: String

Specifies the API name of a file field component, such as `AttachmentBody`.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Example:

Example

```
String fileURL =
  URL.getFileFieldURL(
```

```
    '087000000000123' ,
    'AttachmentBody');
```

getHost()

Returns the host name of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getHost()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOrgDomainUrl()

Returns the canonical URL for your org. For example, `https://yourDomain.my.salesforce.com` or, for orgs without My Domain enabled, `https://yourInstance.salesforce.com`.

Signature

```
public static System.Url getOrgDomainUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: `System.URL`

`getOrgDomainUrl()` always returns the same domain for your org, regardless of context. Use this method to build links to record URLs that work both in Lightning Experience and in Salesforce Classic, or as the domain when making API calls to your org.

Usage

Use `getOrgDomainUrl()` to interact with Salesforce REST and SOAP APIs in Apex code. Get endpoints for User Interface API calls, for creating and customizing picklist value sets and custom fields, and more.

`getOrgDomainUrl()` can access the domain URL only for the org in which the Apex code is running.

You don't need a RemoteSiteSetting for your org to interact with the Salesforce APIs using domain URLs retrieved with this method. To bypass remote site settings, My Domain must be enabled in your org.

Example

This example uses the Salesforce REST API to get organization limit values. For information on limits, see Limits in the *REST API Developer Guide*.

```
Http h = new Http();
HttpRequest req = new HttpRequest();
req.setEndpoint(Url.getOrgDomainUrl().toExternalForm()
   + '/services/data/v44.0/limits');
req.setMethod('GET');
```

```
req.setHeader('Authorization', 'Bearer ' + UserInfo.getSessionId());
HttpResponse res = h.send(req);
```

SEE ALSO:

- getSalesforceBaseUrl()
- *Lightning Aura Components Developer Guide*: Making API Calls from Apex
- *User Interface API Developer Guide*: Get Default Values to Clone a Record
- *User Interface API Developer Guide*: Get Values for a Picklist Field
- *User Interface API Developer Guide*: User Inteface API Resources

`getPath()`

Returns the path portion of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getPath()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPort()`

Returns the port of the current URL.

Signature

```
public Integer getPort()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

`getProtocol()`

Returns the protocol name of the current URL, such as, `https`.

Signature

```
public String getProtocol()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getQuery()`

Returns the query portion of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getQuery()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if no query portion exists.

getRef()

Returns the anchor of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getRef()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if no query portion exists.

getSalesforceBaseUrl()

Returns the URL of the Salesforce instance.

Signature

```
public static System.URL getSalesforceBaseUrl()
```

Return Value

Type: `System.URL`

Returns the host name for the current connection: for example, `https://`*`MyDomainName`*`.my.salesforce.com`, `https://`*`MyDomainName`*`.lightning.force.com`, or, for orgs without My Domain enabled, `https://`*`yourInstance`*`.salesforce.com` or `https://`*`yourInstance`*`.lightning.force.com`.

SEE ALSO:

- getOrgDomainUrl()

getUserInfo()

Gets the UserInfo portion of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String getUserInfo()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if no UserInfo portion exists.

`sameFile(URLToCompare)`

Compares the current URL with the specified URL object, excluding the fragment component.

Signature

```
public Boolean sameFile(System.URL URLToCompare)
```

Parameters

`URLToCompare`
Type: System.URL

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` if both URL objects reference the same remote resource; otherwise, returns `false`.

Usage

For more information about the syntax of URIs and fragment components, see RFC3986.

`toExternalForm()`

Returns a string representation of the current URL.

Signature

```
public String toExternalForm()
```

Return Value

Type: String

UserInfo Class

Contains methods for obtaining information about the context user.

Namespace

System

UserInfo Methods

The following are methods for `UserInfo`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

getDefaultCurrency()
Returns the context user's default currency code for multiple currency organizations or the organization's currency code for single currency organizations.

getFirstName()
Returns the context user's first name

getLanguage()
Returns the context user's language

getLastName()
Returns the context user's last name

getLocale()
Returns the context user's locale.

getName()
Returns the context user's full name. The format of the name depends on the language preferences specified for the organization.

getOrganizationId()
Returns the context organization's ID.

getOrganizationName()
Returns the context organization's company name.

getProfileId()
Returns the context user's profile ID.

getSessionId()
Returns the session ID for the current session.

getTimeZone()
Returns the current user's local time zone.

getUiTheme()
Returns the preferred theme for the current user. Use `getUiThemeDisplayed` to determine the theme actually displayed to the current user.

getUiThemeDisplayed()
Returns the theme being displayed for the current user.

getUserEmail()
Returns the current user's email address.

getUserId()
Returns the context user's ID

getUserName()
Returns the context user's login name.

getUserRoleId()
Returns the context user's role ID.

getUserType()
Returns the context user's type.

isCurrentUserLicensed(namespace)
Returns `true` if the context user has a license to any managed package denoted by the namespace. Otherwise, returns `false`.

isCurrentUserLicensedForPackage(packageID)
Returns `true` if the context user has a license to the managed package denoted by the package ID. Otherwise, returns `false`.

isMultiCurrencyOrganization()
Specifies whether the organization uses multiple currencies.

`getDefaultCurrency()`

Returns the context user's default currency code for multiple currency organizations or the organization's currency code for single currency organizations.

Signature

```
public static String getDefaultCurrency()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Note: For Apex saved using Salesforce API version 22.0 or earlier, `getDefaultCurrency` returns `null` for single currency organizations.

`getFirstName()`

Returns the context user's first name

Signature

```
public static String getFirstName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLanguage()`

Returns the context user's language

Signature

```
public static String getLanguage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLastName()`

Returns the context user's last name

Signature

```
public static String getLastName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getLocale()`

Returns the context user's locale.

Signature

```
public static String getLocale()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String result = UserInfo.getLocale();
System.assertEquals('en_US', result);
```

`getName()`

Returns the context user's full name. The format of the name depends on the language preferences specified for the organization.

Signature

```
public static String getName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The format is one of the following:

- FirstName LastName
- LastName, FirstName

getOrganizationId()

Returns the context organization's ID.

Signature

```
public static String getOrganizationId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getOrganizationName()

Returns the context organization's company name.

Signature

```
public static String getOrganizationName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getProfileId()

Returns the context user's profile ID.

Signature

```
public static String getProfileId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getSessionId()

Returns the session ID for the current session.

Signature

```
public static String getSessionId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

You can use `getSessionId()` both synchronously and asynchronously. In asynchronous Apex (Batch, Future, Queueable, or Scheduled Apex), this method returns the session ID only when the code is run by an active, valid user. When the code is run by an internal user, such as the automated process user or a proxy user, the method returns `null`.

As a best practice, ensure that your code handles both cases: when a session ID is or is not available.

`getTimeZone()`

Returns the current user's local time zone.

Signature

```
public static System.TimeZone getTimeZone()
```

Return Value

Type: System.TimeZone

Example

```
TimeZone tz =
  UserInfo.getTimeZone();
System.debug(
  'Display name: ' +
  tz.getDisplayName());
System.debug(
  'ID: ' +
  tz.getID());
```

`getUiTheme()`

Returns the preferred theme for the current user. Use `getUiThemeDisplayed` to determine the theme actually displayed to the current user.

Signature

```
public static String getUiTheme()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The preferred theme for the current user.

Valid values include:

- `Theme1`—Obsolete Salesforce theme
- `Theme2`—Salesforce Classic 2005 user interface theme

- `Theme3`—Salesforce Classic 2010 user interface theme
- `Theme4d`—Modern "Lightning Experience" Salesforce theme
- `Theme4t`—Salesforce mobile app theme
- `Theme4u`—Lightning Console theme
- `PortalDefault`—Salesforce Customer Portal theme that applies to Customer Portals only and not to Experience Builder sites
- `Webstore`—AppExchange theme

`getUiThemeDisplayed()`

Returns the theme being displayed for the current user.

Signature

```
public static String getUiThemeDisplayed()
```

Return Value

Type: String

The theme being displayed for the current user

Valid values include:

- `Theme1`—Obsolete Salesforce theme
- `Theme2`—Salesforce Classic 2005 user interface theme
- `Theme3`—Salesforce Classic 2010 user interface theme
- `Theme4d`—Modern "Lightning Experience" Salesforce theme
- `Theme4t`—Salesforce mobile app theme
- `Theme4u`—Lightning Console theme
- `PortalDefault`—Salesforce Customer Portal theme that applies to Customer Portals only and not to Experience Builder sites
- `Webstore`—AppExchange theme

`getUserEmail()`

Returns the current user's email address.

Signature

```
public static String getUserEmail()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Example

```
String emailAddress =
  UserInfo.getUserEmail();
System.debug(
```

```
  'Email address: ' +
  emailAddress);
```

getUserId()

Returns the context user's ID

Signature

```
public static String getUserId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getUserName()

Returns the context user's login name.

Signature

```
public static String getUserName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getUserRoleId()

Returns the context user's role ID.

Signature

```
public static String getUserRoleId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getUserType()

Returns the context user's type.

Signature

```
public static String getUserType()
```

Return Value

Type: String

isCurrentUserLicensed(namespace)

Returns `true` if the context user has a license to any managed package denoted by the namespace. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isCurrentUserLicensed(String namespace)
```

Parameters

namespace
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

A `TypeException` is thrown if *namespace* is an invalid type.

isCurrentUserLicensedForPackage(packageID)

Returns `true` if the context user has a license to the managed package denoted by the package ID. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isCurrentUserLicensedForPackage(ID packageID)
```

Parameters

packageID
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

Retrieve *packageID* at runtime, with the getCurrentPackageId() method. Then, use `packageId` to confirm that the contextual user is licensed to use that managed package.

A `TypeException` is thrown if `packageID` is an invalid type. A `SystemException` is thrown if `packageID` is the ID of an unlocked or unmanaged package, or if the contextual user doesn't have a license to the managed package.

isMultiCurrencyOrganization()

Specifies whether the organization uses multiple currencies.

Signature

```
public static Boolean isMultiCurrencyOrganization()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

UserManagement Class

Contains methods to manage end users, for example, to register their verification methods, verify their identity, or remove their personal information.

Namespace

System

Usage

Let users register and deregister identity verification methods. Create custom Login and Verify pages for passwordless login and self-registration. Convert mobile phone numbers to the proper format before registering users. Scramble user data when users request that Salesforce remove their personal information.

This class is available in API version 43.0 and later.

IN THIS SECTION:

UserManagement Methods

UserManagement Methods

The following are methods for `UserManagement`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the System.UserManagement object.

deregisterVerificationMethod(userId, method)
Deregisters an identity verification method. Use this method to let users delete an existing verification method.

formatPhoneNumber(countryCode, phoneNumber)
Formats a mobile phone number for a user. Call this method to ensure that the phone number is formatted properly before updating a user's mobile phone number.

initPasswordlessLogin(userId, method)
Invokes a verification challenge for passwordless login when creating custom (Visualforce) Login and Verify pages for customers and partners.

initRegisterVerificationMethod(method)
Invokes a verification challenge for registering identity verification methods with a custom (Visualforce) page. Users can register either their email address or phone number.

initSelfRegistration(method, user)

Invokes a verification challenge for self-registration when creating a custom (Visualforce) Verify page for Experience Cloud self-registration.

initVerificationMethod(method)

Initiates a verification service for email, phone (SMS), and the Salesforce Authenticator verification methods.

initVerificationMethod(method, actionName, extras)

Initiates a verification service for email, phone (SMS), and the Salesforce Authenticator verification methods.

obfuscateUser(userId, username)

Scrambles users' data on their request when they no longer want their personal data recognized in Salesforce. When you invoke the method for the user, the data becomes anonymous, and you can never recover it. Use this method to set the username to a specific value after it's scrambled.

obfuscateUser(userId)

Scrambles users' data on their request when they no longer want their personal data recognized in Salesforce. When you invoke the method for the user, the data becomes anonymous, and you can never recover it.

registerVerificationMethod(method, startUrl)

Registers an identity verification method. Verification methods can be a time-based one-time password (TOTP), email or text verification code, Salesforce Authenticator, or U2F-compatible security key. End users register verification methods for themselves.

sendAsyncEmailConfirmation(userId, emailTemplateId, networkId, startUrl)

Send an email message to a user's email address for verification. The message contains a verification link (URL) that the user clicks to verify the email address later on. You can send email verifications in bulk.

verifyPasswordlessLogin(userId, method, identifier, code, startUrl)

Completes a verification challenge during a passwordless login that uses a custom Verify page (Visualforce only). If the user who is trying to log in enters the verification code successfully, the user is logged in.

verifyRegisterVerificationMethod(code, method)

Completes registering a user's email address or phone number as a verification method when customizing the identity verification process.

verifySelfRegistration(method, identifier, code, startUrl)

Completes a verification challenge when creating a custom (Visualforce) Verify page for Experience Cloud site self-registration. If the person who is attempting to register enters the verification code successfully, the user is created and logged in.

verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, code, method)

Completes the verification service for email, phone (SMS), Salesforce Authenticator, password, or time-based one-time password (TOTP) verification methods.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the System.UserManagement object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: User Management

deregisterVerificationMethod(userId, method)

Deregisters an identity verification method. Use this method to let users delete an existing verification method.

Signature

```
public static void deregisterVerificationMethod(Id userId, Auth.VerificationMethod
method)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

User ID of the user deregistering the verification method.

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Verification method used to verify the identity of the user.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

Use this method to deregister an existing identity verification method. For example, your users can deregister a phone number when their phone number changes. While only end users can register an identity verification method, you and your users can deregister one. Keep this behavior in mind when you implement a custom registration page.

This method is available in API version 43.0 and later.

formatPhoneNumber(countryCode, phoneNumber)

Formats a mobile phone number for a user. Call this method to ensure that the phone number is formatted properly before updating a user's mobile phone number.

Signature

```
global static String formatPhoneNumber(String countryCode, String phoneNumber)
```

Parameters

countryCode
Type: String

A valid country code.

phoneNumber
Type: String

A mobile number that contains from 3 through 49 numeric characters, without the country code. For example, (415) 555-1234.

Return Value

Type: String

Returns a user's mobile phone number in the proper format.

Usage

Use this method to ensure a user's mobile phone number is formatted as required by Salesforce. Then use the method's return value to update the `mobile` field of the user's record. This mobile number is used for SMS-based device activation. For example, mobile phone numbers are stored along with other identity verification methods in Auth.VerificationMethod enum. This method is introduced in API version 43.0. It isn't available in earlier versions.

Here are some acceptable ways that users can enter their mobile number:

- +1, (415) 555-1234 (with plus signs, parentheses, and dashes)
- 1, 4155551234 (only numbers, no symbols)
- 1 , 415-555-1234 (extra spaces)

Now, consider the following examples.

- Correct examples:
  - `formatPhoneNumber('1', '4155551234');`
  - `formatPhoneNumber('+1','(415) 555-1234');`
  - `formatPhoneNumber('1', '415-555-1234');`
- Incorrect example, because the country code and mobile number aren't separated:
  - `formatPhoneNumber(null, '+1 415-555-1234');`
- Example that doesn't generate an error, but likely won't work as intended:
  - `formatPhoneNumber('+1', '+1 (415) 555-1234');`

Format Phone Number Code Example

Here's a code example that uses the `formatPhoneNumber` method. It gets the mobile number from the user and converts it to the format required by Salesforce. Then it updates the user's record with the formatted mobile number.

```
global with sharing class PhoneRegistrationController {
    //Input variables
    global String countryCode {get; set;}
    global String phoneNumber {get; set;}

    global String addPhoneNumber()
    {
        if(countryCode == null) return 'Country code is required';
        if(phoneNumber == null) return 'Phone number is required';

        String userId = UserInfo.getUserId();
        User u = [SELECT Id FROM User WHERE Id=:userId LIMIT 1];
       String formatNum = System.UserManagement.formatPhoneNumber(countryCode, phoneNumber);

        u.MobilePhone = formatNum;
        update u;
        return null;
```

```
    }

}
```

As long as the country code and phone number are separated, `formatPhoneNumber` returns a value in the proper format.

`initPasswordlessLogin(userId, method)`

Invokes a verification challenge for passwordless login when creating custom (Visualforce) Login and Verify pages for customers and partners.

Signature

```
public static String initPasswordlessLogin(Id userId, Auth.VerificationMethod method)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: Id

ID of the user who's logging in.

`method`
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the user's identity, which can be EMAIL or SMS.

Return Value

Type: String

Identifier of the verification attempt.

Usage

Use this method along with its paired `verifyPasswordlessLogin` to customize the login experience with your own Visualforce Login and Verify pages. Invoke `initPasswordlessLogin` from the Login page where the user enters an email address or phone number.

Note: An alternative to using this combination of methods is to use `Site.passwordlessLogin`. Both approaches let you customize the Login page in Visualforce. With the paired methods, you can create custom Login and Verify pages. With `Site.passwordlessLogin`, Salesforce supplies the Verify page.

First call the `initPasswordlessLogin` method to initiate an authentication challenge. This method:

- Gets the user ID and verification method, such as EMAIL or SMS, from the Login page.
- Looks up the user and checks that the user is unique and active.
- Sends a verification code to the user.
- Adds an entry for the verification attempt to the Identity Verification History log, assigning an identifier to the verification attempt and setting the status to **User challenged, waiting for response**.
- Adds an entry for the Passwordless Login to the Login History log.
- Returns the identifier to `verifyPasswordlessLogin` to link the transactions.

Then call `verifyPasswordlessLogin`, which, if the user enters the verification code correctly, logs in the user.

Note: Users must verify their identity by email address or phone number before they can log in without a password. You can check whether the user is verified from the user's detail page in Setup. Or you can check programmatically with `TwoFactorMethodsInfo`.

`initRegisterVerificationMethod(method)`

Invokes a verification challenge for registering identity verification methods with a custom (Visualforce) page. Users can register either their email address or phone number.

Signature

```
public static String initRegisterVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod method)
```

Parameters

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the user's identity, which can be EMAIL or SMS.

Return Value

Type: String

The method returns an error message if the phone number is already registered, the user isn't a customer or partner, or if the context isn't an Experience Cloud site.

Usage

Use this method along with its paired `verifyRegisterVerificationMethod` on page 3067 to customize the process for registering a user's verification method using a Visualforce Verify page.

First call the `initRegisterVerificationMethod` method to get the verification code sent to the user as input, and validate it. If the verification code isn't valid, it returns an error message.

Example

Here's a code example that registers a user's phone number as a verification method. When the user enters a verification code on the Visualforce page, it invokes `registerUser()`. The method gets the User ID of the user who's registering the verification method and the user's phone number. It also gets the user's registration status to check whether the phone number is verified already. If the user is registered with a different phone number, the number is updated.

```
public void registerUser() {
        try {
            exceptionText='';
            String userId = UserInfo.getUserId();
            User u = [Select MobilePhone, Id from User Where Id=:userId];
             currPhone = u.MobilePhone;
             mobilePhone = getFormattedSms(mobilePhone);
           if (mobilePhone != null && mobilePhone != '') {
           u.MobilePhone = mobilePhone;
           update u;
            // We're updating the email and phone number before verifying. Roll back
```

```
            //  the change in the verify API if it is unsuccessful.
             exceptionText = System.
             UserManagement.initRegisterVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS);
             if(exceptionText!= null && exceptionText!=''){
                 isInit = false;
                 showInitException = true;
             } else {
                  isInit = false;
                  isVerify = true;
             }
             } else {
                 showInitException = true;
             }
         } catch (Exception e) {
             exceptionText = e.getMessage();
             isInit = false;
             showInitException = true;
         }
     }

public void verifyUser() {
    // Take the user's input for the code sent to their phone number
    exceptionText = System.UserManagement.
        verifyRegisterVerificationMethod(code, Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS);
    if(exceptionText != null && exceptionText !=''){
    showInitException = true;
    } else {
            //Success
    }
}
```

`initSelfRegistration(method, user)`

Invokes a verification challenge for self-registration when creating a custom (Visualforce) Verify page for Experience Cloud self-registration.

Signature

```
public static String initSelfRegistration(Auth.VerificationMethod method, User user)
```

Parameters

method

Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the identity of the user, which can be EMAIL or SMS.

user

Type: User

User object to insert after successful registration.

Return Value

Type: String

Identifier of the registration attempt.

Usage

By default, when users sign up for your Experience Cloud site with an email address or phone number, Salesforce sends them a verification code. At the same time, it generates a Verify page for users to confirm their identity. You can replace the default Salesforce Verify page with your own Visualforce page and then invoke the verification process.

Call this method to initiate the authentication challenge, and include a User object to insert if the registration is successful. The method returns the identifier for the self-registration attempt.

Then call verifySelfRegistration, which, if the user enters the verification code correctly, logs in the user.

Example

This code contains the result of a verification challenge that registers a new user.

```
String id = System.UserManagement.initSelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, user);
        Auth.VerificationResult res = System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, id, '123456', null);
        if(res.success == true){
     //redirect
}
```

`initVerificationMethod(method)`

Initiates a verification service for email, phone (SMS), and the Salesforce Authenticator verification methods.

Signature

```
public static String initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod method)
```

Parameters

`method`

Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to initiate a verification service for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification methods.

Return Value

Type: String

The returned identifier must be passed into `verifyVerificationMethod`.

Usage

Use this method along with its paired `verifyVerificationMethod` to customize a verification service for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification methods. The returned identifier from `initVerificationMethod` must be passed into `verifyVerificationMethod`.

First invoke the `initVerificationMethod` method to send a verification code to the user's email or phone number, or to send a push notification to the Salesforce Authenticator. The user then enters the code or approves the push notification. If the verification code isn't valid or the push notification isn't approved, the service returns an error message.

Email Example

This example shows multi-factor authentication using email.

```
public void initVerification() {
// user will receive code on their registered verified email
 identifier = UserManagement.initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL);
}

public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// requiring identifier from the initVerification
// the code will need to be entered in this method
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, code ,
Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL);
}
```

`initVerificationMethod(method, actionName, extras)`

Initiates a verification service for email, phone (SMS), and the Salesforce Authenticator verification methods.

Signature

```
public static String initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod method, String
actionName, Map<String,String> extras)
```

Parameters

`method`
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to initiate a verification service for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification methods.

`actionName`
Type: String

For the `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification method only, the name of the action to display on the Salesforce Authenticator, such as `Connect to My Salesforce Org`. The default action name is `Apex-Defined Activity`.

`extras`
Type: Map<String,String>

For the `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification method only, the following extra settings.

- `secure_device_required`–If set to `true`, the user's device must be secured. For example, the user must enter the device's passcode to approve the request. Default setting is `false`.
- `challenge_required`–If set to `true`, the user must complete a biometric challenge, such as face recognition, on the device to approve the request. Default setting is `false`.

Return Value

Type: String

The returned identifier must be passed into `verifyVerificationMethod` method.

Usage

Use this method along with its paired `verifyVerificationMethod` to customize a verification service for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification methods. The returned identifier from `initVerificationMethod` must be passed into `verifyVerificationMethod` method.

First invoke the `initVerificationMethod` method to send a verification code to the user's email or phone number, or to send a push notification to the Salesforce Authenticator. The user then enters the code or approves the push notification. If the verification code isn't valid or the push notification isn't approved, the service returns an error message.

Salesforce Authenticator Example

This example shows multi-factor authentication (MFA) using the Salesforce Authenticator mobile app. In this example, the *`actionName`* parameter is set to the default setting and the *`extra`* parameter settings are set to `false`.

```
public void initVerification() {
// user will receive push notification on their registered MFA devices
identifier =
UserManagement.initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR);
}

public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// requiring identifier from the initVerification
// user will need to take the action on their registered MFA devices
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, '' ,
Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR);
}
```

This example shows multi-factor authentication using Salesforce Authenticator. In this example, the *`actionName`* parameter is set to `Connect to My Salesforce Org` and the `challenge_required` *`extra`* parameter is set to `true`.

```
public void initVerification() {
Map<String,String> extras = new Map<String,String>();
extras.put('challenge_required','true');
// user will receive push notification in their registered MFA devices
identifier =
UserManagement.initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR,
'Connect to My Salesforce Org', extras);
}

public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// requiring identifier from the initVerification
// user will need to take the action on their registered MFA devices
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, '' ,
Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR);
}
```

`obfuscateUser(userId, username)`

Scrambles users' data on their request when they no longer want their personal data recognized in Salesforce. When you invoke the method for the user, the data becomes anonymous, and you can never recover it. Use this method to set the username to a specific value after it's scrambled.

Signature

```
public static void obfuscateUser(Id userId, String username)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

ID of the user whose data this method scrambles.

username
Type: String

The username after the user's data is scrambled. Sets the value of the scrambled username to a specific string.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

This method is introduced in API version 43.0. It isn't available in earlier versions.

You can use the `obfuscateUser` method to protect the personal information of your org's users. When invoked, Salesforce permanently scrambles the user's object data and replaces it with random character strings. The user's detail page exists, but the fields contain meaningless strings of characters. Salesforce merely obfuscates (scrambles) personal data because you can't delete a user in Salesforce; you can only disable or deactivate a user. In other words, the user record remains in the database and this method performs a soft delete.

Note: Take care when using this method. The users' data becomes anonymous and can never be recovered.

Considerations

- This method requires that the org's User Management setting, **Scramble Specific Users' Data**, is enabled from Setup.
- This method affects the standard fields of the user object—excluding a few fields such as the user ID, timezone, locale, and profile.
- It is recommended that you note the user's ID and other attributes for post processing, such as the email address, if you want to send the user a confirmation.
- This method changes only the user object. The association between the user and other objects is removed, but no other objects are changed. For example, contact, ThirdPartyAccountLink (TPAL), and user password authentication (UPA) objects remain unchanged.

Note: Assure your admins that invoking this method doesn't trigger an email change notification.

This method is part of our effort to protect users' personal data and privacy. For more information on what you can do to actively protect user data, see Data Protection and Privacy in Salesforce Help.

obfuscateUser(userId)

Scrambles users' data on their request when they no longer want their personal data recognized in Salesforce. When you invoke the method for the user, the data becomes anonymous, and you can never recover it.

Signature

```
public static void obfuscateUser(Id userId)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

ID of the user whose data this method scrambles.

Return Value

Type: void

Usage

This method is introduced in API version 43.0. It isn't available in earlier versions.

You can use the `obfuscateUser` method to protect the personal information of your org's users. When invoked, Salesforce permanently scrambles the user's object data and replaces it with random character strings. The user's detail page exists, but the fields contain meaningless strings of characters. Salesforce merely obfuscates (scrambles) personal data because you can't delete a user in Salesforce; you can only disable or deactivate a user. In other words, the user record remains in the database and this method performs a soft delete.

Note: Take care when using this method. The users' data becomes anonymous and can never be recovered.

Considerations

- This method requires that the org's User Management setting, **Scramble Specific Users' Data**, is enabled from Setup.
- This method affects the standard fields of the user object—excluding a few fields such as the user ID, timezone, locale, and profile.
- It is recommended that you note the user's ID and other attributes for post processing, such as the email address, if you want to send the user a confirmation.
- This method changes only the user object. The association between the user and other objects is removed, but no other objects are changed. For example, contact, ThirdPartyAccountLink (TPAL), and user password authentication (UPA) objects remain unchanged.

Note: Assure your admins that invoking this method doesn't trigger an email change notification.

This method is part of our effort to protect users' personal data and privacy. For more information on what you can do to actively protect user data, see Data Protection and Privacy in Salesforce Help.

ObfuscateUser Code Example

```
public class UserManagementController{
    public List <User> users {get; set;}

    public UserManagementController()
    {
        Profile p = [select id from profile where name = 'Customer Community User'];

        users = [select username, id from User where profileId=:p.id AND isactive=true];
    }

    //Use method with extreme caution. Data can't be recovered.
    @InvocableMethod(label='User Management' description='Obfuscate User data and more')
    static public void obfuscate(List<User> users)
    {
        String uid = ApexPages.currentPage().getParameters().get('uid');
```

```
        if(uid == null)
            return;

        User u = [select contactId from user where id=:uid];

        System.UserManagement.obfuscateUser(uid);

        if(u.contactId != null)
        {
           List <Contact> contacts = [select id from Contact where id=:u.contactId LIMIT 1];
            if (contacts == null || contacts.isEmpty() == true)
            return;

            delete contacts;
        }
    }
}
```

registerVerificationMethod(method, startUrl)

Registers an identity verification method. Verification methods can be a time-based one-time password (TOTP), email or text verification code, Salesforce Authenticator, or U2F-compatible security key. End users register verification methods for themselves.

Signature

```
public static System.PageReference registerVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod
method, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Verification method used to verify the identity of the user.

startUrl
Type: String

Path to the page that users see after they log in.

Return Value

Type:System.PageReference

Usage

Use this method to enable users to complete identity verification, such as multi-factor authentication (MFA), or to log in to their Experience Cloud site without a password. Users register these methods to verify their identity when logging in. You create a custom registration page when implementing mobile-centric passwordless logins. See VerifyPasswordlessLogin.

The `PageReference` returned by `registerVerificationMethod` redirects the user to the Salesforce Verify page. If the user enters the correct code, the user is redirected to the Experience Cloud site page specified by the start URL. For example:

```
PageReference pr =
System.UserManagement.registerVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.TOTP,startUrl);
PageReference p =
System.UserManagement.deregisterVerificationMethod(userId,Auth.VerificationMethod.SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR);
```

This method is available in API version 43.0 and later.

Note: As a security measure, when users add or update mobile numbers in their detail page, they must log in again to verify their identity. As a result, unsaved changes in the app are lost. To disable this security measure, contact Salesforce Support.

`sendAsyncEmailConfirmation(userId, emailTemplateId, networkId, startUrl)`

Send an email message to a user's email address for verification. The message contains a verification link (URL) that the user clicks to verify the email address later on. You can send email verifications in bulk.

Signature

```
public static Boolean sendAsyncEmailConfirmation(String userId, String emailTemplateId,
String networkId, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

`userId`
Type: String

ID of the user to receive the email confirmation.

`emailTemplateId`
Type: String

ID of the email template in which the verification link is defined.

`networkId`
Type: String

ID of the Experience Cloud site.

`startUrl`
Type: String

The user is redirected to this page after verification, with a success or error message as the parameter. If null, the user is redirected to the login page.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Indicates whether sending the email message succeeded or failed.

Usage

Sending an async email message is good practice to ensure that users are registered with a valid email address that they truly own. To determine which users receive an email with the verification link, check whether the User Verified Email field in the User detail page is set to true. You can also get this information from the `TwoFactorMethodsInfo` API.

Send async email verification to customers and partners to verify their email address. These users must verify their email address before they can log in with email OTP (passwordless login).

The error code and description are passed as query parameters so that you can process any errors when building a custom landing page.

Example

```
System.UserManagement.sendAsyncEmailConfirmation('005RM000001a0Ox',
'00XRM000000hxnG','0DBRM000000015i', '/s/contactsupport');
```

verifyPasswordlessLogin(userId, method, identifier, code, startUrl)

Completes a verification challenge during a passwordless login that uses a custom Verify page (Visualforce only). If the user who is trying to log in enters the verification code successfully, the user is logged in.

Signature

```
public static Auth.VerificationResult verifyPasswordlessLogin(Id userId,
Auth.VerificationMethod method, String identifier, String code, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

userId
Type: Id

ID of the user who's logging in.

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the identity of the user, which can be either EMAIL or SMS.

identifier
Type: String

ID of the verification attempt received from the `initPasswordlessLogin` method.

code
Type: String

Code used to verify the identity of the user.

startUrl
Type: String

The page where the user is directed after successful login.

Return Value

Type: Auth.VerificationResult

Result of the verification challenge, which includes the message displayed, and where the user is directed if they enter the verification code correctly.

Usage

Call this method to complete the passwordless login authentication process. It validates the verification method and verification code. It also checks that the identifier is the same as the one returned by `initPasswordlessLogin` on page 3056.

Example

For an example, see `Auth.VerificationResult`.

verifyRegisterVerificationMethod(code, method)

Completes registering a user's email address or phone number as a verification method when customizing the identity verification process.

Signature

```
public static String verifyRegisterVerificationMethod(String code,
Auth.VerificationMethod method)
```

Parameters

code
Type: String

Code used to verify the identity of the user.

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the identity of the user, which can be either EMAIL or SMS.

Return Value

Type: String

If the user enters an incorrect verification code, the method returns an error message.

Usage

Call `verifyRegisterVerificationMethod` to complete the process of registering a user's verification method. This method checks whether the user entered the correct verification code. If the verification code is correct, the method

- Confirms that the user entered the correct verification code
- From the user's detail page, updates the user's verification method status (sets the verification bit)
- Sends an email to the user confirming that a verification method has been added to their record

If the verification code is incorrect, an error message is returned.

Note: If users want to change their email address after registering one, don't use the `initRegisterVerificationMethod` and `verify RegisterVerificationMethod` methods. To enable automatic identity verification for email address

changes, from the Identity Verification Setup page, select the field **Require email confirmations for email address changes (applies to users in Experience Builder sites)**.

Example

Here's a code example that registers a user's phone number as a verification method. When the user enters a verification code on the Visualforce page, it invokes `registerUser()`. The method gets the User ID of the user who's registering the verification method and the user's phone number. It also gets the user's registration status to check whether the phone number is verified already. If the user is registered with a different phone number, the number is updated.

```
public void registerUser() {
        try {
            exceptionText='';
            String userId = UserInfo.getUserId();
            User u = [Select MobilePhone, Id from User Where Id=:userId];
             currPhone = u.MobilePhone;
             mobilePhone = getFormattedSms(mobilePhone);
           if (mobilePhone != null && mobilePhone != '') {
           u.MobilePhone = mobilePhone;
           update u;
            // We're updating the email and phone number before verifying. Roll back
           //  the change in the verify API if it is unsuccessful.
            exceptionText = System.
            UserManagement.initRegisterVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS);
            if(exceptionText!= null && exceptionText!=''){
                isInit = false;
                showInitException = true;
            } else {
                 isInit = false;
                 isVerify = true;
            }
            } else {
                showInitException = true;
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            exceptionText = e.getMessage();
            isInit = false;
            showInitException = true;
        }
    }

public void verifyUser() {
    // Take the user's input for the code sent to their phone number
    exceptionText = System.UserManagement.
        verifyRegisterVerificationMethod(code, Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS);
    if(exceptionText != null && exceptionText !=''){
    showInitException = true;
    } else {
            //Success
    }
}
```

verifySelfRegistration(method, identifier, code, startUrl)

Completes a verification challenge when creating a custom (Visualforce) Verify page for Experience Cloud site self-registration. If the person who is attempting to register enters the verification code successfully, the user is created and logged in.

Signature

```
public static Auth.VerificationResult verifySelfRegistration(Auth.VerificationMethod
method, String identifier, String code, String startUrl)
```

Parameters

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the identity of the user, which can be either EMAIL or SMS.

identifier
Type: String

The unique identifier received from the `initSelfRegistration` method.

code
Type: String

Code used to verify the identity of the user.

startUrl
Type: String

The page where the user is directed after successful self-registration.

Return Value

Type: Auth.VerificationResult

Result of the verification challenge, which includes the message displayed, and where the user is directed when they enter the verification code correctly.

Usage

By default, when users sign up for your Experience Cloud site with an email address or phone number, Salesforce sends them a verification code and generates a Verify page. This Verify page is where users enter the verification code to confirm their identity. You can replace this Salesforce-generated Verify page with a custom Verify page that you create with Visualforce. Then you invoke the verification process with Apex methods.

First, call the `initSelfRegistration` method, which returns the identifier of the user to create. Then call this `verifySelfRegistration` method to complete the verification process. If the user enters the verification code correctly, the user is created and directed to the page specified in the `startURL`.

This method returns the verification result, which contains the verification status and, if the user is created, the session ID. If the verification method is SMS, the User object must contain a properly formatted mobile number, which is country code, space, and then phone number, for example, +1 1234567890. Use `System.UserManagement.formatPhoneNumber` to ensure that the phone number is formatted correctly.

Example

This code contains the result of a verification challenge that registers a new user.

```
String id = System.UserManagement.initSelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, user);
        Auth.VerificationResult res = System.UserManagement.verifySelfRegistration
          (Auth.VerificationMethod.SMS, id, '123456', null);
        if(res.success == true){
     //redirect
}
```

verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, code, method)

Completes the verification service for email, phone (SMS), Salesforce Authenticator, password, or time-based one-time password (TOTP) verification methods.

Signature

```
public static VerificationResult verifyVerificationMethod(String identifier, String
code, Auth.VerificationMethod method)
```

Parameters

identifier
Type: String

Identifier returned from `initVerificationMethod` for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, and `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR`.

code
Type: String

Code used to verify the user's identity for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `PASSWORD`.

method
Type: Auth.VerificationMethod

Method used to verify the user's identity, which can be `EMAIL`, `PASSWORD`, `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR`, `SMS`, or `TOTP`.

Return Value

Type: VerificationResult

Usage

Use this method along with its paired `initVerificationMethod` to customize a verification service for `EMAIL`, `SMS`, or `SALESFORCE_AUTHENTICATOR` verification methods. Or use this method alone to provide a complete verification service for `PASSWORD` and `TOTP` verification methods.

This method checks whether the user entered the correct verification code or password. If the verification code or password is correct, the method verifies the user's identity.

If the verification code or password isn't valid, the service returns an error message.

Examples

This example shows multi-factor authentication using email.

```
public void initVerification() {
// user will receive code on their registered verified email
 identifier = UserManagement.initVerificationMethod(Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL);
}

public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// requiring identifier from the initVerification
// the code will need to be entered in this method
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod(identifier, code ,
Auth.VerificationMethod.EMAIL);
}
```

The next two examples show multi-factor authentication using only the `verifyVerificationMethod` for password and TOTP verifications.

```
public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// user will enter their password as a param in the verifyVerificationMethod for password
 verification method
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod('', password ,
Auth.VerificationMethod.PASSWORD);
}
```

```
public Auth.VerificationResult verifyVerification() {
// user will enter their registered time-based one-time password (TOTP) code (token)
return UserManagement.verifyVerificationMethod('', code , Auth.VerificationMethod.TOTP);
}
```

Version Class

Use the Version methods to get the version of a first-generation managed package, and to compare package versions.

Namespace

System

Usage

A package version is a number that identifies the set of components uploaded in a package. The version number has the format *majorNumber.minorNumber.patchNumber* (for example, 2.1.3). The major and minor numbers increase to a chosen value during every major release. The *patchNumber* is generated and updated only for a patch release.

A called component can check the version against which the caller was compiled using the `System.requestVersion` method and behave differently depending on the caller's expectations. This allows you to continue to support existing behavior in classes and triggers in previous package versions while continuing to evolve the code.

The value returned by the `System.requestVersion` method is an instance of this class with a two-part version number containing a major and a minor number. Since the `System.requestVersion` method doesn't return a patch number, the patch number in the returned Version object is null.

The `System.Version` class can also hold also a three-part version number that includes a patch number.

Example

This example shows how to use the methods in this class, along with the `requestVersion` method, to determine the managed package version of the code that is calling your package.

```
if (System.requestVersion() == new Version(1,0))
{
    // Do something
}
if ((System.requestVersion().major() == 1)
     && (System.requestVersion().minor() > 0)
     && (System.requestVersion().minor() <=9))
{
    // Do something different for versions 1.1 to 1.9
}
else if (System.requestVersion().compareTo(new Version(2,0)) >= 0)
{
    // Do something completely different for versions 2.0 or greater
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

Version Constructors

Version Methods

Version Constructors

The following are constructors for `Version`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Version(major, minor)

Creates a new instance of the `Version` class as a two-part package version using the specified major and minor version numbers.

Version(major, minor, patch)

Creates a new instance of the `Version` class as a three-part package version using the specified major, minor, and patch version numbers.

`Version(major, minor)`

Creates a new instance of the `Version` class as a two-part package version using the specified major and minor version numbers.

Signature

```
public Version(Integer major, Integer minor)
```

Parameters

major

Type: Integer

The major version number.

minor
Type: Integer

The minor version number.

Version(major, minor, patch)

Creates a new instance of the `Version` class as a three-part package version using the specified major, minor, and patch version numbers.

Signature

```
public Version(Integer major, Integer minor, Integer patch)
```

Parameters

major
Type: Integer

The major version number.

minor
Type: Integer

The minor version number.

patch
Type: Integer

The patch version number.

Version Methods

The following are methods for `Version`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

compareTo(version)
Compares the current version with the specified version.

major()
Returns the major package version of the of the calling code.

minor()
Returns the minor package version of the calling code.

patch()
Returns the patch package version of the calling code or `null` if there is no patch version.

compareTo(version)

Compares the current version with the specified version.

Signature

```
public Integer compareTo(System.Version version)
```

Parameters

version
Type: System.Version

Return Value

Type: Integer

Returns one of the following values:

- zero if the current package version is equal to the specified package version
- an Integer value greater than zero if the current package version is greater than the specified package version
- an Integer value less than zero if the current package version is less than the specified package version

Usage

If a two-part version is being compared to a three-part version, the patch number is ignored and the comparison is based only on the major and minor numbers.

major()

Returns the major package version of the of the calling code.

Signature

```
public Integer major()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

minor()

Returns the minor package version of the calling code.

Signature

```
public Integer minor()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

patch()

Returns the patch package version of the calling code or `null` if there is no patch version.

Signature

```
public Integer patch()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

WebServiceCallout Class

Enables making callouts to SOAP operations on an external Web service. This class is used in the Apex stub class that is auto-generated from a WSDL.

Namespace

System

IN THIS SECTION:

WebServiceCallout Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: SOAP Services: Defining a Class from a WSDL Document

WebServiceCallout Methods

The following is the static method for `WebServiceCallout`.

IN THIS SECTION:

invoke(stub, request, response, infoArray)
Invokes an external SOAP web service operation based on an Apex class that is auto-generated from a WSDL.

`invoke(stub, request, response, infoArray)`

Invokes an external SOAP web service operation based on an Apex class that is auto-generated from a WSDL.

Signature

```
public static void invoke(Object stub, Object request, Map<String,Object> response,
List<String> infoArray)
```

Parameters

`stub`
Type: Object

An instance of the Apex class that is auto-generated from a WSDL (the stub class).

`request`
Type: Object

The request to the external service. The request is an instance of a type that is created as part of the auto-generated stub class.

response
Type: Map<String, Object>

A map of key-value pairs that represent the response that the external service sends after receiving the request. In each pair, the key is a response identifier. The value is the response object, which is an instance of a type that is created as part of the auto-generated stub class.

infoArray
Type: String[]

An array of strings that contains information about the callout—web service endpoint, SOAP action, request, and response. The order of the elements in the array matters.

- Element at index 0 (`[0]`): One of the following options for identifying the URL of the external web service.
  - Endpoint URL. For example: `'http://YourServer/YourService'`
  - Named credential URL, which contains the scheme `callout`, the name of the named credential, and optionally, an appended path. For example: `'callout:MyNamedCredential/some/path'`
- Element at index 1 (`[1]`): The SOAP action. For example: `'urn:dotnet.callouttest.soap.sforce.com/EchoString'`
- Element at index 2 (`[2]`): The request namespace. For example: `'http://doc.sample.com/docSample'`
- Element at index 3 (`[3]`): The request name. For example: `'EchoString'`
- Element at index 4 (`[4]`): The response namespace. For example: `'http://doc.sample.com/docSample'`
- Element at index 5 (`[5]`): The response name. For example: `'EchoStringResponse'`
- Element at index 6 (`[6]`): The response type. For example: `'docSample.EchoStringResponse_element'`

Return Value

Type: Void

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Named Credentials as Callout Endpoints

WebServiceMock Interface

Enables sending fake responses when testing Web service callouts of a class auto-generated from a WSDL.

Namespace

System

Usage

For an implementation example, see Test Web Service Callouts.

WebServiceMock Methods

The following are methods for `WebServiceMock`.

IN THIS SECTION:

doInvoke(stub, soapRequest, responseMap, endpoint, soapAction, requestName, responseNamespace, responseName, responseType)
The implementation of this method is called by the Apex runtime to send a fake response when a Web service callout is made after `Test.setMock` has been called.

doInvoke(stub, soapRequest, responseMap, endpoint, soapAction, requestName, responseNamespace, responseName, responseType)

The implementation of this method is called by the Apex runtime to send a fake response when a Web service callout is made after `Test.setMock` has been called.

Signature

```
public Void doInvoke(Object stub, Object soapRequest, Map<String,Object> responseMap,
String endpoint, String soapAction, String requestName, String responseNamespace, String
responseName, String responseType)
```

Parameters

stub
Type: Object

An instance of the auto-generated class.

soapRequest
Type: Object

The SOAP Web service request being invoked.

responseMap
Type: Map<String, Object>

A collection of key/value pairs representing the response to send for the request.

When implementing this interface, set the *responseMap* argument to a key/value pair representing the response desired.

endpoint
Type: String

The endpoint URL for the request.

soapAction
Type: String

The requested SOAP operation.

requestName
Type: String

The requested SOAP operation name.

responseNamespace
Type: String

The response namespace.

responseName
Type: String

The name of the response element as defined in the WSDL.

responseType
Type: String

The class for the response as defined in the auto-generated class.

Return Value

Type: Void

Usage

XmlStreamReader Class

The `XmlStreamReader` class provides methods for forward, read-only access to XML data. You can pull data from XML or skip unwanted events. You can parse nested XML content that's up to 50 nodes deep.

Namespace

System

Usage

The `XmlStreamReader` class is similar to the XMLStreamReader utility class from StAX.

Note: The `XmlStreamReader` class in Apex is based on its counterpart in Java. See `Java XMLStreamReader class`.

IN THIS SECTION:

XmlStreamReader Constructors

XmlStreamReader Methods

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Reading XML Using Streams

XmlStreamReader Constructors

The following are constructors for `XmlStreamReader`.

IN THIS SECTION:

XmlStreamReader(xmlInput)
Creates a new instance of the `XmlStreamReader` class for the specified XML input.

XmlStreamReader(xmlInput)

Creates a new instance of the `XmlStreamReader` class for the specified XML input.

Signature

```
public XmlStreamReader(String xmlInput)
```

Parameters

xmlInput
Type: String

The XML string input.

XmlStreamReader Methods

The following are methods for `XmlStreamReader`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

getAttributeCount()
Returns the number of attributes on the start element, excluding namespace definitions.

getAttributeLocalName(index)
Returns the local name of the attribute at the specified index.

getAttributeNamespace(index)
Returns the namespace URI of the attribute at the specified index.

getAttributePrefix(index)
Returns the prefix of this attribute at the specified index.

getAttributeType(index)
Returns the XML type of the attribute at the specified index.

getAttributeValue(namespaceUri, localName)
Returns the value of the attribute in the specified *localName* at the specified URI.

getAttributeValueAt(index)
Returns the value of the attribute at the specified index.

getEventType()
Returns the type of XML event the cursor is pointing to.

getLocalName()
Returns the local name of the current event.

getLocation()
Return the current location of the cursor.

getNamespace()
If the current event is a start element or end element, this method returns the URI of the prefix or the default namespace.

getNamespaceCount()
Returns the number of namespaces declared on a start element or end element.

getNamespacePrefix(index)
Returns the prefix for the namespace declared at the index.

getNamespaceURI(prefix)
Return the URI for the given prefix.

getNamespaceURIAt(index)

Returns the URI for the namespace declared at the index.

getPIData()

Returns the data section of a processing instruction.

getPITarget()

Returns the target section of a processing instruction.

getPrefix()

Returns the prefix of the current XML event or `null` if the event does not have a prefix.

getText()

Returns the current value of the XML event as a string.

getVersion()

Returns the XML version specified on the XML declaration. Returns `null` if none was declared.

hasName()

Returns `true` if the current XML event has a name. Returns `false` otherwise.

hasNext()

Returns `true` if there are more XML events and `false` if there are no more XML events.

hasText()

Returns `true` if the current event has text, `false` otherwise.

isCharacters()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a character data XML event. Otherwise, returns `false`.

isEndElement()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to an end tag. Otherwise, it returns `false`.

isStartElement()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a start tag. Otherwise, it returns `false`.

isWhiteSpace()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a character data XML event that consists of all white space. Otherwise it returns `false`.

next()

Reads the next XML event. A processor may return all contiguous character data in a single chunk, or it may split it into several chunks. Returns an integer which indicates the type of event.

nextTag()

Skips any white space (the `isWhiteSpace` method returns `true`), comment, or processing instruction XML events, until a start element or end element is reached. Returns the index for that XML event.

setCoalescing(returnAsSingleBlock)

If you specify `true` for *`returnAsSingleBlock`*, text is returned in a single block, from a start element to the first end element or the next start element, whichever comes first. If you specify it as `false`, the parser may return text in multiple blocks.

setNamespaceAware(isNamespaceAware)

If you specify `true` for *`isNamespaceAware`*, the parser recognizes namespace. If you specify it as `false`, the parser does not. The default value is `true`.

toString()

Returns a string containing the length of the input XML given to `XmlStreamReader` and the first 50 characters of the input XML.

getAttributeCount()

Returns the number of attributes on the start element, excluding namespace definitions.

Signature

```
public Integer getAttributeCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

This method is only valid on a start element or attribute XML events. The count for the number of attributes for an attribute XML event starts with zero.

getAttributeLocalName(index)

Returns the local name of the attribute at the specified index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeLocalName(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If there is no name, an empty string is returned. This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

getAttributeNamespace(index)

Returns the namespace URI of the attribute at the specified index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeNamespace(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If no namespace is specified, `null` is returned. This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

`getAttributePrefix(index)`

Returns the prefix of this attribute at the specified index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributePrefix(Integer index)
```

Parameters

`index`
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If no prefix is specified, `null` is returned. This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

`getAttributeType(index)`

Returns the XML type of the attribute at the specified index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeType(Integer index)
```

Parameters

`index`
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For example, `id` is an attribute type. This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

getAttributeValue(namespaceUri, localName)

Returns the value of the attribute in the specified *localName* at the specified URI.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeValue(String namespaceUri, String localName)
```

Parameters

namespaceUri
Type: String

localName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if the value is not found. You must specify a value for *localName*. This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

getAttributeValueAt(index)

Returns the value of the attribute at the specified index.

Signature

```
public String getAttributeValueAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method is only valid with start element or attribute XML events.

getEventType()

Returns the type of XML event the cursor is pointing to.

Signature

```
public System.XmlTag getEventType()
```

Return Value

Type: System.XmlTag

`XmlTag` Enum

The values for `XmlTag` are:

- `ATTRIBUTE`
- `CDATA`
- `CHARACTERS`
- `COMMENT`
- `DTD`
- `END_DOCUMENT`
- `END_ELEMENT`
- `ENTITY_DECLARATION`
- `ENTITY_REFERENCE`
- `NAMESPACE`
- `NOTATION_DECLARATION`
- `PROCESSING_INSTRUCTION`
- `SPACE`
- `START_DOCUMENT`
- `START_ELEMENT`

`getLocalName()`

Returns the local name of the current event.

Signature

```
public String getLocalName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

For start element or end element XML events, it returns the local name of the current element. For the entity reference XML event, it returns the entity name. The current XML event must be start element, end element, or entity reference.

`getLocation()`

Return the current location of the cursor.

Signature

```
public String getLocation()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

If the location is unknown, returns -1. The location information is only valid until the `next` method is called.

`getNamespace()`

If the current event is a start element or end element, this method returns the URI of the prefix or the default namespace.

Signature

```
public String getNamespace()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if the XML event does not have a prefix.

`getNamespaceCount()`

Returns the number of namespaces declared on a start element or end element.

Signature

```
public Integer getNamespaceCount()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

This method is only valid on a start element, end element, or namespace XML event.

`getNamespacePrefix(index)`

Returns the prefix for the namespace declared at the index.

Signature

```
public String getNamespacePrefix(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Returns `null` if this is the default namespace declaration. This method is only valid on a start element, end element, or namespace XML event.

getNamespaceURI(prefix)

Return the URI for the given prefix.

Signature

```
public String getNamespaceURI(String prefix)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The returned URI depends on the current state of the processor.

getNamespaceURIAt(index)

Returns the URI for the namespace declared at the index.

Signature

```
public String getNamespaceURIAt(Integer index)
```

Parameters

index
Type: Integer

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

This method is only valid on a start element, end element, or namespace XML event.

`getPIData()`

Returns the data section of a processing instruction.

Signature

```
public String getPIData()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPITarget()`

Returns the target section of a processing instruction.

Signature

```
public String getPITarget()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getPrefix()`

Returns the prefix of the current XML event or `null` if the event does not have a prefix.

Signature

```
public String getPrefix()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getText()`

Returns the current value of the XML event as a string.

Signature

```
public String getText()
```

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

The valid values for the different events are:

- The string value of a character XML event
- The string value of a comment
- The replacement value for an entity reference. For example, assume `getText` reads the following XML snippet:

```
<!ENTITY
  Title "Salesforce For Dummies" >
     ]>
  <moo a=\"b\">Name &Title;</moo>';
```

  The `getText` method returns `Salesforce for Dummies`, not `&Title`.
- The string value of a CDATA section
- The string value for a space XML event
- The string value of the internal subset of the DTD

`getVersion()`

Returns the XML version specified on the XML declaration. Returns `null` if none was declared.

Signature

```
public String getVersion()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`hasName()`

Returns `true` if the current XML event has a name. Returns `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasName()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method is only valid for start element and stop element XML events.

`hasNext()`

Returns `true` if there are more XML events and `false` if there are no more XML events.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasNext()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

This method returns `false` if the current XML event is end document.

hasText()

Returns `true` if the current event has text, `false` otherwise.

Signature

```
public Boolean hasText()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Usage

The following XML events have text: characters, entity reference, comment and space.

isCharacters()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a character data XML event. Otherwise, returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isCharacters()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isEndElement()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to an end tag. Otherwise, it returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isEndElement()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isStartElement()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a start tag. Otherwise, it returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isStartElement()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

isWhiteSpace()

Returns `true` if the cursor points to a character data XML event that consists of all white space. Otherwise it returns `false`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isWhiteSpace()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

next()

Reads the next XML event. A processor may return all contiguous character data in a single chunk, or it may split it into several chunks. Returns an integer which indicates the type of event.

Signature

```
public Integer next()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

nextTag()

Skips any white space (the `isWhiteSpace` method returns `true`), comment, or processing instruction XML events, until a start element or end element is reached. Returns the index for that XML event.

Signature

```
public Integer nextTag()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

Usage

This method throws an error if elements other than white space, comments, processing instruction, start elements or stop elements are encountered.

setCoalescing(returnAsSingleBlock)

If you specify `true` for *`returnAsSingleBlock`*, text is returned in a single block, from a start element to the first end element or the next start element, whichever comes first. If you specify it as `false`, the parser may return text in multiple blocks.

Signature

```
public Void setCoalescing(Boolean returnAsSingleBlock)
```

Parameters

`returnAsSingleBlock`
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

setNamespaceAware(isNamespaceAware)

If you specify `true` for *`isNamespaceAware`*, the parser recognizes namespace. If you specify it as `false`, the parser does not. The default value is `true`.

Signature

```
public Void setNamespaceAware(Boolean isNamespaceAware)
```

Parameters

`isNamespaceAware`
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

toString()

Returns a string containing the length of the input XML given to `XmlStreamReader` and the first 50 characters of the input XML.

Signature

```
public String toString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

XmlStreamWriter Class

The `XmlStreamWriter` class provides methods for writing XML data.

Namespace

System

Usage

You can use the `XmlStreamWriter` class to programmatically construct an XML document, then use HTTP classes to send the document to an external server.

The `XmlStreamWriter` class is similar to the XMLStreamWriter utility class from StAX.

Note: The `XmlStreamWriter` class in Apex is based on its counterpart in Java. See `Java XMLStreamWriter class`.

IN THIS SECTION:

XmlStreamWriter Constructors

XmlStreamWriter Methods

SEE ALSO:

Http Class

HttpRequest Class

HttpResponse Class

XmlStreamWriter Constructors

The following are constructors for `XmlStreamWriter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

XmlStreamWriter()

Creates a new instance of the `XmlStreamWriter` class.

`XmlStreamWriter()`

Creates a new instance of the `XmlStreamWriter` class.

Signature

```
public XmlStreamWriter()
```

XmlStreamWriter Methods

The following are methods for `XmlStreamWriter`. All are instance methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

close()
Closes this instance of an XmlStreamWriter and free any resources associated with it.

getXmlString()
Returns the XML written by the XmlStreamWriter instance.

setDefaultNamespace(uri)
Binds the specified URI to the default namespace. This URI is bound in the scope of the current START_ELEMENT – END_ELEMENT pair.

writeAttribute(prefix, namespaceUri, localName, value)
Writes an attribute to the output stream.

writeCData(data)
Writes the specified CData to the output stream.

writeCharacters(text)
Writes the specified text to the output stream.

writeComment(comment)
Writes the specified comment to the output stream.

writeDefaultNamespace(namespaceUri)
Writes the specified namespace to the output stream.

writeEmptyElement(prefix, localName, namespaceUri)
Writes an empty element tag to the output stream.

writeEndDocument()
Closes any start tags and writes corresponding end tags to the output stream.

writeEndElement()
Writes an end tag to the output stream, relying on the internal state of the writer to determine the prefix and local name.

writeNamespace(prefix, namespaceUri)
Writes the specified namespace to the output stream.

writeProcessingInstruction(target, data)
Writes the specified processing instruction.

writeStartDocument(encoding, version)
Writes the XML Declaration using the specified XML encoding and version.

writeStartElement(prefix, localName, namespaceUri)
Writes the start tag specified by *`localName`* to the output stream.

`close()`

Closes this instance of an XmlStreamWriter and free any resources associated with it.

Signature

```
public Void close()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

getXmlString()

Returns the XML written by the XmlStreamWriter instance.

Signature

```
public String getXmlString()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setDefaultNamespace(uri)

Binds the specified URI to the default namespace. This URI is bound in the scope of the current START_ELEMENT – END_ELEMENT pair.

Signature

```
public Void setDefaultNamespace(String uri)
```

Parameters

uri
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeAttribute(prefix, namespaceUri, localName, value)

Writes an attribute to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeAttribute(String prefix, String namespaceUri, String localName, String
value)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

namespaceUri
Type: String

localName
Type: String

Specifies the name of the attribute.

value
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeCData(data)

Writes the specified CData to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeCData(String data)
```

Parameters

data
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeCharacters(text)

Writes the specified text to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeCharacters(String text)
```

Parameters

text
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeComment(comment)

Writes the specified comment to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeComment(String comment)
```

Parameters

comment
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeDefaultNamespace(namespaceUri)

Writes the specified namespace to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeDefaultNamespace(String namespaceUri)
```

Parameters

namespaceUri
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeEmptyElement(prefix, localName, namespaceUri)

Writes an empty element tag to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeEmptyElement(String prefix, String localName, String namespaceUri)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

localName
Type: String

Specifies the name of the tag to be written.

namespaceUri
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeEndDocument()

Closes any start tags and writes corresponding end tags to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeEndDocument()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeEndElement()

Writes an end tag to the output stream, relying on the internal state of the writer to determine the prefix and local name.

Signature

```
public Void writeEndElement()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

writeNamespace(prefix, namespaceUri)

Writes the specified namespace to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeNamespace(String prefix, String namespaceUri)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

namespaceUri
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeProcessingInstruction(target, data)

Writes the specified processing instruction.

Signature

```
public Void writeProcessingInstruction(String target, String data)
```

Parameters

target
Type: String

data
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeStartDocument(encoding, version)

Writes the XML Declaration using the specified XML encoding and version.

Signature

```
public Void writeStartDocument(String encoding, String version)
```

Parameters

encoding
Type: String

version
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

writeStartElement(prefix, localName, namespaceUri)

Writes the start tag specified by *localName* to the output stream.

Signature

```
public Void writeStartElement(String prefix, String localName, String namespaceUri)
```

Parameters

prefix
Type: String

localName
Type: String

namespaceUri
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

TerritoryMgmt Namespace

The `TerritoryMgmt` namespace provides an interface used for territory management.

The following is the interface in the `TerritoryMgmt` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Global Interface
Apex interface that allows an implementing class to assign a single territory to an opportunity.

OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Global Interface

Apex interface that allows an implementing class to assign a single territory to an opportunity.

Namespace

TerritoryMgmt

Usage

Method called by Opportunity Territory Assignment job to assign territory to opportunity. Input is a list of (up to 1000) opportunityIds that have IsExcludedFromTerritory2Filter=false. Returns a map of OpportunityId to Territory2Id, which is used to update the Territory2Id field on the Opportunity object.

IN THIS SECTION:

OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Methods
OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Example Implementation

OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Methods

The following are methods for `OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter`.

IN THIS SECTION:

getOpportunityTerritory2Assignments(opportunityIds)
Returns the mapping of opportunities to territory IDs. When Salesforce invokes this method, it supplies the list of opportunity IDs, except for opportunities that have been excluded from territory assignment (IsExcludedFromTerritory2Filter=false).

`getOpportunityTerritory2Assignments(opportunityIds)`

Returns the mapping of opportunities to territory IDs. When Salesforce invokes this method, it supplies the list of opportunity IDs, except for opportunities that have been excluded from territory assignment (IsExcludedFromTerritory2Filter=false).

Signature

```
public Map<Id,Id> getOpportunityTerritory2Assignments(List<Id> opportunityIds)
```

Parameters

opportunityIds
Type: List<Id>

Opportunity IDs.

Return Value

Type: Map<Id,Id>

A key value pair associating each Territory ID to an Opportunity ID.

OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter Example Implementation

This is an example implementation of the `TerritoryMgmt.OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter` interface.

```
/*** Apex version of the default logic.
* If opportunity's assigned account is assigned to
*  Case 1: 0 territories in active model
*            then set territory2Id = null
*  Case 2: 1 territory in active model
*            then set territory2Id = account's territory2Id
*  Case 3: 2 or more territories in active model
*            then set territory2Id = account's territory2Id that is of highest priority.
*           But if multiple territories have same highest priority, then set territory2Id
 = null
*/
global class OppTerrAssignDefaultLogicFilter implements
TerritoryMgmt.OpportunityTerritory2AssignmentFilter {
    /**
     * No-arg constructor.
     */
     global OppTerrAssignDefaultLogicFilter() {}

     /**
      * Get mapping of opportunity to territory2Id. The incoming list of opportunityIds
contains only those with IsExcludedFromTerritory2Filter=false.
      * If territory2Id = null in result map, clear the opportunity.territory2Id if set.
      * If opportunity is not present in result map, its territory2Id remains intact.
      */
    global Map<Id,Id> getOpportunityTerritory2Assignments(List<Id> opportunityIds) {
        Map<Id, Id> OppIdTerritoryIdResult = new Map<Id, Id>();

        // Get the active territory model Id
        Id activeModelId = getActiveModelId();

        if(activeModelId != null){
            List<Opportunity> opportunities =
              [Select Id, AccountId, Territory2Id from Opportunity where Id IN
:opportunityIds];
```

```
            Set<Id> accountIds = new Set<Id>();
            // Create set of parent accountIds
            for(Opportunity opp:opportunities){
                if(opp.AccountId != null){
                    accountIds.add(opp.AccountId);
                    }
                }

                Map<Id,Territory2Priority> accountMaxPriorityTerritory =
getAccountMaxPriorityTerritory(activeModelId, accountIds);

            // For each opportunity, assign the highest priority territory if there is no
 conflict, else assign null.
            for(Opportunity opp: opportunities){
               Territory2Priority tp = accountMaxPriorityTerritory.get(opp.AccountId);
               // Assign highest priority territory if there is only 1.
            if((tp != null) && (tp.moreTerritoriesAtPriority == false) && (tp.territory2Id
 != opp.Territory2Id)){
                    OppIdTerritoryIdResult.put(opp.Id, tp.territory2Id);
                }else{
                    OppIdTerritoryIdResult.put(opp.Id, null);
                }
            }
        }
        return OppIdTerritoryIdResult;
    }

    /**
      * Query assigned territoryIds in active model for given accountIds.
      * Create a map of accountId to max priority territory.
      */
     private Map<Id,Territory2Priority> getAccountMaxPriorityTerritory(Id activeModelId,
Set<Id> accountIds){
        Map<Id,Territory2Priority> accountMaxPriorityTerritory = new
Map<Id,Territory2Priority>();
        for(ObjectTerritory2Association ota:[Select ObjectId, Territory2Id,
Territory2.Territory2Type.Priority from ObjectTerritory2Association where objectId IN
:accountIds and Territory2.Territory2ModelId = :activeModelId]){
            Territory2Priority tp = accountMaxPriorityTerritory.get(ota.ObjectId);

            if((tp == null) || (ota.Territory2.Territory2Type.Priority > tp.priority)){
                // If this is the first territory examined for account or it has greater
priority than current highest priority territory, then set this as new highest priority
territory.
                tp = new
Territory2Priority(ota.Territory2Id,ota.Territory2.Territory2Type.priority,false);
            }else if(ota.Territory2.Territory2Type.priority == tp.priority){
                // The priority of current highest territory is same as this, so set
moreTerritoriesAtPriority to indicate multiple highest priority territories seen so far.
                tp.moreTerritoriesAtPriority = true;
            }

            accountMaxPriorityTerritory.put(ota.ObjectId, tp);
        }
```

```
        return accountMaxPriorityTerritory;
    }


    /**
     * Get the Id of the Active Territory Model.
     * If none exists, return null.
     */
    private Id getActiveModelId() {
        List<Territory2Model> models = [Select Id from Territory2Model where State =
'Active'];
        Id activeModelId = null;
        if(models.size() == 1){
            activeModelId = models.get(0).Id;
        }

        return activeModelId;
    }

    /**
    * Helper class to help capture territory2Id, its priority, and whether there are more
 territories with same priority assigned to the account.
    */
    private class Territory2Priority {
        public Id territory2Id { get; set; }
        public Integer priority { get; set; }
        public Boolean moreTerritoriesAtPriority { get; set; }

        Territory2Priority(Id territory2Id, Integer priority, Boolean
moreTerritoriesAtPriority){
            this.territory2Id = territory2Id;
            this.priority = priority;
            this.moreTerritoriesAtPriority = moreTerritoriesAtPriority;
        }
    }
}
```

TxnSecurity Namespace

The `TxnSecurity` namespace provides an interface used for transaction security.

The following is the interface and its supporting class in the `TxnSecurity` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

Event Class

Contains event information that the `evaluate` method uses to evaluate a transaction security policy.

EventCondition Interface

Allows an implementing class to specify whether to take action when certain events occur based on a transaction security policy. This interface is only used for Apex policies created in Real-Time Event Monitoring.

AsyncCondition Interface

Allows an implementing class to make asynchronous Apex calls. This interface is used only for transaction security Apex policies created in Real-Time Event Monitoring.

PolicyCondition Interface

Apex interface that allows an implementing class to specify actions to take when certain events occur based on a transaction security policy.

Event Class

Contains event information that the `evaluate` method uses to evaluate a transaction security policy.



Warning: Legacy Transaction Security is scheduled for retirement in all Salesforce orgs as of Summer '20. For more information, see Legacy Transaction Security Retirement. To create transaction security policies using the new framework, refer to the Enhanced Transaction Security documentation. To migrate legacy policies to the new framework, refer to the migration documentation.

Namespace

TxnSecurity

Usage

The Event class contains the information needed to determine if the event triggers a Transaction Security policy. Not all class attributes are used for every type of event.



Tip: For more functionality and support of Enhanced Transaction Security, use the `EventCondition` interface instead of the `PolicyCondition` interface.

IN THIS SECTION:

Event Constructors

Event Properties

Event Constructors

The following is the constructor for `Event`.

IN THIS SECTION:

Event()

Creates an instance of the `TxnSecurity.Event` class.

`Event()`

Creates an instance of the `TxnSecurity.Event` class.

Signature

```
public Event()
```

Event Properties

The following are properties for `Event`.

IN THIS SECTION:

action
Specifies the action being taken on the resource for an Entity event. For example, a Login IP resource for an Entity event could have an `action` of `create`. The `action` attribute is not used by any other event type.

data
Contains data used by actions. For example, `data` for a login event includes the login history ID. Returns a map whose keys are the type of event data, like `SourceIp`.

entityId
The ID of any entity associated with the event. For example, the `entityId` of a DataExport event for an Account object contains the Account ID.

entityName
The name of the object the event acts on.

organizationId
The ID of the Salesforce org where the event occurred.

resourceType
The type of resource for the event. For example, an AccessResource event could have a Connected Application as a resource type. Not all event types have resources.

timeStamp
The time the event occurred.

userId
Identifies the user that caused the event.

`action`

Specifies the action being taken on the resource for an Entity event. For example, a Login IP resource for an Entity event could have an `action` of `create`. The `action` attribute is not used by any other event type.

Signature

```
public String action {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`data`

Contains data used by actions. For example, `data` for a login event includes the login history ID. Returns a map whose keys are the type of event data, like `SourceIp`.

Signature

```
public Map<String,String> data {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Map<String, String>

The following table lists all the available data types. Not all types appear with all event types. The data type values are always string representations. For example, the `isApi` value is a string in the map, but is actually a Boolean value. Convert the value from a string to its true type this way: `Boolean.valueOf(event.data.get('isApi'));`

Key Name	True Value Type	Events Supported
ActionName	`String` Values are: • Convert • Delete • Insert • Undelete • Update • Upsert	Entity
ApiType	`String` (Enum manifested as a String)	DataExport, Login
Application	`String`	AccessResource, DataExport
ClientId	`String` (ID of the client)	DataExport
ConnectedAppId	`String` (ID of the Connected App)	AccessResource, DataExport
ExecutionTime	milliseconds	DataExport
IsApi	`Boolean`	DataExport
IsScheduled	`Boolean`	DataExport
LoginHistoryId	`String`	DataExport, Login
NumberOfRecords	`Integer`	DataExport
PolicyId	`String` (ID of the current policy)	All events
SessionLevel	`String` (Enum manifested as a String. Values include `STANDARD` and `HIGH_ASSURANCE`)	AccessResource
SourceIp	`String` (IPV4 Address)	AccessResource
UserName	`String`	Entity

`entityId`

The ID of any entity associated with the event. For example, the `entityId` of a DataExport event for an Account object contains the Account ID.

Signature

```
public String entityId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`entityName`

The name of the object the event acts on.

Signature

```
public String entityName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`organizationId`

The ID of the Salesforce org where the event occurred.

Signature

```
public String organizationId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`resourceType`

The type of resource for the event. For example, an AccessResource event could have a Connected Application as a resource type. Not all event types have resources.

Signature

```
public String resourceType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

`timeStamp`

The time the event occurred.

Signature

```
public Datetime timeStamp {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: Datetime

`userId`

Identifies the user that caused the event.

Signature

```
public String userId {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

EventCondition Interface

Allows an implementing class to specify whether to take action when certain events occur based on a transaction security policy. This interface is only used for Apex policies created in Real-Time Event Monitoring.

Usage

The `evaluate` method is called upon the occurrence of a real-time event monitored by a transaction security policy. A typical implementation first selects the fields of interest from the event. Then the fields are tested to see if they meet the conditions being monitored. If the conditions are met, the method returns `true`.

For example, imagine a transaction security policy that triggers when a user queries more than 1,000 lead records. For each API event, the `evaluate` method checks whether the `RowsProcessed` value is greater than 1,000 and the `QueriedEntities` value contains "Lead". If so, `true` is returned.

We recommend having test classes for the policy condition interface to ensure it works correctly. Testing is required regardless of whether the policy is moved from a sandbox to production, with a change set, or some other way. For example, test your policies in your development environment before moving the policies to production.

Don't include DML statements in your custom policies because they can cause errors. When you send a custom email via Apex during transaction policy evaluation, you get an error, even if the record is not explicitly related to another record. For more information, see Apex DML Operations in the *Apex Reference Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

EventCondition Methods

EventCondition Example Implementation

EventCondition Methods

The following are methods for `EventCondition`.

IN THIS SECTION:

evaluate(event)
Evaluates an event against a transaction security policy created in Real-Time Event Monitoring. If the event triggers the policy, the method returns `true`.

`evaluate(event)`

Evaluates an event against a transaction security policy created in Real-Time Event Monitoring. If the event triggers the policy, the method returns `true`.

Signature

```
public Boolean evaluate(SObject event)
```

Parameters

var1
Type: SObject

The event to check against the transaction security policy.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns `true` when the policy is triggered. For example, suppose that the policy is to limit users to a single login session. If a user tries to log in a second time, the policy blocks the attempted login, and updates the Status, PolicyId, and PolicyOutcome fields of that LoginEvent. The policy also sends an email notification to the Salesforce admin. The `evaluate` method only checks the login event, and returns `true` if it's the user's second login attempt.

The system performs the action and notification, not the `evaluate` method.

EventCondition Example Implementation

This example shows an implementation of the `TxnSecurity.EventCondition` interface. The transaction security policy triggers when the user queries an Account object.

```
global class BlockAccountQueriesEventCondition implements TxnSecurity.EventCondition {

   public boolean evaluate(SObject event) {
      switch on event {
         when ApiEvent apiEvent {
            return handleApiEvent(apiEvent);
         }
         when null {
         // Trigger action if event is null
            return true;
         }
         when else {
         // Trigger action for unhandled events
            return true;
         }
      }
```

```
    }

    private boolean handleApiEvent(ApiEvent apiEvent){
        if(apiEvent.QueriedEntities.contains('Account')){
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }
}
```

For more examples, see Enhanced Apex Transaction Security Implementation Examples.

AsyncCondition Interface

Allows an implementing class to make asynchronous Apex calls. This interface is used only for transaction security Apex policies created in Real-Time Event Monitoring.

Namespace

TxnSecurity

Usage

If you make an Asynchronous Apex call in the class that implements your transaction security policy condition, the class must implement the `TxnSecurity.AsyncCondition` interface in addition to `TxnSecurity.EventCondition`. Use Asynchronous Apex instead of Apex callouts and DML statements, neither of which is allowed in transaction security Apex policies.

Apex offers multiple ways to run your Apex code asynchronously and all are supported in the `TxnSecurity.AsyncCondition` interface.

This interface has no methods.

IN THIS SECTION:

AsyncCondition Example Implementation

SEE ALSO:

Apex Developer Guide: Asynchronous Apex

AsyncCondition Example Implementation

Here's an example implementation of the `TxnSecurity.AsyncCondition` interface. The transaction security policy triggers when a user logs in. In the example, ExternalValidation__c is a custom object that contains information from an external validation system. The result of the SOQL query on ExternalValidation__c determines whether to block the user from logging in. The policy then queues the `CalloutToExternalValidator` class for asynchronous execution. When it executes, the `CalloutToExternalValidator` class makes an external call to the validation system to update it with information about this log in event. Because `CalloutToExternalValidator` is triggered by Asynchronous Apex, you must implement the

`TxnSecurity.AsyncCondition` interface in the `ExternallyValidatedLoginCondition` Apex class along with the usual `TxnSecurity.EventCondition` interface.

```
global class ExternallyValidatedLoginCondition implements TxnSecurity.EventCondition,
TxnSecurity.AsyncCondition {
    public boolean evaluate(SObject event) {
        LoginEvent loginEvent = (LoginEvent) event;
        Boolean userBlocked = [select blocked from ExternalValidation__c where loginId =
loginEvent.UserId][0].Blocked;

        System.enqueueJob(new CalloutToExternalValidator(loginEvent.SourceIp,
loginEvent.LoginUrl));
        return userBlocked;
    }
}

public class CalloutToExternalValidator implements Queueable {
    private String sourceIp;
    private String loginUrl;

    public CalloutToExternalValidator(String sourceIp, String loginUrl) {
        this.sourceIp = sourceIp;
        this.loginUrl = loginUrl;
    }

    public void execute(QueueableContext context) {
        // callout to external validation service
        // pass sourceIp, loginUrl

        // update ExternalValidation__c
    }
}
```

PolicyCondition Interface

Apex interface that allows an implementing class to specify actions to take when certain events occur based on a transaction security policy.

Warning: Legacy Transaction Security is scheduled for retirement in all Salesforce orgs as of Summer '20. For more information, see Legacy Transaction Security Retirement. To create transaction security policies using the new framework, refer to the Enhanced Transaction Security documentation. To migrate legacy policies to the new framework, refer to the migration documentation.

Namespace

TxnSecurity

Usage

Tip: For more functionality and support of Enhanced Transaction Security, use the `EventCondition` interface instead of the `PolicyCondition` interface.

The `evaluate` method is called upon the occurrence of an event monitored by a transaction security policy. A typical implementation first selects the item of interest from the event. Then the item is tested to see if it meets the condition being monitored. If the condition is met, the method returns `true`.

For example, imagine a transaction security policy that checks for the same user logging in more than once. For each login event, the method would check if the user logging in already has a login session in progress, and if so, `true` is returned.

We recommend having test classes for the policy condition interface to ensure it works correctly. Testing is required regardless of whether the policy is moved from a sandbox to production, with a change set, or some other way. For example, test your policies in your development environment before moving the policies to production.

Don't include DML statements in your custom policies because they can cause errors. When you send a custom email via Apex during transaction policy evaluation, you get an error, even if the record is not explicitly related to another record. For more information, see Apex DML Operations in the *Apex Reference Guide*.

IN THIS SECTION:

PolicyCondition Methods

Apex Policies for Legacy Transaction Security
Every Transaction Security policy must implement the Apex `TxnSecurity.PolicyCondition` or `TxnSecurity.EventCondition` interface.

PolicyCondition Methods

The following is the method for `PolicyCondition`.

IN THIS SECTION:

evaluate(event)
Evaluates an event against a transaction security policy. If the event triggers the policy, `true` is returned.

`evaluate(event)`

Evaluates an event against a transaction security policy. If the event triggers the policy, `true` is returned.

Signature

```
public Boolean evaluate(TxnSecurity.Event event)
```

Parameters

`event`
Type: TxnSecurity.Event

The event to check against the transaction security policy.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

When the policy is triggered, `True` is returned. For example, let's suppose the policy is to limit users to a single login session. If anyone tries to log in a second time, the policy's action requires that they end their current session. The policy also sends an email notification

to the Salesforce admin. The `evaluate()` method only checks the login event, and returns `True` if it's the user's second login. The Transaction Security system performs the action and notification, and not the `evaluate()` method.

Apex Policies for Legacy Transaction Security

Every Transaction Security policy must implement the Apex `TxnSecurity.PolicyCondition` or `TxnSecurity.EventCondition` interface.

Warning: Legacy Transaction Security is scheduled for retirement in all Salesforce orgs as of Summer '20. For more information, see Legacy Transaction Security Retirement. You can no longer create, edit , or enable transaction security policies using the legacy framework and will receive an error message if you try to do so. To create transaction security policies using the new framework, refer to the Enhanced Transaction Security documentation. To migrate legacy policies to the new framework, refer to the migration documentation.

If you didn't specify a condition value before you generated the Apex interface for a policy, you can add the condition later. To change the condition, you can edit the Apex code to include a condition before you activate your policy. If you don't include a condition, your policy isn't triggered.

Don't include DML statements in your custom policies because they can cause errors. When you send a custom email via Apex during transaction policy evaluation, you get an error, even if the record is not explicitly related to another record. For more information, see Apex DML Operations in the *Apex Reference Guide*.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Classic and Lightning Experience

Available in: **Enterprise**, **Unlimited**, and **Developer** Editions

Requires Salesforce Shield or Salesforce Event Monitoring add-on subscriptions.

When you delete a transaction security policy, your `TxnSecurity.PolicyCondition` or `TxnSecurity.EventCondition` implementation isn't deleted. You can reuse your Apex code in other policies.

If you use an API callout in the Apex class that implements `TxnSecurity.PolicyCondition`, you must select an action when you create the Transaction Security policy in Setup. If you select *`None`* as the action, the policy can't execute. For more information, see Invoking Callouts Using Apex in the *Apex Developer Guide*.

UserProvisioning Namespace

The `UserProvisioning` namespace provides methods for monitoring outbound user provisioning requests.

The following is the class in the `UserProvisioning` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectorTestUtil Class

Enables developers to write Apex test classes for connectors used by the connected app provisioning solution. This class simulates provisioning for the associated app.

UserProvisioningLog Class

Provides methods for writing messages to monitor outbound user provisioning requests.

UserProvisioningPlugin Class

The `UserProvisioningPlugin` base class implements `Process.Plugin` for programmatic customization of the user provisioning process for connected apps.

ConnectorTestUtil Class

Enables developers to write Apex test classes for connectors used by the connected app provisioning solution. This class simulates provisioning for the associated app.

Namespace

UserProvisioning

Usage

Use this class for connector-based test accelerators. You can invoke it only from within an Apex test.

Example

This example creates an instance of a connected app, gets a value, and checks whether the value is correct. The test is simply a row inserted in the database table.

```
        @isTest
        private class SCIMCreateUserPluginTest {
        public static void callPlugin(Boolean validInputParams) {

        //Create an instance of a connected app
        ConnectedApplication capp
=UserProvisioning.ConnectorTestUtil.createConnectedApp('TestApp');
        Profile p = [SELECT Id FROM Profile WHERE Name='Standard User'];
        //Create a user
        User user = new User(username='testuser1@scimuserprov.test', Firstname= 'Test',
Lastname='User1', email='testuser1@testemail.com',
        FederationIdentifier='testuser1@testemail.com', profileId= p.Id,
communityNickName='tuser1', alias='tuser', TimeZoneSidKey='GMT',
        LocaleSidKey='en_US', EmailEncodingKey='ISO-8859-1', LanguageLocaleKey='en_US');
        //insert user into a row in the database table
        insert user;
        //Create a UPR
        UserProvisioningRequest upr = new UserProvisioningRequest(appname = capp.name,
connectedAppId=capp.id, operation='Create',
        state='New', approvalStatus='NotRequired',salesforceUserId=user.id);

        //Insert the UPR to test the flow end to end
        insert upr;
       }}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

ConnectorTestUtil Method

SEE ALSO:

Salesforce Help: User Provisioning for Connected Apps

ConnectorTestUtil Method

The `ConnectorTestUtil` class has 1 method.

IN THIS SECTION:

createConnectedApp(connectedAppName)
Creates an instance of a connected app to simulate provisioning.

`createConnectedApp(connectedAppName)`

Creates an instance of a connected app to simulate provisioning.

Signature

```
public static ConnectedApplication createConnectedApp(String connectedAppName)
```

Parameters

`connectedAppName`
Type: String

Name of the connected app to test for provisioning.

Return Value

Type: ConnectedApplication

The instance of the connected app to test for provisioning.

UserProvisioningLog Class

Provides methods for writing messages to monitor outbound user provisioning requests.

Namespace

UserProvisioning

Example

This example writes the user account information sent to a third-party system for a provisioning request to the UserProvisioningLog object.

```
String inputParamsStr = 'Input parameters: uprId=' + uprId + ',
endpointURL=' + endpointURL + ', adminUsername=' + adminUsername + ',
email=' + email + ', username=' + username + ', defaultPassword=' + defaultPassword + ',
defaultRoles =' + defaultRoles;
UserProvisioning.UserProvisioningLog.log(uprId, inputParamsStr);
```

IN THIS SECTION:

UserProvisioningLog Methods

UserProvisioningLog Methods

The following are methods for `UserProvisioningLog`. All methods are static.

IN THIS SECTION:

log(userProvisioningRequestId, details)
Writes a specific message, such as an error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request.

log(userProvisioningRequestId, status, details)
Writes a specific status and message, such a status and detailed error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request.

log(userProvisioningRequestId, externalUserId, externalUserName, userId, details)
Writes a specific message, such as an error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request associated with a specific user.

log(userProvisioningRequestId, details)

Writes a specific message, such as an error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request.

Signature

```
public void log(String userProvisioningRequestId, String details)
```

Parameters

userProvisioningRequestId
Type: String

A unique identifier for the user provisioning request.

details
Type: String

The text for the message.

Return Value

Type: void

log(userProvisioningRequestId, status, details)

Writes a specific status and message, such a status and detailed error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request.

Signature

```
public void log(String userProvisioningRequestId, String status, String details)
```

Parameters

userProvisioningRequestId
Type: String

A unique identifier for the user provisioning request.

status
Type: String

A description of the current state. For example, while invoking a third-party API, the status could be `invoke`.

details
Type: String

The text for the message.

Return Value

Type: void

log(userProvisioningRequestId, externalUserId, externalUserName, userId, details)

Writes a specific message, such as an error message, to monitor the progress of a user provisioning request associated with a specific user.

Signature

```
public void log(String userProvisioningRequestId, String externalUserId, String externalUserName, String userId, String details)
```

Parameters

userProvisioningRequestId
Type: String

A unique identifier for the user provisioning request.

externalUserId
Type: String

The unique identifier for the user in the target system.

externalUserName
Type: String

The username for the user in the target system.

userId
Type: String

Salesforce ID of the user making the request.

details
Type: String

The text for the message.

Return Value

Type: void

UserProvisioningPlugin Class

The `UserProvisioningPlugin` base class implements `Process.Plugin` for programmatic customization of the user provisioning process for connected apps.

Namespace

UserProvisioning

Usage

Extending this class gives you a plug-in that can be used Flow Builder as a legacy Apex action, with the following input and output parameters.

Input Parameter Name	Description
`userProvisioningRequestId`	The unique ID of the request for the plug-in to process.
`userId`	The ID of the associated user for the request.
`NamedCredDevName`	The unique API name for the named credential to use for a request. The named credential identifies the third-party system and the third-party authentication settings. When the named credential is set in the User Provisioning Wizard, Salesforce stores the value in the `UserProvisioningConfig.NamedCredentialId` field.
`reconFilter`	When collecting and analyzing users on a third-party system, the plug-in uses this filter to limit the scope of the collection. When the filter is set in the User Provisioning Wizard, Salesforce stores the value in the `UserProvisioningConfig.ReconFilter` field.
`reconOffset`	When collecting and analyzing users on a third-party system, the plug-in uses this value as the starting point for the collection.

Output Parameter Name	Description
`Status`	The vendor-specific status of the provisioning operation on the third-party system.
`Details`	The vendor-specific message related to the status of the provisioning operation on the third-party system.
`ExternalUserId`	The vendor-specific ID for the associated user on the third-party system.

Output Parameter Name	Description
`ExternalUsername`	The vendor-specific username for the associated user on the third-party system.
`ExternalEmail`	The email address assigned to the user on the third-party system.
`ExternalFirstName`	The first name assigned to the user on the third-party system.
`ExternalLastName`	The last name assigned to the user on the third-party system.
`reconState`	The state of the collecting and analyzing process on the third-party system. When the value is `complete`, the process is finished and a subsequent call to the plug-in is no longer needed, nor made.
`nextReconOffset`	When collecting and analyzing users on a third-party system, the process may encounter a transaction limit and have to stop before finishing. The value specified here initiates a call to the plug-in with a new quota limit.

If you want to add more custom parameters, use the `buildDescribeCall()` method.

Example

The following example uses the `buildDescribeCall()` method to add a new input parameter and a new output parameter. The example also demonstrates how to bypass the limit of the 10,000 records processed in DML statements in an Apex transaction.

```
global class SampleConnector extends UserProvisioning.UserProvisioningPlugin {

    // Example of adding more input and output parameters to those defined in the base
class
    global override Process.PluginDescribeResult buildDescribeCall() {
        Process.PluginDescribeResult describeResult = new Process.PluginDescribeResult();

        describeResult.inputParameters = new
            List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter>{
               new Process.PluginDescribeResult.InputParameter('testInputParam',
                       Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType.STRING, false)
            };

        describeResult.outputParameters = new
            List<Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter>{
               new Process.PluginDescribeResult.OutputParameter('testOutputParam',
                       Process.PluginDescribeResult.ParameterType.STRING)
            };

        return describeResult;
    }

    // Example Plugin that demonstrates how to leverage the
reconOffset/nextReconOffset/reconState
    // parameters to create more than 10,000 users. (i.e. go beyond the 10,000 DML limit
per transaction)
```

```
    global override Process.PluginResult invoke(Process.PluginRequest request) {
        Map<String,String> result = new Map<String,String>();
        String uprId = (String) request.inputParameters.get('userProvisioningRequestId');

        UserProvisioning.UserProvisioningLog.log(uprId, 'Inserting Log from test Apex
connector');
        UserProvisioningRequest upr = [SELECT id, operation, connectedAppId, state
                    FROM userprovisioningrequest WHERE id = :uprId];
        if (upr.operation.equals('Reconcile')) {
            String reconOffsetStr = (String) request.inputParameters.get('reconOffset');
            Integer reconOffset = 0;
            if (reconOffsetStr != null) {
                reconOffset = Integer.valueOf(reconOffsetStr);
            }

            if (reconOffset > 44999) {
                result.put('reconState', 'Completed');
            }

            Integer i = 0;
            List<UserProvAccountStaging> upasList = new List<UserProvAccountStaging>();
            for (i = 0; i < 5000; i++) {
                UserProvAccountStaging upas = new UserProvAccountStaging();
                upas.Name = i + reconOffset + '';
                upas.ExternalFirstName = upas.Name;
                upas.ExternalEmail = 'externaluser@externalsystem.com';
                upas.LinkState = 'Orphaned';
                upas.Status = 'Active';
                upas.connectedAppId = upr.connectedAppId;
                upasList.add(upas);
            }
            insert upasList;
            result.put('nextReconOffset', reconOffset + 5000 + '');
        }

        return new Process.PluginResult(result);
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

UserProvisioningPlugin Methods

UserProvisioningPlugin Methods

The following are methods for `UserProvisioningPlugin`.

IN THIS SECTION:

buildDescribeCall()

Use this method to add more input and output parameters to those defined in the base class.

describe()
Returns a `Process.PluginDescribeResult` object that describes this method call.

getPluginClassName()
Returns the name of the class implementing the plugin.

invoke(request)
Primary method that the system invokes when the class that implements the interface is instantiated.

buildDescribeCall()

Use this method to add more input and output parameters to those defined in the base class.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginDescribeResult buildDescribeCall()
```

Return Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult

describe()

Returns a `Process.PluginDescribeResult` object that describes this method call.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginDescribeResult describe()
```

Return Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult

getPluginClassName()

Returns the name of the class implementing the plugin.

Signature

```
public String getPluginClassName()
```

Return Value

Type: String

invoke(request)

Primary method that the system invokes when the class that implements the interface is instantiated.

Signature

```
public Process.PluginResult invoke(Process.PluginRequest request)
```

Parameters

request
Type: Process.PluginRequest

Return Value

Type: Process.PluginDescribeResult

VisualEditor Namespace

The `VisualEditor` namespace provides classes and methods for interacting with the Lightning App Builder. The classes and methods in this namespace operate on Lightning components, which include Lightning web components and Aura components.

As of Spring '19 (API version 45.0), you can build Lightning components using two programming models: the Lightning Web Components model, and the original Aura Components model. Lightning web components are custom HTML elements built using HTML and modern JavaScript. Lightning web components and Aura components can coexist and interoperate on a page.

Configure Lightning web components and Aura components to work in Lightning App Builder and Experience Builder. Admins and end users don't know which programming model was used to develop the components. To them, they're simply Lightning components.

The following are the classes in the `VisualEditor` namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

DataRow Class
Contains information about one item in a picklist used in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

DesignTimePageContext Class
An abstract class that provides context information about a Lightning page. It can be used to help define the values of a picklist in a Lightning component on a Lightning page based on the page's type and the object with which it's associated.

DynamicPickList Class
An abstract class, used to display the values of a picklist in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

DynamicPickListRows Class
Contains a list of picklist items in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

DataRow Class

Contains information about one item in a picklist used in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

Namespace

VisualEditor

IN THIS SECTION:

DataRow Constructors

DataRow Methods

DataRow Constructors

The following are constructors for `DataRow`.

IN THIS SECTION:

DataRow(label, value, selected)
Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` class using the specified label, value, and selected option.

DataRow(label, value)
Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` class using the specified label and value.

DataRow(label, value, selected)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` class using the specified label, value, and selected option.

Signature

```
public DataRow(String label, Object value, Boolean selected)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

User-facing label for the picklist item.

value
Type: Object

The value of the picklist item.

selected
Type: Boolean

Specifies whether the picklist item is selected (`true`) or not (`false`).

DataRow(label, value)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` class using the specified label and value.

Signature

```
public DataRow(String label, Object value)
```

Parameters

label
Type: String

User-facing label for the picklist item.

value
Type: Object

The value of the picklist item.

DataRow Methods

The following are methods for `DataRow`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` object.

compareTo(o)
Compares the current `VisualEditor.DataRow` object to the specified one. Returns an integer value that is the result of the comparison.

getLabel()
Returns the user-facing label of the picklist item.

getValue()
Returns the value of the picklist item.

isSelected()
Returns the state of the picklist item, indicating whether it's selected or not.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DataRow` object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

compareTo(o)

Compares the current `VisualEditor.DataRow` object to the specified one. Returns an integer value that is the result of the comparison.

Signature

```
public Integer compareTo(VisualEditor.DataRow o)
```

Parameters

o

Type: VisualEditor.DataRow

A single item in a picklist.

Return Value

Type: Integer

Returns one of the following values:

- Zero if the current package version is equal to the specified package version
- An integer value greater than zero if the current package version is greater than the specified package version
- An integer value less than zero if the current package version is less than the specified package version

`getLabel()`

Returns the user-facing label of the picklist item.

Signature

```
public String getLabel()
```

Return Value

Type: String

`getValue()`

Returns the value of the picklist item.

Signature

```
public Object getValue()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

`isSelected()`

Returns the state of the picklist item, indicating whether it's selected or not.

Signature

```
public Boolean isSelected()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DesignTimePageContext Class

An abstract class that provides context information about a Lightning page. It can be used to help define the values of a picklist in a Lightning component on a Lightning page based on the page's type and the object with which it's associated.

Namespace

VisualEditor

Usage

To use this class, create a parameterized constructor in the custom Apex class that extends `VisualEditor.DynamicPickList`.

Example

Here's an example of a custom Apex class extending the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickList` class. It includes `VisualEditor.DesignTimePageContext` to define a picklist value that is available only if the page type is `HomePage`.

```
global class MyCustomPickList extends VisualEditor.DynamicPickList{
    VisualEditor.DesignTimePageContext context;

    global MyCustomPickList(VisualEditor.DesignTimePageContext context) {
       this.context = context;
    }

    global override VisualEditor.DataRow getDefaultValue(){
        VisualEditor.DataRow defaultValue = new VisualEditor.DataRow('red', 'RED');
        return defaultValue;
    }
    global override VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows getValues() {
        VisualEditor.DataRow value1 = new VisualEditor.DataRow('red', 'RED');
        VisualEditor.DataRow value2 = new VisualEditor.DataRow('yellow', 'YELLOW');
       VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows  myValues = new VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows();

        myValues.addRow(value1);
        myValues.addRow(value2);

        if (context.pageType == 'HomePage') {
            VisualEditor.DataRow value3 = new VisualEditor.DataRow('purple', 'PURPLE');
            myValues.addRow(value3);
        }

        return myValues;
    }
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DesignTimePageContext Properties

DesignTimePageContext Methods

DesignTimePageContext Properties

The following are properties for `DesignTimePageContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

entityName

The API name of the sObject that a Lightning page is associated with, such as Account, Contact or Custom_object__c. Not all Lightning pages are associated with objects.

pageType
The type of Lightning page, such as `HomePage`, `AppPage`, or `RecordPage`.

entityName

The API name of the sObject that a Lightning page is associated with, such as Account, Contact or Custom_object__c. Not all Lightning pages are associated with objects.

Signature

```
public String entityName {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

pageType

The type of Lightning page, such as `HomePage`, `AppPage`, or `RecordPage`.

Signature

```
public String pageType {get; set;}
```

Property Value

Type: String

DesignTimePageContext Methods

The following are methods for `DesignTimePageContext`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DesignTimePageContext` object.

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DesignTimePageContext` object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

DynamicPickList Class

An abstract class, used to display the values of a picklist in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

Namespace

VisualEditor

Usage

To use this class as the datasource of a picklist in a Lightning component, it must be extended by a custom Apex class and then that class must be called in the component's design file.

Example

Here's an example of a custom Apex class extending the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickList` class.

```
global class MyCustomPickList extends VisualEditor.DynamicPickList{

    global override VisualEditor.DataRow getDefaultValue(){
        VisualEditor.DataRow defaultValue = new VisualEditor.DataRow('red', 'RED');
        return defaultValue;
    }
    global override VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows getValues() {
        VisualEditor.DataRow value1 = new VisualEditor.DataRow('red', 'RED');
        VisualEditor.DataRow value2 = new VisualEditor.DataRow('yellow', 'YELLOW');
       VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows  myValues = new VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows();

        myValues.addRow(value1);
        myValues.addRow(value2);
        return myValues;
    }
}
```

Here's an example of how the custom Apex class gets called in a design file so that the picklist appears in the Lightning component.

```
<design:component>
        <design:attribute name="property1" datasource="apex://MyCustomPickList"/>
</design:component>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

DynamicPickList Methods

DynamicPickList Methods

The following are methods for `DynamicPickList`.

IN THIS SECTION:

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPicklist` object.

getDefaultValue()
Returns the picklist item that is set as the default value for the picklist.

getLabel(attributeValue)
Returns the user-facing label for a specified picklist value.

getValues()
Returns the list of picklist item values.

isValid(attributeValue)
Returns the valid state of the picklist item's value. A picklist value is considered valid if it's a part of any `VisualEditor.DataRow` in the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` returned by `getValues()`.

`clone()`

Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPicklist` object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

`getDefaultValue()`

Returns the picklist item that is set as the default value for the picklist.

Signature

```
public VisualEditor.DataRow getDefaultValue()
```

Return Value

Type: VisualEditor.DataRow

`getLabel(attributeValue)`

Returns the user-facing label for a specified picklist value.

Signature

```
public String getLabel(Object attributeValue)
```

Parameters

attributeValue
Type: Object

The value of the picklist item.

Return Value

Type: String

`getValues()`

Returns the list of picklist item values.

Signature

```
public VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows getValues()
```

Return Value

Type: VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows

`isValid(attributeValue)`

Returns the valid state of the picklist item's value. A picklist value is considered valid if it's a part of any `VisualEditor.DataRow` in the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` returned by `getValues()`.

Signature

```
public Boolean isValid(Object attributeValue)
```

Parameters

`attributeValue`
Type: Object

The value of the picklist item.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

DynamicPickListRows Class

Contains a list of picklist items in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

Namespace

VisualEditor

IN THIS SECTION:

DynamicPickListRows Constructors

DynamicPickListRows Methods

DynamicPickListRows Constructors

The following are constructors for `DynamicPickListRows`.

IN THIS SECTION:

DynamicPickListRows(rows, containsAllRows)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class using the specified parameters.

DynamicPickListRows(rows)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class using the specified parameter.

DynamicPickListRows()

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class. You can then add rows by using the class's `addRow` or `addAllRows` methods.

DynamicPickListRows(rows, containsAllRows)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class using the specified parameters.

Signature

```
public DynamicPickListRows(List<VisualEditor.DataRow> rows, Boolean containsAllRows)
```

Parameters

rows

Type: List VisualEditor.DataRow

List of picklist items.

containsAllRows

Type: Boolean

Indicates if all values of the picklist are included in a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

A picklist in a Lightning component can display only the first 200 values of a list. If *containsAllRows* is set to false, when a user does a type-ahead search to find values in the picklist, the search will only look at those first 200 values that were displayed, not the complete set of picklist values.

DynamicPickListRows(rows)

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class using the specified parameter.

Signature

```
public DynamicPickListRows(List<VisualEditor.DataRow> rows)
```

Parameters

rows

Type: List VisualEditor.DataRow

List of picklist rows.

DynamicPickListRows()

Creates an instance of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` class. You can then add rows by using the class's `addRow` or `addAllRows` methods.

Signature

```
public DynamicPickListRows()
```

DynamicPickListRows Methods

The following are methods for `DynamicPickListRows`.

IN THIS SECTION:

addAllRows(rows)
Adds a list of picklist items to a dynamic picklist rendered in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

addRow(row)
Adds a single picklist item to a dynamic picklist rendered in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

clone()
Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` object.

containsAllRows()
Returns a Boolean value indicating whether all values of the picklist are included when a user does a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

get(i)
Returns a picklist element stored at the specified index.

getDataRows()
Returns a list of picklist items.

setContainsAllRows(containsAllRows)
Sets the value indicating whether all values of the picklist are included when a user does a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

size()
Returns the size of the list of `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows`.

sort()
Sorts the list of `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows`.

addAllRows(rows)

Adds a list of picklist items to a dynamic picklist rendered in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

Signature

```
public void addAllRows(List<VisualEditor.DataRow> rows)
```

Parameters

rows
Type: List VisualEditor.DataRow

List of picklist items.

Return Value

Type: void

addRow(row)

Adds a single picklist item to a dynamic picklist rendered in a Lightning component on a Lightning page.

Signature

```
public void addRow(VisualEditor.DataRow row)
```

Parameters

row
Type: VisualEditor.DataRow

A single picklist item.

Return Value

Type: void

clone()

Makes a duplicate copy of the `VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows` object.

Signature

```
public Object clone()
```

Return Value

Type: Object

containsAllRows()

Returns a Boolean value indicating whether all values of the picklist are included when a user does a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

Signature

```
public Boolean containsAllRows()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

A picklist in a Lightning component can display only the first 200 values of a list. If *containsAllRows* is set to false, when a user does a type-ahead search to find values in the picklist, the search will only look at those first 200 values that were displayed, not the complete set of picklist values.

get(i)

Returns a picklist element stored at the specified index.

Signature

```
public VisualEditor.DataRow get(Integer i)
```

Parameters

i

Type: Integer

The index.

Return Value

Type: VisualEditor.DataRow

getDataRows()

Returns a list of picklist items.

Signature

```
public List<VisualEditor.DataRow> getDataRows()
```

Return Value

Type: List VisualEditor.DataRow

setContainsAllRows(containsAllRows)

Sets the value indicating whether all values of the picklist are included when a user does a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

Signature

```
public void setContainsAllRows(Boolean containsAllRows)
```

Parameters

containsAllRows

Type: Boolean

Indicates if all values of the picklist are included in a type-ahead search query (true) or only those values initially displayed when the list is clicked on (false).

A picklist in a Lightning component can display only the first 200 values of a list. If *containsAllRows* is set to false, when a user does a type-ahead search to find values in the picklist, the search will only look at those first 200 values that were displayed, not the complete set of picklist values.

Return Value

Type: void

size()

Returns the size of the list of VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows.

Signature

```
public Integer size()
```

Return Value

Type: Integer

sort()

Sorts the list of VisualEditor.DynamicPickListRows.

Signature

```
public void sort()
```

Return Value

Type: void

wave Namespace

The classes in the wave namespace are part of the Wave Analytics SDK, designed to facilitate querying Wave data from Apex code.

The following are the classes in the wave namespace.

IN THIS SECTION:

QueryBuilder Class

The QueryBuilder class provides methods for constructing well-formed SAQL queries to pass to Wave Analytics.

QueryNode Class

Define each node of the query - such as projection, groups, order, filters. Execute the query.

ProjectionNode Class

Add aggregate functions to the query, or define an alias.

QueryBuilder Class

The QueryBuilder class provides methods for constructing well-formed SAQL queries to pass to Wave Analytics.

Namespace

wave

Usage

Use QueryBuilder and its associated classes, `Wave.ProjectionNode` and `Wave.QueryNode`, to incrementally build your SAQL statement. For example:

```
public static void executeApexQuery(String name){
  Wave.ProjectionNode[] projs = new Wave.ProjectionNode[]{
    Wave.QueryBuilder.get('State').alias('State'),
    Wave.QueryBuilder.get('City').alias('City'),
    Wave.QueryBuilder.get('Revenue').avg().alias('avg_Revenue'),
    Wave.QueryBuilder.get('Revenue').sum().alias('sum_Revenue'),

    Wave.QueryBuilder.count().alias('count')};

  ConnectApi.LiteralJson result = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('0FbD00000004DSzKAM',
'0FcD00000004FEZKA2')
    .group(new String[]{'State', 'City'})
    .foreach(projs)
    .execute('q');
  String response = result.json;
}
```

Examples

QueryBuilder is the core of this first phase of the Wave Apex SDK, so let's take a closer look. Here's a simple count query.

```
Wave.ProjectionNode[] projs = new
Wave.ProjectionNode[]{Wave.QueryBuilder.count().alias('c')};
String query = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetId',
'datasetVersionId').group().foreach(projs).build('q');
```

The resulting SAQL query looks like this:

```
q = load "datasetId/datasetVersionId";
q = group q by all;
q = foreach q generate count as c;
```

Here's a more complex example that uses a union statement.

```
Wave.ProjectionNode[] projs = new Wave.ProjectionNode[]{Wave.QueryBuilder.get('Name'),
Wave.QueryBuilder.get('AnnualRevenue').alias('Revenue')};
Wave.QueryNode nodeOne =
Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetOne','datasetVersionOne').foreach(projs);
Wave.QueryNode nodeTwo = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetTwo',
'datasetVersionTwo').foreach(projs);
```

```
String query = Wave.QueryBuilder.union(new List<Wave.QueryNode>{nodeOne,
nodeTwo}).build('q');
```

The resulting SAQL query has two projection streams, *qa* and *qb*.

```
qa = load "datasetOne/datasetVersionOne";
qa = foreach q generate Name,AnnualRevenue as Revenue;
qb = load "datasetTwo/datasetVersionTwo";
qb = foreach q generate Name,AnnualRevenue as Revenue;
q = union qa, qb;
```

IN THIS SECTION:

QueryBuilder Methods

QueryBuilder Methods

The following are methods for `QueryBuilder`.

IN THIS SECTION:

load(datasetID, datasetVersionID)
Load a stream from a dataset.

count()
Calculate the number of rows that match the query criteria.

get(projection)
Query by selecting specific attributes.

union(unionNodes)
Combine multiple result sets into one result set.

cogroup(cogroupNodes, groups)
Cogrouping means that two input streams are grouped independently and arranged side by side. Only data that exists in both groups appears in the results.

`load(datasetID, datasetVersionID)`

Load a stream from a dataset.

Signature

```
public static wave.QueryNode load(String datasetID, String datasetVersionID)
```

Parameters

datasetID
Type: String

The ID of the dataset.

datasetVersionID
Type: String

The ID identifying the version of the dataset.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

count()

Calculate the number of rows that match the query criteria.

Signature

```
public static wave.ProjectionNode count()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

get(projection)

Query by selecting specific attributes.

Signature

```
public static wave.ProjectionNode get(String proj)
```

Parameters

proj
Type: String

The name of the column to query.

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

union(unionNodes)

Combine multiple result sets into one result set.

Signature

```
global static Wave.QueryNode union(List<Wave.QueryNode> unionNodes)
```

Parameters

unionNodes
Type: List<wave.QueryNode>

List of nodes to combine.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

`cogroup(cogroupNodes, groups)`

Cogrouping means that two input streams are grouped independently and arranged side by side. Only data that exists in both groups appears in the results.

Signature

```
global static Wave.QueryNode cogroup(List<Wave.QueryNode> cogroupNodes,
List<List<String>> groups)
```

Parameters

cogroupNodes
Type: wave.QueryNode

List of nodes to group.

groups
Type: String

The type of grouping.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

QueryNode Class

Define each node of the query - such as projection, groups, order, filters. Execute the query.

Namespace

wave

Usage

Refer to the QueryBuilder example.

IN THIS SECTION:

QueryNode Methods

QueryNode Methods

The following are methods for `QueryNode`.

IN THIS SECTION:

build(streamName)
Build the query string represented by this QueryNode and assign it to a stream name.

foreach(projections)
Applies a set of expressions to every row in a dataset. This action is often referred to as projection.

group(groups)
Groups matched records (group by specific dataset attributes).

group()
Groups matched records (group by all).

order(orders)
Sorts in ascending or descending order on one or more fields.

cap(cap)
Limits the number of results that are returned.

filter(filterCondition)
Selects rows from a dataset based on a filter condition (a predicate).

filter(filterConditions)
Selects rows from a dataset based on multiple filter conditions (predicates).

execute(streamName)
Execute the query and return rows as JSON.

`build(streamName)`

Build the query string represented by this QueryNode and assign it to a stream name.

Signature

```
public String build(String streamName)
```

Parameters

`streamName`
Type: String

The identifier for the stream - for example, "q".

Return Value

Type: String

The SAQL query string represented by the QueryNode.

`foreach(projections)`

Applies a set of expressions to every row in a dataset. This action is often referred to as projection.

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode foreach(List<wave.ProjectionNode> projections)
```

Parameters

projections
Type: List<wave.ProjectionNode>

A list of ProjectionNodes to be added to this QueryNode.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

group(groups)

Groups matched records (group by specific dataset attributes).

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode group(List<String> groups)
```

Parameters

groups
Type: List<String>

A list of expressions.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

Example

```
Wave.ProjectionNode[] projs = new Wave.ProjectionNode[]{Wave.QueryBuilder.get('Name'),
Wave.QueryBuilder.get('Revenue').sum().alias('REVENUE_SUM')};
ConnectApi.LiteralJson result = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetId',
'datasetVersionId').group(new String[]{'Name'}).foreach(projs).build('q');
```

group()

Groups matched records (group by all).

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode group()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

Example

```
String query = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetId',
'datasetVersionId').group().foreach(projs).build('q');
```

order(orders)

Sorts in ascending or descending order on one or more fields.

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode group(List<String> groups)
```

Parameters

groups
Type: List<String>

A list of column names and associated ascending or descending keywords, for example

```
List<List<String>>{new List<String>{'Name', 'asc'}, new List<String>{'Revenue', 'desc'}}
```

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

cap(cap)

Limits the number of results that are returned.

Signature

```
global Wave.QueryNode cap(Integer cap)
```

Parameters

cap
Type: Integer

The maximum number of rows to return.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

filter(filterCondition)

Selects rows from a dataset based on a filter condition (a predicate).

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode filter(String filterCondition)
```

Parameters

filterCondition
Type: String

For example: `filter('Name != \'My Name\'')`

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

filter(filterConditions)

Selects rows from a dataset based on multiple filter conditions (predicates).

Signature

```
public wave.QueryNode filter(List<String> filterCondition)
```

Parameters

filterCondition
Type: List<String>

A list of filter conditions.

Return Value

Type: wave.QueryNode

execute(streamName)

Execute the query and return rows as JSON.

Signature

```
global ConnectApi.LiteralJson execute(String streamName)
```

Parameters

streamName
Type: String

The query stream to execute. For example:

```
ConnectApi.LiteralJson result = Wave.QueryBuilder.load('datasetId',
      'datasetVersionId').group().foreach(projs).execute('q');
```

Return Value

Type: ConnectApi.LiteralJson

ProjectionNode Class

Add aggregate functions to the query, or define an alias.

Namespace

wave on page 3134

Usage

Refer to the QueryBuilder example.

IN THIS SECTION:

ProjectionNode Methods

ProjectionNode Methods

The following are methods for `ProjectionNode`.

IN THIS SECTION:

sum()
Returns the sum of a numeric field.

avg()
Returns the average value of a numeric field.

min()
Returns the minimum value of a field.

max()
Returns the maximum value of a field.

count()
Returns the number of rows that match the query criteria.

unique()
Returns the count of unique values.

alias(name)
Define output column names.

`sum()`

Returns the sum of a numeric field.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode sum()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`avg()`

Returns the average value of a numeric field.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode avg()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`min()`

Returns the minimum value of a field.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode min()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`max()`

Returns the maximum value of a field.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode max()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`count()`

Returns the number of rows that match the query criteria.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode count()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`unique()`

Returns the count of unique values.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode unique()
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

`alias(name)`

Define output column names.

Signature

```
public wave.ProjectionNode alias(String name)
```

Parameters

name

Type: String

The name to use for this column. For example, this code defines the alias `c`:

```
Wave.ProjectionNode[] projs = new
Wave.ProjectionNode[]{Wave.QueryBuilder.count().alias('c')};
```

Return Value

Type: wave.ProjectionNode

Appendices

IN THIS SECTION:

Shipping Invoice Example

Reserved Keywords

Documentation Typographical Conventions

Glossary

Shipping Invoice Example

This appendix provides an example of an Apex application. This is a more complex example than the Hello World example.

- Shipping Invoice Walk-Through
- Shipping Invoice Example Code

IN THIS SECTION:

1. Shipping Invoice Example Walk-Through
2. Shipping Invoice Example Code

Shipping Invoice Example Walk-Through

The sample application in this section includes traditional Salesforce functionality blended with Apex. Many of the syntactic and semantic features of Apex, along with common idioms, are illustrated in this application.

Note: The Shipping Invoice sample requires custom objects. You can either create these on your own, or download the objects and Apex code as an unmanaged package from the Salesforce AppExchange. To obtain the sample assets in your org, install the Apex Tutorials Package. This package also contains sample code and objects for the Apex Quick Start.

Scenario

In this sample application, the user creates a new shipping invoice, or order, and then adds items to the invoice. The total amount for the order, including shipping cost, is automatically calculated and updated based on the items added or deleted from the invoice.

Data and Code Models

This sample application uses two new objects: Item and Shipping_invoice.

The following assumptions are made:

- Item A cannot be in both orders shipping_invoice1 and shipping_invoice2. Two customers cannot obtain the same (physical) product.
- The tax rate is 9.25%.
- The shipping rate is 75 cents per pound.
- Once an order is over $100, the shipping discount is applied (shipping becomes free).

The fields in the Item custom object include:

Name	Type	Description
Name	String	The name of the item
Price	Currency	The price of the item
Quantity	Number	The number of items in the order
Weight	Number	The weight of the item, used to calculate shipping costs
Shipping_invoice	Master-Detail (shipping_invoice)	The order this item is associated with

The fields in the Shipping_invoice custom object include:

Name	Type	Description
Name	String	The name of the shipping invoice/order
Subtotal	Currency	The subtotal

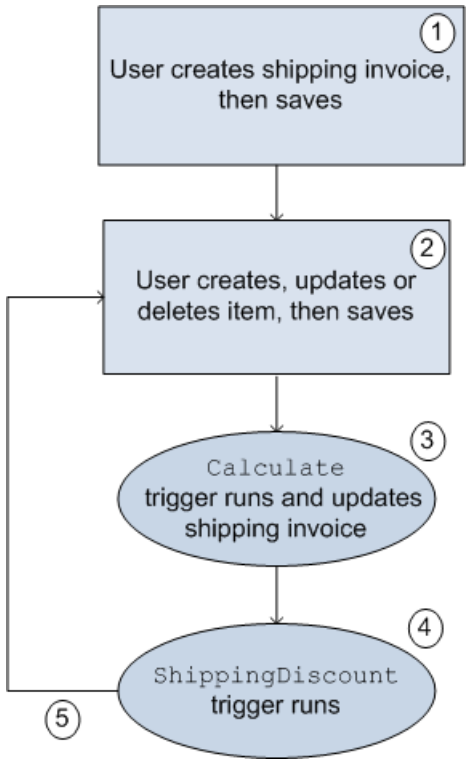
Name	Type	Description
GrandTotal	Currency	The total amount, including tax and shipping
Shipping	Currency	The amount charged for shipping (assumes $0.75 per pound)
ShippingDiscount	Currency	Only applied once when subtotal amount reaches $100
Tax	Currency	The amount of tax (assumes 9.25%)
TotalWeight	Number	The total weight of all items

All of the Apex for this application is contained in triggers. This application has the following triggers:

Object	Trigger Name	When Runs	Description
Item	Calculate	after insert, after update, after delete	Updates the shipping invoice, calculates the totals and shipping
Shipping_invoice	ShippingDiscount	after update	Updates the shipping invoice, calculating if there is a shipping discount

The following is the general flow of user actions and when triggers run:

Flow of user action and triggers for the shopping cart application



1. User clicks **Orders** > **New**, names the shipping invoice and clicks **Save**.

2. User clicks **New Item**, fills out information, and clicks **Save**.
3. Calculate trigger runs. Part of the Calculate trigger updates the shipping invoice.
4. ShippingDiscount trigger runs.
5. User can then add, delete or change items in the invoice.

In Shipping Invoice Example Code both of the triggers and the test class are listed. The comments in the code explain the functionality.

Testing the Shipping Invoice Application

Before an application can be included as part of a package, 75% of the code must be covered by unit tests. Therefore, one piece of the shipping invoice application is a class used for testing the triggers.

The test class verifies the following actions are completed successfully:

- Inserting items
- Updating items
- Deleting items
- Applying shipping discount
- Negative test for bad input

Shipping Invoice Example Code

The following triggers and test class make up the shipping invoice example application:

- Calculate trigger
- ShippingDiscount trigger
- Test class

Calculate Trigger

```
trigger calculate on Item__c (after insert, after update, after delete) {

// Use a map because it doesn't allow duplicate values

Map<ID, Shipping_Invoice__C> updateMap = new Map<ID, Shipping_Invoice__C>();

// Set this integer to -1 if we are deleting
Integer subtract ;

// Populate the list of items based on trigger type
List<Item__c> itemList;
    if(trigger.isInsert || trigger.isUpdate){
        itemList = Trigger.new;
        subtract = 1;
    }
    else if(trigger.isDelete)
    {
        // Note -- there is no trigger.new in delete
        itemList = trigger.old;
        subtract = -1;
    }
```

```
// Access all the information we need in a single query
// rather than querying when we need it.
// This is a best practice for bulkifying requests

set<Id> AllItems = new set<id>();

for(item__c i :itemList){
// Assert numbers are not negative.
// None of the fields would make sense with a negative value

System.assert(i.quantity__c > 0, 'Quantity must be positive');
System.assert(i.weight__c >= 0, 'Weight must be non-negative');
System.assert(i.price__c >= 0, 'Price must be non-negative');

// If there is a duplicate Id, it won't get added to a set
AllItems.add(i.Shipping_Invoice__C);
}

// Accessing all shipping invoices associated with the items in the trigger
List<Shipping_Invoice__C> AllShippingInvoices = [SELECT Id, ShippingDiscount__c,
                   SubTotal__c, TotalWeight__c, Tax__c, GrandTotal__c
                   FROM Shipping_Invoice__C WHERE Id IN :AllItems];

// Take the list we just populated and put it into a Map.
// This will make it easier to look up a shipping invoice
// because you must iterate a list, but you can use lookup for a map,
Map<ID, Shipping_Invoice__C> SIMap = new Map<ID, Shipping_Invoice__C>();

for(Shipping_Invoice__C sc : AllShippingInvoices)
{
    SIMap.put(sc.id, sc);
}

// Process the list of items
    if(Trigger.isUpdate)
    {
        // Treat updates like a removal of the old item and addition of the
        // revised item rather than figuring out the differences of each field
        // and acting accordingly.
        // Note updates have both trigger.new and trigger.old
        for(Integer x = 0; x < Trigger.old.size(); x++)
        {
            Shipping_Invoice__C myOrder;
            myOrder = SIMap.get(trigger.old[x].Shipping_Invoice__C);

            // Decrement the previous value from the subtotal and weight.
            myOrder.SubTotal__c -= (trigger.old[x].price__c *
                                    trigger.old[x].quantity__c);
            myOrder.TotalWeight__c -= (trigger.old[x].weight__c *
                                       trigger.old[x].quantity__c);

            // Increment the new subtotal and weight.
            myOrder.SubTotal__c += (trigger.new[x].price__c *
```

```
                                trigger.new[x].quantity__c);
            myOrder.TotalWeight__c += (trigger.new[x].weight__c *
                                    trigger.new[x].quantity__c);
        }

        for(Shipping_Invoice__C myOrder : AllShippingInvoices)
        {

            // Set tax rate to 9.25%  Please note, this is a simple example.
            // Generally, you would never hard code values.
            // Leveraging Custom Settings for tax rates is a best practice.
            // See Custom Settings in the Apex Developer Guide
            // for more information.
            myOrder.Tax__c = myOrder.Subtotal__c * .0925;

            // Reset the shipping discount
            myOrder.ShippingDiscount__c = 0;

            // Set shipping rate to 75 cents per pound.
            // Generally, you would never hard code values.
            // Leveraging Custom Settings for the shipping rate is a best practice.
            // See Custom Settings in the Apex Developer Guide
            // for more information.
            myOrder.Shipping__c = (myOrder.totalWeight__c * .75);
            myOrder.GrandTotal__c = myOrder.SubTotal__c + myOrder.tax__c +
                                    myOrder.Shipping__c;
            updateMap.put(myOrder.id, myOrder);
         }
    }
    else
    {
        for(Item__c itemToProcess : itemList)
        {
            Shipping_Invoice__C myOrder;

            // Look up the correct shipping invoice from the ones we got earlier
            myOrder = SIMap.get(itemToProcess.Shipping_Invoice__C);
            myOrder.SubTotal__c += (itemToProcess.price__c *
                                    itemToProcess.quantity__c * subtract);
            myOrder.TotalWeight__c += (itemToProcess.weight__c *
                                       itemToProcess.quantity__c * subtract);
        }

        for(Shipping_Invoice__C myOrder : AllShippingInvoices)
        {

             // Set tax rate to 9.25%  Please note, this is a simple example.
             // Generally, you would never hard code values.
             // Leveraging Custom Settings for tax rates is a best practice.
             // See Custom Settings in the Apex Developer Guide
             // for more information.
             myOrder.Tax__c = myOrder.Subtotal__c * .0925;

             // Reset shipping discount
```

```
             myOrder.ShippingDiscount__c = 0;

            // Set shipping rate to 75 cents per pound.
            // Generally, you would never hard code values.
            // Leveraging Custom Settings for the shipping rate is a best practice.
            // See Custom Settings in the Apex Developer Guide
            // for more information.
            myOrder.Shipping__c = (myOrder.totalWeight__c * .75);
            myOrder.GrandTotal__c = myOrder.SubTotal__c + myOrder.tax__c +
                                    myOrder.Shipping__c;

            updateMap.put(myOrder.id, myOrder);

        }
    }

    // Only use one DML update at the end.
    // This minimizes the number of DML requests generated from this trigger.
    update updateMap.values();
}
```

ShippingDiscount Trigger

```
trigger ShippingDiscount on Shipping_Invoice__C (before update) {
    // Free shipping on all orders greater than $100

    for(Shipping_Invoice__C myShippingInvoice : Trigger.new)
    {
        if((myShippingInvoice.subtotal__c >= 100.00) &&
           (myShippingInvoice.ShippingDiscount__c == 0))
        {
            myShippingInvoice.ShippingDiscount__c =
                        myShippingInvoice.Shipping__c * -1;
            myShippingInvoice.GrandTotal__c += myShippingInvoice.ShippingDiscount__c;
        }
    }
}
```

Shipping Invoice Test

```
@IsTest
private class TestShippingInvoice{

    // Test for inserting three items at once
    public static testmethod void testBulkItemInsert(){
        // Create the shipping invoice. It's a best practice to either use defaults
        // or to explicitly set all values to zero so as to avoid having
        // extraneous data in your test.
        Shipping_Invoice__C order1 = new Shipping_Invoice__C(subtotal__c = 0,
                          totalweight__c = 0, grandtotal__c = 0,
                          ShippingDiscount__c = 0, Shipping__c = 0, tax__c = 0);

        // Insert the order and populate with items
```

```
        insert Order1;
        List<Item__c> list1 = new List<Item__c>();
        Item__c item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = 10, weight__c = 1, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item2 = new Item__C(Price__c = 25, weight__c = 2, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item3 = new Item__C(Price__c = 40, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        list1.add(item1);
        list1.add(item2);
        list1.add(item3);
        insert list1;

        // Retrieve the order, then do assertions
        order1 = [SELECT id, subtotal__c, tax__c, shipping__c, totalweight__c,
                  grandtotal__c, shippingdiscount__c
                  FROM Shipping_Invoice__C
                  WHERE id = :order1.id];

        System.assert(order1.subtotal__c == 75,
                'Order subtotal was not $75, but was '+ order1.subtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.tax__c == 6.9375,
                'Order tax was not $6.9375, but was ' + order1.tax__c);
        System.assert(order1.shipping__c == 4.50,
                'Order shipping was not $4.50, but was ' + order1.shipping__c);
        System.assert(order1.totalweight__c == 6.00,
                'Order weight was not 6 but was ' + order1.totalweight__c);
        System.assert(order1.grandtotal__c == 86.4375,
                'Order grand total was not $86.4375 but was '
                 + order1.grandtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.shippingdiscount__c == 0,
                'Order shipping discount was not $0 but was '
                + order1.shippingdiscount__c);
    }

    // Test for updating three items at once
    public static testmethod void testBulkItemUpdate(){

        // Create the shipping invoice. It's a best practice to either use defaults
        // or to explicitly set all values to zero so as to avoid having
        // extraneous data in your test.
        Shipping_Invoice__C order1 = new Shipping_Invoice__C(subtotal__c = 0,
                          totalweight__c = 0, grandtotal__c = 0,
                          ShippingDiscount__c = 0, Shipping__c = 0, tax__c = 0);

        // Insert the order and populate with items.
        insert Order1;
        List<Item__c> list1 = new List<Item__c>();
        Item__c item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = 1, weight__c = 1, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item2 = new Item__C(Price__c = 2, weight__c = 2, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item3 = new Item__C(Price__c = 4, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
```

```
        list1.add(item1);
        list1.add(item2);
        list1.add(item3);
        insert list1;

        // Update the prices on the 3 items
        list1[0].price__c = 10;
        list1[1].price__c = 25;
        list1[2].price__c = 40;
        update list1;

        // Access the order and assert items updated
        order1 = [SELECT id, subtotal__c, tax__c, shipping__c, totalweight__c,
                  grandtotal__c, shippingdiscount__c
                  FROM Shipping_Invoice__C
                  WHERE Id = :order1.Id];

        System.assert(order1.subtotal__c == 75,
                      'Order subtotal was not $75, but was '+ order1.subtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.tax__c == 6.9375,
                      'Order tax was not $6.9375, but was ' + order1.tax__c);
        System.assert(order1.shipping__c == 4.50,
                      'Order shipping was not $4.50, but was '
                      + order1.shipping__c);
        System.assert(order1.totalweight__c == 6.00,
                      'Order weight was not 6 but was ' + order1.totalweight__c);
        System.assert(order1.grandtotal__c == 86.4375,
                      'Order grand total was not $86.4375 but was '
                      + order1.grandtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.shippingdiscount__c == 0,
                      'Order shipping discount was not $0 but was '
                      + order1.shippingdiscount__c);

    }

    // Test for deleting items
    public static testmethod void testBulkItemDelete(){

        // Create the shipping invoice. It's a best practice to either use defaults
        // or to explicitly set all values to zero so as to avoid having
        // extraneous data in your test.
        Shipping_Invoice__C order1 = new Shipping_Invoice__C(subtotal__c = 0,
                          totalweight__c = 0, grandtotal__c = 0,
                          ShippingDiscount__c = 0, Shipping__c = 0, tax__c = 0);

        // Insert the order and populate with items
        insert Order1;
        List<Item__c> list1 = new List<Item__c>();
        Item__c item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = 10, weight__c = 1, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item2 = new Item__C(Price__c = 25, weight__c = 2, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item3 = new Item__C(Price__c = 40, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
```

```
        Item__c itemA = new Item__C(Price__c = 1, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c itemB = new Item__C(Price__c = 1, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c itemC = new Item__C(Price__c = 1, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c itemD = new Item__C(Price__c = 1, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        list1.add(item1);
        list1.add(item2);
        list1.add(item3);
        list1.add(itemA);
        list1.add(itemB);
        list1.add(itemC);
        list1.add(itemD);
        insert list1;

        // Seven items are now in the shipping invoice.
       // The following deletes four of them.
        List<Item__c> list2 = new List<Item__c>();
        list2.add(itemA);
        list2.add(itemB);
        list2.add(itemC);
        list2.add(itemD);
        delete list2;

        // Retrieve the order and verify the deletion
        order1 = [SELECT id, subtotal__c, tax__c, shipping__c, totalweight__c,
                  grandtotal__c, shippingdiscount__c
                  FROM Shipping_Invoice__C
                  WHERE Id = :order1.Id];

        System.assert(order1.subtotal__c == 75,
                      'Order subtotal was not $75, but was '+ order1.subtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.tax__c == 6.9375,
                      'Order tax was not $6.9375, but was ' + order1.tax__c);
        System.assert(order1.shipping__c == 4.50,
                      'Order shipping was not $4.50, but was ' + order1.shipping__c);
        System.assert(order1.totalweight__c == 6.00,
                      'Order weight was not 6 but was ' + order1.totalweight__c);
        System.assert(order1.grandtotal__c == 86.4375,
                      'Order grand total was not $86.4375 but was '
                      + order1.grandtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.shippingdiscount__c == 0,
                      'Order shipping discount was not $0 but was '
                      + order1.shippingdiscount__c);
    }
    // Testing free shipping
    public static testmethod void testFreeShipping(){

        // Create the shipping invoice. It's a best practice to either use defaults
        // or to explicitly set all values to zero so as to avoid having
        // extraneous data in your test.
        Shipping_Invoice__C order1 = new Shipping_Invoice__C(subtotal__c = 0,
```

```
                    totalweight__c = 0, grandtotal__c = 0,
                    ShippingDiscount__c = 0, Shipping__c = 0, tax__c = 0);

// Insert the order and populate with items.
insert Order1;
List<Item__c> list1 = new List<Item__c>();
Item__c item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = 10, weight__c = 1,
                        quantity__c = 1, Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
Item__c item2 = new Item__C(Price__c = 25, weight__c = 2,
                        quantity__c = 1, Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
Item__c item3 = new Item__C(Price__c = 40, weight__c = 3,
                        quantity__c = 1, Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
list1.add(item1);
list1.add(item2);
list1.add(item3);
insert list1;

// Retrieve the order and verify free shipping not applicable
order1 = [SELECT id, subtotal__c, tax__c, shipping__c, totalweight__c,
          grandtotal__c, shippingdiscount__c
          FROM Shipping_Invoice__C
          WHERE Id = :order1.Id];

// Free shipping not available on $75 orders
System.assert(order1.subtotal__c == 75,
              'Order subtotal was not $75, but was '+ order1.subtotal__c);
System.assert(order1.tax__c == 6.9375,
              'Order tax was not $6.9375, but was ' + order1.tax__c);
System.assert(order1.shipping__c == 4.50,
              'Order shipping was not $4.50, but was ' + order1.shipping__c);
System.assert(order1.totalweight__c == 6.00,
              'Order weight was not 6 but was ' + order1.totalweight__c);
System.assert(order1.grandtotal__c == 86.4375,
              'Order grand total was not $86.4375 but was '
              + order1.grandtotal__c);
System.assert(order1.shippingdiscount__c == 0,
              'Order shipping discount was not $0 but was '
              + order1.shippingdiscount__c);

// Add items to increase subtotal
item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = 25, weight__c = 20, quantity__c = 1,
                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
insert item1;

// Retrieve the order and verify free shipping is applicable
order1 = [SELECT id, subtotal__c, tax__c, shipping__c, totalweight__c,
          grandtotal__c, shippingdiscount__c
          FROM Shipping_Invoice__C
          WHERE Id = :order1.Id];

// Order total is now at $100, so free shipping should be enabled
System.assert(order1.subtotal__c == 100,
              'Order subtotal was not $100, but was '+ order1.subtotal__c);
System.assert(order1.tax__c == 9.25,
```

```
                    'Order tax was not $9.25, but was ' + order1.tax__c);
        System.assert(order1.shipping__c == 19.50,
                    'Order shipping was not $19.50, but was '
                    + order1.shipping__c);
        System.assert(order1.totalweight__c == 26.00,
                    'Order weight was not 26 but was ' + order1.totalweight__c);
        System.assert(order1.grandtotal__c == 109.25,
                    'Order grand total was not $86.4375 but was '
                    + order1.grandtotal__c);
        System.assert(order1.shippingdiscount__c == -19.50,
                    'Order shipping discount was not -$19.50 but was '
                    + order1.shippingdiscount__c);
    }

     // Negative testing for inserting bad input
    public static testmethod void testNegativeTests(){

        // Create the shipping invoice. It's a best practice to either use defaults
        // or to explicitly set all values to zero so as to avoid having
        // extraneous data in your test.
        Shipping_Invoice__C order1 = new Shipping_Invoice__C(subtotal__c = 0,
                          totalweight__c = 0, grandtotal__c = 0,
                          ShippingDiscount__c = 0, Shipping__c = 0, tax__c = 0);

        // Insert the order and populate with items.
        insert Order1;
        Item__c item1 = new Item__C(Price__c = -10, weight__c = 1, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item2 = new Item__C(Price__c = 25, weight__c = -2, quantity__c = 1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item3 = new Item__C(Price__c = 40, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = -1,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);
        Item__c item4 = new Item__C(Price__c = 40, weight__c = 3, quantity__c = 0,
                                    Shipping_Invoice__C = order1.id);

        try{
            insert item1;
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            system.assert(e.getMessage().contains('Price must be non-negative'),
                        'Price was negative but was not caught');
        }

        try{
            insert item2;
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            system.assert(e.getMessage().contains('Weight must be non-negative'),
                        'Weight was negative but was not caught');
        }

        try{
```

```
            insert item3;
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            system.assert(e.getMessage().contains('Quantity must be positive'),
                          'Quantity was negative but was not caught');
        }

        try{
            insert item4;
        }
        catch(Exception e)
        {
            system.assert(e.getMessage().contains('Quantity must be positive'),
                          'Quantity was zero but was not caught');
        }
    }
}
```

Reserved Keywords

The following words can only be used as keywords.

Table 2: Reserved Keywords

abstract	false	package
activate	final	parallel
and	finally	pragma
any	float	private
array	for	protected
as	from	public
asc	global	retrieve
autonomous	goto	return
begin	group	rollback
bigdecimal	having	select
blob	hint	set
boolean	if	short
break	implements	sObject
bulk	import	sort
by	in	static
byte	inner	string
case	insert	super
cast	instanceof	switch
catch	int	synchronized

char	integer	system
class	interface	testmethod
collect	into	then
commit	join	this
const	like	throw
continue	limit	time
currency	list	transaction
date	long	trigger
datetime	loop	true
decimal	map	try
default	merge	undelete
delete	new	update
desc	not	upsert
do	null	using
double	nulls	virtual
else	number	void
end	object	webservice
enum	of	when
exception	on	where
exit	or	while
export	outer	
extends	override	

The following are special types of keywords that aren't reserved words and can be used as identifiers.

- after
- before
- count
- excludes
- first
- includes
- last
- order
- sharing
- with

Documentation Typographical Conventions

Apex and Visualforce documentation uses the following typographical conventions.

Convention	Description
`Courier font`	In descriptions of syntax, monospace font indicates items that you should type as shown, except for brackets. For example: `Public class HelloWorld`
Italics	In descriptions of syntax, italics represent variables. You supply the actual value. In the following example, three values need to be supplied: *datatype variable_name* [= *value*]; If the syntax is bold and italic, the text represents a code element that needs a value supplied by you, such as a class name or variable value: `public static class YourClassHere { ... }`
Bold Courier font	In code samples and syntax descriptions, bold courier font emphasizes a portion of the code or syntax.

< >	In descriptions of syntax, less-than and greater-than symbols (< >) are typed exactly as shown.
	`<apex:pageBlockTable value="{!account.Contacts}" var="contact">`
	`<apex:column value="{!contact.Name}"/>`
	`<apex:column value="{!contact.MailingCity}"/>`
	`<apex:column value="{!contact.Phone}"/>`
	`</apex:pageBlockTable>`

{ }	In descriptions of syntax, braces ({ }) are typed exactly as shown.
	`<apex:page>`
	`Hello {!$User.FirstName}!`
	`</apex:page>`

[ ]	In descriptions of syntax, anything included in brackets is optional. In the following example, specifying ***value*** is optional: `data_type variable_name [ = value];`

|	In descriptions of syntax, the pipe sign means "or". You can do one of the following (not all). In the following example, you can create a new unpopulated set in one of two ways, or you can populate the set:
	`Set<data_type> set_name`
	`[= new Set<data_type>();] |`
	`[= new Set<data_type{value [, value2. . .] };] |`
	`;`

Glossary

A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | I | J | L | M | N | O | P | Q | R | S | T | U | V | W | X | Y | Z

A

Administrator (System Administrator)
One or more individuals in your organization who can configure and customize the application. Users assigned to the System Administrator profile have administrator privileges.

AJAX Toolkit
A JavaScript wrapper around the API that allows you to execute any API call and access any object you have permission to view from within JavaScript code. For more information, see the *AJAX Toolkit Developer's Guide*.

Anti-Join
An anti-join is a subquery on another object in a `NOT IN` clause in a SOQL query. You can use anti-joins to create advanced queries. See also Semi-Join.

Anonymous Block, Apex
Apex code that does not get stored in Salesforce, but that can be compiled and executed by using the `ExecuteAnonymousResult()` API call, or the equivalent in the AJAX Toolkit.

Ant Migration Tool
A toolkit that allows you to write an Apache Ant build script for migrating Lightning Platform components between a local file system and a Salesforce organization.

Apex
Apex is a strongly typed, object-oriented programming language that allows developers to execute flow and transaction control statements on the Lightning platform server in conjunction with calls to the Lightning Platform API. Using syntax that looks like Java and acts like database stored procedures, Apex enables developers to add business logic to most system events, including button clicks, related record updates, and Visualforce pages. Apex code can be initiated by Web service requests and from triggers on objects.

Apex Connector Framework
The Apex Connector Framework is a set of classes and methods in the DataSource namespace for creating a custom adapter for Salesforce Connect. Create a custom adapter to connect to data that's stored outside your Salesforce org when the other available Salesforce Connect adapters aren't suitable for your needs.

Apex-Managed Sharing
Enables developers to programmatically manipulate sharing to support their application's behavior. Apex-managed sharing is only available for custom objects.

Apex Page
See Visualforce page.

App
Short for "application." A collection of components such as tabs, reports, dashboards, and Visualforce pages that address a specific business need. Salesforce provides standard apps such as Sales and Service. You can customize the standard apps to match the way you work. In addition, you can package an app and upload it to the AppExchange along with related components such as custom fields, custom tabs, and custom objects. Then, you can make the app available to other Salesforce users from the AppExchange.

AppExchange
The AppExchange is a sharing interface from Salesforce that allows you to browse and share apps and services for the Lightning Platform.

Application Programming Interface (API)
The interface that a computer system, library, or application provides to allow other computer programs to request services from it and exchange data.

Approval Process
An approval process automates how records are approved in Salesforce. An approval process specifies each step of approval, including who to request approval from and what to do at each point of the process.

Asynchronous Calls
A call that doesn't return results immediately because the operation can take a long time. Calls in the Metadata API and Bulk API are asynchronous.

B

Batch Apex
The ability to perform long, complex operations on many records at a scheduled time using Apex.

Beta, Managed Package
In the context of managed packages, a beta managed package is an early version of a managed package distributed to a sampling of your intended audience to test it.

Bulk API
The REST-based Bulk API is optimized for processing large sets of data. It allows you to query, insert, update, upsert, or delete a large number of records asynchronously by submitting a number of batches which are processed in the background by Salesforce. See also SOAP API.

C

Callout, Apex
An Apex callout enables you to tightly integrate your Apex with an external service by making a call to an external Web service or sending a HTTP request from Apex code and then receiving the response.

Child Relationship
A relationship that has been defined on an sObject that references another sObject as the "one" side of a one-to-many relationship. For example, contacts, opportunities, and tasks have child relationships with accounts.

See also sObject.

Class, Apex
A template or blueprint from which Apex objects are created. Classes consist of other classes, user-defined methods, variables, exception types, and static initialization code. In most cases, Apex classes are modeled on their counterparts in Java.

Client App
An app that runs outside the Salesforce user interface and uses only the Lightning Platform API or Bulk API. It typically runs on a desktop or mobile device. These apps treat the platform as a data source, using the development model of whatever tool and platform for which they are designed.

Code Coverage
A way to identify which lines of code are exercised by a set of unit tests, and which are not. This helps you identify sections of code that are completely untested and therefore at greatest risk of containing a bug or introducing a regression in the future.

Component, Metadata
A component is an instance of a metadata type in the Metadata API. For example, CustomObject is a metadata type for custom objects, and the `MyCustomObject__c` component is an instance of a custom object. A component is described in an XML file and it can be deployed or retrieved using the Metadata API, or tools built on top of it, such as the Salesforce extensions for Visual Studio Code or the Ant Migration Tool.

Component, Visualforce
Something that can be added to a Visualforce page with a set of tags, for example, `<apex:detail>`. Visualforce includes a number of standard components, or you can create your own custom components.

Component Reference, Visualforce
A description of the standard and custom Visualforce components that are available in your organization. You can access the component library from the development footer of any Visualforce page or the *Visualforce Developer's Guide*.

Composite App
An app that combines native platform functionality with one or more external Web services, such as Yahoo! Maps. Composite apps allow for more flexibility and integration with other services, but may require running and managing external code. See also Client App and Native App.

Controller, Visualforce
An Apex class that provides a Visualforce page with the data and business logic it needs to run. Visualforce pages can use the standard controllers that come by default with every standard or custom object, or they can use custom controllers.

Controller Extension
A controller extension is an Apex class that extends the functionality of a standard or custom controller.

Cookie
Client-specific data used by some Web applications to store user and session-specific information. Salesforce issues a session "cookie" only to record encrypted authentication information for the duration of a specific session.

Custom App
See App.

Custom Controller
A custom controller is an Apex class that implements all of the logic for a page without leveraging a standard controller. Use custom controllers when you want your Visualforce page to run entirely in system mode, which does not enforce the permissions and field-level security of the current user.

Custom Field
A field that can be added in addition to the standard fields to customize Salesforce for your organization's needs.

Custom Links
Custom links are URLs defined by administrators to integrate your Salesforce data with external websites and back-office systems. Formerly known as Web links.

Custom Object
Custom records that allow you to store information unique to your organization.

Custom Settings
Custom settings are similar to custom objects and enable application developers to create custom sets of data, as well as create and associate custom data for an organization, profile, or specific user. All custom settings data is exposed in the application cache, which enables efficient access without the cost of repeated queries to the database. This data can then be used by formula fields, validation rules, flows, Apex, and the SOAP API.

See also Hierarchy Custom Settings and List Custom Settings.

D

Database
An organized collection of information. The underlying architecture of the Lightning Platform includes a database where your data is stored.

Database Table
A list of information, presented with rows and columns, about the person, thing, or concept you want to track. See also Object.

Data Loader
A Lightning Platform tool used to import and export data from your Salesforce organization.

Data Manipulation Language (DML)
An Apex method or operation that inserts, updates, or deletes records.

Data State
The structure of data in an object at a particular point in time.

Date Literal
A keyword in a SOQL or SOSL query that represents a relative range of time such as `last month` or `next year`.

Decimal Places
Parameter for number, currency, and percent custom fields that indicates the total number of digits you can enter to the right of a decimal point, for example, 4.98 for an entry of 2. Note that the system rounds the decimal numbers you enter, if necessary. For example, if you enter 4.986 in a field with `Decimal Places` of 2, the number rounds to 4.99. Salesforce uses the round half-up rounding algorithm. Half-way values are always rounded up. For example, 1.45 is rounded to 1.5. –1.45 is rounded to –1.5.

Dependency
A relationship where one object's existence depends on that of another. There are a number of different kinds of dependencies including mandatory fields, dependent objects (parent-child), file inclusion (referenced images, for example), and ordering dependencies (when one object must be deployed before another object).

Dependent Field
Any custom picklist or multi-select picklist field that displays available values based on the value selected in its corresponding controlling field.

Deploy
To move functionality from an inactive state to active. For example, when developing new features in the Salesforce user interface, you must select the "Deployed" option to make the functionality visible to other users.

The process by which an application or other functionality is moved from development to production.

To move metadata components from a local file system to a Salesforce organization.

For installed apps, deployment makes any custom objects in the app available to users in your organization. Before a custom object is deployed, it is only available to administrators and any users with the "Customize Application" permission.

Deprecated Component
Developers can refine the functionality in a managed package over time as the requirements evolve, such as redesign some of the components in the managed package. Developers can't delete some components in a Managed - Released package, but they can deprecate a component in a later package version so that new subscribers don't receive the component, while the component continues to function for existing subscribers and API integrations.

Detail
A page that displays information about a single object record. The detail page of a record allows you to view the information, whereas the edit page allows you to modify it.

A term used in reports to distinguish between summary information and inclusion of all column data for all information in a report. You can toggle the **Show Details**/**Hide Details** button to view and hide report detail information.

Developer Edition
A free, fully-functional Salesforce organization designed for developers to extend, integrate, and develop with the Lightning Platform. Developer Edition accounts are available on developer.salesforce.com.

Salesforce Developers
The Salesforce Developers website at developer.salesforce.com provides a full range of resources for platform developers, including sample code, toolkits, an online developer community, and the ability to obtain limited Lightning Platform environments.

Development Environment
A Salesforce organization where you can make configuration changes that will not affect users on the production organization. There are two kinds of development environments, sandboxes and Developer Edition organizations.

E

Email Alert
Email alerts are actions that send emails, using a specified email template, to specified recipients.

Email Template
A form email that communicates a standard message, such as a welcome letter to new employees or an acknowledgment that a customer service request has been received. Email templates can be personalized with merge fields, and can be written in text, HTML, or custom format.

Note: Lightning email templates aren't packageable.

Enterprise Edition
A Salesforce edition designed for larger, more complex businesses.

Enterprise WSDL
A strongly-typed WSDL for customers who want to build an integration with their Salesforce organization only, or for partners who are using tools like Tibco or webMethods to build integrations that require strong typecasting. The downside of the Enterprise WSDL is that it only works with the schema of a single Salesforce organization because it is bound to all of the unique objects and fields that exist in that organization's data model.

Entity Relationship Diagram (ERD)
A data modeling tool that helps you organize your data into entities (or objects, as they are called in the Lightning Platform) and define the relationships between them. ERD diagrams for key Salesforce objects are published in the *SOAP API Developer's Guide*.

Enumeration Field
An enumeration is the WSDL equivalent of a picklist field. The valid values of the field are restricted to a strict set of possible values, all having the same data type.

F

Facet
A child of another Visualforce component that allows you to override an area of the rendered parent with the contents of the facet.

Field
A part of an object that holds a specific piece of information, such as a text or currency value.

Field Dependency
A filter that allows you to change the contents of a picklist based on the value of another field.

Field-Level Security
Settings that determine whether fields are hidden, visible, read only, or editable for users. Available in Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Performance, and Developer Editions.

Foreign Key
A field whose value is the same as the primary key of another table. You can think of a foreign key as a copy of a primary key from another table. A relationship is made between two tables by matching the values of the foreign key in one table with the values of the primary key in another.

G

Getter Methods
Methods that enable developers to display database and other computed values in page markup.

Methods that return values. See also Setter Methods.

Global Variable
A special merge field that you can use to reference data in your organization.

A method access modifier for any method that needs to be referenced outside of the application, either in the SOAP API or by other Apex code.

Governor Limits
Apex execution limits that prevent developers who write inefficient code from monopolizing the resources of other Salesforce users.

Gregorian Year
A calendar based on a 12-month structure used throughout much of the world.

H

Hierarchy Custom Settings
A type of custom setting that uses a built-in hierarchical logic that lets you "personalize" settings for specific profiles or users. The hierarchy logic checks the organization, profile, and user settings for the current user and returns the most specific, or "lowest," value. In the hierarchy, settings for an organization are overridden by profile settings, which, in turn, are overridden by user settings.

HTTP Debugger
An application that can be used to identify and inspect SOAP requests that are sent from the AJAX Toolkit. They behave as proxy servers running on your local machine and allow you to inspect and author individual requests.

I

ID
See Salesforce Record ID.

IdeaExchange
A forum where Salesforce customers can suggest new product concepts, promote favorite enhancements, interact with product managers and other customers, and preview what Salesforce is planning to deliver in future releases. Visit IdeaExchange at ideas.salesforce.com.

Import Wizard
A tool for importing data into your Salesforce organization, accessible from Setup.

Instance
The cluster of software and hardware represented as a single logical server that hosts an organization's data and runs their applications. The Lightning Platform runs on multiple instances, but data for any single organization is always stored on a single instance.

Integrated Development Environment (IDE)
A software application that provides comprehensive facilities for software developers including a source code editor, testing and debugging tools, and integration with source code control systems.

Integration User
A Salesforce user defined solely for client apps or integrations. Also referred to as the logged-in user in a SOAP API context.

ISO Code
The International Organization for Standardization country code, which represents each country by two letters.

J

Junction Object

A custom object with two master-detail relationships. Using a custom junction object, you can model a "many-to-many" relationship between two objects. For example, you create a custom object called "Bug" that relates to the standard case object such that a bug could be related to multiple cases and a case could also be related to multiple bugs.

L

Length

Parameter for custom text fields that specifies the maximum number of characters (up to 255) that a user can enter in the field.

Parameter for number, currency, and percent fields that specifies the number of digits you can enter to the left of the decimal point, for example, 123.98 for an entry of 3.

Lightning Platform

The Salesforce platform for building applications in the cloud. Lightning Platform combines a powerful user interface, operating system, and database to allow you to customize and deploy applications in the cloud for your entire enterprise.

List Custom Settings

A type of custom setting that provides a reusable set of static data that can be accessed across your organization. If you use a particular set of data frequently within your application, putting that data in a list custom setting streamlines access to it. Data in list settings does not vary with profile or user, but is available organization-wide. Examples of list data include two-letter state abbreviations, international dialing prefixes, and catalog numbers for products. Because the data is cached, access is low-cost and efficient: you don't have to use SOQL queries that count against your governor limits.

List View

A list display of items (for example, accounts or contacts) based on specific criteria. Salesforce provides some predefined views.

In the Agent console, the list view is the top frame that displays a list view of records based on specific criteria. The list views you can select to display in the console are the same list views defined on the tabs of other objects. You cannot create a list view within the console.

Local Name

The value stored for the field in the user's or account's language. The local name for a field is associated with the standard name for that field.

Locale

The country or geographic region in which the user is located. The setting affects the format of date and number fields, for example, dates in the English (United States) locale display as 06/30/2000 and as 30/06/2000 in the English (United Kingdom) locale.

In Professional, Enterprise, Unlimited, Performance, and Developer Edition organizations, a user's individual `Locale` setting overrides the organization's `Default Locale` setting. In Personal and Group Editions, the organization-level locale field is called `Locale`, not `Default Locale`.

Long Text Area

Data type of custom field that allows entry of up to 32,000 characters on separate lines.

Lookup Relationship

A relationship between two records so you can associate records with each other. For example, cases have a lookup relationship with assets that lets you associate a particular asset with a case. On one side of the relationship, a lookup field allows users to click a lookup icon and select another record from a popup window. On the associated record, you can then display a related list to show all of the records that have been linked to it. If a lookup field references a record that has been deleted, by default Salesforce clears the lookup field. Alternatively, you can prevent records from being deleted if they're in a lookup relationship.

M

Managed Package
A collection of application components that is posted as a unit on the AppExchange and associated with a namespace and possibly a License Management Organization. To support upgrades, a package must be managed. An organization can create a single managed package that can be downloaded and installed by many different organizations. Managed packages differ from unmanaged packages by having some locked components, allowing the managed package to be upgraded later. Unmanaged packages do not include locked components and cannot be upgraded. In addition, managed packages obfuscate certain components (like Apex) on subscribing organizations to protect the intellectual property of the developer.

Manual Sharing
Record-level access rules that allow record owners to give read and edit permissions to other users who might not have access to the record any other way.

Many-to-Many Relationship
A relationship where each side of the relationship can have many children on the other side. Many-to-many relationships are implemented through the use of junction objects.

Master-Detail Relationship
A relationship between two different types of records that associates the records with each other. For example, accounts have a master-detail relationship with opportunities. This type of relationship affects record deletion, security, and makes the lookup relationship field required on the page layout.

Metadata
Information about the structure, appearance, and functionality of an organization and any of its parts. Lightning Platform uses XML to describe metadata.

Metadata-Driven Development
An app development model that allows apps to be defined as declarative "blueprints," with no code required. Apps built on the platform—their data models, objects, forms, workflows, and more—are defined by metadata.

Metadata WSDL
A WSDL for users who want to use the Lightning Platform Metadata API calls.

Multitenancy
An application model where all users and apps share a single, common infrastructure and code base.

MVC (Model-View-Controller)
A design paradigm that deconstructs applications into components that represent data (the model), ways of displaying that data in a user interface (the view), and ways of manipulating that data with business logic (the controller).

N

Namespace
In a packaging context, a one- to 15-character alphanumeric identifier that distinguishes your package and its contents from packages of other developers on AppExchange, similar to a domain name. Salesforce automatically prepends your namespace prefix, followed by two underscores ("__"), to all unique component names in your Salesforce organization.

Native App
An app that is built exclusively with setup (metadata) configuration on Lightning Platform. Native apps do not require any external services or infrastructure.

O

Object
An object allows you to store information in your Salesforce organization. The object is the overall definition of the type of information you are storing. For example, the case object allow you to store information regarding customer inquiries. For each object, your organization will have multiple records that store the information about specific instances of that type of data. For example, you might have a case record to store the information about Joe Smith's training inquiry and another case record to store the information about Mary Johnson's configuration issue.

Object-Level Help
Custom help text that you can provide for any custom object. It displays on custom object record home (overview), detail, and edit pages, as well as list views and related lists.

Object-Level Security
Settings that allow an administrator to hide whole objects from users so that they don't know that type of data exists. Object-level security is specified with object permissions.

One-to-Many Relationship
A relationship in which a single object is related to many other objects. For example, an account may have one or more related contacts.

Organization
A deployment of Salesforce with a defined set of licensed users. An organization is the virtual space provided to an individual customer of Salesforce. Your organization includes all of your data and applications, and is separate from all other organizations.

Organization-Wide Defaults
Settings that allow you to specify the baseline level of data access that a user has in your organization. For example, you can set organization-wide defaults so that any user can see any record of a particular object that is enabled via their object permissions, but they need extra permissions to edit one.

Outbound Call
Any call that originates from a user to a number outside of a call center in Salesforce CRM Call Center.

Outbound Message
An outbound message sends information to a designated endpoint, like an external service. Outbound messages are configured from Setup. You must configure the external endpoint and create a listener for the messages using the SOAP API.

Owner
Individual user to which a record (for example, a contact or case) is assigned.

P

PaaS
See Platform as a Service.

Package
A group of Lightning Platform components and applications that are made available to other organizations through the AppExchange. You use packages to bundle an app along with any related components so that you can upload them to AppExchange together.

Package Dependency
This is created when one component references another component, permission, or preference that is required for the component to be valid. Components can include but are not limited to:

- Standard or custom fields
- Standard or custom objects
- Visualforce pages

- Apex code

Permissions and preferences can include but are not limited to:

- Divisions
- Multicurrency
- Record types

Package Installation
Installation incorporates the contents of a package into your Salesforce organization. A package on the AppExchange can include an app, a component, or a combination of the two. After you install a package, you may need to deploy components in the package to make it generally available to the users in your organization.

Package Version
A package version is a number that identifies the set of components uploaded in a package. The version number has the format `majorNumber.minorNumber.patchNumber` (for example, 2.1.3). The major and minor numbers increase to a chosen value during every major release. The `patchNumber` is generated and updated only for a patch release.

Unmanaged packages are not upgradeable, so each package version is simply a set of components for distribution. A package version has more significance for managed packages. Packages can exhibit different behavior for different versions. Publishers can use package versions to evolve the components in their managed packages gracefully by releasing subsequent package versions without breaking existing customer integrations using the package. See also Patch and Patch Development Organization.

Partner WSDL
A loosely-typed WSDL for customers, partners, and ISVs who want to build an integration or an AppExchange app that can work across multiple Salesforce organizations. With this WSDL, the developer is responsible for marshaling data in the correct object representation, which typically involves editing the XML. However, the developer is also freed from being dependent on any particular data model or Salesforce organization. Contrast this with the Enterprise WSDL, which is strongly typed.

Patch
A patch enables a developer to change the functionality of existing components in a managed package, while ensuring subscribing organizations that there are no visible behavior changes to the package. For example, you can add new variables or change the body of an Apex class, but you may not add, deprecate, or remove any of its methods. Patches are tracked by a `patchNumber` appended to every package version. See also Patch Development Organization and Package Version.

Patch Development Organization
The organization where patch versions are developed, maintained, and uploaded. Patch development organizations are created automatically for a developer organization when they request to create a patch. See also Patch and Package Version.

Personal Edition
Product designed for individual sales representatives and single users.

Platform as a Service (PaaS)
An environment where developers use programming tools offered by a service provider to create applications and deploy them in a cloud. The application is hosted as a service and provided to customers via the Internet. The PaaS vendor provides an API for creating and extending specialized applications. The PaaS vendor also takes responsibility for the daily maintenance, operation, and support of the deployed application and each customer's data. The service alleviates the need for programmers to install, configure, and maintain the applications on their own hardware, software, and related IT resources. Services can be delivered using the PaaS environment to any market segment.

Platform Edition
A Salesforce edition based on Enterprise, Unlimited, or Performance Edition that does not include any of the standard Salesforce apps, such as Sales or Service & Support.

Primary Key
A relational database concept. Each table in a relational database has a field in which the data value uniquely identifies the record. This field is called the primary key. The relationship is made between two tables by matching the values of the foreign key in one table with the values of the primary key in another.

Production Organization
A Salesforce organization that has live users accessing data.

Professional Edition
A Salesforce edition designed for businesses who need full-featured CRM functionality.

Prototype
The classes, methods and variables that are available to other Apex code.

Q

Query Locator
A parameter returned from the `query()` or `queryMore()` API call that specifies the index of the last result record that was returned.

Query String Parameter
A name-value pair that's included in a URL, typically after a '?' character. For example:

```
https://yourInstance.salesforce.com/001/e?name=value
```

R

Record
A single instance of a Salesforce object. For example, "John Jones" might be the name of a contact record.

Record ID
The unique identifier for each record.

Record-Level Security
A method of controlling data in which you can allow a particular user to view and edit an object, but then restrict the records that the user is allowed to see.

Record Locking
Record locking prevents users from editing a record, regardless of field-level security or sharing settings. By default, Salesforce locks records that are pending approval. Only admins can edit locked records.

Record Name
A standard field on all Salesforce objects. Whenever a record name is displayed in a Lightning Platform application, the value is represented as a link to a detail view of the record. A record name can be either free-form text or an autonumber field. `Record Name` does not have to be a unique value.

Recycle Bin
A page that lets you view and restore deleted information. Access the Recycle Bin either by using the link in the sidebar in Salesforce Classic or from the App Launcher in Lightning Experience.

Relationship
A connection between two objects, used to create related lists in page layouts and detail levels in reports. Matching values in a specified field in both objects are used to link related data; for example, if one object stores data about companies and another object stores data about people, a relationship allows you to find out which people work at the company.

Relationship Query
In a SOQL context, a query that traverses the relationships between objects to identify and return results. Parent-to-child and child-to-parent syntax differs in SOQL queries.

Role Hierarchy
A record-level security setting that defines different levels of users such that users at higher levels can view and edit information owned by or shared with users beneath them in the role hierarchy, regardless of the organization-wide sharing model settings.

Roll-Up Summary Field
A field type that automatically provides aggregate values from child records in a master-detail relationship.

Running User
Each dashboard has a *running user*, whose security settings determine which data to display in a dashboard. If the running user is a specific user, all dashboard viewers see data based on the security settings of that user—regardless of their own personal security settings. For dynamic dashboards, you can set the running user to be the logged-in user, so that each user sees the dashboard according to his or her own access level.

S

SaaS
See Software as a Service (SaaS).

S-Control

Note: S-controls have been superseded by Visualforce pages. After March 2010 organizations that have never created s-controls, as well as new organizations, won't be allowed to create them. Existing s-controls will remain unaffected, and can still be edited.

Custom Web content for use in custom links. Custom s-controls can contain any type of content that you can display in a browser, for example a Java applet, an Active-X control, an Excel file, or a custom HTML Web form.

Salesforce Certificate and Key Pair
Salesforce certificates and key pairs are used for signatures that verify a request is coming from your organization. They are used for authenticated SSL communications with an external web site, or when using your organization as an Identity Provider. You only need to generate a Salesforce certificate and key pair if you're working with an external website that wants verification that a request is coming from a Salesforce organization.

Salesforce Connect
Salesforce Connect provides access to data that's stored outside the Salesforce org, such as data in an enterprise resource planning (ERP) system and records in another org. Salesforce Connect represents the data in external objects and accesses the external data in real time via Web service callouts to external data sources.

Salesforce Extensions for Visual Studio Code
The Salesforce extension pack for Visual Studio Code includes tools for developing on the Salesforce platform in the lightweight, extensible VS Code editor. These tools provide features for working with development orgs (scratch orgs, sandboxes, and DE orgs), Apex, Aura components, and Visualforce.

Salesforce Record ID
A unique 15- or 18-character alphanumeric string that identifies a single record in Salesforce.

Salesforce SOA (Service-Oriented Architecture)
A powerful capability of Lightning Platform that allows you to make calls to external Web services from within Apex.

Sandbox
A nearly identical copy of a Salesforce production organization for development, testing, and training. The content and size of a sandbox varies depending on the type of sandbox and the edition of the production organization associated with the sandbox.

Semi-Join
A semi-join is a subquery on another object in an `IN` clause in a SOQL query. You can use semi-joins to create advanced queries, such as getting all contacts for accounts that have an opportunity with a particular record type. See also Anti-Join.

Session ID
An authentication token that is returned when a user successfully logs in to Salesforce. The Session ID prevents a user from having to log in again every time they want to perform another action in Salesforce. Different from a record ID or Salesforce ID, which are terms for the unique ID of a Salesforce record.

Session Timeout
The time after login before a user is automatically logged out. Sessions expire automatically after a predetermined length of inactivity, which can be configured in Salesforce from Setup by clicking **Security Controls**. The default is 120 minutes (two hours). The inactivity timer is reset to zero if a user takes an action in the web interface or makes an API call.

Setter Methods
Methods that assign values. See also Getter Methods.

Setup
A menu where administrators can customize and define organization settings and Lightning Platform apps. Depending on your organization's user interface settings, Setup may be a link in the user interface header or in the dropdown list under your name.

Sharing
Allowing other users to view or edit information you own. There are different ways to share data:

- Sharing Model—defines the default organization-wide access levels that users have to each other's information and whether to use the hierarchies when determining access to data.
- Role Hierarchy—defines different levels of users such that users at higher levels can view and edit information owned by or shared with users beneath them in the role hierarchy, regardless of the organization-wide sharing model settings.
- Sharing Rules—allow an administrator to specify that all information created by users within a given group or role is automatically shared to the members of another group or role.
- Manual Sharing—allows individual users to share records with other users or groups.
- Apex-Managed Sharing—enables developers to programmatically manipulate sharing to support their application's behavior. See Apex-Managed Sharing.

Sharing Model
Behavior defined by your administrator that determines default access by users to different types of records.

Sharing Rule
Type of default sharing created by administrators. Allows users in a specified group or role to have access to all information created by users within a given group or role.

Sites
Salesforce Sites enables you to create public websites and applications that are directly integrated with your Salesforce organization—without requiring users to log in with a username and password.

SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol)
A protocol that defines a uniform way of passing XML-encoded data.

SOAP API
A SOAP-based Web services application programming interface that provides access to your Salesforce organization's information.

sObject
The abstract or parent object for all objects that can be stored in the Lightning Platform.

Software as a Service (SaaS)
A delivery model where a software application is hosted as a service and provided to customers via the Internet. The SaaS vendor takes responsibility for the daily maintenance, operation, and support of the application and each customer's data. The service

alleviates the need for customers to install, configure, and maintain applications with their own hardware, software, and related IT resources. Services can be delivered using the SaaS model to any market segment.

SOQL (Salesforce Object Query Language)
A query language that allows you to construct simple but powerful query strings and to specify the criteria that selects data from the Lightning Platform database.

SOSL (Salesforce Object Search Language)
A query language that allows you to perform text-based searches using the Lightning Platform API.

Standard Object
A built-in object included with the Lightning Platform. You can also build custom objects to store information that is unique to your app.

System Log
Part of the Developer Console, a separate window console that can be used for debugging code snippets. Enter the code you want to test at the bottom of the window and click Execute. The body of the System Log displays system resource information, such as how long a line took to execute or how many database calls were made. If the code did not run to completion, the console also displays debugging information.

T

Tag
In Salesforce, a word or short phrases that users can associate with most records to describe and organize their data in a personalized way. Administrators can enable tags for accounts, activities, assets, campaigns, cases, contacts, contracts, dashboards, documents, events, leads, notes, opportunities, reports, solutions, tasks, and any custom objects (except relationship group members) Tags can also be accessed through the SOAP API.

Test Case Coverage
Test cases are the expected real-world scenarios in which your code will be used. Test cases are not actual unit tests, but are documents that specify what your unit tests should do. High test case coverage means that most or all the real-world scenarios you have identified are implemented as unit tests. See also Code Coverage and Unit Test.

Test Method
An Apex class method that verifies whether a particular piece of code is working properly. Test methods take no arguments, commit no data to the database, and can be executed by the `runTests()` system method either through the command line or in an Apex IDE, such as the Salesforce extensions for Visual Studio Code.

Test Organization
See Sandbox.

Transaction, Apex
An *Apex transaction* represents a set of operations that are executed as a single unit. All DML operations in a transaction either complete successfully, or if an error occurs in one operation, the entire transaction is rolled back and no data is committed to the database. The boundary of a transaction can be a trigger, a class method, an anonymous block of code, a Visualforce page, or a custom Web service method.

Trigger
A piece of Apex that executes before or after records of a particular type are inserted, updated, or deleted from the database. Every trigger runs with a set of context variables that provide access to the records that caused the trigger to fire, and all triggers run in bulk mode—that is, they process several records at once, rather than just one record at a time.

Trigger Context Variable
Default variables that provide access to information about the trigger and the records that caused it to fire.

U

Unit Test
A unit is the smallest testable part of an application, usually a method. A unit test operates on that piece of code to make sure it works correctly. See also Test Method.

Unlimited Edition
Unlimited Edition is Salesforce's solution for maximizing your success and extending that success across the entire enterprise through the Lightning Platform.

Unmanaged Package
A package that cannot be upgraded or controlled by its developer.

URL (Uniform Resource Locator)
The global address of a website, document, or other resource on the Internet. For example, http://www.salesforce.com.

User Acceptance Testing (UAT)
A process used to confirm that the functionality meets the planned requirements. UAT is one of the final stages before deployment to production.

V

Validation Rule
A rule that prevents a record from being saved if it does not meet the standards that are specified.

Version
A number value that indicates the release of an item. Items that can have a version include API objects, fields, and calls; Apex classes and triggers; and Visualforce pages and components.

View
The user interface in the Model-View-Controller model, defined by Visualforce.

View State
Where the information necessary to maintain the state of the database between requests is saved.

Visualforce
A simple, tag-based markup language that allows developers to easily define custom pages and components for apps built on the platform. Each tag corresponds to a coarse or fine-grained component, such as a section of a page, a related list, or a field. The components can either be controlled by the same logic that is used in standard Salesforce pages, or developers can associate their own logic with a controller written in Apex.

Visualforce Controller
See Controller, Visualforce.

Visualforce Lifecycle
The stages of execution of a Visualforce page, including how the page is created and destroyed during a user session.

Visualforce Page
A web page created using Visualforce. Typically, Visualforce pages present information relevant to your organization, but they can also modify or capture data. They can be rendered in several ways, such as a PDF document or an email attachment, and can be associated with a CSS style.

W

Web Service
A mechanism by which two applications can easily exchange data over the Internet, even if they run on different platforms, are written in different languages, or are geographically remote from each other.

WebService Method
An Apex class method or variable that external systems can use, like a mash-up with a third-party application. Web service methods must be defined in a global class.

Web Services API
A Web services application programming interface that provides access to your Salesforce organization's information. See also SOAP PI and Bulk API.

Automated Actions
Automated actions, such as email alerts, tasks, field updates, and outbound messages, can be triggered by a process, workflow rule, approval process, or milestone.

Wrapper Class
A class that abstracts common functions such as logging in, managing sessions, and querying and batching records. A wrapper class makes an integration more straightforward to develop and maintain, keeps program logic in one place, and affords easy reuse across components. Examples of wrapper classes in Salesforce include the AJAX Toolkit, which is a JavaScript wrapper around the Salesforce SOAP API, wrapper classes such as `CCritical Section` in the CTI Adapter for Salesforce CRM Call Center, or wrapper classes created as part of a client integration application that accesses Salesforce using the SOAP API.

WSDL (Web Services Description Language) File
An XML file that describes the format of messages you send and receive from a Web service. Your development environment's SOAP client uses the Salesforce Enterprise WSDL or Partner WSDL to communicate with Salesforce using the SOAP API.

X

XML (Extensible Markup Language)
A markup language that enables the sharing and transportation of structured data. All Lightning Platform components that are retrieved or deployed through the Metadata API are represented by XML definitions.

Y

No Glossary items for this entry.

Z

No Glossary items for this entry.